Osama Naga
Editor

Pediatric Board Study Guide

A Last Minute Review

Springer

Pediatric Board Study Guide

Osama Naga
Editor

Pediatric Board Study Guide

A Last Minute Review

Springer

Editor
Osama Naga
Department of Pediatrics
Paul L Foster School of Medicine,
Texas Tech, University Health Sciences Center
El Paso
Texas
USA

ISBN 978-3-319-10114-9 ISBN 978-3-319-10115-6 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6
Springer Cham Heidelberg New York Dordrecht London

Library of Congress Control Number: 2014957480

To my father, and my mother who supported me in the most critical times in my life.

To my precious daughter Ayah, whose smiles and laughter constantly provide me unparalleled joy and happiness.

This book would not have been possible without the support of my very loving and understanding wife.

I owe my deepest gratitude to all the contributors and experts who make this great pediatric resource possible and alive.

Foreword

Pediatric Board Study Guide: A Last Minute Review is designed for pediatricians who are preparing for the pediatric board examination, as an excellent guide for residents taking the in-service exam during training, or as assistance in preparing for rotations. It is an easy and fast source of much basic information and many clinical facts.

The book provides the core material needed to pass the General Pediatric Certifying exam. The first part of the book is the pediatric board study guide explains the content specifications provided by the American Board of Pediatrics, and includes revisions in treatment protocols and diagnostic criteria. Figures, radiology images, EKGs, growth curves, tables, and diagrams make it easy to establish the basic medical knowledge in pediatrics in many different ways; most of the major chapters were written or reviewed by experts in the field from the top universities in the USA.

The typical and atypical presentation of pediatric conditions characterizes the *Guide*. An easy-to-read bulleted format highlights the most pertinent information for conditions commonly encountered by the pediatricians. In the "Last Minute Review" chapter, tables allow the reader to review in the shortest time possible more than 1000 clinical case scenarios, more than 70 radiology case scenarios and high-yield facts for the pediatric board examination and clinical pediatric encounters, making it ideal for review in the days prior to the Board exam. With smooth transitions from one topic to another, the *Guide* is easy to read and use, and we trust it will prove an excellent tool for anyone in the field, whether preparing for the exam, or brushing up for rotations.

Osama Naga
El Paso, TX

Contents

Contributors

Amr Abdelgawad, MD Associate Professor of Orthopedic Surgery, Department of Orthopaedic Surgery & Rehabilitation, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, El Paso, TX, USA

Marwa Abdou, MD Pediatric Resident, Department of Pediatrics, El Paso Children's Hospital, El Paso, TX, USA

Rujuta R. Bhatt, MD Child Neurology Resident, Department of Pediatric Neurology, Mattel Children's Hospital at UCLA, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Staci Bryson, MD Assistant Professor, Department of Pathology, Texas Tech University Health Science Center, Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, El Paso Children's Hospital, El Paso, TX, USA

Arlynn F. Mulne, MD Associate Professor, Department of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, Texas Tech University Health Science Center, Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, El Paso Children's Hospital, El Paso, TX, USA

Abd Alla Fares, MD Department of Radiology, UZ Brussel, Laarbeeklaan, Brussels, Belgium

Beatrice Goilav, MD Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatric Nephrology, Children's Hospital at Montefiore, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Bronx, NY, USA

M. Nawar Hakim, MD Assistant Professor, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Science Center, El Paso, TX, USA

Mohamad Hamdy Ataalla, MD Department of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, El Paso, TX, USA

Karen Hardy, MD Director of Pediatric Pulmonary and CF Center, Director of Pediatric Pulmonary and CF Center, Pediatric Pulmonary and Cystic Fibrosis Center, Children's Oakland and California, Pacific Medical Centers, Oakland, CA, USA

Ivet Hartonian, MD, MS Pediatric Neurology Consultant, Department of Pediatrics, White Memorial Pediatric Medical Group, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Daphne T. Hsu, MD Professor of Pediatrics, Division Chief, and Co-Director, Department of Pediatric Cardiology, Pediatric Heart Center, Department of Pediatrics, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Children's Hospital at Montefiore, Bronx, NY, USA

Sitratullah .O. Maiyegun, MD Associate Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Science Center, El Paso, TX, USA

Steven L. Lanski, MD Medical Director Pediatric Emergency Medicine Department of Pediatric Emergency Medicine, Providence Memorial Hospital, El Paso, TX, USA

Kuk-Wha Lee, MD, PhD Associate Professor, Chief, Division of Endocrinology, Department of Pediatrics, Mattel Children's Hospital at UCLA, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Jason T. Lerner, MD Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatric Neurology, Mattel Children's Hospital at UCLA, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Joseph Mahgerefteh, MD Assistant Professor, Pediatric Heart Center, Department of Pediatrics, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Children's Hospital at Montefiore, Bronx, NY, USA

Anna H. Messner, MD Professor, Department of Otolaryngology/Head & Neck Surgery, Stanford University Medical Center and the Lucile Salter Packard Children's Hospital, Stanford, CA, USA

Amr Morsi, MD Resident Physician, Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Science Center—Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, El Paso, TX, USA

Osama Naga, MD Clinical Assistant Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Science Center, El Paso, Avenue, TX, USA

Josée Paradis, MD, MSc, FRCSC Department of Otolaryngology, Head & Neck surgery, London Health Science Center, University of Western Ontario, London, Ontario, Canada

Violeta Radenovich, MD, M.P.H Associate Professor of Pediatric Ophthalmology, Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, El Paso, TX, USA

Vijay Tonk, PhD: FACMG Professor of Pediatrics and Clinical Genetics, Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, Lubbock, TX, USA

Golder Wilson, MD, PhD Professor of Pediatrics and Clinical Genetics, Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, Lubbock, TX, USA

General Pediatrics

Osama Naga

Growth

Background
- Growth is affected by maternal nutrition and uterine size.
- Genetic growth potential is inherited from parents and also depends on nutrition throughout childhood.
- Growth is affected by growth hormone (GH), thyroid hormone, insulin, and sex hormones, all of which have varying influence at different stages of growth.
- Deviation from normal expected patterns of growth often can be the first indication of an underlying disorder.
- Carefully documented growth charts serve as powerful tools for monitoring the overall health and well-being of patients.
- Key to diagnosing abnormal growth is the understanding of normal growth, which can be classified into four primary areas: fetal, postnatal/infant, childhood, and pubertal.

Weight
- Healthy term infants may lose up to 10% of birth weight within the first 10 days after birth.
- Newborns quickly regain this weight by 2 weeks of age.
- Infants gain 20–30 g/day for the first 3 postnatal months.
- Birth weight doubles at 4 months.
- Birth weight triples by 1 year of age.

Height
- Height of a newborn increases by 50% within 1 year.
- Height of a newborn doubles within 3–4 years.
- After 2 years the height increases by average 5 cm/year.

Measurements
- Length or supine height should be measured in infants and toddlers < 2 years.
- Standing heights should be used if age > 2 years.
- Plot gestational age for preterm infants rather than chronological age.
- Specific growth charts are available for special populations, e.g., Trisomy 21, Turner syndrome, Klinefelter syndrome, and achondroplasia.

Growth curve reading
- Shifts across two or more percentile lines may indicate an abnormality in growth.
- Shifts on the growth curve toward a child's genetic potential between 6 and 18 months of age are common.
- Small infants born to a tall parents begin catch-up growth around 6 months of age.
- Weight is affected first in malnourished cases, chronic disease, and malabsorption, or neglect.
- Primary linear growth problems often have some congenital, genetic, or endocrine abnormality (see chapter "Endocrine Disorders").

Macrocephaly

Definition
- Head circumference (HC) 2 standard deviations above the mean

Causes
- Hydrocephalus
- Enlargement of subarachnoid space (familial with autosomal dominant inheritance)
- Achondroplasia (skeletal dysplasia)
- Sotos syndrome "Cerebral Gigantism"
- Alexander's disease
- Canavan's disease
- Gangliosidosis

O. Naga (✉)
Pediatric Department, Paul L Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_1,

- Glutaric aciduria type I
- Neurofibromatosis type I

Familial macrocephaly
- It is a benign cause of macrocephaly.
- It is autosomal dominant and usually seen in the father.
- Infants are usually born with a large head but within normal range at birth.
- The head circumference as the infants grow usually exceeds or is parallel to 98th percentile.
- Head computed tomography (CT) usually shows enlarged subarachnoid space.
- Head CT may show minimal increase in the ventricles, widening in sulci, and sylvian fissure.

Genetic megalocephaly
- Similar to familial macrocephaly except the CT is normal

Diagnosis
- Head ultrasound is the study of choice.
- Head CT scan.

Management
- Hydrocephalus and macrocephaly present with enlargement of head circumference; careful attention should be given specially to the preterm babies who may have hydrocephalus.
- Plot the gestational age on growth chart for preterm babies instead of chronological age.
- Infants born with microcephaly usually have their head circumference (HC) catch up faster than length and weight; abnormal growth pattern may indicate hydrocephalus.

Microcephaly

Definition
- Head circumference 2 standard deviation below the mean.

Causes
- Trisomy 13, 18 (Edward syndrome) and 21 (Down syndrome)
- Cornelia de Lange
- Rubinstein–Taybi
- Smith–Lemli–Opitz
- Prader–Willi syndrome
- Teratogen exposure
- Fetal alcohol syndrome
- Radiation exposure in utero (<15 weeks gestation)
- Fetal hydantoin
- TORCH: Toxoplasmosis, Other infections, Rubella, Cytomegalovirus, Herpes simplex virus congenital infection
- Meningitis or encephalitis
- Gestational diabetes
- Maternal hyperphenylalaninemia
- Hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy

Diagnosis
- Maternal phenylalanine level
- Karyotype of child for suspected congenital abnormality
- Head imaging (Head ultrasound, Head CT, or Head MRI)
- Amino acid analysis (plasma and urine)
- TORCH virus serum titers (mother and child)
- Urine culture for cytomegalovirus

Plagiocephaly

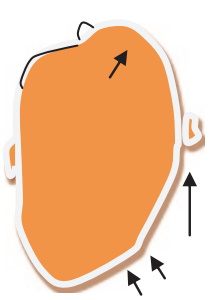
Background
- Deformational flattening from lack of changes in head positions is the most common cause of asymmetric head shape.

Causes
- Positional or supine sleeping is the most common cause of plagiocephaly.
- Craniosynostosis.

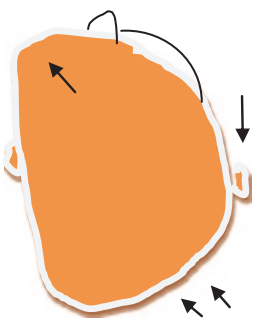
Craniosynostosis
- If one suture is involved, it is usually isolated, and sagittal suture involvement is the most common.
- If more than one suture is involved, it is usually associated with genetic disorders.

Posterior plagiocephaly (positional) (Table 1)
- Anterior displacement of the occiput and the frontal region on the same side (Parallelogram).
- Ear position is more anterior on the side of flattening in positional plagiocephaly.

Diagnosis
- Plain film or CT scan if craniosynostosis is suspected



Deformational Plagiocephaly



Unilambdoid Synostosis

Table 1 Difference between deformational plagiocephaly and unilambdoid synostosis

Deformational plagiocephaly	Plagiocephaly due to unilambdoid synostosis
Parallelogram shape head	Trapezoid shape head
Occipital flattening on one side	Occipital flattening on one side
Frontal bossing on the same side	Frontal bossing on the contralateral side
Anterior displacement of the ear on the same side	Posterior displacement of the ear on the same side
Palpable suture	Absence of suture or palpable fused lambdoid suture

Treatment

- Observation; usually resolve in 2–4 months.
- Keep the wakeful baby in prone position.
- Helmet may be beneficial in severe cases of posterior plagiocephaly. It requires 22 h/day and gives best result if used before 6 months.
- Treatment of synostosis with surgery between 6 and 12 months.

Developmental Milestones

Newborn

- Able to fixate face on light
- Visual preference for human face
- Regarding a face (shortly after birth)
- Responds to visual threats by blinking and visually fixes
- Visual acuity is 20/400
- Moro, stepping, placing, and grasp reflexes are all active

1 month

- Chin up in prone position
- Head lifted momentarily to plane of body on ventral suspension
- Hands fisted near face
- Watches a person
- Follows objects momentarily
- Startles to voice/sound
- Begins to smile

2 months

- Chest up in prone position
- Holds head steady while sitting
- Hands unfisted 50%
- Follows moving object 180°
- Able to fixate on face and follow it briefly
- Stares momentarily at spot where object disappeared
- Listens to voice and coos
- Smiles on social contact (reciprocal smiling)

3 months

- Props on forearm in prone position
- Rolls to side
- Brings hands together in midline and to mouth (self discovery of hands)
- Follows object in circle in supine position
- Regards speaker
- Chuckles and vocalizes when talked to

4 months

- Sits with trunk support
- No head lag when pulled to sit
- Rolls from front to back
- Lifts head and chest
- When held erect pushes with feet
- Reaches toward object and waves at toy
- Grasps an object and brings to mouth
- Plays with rattle
- Laughs out loudly
- Excited at sight of food
- Smiles spontaneously at pleasurable sight/sound
- May show displeasure if social contact is broken
- Asymmetric tonic reflex gone
- Palmar grasp gone

6 months

- Sits momentarily propped on hands
- Turns from back to the front
- Transfers hand-hand
- Bangs and shakes toys
- Rakes pellets
- Removes cloth on face
- Stranger anxiety (familiar versus unfamiliar people)
- Stops momentarily to "no"
- Gestures for "up"
- Begins to make babbling
- Listens then vocalizes when adult stops
- Imitates sounds
- Smiles/Vocalizes to mirror

7 months

- Sits without support steadily
- Puts arms out to side for balance
- Radial palmar grasp
- Refuses excess food
- Explores different aspects of toy and observe cube in each hand
- Finds partial hidden objects
- Looks from object to parents and back when wanting help
- Looks toward familiar object when named
- Attends to music
- Prefers mother

9 months
- "Stands" on feet and hands
- Begins creeping
- Pulls to stand
- Bears walks
- Radial-digital grasps of cube
- Bangs two cubes together
- Bites, chews cookie
- Inspects and rings bell
- Pulls string to obtain ring
- Uses sound to get attention
- Separation anxiety
- Follows a point "oh look at…"
- Orients to name well
- Says "mama" nonspecific

12 months
- Stands well with arms high, leg splayed
- Independent steps
- Scribbles after demonstration
- Fine pincer grasp of pellet
- Cooperates with dressing
- Lifts box lid and finds toy
- Shows parents object to share interest
- Says "mama" and "dada"
- Follows one-step command with gesture
- Points to get desired object (proto-imperative pointing) and to share interest

14 months
- Walks well
- Stands without pulling
- Imitates back and forth scribbling
- Puts round pig in and out of hole
- Can remove hat and socks
- Puts spoon in mouth (turn over)
- Follows one step commands without gesture
- Functional vocabulary of 4–5 words in addition to "mama" and "dada"

15 months
- Stoops to pick up a toy
- Runs stiff-legged
- Builds three- to four-cube tower
- Climbs on furniture
- Drinks from a cup
- Releases pellet into bottle
- Uses spoon with some spilling
- Turns pages in book
- Points to one body part
- Hugs adult in reciprocation
- Gets object from another room upon demand
- Uses 3–5 words
- Mature jargoning with real words

18 months
- Runs well
- Creeps downstairs
- Throws a ball while standing
- Makes four-cube tower
- Able to remove loose garments
- Matches pairs of objects
- Passes M-CHAT
- Begins to show shame (when they do wrong)
- Points to two of three objects when named and three body parts
- Understands mine
- Points to familiar people with name
- Uses 10–25 words
- Uses giant words (all gone; stop that)
- Imitates animal sounds

24 months
- Walks down stairs holding rail, both feet on each step
- Kicks ball without demonstration
- Throws a ball overhead
- Takes off clothes without button
- Imitates circle
- Imitates horizontal line
- Builds a tower of four cubes
- Opens door using knob
- Follows two-step command
- Points to 5–10 pictures
- Uses two-word sentence
- Uses 50+ words
- 50% language intelligibility

3 years
- Balances on one foot for 3 s
- Goes upstairs alternating feet, no rails
- Pedals tricycle
- Copies circle
- Puts on shoes without laces
- Draws a two- to three-part person
- Knows own gender and age
- Matchs letter/numeral
- Uses 200+ words
- Uses three-word sentences
- 75% language intelligibility

4 years
- Balances on one foot for 4–8 s
- Hops on one foot 2–3 times
- Copies square
- Goes to toilet alone
- Wipes after bowel movement
- Draws a four- to six-part person
- Group play
- Follows three-step commands

- Tells stories
- Speaks clearly in sentences
- Says four to five-word sentences
- Understands four prepositions
- 100% intelligibility

5 years
- Walks down stairs with rail, alternating feet
- Skipping
- Balances one foot for > 8 s
- Walks backward heel-toe
- Copies triangle
- Cuts with scissors
- Builds stairs from model
- Draws eight- to ten-part person
- Names ten color and count to ten
- Plays board or card games
- Apologizes for mistakes
- Knows right and left on self
- Repeats six- to eight-word sentence
- Responds to "why" questions

6 years
- Tandem walk
- Builds stairs from memory
- Can draw a diamond shape
- Writes first and last name
- Combs hair
- Looks both ways at street
- Draws 12- to 14-part person
- Have best friend of same sex
- Asks what unfamiliar word means
- Repeats eight- to ten-word sentences
- Knows days of the week
- 10,000 word vocabulary

7 years
- Ability to repeat five digits
- Can repeat three digits backward
- Can draw a person that has 18–22 parts

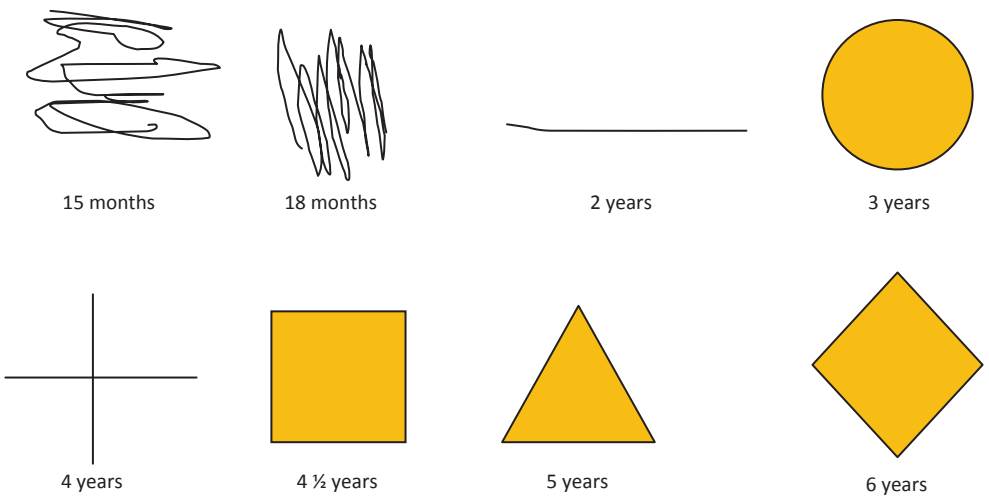
Key Points to Developmental Milestones

Reflexes
- Moro is absent around 3–4 months of age
- Palmar grasp absent around 2–3 months of age
- Parachute starts around 6–9 months of age

Following objects
- 1 month: follows to midline
- 2 months: follows past midline
- 3 months: follows 180°
- 4 months: circular tracking 360°

Speech intelligibility
- 50% intelligible at 2 years
- 75% intelligible at 3 years
- 100% intelligible at 4 years

Language: receptive
- Newborn
  - Alerts to sound
- 4 months
  - Orients head to direction of a voice
- 8 months
  - Responds to come here
- 9 months
  - Enjoys gesture game
- 10 months
  - Enjoys Peek-a-boo
- 12 months



  - Follows one-step command with a gesture
- 15 months
  - Follows one-step command without a gesture

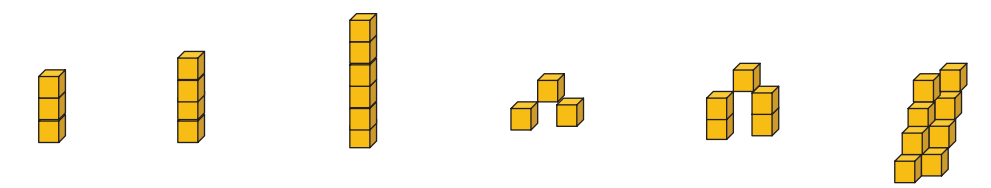
Language: expressive
- Coos
  - 2 months (2–4 months)
- Laughs out loud
  - 4 months
- Babbles
  - 6 months
- Mama or dada nonspecific
  - 9 months
- Mama and dada specific
  - 12 months
- Vocabulary of 10–25 words
  - 18 months
- Two-word sentences
  - 2 years (18–24 months)
- Three-word sentences
  - 3 years (2–3 years)
- Four-word sentences
  - 4 years (3–4 years)

Drawing
- Scribbles
  - 15 months
- Circle
  - 3 years
- Cross
  - 4 years
- Square
  - 4.5 years
- Triangle
  - 5 years
- Diamond
  - 6 years

Social skills
- Reciprocal smiling
  - 2 months
- Follows person who is moving across the room
  - 3 months
- Smiles spontaneously at pleasurable sight/sound
  - 4 months
- Recognizes caregiver socially
  - 5 months
- Stranger anxiety
  - 6 months
- Separation anxiety and follows point “oh look at”
  - 9 months
- Waves bye-bye back
  - 10 months
- Shows objects to parents to share interests
  - 12 months
- Parallel play
  - 2 years
- Reduction in separation anxiety
  - 28 months
- Cooperative play
  - 3–4 years
- Ties shoelaces
  - 5 years
- Distinguishes fantasy from reality
  - 6 years

Blocks
- Passes cubes
  - More than 6 months
- Bangs cubes
  - 9 months
- Block in a cup
  - 12 months
- Tower three blocks
  - 15 months
- Tower four blocks
  - 18 months
- Tower six blocks
  - 24 months
- Bridge from blocks
  - 3 years
- Gate from blocks
  - 4 years
- Steps from blocks
  - 5 years

Catching objects
- Rakes
  - 5–6 months
- Radial-palmar grasp
  - 7–8 months
- Inferior pincer
  - 10 months



- Fine pincer
  - 12 months

Walking and running
- Independent steps
  - 12 months
- Walks well
  - 14 months
- Runs stiff-legged
  - 15 months
- Walks backwards
  - 16 months
- Runs well
  - 18 months
- Kicks ball without demonstration
  - 2 years
- Skips and walks backward heel-toe
  - 5 years

Climbing stairs
- Creeps up stairs
  - 15 months
- Creeps down stairs
  - 18 months
- Walks down stairs holding rail, both feet on each step
  - 2 years
- Goes up stairs alternating feet, no rail
  - 3 years
- Walks down stairs with rail alternating feet
  - 5 years

Red flags at 2 months of age
- Does not respond to loud sounds
- Does not watch things as they move
- Does not smile at people
- Does not bring hands to mouth
- Cannot hold head up when pushing up when on tummy

Red flags at 4 months of age
- Does not watch things as they move
- Does not smile at people
- Cannot hold head steady
- Does not coo or make sounds
- Does not bring things to mouth
- Does not push down with legs when feet are placed on a hard surface
- Has trouble moving one or both eyes in all directions

Red flags at 6 months of age
- Does not try to get things that are in reach
- Shows no affection for caregivers
- Does not respond to sounds around them
- Has difficulty getting things to mouth
- Does not make vowel sounds (“ah,” “eh,” “oh”)
- Does not roll over in either direction
- Does not laugh or make squealing sounds
- Seems very stiff, with tight muscles
- Seems very floppy, like a rag doll

Red flags at 9 months of age
- Does not bear weight on legs with support
- Does not sit with help
- Does not babble (“mama,” “baba,” “dada”).
- Does not play any games involving back-and-forth play
- Does not respond to own name
- Does not seem to recognize familiar people
- Does not look where you point
- Does not transfer toys from one hand to the other

Red flags at 1 year of age
- Does not crawl
- Cannot stand when supported
- Does not search for things that they see you hide
- Does not say single words like “mama” or “dada”
- Does not learn gestures like waving or shaking head
- Does not point to things
- Lose skills they once had

Red flags at 18 months of age
- Does not point to show things to others
- Cannot walk
- Does not know what familiar things are for
- Does not copy others
- Does not gain new words
- Does not have at least six words
- Does not notice or mind when a caregiver leaves or returns
- Loses skills they once had

Red flags at 2 years of age
- Does not use two-word phrases (e.g., “drink milk”)
- Does not know what to do with common things, like a brush, phone, fork, spoon
- Does not copy actions and words
- Does not follow simple instructions
- Does not walk steadily
- Loses skills they once had

Red flags at 3 years of age
- Falls down a lot or have trouble with stairs
- Drools or have very unclear speech
- Cannot work simple toys (such as peg boards, simple puzzles, turning handle)
- Does not speak in sentences
- Does not understand simple instructions
- Does not play, pretend, or make-believe
- Does not want to play with other children or with toys
- Does not make eye contact
- Loses skills they once had

Red flags at 4 years of age

- Cannot jump in place
- Has trouble scribbling
- Shows no interest in interactive games or make-believe
- Ignores other children or do not respond to people outside the family
- Resist dressing, sleeping, and using the toilet
- Cannot retell a favorite story
- Does not follow three-part commands
- Does not understand "same" and "different"
- Does not use "me" and "you" correctly
- Speaks unclearly
- Loses skills they once had

Red flags at 5 years of age

- Does not show a wide range of emotions
- Shows extreme behavior (unusually fearful, aggressive, shy, or sad)
- Unusually withdrawn and not active
- Is easily distracted, has trouble focusing on one activity for more than 5 min
- Does not respond to people, or responds only superficially
- Cannot tell what is real and what is make-believe
- Does not play a variety of games and activities
- Cannot give first and last name
- Does not use plurals or past tense properly
- Does not talk about daily activities or experiences
- Does not draw pictures
- Cannot brush teeth, wash and dry hands, or get undressed without help
- Loses skills they once had

Language Development

Background

- It is critical for pediatrician to know language development and possible causes of language delay (Table 2)

Table 2 Cognitive red flags

Age	Red flags
2 months	Lack of fixation
4 months	Lack of visual tracking
6 months	Failure to turn to sound or voice
9 months	Lack of babbling consonant sounds
24 months	Failure to use single words, cannot follow simple direction, pointing instead of speaking
3 years	Failure to speak in three word sentence
4 years	Cannot tell story

Cause of language developmental delay

- Hearing impairment
- Intellectual disability
- Autism
- Specific language disorders
- Dysarthria
- Dyspraxia
- Maturation delay
- Neglect

Immunizations

Hepatitis B Vaccine

Hepatitis B vaccine (HepB) at birth

- Administer to all newborn before hospital discharge.
- If mother is hepatitis B surface antigen positive (HBsAg)-positive, administer HepB and 0.5 mL of hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HBIG) within 12 h of birth.
- If mother's HBsAg status is unknown, administer HepB within 12 h of birth and determine mother's HBsAg status as soon as possible and if HBsAg-positive, administer HBIG (not later than 1 week).
- Infant born to HBsAg-positive mother should be tested for HBsAg and antibodies to HBsAg 1 to 2 months after completing the three doses of HepB series (on the next well-visit).

Doses following birth dose (Table 3)

- Administer the second dose 1-2 months after the first dose (minimum interval of 4 weeks).
- Administration of 4 doses of HepB is permissible if combination is used after birth dose.
- The final third or fourth dose in HepB series should not be administered before 6 months of age.

Table 3 Immunization schedule

Age	Vaccine
Birth	HepB
2 months	HepB, DTaP, Hib, IPV, PCV, RV
4 months	DTaP, Hib, IPV, PCV, RV
6 months	HepB, DTaP, Hib[a], IPV, PCV, RV[b], Influenza[c]
12 months	Hib, PCV, Varicella, MMR, HepA
15–18 months	DTaP
18 months	HepA
4–6 years	DTap, IPV, MMR, Varicella
11–12 years	Tdap, MCV4, HPV
High risk	PPSV 2–18 years MCV4 2–10 years

[a] *Hib dose at 6 months is not required if using* PedvaxHib *or COMVAX*
[b] Dose at 6 months is not required if using Rotarix,
[c] *Influenza* every year beginning at 6 months

Catch-up vaccination
- Unvaccinated person should complete a three-dose series.

Rotavirus Vaccine

Minimum age is 6 weeks
- If Rotarix is used administer a 2-dose series at 2 and 4 months of age.
- If RotaTeq is used, administer a 3-dose series at age 2, 4, and 6 months.

Catch-up vaccination
- The maximum age for the first dose in the series is 14 weeks, 6 days; vaccination should not be initiated in infants of age 15 weeks, 0 days or older.
- The maximum age for the final dose is 8 months, 0 days.

DTaP/Tdap Vaccine

DTaP
- Composition: Diphtheria toxoid, tetanus toxoid, and acellular pertussis
- Administration
  - DTaP given to children of more than 6 weeks and less than 7 years of age.
  - Five-dose series DTaP vaccine at age 2, 4, 6, 15 through 18 months, and 4 through 6 years.
- The fourth dose may be administered as early as 12 months, provided at least 6 months from the third dose.
- Catch-up vaccination
  - The fifth dose of DTaP vaccine is not necessary if the fourth dose was administered at age 4 years or older.

Tdap
- Composition
  - Similar to DTaP but contain smaller amount of pertussis antigen
- Administration
  - Administer one dose of Tdap vaccine to all adolescents aged 11 through 12 years. Administer one dose of Tdap to pregnant adolescents during each pregnancy (preferred during 27 through 36 weeks gestation) regardless of time since prior Td or Tdap vaccination.
- Catch-up vaccination (Fig. 2)
  - Person aged 7 years and older who are not fully immunized with DTaP vaccine should receive Tdap vaccine as one dose in the catch-up series; if additional doses needed, use Td.
  - For those children between 7 and 10 years who receive a dose of Tdap as part of catch-up series, an adolescent Tdap vaccine dose at age 11 through 12 years should NOT be administered. Td should be administered instead 10 years after Tdap dose.

Absolute contraindication
- History of encephalopathy within 7 days of dosing

Relative contraindication
- History of fever > 40.5 °C (105 °F) within 48 h after prior dose
- Seizure within 3 days
- Shock like condition within 2 days
- Persistent crying for more than 3 h within 2 days

Vaccination may be administered under these conditions
- Fever of < 105 °F (< 40.5 °C), fussiness, or mild drowsiness after a previous dose of DTaP
- Family history of seizures
- Family history of sudden infant death syndrome
- Family history of an adverse event after DTaP administration
- Stable neurologic conditions (e.g., cerebral palsy, well-controlled seizures, or developmental delay)

Haemophilus Influenzae Type b Conjugate Vaccine (Hib)

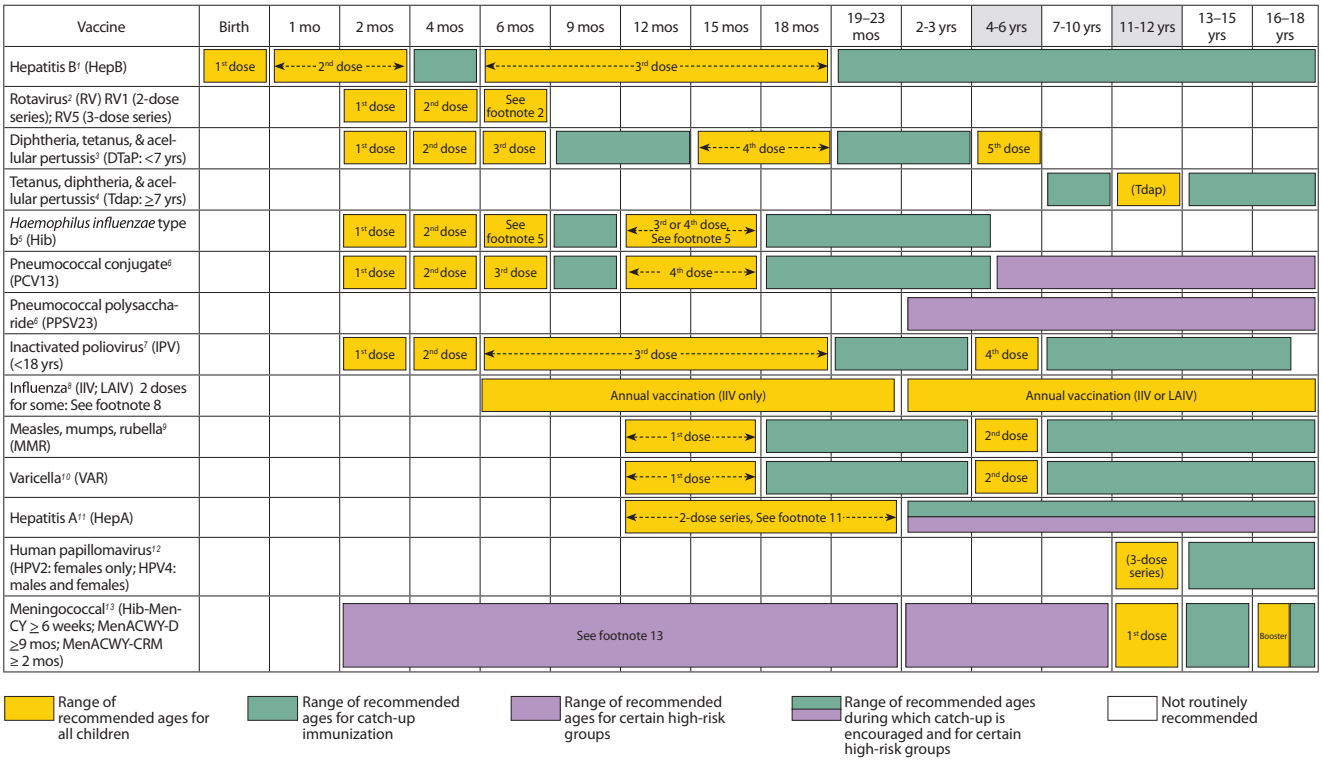
Background
- Hib vaccine prevent invasive bacterial infections usually caused by H. influenzae type b.
- Before the advent of an effective type b conjugate vaccine in 1988, H. influenzae type b was a major cause of
- serious disease among children in all countries, e.g.,

meningitis, epiglottitis.

Routine vaccination of HIB (Fig. 1)
- Administer a 2- or 3-dose Hib vaccine primary series and a booster dose (dose 3 or 4 depending on vaccine used in primary series) at age 12 through 15 months to complete a full Hib vaccine series.
- The primary series with ActHIB, MenHibrix, or Pentacel consists of 3 doses and should be administered at 2, 4, and 6 months of age.
- The primary series with PedvaxHib or COMVAX consists of 2 doses and should be administered at 2 and 4 months of age; a dose at age 6 months is not indicated.
- One booster dose (dose 3 or 4 depending on vaccine used in primary series) of any Hib vaccine should be administered at age 12 through 15 months.
- An exception is Hiberix vaccine. Hiberix should only be used for the booster (final) dose in children aged 12 months through 4 years who have received at least one prior dose of Hib-containing vaccine.

(FOR THOSE WHO FALL BEHIND OR START LATE, SEE THE CATCH-UP SCHEDULE [FIGURE 2]).

These recommendations must be read with the footnotes that follow. For those who fall behind or start late, provide catch-up vaccination at the earliest opportunity as indicated by the green bars in Figure 1. To determine minimum intervals between doses, see the catch-up schedule (Figure 2). School entry and adolescent vaccine age groups are in bold.



This schedule includes recommendations in effect as of January 1, 2014. Any dose not administered at the recommended age should be administered at a subsequent visit, when indicated and feasible. The use of a combination vaccine generally is preferred over separate injections of its equivalent component vaccines. Vaccination providers should consult the relevant Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) statement for detailed recommendations, available online at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html. Clinically significant adverse events that follow vaccination should be reported to the Vaccine Adverse Event Reporting System (VAERS) online (http://www.vaers.hhs.gov) or by telephone (800-822-7967).Suspected cases of vaccine-preventable diseases should be reported to the state or local health department. Additional information, including precautions and contraindications for vaccination, is available from CDC online (http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/recs/vac-admin/contraindications.htm) or by telephone (800-CDC-INFO [800-232-4636]).

This schedule is approved by the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (http//www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip), the American Academy of Pediatrics (http://www.aap.org), the American Academy of Family Physicians (http://www.aafp.org), and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (http://www.acog.org).

NOTE: The above recommendations must be read along with the footnotes of this schedule.

Fig. 1 Recommended immunization schedule for persons aged 0 through 18 years—USA, 2014

Footnotes — Recommended immunization schedule for persons aged 0 through 18 years—United States, 2014

For further guidance on the use of the vaccines mentioned below, see: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html.
For vaccine recommendations for persons 19 years of age and older, see the adult immunization schedule.

Additional information

- For contraindications and precautions to use of a vaccine and for additional information regarding that vaccine, vaccination providers should consult the relevant ACIP statement available online at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html.
- For purposes of calculating intervals between doses, 4 weeks = 28 days. Intervals of 4 months or greater are determined by calendar months.
- Vaccine doses administered 4 days or less before the minimum interval are considered valid. Doses of any vaccine administered ≥5 days earlier than the minimum interval or minimum age should not be counted as valid doses and should be repeated as age-appropriate. The repeat dose should be spaced after the invalid dose by the recommended minimum interval. For further details, see *MMWR, General Recommendations on Immunization and Reports* / Vol. 60 / No. 2; Table 1. *Recommended and minimum ages and intervals between vaccine doses* available online at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6002.pdf.
- Information on travel vaccine requirements and recommendations is available at http://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/destinations/list.
- For vaccination of persons with primary and secondary immunodeficiencies, see Table 13, "*Vaccination of persons with primary and secondary immunodeficiencies*," in General Recommendations on Immunization (ACIP), available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6002.pdf.; and American Academy of Pediatrics. Immunization in Special Clinical Circumstances, in Pickering LK, Baker CJ, Kimberlin DW, Long SS eds. *Red Book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 29th ed.* Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics.

1. Hepatitis B (HepB) vaccine. (Minimum age: birth)

Routine vaccination:

At birth:

- Administer monovalent HepB vaccine to all newborns before hospital discharge.
- For infants born to hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)-positive mothers, administer HepB vaccine and 0.5 mL of hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) within 12 hours of birth. These infants should be tested for HBsAg and antibody to HBsAg (anti-HBs) 1 to 2 months after completion of the HepB series, at age 9 through 18 months (preferably at the next well-child visit).
- If mother's HBsAg status is unknown, within 12 hours of birth administer HepB vaccine regardless of birth weight. For infants weighing less than 2,000 grams, administer HBIG in addition to HepB vaccine within 12 hours of birth. Determine mother's HBsAg status as soon as possible and, if mother is HBsAg-positive, also administer HBIG for infants weighing 2,000 grams or more as soon as possible, but no later than age 7 days.

Doses following the birth dose:

- The second dose should be administered at age 1 or 2 months. Monovalent HepB vaccine should be used for doses administered before age 6 weeks.
- Infants who did not receive a birth dose should receive 3 doses of a HepB-containing vaccine on a schedule of 0, 1 to 2 months, and 6 months starting as soon as feasible. See Figure 2.
- Administer the second dose 1 to 2 months after the first dose (minimum interval of 4 weeks), administer the third dose at least 8 weeks after the second dose AND at least 16 weeks after the **first** dose. The final (third or fourth) dose in the HepB vaccine series should be administered no earlier than age 24 weeks.
- Administration of a total of 4 doses of HepB vaccine is permitted when a combination vaccine containing HepB is administered after the birth dose.

Catch-up vaccination:

- Unvaccinated persons should complete a 3-dose series.
- A 2-dose series (doses separated by at least 4 months) of adult formulation Recombivax HB is licensed for use in children aged 11 through 15 years.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

2. Rotavirus (RV) vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for both RV1 [Rotarix] and RV5 [RotaTeq])

Routine vaccination:

Administer a series of RV vaccine to all infants as follows:

1. If Rotarix is used, administer a 2-dose series at 2 and 4 months of age.
2. If RotaTeq is used, administer a 3-dose series at ages 2, 4, and 6 months.
3. If any dose in the series was RotaTeq or vaccine product is unknown for any dose in the series, a total of 3 doses of RV vaccine should be administered.

Catch-up vaccination:

- The maximum age for the first dose in the series is 14 weeks, 6 days; vaccination should not be initiated for infants aged 15 weeks, 0 days or older.
- The maximum age for the final dose in the series is 8 months, 0 days.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

3. Diphtheria and tetanus toxoids and acellular pertussis (DTaP) vaccine. (Minimum age: 6 weeks. Exception: DTaP-IPV [Kinrix]: 4 years)

Routine vaccination:

- Administer a 5-dose series of DTaP vaccine at ages 2, 4, 6, 15 through 18 months, and 4 through 6 years. The fourth dose may be administered as early as age 12 months, provided at least 6 months have elapsed since the third dose.

Catch-up vaccination:

- The fifth dose of DTaP vaccine is not necessary if the fourth dose was administered at age 4 years or older.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

4. Tetanus and diphtheria toxoids and acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccine. (Minimum age: 10 years for Boostrix, 11 years for Adacel)

Routine vaccination:

- Administer 1 dose of Tdap vaccine to all adolescents aged 11 through 12 years.
- Tdap may be administered regardless of the interval since the last tetanus and diphtheria toxoid-containing vaccine.
- Administer 1 dose of Tdap vaccine to pregnant adolescents during each pregnancy (preferred during 27 through 36 weeks gestation) regardless of time since prior Td or Tdap vaccination.

Catch-up vaccination:

- Persons aged 7 years and older who are not fully immunized with DTaP vaccine should receive Tdap vaccine as 1 (preferably the first) dose in the catch-up series; if additional doses are needed, use Td vaccine. For children 7 through 10 years who receive a dose of Tdap as part of the catch-up series, an adolescent Tdap vaccine dose at age 11 through 12 years should NOT be administered. Td should be administered instead 10 years after the Tdap dose.
- Persons aged 11 through 18 years who have not received Tdap vaccine should receive a dose followed by tetanus and diphtheria toxoids (Td) booster doses every 10 years thereafter.
- Inadvertent doses of DTaP vaccine:
  - If administered inadvertently to a child aged 7 through 10 years may count as part of the catch-up series. This dose may count as the adolescent Tdap dose, or the child can later receive a Tdap booster dose at age 11 through 12 years.
  - If administered inadvertently to an adolescent aged 11 through 18 years, the dose should be counted as the adolescent Tdap booster.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

5. *Haemophilus influenzae* type b (Hib) conjugate vaccine. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for PRP-T [ACTHIB, DTaP-IPV/Hib (Pentacel) and Hib-MenCY (MenHibrix)], PRP-OMP [PedvaxHIB or COMVAX], 12 months for PRP-T [Hiberix])

Routine vaccination:

- Administer a 2- or 3-dose Hib vaccine primary series and a booster dose (dose 3 or 4 depending on vaccine used in primary series) at age 12 through 15 months to complete a full Hib vaccine series.
- The primary series with ActHIB, MenHibrix, or Pentacel consists of 3 doses and should be administered at 2, 4, and 6 months of age. The primary series with PedvaxHib or COMVAX consists of 2 doses and should be administered at 2 and 4 months of age; a dose at age 6 months is not indicated.
- One booster dose (dose 3 or 4 depending on vaccine used in primary series) of any Hib vaccine should be administered at age 12 through 15 months. An exception is Hiberix vaccine. Hiberix should only be used for the booster (final) dose in children aged 12 months through 4 years who have received at least 1 prior dose of Hib-containing vaccine.

Fig. 1 (continued)

For further guidance on the use of the vaccines mentioned below, see: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html.

5. ***Haemophilus influenzae*** **type b (Hib) conjugate vaccine (cont'd)**
   - For recommendations on the use of MenHibrix in patients at increased risk for meningococcal disease, please refer to the meningococcal vaccine footnotes and also to *MMWR* March 22, 2013; 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6202.pdf.

   Catch-up vaccination:
   - If dose 1 was administered at ages 12 through 14 months, administer a second (final) dose at least 8 weeks after dose 1, regardless of Hib vaccine used in the primary series.
   - If the first 2 doses were PRP-OMP (PedvaxHIB or COMVAX), and were administered at age 11 months or younger, the third (and final) dose should be administered at age 12 through 15 months and at least 8 weeks after the second dose.
   - If the first dose was administered at age 7 through 11 months, administer the second dose at least 4 weeks later and a third (and final) dose at age 12 through 15 months or 8 weeks after second dose, whichever is later, regardless of Hib vaccine used for first dose.
   - If first dose is administered at younger than 12 months of age and second dose is given between 12 through 14 months of age, a third (and final) dose should be given 8 weeks later.
   - For unvaccinated children aged 15 months or older, administer only 1 dose.
   - For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2. For catch-up guidance related to MenHibrix, please see the meningococcal vaccine footnotes and also *MMWR* March 22, 2013; 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6202.pdf.

   Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions:
   - Children aged 12 through 59 months who are at increased risk for Hib disease, including chemotherapy recipients and those with anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, immunoglobulin deficiency, or early component complement deficiency, who have received either no doses or only 1 dose of Hib vaccine before 12 months of age, should receive 2 additional doses of Hib vaccine 8 weeks apart; children who received 2 or more doses of Hib vaccine before 12 months of age should receive 1 additional dose.
   - For patients younger than 5 years of age undergoing chemotherapy or radiation treatment who received a Hib vaccine dose(s) within 14 days of starting therapy or during therapy, repeat the dose(s) at least 3 months following therapy completion.
   - Recipients of hematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) should be revaccinated with a 3-dose regimen of Hib vaccine starting 6 to 12 months after successful transplant, regardless of vaccination history; doses should be administered at least 4 weeks apart.
   - A single dose of any Hib-containing vaccine should be administered to unimmunized* children and adolescents 15 months of age and older undergoing an elective splenectomy; if possible, vaccine should be administered at least 14 days before procedure.
   - Hib vaccine is not routinely recommended for patients 5 years or older. However, 1 dose of Hib vaccine should be administered to unimmunized* persons aged 5 years or older who have anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease) and unvaccinated persons 5 through 18 years of age with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection.

   ** Patients who have not received a primary series and booster dose or at least 1 dose of Hib vaccine after 14 months of age are considered unimmunized.*

6. **Pneumococcal vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for PCV13, 2 years for PPSV23)**

   Routine vaccination with PCV13:
   - Administer a 4-dose series of PCV13 vaccine at ages 2, 4, and 6 months and at age 12 through 15 months.
   - For children aged 14 through 59 months who have received an age-appropriate series of 7-valent PCV (PCV7), administer a single supplemental dose of 13-valent PCV (PCV13).

   Catch-up vaccination with PCV13:
   - Administer 1 dose of PCV13 to all healthy children aged 24 through 59 months who are not completely vaccinated for their age.
   - For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

   Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions with PCV13 and PPSV23:
   - All recommended PCV13 doses should be administered prior to PPSV23 vaccination if possible.
   - For children 2 through 5 years of age with any of the following conditions: chronic heart disease (particularly cyanotic congenital heart disease and cardiac failure); chronic lung disease (including asthma if treated with high-dose oral corticosteroid therapy); diabetes mellitus; cerebrospinal fluid leak; cochlear implant; sickle cell disease and other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, including malignant neoplasms, leukemias, lymphomas, and Hodgkin disease; solid organ transplantation; or congenital immunodeficiency:
     1. Administer 1 dose of PCV13 if 3 doses of PCV (PCV7 and/or PCV13) were received previously.
     2. Administer 2 doses of PCV13 at least 8 weeks apart if fewer than 3 doses of PCV (PCV7 and/or PCV13) were received previously.
     3. Administer 1 supplemental dose of PCV13 if 4 doses of PCV7 or other age-appropriate complete PCV7 series was received previously.
     4. The minimum interval between doses of PCV (PCV7 or PCV13) is 8 weeks.
     5. For children with no history of PPSV23 vaccination, administer PPSV23 at least 8 weeks after the most recent dose of PCV13.
   - For children aged 6 through 18 years who have cerebrospinal fluid leak; cochlear implant; sickle cell disease and other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia; congenital or acquired immunodeficiencies; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, including malignant neoplasms, leukemias, lymphomas, and Hodgkin disease; generalized malignancy; solid organ transplantation; or multiple myeloma:
     1. If neither PCV13 nor PPSV23 has been received previously, administer 1 dose of PCV13 now and 1 dose of PPSV23 at least 8 weeks later.
     2. If PCV13 has been received previously but PPSV23 has not, administer 1 dose of PPSV23 at least 8 weeks after the most recent dose of PCV13.
     3. If PPSV23 has been received but PCV13 has not, administer 1 dose of PCV13 at least 8 weeks after the most recent dose of PPSV23.
   - For children aged 6 through 18 years with chronic heart disease (particularly cyanotic congenital heart disease and cardiac failure), chronic lung disease (including asthma if treated with high-dose oral corticosteroid therapy), diabetes mellitus, alcoholism, or chronic liver disease, who have not received PPSV23, administer 1 dose of PPSV23. If PCV13 has been received previously, then PPSV23 should be administered at least 8 weeks after any prior PCV13 dose.
   - A single revaccination with PPSV23 should be administered 5 years after the first dose to children with sickle cell disease or other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia; congenital or acquired immunodeficiencies; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, including malignant neoplasms, leukemias, lymphomas, and Hodgkin disease; generalized malignancy; solid organ transplantation; or multiple myeloma.

7. **Inactivated poliovirus vaccine (IPV). (Minimum age: 6 weeks)**

   Routine vaccination:
   - Administer a 4-dose series of IPV at ages 2, 4, 6 through 18 months, and 4 through 6 years. The final dose in the series should be administered on or after the fourth birthday and at least 6 months after the previous dose.

   Catch-up vaccination:
   - In the first 6 months of life, minimum age and minimum intervals are only recommended if the person is at risk for imminent exposure to circulating poliovirus (i.e., travel to a polio-endemic region or during an outbreak).
   - If 4 or more doses are administered before age 4 years, an additional dose should be administered at age 4 through 6 years and at least 6 months after the previous dose.
   - A fourth dose is not necessary if the third dose was administered at age 4 years or older and at least 6 months after the previous dose.
   - If both OPV and IPV were administered as part of a series, a total of 4 doses should be administered, regardless of the child's current age. IPV is not routinely recommended for U.S. residents aged 18 years or older.
   - For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

8. **Influenza vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 months for inactivated influenza vaccine [IIV], 2 years for live, attenuated influenza vaccine [LAIV])**

   Routine vaccination:
   - Administer influenza vaccine annually to all children beginning at age 6 months. For most healthy, nonpregnant persons aged 2 through 49 years, either LAIV or IIV may be used. However, LAIV should NOT be administered to some persons, including 1) those with asthma, 2) children 2 through 4 years who had wheezing in the past 12 months, or 3) those who have any other underlying medical conditions that predispose them to influenza complications. For all other contraindications to use of LAIV, see *MMWR* 2013; 62 (No. RR-7):1-43, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6207.pdf.

   For children aged 6 months through 8 years:
   - For the 2013–14 season, administer 2 doses (separated by at least 4 weeks) to children who are receiving influenza vaccine for the first time. Some children in this age group who have been vaccinated previously will also need 2 doses. For additional guidance, follow dosing guidelines in the 2013-14 ACIP influenza vaccine recommendations, *MMWR* 2013; 62 (No. RR-7):1-43, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6207.pdf.
   - For the 2014–15 season, follow dosing guidelines in the 2014 ACIP influenza vaccine recommendations.

   For persons aged 9 years and older:
   - Administer 1 dose.

Fig. 1 (continued)

For further guidance on the use of the vaccines mentioned below, see: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html.

9. Measles, mumps, and rubella (MMR) vaccine. (Minimum age: 12 months for routine vaccination)

Routine vaccination:

- Administer a 2-dose series of MMR vaccine at ages12 through 15 months and 4 through 6 years. The second dose may be administered before age 4 years, provided at least 4 weeks have elapsed since the first dose.
- Administer 1 dose of MMR vaccine to infants aged 6 through 11 months before departure from the United States for international travel. These children should be revaccinated with 2 doses of MMR vaccine, the first at age 12 through 15 months (12 months if the child remains in an area where disease risk is high), and the second dose at least 4 weeks later.
- Administer 2 doses of MMR vaccine to children aged 12 months and older before departure from the United States for international travel. The first dose should be administered on or after age 12 months and the second dose at least 4 weeks later.

Catch-up vaccination:

- Ensure that all school-aged children and adolescents have had 2 doses of MMR vaccine; the minimum interval between the 2 doses is 4 weeks.

10. Varicella (VAR) vaccine. (Minimum age: 12 months)

Routine vaccination:

- Administer a 2-dose series of VAR vaccine at ages 12 through 15 months and 4 through 6 years. The second dose may be administered before age 4 years, provided at least 3 months have elapsed since the first dose. If the second dose was administered at least 4 weeks after the first dose, it can be accepted as valid.

Catch-up vaccination:

- Ensure that all persons aged 7 through 18 years without evidence of immunity (see *MMWR* 2007; 56 [No. RR-4], available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr5604.pdf) have 2 doses of varicella vaccine. For children aged 7 through 12 years, the recommended minimum interval between doses is 3 months (if the second dose was administered at least 4 weeks after the first dose, it can be accepted as valid); for persons aged 13 years and older, the minimum interval between doses is 4 weeks.

11. Hepatitis A (HepA) vaccine. (Minimum age: 12 months)

Routine vaccination:

- Initiate the 2-dose HepA vaccine series at 12 through 23 months; separate the 2 doses by 6 to 18 months.
- Children who have received 1 dose of HepA vaccine before age 24 months should receive a second dose 6 to 18 months after the first dose.
- For any person aged 2 years and older who has not already received the HepA vaccine series, 2 doses of HepA vaccine separated by 6 to 18 months may be administered if immunity against hepatitis A virus infection is desired.

Catch-up vaccination:

- The minimum interval between the two doses is 6 months.

Special populations:

- Administer 2 doses of HepA vaccine at least 6 months apart to previously unvaccinated persons who live in areas where vaccination programs target older children, or who are at increased risk for infection. This includes persons traveling to or working in countries that have high or intermediate endemicity of infection; men having sex with men; users of injection and non-injection illicit drugs; persons who work with HAV-infected primates or with HAV in a research laboratory; persons with clotting-factor disorders; persons with chronic liver disease; and persons who anticipate close, personal contact (e.g., household or regular babysitting) with an international adoptee during the first 60 days after arrival in the United States from a country with high or intermediate endemicity. The first dose should be administered as soon as the adoption is planned, ideally 2 or more weeks before the arrival of the adoptee.

12. Human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccines. (Minimum age: 9 years for HPV2 [Cervarix] and HPV4 [Gardisil])

Routine vaccination:

- Administer a 3-dose series of HPV vaccine on a schedule of 0, 1-2, and 6 months to all adolescents aged 11 through 12 years. Either HPV4 or HPV2 may be used for females, and only HPV4 may be used for males.
- The vaccine series may be started at age 9 years.
- Administer the second dose 1 to 2 months after the first dose (minimum interval of 4 weeks), administer the third dose 24 weeks after the first dose and 16 weeks after the second dose (minimum interval of 12 weeks).

Catch-up vaccination:

- Administer the vaccine series to females (either HPV2 or HPV4) and males (HPV4) at age 13 through 18 years if not previously vaccinated.
- Use recommended routine dosing intervals (see above) for vaccine series catch-up.

13. Meningococcal conjugate vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for Hib-MenCY [MenHibrix], 9 months for MenACWY-D [Menactra], 2 months for MenACWY-CRM [Menveo])

Routine vaccination:

- Administer a single dose of Menactra or Menveo vaccine at age 11 through 12 years, with a booster dose at age 16 years.
- Adolescents aged 11 through 18 years with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection should receive a 2-dose primary series of Menactra or Menveo with at least 8 weeks between doses.
- For children aged 2 months through 18 years with high-risk conditions, see below.

Catch-up vaccination:

- Administer Menactra or Menveo vaccine at age 13 through 18 years if not previously vaccinated.
- If the first dose is administered at age 13 through 15 years, a booster dose should be administered at age 16 through 18 years with a minimum interval of at least 8 weeks between doses.
- If the first dose is administered at age 16 years or older, a booster dose is not needed.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions and other persons at increased risk of disease:

- Children with anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease):
  1. For children younger than 19 months of age, administer a 4-dose infant series of MenHibrix or Menveo at 2, 4, 6, and 12 through 15 months of age.
  2. For children aged 19 through 23 months who have not completed a series of MenHibrix or Menveo, administer 2 primary doses of Menveo at least 3 months apart.
  3. For children aged 24 months and older who have not received a complete series of MenHibrix or Menveo or Menactra, administer 2 primary doses of either Menactra or Menveo at least 2 months apart. If Menactra is administered to a child with asplenia (including sickle cell disease), do not administer Menactra until 2 years of age and at least 4 weeks after the completion of all PCV13 doses.
- Children with persistent complement component deficiency:
  1. For children younger than 19 months of age, administer a 4-dose infant series of either MenHibrix or Menveo at 2, 4, 6, and 12 through 15 months of age.
  2. For children 7 through 23 months who have not initiated vaccination, two options exist depending on age and vaccine brand:
     a. For children who initiate vaccination with Menveo at 7 months through 23 months of age, a 2-dose series should be administered with the second dose after 12 months of age and at least 3 months after the first dose.
     b. For children who initiate vaccination with Menactra at 9 months through 23 months of age, a 2-dose series of Menactra should be administered at least 3 months apart.
     c. For children aged 24 months and older who have not received a complete series of MenHibrix, Menveo, or Menactra, administer 2 primary doses of either Menactra or Menveo at least 2 months apart.
- For children who travel to or reside in countries in which meningococcal disease is hyperendemic or epidemic, including countries in the African meningitis belt or the Hajj, administer an age-appropriate formulation and series of Menactra or Menveo for protection against serogroups A and W meningococcal disease. Prior receipt of MenHibrix is not sufficient for children traveling to the meningitis belt or the Hajj because it does not contain serogroups A or W.
- For children at risk during a community outbreak attributable to a vaccine serogroup, administer or complete an age- and formulation-appropriate series of MenHibrix, Menactra, or Menveo.
- For booster doses among persons with high-risk conditions, refer to *MMWR* 2013; 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr6202a1.htm.

Catch-up recommendations for persons with high-risk conditions:

1. If MenHibrix is administered to achieve protection against meningococcal disease, a complete age-appropriate series of MenHibrix should be administered.
2. If the first dose of MenHibrix is given at or after 12 months of age, a total of 2 doses should be given at least 8 weeks apart to ensure protection against serogroups C and Y meningococcal disease.
3. For children who initiate vaccination with Menveo at 7 months through 9 months of age, a 2-dose series should be administered with the second dose after 12 months of age and at least 3 months after the first dose.
4. For other catch-up recommendations for these persons, refer to *MMWR* 2013; 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr6202a1.htm.

For complete information on use of meningococcal vaccines, including guidance related to vaccination of persons at increased risk of infection, see *MMWR* March 22, 2013; 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6202.pdf.

Fig. 1 (continued)

The figure below provides catch-up schedules and minimum intervals between doses for children whose vaccinations have been delayed. A vaccine series does not need to be restarted, regardless of the time that has elapsed between doses. Use the section appropriate for the child's age. Always use this table in conjunction with Figure 1 and the footnotes that follow.

Persons aged 4 months through 6 years					
Vaccine	Minimum Age for Dose 1	Minimum Interval Between Doses			
		Dose 1 to dose 2	Dose 2 to dose 3	Dose 3 to dose 4	Dose 4 to dose 5
Hepatitis B[1]	Birth	4 weeks	8 weeks and at least 16 weeks after first dose; minimum age for the final dose is 24 weeks		
Rotavirus[2]	6 weeks	4 weeks	4 weeks[2]		
Diphtheria, tetanus, & acellular pertussis [3]	6 weeks	4 weeks	4 weeks	6 months	6 months[3]
Haemophilus influenzae type b[5]	6 weeks	4 weeks if first dose administered at younger than age 12 months 8 weeks (as final dose) if first dose administered at age 12 through 14 months No further doses needed if first dose administered at age 15 months or older	4 weeks[5] if current age is younger than 12 months and first dose administered at < 7 months old 8 weeks and age 12 months through 59 months (as final dose)[5] if current age is younger than 12 months and first dose administered between 7 through 11 months (regardless of Hib vaccine [PRP-T or PRP-OMP] used for first dose); OR if current age is 12 through 59 months and first dose administered at younger than age 12 months; OR first 2 doses were PRP-OMP and administered at younger than 12 months. No further doses needed if previous dose administered at age 15 months or older	8 weeks (as final dose) This dose only necessary for children aged 12 through 59 months who received 3 (PRP-T) doses before age 12 months and started the primary series before age 7 months	
Pneumococcal[6]	6 weeks	4 weeks if first dose administered at younger than age 12 months 8 weeks (as final dose for healthy children) if first dose administered at age 12 months or older No further doses needed for healthy children if first dose administered at age 24 months or older	4 weeks if current age is younger than 12 months 8 weeks (as final dose for healthy children) if current age is 12 months or older No further doses needed for healthy children if previous dose administered at age 24 months or older	8 weeks (as final dose) This dose only necessary for children aged 12 through 59 months who received 3 doses before age 12 months or for children at high risk who received 3 doses at any age	
Inactivated poliovirus[7]	6 weeks	4 weeks[7]	4 weeks[7]	6 months[7] minimum age 4 years for final dose	
Meningococcal[13]	6 weeks	8 weeks[13]	See footnote 13	See footnote 13	
Measles, mumps, rubella[9]	12 months	4 weeks			
Varicella[10]	12 months	3 months			
Hepatitis A[11]	12 months	6 months			
Persons aged 7 through 18 years					
Tetanus, diphtheria; tetanus, diphtheria, & acellular pertussis[4]	7 years[4]	4 weeks	4 weeks if first dose of DTaP/DT administered at younger than age 12 months 6 months if first dose of DTaP/DT administered at age 12 months or older and then no further doses needed for catch-up	6 months if first dose of DTaP/DT administered at younger than age 12 months	
Human papillomavirus[12]	9 years	Routine dosing intervals are recommended[12]			
Hepatitis A[11]	12 months	6 months			
Hepatitis B[1]	Birth	4 weeks	8 weeks (and at least 16 weeks after first dose)		
Inactivated poliovirus[7]	6 weeks	4 weeks	4 weeks[7]	6 months[7]	
Meningococcal[13]	6 weeks	8 weeks[13]			
Measles, mumps, rubella[9]	12 months	4 weeks			
Varicella[10]	12 months	3 months if person is younger than age 13 years 4 weeks if person is aged 13 years or older			

NOTE: The above recommendations must be read along with the footnotes of this schedule.

Fig. 2 Catch-up immunization schedule for persons aged 4 months through 18 years who start late or who are more than 1 month behind—USA, 2014

Footnotes — Recommended immunization schedule for persons aged 0 through 18 years—United States, 2014

For further guidance on the use of the vaccines mentioned below, see: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html.
For vaccine recommendations for persons 19 years of age and older, see the adult immunization schedule.

Additional information

- For contraindications and precautions to use of a vaccine and for additional information regarding that vaccine, vaccination providers should consult the relevant ACIP statement available online at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html.
- For purposes of calculating intervals between doses, 4 weeks = 28 days. Intervals of 4 months or greater are determined by calendar months.
- Vaccine doses administered 4 days or less before the minimum interval are considered valid. Doses of any vaccine administered ≥5 days earlier than the minimum interval or minimum age should not be counted as valid doses and should be repeated as age-appropriate. The repeat dose should be spaced after the invalid dose by the recommended minimum interval. For further details, see *MMWR, General Recommendations on Immunization and Reports* / Vol. 60 / No. 2; Table 1. *Recommended and minimum ages and intervals between vaccine doses* available online at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6002.pdf.
- Information on travel vaccine requirements and recommendations is available at http://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/destinations/list.
- For vaccination of persons with primary and secondary immunodeficiencies, see Table 13, "*Vaccination of persons with primary and secondary immunodeficiencies*," in General Recommendations on Immunization (ACIP), available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6002.pdf.; and American Academy of Pediatrics. Immunization in Special Clinical Circumstances, in Pickering LK, Baker CJ, Kimberlin DW, Long SS eds. *Red Book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 29th ed.* Elk Grove Village, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics.

1. **Hepatitis B (HepB) vaccine. (Minimum age: birth)**
Routine vaccination:
At birth:
- Administer monovalent HepB vaccine to all newborns before hospital discharge.
- For infants born to hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)-positive mothers, administer HepB vaccine and 0.5 mL of hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) within 12 hours of birth. These infants should be tested for HBsAg and antibody to HBsAg (anti-HBs) 1 to 2 months after completion of the HepB series, at age 9 through 18 months (preferably at the next well-child visit).
- If mother's HBsAg status is unknown, within 12 hours of birth administer HepB vaccine regardless of birth weight. For infants weighing less than 2,000 grams, administer HBIG in addition to HepB vaccine within 12 hours of birth. Determine mother's HBsAg status as soon as possible and, if mother is HBsAg-positive, also administer HBIG for infants weighing 2,000 grams or more as soon as possible, but no later than age 7 days.

Doses following the birth dose:
- The second dose should be administered at age 1 or 2 months. Monovalent HepB vaccine should be used for doses administered before age 6 weeks.
- Infants who did not receive a birth dose should receive 3 doses of a HepB-containing vaccine on a schedule of 0, 1 to 2 months, and 6 months starting as soon as feasible. See Figure 2.
- Administer the second dose 1 to 2 months after the first dose (minimum interval of 4 weeks), administer the third dose at least 8 weeks after the second dose AND at least 16 weeks after the **first** dose. The final (third or fourth) dose in the HepB vaccine series should be administered no earlier than age 24 weeks.
- Administration of a total of 4 doses of HepB vaccine is permitted when a combination vaccine containing HepB is administered after the birth dose.

Catch-up vaccination:
- Unvaccinated persons should complete a 3-dose series.
- A 2-dose series (doses separated by at least 4 months) of adult formulation Recombivax HB is licensed for use in children aged 11 through 15 years.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

2. **Rotavirus (RV) vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for both RV1 [Rotarix] and RV5 [RotaTeq])**
Routine vaccination:
Administer a series of RV vaccine to all infants as follows:
1. If Rotarix is used, administer a 2-dose series at 2 and 4 months of age.
2. If RotaTeq is used, administer a 3-dose series at ages 2, 4, and 6 months.
3. If any dose in the series was RotaTeq or vaccine product is unknown for any dose in the series, a total of 3 doses of RV vaccine should be administered.

Catch-up vaccination:
- The maximum age for the first dose in the series is 14 weeks, 6 days; vaccination should not be initiated for infants aged 15 weeks, 0 days or older.
- The maximum age for the final dose in the series is 8 months, 0 days.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

3. **Diphtheria and tetanus toxoids and acellular pertussis (DTaP) vaccine. (Minimum age: 6 weeks. Exception: DTaP-IPV [Kinrix]: 4 years)**
Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 5-dose series of DTaP vaccine at ages 2, 4, 6, 15 through 18 months, and 4 through 6 years. The fourth dose may be administered as early as age 12 months, provided at least 6 months have elapsed since the third dose.

Catch-up vaccination:
- The fifth dose of DTaP vaccine is not necessary if the fourth dose was administered at age 4 years or older.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

4. **Tetanus and diphtheria toxoids and acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccine. (Minimum age: 10 years for Boostrix, 11 years for Adacel)**
Routine vaccination:
- Administer 1 dose of Tdap vaccine to all adolescents aged 11 through 12 years.
- Tdap may be administered regardless of the interval since the last tetanus and diphtheria toxoid-containing vaccine.
- Administer 1 dose of Tdap vaccine to pregnant adolescents during each pregnancy (preferred during 27 through 36 weeks gestation) regardless of time since prior Td or Tdap vaccination.

Catch-up vaccination:
- Persons aged 7 years and older who are not fully immunized with DTaP vaccine should receive Tdap vaccine as 1 (preferably the first) dose in the catch-up series; if additional doses are needed, use Td vaccine. For children 7 through 10 years who receive a dose of Tdap as part of the catch-up series, an adolescent Tdap vaccine dose at age 11 through 12 years should NOT be administered. Td should be administered instead 10 years after the Tdap dose.
- Persons aged 11 through 18 years who have not received Tdap vaccine should receive a dose followed by tetanus and diphtheria toxoids (Td) booster doses every 10 years thereafter.
- Inadvertent doses of DTaP vaccine:
  - If administered inadvertently to a child aged 7 through 10 years may count as part of the catch-up series. This dose may count as the adolescent Tdap dose, or the child can later receive a Tdap booster dose at age 11 through 12 years.
  - If administered inadvertently to an adolescent aged 11 through 18 years, the dose should be counted as the adolescent Tdap booster.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

5. ***Haemophilus influenzae* type b (Hib) conjugate vaccine. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for PRP-T [ACTHIB, DTaP-IPV/Hib (Pentacel) and Hib-MenCY (MenHibrix)], PRP-OMP [PedvaxHIB or COMVAX], 12 months for PRP-T [Hiberix])**
Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 2- or 3-dose Hib vaccine primary series and a booster dose (dose 3 or 4 depending on vaccine used in primary series) at age 12 through 15 months to complete a full Hib vaccine series.
- The primary series with ActHIB, MenHibrix, or Pentacel consists of 3 doses and should be administered at 2, 4, and 6 months of age. The primary series with PedvaxHib or COMVAX consists of 2 doses and should be administered at 2 and 4 months of age; a dose at age 6 months is not indicated.
- One booster dose (dose 3 or 4 depending on vaccine used in primary series) of any Hib vaccine should be administered at age 12 through 15 months. An exception is Hiberix vaccine. Hiberix should only be used for the booster (final) dose in children aged 12 months through 4 years who have received at least 1 prior dose of Hib-containing vaccine.

For further guidance on the use of the vaccines mentioned below, see: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html.

5. ***Haemophilus influenzae* type b (Hib) conjugate vaccine (cont'd)**
   - For recommendations on the use of MenHibrix in patients at increased risk for meningococcal disease, please refer to the meningococcal vaccine footnotes and also to *MMWR* March 22, 2013; 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6202.pdf.

   Catch-up vaccination:
   - If dose 1 was administered at ages 12 through 14 months, administer a second (final) dose at least 8 weeks after dose 1, regardless of Hib vaccine used in the primary series.
   - If the first 2 doses were PRP-OMP (PedvaxHIB or COMVAX), and were administered at age 11 months or younger, the third (and final) dose should be administered at age 12 through 15 months and at least 8 weeks after the second dose.
   - If the first dose was administered at age 7 through 11 months, administer the second dose at least 4 weeks later and a third (and final) dose at age 12 through 15 months or 8 weeks after second dose, whichever is later, regardless of Hib vaccine used for first dose.
   - If first dose is administered at younger than 12 months of age and second dose is given between 12 through 14 months of age, a third (and final) dose should be given 8 weeks later.
   - For unvaccinated children aged 15 months or older, administer only 1 dose.
   - For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2. For catch-up guidance related to MenHibrix, please see the meningococcal vaccine footnotes and also *MMWR* March 22, 2013; 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6202.pdf.

   Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions:
   - Children aged 12 through 59 months who are at increased risk for Hib disease, including chemotherapy recipients and those with anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, immunoglobulin deficiency, or early component complement deficiency, who have received either no doses or only 1 dose of Hib vaccine before 12 months of age, should receive 2 additional doses of Hib vaccine 8 weeks apart; children who received 2 or more doses of Hib vaccine before 12 months of age should receive 1 additional dose.
   - For patients younger than 5 years of age undergoing chemotherapy or radiation treatment who received a Hib vaccine dose(s) within 14 days of starting therapy or during therapy, repeat the dose(s) at least 3 months following therapy completion.
   - Recipients of hematopoietic stem cell transplant (HSCT) should be revaccinated with a 3-dose regimen of Hib vaccine starting 6 to 12 months after successful transplant, regardless of vaccination history; doses should be administered at least 4 weeks apart.
   - A single dose of any Hib-containing vaccine should be administered to unimmunized* children and adolescents 15 months of age and older undergoing an elective splenectomy; if possible, vaccine should be administered at least 14 days before procedure.
   - Hib vaccine is not routinely recommended for patients 5 years or older. However, 1 dose of Hib vaccine should be administered to unimmunized* persons aged 5 years or older who have anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease) and unvaccinated persons 5 through 18 years of age with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection.

   ** Patients who have not received a primary series and booster dose or at least 1 dose of Hib vaccine after 14 months of age are considered unimmunized.*

6. **Pneumococcal vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for PCV13, 2 years for PPSV23)**

   Routine vaccination with PCV13:
   - Administer a 4-dose series of PCV13 vaccine at ages 2, 4, and 6 months and at age 12 through 15 months.
   - For children aged 14 through 59 months who have received an age-appropriate series of 7-valent PCV (PCV7), administer a single supplemental dose of 13-valent PCV (PCV13).

   Catch-up vaccination with PCV13:
   - Administer 1 dose of PCV13 to all healthy children aged 24 through 59 months who are not completely vaccinated for their age.
   - For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

   Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions with PCV13 and PPSV23:
   - All recommended PCV13 doses should be administered prior to PPSV23 vaccination if possible.
   - For children 2 through 5 years of age with any of the following conditions: chronic heart disease (particularly cyanotic congenital heart disease and cardiac failure); chronic lung disease (including asthma if treated with high-dose oral corticosteroid therapy); diabetes mellitus; cerebrospinal fluid leak; cochlear implant; sickle cell disease and other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, including malignant neoplasms, leukemias, lymphomas, and Hodgkin disease; solid organ transplantation; or congenital immunodeficiency:
     1. Administer 1 dose of PCV13 if 3 doses of PCV (PCV7 and/or PCV13) were received previously.
     2. Administer 2 doses of PCV13 at least 8 weeks apart if fewer than 3 doses of PCV (PCV7 and/or PCV13) were received previously.

6. **Pneumococcal vaccines (cont'd)**
     3. Administer 1 supplemental dose of PCV13 if 4 doses of PCV7 or other age-appropriate complete PCV7 series was received previously.
     4. The minimum interval between doses of PCV (PCV7 or PCV13) is 8 weeks.
     5. For children with no history of PPSV23 vaccination, administer PPSV23 at least 8 weeks after the most recent dose of PCV13.
   - For children aged 6 through 18 years who have cerebrospinal fluid leak; cochlear implant; sickle cell disease and other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia; congenital or acquired immunodeficiencies; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, including malignant neoplasms, leukemias, lymphomas, and Hodgkin disease; generalized malignancy; solid organ transplantation; or multiple myeloma:
     1. If neither PCV13 nor PPSV23 has been received previously, administer 1 dose of PCV13 now and 1 dose of PPSV23 at least 8 weeks later.
     2. If PCV13 has been received previously but PPSV23 has not, administer 1 dose of PPSV23 at least 8 weeks after the most recent dose of PCV13.
     3. If PPSV23 has been received but PCV13 has not, administer 1 dose of PCV13 at least 8 weeks after the most recent dose of PPSV23.
   - For children aged 6 through 18 years with chronic heart disease (particularly cyanotic congenital heart disease and cardiac failure), chronic lung disease (including asthma if treated with high-dose oral corticosteroid therapy), diabetes mellitus, alcoholism, or chronic liver disease, who have not received PPSV23, administer 1 dose of PPSV23. If PCV13 has been received previously, then PPSV23 should be administered at least 8 weeks after any prior PCV13 dose.
   - A single revaccination with PPSV23 should be administered 5 years after the first dose to children with sickle cell disease or other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia; congenital or acquired immunodeficiencies; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, including malignant neoplasms, leukemias, lymphomas, and Hodgkin disease; generalized malignancy; solid organ transplantation; or multiple myeloma.

7. **Inactivated poliovirus vaccine (IPV). (Minimum age: 6 weeks)**

   Routine vaccination:
   - Administer a 4-dose series of IPV at ages 2, 4, 6 through 18 months, and 4 through 6 years. The final dose in the series should be administered on or after the fourth birthday and at least 6 months after the previous dose.

   Catch-up vaccination:
   - In the first 6 months of life, minimum age and minimum intervals are only recommended if the person is at risk for imminent exposure to circulating poliovirus (i.e., travel to a polio-endemic region or during an outbreak).
   - If 4 or more doses are administered before age 4 years, an additional dose should be administered at age 4 through 6 years and at least 6 months after the previous dose.
   - A fourth dose is not necessary if the third dose was administered at age 4 years or older and at least 6 months after the previous dose.
   - If both OPV and IPV were administered as part of a series, a total of 4 doses should be administered, regardless of the child's current age. IPV is not routinely recommended for U.S. residents aged 18 years or older.
   - For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

8. **Influenza vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 months for inactivated influenza vaccine [IIV], 2 years for live, attenuated influenza vaccine [LAIV])**

   Routine vaccination:
   - Administer influenza vaccine annually to all children beginning at age 6 months. For most healthy, nonpregnant persons aged 2 through 49 years, either LAIV or IIV may be used. However, LAIV should NOT be administered to some persons, including 1) those with asthma, 2) children 2 through 4 years who had wheezing in the past 12 months, or 3) those who have any other underlying medical conditions that predispose them to influenza complications. For all other contraindications to use of LAIV, see *MMWR* 2013; 62 (No. RR-7):1-43, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6207.pdf.

   For children aged 6 months through 8 years:
   - For the 2013–14 season, administer 2 doses (separated by at least 4 weeks) to children who are receiving influenza vaccine for the first time. Some children in this age group who have been vaccinated previously will also need 2 doses. For additional guidance, follow dosing guidelines in the 2013-14 ACIP influenza vaccine recommendations, *MMWR* 2013; 62 (No. RR-7):1-43, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6207.pdf.
   - For the 2014–15 season, follow dosing guidelines in the 2014 ACIP influenza vaccine recommendations.

   For persons aged 9 years and older:
   - Administer 1 dose.

For further guidance on the use of the vaccines mentioned below, see: http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html.

9. **Measles, mumps, and rubella (MMR) vaccine. (Minimum age: 12 months for routine vaccination)**
Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 2-dose series of MMR vaccine at ages12 through 15 months and 4 through 6 years. The second dose may be administered before age 4 years, provided at least 4 weeks have elapsed since the first dose.
- Administer 1 dose of MMR vaccine to infants aged 6 through 11 months before departure from the United States for international travel. These children should be revaccinated with 2 doses of MMR vaccine, the first at age 12 through 15 months (12 months if the child remains in an area where disease risk is high), and the second dose at least 4 weeks later.
- Administer 2 doses of MMR vaccine to children aged 12 months and older before departure from the United States for international travel. The first dose should be administered on or after age 12 months and the second dose at least 4 weeks later.

Catch-up vaccination:
- Ensure that all school-aged children and adolescents have had 2 doses of MMR vaccine; the minimum interval between the 2 doses is 4 weeks.

10. **Varicella (VAR) vaccine. (Minimum age: 12 months)**
Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 2-dose series of VAR vaccine at ages 12 through 15 months and 4 through 6 years. The second dose may be administered before age 4 years, provided at least 3 months have elapsed since the first dose. If the second dose was administered at least 4 weeks after the first dose, it can be accepted as valid.

Catch-up vaccination:
- Ensure that all persons aged 7 through 18 years without evidence of immunity (see *MMWR* 2007; 56 [No. RR-4], available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr5604.pdf) have 2 doses of varicella vaccine. For children aged 7 through 12 years, the recommended minimum interval between doses is 3 months (if the second dose was administered at least 4 weeks after the first dose, it can be accepted as valid); for persons aged 13 years and older, the minimum interval between doses is 4 weeks.

11. **Hepatitis A (HepA) vaccine. (Minimum age: 12 months)**
Routine vaccination:
- Initiate the 2-dose HepA vaccine series at 12 through 23 months; separate the 2 doses by 6 to 18 months.
- Children who have received 1 dose of HepA vaccine before age 24 months should receive a second dose 6 to 18 months after the first dose.
- For any person aged 2 years and older who has not already received the HepA vaccine series, 2 doses of HepA vaccine separated by 6 to 18 months may be administered if immunity against hepatitis A virus infection is desired.

Catch-up vaccination:
- The minimum interval between the two doses is 6 months.

Special populations:
- Administer 2 doses of HepA vaccine at least 6 months apart to previously unvaccinated persons who live in areas where vaccination programs target older children, or who are at increased risk for infection. This includes persons traveling to or working in countries that have high or intermediate endemicity of infection; men having sex with men; users of injection and non-injection illicit drugs; persons who work with HAV-infected primates or with HAV in a research laboratory; persons with clotting-factor disorders; persons with chronic liver disease; and persons who anticipate close, personal contact (e.g., household or regular babysitting) with an international adoptee during the first 60 days after arrival in the United States from a country with high or intermediate endemicity. The first dose should be administered as soon as the adoption is planned, ideally 2 or more weeks before the arrival of the adoptee.

12. **Human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccines. (Minimum age: 9 years for HPV2 [Cervarix] and HPV4 [Gardisil])**
Routine vaccination:
- Administer a 3-dose series of HPV vaccine on a schedule of 0, 1-2, and 6 months to all adolescents aged 11 through 12 years. Either HPV4 or HPV2 may be used for females, and only HPV4 may be used for males.
- The vaccine series may be started at age 9 years.
- Administer the second dose 1 to 2 months after the first dose (minimum interval of 4 weeks), administer the third dose 24 weeks after the first dose and 16 weeks after the second dose (minimum interval of 12 weeks).

Catch-up vaccination:
- Administer the vaccine series to females (either HPV2 or HPV4) and males (HPV4) at age 13 through 18 years if not previously vaccinated.
- Use recommended routine dosing intervals (see above) for vaccine series catch-up.

13. **Meningococcal conjugate vaccines. (Minimum age: 6 weeks for Hib-MenCY [MenHibrix], 9 months for MenACWY-D [Menactra], 2 months for MenACWY-CRM [Menveo])**
Routine vaccination:
- Administer a single dose of Menactra or Menveo vaccine at age 11 through 12 years, with a booster dose at age 16 years.
- Adolescents aged 11 through 18 years with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection should receive a 2-dose primary series of Menactra or Menveo with at least 8 weeks between doses.
- For children aged 2 months through 18 years with high-risk conditions, see below.

Catch-up vaccination:
- Administer Menactra or Menveo vaccine at age 13 through 18 years if not previously vaccinated.
- If the first dose is administered at age 13 through 15 years, a booster dose should be administered at age 16 through 18 years with a minimum interval of at least 8 weeks between doses.
- If the first dose is administered at age 16 years or older, a booster dose is not needed.
- For other catch-up guidance, see Figure 2.

Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions and other persons at increased risk of disease:
- Children with anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease):
  1. For children younger than 19 months of age, administer a 4-dose infant series of MenHibrix or Menveo at 2, 4, 6, and 12 through 15 months of age.
  2. For children aged 19 through 23 months who have not completed a series of MenHibrix or Menveo, administer 2 primary doses of Menveo at least 3 months apart.
  3. For children aged 24 months and older who have not received a complete series of MenHibrix or Menveo or Menactra, administer 2 primary doses of either Menactra or Menveo at least 2 months apart. If Menactra is administered to a child with asplenia (including sickle cell disease), do not administer Menactra until 2 years of age and at least 4 weeks after the completion of all PCV13 doses.
- Children with persistent complement component deficiency:
  1. For children younger than 19 months of age, administer a 4-dose infant series of either MenHibrix or Menveo at 2, 4, 6, and 12 through 15 months of age.
  2. For children 7 through 23 months who have not initiated vaccination, two options exist depending on age and vaccine brand:
     a. For children who initiate vaccination with Menveo at 7 months through 23 months of age, a 2-dose series should be administered with the second dose after 12 months of age and at least 3 months after the first dose.
     b. For children who initiate vaccination with Menactra at 9 months through 23 months of age, a 2-dose series of Menactra should be administered at least 3 months apart.
     c. For children aged 24 months and older who have not received a complete series of MenHibrix, Menveo, or Menactra, administer 2 primary doses of either Menactra or Menveo at least 2 months apart.
- For children who travel to or reside in countries in which meningococcal disease is hyperendemic or epidemic, including countries in the African meningitis belt or the Hajj, administer an age-appropriate formulation and series of Menactra or Menveo for protection against serogroups A and W meningococcal disease. Prior receipt of MenHibrix is not sufficient for children traveling to the meningitis belt or the Hajj because it does not contain serogroups A or W.
- For children at risk during a community outbreak attributable to a vaccine serogroup, administer or complete an age- and formulation-appropriate series of MenHibrix, Menactra, or Menveo.
- For booster doses among persons with high-risk conditions, refer to *MMWR* 2013; 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr6202a1.htm.

Catch-up recommendations for persons with high-risk conditions:
1. If MenHibrix is administered to achieve protection against meningococcal disease, a complete age-appropriate series of MenHibrix should be administered.
2. If the first dose of MenHibrix is given at or after 12 months of age, a total of 2 doses should be given at least 8 weeks apart to ensure protection against serogroups C and Y meningococcal disease.
3. For children who initiate vaccination with Menveo at 7 months through 9 months of age, a 2-dose series should be administered with the second dose after 12 months of age and at least 3 months after the first dose.
4. For other catch-up recommendations for these persons, refer to *MMWR* 2013; 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr6202a1.htm.

For complete information on use of meningococcal vaccines, including guidance related to vaccination of persons at increased risk of infection, see *MMWR* March 22, 2013; 62(RR02);1-22, available at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6202.pdf.

Catch-up vaccination

- If dose 1 was administered at ages 12 through 14 months, administer a second (final) dose at least 8 weeks after dose 1, regardless of Hib vaccine used in the primary series.
- If the first 2 doses were PRP-OMP (PedvaxHIB or COMVAX), and were administered at age 11 months or younger, the third (and final) dose should be administered at age 12 through 15 months and at least 8 weeks after the second dose.
- If the first dose was administered at age 7 through 11 months, administer the second dose at least 4 weeks later and a third (and final) dose at age 12 through 15 months or 8 weeks after second dose, whichever is later, regardless of Hib vaccine used for first dose.
- If first dose is administered at younger than 12 months of age and second dose is given between 12 through 14 months of age, a third (and final) dose should be given 8 weeks later.
- For unvaccinated children aged 15 months or older, administer only 1 dose.

Important to know

- Do not immunize immunocompetent children > 5 years of age even if they never had HIB vaccine.
- Vaccinate children with functional/anatomical asplenia, e.g., patient with sickle cell anemia or AIDS at any age even if > 5 years old.
- Vaccinate children < 24 months of age who have had invasive H. influenzae because they may fail to develop natural immunity following natural infection.

Pneumococcal Vaccine

Routine vaccination with PCV13

- Administer a 4-dose series of PCV13 vaccine at ages 2, 4, and 6 months and at age 12 through 15 months.
- For children of ages 14 through 59 months who have received an age-appropriate series of 7-valent PCV (PCV7), administer a single supplemental dose of 13-valent PCV (PCV13).
- Minimum age is 6 weeks
- Minimum age for pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine (PPSV23) is 2 years
- PCV is recommended for all children younger than 5 years

Catch-up vaccination with PCV13

- Administer 1 dose of PCV13 to all healthy children aged 24 through 59 months who are not completely vaccinated for their age.

Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions with PCV13 and PPSV23

- All recommended PCV13 doses should be administered prior to PPSV23 vaccination if possible.
- For children 2 through 5 years of age with conditions such as: chronic heart disease (particularly cyanotic congenital heart disease and cardiac failure); chronic lung disease (including asthma if treated with high dose oral corticosteroid therapy); diabetes mellitus, anatomic, or functional asplenia; HIV infection; chronic renal failure; nephrotic syndrome; diseases associated with treatment with immunosuppressive drugs or radiation therapy, e.g., malignant neoplasms and leukemias.
- For children aged 6 through 18 years who have, e.g., cerebrospinal fluid leak; cochlear implant; sickle cell disease and other hemoglobinopathies; anatomic or functional asplenia.

Inactivated Poliovirus Vaccine (IPV)

Routine vaccination

- Administer a 4-dose series of IPV at ages 2, 4, 6 through 18 months, and 4 through 6 years.
- The final dose in the series should be administered on or after the fourth birthday and at least 6 months after the previous dose.

Catch-up vaccination

- Minimum age: 6 weeks
- In the first 6 months of life, minimum age and minimum intervals are only recommended if the person is at risk for imminent exposure to circulating poliovirus (i.e., travel to a polio-endemic region or during an outbreak).
- If 4 or more doses are administered before age 4 years, an additional dose should be administered at age 4 through 6 years and at least 6 months after the previous dose.
- A fourth dose is not necessary if the third dose was administered at age 4 years or older and at least 6 months after the previous dose.
- If both OPV and IPV were administered as part of a series, a total of four doses should be administered, regardless of the child's current age. IPV is not routinely recommended for the USA residents aged 18 years or older.

Oral Poliovirus Vaccine

Background

- It is a live oral vaccine (Table 4).
- Not used in the USA anymore.

Table 4 Methods of vaccine administration

Methods of vaccine administration	Vaccine
Oral	Rotavirus vaccine Oral polio vaccine (not used in US)
Subcutaneous	MMR Varicella IPV
Intramuscular	All other vaccines including IPV

Contraindication
- Children with immunodeficiency
- Children who live with adult HIV-infected or immunocompromised

Measles, Mumps, and Rubella (MMR) Vaccine

Background
- MMR is a combination of three attenuated live viruses.
- It is not contraindicated in children with egg allergy.

Routine vaccination
- Administer a 2-dose series of MMR vaccine at ages 12 through 15 months and 4 through 6 years. The second dose may be administered before age 4 years, provided at least 4 weeks have elapsed since the first dose.
- Administer 1 dose of MMR vaccine to infants aged 6 through 11 months before departure from the USA for international travel. These children should be revaccinated with 2 doses of MMR vaccine, the first at age 12 through 15 months (12 months if the child remains in an area where disease risk is high), and the second dose at least 4 weeks later.
- Administer 2 doses of MMR vaccine to children aged 12 months and older before departure from the USA for international travel. The first dose should be administered on or after age 12 months and the second dose at least 4 weeks later.

Catch-up vaccination
- Ensure that all school-aged children and adolescents have had 2 doses of MMR vaccine; the minimum interval between the 2 doses is 4 weeks.

Contraindication
- Anaphylactic reaction to neomycin or gelatin
- Pregnancy however, it is not an indication for abortion
- Immunodeficiency, e.g., AIDS, however HIV infected children can receive MMR

Vaccination may be administered under these conditions
- Positive tuberculin skin test
- Simultaneous tuberculin skin testing
- Breastfeeding
- Pregnancy of recipient's mother or other close or household contact
- Recipient is female of childbearing age
- Immunodeficient family member or household contact
- Asymptomatic or mildly symptomatic HIV infection
- Allergy to eggs

Varicella

Background
- Live attenuated virus vaccine contain small amount of neomycin and gelatin.
- Two doses are recommended.
- Minimum age is 12 months, second dose at 4–6 years.
- Combination with MMR vaccine is now available.

Routine vaccination
- Administer a 2-dose series of VAR vaccine at ages 12 through 15 months and 4 through 6 years.
- The second dose may be administered before age 4 years, provided at least 3 months have elapsed since the first dose.
- If the second dose was administered at least 4 weeks after the first dose, it can be accepted as valid.

Contraindication
- Immunocompromised children
- Pregnant women

Vaccination may be administered under these conditions
- Pregnancy of recipient's mother or other close or household contact.
- Immunodeficient family member or household contact.
- Asymptomatic or mildly symptomatic HIV infection.
- Humoral immunodeficiency (e.g., agammaglobulinemia).
- Children with HIV, or who live with immune compromised adult can take the vaccine.
- Vaccine can be given to children who live with pregnant women.

Hepatitis A (HepA) Vaccine

Routine vaccination
- Initiate the 2-dose Hep A vaccine series at 12 through 23 months; separate the 2 doses by 6–18 months.
- Children who have received 1 dose of Hep A vaccine before age 24 months should receive a second dose 6–18 months after the first dose.

- For any person aged 2 years and older who has not already received the HepA vaccine series, 2 doses of HepA vaccine separated by 6–18 months may be administered if immunity against hepatitis A virus infection is desired.

Catch-up vaccination
- The minimum interval between the two doses is 6 months.

Special populations
- Administer 2 doses of Hep A vaccine at least 6 months apart to previously unvaccinated persons who live in areas where vaccination programs target older children, or who are at increased risk for infection, e.g., persons traveling to or working in countries that have high or intermediate endemicity of infection; men having sex with men; users of injection and non injection illicit drugs; persons who work with HAV-infected primates or with HAV in a research laboratory

Meningococcal Conjugate Vaccines

Background
- Called MVC4 or meningococcal conjugate vaccine, quadrivalent

Indications
- All children 11–12 years of age routinely

Routine vaccination:
- Administer a single dose of Menactra or Menveo vaccine at age 11 through 12 years, with a booster dose at age 16 years.
- Adolescents aged 11 through 18 years with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection should receive a 2-dose primary series of Menactra or Menveo with at least 8 weeks between doses.
- For children aged 2 months through 18 years with high-risk conditions, see below.

Catch-up vaccination
- Administer Menactra or Menveo vaccine at age 13 through 18 years if not previously vaccinated.
- If the first dose is administered at age 13 through 15 years, a booster dose should be administered at age 16 through 18 years with a minimum interval of at least 8 weeks between doses.
- If the first dose is administered at age 16 years or older, a booster dose is not needed.

Vaccination of persons with high-risk conditions and other persons at increased risk of disease
- Children with anatomic or functional asplenia (including sickle cell disease):
  - For children younger than 19 months of age, administer a 4-dose infant series of MenHibrix or Menveo at 2, 4, 6, and 12 through 15 months of age.
  - For children aged 19 through 23 months who have not completed a series of MenHibrix or Menveo, administer 2 primary doses of Menveo at least 3 months apart.
  - For children aged 24 months and older who have not received a complete series of MenHibrix or Menveo or Menactra, administer 2 primary doses of either Menactra or Menveo at least 2 months apart. If Menactra is administered to a child with asplenia (including sickle cell disease), do not administer Menactra until 2 years of age and at least 4 weeks after the completion of all PCV13 doses.

Children with persistent complement component deficiency
- For children younger than 19 months of age, administer a 4-dose infant series of either MenHibrix or Menveo at 2, 4, 6, and 12 through 15 months of age.
- For children 7 through 23 months who have not initiated vaccination, two options exist depending on age and vaccine brand:
  - For children who initiate vaccination with Menveo at 7 months through 23 months of age, a 2-dose series should be administered with the second dose after 12 months of age and at least 3 months after the first dose.
  - For children aged 24 months and older who have not received a complete series of MenHibrix, Menveo, or Menactra, administer 2 primary doses of either Menactra or Menveo at least 2 months apart.
  - For children who initiate vaccination with Menactra at 9 months through 23 months of age, a 2-dose series of Menactra should be administered at least 3 months apart.
- For children who travel to or reside in countries in which meningococcal disease is hyperendemic or epidemic, including countries in the African meningitis belt or the Hajj, administer an age-appropriate formulation and series of Menactra or Menveo for protection against serogroups A and W meningococcal disease. Prior receipt of MenHibrix is not sufficient for children traveling to the meningitis belt or the Hajj because it does not contain serogroups A or W.
- For children at risk during a community outbreak attributable to a vaccine serogroup, administer or complete an age- and formulation-appropriate series of MenHibrix, Menactra, or Menveo.

Catch-up recommendations for persons with high-risk conditions

- If MenHibrix is administered to achieve protection against meningococcal disease, a complete age-appropriate series of MenHibrix should be administered.
- If the first dose of MenHibrix is given at or after 12 months of age, a total of 2 doses should be given at least 8 weeks apart to ensure protection against serogroups C and Y meningococcal disease.
- For children who initiate vaccination with Menveo at 7 months through 9 months of age, a 2-dose series should be administered with the second dose after 12 months of age and at least 3 months after the first dose.

Human Papillomavirus (HPV) Vaccines

Background

- Prevent cervical cancer, precancerous genital lesions, and genital wart due to HPV type 6, 11, 16, and 18

Routine vaccination

- Administer a 3-dose series of HPV vaccine on a schedule of 0, 1–2, and 6 months to all adolescents aged 11 through 12 years. Either HPV4 or HPV2 may be used for females, and only HPV4 may be used for males.
- The vaccine series may be started at age 9 years.
- Administer the second dose 1–2 months after the first dose (minimum interval of 4 weeks), administer the third dose 24 weeks after the first dose and 16 weeks after the second dose (minimum interval of 12 weeks).

Catch-up vaccination

- Administer the vaccine series to females (either HPV2 or HPV4) and males (HPV4) at age 13 through 18 years if not previously vaccinated.
- Use recommended routine dosing intervals (see above) for vaccine series catch-up.

Anaphylaxis and Vaccinations

- Egg: Influenza and yellow fever vaccines
  - Egg allergy is no longer a contraindication to influenza vaccine.
  - Most egg allergic patients can safely receive influenza.
  - Individuals with a history of severe (life threatening) allergy to eating eggs should consult with a specialist with expertise in allergy prior to receiving influenza vaccine. Egg anaphylaxis is a contraindication to give influenza vaccine
- Gelatin: MMR, varicella
- Streptomycin, neomycin: IPV and OPV
- Neomycin: MMR, varicella

Common Adverse Reaction of Vaccines

- Low grade fever
- Local reaction and tenderness

General Conditions Commonly Misperceived as a Contraindications (i.e., Vaccination May Be Administered Under These Conditions)

- Mild acute illness with or without fever
- Mild-to-moderate local reaction (i.e., swelling, redness, soreness); low-grade or moderate fever after previous dose
- Lack of previous physical examination in well-appearing person
- Current antimicrobial therapy
- Convalescent phase of illness
- Preterm birth (hepatitis B vaccine is an exception in certain circumstances)
- Recent exposure to an infectious disease
- History of penicillin allergy, other non vaccine allergies, relatives with allergies, or receiving allergen extract immunotherapy
- Positive PPD test
- Active tuberculosis

Special Considerations

- If PPD not given with MMR at the same day, PPD test should wait for 4–6 weeks (MMR may alter result if not done on the same day)

Screening

Newborn Screening

- All states screen for:
  - Congenital hypothyroidism
  - Phenylketonuria
- Other state added more diseases, e.g., metabolic and hemoglobinopathies

Vision Screening

Background

- Early detection of ocular conditions can allow for assessment and treatment of a vision-threatening or life-threatening condition.
- Any parental concern raised by suspicion of a white pupil reflex should be referred urgently.

- If there is ever any concern regarding a child's red reflex status, the most prudent action is to refer the patient for a complete ocular examination.
- The neonate can have intermittent strabismus with either an eso- or exodeviation of the eyes (eyes turned in or out), which should resolve by 2–4 months.

Concerning conditions
- Corneal opacities
- Cataracts
- Glaucoma
- Persistent fetal vasculature
- Retinoblastoma
- Congenital ptosis
- Capillary hemangiomas causing mechanical ptosis
- Strabismus
- Refractive errors such as high hyperopia (farsightedness)
- High myopia (nearsightedness)
- Astigmatism
- Anisometropia (significant difference between the refractive errors between the eyes)

Cover and uncover test
- Child should be looking at an object 10 ft away
- Movement in the uncovered eye when the opposite is covered or uncovered suggest potential strabismus
- Patient should referred if strabismus or amblyopia is suspected

Vision assessment
- Allen figures, HOTV letters, tumbling Es, or Snellen chart

Evaluation
- History
- Examine outer structure of the eye and red reflex before the newborn leaves the nursery
- Vision assessment; e.g., fix and follow
- Ocular motility
- Pupil examination
- Ophthalmoscopic and red reflex evaluation

Indication for referral of newborn
- Abnormal red reflex requires urgent referral
- History of retinoblastoma in parents or sibling
- Persistent strabismus

Indication for referral (1 month to 3 years)
- Poor tracking by 3 months
- Persistent eye deviation or strabismus at any time
- Occasional strabismus or eye deviation beyond 4 months of age
- Abnormal red reflex at any time
- Chronic tearing or discharge

Indication for referral (3–5 year)
- Strabismus
- Chronic tearing or discharge
- Fail vision screen; cannot read 20/40 with one eye or both or two line difference between eyes
- Uncooperative after two attempt
- Fail photo-screening

Indication for referral > 5 years of age
- Cannot read at least 20/30 with one eye or both eyes or two line difference between eyes
- Fail photo-screening
- Not reading at grade level

Indication for referral children at any age
- Retinopathy of prematurity
- Family history of retinoblastoma
- Congenital glaucoma
- Congenital cataracts
- Systemic diseases with eye disorders, e.g., retinal dystrophies/degeneration, uveitis, glaucoma
- Nystagmus
- Neurodevelopmental delays

Hearing Screening (See ENT Chapter for More Details)

Background
- AAP recommended 100 % screening of infants by age of 3 months
- AAP recommended formal hearing screening to ALL children at 3, 4, and 5 years then every 2–3 years until adolescence

Method of screening, e.g.,
- Auditory brainstem response testing (ABR)

Goal of screening
- Identify hearing loss of 35 dB or greater in 500–4000 Hz range

Indication for hearing screening in special situations
- Parent express concern of hearing problem, language, or developmental delay.
- History of bacterial meningitis.
- Neonatal CMV infection.
- Head trauma.
- Syndrome associated with hearing loss, e.g., Alport syndrome.
- Exposure to ototoxic medication.

Blood Pressure Screening

Indication
- All children on yearly basis starting at 3 years of age
- Coexisting medical conditions associated with hypertension

Pediatric cuff size
- Minimum cuff width
  - Width > 2/3 length of upper arm
  - Width > 40 % of arm circumference
- Minimum cuff length
  - Bladder nearly encircles arm
  - Bladder length 80–100 % of circumference

Normal blood pressure
- < 90th percentile for age and sex
- Blood pressure > 95th percentile should be confirmed over a period of days to weeks

Lead Screening

The American Academy of Pediatrics and the CDC developed new recommendations
- All Medicaid-eligible children and those whose families receive any governmental assistance must be screened at age 1 and 2 years.
- Children living in high-risk environments, e.g. > 12% of children have elevated blood lead levels (BLL).
- Other children should be screened based on their state/city health departments' targeted screening guidelines.
- Children who have siblings with elevated BLLs above 10 mcg/dL.
- Recent immigrants.
- Immigrant children, refugees, or international adoptees should be screened upon entering the USA.

Measurement of lead
- Venous lead levels are more accurate than fingerstick measurements due to higher contamination from skin surfaces.
- An elevated capillary BLL should be confirmed with a venous sample.
- Lead interventional threshold has been lowered to levels 5 mcg/dL.

Risk factors for lead poisoning
- Living in or regularly visiting a house built before 1950 or remodeling before 1978.
- Other sibling or family member with high lead level.
- Immigrant or adopted children.
- Using folk remedies.
- Environment with high or unknown lead level.
- Children in Medicaid are at high risk.

Effect of lead intoxication
- A decline of 2–3 points in children's intelligence quotient (IQ) scores for each rise above 10 mcg/dL.
- Concomitant iron deficiency anemia; increased lead absorption.
- Neurotoxicity.
- Abdominal colic.
- Constipation.
- Growth failure.
- Hearing loss.
- Microcytic anemia.
- Dental caries.
- Spontaneous abortions.
- Renal disease.
- Seizures.
- Encephalopathy.
- Death.

Iron Deficiency Screening

Definition of anemia
- Hemoglobin 2 standard deviation below the mean for age and sex

Screening age
- AAP bright future recommends Hemoglobin/Hematocrit screening at 1 year of age.

Screening of high risk children
- Prematurity
- Low birth weight
- Early introduction of cow's milk
- Strict vegans
- Poverty
- Limited access to food
- Associated medical conditions

Urinalysis Screening

- No routine UA screening is recommended by AAP bright future at this time.
- APP bright future recommend urine dipstick testing in sexually active male and females between age 11–21 years of age.

Tuberculosis (TB) Screening

- Routine screening for TB is no longer recommended.

Method of screening
- The intradermal Mantoux tuberculin skin test (TST) is the most reliable diagnostic for TB.
- The test consists of 0.1 mL of purified protein derivative (PPD) injected intradermally on the volar aspect of the forearm.
- Forming a 6- to 10-mm wheal.
- The area is inspected at 48–72 h; induration, not erythema.
- It is measured transversely to the long axis of the forearm and the results recorded in millimeters.
- The test is considered to be positive at specific sizes of the area of induration, depending on associated features.

Indication for initial TB screening
- If active disease is suspected
- Contacts of individuals who have confirmed or suspected active TB
- Children who have clinical or radiographic findings suggestive of TB
- Children emigrating from countries where TB is endemic, who visit these countries frequently, or who have frequent visitors from these countries
- All children who will begin immunosuppressive therapy
- Children infected with HIV
- Incarcerated adolescents
- Positive TST interpretation depends on the size of induration and associated risk factors (see infectious disease chapter)

Critical to know
- Positive TST result in a child or adolescent should be regarded as a marker for active disease within that community and should serve as a call to investigate contacts and to find and treat cases of latent TB.

Autism Screening

- AAP bright future recommend Autism screening at *18 months* of age.
- Repeat specific screening at 24 months visit or whenever parental concern raised.
- DSM-IV criteria to children younger than 3 years of age:
  - Lack of spontaneous seeking to share enjoyment, interests, or achievements with other people (e.g., by lack of showing, bringing, or pointing out objects of interest)
  - Lack of social and emotional reciprocity
  - Marked impairment in the use of multiple nonverbal behaviors, such as eye-to-eye gaze, facial expression, body postures, and gestures to regulate social interaction
  - Delay in or total lack of the development of spoken language (not accompanied by an attempt to compensate through alternative modes of communication such as gesture or mime)

Oral Health Screening

Tooth care
- Once tooth erupts, it should be brushed twice daily with plain water.
- Once the child reaches 2 years of age, brush teeth twice daily with a pea sized amount of fluoride toothpaste.
- Daily flossing.
- Prevention of bacterial transmission (*Streptococcus mutans* or *Streptococcus sobrinus*)
  - Practice good oral hygiene and seek dental care.
  - Do not share utensils, cups, spoons, or toothbrushes with the infant.
  - Do not clean a pacifier in the mouth before giving it to the infant.
- *Risk group infants* should be referred to a dentist as early as 6 months of age and no later than 6 months after the first tooth erupts or 12 months of age (whichever comes first) for establishment of a dental home:
  - Children with special health care needs
  - Children of mothers with a high caries rates
  - Children with demonstrable caries, plaque, demineralization, and/or staining
  - Children who sleep with a bottle or breastfeed throughout the night
  - Children in families of low socioeconomic status

Well Child Visits

Well Visit Schedule

Infancy
- Newborn
- 3–5 days old
- 1, 2, 4, 6, and 9 months

Early childhood
- 12, 15, 18, 24, 30 months, 3 and 4 years

Middle childhood
- Yearly from 5 to 10 years

Adolescents
- Yearly from 11 to 21 years

Counseling Each Well Visit Is Very Important

- Bath safety
- Sun exposure
- Fluoride supplementation
- Nutrition
- Immunization
- Common cold management

Age Appropriate Anticipatory Guidance, e.g.,

- Feeding in newborn
- Dental care when first tooth appear
- Dental appointment at 12 months if pediatric dentist is available
- TV limitations
- Reading to the child
- Helmet for bicycle
- Discussion about drug, sex, depression at age of 10 and up

Environmental Safety Counseling

Motor vehicle crash
- Backseat (middle) placement of child
- Rear-facing car until age 2 years
- Forward-facing car seat until 40 Ib
- Booster seat until at least 80 Ib and 57 in

Drowning
- Enclose pools completely with at least 4-ft fence and self closing gate
- Wear life jackets on boats and when playing near water
- Do not leave children unattended in baths
- Supervise closely (adults within one arm's reach of a child in or near water)

Fire and burns
- Install smoke detector on every level of the home and near sleeping areas
- Reduce water heater temperature to 120 °F
- Do not drink hot fluids near children
- Never leave the stove unattended

Gun
- If parents choose to keep a firearm in the home, the unloaded gun and ammunition must be kept in separate locked cabinets.

Poisoning
- Keep all potential poisons in original containers and out of reach.
- Keep all medication out of reach.
- Place child-resistant caps on medications.
- Install carbon monoxide detectors on every level of home.
- Keep poison control number near the phone: 1800-222-1222.

Threats to breathing
- Remove comforters, pillows, bumpers, and stuffed animals from crib
- Avoid nut, carrots, popcorn, and hot dog pieces
- Keep coins, batteries, small toys, magnets, and toy arts away from children <4 year old

Falls
- No baby walkers with wheels

Recreation
- Ensure helmets are fitted and worn properly
- Keep children <10 years off road

Nutrition

Breast feeding
- Milk after birth is normally low in volume and rich in antibodies is called colostrum.
- Poor and irregular feeding is normal in the beginning.
- Mother should resist the supplementation with formula in the first few weeks.
- Baby should feed on demands, usually every 2–3 h for 10–15 min.
- Newborn should not go longer than 4–5 h without feed because of risk of hypoglycemia.
- Infant may lose 10 % of birth weight before regaining it within 10–14 days after birth.
- Best indicator of appropriate feeding is the number of wet diapers.

Formula feeding
- Feeding on demand and frequency and interval same as breast feeding.
- Most babies can begin weaning bottle to cup between 9 and 12 months.
- Bottle on bed to sleep can cause significant problem with dental caries.

Vitamins and minerals
- Iron
  - Term, healthy breastfed infants should be supplemented with 1 mg/kg per day of oral iron beginning

at 4 months of age until appropriate iron-containing complementary foods.
  - Partially breastfed infants (more than half of their daily feedings as human milk) who are not receiving iron-containing complementary foods should also receive 1 mg/kg per day of supplemental iron.
  - All preterm infants should have an iron intake of at least 2 mg/kg per day through 12 months of age.
  - Whole milk should not be used before 12 completed months of age (can cause occult blood and worsening anemia).
  - Standard infant formula contain enough iron, i.e., 12 mg/L. No need for iron supplementation if the infant feeding more than one liter of formula per day.
- Vitamin D
  - Supplementation with 400 IU of vitamin D should be initiated within days of birth for all breastfed infants, and for non breastfed infants and children who do not ingest at least 1 L of vitamin D–fortified milk daily.
- Fluoride
  - No fluoride should be given to infant of less than 6 months.
  - If the fluoride in water supply <0.3 PPM begin supplementation at 6 months of age.
  - If fluoridation in water supply is >0.6 PPM, no need for taking extra fluoride.
  - Less than 6 years old should use only pea sized quantity toothpaste for tooth brushing.

Solid food
- At 4–6 months.
- Better to introduce only one new food at a time.
- Avoid food items that cause aspiration, e.g., raw carrots, hard candy, hot dog pieces if less than 3 years of age.
- No skim or low fat milk before 2 years of age.
- No salt or sugar to be added to infant's diet.

Discipline

- Disciplining the child is not easy, but it is a vital part of good parenting.
- The AAP recommends a three-step approach toward effective child discipline.
  - Establish a positive, supporting, and loving relationship with the child. Without this foundation, the child has no reason, other than fear, to demonstrate good behavior.
  - Using positive reinforcement to increase desired behavior from the child.
  - If the parents feel discipline is necessary, AAP recommends to avoid spanking or use other physical punishments. That only teaches aggressive behavior and becomes ineffective if used often.
- Using appropriate time outs for young children.
- Discipline of older children by temporarily removing favorite privileges, such as sports activities or playing with friends.

Immigrants and Internationally Adopted Children

- For children entering US for permanent residency or visas the following diseases are supposed to be excluded
  - Active tuberculosis, HIV, syphilis, gonorrhea, lymphogranuloma venereum, chancroid, and leprosy
  - No laboratory testing is required for children <15 years of age

Evaluation of the immigrants
- Depending on the country of origin, and living condition, e.g., orphan, refugee camp

Immunization record
- Immunization record is acceptable from other countries as long as documenting date, dose, and name of the vaccines
- If no immunization record is available or any method of documentation all the required vaccines should be given all over.

Common health problems in high risk immigrants
- Infections
  - Immunization status
  - TB
  - Parasites
  - Hepatitis B
  - HIV
  - Syphilis
  - Malaria
- Nutrition
  - Anemia
  - Malnutrition
  - Rickets
  - Iodine deficiency
- Toxins
  - Lead
  - Prenatal alcohol
  - Radioactivity
- Growth and development
  - Estimated age
  - Vision and hearing
  - Dental caries
  - Congenital defects
  - Developmental delay

Infantile Colic or Crying Infants

Background
- Crying by infants with or without colic is mostly observed during evening hours and peaks at the age of 6 weeks.
- Infantile colic usually make the babies cry and make parents frustrated.
- Usually colic occurs once or twice a day.
- Should respond to comforting.
- Baby acts happy between bouts of crying.

Normal physical findings
- Weight gain: Infants with colic often have accelerated growth; failure to thrive should make one suspicious about the diagnosis of colic
- Exclusion of potentially serious diagnoses that may be causing the crying

Demonstrated and suggested causes of colic may include the following
- Gastrointestinal causes (e.g., gastroesophageal reflux disease [GERD], over- or underfeeding, milk protein allergy, early introduction of solids)
- Inexperienced parents (controversial) or incomplete or no burping after feeding
- Exposure to cigarette smoke and its metabolites
- Food allergy
  Low birth weight

Home care of infantile colic
- Hold and comfort, e.g., gentle rocking, dancing with baby, wind-up swing, or vibrating chair
- Warm bath
- Feed the baby every 2 h if formula or every 1 h and half if breast feeding
- Breast feeding mother should avoid caffeine
- Oral glucose water may help

Dietary changes may include the following
- Elimination of cow's milk protein in cases of suspected intolerance of the protein.
- In infants with suspected cow's milk allergy, a protein hydrolysate formula is indicated.
- Soy-based formulas are not recommended, because many infants who are allergic to cow's milk protein may also become intolerant of soy protein.

Limb Pain

Background
- It is also known as growing pain.
- Most common skeletal problem in pediatrics.

Characteristic feature of growing or limb pain
- Deep aching pain in the muscles of the legs
- Most pain occur in the middle of the night or in evening
- Usually resolve in the morning
- Respond to heat massage and analgesics
- No joint involvement
- No inflammation present

Diagnosis
- Growing pains, a diagnosis of exclusion, requires that symptoms only occur at night and that the patient has no limp or symptoms during the day.

Red flags and possible other causes of a child with limb pain or limping
- *Fever and chills* may suggest septic arthritis, leukemia, Henoch-Schönlein purpura (HSP), and juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA), all present with limp and fever
- Recent URI may suggest transient synovitis.
- Toddlers; Causes of limp in the toddler are infectious/inflammatory (e.g., transient synovitis, septic arthritis, osteomyelitis), trauma (e.g., toddler's fracture), stress fractures, puncture wounds, lacerations, neoplasm, developmental dysplasia of the hips, neuromuscular disease, cerebral palsy, and congenital hypotonia.
- Limping with hip or knee pain; Legg-Calve-Perthes disease (LCPD) common at 4–10 years of age, slipped capital femoral epiphysis specially obese adolescents
- Morning stiffness, e.g., JIA, weakness
- Nocturnal pain; neoplasm
- Back Pain or tenderness, e.g., diskitis.
- New footwear or a change in the amount of walking may be reported.
- Signs of weakness, paresthesias, or incontinence may be detected in acute spinal cord syndromes.
- Dark or discolored urine may be reported with myositis.
- Easy bruising, weight loss, or bone pain may be seen with neoplastic or other infiltrative disease.
- Urethral discharge suggest a genitourinary tract abnormality; vaginal discharge may point toward a diagnosis of pelvic inflammatory disease; testicular pain in males may present as a limp.
- Family history may include short stature, vitamin D-resistant rickets, Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease, SLE, RA, or a history of developmental delay (e.g., cerebral palsy)

Management of growing pain
- Reassurance
- Ibuprofen

Suggested Readings

1. Feigelman S. The first year. In: Kliegman RM, Stanton BF, St. Geme JW III, Schor NF, Behrman RE, editors. Nelson textbook of pediatrics, 19th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier; 2011. p. 26–31.
2. Keane V. Assessment of growth. In: Kliegman RM, Behrman RE, Jenson HB, Stanton BF, editors. Nelson textbook of pediatrics, 18th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier; 2007. p. 70–4.
3. Gerber RJ, Wilks T, Erdie-Lalena C. Developmental milestones: motor development. Pediatr Rev. 2010;31:267–77. doi:10.1542/PIR.31-7-267.
4. American Academy of Pediatrics; Section on Ophthalmology; American Association for Pediatric Ophthalmology and Strabismus; American Academy of Ophthalmology; American Association of Certified Orthoptists. Red reflex examination in neonates, infants, and children. Pediatrics. 2008;122:1401–04.
5. Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Environmental Health. Lead exposure in children: prevention, detection, and management. Pediatrics. 2005;116:1036–46.
6. Canivet CA, Ostergren PO, Jakobsson IL, Dejin-Karlsson E, Hagander BM. Infantile colic, maternal smoking and infant feeding at 5 weeks of age. Scand J Public Health. 2008;36(3):284–91.

Behavioral, Mental Health Issues and Neurodevelopmental Disorders

Mohamad Hamdy Ataalla

Anxiety Disorders

Background

- Common psychiatric disorder in children
- Females may report anxiety disorder more than males
- Multiple risk factors
- Genetics: parents with anxiety disorder
- Temperamental style: inhibited
- Parenting styles: overprotective, over-controlling, and overly critical
- Insecure attachment relationships with caregivers: anxious/resistant attachment

Common developmental fears

- Separation anxiety (decrease with age)
- Fear of loud noise and strangers (common in infants)
- Fear of imaginative creature, and darkness (common in toddler)
- Fear of injuries or natural events (e.g., storm)
- Worries about school performance, social competence, and health issues (children and adolescents)

Anxiety disorders

- Fears and worries become disorder when they are impairing and if they do not resolve with time
- Anxious child may present with somatic complaints (headache and stomachache), or disruptive behaviors (defiance, anger, crying, and irritability) while trying to avoid anxiety provoking stimulus.

Fears	Phobia
Fears may be appropriate to age	Excess fears
Child can overcome the fear	Associated with impairment in some cases

Separation anxiety disorder (SAD)

- Separation anxiety is developmentally normal: in infants and toddlers until approximate age 3–4 years
- Separation anxiety disorder: symptoms usually present after the age of 6 years
- Symptoms should present for at least 4 weeks to make the diagnosis
- Excess distress due to fear of separation from attachment figure
- Excess worrying about own or parent's safety
- Nightmares with themes of separation, somatic complaints, and school refusal
- Specific phobia
  - Marked and persistent fear of a particular object or situation that is avoided or endured with great distress, for example, fear of animal or injections
- Generalized anxiety disorders (GAD)
  - Chronic, excessive worry in a number of areas such as schoolwork, social interactions, family, health/safety, world events, and natural disasters with at least one associated somatic symptom for at least 6 months
- Social phobia
  - Feeling scared or uncomfortable in one or more social settings (discomfort with unfamiliar peers and not just unfamiliar adults), or performance situations
- Selective mutism
  - Persistent failure to speak, read aloud, or sing in specific situations (e.g., school) despite speaking in other situations (e.g., with family)
- Panic disorder
  - Recurrent episodes of intense fear that occur unexpectedly
  - Associated with at least 4 of 13 autonomic anxiety symptoms such as pounding heart, sweating, shaking, difficulty breathing, and chest pain

M. H. Ataalla (✉)
Department of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: psych.hamdy@gmail.com

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_2,

- Post traumatic stress disorders (PTSD)
  - Persistent pattern of avoidance behavior, trauma re-experiencing and emotional distress that last after 6 months of exposure to severe distress or trauma

Associated conditions
- Depression
- Externalizing behaviors disorders, e.g., oppositional defiant disorder (ODD)
- Attention deficit hyperactivity disorders (ADHD)
- Selective mutism
- School refusal

Screening/rating scales
- Multidimensional anxiety scale for children: MASC
- Child anxiety related disorders: SCARED

Management
- Provide education, for example, educate parents that phobias are not unusual but not associated with impairment in most cases
- Combined psychotherapy and pharmacological are more effective
- Psychotherapy (could be offered alone in mild anxiety cases)
  - Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) (e.g., trauma focused CBT for PTSD)
  - Parent–child and family intervention
  - Psychodynamic psychotherapy for selected adolescents cases
- Pharmacotherapy: selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), e.g., fluoxetine and sertraline
- School refusal: do not advise school's leave. Treat underlying anxiety as above

Prognosis
- Pediatric GAD is associated with adulthood anxiety and major depression disorder
- Pediatric SAD may be associated with panic disorder in adulthood

Obsessive Compulsive Disorders (OCD)

Background
- Prevalence is between 0.2% and 1.2% with equal sex distributions
- Etiology is strongly genetic

Clinical presentation
- Common obsessions in adolescents: dirt and germs, relationship problems, exactness, symmetry, religious themes
- Common compulsions: cleanings rituals, repeating rituals (doing and undoing), checking rituals
- Remember to ask about the family reaction to the patient's OCD behavior

Associated conditions
- Tic disorder, major depression, and specific developmental disabilities
  - PANDAS (Pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorder associated with streptococcal infection). It was reported in some cases of sudden onset OCD and tics. The validity of this diagnosis is controversial.

Scales
- Use Yale–Brown Obsessive Compulsive Scale for assessment (CY-BOCS)

Therapy or management or treatment
- Treat with behavioral therapy (CBT). Add medications for moderate to severe cases (Y-BOCS >21)
- Four FDA approved medications for OCD:
  - Tricyclic antidepressants: clomipramine (Anafranil)
  - SSRIs: fluoxetine (Prozac), sertraline (Zoloft), and fluvoxamine (Luvox)
- Family education: refer to the OCD Foundation Website resource section at http://www.ocfoundation.org

Habit Disorders

- Trichotillomania (Hair-pulling disorder)
  - Repeated behavior of hair pulling to the extent of hair loss associated with increased tension prior to hair pulling and relief during and after it.
- Teeth grinding (bruxism)
  - Common behavior
  - When persists, it may be a manifestation of anxiety
  - It may cause dental problems that need to be addressed by appropriate dentistry referral
  - Dental occlusal splints are occasionally used in the treatment of oral destructive habits
  - Nocturnal biofeedback

Thumb sucking
- Few studies advocating thumb sucking as a preventive measure against SIDS.
- The incidence of thumb sucking among children decreases with age: onset during first few months and peak at 18–21 months.
- Self-soothing behavior that is normal in infancy and toddlerhood.
- Management

  - Most children spontaneously stop thumb sucking between 2 and 4 years of age.
  - School-aged children with persistent thumb sucking should be referred to a pediatric dentist.
  - Prolonged thumb sucking can affect a child's teeth alignment and mouth shape.
  - If persistent; behavioral evaluation is necessary.
  - Usually treatment is required in severe cases, e.g., If continued beyond age 4–5 years, dental problems, increased risk of accidental ingestions and pica, thumb callus and skin breakdown, deformities of the fingers and thumbs, and paronychia.
  - Gloves or adhesive plasters can remove the antecedent stimulus for thumb sucking.
  - Have the child fold his or her arms when the stereotypy occurs.
- Head banging
  - Not always a manifestation of autistic disorder
  - Helmets may be required for children with severe and persistent head banging specially in children with intellectual disability
- Nail biting
  - Excess nails biting can manifest anxiety

General Management of Habit Disorders

- Educate parents that the habit may resolve if ignored
- Treatment is indicated if impairment is associated
- Behavioral therapy is the main line of treatment, e.g., habit reversal and relaxation training (for example, breathing exercises)
- Trichotillomania: CBT psychotherapy is superior to medication treatment, e.g., SSRIs and clomipramine
- Need to explore and treat comorbidities, e.g., developmental disorders, anxiety, and depressive disorders
- Remember not to confuse habit forming disorder with tic disorder/Tourette syndrome
- Tic is a sudden, rapid, recurrent, nonrhythmic, stereotyped motor movement or vocalization

Mood and Affect Disorders

Background

- Spectrum disorder with symptoms ranging from subsyndromal to syndromal
- Depressive disorders: at least one episode in which the mood is depressed or irritable
- Bipolar disorders: at least one episode in which the mood is elevated, expansive, or irritable

Major Depression

Background

- More common in adolescents than in children
- Male–female ratio of 1:1 during childhood and 1:2 during adolescence
- Highly familial disorder with both genetic and environmental influences

Risk factors

- Parental psychopathology, impaired parenting, loss of a parent
- Lack of social supports
- Exposure to domestic and community violence
- Low socioeconomic status
- Physical and sexual abuse and neglect usually increase the risk of depression
- Chronic medical conditions

Diagnostic criteria

- At least 2 week in which mood is depressed or irritable and/or loss of interest or pleasure in nearly all activities (anhedonic mood)
- The symptoms should be present for most of the day nearly every day
- Associated vegetative and cognitive symptoms, including disturbances in appetite, sleep, and energy; impaired concentration; and thoughts of worthlessness, guilt, and suicide
- To meet the syndromal diagnosis: need to have abnormal mood plus four or more of associated symptoms
- These symptoms are clear change from baseline and are associated with impairment

Differential diagnosis of depressive (and bipolar) symptoms

- General medical conditions and medications causing mood symptoms
- Substance abuse-induced depressive symptoms
- Other psychiatric disorders anxiety, ADHD, disruptive behavior, developmental disorders
- "Normal ups and downs" of children and adolescents: not associated with functional impairment. Not severe and do not last for enough time to make an episode
- "Adolescent anhedonia": depressive symptoms and variability of mood in normal adolescents

Associated conditions

- The most common comorbid diagnosis is anxiety disorder

- Other comorbidities include disruptive behavior, ADHD, and substance use disorder
- Could occur concurrently with dysthymic disorders (double depression)

Screening and rating scales
- Screen all children and adolescents for the key depressive symptoms: sadness, irritability, and anhedonia
- Beck Depression Inventory—Primary care version (BDI-PC)
- Children's Depression Inventory (CDI)
- Patient Health Questionnaire for Adolescents (PHQ-A)
- Positive response of depression indicating asking if any suicidal ideation

Management
- Family education about the causes, symptoms, course, and treatments and the risks associated
- Family involvement: work on dysfunctions, stressors and maximize support
- Contact school to provide accommodation needed. Parent should consent or this
- Mild depression: 4–6 weeks of supportive psychotherapy. May not need medication
- Moderate depression: 8–12 weeks of cognitive behavioral therapy or interpersonal therapy. May respond without need or medication

Medical therapy
- Medication for severe cases and cases do not respond to psychotherapy alone
- SSRIs: 50% respond to the medication, but 30% experience symptom remission
- Start medication low and monitor for side effects
- The most common side effects include irritability, gastrointestinal symptoms, sleep disturbance, restlessness, headaches, and sexual dysfunction
- Rare but serious side effects: predisposition to bleeding and increased suicidal thoughts
- Successful treatment should continue for 6–12 month
- Recurrent, chronic, or severe major depression may require longer than 12 month
- Refer suicidal, psychotic, and bipolar depressed patients to specialized treatment

Prevention
- Cognitive-behavioral strategies, e.g., correcting automatic negative attributions
- Lifestyle modification (e.g., regular and adequate sleep, exercise, and relaxation)

Prognosis
- 60% will suffer suicidal ideation and 30% will attempt suicide
- Rate of recurrence of depression reaches 70% after 5 year
- 20 and 40% of depressed adolescents may develop a bipolar disorder
- High risk of substance abuse and other psychiatric disorders
- Difficulties with school, peers, and family
- Difficulties adjusting with adjustment to life stressors and physical illness

Dysthymic Disorders

- One year of suffering depressed/irritable mood plus two or more of the associated vegetative and cognitive symptoms of depression
- Diagnosis requires association with significant distress or impairment
- If a dysthymic patient develops an episode of major depression then both diagnoses may be given (it is also called double depression)

Depressive Disorders Not Otherwise Specified

- (Subsyndromal depression) presence of depressive symptoms that are not enough to meet full diagnostic criteria for major depressive disorder or dysthymic disorder

Bipolar Disorders

Background
- Bipolar disorder type I: one episode of mania is enough to make the diagnosis. Often alternates with episodes of major depression
- Bipolar disorder type II: requires one episode of major depression alternates with at least one episode of hypomania, but NO manic episodes
- Bipolars, not otherwise specified (subsyndromal bipolar disorder): mixture of depressive and manic symptoms that are not enough to diagnose type I or II disorders

Cyclothymic disorders
- Multiple episodes of hypomania and subsyndromal depression for at least 1 year
- The lifetime prevalence of each of the bipolar disorders and cyclothymic disorder is about 0.6%
- Equal sex distribution

Diagnostic criteria
- In mania: there is 1 week of persistently elevated, expansive, or irritable mood

- In hypomania: abnormal mood lasts at least 4 days but less than a week and the impairment is not as sever
- Associated cognitive and behavioral symptoms: increased energy, grandiosity, reduced need for sleep, pressured speech, and distractibility, racing thoughts, engaging in multiple activities and tasks, and impulsively doing things that have the potential for harm in excess

Associated conditions
- Other psychiatric disorders, including ADHD, anxiety, eating, and substance use disorders

Screening and scales used
- Screen for the cardinal manic symptoms: elation and grandiosity, increased energy with decreased need for sleep
- If screening is positive: refer to a specialist for comprehensive evaluation
- Always remember to assess for risk of self or others harming
- Specific instruments: Young Mania Rating Scale (YMRS) and Schedule for Affective Disorders and Schizophrenia

Management of bipolar disorders
- Start with psychoeducation. Family and school involvement (as in treatment of major depression).
- Medications used to treat manic episode: lithium is the only FDA approved (for youth > 13 year). Other medicines include valproate, or atypical antipsychotics (aripiprazole, olanzapine, risperidone, quetiapine, ziprasidone).
- Be aware of different side effects of the medication used. Need to monitor baseline and follow-up parameters.
- Lithium common side effects: cardiac, renal, thyroid, and hematologic effects; toxicity; and teratogenicity.
- Valproate (Depakote): hematologic, hepatic, and ovarian (PCOS) and teratogenicity.
- Atypical antipsychotics: weight gain, metabolic (diabetes, hyperlipidemia), and cardiac effects.
- For Bipolar II: may use lamotrigine (Lamictal), and antidepressant once mood is stable.
- For comorbid ADHD: may use stimulants when the mood is stable.
- Psychotherapy: needs to be offered to address impairment in different domains, provide support to the patient and family.
- Refer suicidal and psychotic bipolar depressed patients to psychiatric hospitalization.

Prevention
- For those with cyclothymic mood disorder: adequate mood stabilization may decrease risk for subsequent bipolar disorder development
- Identify and address social and psychological stressors that may precipitate mood decompensation

Prognosis
- 80% will have recurrences after recovery from the first mood episode
- Completed suicide (10–15% of those with bipolar I disorder)
- Poor outcome with no treatment: unemployment and legal problems

Suicidal Behaviors

Background
- Third leading cause of death among young people aged 15–24 year
- Fourth leading cause of death among young people aged 10–14 year
- Completing suicide: more in males (by firearms) than in females (by poisoning)
- Attempting suicide: more in females. Ingestion of medication is the most common method
- The ethnic groups with the highest risk: American Indians and Alaska Natives
- The ethnic groups with the lowest risk: African Americans, Hispanics, and Asians.

Risk factors
- Suffering psychiatric illness (in most suicides): most commonly major depression
- History of self-harming behavior even with no explicit intention to die (e.g., self-cutting)
- Cognitive functioning: poor self-esteem and lack the coping strategies
- Stressful life events: academic or relationship problems, being bullied, family instability
- Newly diagnosed medical condition, or a recent or anticipated loss
- Difficulties with sexual orientation and homosexuality
- Physical and sexual abuse
- Suicide of a close person
- Suicide by imitation: being exposed to suicide in the media or a book's hero who commits suicide
- Stress of acculturations for the immigrants

Risk factors for committing suicide
- Male gender
- History of suicide attempt
- Having suicidal intent, a written note, or a plan
- Showing acute signs of depression, mania, and psychosis or substance intoxication
- Lack of family support and supervision to maintain safety at home

Screening and assessment
- Ask about suicidal ideation during routine visits

- Ask specifically about suicidal ideation: "it will not implant the idea in his/her head"
- Obtain collateral information from the parents and other resources
- Psychiatric evaluation of the severity of the suicidality and the risk factors

Management
- Psychiatric hospitalization: for severe suicidal cases and after attempts
- Close outpatient referrals: when risk factors for committing suicide are not present, and the patient is able to contract for safety

Prevention
- Remember to screen for suicidal risk
- Address suicidal risk factors
- Schools and public-based suicide prevention program

Prognosis
- Remember: even when suicidal intent is ambiguous, impulsive suicidal act may lead to death

Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorders (ADHD)

Background
- ADHD is often underdiagnosed. Also could be overestimated
- More prevalent in males
- Distractibility in preschoolers is difficult to differentiate from inattentive symptoms of ADHD
- Expect to find more hyperactive symptoms in preschoolers, combined ADHD symptoms in elementary students, and more inattentive symptoms in middle and high graders
- Not a single cause but multiple risk factors: genetics, pregnancy, and birth complications, brain injury
- Multiple neurotransmitters involved particularly dopamine and norepinephrine
- Multiple brain regions are affected, particularly the prefrontal lobe and the basal ganglia

Diagnostic criteria
- Two group of symptoms: Inattentive and hyperactive/impulsive
- Three subtypes of the disorder: predominantly inattentive, predominantly hyperactive/impulsive, and the combined presentation
- For each subtype, must have at least six symptoms from the corresponding group, lasting at least 6 months
- Symptoms should be out of normal developmental level, associated with impairment, and present in two or more settings
- Symptoms were present before age of 12 years old according to DSM5 (change from 7 years old in DSM IV)
- Symptoms are not are manifestations of another psychiatric disorder, e.g., depression or anxiety
- Impairment is not only academic, but also behavioral (more in preschoolers), interpersonal and psychological, e.g., low self-esteem

Associated conditions
- Comorbid psychiatric diagnosis: ODD, conduct disorder, learning disabilities, and anxiety disorders

Screening
- Diagnosis is made through careful history (e.g., Family history) and clinical interview
- Child with ADHD may not show the manifestations in the office setting
- Rating scales are useful to assess the symptoms, e.g., The Vanderbilt ADHD Diagnostic Rating Scale and the Conner Rating Scales
- As needed, physical examination and laboratory tests to work up differential diagnosis
- Psychoeducational testing if specific learning disorder is suspected
- IQ and other neuropsychological testing (e.g., continuous performance test) are not routinely ordered unless indicated

Differential Diagnoses: Table 1
- Medical illness that may affect children's attention: headaches, seizures, allergies, hematologic and endocrine disorders, childhood cancer
- Medications, e.g., for asthma, steroids, anticonvulsants, and antihistamines
- Other psychiatric disorders might present with inattention, restlessness, and poor organization, for example, depression and anxiety disorders
- Sleep disorders
- Substance abuse Table 2

Management
- Treatment should be comprehensively planned: medications, educational, and/or behavior therapy
- Psychosocial treatments: psychoeducation and parent training in behavioral management
- Educational: provide school services through section 504 or under individualized educational plan. Address comorbid learning disorders if any
- Stimulants are more effective than providing behavioral treatments alone
- Start medication treatment with a stimulant (highly efficacious), either from the methylphenidate or the amphetamine group

Table 1 Diagnostic symptoms of ADHD

Inattention systems	Hyperactivity and impulsive symptoms
Often fails to give close attention to details or makes careless mistakes in school work during other activities	Often fidgets with or taps hands or feet or squirms in seat
Often has difficulty sustaining attention in tasks or play activities	Often leaves seat in situations when remaining seated is expected
Often does not seem to listen when spoken to directly	Often runs about or climbs in situations where it is inappropriate
Often does not follow through on instructions and fails to finish schoolwork or chores	Often unable to play or engage in leisure activities quietly
Often has difficulty organizing tasks and activities	Is often "on the go," acting as if "driven by a motor"
Often avoids, dislikes, or is reluctant to engage in tasks that require sustained mental effort	Often talks excessively
Often loses things necessary for tasks or activities	Often blurts out an answer before a question has been completed
Is often easily distracted by extraneous stimuli	Often has difficulty waiting his or her turn
Is often forgetful in daily activities	Often interrupts or intrudes on others

Table 2 Conditions to be ruled out that may give the picture of ADHD symptoms

Environmental conditions	Other neuropsychiatric conditions	Medical conditions
Cases of physical or sexual abuse	Fragile X syndrome	Thyroid disorders
Cases of inappropriate parenting practice	Fetal alcohol syndrome	Heavy metal poisoning
Cases of parental psychopathology	Pervasive developmental disorders	Medications side effects
Inappropriate classroom setting	Anxiety disorders	Effects of abused substances
	Tourette's syndrome	Sensory deficits
	Attachment disorder	Auditory and visual processing disorders
	PTSD	Neurodegenerative disorder
		Post Traumatic head injury
		Postencephalitic

- Increase gradually over weeks with frequent monitoring until symptoms are controlled or side effects develop
- Side effects: decreased appetite (weight monitoring), insomnia, anxiety, tics, and headaches. Cardiac: consider electrocardiogram (EKG) with significant cardiac history in the family
- Contraindications: glaucoma, uncontrolled seizure, or cardiac disease or active drugs abuse
- Atomoxetine (nonstimulant) can be used if the first and second trial of stimulants fails. Has less effect on sleep and appetite. Can help with anxiety symptom if any. Little risk of suicidal thinking was reported
- Guanfacine-extended release (Intuniv) is approved to treat ADHD (age 6 years and older). May cause hypotension or sedation
- Refer to specialist if treatment fails or in case of other psychiatric comorbidity

Prevention
- Earlier detection, diagnosis, and treatment
- Parent training

Prognosis
- ADHD symptoms may continue into adulthood in 60% of the cases
- Untreated ADHD: risk of criminal behavior, accidents, employment and marital difficulties, and are more likely to have teen pregnancies Table 3

Aggression

Background
- Not every oppositional behavior is an aggressive disorder, unless aggression is pervasive and out of control
- Etiology: genetic tendencies and environmental factors
- A difficult temperament and later aggressiveness are related.
- More in boys
- History of abuse, neglect, or abandonment and inconsistent discipline
- Corporal punishment in children: stimulates anger and teaches that violence is an acceptable way of solving problems
- Later in adulthood: it is positively associated with aggression, criminal and antisocial behavior and adult abuse of one's own child or spouse
- Violence in the media: desensitizes children to violence may lead to aggressive and antisocial behaviors

Clinical presentation
- Aggression: reactive/affective aggression vs. proactive unemotional aggression. Direct versus indirect aggression
- Temper tantrums: common during the first few years of life
- Biting:

Table 3 Medications for ADHD treatment

Medication name	Duration if action (in hours)	Time to peak in blood (hours after the dose)	Dosage range	Side effects
Methylphenidate immediate-release	4 h	–	5, 10, 20 mg tabs	Appetite suppression Insomnia
Ritalin	–	Ritalin 1-3		Transient weight loss
Methylin	–	Methylin 1-2		Irritability Emergence of tics
Methylphenidate				Same as above
Extended-release				
Metadate ER	4–6 h	No date	10, 20 mg extended-release tabs	
Methylin ER	4–6 h			
Concerta	10–12 h	Initial peak at 1 h and max peak at 7	18, 27, 36, 54 mg caps	
Ritalin LA	8–10 h	1st peak 1–3 2nd peak 6.5	10, 20, 30, 40 mg caps	
Metadate-CD	8–10 h	1st peak 1.5 2nd peak 4.5	10, 20, 30 mg extended-release caps	
Methylphenidate Sustained-release				
Ritalin SR	4–6 h	4.7	20 mg sustained release tabs	Same as above
Methylphenidate SR				
Methylphenidate	≥12 h	8–10	10 mg/9 h, 15 mg/9 h, 20 mg/9 h, 30 mg/9 h	Same as above
Transdermal				Erythema
Daytrana patch				
D-Methylphenidate				
Focalin	4 h	1–1.5	2.5, 5, and 10 mg tabs	Same as above
Focalin XR	Up to 12 h	1st peak 1.5 2nd peak 4.5	5 mg, 10 mg, 15 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 30 mg, 35 mg, 40 mg	
Mixed amphetamine salts				
Adderall	4–6 h	3	5, 10, 20 mg tabs	Same as above
Adderall XR	8–12 h	7	5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30 mg caps	
D-amphetamine				
Dexedrine	4–6 h	3	5, 10, and 15 mg tabs	Same as above
Dexedrine spansule	6–8 h		5, 10, and 20 mg tabs	
Lisdexamfetamine				
Vyvanse	≤12 h	1	30, 50, and 70 mg tablets	Same as above
Atomoxetine				Dry mouth nervousness
Strattera	Long acting	weeks	10, 18, 25, 40, 60 mg caps	Fatigue dizziness dry mouth Rare: severe liver injury suicidal ideation
α 2-Adrenergic agonists				Sedation depression
Clonidine	8–12 h	3–5	3-10 μg/kg/day bid-qid	Dry mouth rebound
Kapvay (clonidine, extended release)	Long acting		0.1 mg	Hypertension on dis-continuing confusion
α2-Adrenergic agonists				
Guanfacine	13–14h	1–4	1, 2, 3 mg tabs	Hypotension lightheadedness
Tenex	Long acting			
Intuniv				

  - *Toddlers*: may bite to communicate frustration or when they experience a stressful event
  - *Preschoolers*: occasional or rare biting to exert control over a situation, for attention, as a self-defense, or out of extreme frustration and anger
  - However, frequent biting after age of 3 years may indicate a behavioral problem or sensory integration dysfunction
- Breath-holding spells: sign of frustration and emotional distress
- Bullying
- Lying: in young children can be a way express fantasy, exploring with language and avoid consequences. In school-aged children and adolescents: chronic lying is a problem
- Stealing: preschoolers and school-aged children may steal more than once or twice. Requires evaluation when it becomes a pattern
- Truancy and running away
- Fire setting: unsupervised fire setting is always inappropriate

Associated conditions
- ADHD
- Oppositional defiant disorder and/or conduct disorder
- Depression and bipolar disorder
- Developmental disorders

Screening and rating scales
- Child behaviors checklist and Overt Aggression Scale
- Other rating scales to rule out associated conditions, e.g., Connors for ADHD, IQ testing

Management
- Early interventions for severe cases
- Need to address any biological, psychiatric or somatic disorders, while controlling for the environmental triggers
- Pharmacotherapy for associated conditions, e.g., stimulants to treat ADHD
- Need to involve school and family members: to provide collateral information and to participate in the treatment plan
- Refer to mental health intervention: those who show no empathy or remorse, and those with severe comorbidities
- Temper tantrums: time-out and discuss the reason of frustration when the child calms down
- Breath-holding spells: advise the parent to intervene before emotional escalation. Help child to calm down by offering 2–3 min time-out
- Truancy and running away: always assess and address the underlying problem
- Stealing: behavioral modification and teach the child better coping skills
- Lying: educate the child that it is not acceptable. Provide support and limits settings
- Fire setting always requires intervention by mental health specialist

Opposition defiant and conduct disorders (ODD and CD)
- All children are defiant at times and it is a normal part of adolescence
- Normal stubbornness (3 year), defiance and temper tantrums (4–5 year), and argumentativeness (6 year)
- Most disruptive symptoms peak between 8 and 11 years
- Disorder may be present if the behaviors interfere with family life, school, or peer relationships, or put the child or others in danger
- 5% of children between 6 and 18 years meet the diagnosis of ODD or CD
- **Oppositional defiant disorder:** persistent pattern of angry outbursts, arguing, and disobedience to authority figures (such as parents and teachers):
- Often loses temper
- Often argues with adults
- Often actively defies or refuses to comply with adults' requests or rules
- Often deliberately annoys people
- Often blames others for his or her mistakes or misbehavior
- Is often touchy or easily annoyed by others
- Is often angry and resentful
- Is often spiteful or vindictive
- **Conduct disorder:** a persistent pattern of serious rule breaking behavior and violating other's rights with lack of guilt:
- Often bullies, threatens, or intimidates others
- Often initiates physical fights
- Has used a weapon that can cause serious physical harm to others
- Physical cruelty to people and animals
- Stealing while confronting a victim
- Forcing someone into sexual activity

Associated conditions
- CD versus ODD: in ODD there is absence of severe physical aggression and antisocial behavior
- ADHD
- Bipolar disorder
- Developmental disorders
- Communication disorders

Screening
- Routinely, remember to screen for behavioral problems

- Use rating scales if answer to screenings question is positive, e.g., the Pediatric Symptom Checklist (PSC)
- Significant scoring requires referral to mental health specialist

Management
- ODD: parent management training directed at the child's caregivers. Social-emotional skills training directed at the child
- Conduct disorder: multisystem therapy
- Pharmacotherapy used to address comorbidities, e.g., SSRIs, stimulants, mood stabilizers, and antipsychotics
- Intractable conduct disorder may need residential or specialized foster care treatment

Prevention
- Educate the community and target high risk populations
- Teach parents and teachers effective behavior-management skills
- Child-focused social-emotional skills training

Prognosis
- Earlier the onset, the worse the diagnosis
- Comorbidity with ADHD worsens the diagnosis
- 65 % of children with ODD will not have the diagnosis in 3-year follow-up. 30 % will progress to CD
- CD may continue as antisocial personality disorder into adulthood
- Other psychiatric comorbidities in adulthood
- Multiple adverse outcomes: social, educational, drugs, and legal problems

Antisocial Behaviors and Delinquency

Background
- Etiology is genetic and environmental
- Risk factors: poverty, association with delinquent peers, absence of a role models, history of violence, and poor family functioning

Clinical presentation
- Illegal offenses and acts
- Examples: stealing, destruction of property, threatening or assault behaviors to people or animals, driving without a license, prostitution, rape
- Associated signs: poor school performance, truancy, poor self-esteem, and low frustration tolerance
- Signs and symptoms of disruptive behavioral disorder or other psychiatric comorbidities

Associated conditions
- Attention-deficit/hyperactivity
- Mood disturbances, e.g., depression
- Anxiety disorder
- Psychotic disorder

Screening
- Rating scales to screen for associated conditions, e.g., Connors for ADHD
- **FISTS MNEMONIC**
  - F: Fighting (How many fights were you in last year? What was the last?)
  - I: Injuries (Have you ever been injured? Have you ever injured someone else?)
  - S: Sex (Has your partner hit you? Have you hit your partner? Have you ever been forced to have sex?)
  - T: Threats (Has someone with a weapon threatened you? What happened? Has anything changed to make you feel safer?)
  - S: Self defense (What do you do if someone tries to pick a fight? Have you carried a weapon in self-defense?)

Management
- Evaluation: comprehensive biopsychosocial approach
- Multisystemic treatment
- Family involvement is important: family therapy and parent management training
- CBT
- Pharmacotherapy and appropriate referrals for associated conditions

Prevention
- Individual approaches, e.g., teaching coping strategies
- Relationship approaches: focus more on families and peer relationships
- Community-based approaches: community education
- Societal approaches: through advocacy and legislative actions

Autistic Disorders

Background
- All the pervasive developmental disorders now fall under the diagnosis of autism spectrum disorder (ASD), according to the DSM 5 (the new classification of the American Psychiatric Association).

Diagnostic criteria
- ASD is diagnosed by the clinical examination
- Three cardinal features:
  - 1-impairment in social interaction
  - 2-impaired verbal and nonverbal communication
  - 3-restricted range of interests and stereotypical body movements

- Early problems with joint attention behaviors, e.g., lack of eye contact and and no pointing to share attention
- ASD presentation can be very heterogonous with various levels of cognitive functioning and language skills
- Asperger syndrome: used to be a separate pervasive developmental disorder diagnosis as these patients had higher verbal ability compared to the other autistic patients

Associated conditions and differential diagnosis
- Intellectual disability (frequently co-occur with ASD)
- Epilepsy
- Specific developmental language disorders
- Early onset psychosis (e.g., schizophrenia)
- Selective mutism and social anxiety
- Simple stereotypic movements: normal in children less than 3 years old.
- Stereotypic movement disorders: complex and persist after age of 3 years old. Absence of impairment in communication and social interactions
- Emotional neglect and reactive attachment disorder, inhibited-type

Screening and testing
- Early detection: checklist for autism in toddlers (CHAT), the modified checklist for autism in toddlers (M-CHAT), and the pervasive developmental disorders screening test
- The gold standard diagnostic tools: the autism diagnostic interview—revised (ADI-R) and the autism diagnostic observation schedule (ADOS)
- Neuropsychological and achievement assessment, e.g., IQ testing
- Medical workup to rule out associated genetic condition or neuropsychiatric syndromes

Management
- Educational interventions: social, communicative, and cognitive skills
- Behavioral modification, e.g., applied behavioral analysis (ABA)
- Rehabilitative (occupational and physical therapy)
- Pharmacotherapy:
  - Risperidone and aripiprazole are FDA approved to for treating associated aggression
  - Other drugs, e.g., SSRIs for anxiety and medications used to treat ADHD symptoms

Prognosis if any
- The better language skills and nonverbal IQ the better the prognosis
- Early detection and providing intensive services improve the outcome
- Delayed diagnosis may lead to a poorer outcome

Sleep Disorders

Background
- Child with chronic insufficient sleep may manifest with difficult learning and irritability or picture of ADHD
- Electrophysiologically, sleep can be divided into:
  - REM sleep: rapid eye movement sleep
  - NREM sleep: non-rapid eye movement

Sleep needs according to the age
- Newborn**:**10–19 h per 24 h
  - REM sleep occupies 50% of total sleep. Decreases with age
  - Frequent awakening may require attention only if >2–3 awakenings per night >30 min
- Infant: 12–13 h
- Toddler: 11–13 h
- Preschool (3–5 year): night time 9–10 h
- Middle childhood (6–12 h) 9–11 h
- Adolescence (>12 year) 9 h

Parental education
- Sleep hygiene and behavioral approach to address behavioral insomnia of childhood, e.g., bed routines avoid overstimulation and address separation anxiety at bedtime.

Difficulties of sleep could be classified as
- Insomnia secondary to another condition, e.g., medical or psychiatric illness
- Sleep disorders: subdivided into dyssomnias and parasomnias
- Parasomnias: abnormal events upon a normally organized sleep-wake process
  - Nightmares
    - Occur during REM sleep, commonly after 2 a.m.
    - Child will wake up oriented and will remember the dream
    - If frequent, need to explore and address the source of anxiety
  - Night terrors
    - Occur during stage 4 NREM sleep, first third of the night
    - The child is screaming unresponsive for few minutes then fall back asleep again
    - Will not recollect the episode in the morning
    - Reassurance and education to the parents and the child and advice sleep hygiene
    - Parents should provide reassurance during the episode but not vigorously that may awaken the child
  - Sleepwalking and sleep talking
    - Stage 4 NREM sleep events, with no recalling in the morning

- Parental education and reassurance
- Secure the bedroom surroundings to avoid accidental injuries to the sleep walker

Dyssomnias
- Difficulties initiating and/or maintaining sleep

Primary insomnia
- After psychiatric disorder is ruled out, sleep hygiene is the main line of treatment. Address emotional concerns and worries in the child in general
- No TV in the bedroom
- Melatonin can be helpful
- Appropriate referral to sleep study for resistant chronic cases

Primary hypersomnia
- Increase need for daytime sleep despite adequate nighttime sleep
- Rule out organic causes, e.g., medications side effects or hypothyroidism
- When established may be treated with stimulants

Circadian rhythm disorder
- Managed through gradual advance of bedtime (15 min per night)
- For severe cases: phase delay therapy
- Naps are discouraged during trials to restore normal circadian rhythms

Narcolepsy
- Characterized by sleep attacks upon wakefulness and cataplectic attacks

Restless leg syndrome
- May be associated with low iron storage that could benefit from iron therapy

Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA)
- Frequent apneas/awakenings during night and sleepiness in the morning. Sometimes due to enlarged tonsils or adenoids.
- Diagnosis through nocturnal polysomnography

Sexual Behaviors

Masturbation
- During preschool years: genital interest and play are fairly common
- About 80% of adolescents reported masturbating by age of 13 years, more in boys
- Adolescents may experience inappropriate anxiety and/or guilt related to this behavior
- Provide information on normal sexual development and assurance
- Masturbation in public suggests poor awareness of social reality
- Masturbation seldom produces self-induced injury in childhood
- Hazards of excessive masturbation: genital itching, sexual overstimulation, and environmental deprivation

Examples of inappropriate sexual behaviors that may indicate sexual abuse
- Sexual knowledge inappropriate to the age
- Heightened sexual interest, e.g., drawing genitals or ask to engage in sexual act
- Masturbate with objects and compulsive masturbation
- Inserting objects in vagina or rectum
- Close psychical boundaries
- Sexual promiscuity and prostitution in adolescence

Sexual identity development
- Core gender identity: the basic sense of being male or female
- Gender role: expected behaviors from the person related to his/her gender
- Social sex role: how the person behaves in congruence/incongruence with the gender role (as in gender nonconformity)
- Sexual orientation: how the person is attracted to the same or the opposite sex. Starts around mid-adolescence

Homosexuality
- 30% of early adolescent may engage in homosexual play once or twice, but it is usually not persistent
- Comorbidities associated with homosexuality
  1. Social stigma may inflict guilt and anxiety on the homosexual teen
  2. Disclosure to friends and family may lead to significant distress and turmoil
  3. Academic complication and dropping out due to bullying and lack of support at school
  4. Psychiatric complications, e.g., higher risk of suicidal behavior, substance abuse, and eating disorders

STDs
- Risk is the same as in heterosexuals if protection is not used. However, homosexuals who practice more rectal intercourse may be at higher risk.

Recommendations
- Explore sexual orientation without heterosexual assumptions
- Provide nonjudgmental care or refer patients to better resources
- Education and counseling regarding STDs

- Referral to social support groups

Gender identity Disorder (GID)
- Childhood onset GID: four or more of cross-gender behaviors will present since toddler or preschool age, e.g., cross-dressing and preference of playmate of opposite sex
- Comorbidities: pervasive developmental disorders and externalizing behavioral problems
- Treatment: early onset GID may respond to therapeutic interventions (controversial)

Enuresis

Background
- Repeated voiding of urine into clothes or bed at least twice a week for at least three consecutive months in a child who is at least 5 years of age
- Diurnal enuresis and nocturnal enuresis. Primary enuresis versus secondary enuresis
- Enuresis is more common in lower socioeconomic groups, in larger families, and in institutionalized children

Readiness for toilet training is associated with
- Awareness of bladder filling
- Ability to contract the external sphincter
- Motivation of the child to stay dry
- At 2–4 year, the child is developmentally ready to begin toilet training
- Girls usually attain bladder control before boys
- Bowel control typically is achieved before bladder control

Clinical presentation
- Causes of secondary enuresis: UTIs, chemical urethritis, diabetes mellitus or insipidus, sickle cell anemia, seizures, neurogenic bladder, and pinworm infection. Work up, e.g., urinalysis and urine culture, and urine osmolality
- Psychosocial stressors may lead to secondary enuresis
- Combined nocturnal and diurnal enuresis: usually due to urinary tract anomalies. Work up: ultrasonography or uroflowmetry
- Diurnal incontinence: the most common cause is a pediatric unstable bladder. May occur in girls with a history of sexual abuse. Work up is guided by history and examination findings

Management
- Parent–child education and behavioral approach
  - Charting with rewards for dry nights
  - Voiding before bedtime
  - Night awakening 2–4 h after bedtime, while at the same time making sure that parents do not punish the child for enuretic episodes
- If behavioral approach fails
  - Urine alarm treatment is indicated for a period of 8–12 weeks
- Desmopressin acetate (DDAVP)
  - Second-line treatment
  - Side effects:
  - Relapse is high after discontinuation
  - Hyponatremia and may cause seizure due to water intoxication
  - This serious adverse effect can be prevented by educating the patient not to consume an excess of fluids on any evening in which desmopressin is administered. A maximum of one cup of fluid should be offered at the evening meal, no more than one cup between mealtime and bedtime, and no fluid at all within the 2 h preceding bedtime
  - Early symptoms of water intoxication include headache, nausea, and vomiting. If these symptoms develop, the medication should be discontinued and the child promptly assessed by a physician

Secondary enuresis
- Treat the cause and refer if needed
- Address constipation if any

Fecal Soiling

- Repeated passage of feces without physical cause that persist after age of 3–4 years
- Requires careful history and assessment
- Primary soiling can be related to developmental delays or other pediatric causes
- Secondary soiling is more associated with psychosocial problems
- Treatment depends on the type
- May require combination of: laxative use, diet, behavioral, and psychotherapeutic interventions

Childhood Schizophrenia

Background
- Schizophrenia is a heterogonous clinical syndrome
- Childhood onset schizophrenia is rare. More in males
- Risk factors, e.g., advanced parental age and genetic (e.g., 22q11 deletion)

Clinical presentation
- Course of illness

- *Prodrome*: functional deterioration before the onset of psychotic symptoms
- *Acute phase*: marked by prominent positive symptoms (i.e., hallucinations, delusions, disorganized speech and behavior) and a significant deterioration in functioning
- *Recuperative/recovery phase*: generally a several month period. Negative symptoms (flat affect, anergia, social withdrawal) predominate
- *Residual phase*: several months or more, when there are no significant positive symptoms
- Auditory hallucinations suggestive of schizophrenia: commentary voice or multiple voices

Differential diagnosis
- Hallucinations that are not psychotic: in response to anxiety or stress
- Affective psychosis
- Posttraumatic stress disorder
- Autism spectrum disorders
- Medical conditions and drug abuse

Screening
- Screen for hallucination during regular visits
- Abnormal Involuntary Movement Scale (AIMS): screen and monitor for antipsychotics extrapyramidal side effects

Management
- Psychoeducation
- Risk management and case-management services
- Educational placement: specialized educational programs should be considered within the school system
- Pharmacological: antipsychotic agents are also considered first-line treatment
- Atypical antipsychotics are the mainstay of treatment (clozapine for resistant cases)
- Side effects: metabolic syndrome (obesity, hypertension, dyslipidemia, and insulin resistance) and extrapyramidal symptoms (e.g., dystonia and akathisia)
- Clozapine: increase the risk for agranulocytosis and seizures

Prognosis
- Early onset schizophrenia is a risk factor for more impairment from the illness
- High risk of suicide

Specific Learning Disabilities (LD)

Background
- Discrepancy between IQ level and unexpected school failure in one or more of school subjects
- Reading disorders: difficulties with reading accuracy and decoding (dyslexia), spelling difficulties and/or difficulties with reading comprehension
- Mathematics (dyscalculia): difficulties with computation or mathematic that requires problems solving
- Written expression (dysgraphia), nonverbal learning disorders and learning disorder NOS

Learning disorder = learning disability
- Etiology: intrinsic and extrinsic factors affecting brain maturation and function
- More in boys than in girls
- Underrepresented in minorities
- Majority of cases identified in middle and high school

Earlier signs of LD may assist in earlier identification
- Preschool speech and language disorder may later experience educational difficulty with recognition and drawing of shapes in the preschool period may portend problems in letter recognition or writing
- Performance of formal developmental screening at the 30-month visit may identify these related preschool problems
- Performance at the 48-month visit may identify specific problems in early decoding, writing, and sound/symbol association

Diagnostic criteria
- Diagnosed based on 1 of 2 criteria
  1. Aptitude-achievement discrepancy criteria
  2. Response to treatment intervention

Associated conditions if any
- ADHD
- Disruptive behavioral disorder
- Anxiety and depression
- Educational underachievement
- Employment difficulties

Screening
- Psychoeducational testing: testing specific learning difficulties
- Neuropsychological testing: to test cognitive functions
- IQ testing

Management
- Primary prevention: high level education for all children
- Secondary prevention: interventions directed to children with academic difficulties not responding to primary prevention
- Tertiary prevention: Advanced and intensive services to those who continue to have difficulties despite initial interventions provided

- Treat associated comorbidities if any

Practical issues in management of learning disorder
- The pediatric clinician can play a critical role not only in identifying the child who has LD but also in ongoing management
- Implementation of the medical home model for chronic condition management
- Psychoeducational evaluation with the family to assure that he or she is receiving appropriate educational remediation, accommodations, modifications, and therapies
- The pediatrician or pediatric nurse practitioner should inquire about every child's academic performance and school behavior
- Investigation for related disorders, such as ADHD, adjustment disorder, or anxiety disorder, should be considered
- Education of families is also critically important to help them access appropriate treatment
- At a minimum, families should leave the physician's office understanding that reading disorder is not due to a primary visual deficit and that letter reversals, a common finding in typically developing 7 years old, is not diagnostic of reading disorder

Communication Disorders

Speech disorders
- Phonological speech disorders: difficulties related to motor production of the speech
- Stuttering: disturbance in the flow of speech

Language disorders
- Persistent difficulties in acquisition and use of language across different modalities. (spoken, written, or other)
- Receptive language disorder
- Expressive language disorder
- Mixed receptive-expressive language disorder

Social communication disorder
- Persistent difficulties in the social use of verbal and nonverbal communication

Screening and management
- Same as with specific learning disabilities, plus, addressing the language difficulties
- Individual or small group therapy administered by a certified language pathologist
- Psychiatric and psychoeducational interventions as indicated

Intellectual Disability

Background
- Previously called mental retardation (MR)
- Subnormal intellectual and adaptive functioning with onset before 18 years
- Classification according to IQ level
  1. Mild IQ 50–70 (majority of cases)
  2. Moderate 35–49
  3. Severe 20–34
  4. Profound <20
- Prevalence: 1–2%, higher in ethnic minorities and with lower SES
- Down syndrome: most common genetic cause of ID
- Etiology: unknown and genetic causes

Clinical presentation
- May suffer significant psychiatric problems: same range of disorders, but higher rate and more difficult to diagnose
- Those with severe or profound ID may present with dysmorphic features and other signs of congenital anomalies
- Prader–Willi syndrome: hyperphagia and compulsive behaviors
- Fragile X syndrome: attentional and social problem
- Angelman syndrome: inappropriate laughter

Differential diagnosis/associated conditions
- Language disorder
- Autistic spectrum disorder (sometimes associated with ID)
- Specific learning disability (academic underperformance despite normal IQ level)

Management
- Psychosocial interventions
- Cognitive and adaptive interventions
- Treat associated psychiatric and medical conditions
- General quality of life measures

Suggested Readings

1. Martin A, Volkmar FR, Lewis M. Lewis's child and adolescent psychiatry: a comprehensive textbook. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott; 2007.
2. Rutter M, Bishop D, Pine D, Scott S, Stevenson JS, Taylor EA, Thapar A. Rutter's child and adolescent psychiatry. 5th ed. Hoboken: Wiley-Blackwell; 2010.
3. The diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders. 5th ed. Washington, DC: The American Psychiatric Association; 2013.
4. Kliegman RM, Stanton B, St Geme J, Schor N, Behrman RE. Nelson textbook of pediatrics. 19th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier; 2011.

Psychological Issues and Problems

Sitratullah Olawunmi Kukoyi-Maiyegun

Critical Life Events

Death

- Understanding of death and expression of grief are determined by chronologic age and levels of cognitive development. These are coupled with circumstances of death; and the family's cultural and religious background.
- Levels of cognitive and behavioral development differ by age (Table 1):
  - children less than 2 years have sensorimotor.
  - children with 2–6 years have preoperational.
  - children with 6–10 years have concrete operational.
  - adolescents have a formal operational development stage.
- *Grief reactions* occur in different domains that include the emotional, cognitive, physical, and social domains:
  - Usual expressions of grief include repeated questioning, somatic complaints, regressive behaviors, separation anxiety, school phobia, or academic difficulty
  - Adolescents may present with increased high-risk behavior with drugs, alcohol, delinquency, or precocious sexual activity.

Kubler-Ross introduced the concept of the stages of grief

- Denial
- Anger
- Bargaining
- Depression
- Acceptance

Management

- When death is anticipated, information about expectations and effective counseling will help family bereavement.
- Every member of the family needs to be included in the process as appropriate.
- Depending on the child developmental stage, a dying child benefits from open communication about death.
- The pediatrician can provide information and support by listening and communicating well to the family.
- It is also appropriate for pediatricians to show emotion. Parents do appreciate the depth of their doctor's emotional feelings.
- Scheduling an appointment with the family about 1 month after the death to evaluate the family's coping ability.
- Pediatricians need resources and support within the medical community to help cope most effectively with the death of a patient.

Divorce

- *Long-lasting effects* of divorce or separation on the child and the family:
  - Exposure to high levels of parental conflict is predictive of poor emotional adjustment by the child regardless of the parents' marital status.
  - Children exposed to high-conflict parental interactions are significantly more likely to exhibit externalizing behavioral problems, emotional dysregulation, and decreased academic performance.
  - The developmental stage of a child will also have an effect on the child's response to a blended family.
  - A child's emotional adjustment to divorce may affect his/her own subsequent intimate relationships.

S. O. Kukoyi-Maiyegun (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Science Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: Sitratullah.maiyegun@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_3,

Table 1 Level of cognitive and behavioral aspects of developing an understanding of death by age. (Adapted from Pediatrics in Review, Vol. 30 No. 9, September 2009)

Age of the child	Developmental stage	Concept or perception	Expected response
<2 years	Sensorimotor	Sense separation and the emotions of others	Withdrawal Irritability
2–6 years	Preoperational	Dead = "Not alive" Death as temporary	Wonder about what the dead "do" Magical thinking
6–10 years	Concrete operational	Morbid interest in death Others die → I day	Exaggerated behavioral reactions to the idea of death and dead things
Adolescence	Formal operational	Adult understanding Existential implications	"Why not me?" Death as an adversary

  - Families may experience increased financial difficulties.
- *Protective factors* that may increase the likelihood of long-term positive psychological adjustment:
  - Adjustment to new relationships may be smoothed if children are allowed adequate time to adjust first to the parents' separation or divorce.
  - The introduction of the new partner should be done slowly and with sensitivity to the child's reactions.
  - Transitioning to blended families will be smoothest when stepparents do not take over responsibility for discipline of their stepchildren.
  - Children with regular and consistent involvement of the father after divorce were reported to have fewer social problems.

Management

- The developmental stage of a child will have an effect on the child's response to divorce.
- Consistency in parenting techniques and discipline as a way to promote stability and predictability
- Pediatrician should avoid taking sides or overidentifying with one parent versus another.
- If there is suspicion of abuse or neglect, significant parental substance abuse, or significant parental mental health problems, the pediatrician must counsel the parent on the appropriate resources to consult.
- Medical professionals should be careful to refrain from providing legal advice and refer those questions to the parent's legal counsel.
- Pediatricians are encouraged to monitor the emotional and behavioral adjustment of children of divorced parents.
- Parenting plans could result from agreement between two cooperating parents, mediation, and through the courts.
- Parents who succeed through the mediation process tend to avoid escalation of conflict, improve co-parenting cooperation, and save significant legal costs.

Transition of Adolescents to Young Adulthood for Vulnerable Populations

Background

- Adolescents with chronic medical conditions and disabilities have immense challenges transitioning to adult medical care.
- These could affect all domains of daily living such as health care, education, vocation, and independent living.

General considerations

- Transition of adolescents to young adulthood may be facilitated by the medical homes.
- These vulnerable populations should have written transition plan by 14 years of age and should be updated annually.
- The timing of transition to an adult health-care practitioner should be individualized for each patient and not based solely on chronologic age.
- The portable medical summary should include all relevant medical and care information.
- Encourage patients and families to identify an adult health-care practitioner and involve the practitioner during the transition process.
- The portable medical summary and written transition plan can be transferred to the new medical home to facilitate sharing of information.

Management

- Early discussion of future goals with the patient, family, and other members of the team to coordinate the process
- Promote independence and shared decision-making
- Identification of potential obstacles to a successful transition in the domains of health care, education, vocation, and independent living
- Provision of resources to address identified obstacles to a successful transition such as insurance coverage
- Parents should be encouraged to acknowledge the sexuality of their adolescent and young adult children as well as to foster the development of their social independence.
- The role of a surrogate decision-maker should be discussed for those with severe intellectual disabilities or mental health conditions.

- Full independence for medical or other decisions may not be appropriate.

Discipline

- Disciplinary approaches depend on the child developmental stage.
- Time-out for negative behavior is an effective strategy for age 1 year to early adolescence.
- Time-out will be effective if parents also provide time-in with short nonverbal physical contact on a frequent basis for acceptable behavior.
- Extinction occurs when parent should withdraw all attention with an undesirable behavior. This may initially increase the intensity of the undesirable behavior (extinction burst), but with parental perseverance, the undesirable behavior will diminish.
- In planned ignoring, the parents gradually ignore the child's behavior; it tends to take longer but does not lead to an increased undesirable behavior.
- In chip system, the child earns a chip for positive behavior (ages 3–7 years).

Adoption

General considerations

- Depending on their country of origin, international adoptees may be at risk for certain infectious diseases, particularly parasitic infections.
- Children adopted from institutional or orphanage cares are more at risk for such medical and developmental problems than are their counterparts who have resided in foster care.
- The pediatrician also should help review any information about the child's medical history (if available) before and after adoption.
- Adoptive parents need to provide sufficient time, security, and love when the adopted child arrives.
- Family or parental leaves are recommended to provide consistent caregivers for the child and allow bonding to occur.
- This will ease the transition of adoptees and their adoptive families.

Evaluation of adopted children

- Comprehensive physical examination, immunization status and appropriate catch-up immunization
- Hearing and vision screening
- Blood specimens for complete blood count (CBC), serum lead concentrations, hepatitis B, human immunodeficiency virus, and syphilis infection status, stool sent for ova and parasites, *Giardia lamblia,* and *Cryptosporidium*
- A tuberculin skin test placed regardless of bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) status. Hepatitis C serologies, if emigrating from hepatitis C endemic area
- Newborn metabolic screen for infants

Media

Impact of mass media

- Children younger than 2 years of age should not watch television (TV).
- Solitary television viewing should be discouraged in young children.
- Limiting TV viewing to 2 h/day or less for all children including other forms of screen times.
- Discourage parents having TV in a child's bedroom, as it causes sleep disturbance (sleep latency prolongation).
- Education of parents on links between television viewing, obesity, and diminished academic performance

Potential negative effects of TV viewing on children include

- Increased aggressive behavior, acceptance of violence, obscures distinction between fantasy and reality; trivializes sex and sexuality
- Increased passivity, obesity, and risk of suicidal behavior
- Less time spent in healthier activities

Foster Care

- Foster care is a system in which a minor who has been placed into a ward, group home, or private home of a state certified caregiver that are compensated for expenses.
- This is usually arranged through the government or a social-service agency.
- All legal decisions are made by the state through the family court and child protection agency, the foster parent is responsible for the day-to-day care.
- Legal guardian/foster parents can consent to medical treatment for children under their care.
- Family-based foster care is generally preferred to other forms of out-of-home care.
- Foster care is intended to be a short-term solution until a permanent placement or adoption can be made.
- Children in foster care suffer more physical, psychological, and cognitive problems.

Enuresis

Background
- Nocturnal enuresis is involuntary passage of urine during sleep in children older than 5 years of age and occurs in approximately 15% of children at age 5 and 1% of teens at age 15.
- Commoner in males than in females and often a positive family history
- Nocturnal enuresis is common among school-age children.
- Children with nocturnal enuresis have been shown abnormal circadian release of antidiuretic hormone (ADH).
- Most daytime wetting can be classified either as storage or an emptying problem.

Etiology
- Genetic
- Gender
- Maturational delay
- Psychosocial
- Sleep state

Risk factors
- Regressive bed-wetting could be related to a stressful environment or event such as the birth of siblings or moves.
- Daytime wetting could result from stressful events such as divorce, death of family members, or abuse.
- Daytime wetting and a difficult temperament are at increased risk for constipation and encopresis.

Management
- Diurnal enuresis after continence is achieved should prompt evaluation.
- Treatment approaches for nocturnal enuresis includes counseling, hypnosis, enuresis alarm, imipramine, DDAVP, and reassurance.
- The use of a bedwetting alarm has the highest rate of success in young children.
- Daytime incontinence could be secondary to environmental stress, a resistant child or urgency incontinence.
- Treatment approaches for daytime enuresis include counseling, hypnosis, bladder-training exercises, and anticholinergic (oxybutynin).
- Patients who have both daytime incontinence and nocturnal enuresis have a higher degree of functional bladder abnormalities and a higher failure rate with conventional treatment than patients experiencing nocturnal enuresis alone.
- Reassuring parents about coping with enuresis without causing psychological problems.

Encopresis

Background
- Functional encopresis is defined as repeated involuntary fecal soiling that is non-organic.
- The most common cause is functional constipation with overflow incontinence.
- Enuresis and urinary tract infections are comorbidities that need to be addressed.
- Encopresis predisposes to urinary tract infection and enuresis
- Anorectal manometry and rectal suction biopsies may rule out Hirschsprung's disease or neuronal intestinal dysplasia in suspected cases.

Etiology
- Organic
- Behavioral
- Environmental

Management
- Disimpaction, e.g., GoLytely via NG tube until clear
- Miralax to be used everyday not as needed
- Maintenance therapy, which involves a combination of medical therapy, behavioral modification, and counseling.
- Successful treatment of encopresis varies with the age of onset; and relapses are common.

Psychosomatic Disorders

Somatization
- Somatization disorders occur in children who are genetically predisposed.
- Somatization disorders lead to tendency to experience and communicate somatic distress and symptoms unaccounted by pathological findings.
- Conversion disorders indicate symptoms and signs of sensory or voluntary motor function (e.g., blindness, paresis) without any neuro-anatomical and pathophysiologic explanation.
- Lack of school attendance should be assessed with every complaint of recurrent pain.
- Psychosomatic disorders with chronic pain may be manifestations of parental anxiety and parental pressure for a child to succeed.

Clinical presentation
- The symptoms could be a symbolic attempt to resolve unsolved and unconscious conflicts (primary gain).

- The symptoms often result in increased attention for the patient (secondary gain).
- Any form of stress could contribute to psychosomatic disorders; these include bullying, physical or sexual abuse.
- Organic illnesses must be considered in the differential diagnoses.
- The common symptoms include chronic pain syndromes of head, chest, abdomen, and legs.
- *Differential diagnosis* of conversion symptoms include:
  - Psychophysiology hypochondriasis
  - Malingering
  - Somatic delusions

Treatment approaches for psychosomatic disorders include

- Reassurance when appropriate
- Cognitive and behavioral interventions
- Use positive and negative reinforcement
- Teach self-monitoring techniques (e.g., hypnosis, relaxation, and biofeedback), family and group therapies.
- Improve communication between clinicians and school
- Aggressively treat comorbid psychiatric conditions
- Psychopharmacologic interventions as appropriate

Pain

- Dealing with and tolerance to pain vary with a child's developmental stage.
- Pain is subjective, and repeated painful experiences can result in altered pain sensitivity and behavioral disturbances.
- Undertreatment of pediatric pain is a concern, especially among neonates.
- Newborns may be at greater risk for pain wind-up, in which repeated painful stimuli produce central sensitization and a resultant hyperalgesic state. This necessitates adequate management of pain.
- The goals of pain management are anticipation, treatment, and reassessment.
- Non-pharmacologic measures include open communication, reassurance, and parental presence.
- Sucrose use depends on developmental status and condition of the patient.

Sibling Rivalry

- Sibling rivalry is common.
- Children should be allowed to resolve their differences initially, but parents need to intervene if physical or verbal abuse happens.
- The family should be provided guidelines on implementing a behavior intervention strategy.
- Referral to a therapist may be considered if behavior continues to be challenging and not responsive to initial parental interventions.
- Sibling rivalry could also manifest with regressive behavior following the birth of a new sibling.

Separation Anxiety and School Refusal

General considerations

- Anxiety disorders are the most common psychiatric illness in children and adolescents.
- Anxiety disorders have genetic predisposition and environmental factors.
- The neurobiology of anxiety disorders is linked to dysregulation in the fear and stress response system in the brain.
- Separation anxiety disorder is one of the most common causes of school refusal.
- Separation anxiety is developmentally appropriate in the preschool child and during the first few months of school in kindergarten or first grade.
- School refusal related to anxiety differs from conduct problems and subsequent truancy.
- Youth who exhibit truancy generally do not report other symptoms of anxiety or issues of separation from parents.

Treatment

- In school refusal due to separation anxiety disorder, the child needs to go back to school environment as soon as possible
- Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT)
- Pharmacotherapy: Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)
- Decrease stress, sleep hygiene, healthy eating, and regular exercise, predictable routine and social supports

Sleep Disorders

Normal sleep (Table 2)

- Newborns can sleep 16–20 h in a 24-h period, alternating between 1- and 4-h periods of sleep and 1–2 h of being awake.
- Newborns cycle between rapid eye movement (REM) and non-REM sleep every 50 min
- At the end of each cycle, the newborn may experience an arousal that is not true awakening.
- During REM sleep (active sleep in the newborn period), associated movements may occur, which may include facial movements, sucking, and limb movements.

Table 2 Appropriate sleep duration by age

Age	Average sleep duration
Newborn	16–20 h
Infants (0 to 1 year)	13–15 h
2–5 years	11–12 h
6–12 years	10–11 h
Adolescents (13–18 years)	9 h ideal for this age group

Table 3 Difference between night terrors and nightmares

Difference	Night terrors	Nightmares
Sleep stage	NREM	REM
Characteristics	A sudden episode of cry or loud scream with intense fear	Recurrent episodes of awakening from sleep with recall of an intensely disturbing dream
Recall dream	No	Yes (recall dream is immediate and clear)
Associated features	Difficulty in arousing the child Mental confusion when awakened from an episode Amnesia (complete or partial) for the episode Dangerous or potentially dangerous behaviors	Delayed return to sleep after the episode Occurrence of episodes in the latter half of the habitual sleep period

REM rapid eye movement, *NREM* non-rapid eye movement

- By 2 months of age, infants are able to establish a day-night cycle.
- By 4 months, many infants can sleep uninterrupted through the night.
- A child of 1 year should be sleeping 13–14 h, primarily during the night.
- Night waking may be associated with separation anxiety.

Night Terrors

Definition

- It is a disorder of arousal from delta sleep (slow wave sleep) occurring in the first few hours during rapid transition from non-rapid eye movement (NREM) to REM sleep.

Clinical presentation (Table 3)

- Recurrent periods where the individual abruptly wakes from sleeping with a scream accompanied by autonomic nervous system and behavioral manifestations of intense fear
- Difficulty in arousing the child and the child wants to fall asleep soon after the episode
- Mental confusion when awakened from an episode and inconsolable
- Amnesia for the episode
- The disturbance is not due to the effects of a substance or general medical condition.

Management

- Awaken child 15 min before terrors occur. Avoid overtiredness.
- *Acute:* Be calm; speak in soft, soothing, repetitive tones; help child return to sleep.
- Protect child against injury.

Nightmare Disorder

- Clinical presentation
- Nightmares usually occur during the second half of *REM* sleep.
- Recurrent episodes of awakening from sleep
- Recall of an intensely disturbing bad dream
- Full alertness on awakening, with little confusion or disorientation
- Delayed return to sleep after the episode

Management

- Reassure the child that he or she had a bad dream.
- Leave bedroom door open, use a nightlight, and demonstrate that there are no monsters under the bed.
- Discuss dream the following day.
- Avoid scary movies or television shows.

Vulnerable Child Syndrome

Background

- Unfounded parental anxiety about the health of a child resulted in disturbances of the parent-child interaction.

- The parents are overprotective, show separation anxiety, unable to set age-appropriate limits, and display excessive concerns about their child's health. These lead to overuse medical services.

Risk factors
- History of serious illness or injury in the child
- Fertility issues
- Illness in any family members
- Serious maternal problems during and after delivery
- Precious child
- Prematurity

Exacerbating factors
- Environmental stress
- Family stress
- Lack of social support
- Low socioeconomic status
- Poor rating of mother's health

Effect on children
- Exaggerated separation anxiety
- Sleep disorders
- Peer relationships, self-control, discipline problems
- School underachievement
- Hypochondria
- They may become abusive to their parents.

Management
- Early recognition and treatment
- Inquire the sources of the parental anxiety and reeducating them about their child's health
- Inquire about connection between past threats and present concerns
- Close, regular communication between physician and parent should be exact and clear
- Referral should be made for appropriate therapy.

Rumination

Background
- Rumination is effortless regurgitation of undigested food meals after consumption.
- No associated retching, nausea, heartburn odors, or abdominal pains
- Affecting infants and young children with cognitive disability
- It has been linked with depression.
- Due to overstimulation and understimulation from parents and caregivers
- Seek self-gratification and self-stimulation due to the lack or abundance of external stimuli
- Habit-induced in adolescents as in past history of bulimia nervosa or of intentional regurgitation
- Trauma-induced as in emotional or physical injury

Clinical presentation
- Chewing and swallowing of regurgitated food that has come back into the mouth through a voluntary increase in abdominal pressure within minutes of eating or during eating.
- It can adversely affect normal functioning and the social lives of individuals.
- It can also present with weight loss.

Management
- Complete history and physical examination
- Minimal invasive investigations
- Reassurance, explanation, and habit reversal
- Behavioral and mild aversive training
- Supportive therapy and diaphragmatic breathing

Gifted Child

Definition
- Significantly advanced skills and abilities in any developmental domains

Clinical presentation
- Alertness during infancy
- Early language development.
- Advanced vocabulary
- Abstract thinking; and the ability to generate original ideas
- Exceptional problem-solving skills
- Excellent memory skills
- Provocative and penetrating questions, exceptional curiosity and a heightened sense of wonder
- Early development of empathy, concern with truth and fairness in play, a mature sense of humor, leadership in cooperative play, and perfectionism
- Cognitive and academic skills often exceed social emotional and motor skills.
- They tend to have asynchronous developmental patterns, very advanced in one domain area compared to the rest.

Associated conditions
- Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder
- Asperger syndrome
- Oppositional defiant disorder.
- Learning disabilities
- All these can have tremendous social and emotional effects on the child, family functioning, and family dynamics.

Management
- A multidisciplinary team for medical diagnosis, educational, and behavioral interventions
- Educational decisions such as early school entrance, home schooling, and enrichment programs
- Home schooling may impair interpersonal experiences and socialization.

Chronic Illness and Handicapping Conditions

General effect of a child with chronic conditions on the family
- Parents of children with handicapping conditions may exhibit grief reactions and this could affect the siblings.
- There is increased risk of child abuse among handicapped children.
- Chronic illness (e.g., asthma, seizures, inflammatory bowel disease) may lead to psychosocial issues.
- Use of home medical equipment (e.g., oxygen monitors, physical therapy, transportation, hygiene) may have psychosocial effects on the family dynamics.

Management
- Supportive and nonthreatening discussion with parents whose children have chronic diseases
- Appropriate ethical decisions relating to children with chronic and handicapping diseases
- A pediatrician can help the family in the facilitation of a normal progression of a chronically ill or handicapped child to adult behavior, including separation from parents and emerging sexuality in spite of chronic illness.

Transplantation

- Growth impairment is common after all solid organ transplants.
- Etiologies of growth impairment may be multifactorial.
- There may be psychosocial stresses of chronic illness on the child and other family members.
- Waiting for future of transplantation and the guilt of realizing that someone else has to die to receive a lifesaving organ transplant.
- Financial burden of time lost from work and fear of organ rejection, organ loss, malignancy, and death
- Support groups for pretransplantation and posttransplantation periods
- Adherence with clinic follow-up and medication regimens.

Family Violence

Risk factors
- Maternal depression,
- Substance use/abuse
- Physical injuries may indicate intimate partner violence.

Precipitants of violence by batterers may be
- Pregnancy
- Efforts by partner to leave the home
- Seeking separation or divorce
- Moving to a shelter

Effect of violence on children
- Intimate-partner violence may have devastating effects on children such as physical abuse, injury while protecting mother, injury from assault directed at mother, learned aggression, post-traumatic stress disorder and hypervigilance.
- They may have perception that the world is hostile, little awareness of options for conflict resolution, poor peer relations and impulsiveness.
- Children exposed to corporal punishment and intimate-partner violence is more likely to exhibit aggressive/violent behaviors than other children.
- The precipitants of violence by batterers may be pregnancy, efforts by partner to leave the home, seeking separation or divorce, or moving to a shelter.
- The abused partner frequently seeks medical attention, hesitation in leaving the office; frequent visits to the emergency department and requests for support with transportation or other social concerns.

Management
- Early identification and reporting especially if suspected child abuse
- Emergency social work or child protective services
- Children witnessing intimate partner abuse are more likely to exhibit aggressive behaviors than other children.

Child Abuse

Background
- Under state laws physicians are legally obligated to report any suspected abuse.
- Neglect is the most common form of child abuse.
- Caregiver is the abuser of a child in 90% of child abuse cases.
- Failure to thrive may be a manifestation of abuse or neglect in children.
- Siblings of abused children are at increased risk of abuse.

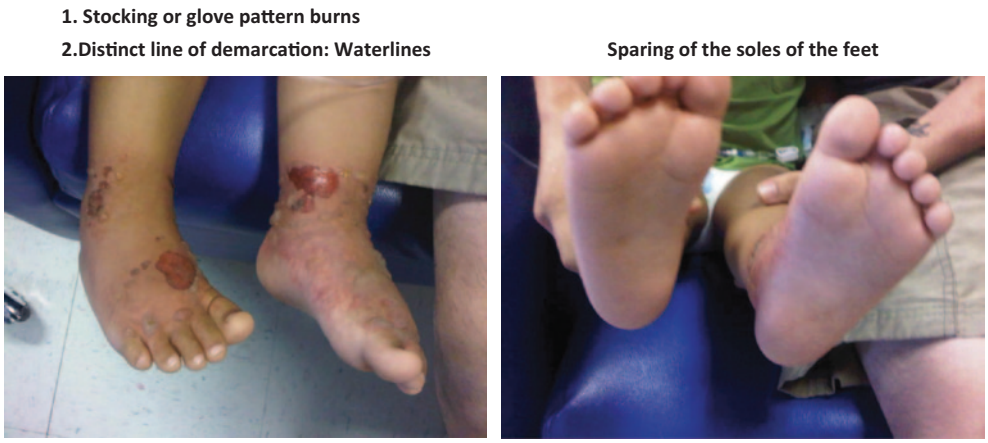


Fig. 1 *Left:* stocking or glove pattern burns and distinct line of demarcation: waterlines. *Right:* sparing of the soles of the feet

- Intimate-partner violence frequently is a risk factor for child abuse.

Risk factors

- Handicap, hyperactivity
- Social/situational stresses (e.g., poverty, isolation, family discord, multiple births, parent-child conflicts)
- Parent stress (e.g., abused as a child, depression, substance abuse)
- Abusive and neglectful parents often have severely unrealistic expectations for their children's behavior.

Clinical presentation

- Poisonous ingestions may be manifestations of child abuse.
- *Bruises*
  - Keys to the diagnosis of cutaneous injury include the child's developmental stage, location, and pattern.
  - Abnormal bruises will be multiple in different planes and different stages of healing.
  - Patterned bruises (belt marks, whips, straps), human bite marks, and frenulum tear.
- Burn
  - Non-accidental burn injury usually involves lower extremities and symmetric.
  - Immersion burns when a child is forcibly held in hot water, show clear delineation between the burned and healthy skin and uniform depth.
  - They may have a stock and glove distribution.
  - Immersion burns may have doughnut pattern in the buttocks.
  - No splash or spill injury indicating that the child was held in place.
  - They may have a stock and glove distribution (Fig. 1)
- Common fractures suggestive of child abuse
  - Abusive fractures are seen in children younger than 18 months.
  - Any fracture can be the result of abuse especially in a nonambulatory child.

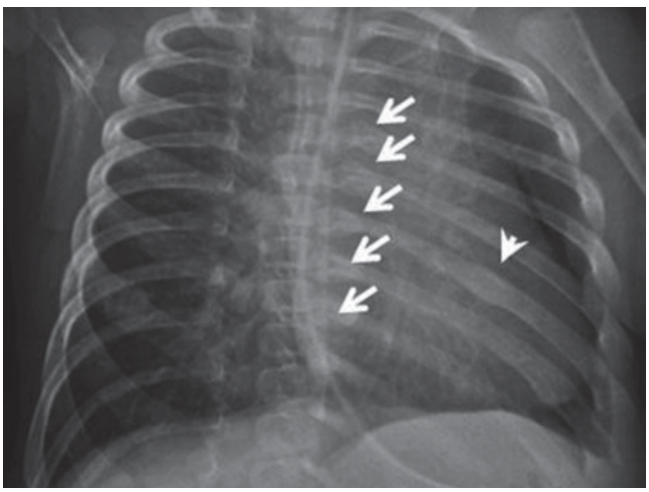


Fig. 2 Bone survey done for suspected child abuse showing callus formation posteriorly in ribs 5–9 on the left side (*arrows*). Callus formation is seen also on the left seventh more laterally (*arrow head*)

  - Posterio-medial rib fractures near the costovertebral junction (Fig. 2) Classic metaphyseal lesion (CML) in infants
  - Multiple fractures at different sites and different stages of healing
  - Spiral/oblique or metaphyseal fractures of the humerus (Fig. 3) Spiral/oblique or metaphyseal fractures of the femur (especially in preambulatory children)
  - Fractures of scapulae and sternum are rarely accidental.
  - Dislocated elbow, clavicular fracture, toddler fracture of the tibia are infrequently indicative of physical abuse.

Clinical features commonly mistaken with child abuse

- Normal bruises occur over a bony prominence: forehead, knees, elbows, and shins.

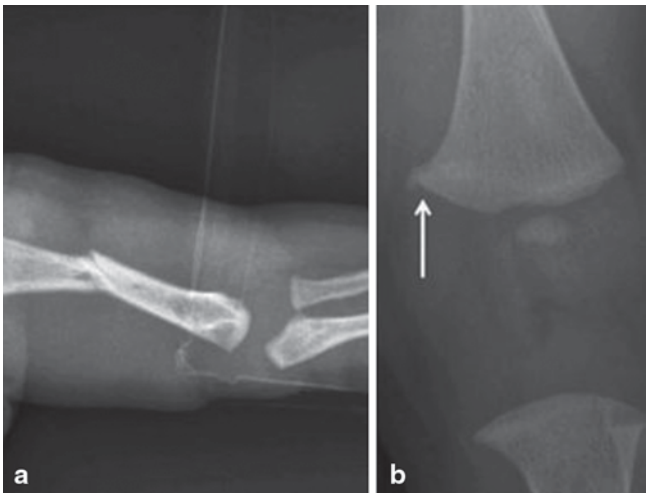


Fig. 3 A 5-month-old boy is brought to the emergency department because of swelling and deformity of the left arm. **a** Radiograph shows mid shaft humeral fracture. **b** Bone survey was done which showed meta-physeal corner fracture in the left distal femur (*arrow*)

  - Facial scratches on babies from their fingernails
  - Bruises that appear in the same stage of healing
- Mongolian spot, coining, cupping, and urticaria pigmentosa.
- Accidental burn injuries usually involve the upper part of the body due to exploration and are usually asymmetric.
  - Spill or splash injury is characterized by irregular margins and non-uniform depth.
- Contact burns will show branding type and mirror the object used.
- Differential diagnosis of inflicted burns includes: staphylococcal impetigo, herpes, contact dermatitis, and toxic epidermal necrolysis.
- Fractures:
  - Osteogenesis imperfecta
  - Hypophosphatasia
  - Infantile cortical hyperostosis
  - Osteoid osteoma

Management

- Skeletal survey is mandatory in suspected child abuse or in a child with subdural hematoma.
- Fractures are present in a minority of physically abused children.
- Chip fracture of metaphysis is commonly due to wrenching or pulling injuries.
- Radionuclide bone scan can reveal subtle areas of skeletal trauma that may not be seen on plain-film x-ray studies of bones.
- Physical abuse is the most common cause of serious intracranial injuries during the first year after birth.
- Absence of neurologic symptoms in infants with intracranial injuries should not exclude the need for imaging.
- Shaking is a possible cause of coma in the absence of signs of cutaneous trauma.
- An ophthalmology consultation is needed to identify retinal hemorrhage in suspected head trauma due to shaking.
- Sexual abuse should usually be reported to the law enforcement agency and must be reported to a state child protection agency.
- Under state laws, physicians are legally obligated to report suspected abuse although unsubstantiated cases of child abuse produces stress in a family.
- Unsubstantiated report/finding by a child protection agency does not necessarily mean that abuse or neglect did not occur.
- The standard of proof in a civil court is the preponderance of evidence.
- Foster home placement is associated with continued risk of child abuse.
- There is a need for a team approach in the management of child abuse.
- Failure to substantiate child abuse may be due to failure to locate child, failure to locate parents, parents' refusal to speak to investigators, duplicate reports, child's refusal to repeat history, and non-English speaking family.
- Many abused and neglected children are not removed from their parents or placed in foster care.

Neglect

Factitious Disorder (Munchausen Syndrome) by Proxy

- Signs of factitious disorder (Munchausen syndrome) by proxy may include recurrent sepsis from injecting fluids, chronic diarrhea from laxatives, false renal stones from pebbles, fever from heating thermometer, and rashes from trauma, sugar or blood in the urine.
- The parents and children with factitious disorder (Munchausen syndrome) by proxy may exhibit significant ongoing psychologic problems.
- Mothers have been identified as the sole perpetrators in the majority of cases.
- Multidisciplinary child protection team that includes the state social service agencies.
- Family therapy to address ongoing family issues.

Sexual Abuse

Background

- Incidence of sexual abuse cases that came to the attention of investigators or other community professionals was 2.4/1000 US children under the age of 18 years.

- Child sexual abuse involves physical contact between the victim and the perpetrator, with or without oral, anal, or vaginal penetration.
- There may not be touching and the child is made to watch sexual acts or pornography.
- Delay between the onset of abuse and disclosure is common.
- Sexual victimization is more common among girls than boys.
- Boys are less likely to disclose sexual abuse and might be victimized more often than the reported ratio.
- Teenagers have the highest rates of sexual assault.
- The child knows most perpetrators of sexual abuse before the abuse occurs.
- Physical disabilities, prior sexual victimization, and absence of a protective parent are other potential risk factors.
- There is increased incidence of sexually transmitted disease associated with sexual abuse.

Clinical presentation

- An explicit description and imitation of adult sexual behavior by children may indicate either victimization or observation of sexual acts (not fantasy).
- Sexually abused children also can present with nonspecific physical or emotional complaints.
- Unexplained abdominal pain, genital pain, encopresis, school failure, or sleep disturbance.
- A complaint of genital pain and genital discharge may infrequently indicate sexual abuse.
- When sexual abuse is suspected, the child should be interviewed alone.
- Verbatim statements by a child may qualify as evidence in a criminal court.

Medical history taking

- In suspected sexual abuse, the first detailed interview of a child is diagnostically critical.
- It is essential to avoid repetitive interviewing of an allegedly sexually abused child.
- Repetitive interviewing may create rote quality to responses, increases likelihood of leading questions, increases chance of learned responses, is unnecessarily stressful, and increases chances of inconsistency/retraction.
- The use of anatomically correct dolls for interviewing have advantages in a child who is nonverbal that can point and there may be risk of overinterpretation.
- Sexually abused children also can present with nonspecific physical or emotional complaints.

Examination

- Explanations to parents and the child before, during, and after the examination can ease stress.
- Supportive, non-offending caretakers also can be comforting to the child.
- Older patients can indicate if they prefer to undergo the examination with or without their caretaker in the examination room.
- The use of chaperones is essential during the examination of pediatric patients.
- Examination positions include supine lithotomy, supine frog leg, and knee chest position.
- Patients who refuse should not be forced to undergo an examination.
- A normal physical examination does not exclude the possibility of sexual abuse or prior penetration.
- The majority of sexual abuse victims have normal anogenital examinations.
- Findings indicative of trauma include laceration or bruising of the hymen, genital or perianal bruising, and hymenal transection.
- Labial adhesions, vulvar erythema, and anal tags are not signs of abuse.

Investigations

- Chlamydial infection may be acquired from the mother at birth and may persist.
- Sexually transmitted disease in a prepubertal child is presumptive evidence of sexual abuse.
- It is very important to use gold standard tests to diagnose sexually transmitted diseases in children because of the legal issues involved.
- Findings diagnostic of sexual contact include pregnancy, sperm on a specimen taken directly from patient's body.
- Evidence of seminal fluid is infrequently found in sexually abused children.
- Seminal fluid is unlikely to be found/persist beyond 72 h in a sexually abused child.
- Recognize that sexual abuse can recur even when families are receiving treatment.
- Send serologic studies for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), syphilis, and hepatitis B.
- Wet mounts and other studies of vaginal discharge can identify *Trichomonas vaginalis* and bacterial vaginosis.
- Bacterial vaginosis can be unrelated to sexual abuse.
- Polymerase chain reaction testing or culture of genital lesions can test for herpes simplex virus.
- Specimens from the rectum, male urethra, vagina, and urine can be tested for *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae.*
- Throat specimens also can be tested for gonorrhea.

- Nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) for chlamydia and gonorrhea infections in urine.
- HIV, trachomatis, gonorrhea, and syphilis are diagnostic of sexual abuse when perinatal, transmission from transfusions or needle sticks, and rare nonsexual transmissions are excluded.
- Anogenital warts (condyloma acuminata) and genital herpes simplex are suspicious and not diagnostic of abuse.
- Laboratory testing at the time of initial presentation, convalescent testing for syphilis and HIV are indicated at 6, 12, and 24 weeks' post-assault.
- Repeat Chlamydia and gonorrhea testing within 2 weeks after the last contact is indicated in cases in which prophylactic treatment was not given.
- Pregnancy testing should be performed where indicated based on the patient's pubertal stage.

Treatment

- Treatment plans address physical health, mental health, child safety, and psychosocial concerns.
- Prophylactic antibiotics for gonorrhea, chlamydia infection, trichomonas infection, and bacterial vaginosis for patients who present within 72 h of an assault.
- These prophylactic antibiotics generally are not prescribed for prepubertal patients because the incidence of sexually transmitted infection (STI) is low. There is low risk of spread to the upper genital tract.
- HIV postexposure prophylaxis involves a 28-day course of a two to three drug regimen initiated as soon as possible within 72 h of potential exposure, and careful follow-up.
- Emergency contraception should be offered when female pubertal patients present within 72 h till 120 h.
- Mental health issues need to be addressed and urgent psychiatric referral if suicidal ideations.
- It is very important not to assign blame to the victim in helping families cope with sexual abuse.
- Recognize that sexual abuse can recur even when families are receiving treatment.

Suggested Readings

1. Asnes AG, Leventhal JM. Managing child abuse: general principles. Pediatr Rev. 2010;31:47–55.
2. Dubowitz H, Feigelman S, Lane W, Kim J. Pediatric primary care to help prevent child maltreatment: the Safe Environment for Every Kid (SEEK) model. Pediatrics. 2009;123:858–64.
3. Flaherty EG, Sege RD, Griffith J, et al. From suspicion of physical child abuse to reporting: primary care clinician decision-making. Pediatrics. 2008;122:611–9.
4. Fortin K, Jenny C. Sexualabuse. Pediatr Rev. 2012;33:19–32.
5. Brown P, Tierney C. Munchausen syndrome by proxy. Pediatr Rev. 2009;30:414–5.
6. American Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Fetus and Newborn; Fetus and Newborn Committee. Prevention and management of pain in the neonate: an update. Pediatrics. 2006;118:2231–41.
7. Holsti L, Grunau RE. Considerations for using sucrose to reduce procedural pain in preterm infants. Pediatrics. 2010;125:1042–47.
8. Zeltzer LK, Krane EJ. Pediatric pain management. In: Kliegman RM, Stanton BF, St. Geme JW III, Schor NF, Behrman RE, editors. Nelson textbook of pediatrics, 19th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier; 2011. p. 360–75.
9. Pagel JF. Nightmares and disorders of dreaming. Am Fam Physician. 2000;61:2037–42, 2044.
10. Zuckerman B. Nightmares and night terrors. In: Parker S, Zuckerman B, Augustyn M, editors. Developmental and behavioral pediatrics: a handbook for primary care. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005. p. 251–2.
11. Gold LM, Kirkpatrick BS, Fricker FJ, Zitelli BJ. Psychosocial issues in pediatric organ transplantation: the parents' perspective. Pediatrics. 1986;77:738–44.
12. Bhargava S. Diagnosis and management of common sleep problems in children. Pediatr Rev. 2011;32(3):91–9.
13. Pipan M, Blum N. Basics of child behavior and primary care management of common behavioral problems. In: Voight RG, Macias MM, Myers SM, editors. Developmental and behavioral pediatrics. Elk Grove Village: Pediatrics; 2011, p. 49–50.

The Acutely Ill Child

Osama Naga

Common Early Symptoms, Signs and Clues to a Very Ill Child

History

- Altered mental status, e.g., accidental ingestion, encephalitis, meningitis (fever and headache)
- Vomiting, e.g., bilious vomiting is ominous sign of possible bowel obstruction, hydrocephalus (marked increasing of head circumference), incarcerated hernia, inborn errors of metabolism
- Respiratory distress, e.g., severe asthma, pneumonia, emphysema, acute bronchiolitis, or foreign body inhalation, retropharyngeal abscess, epiglottitis, tracheitis, severe croup
- Fever
  - Fever >41 °C is frequently associated with invasive bacterial infection.
  - Inconsolable cry, poor feeding, not waking up, grunting respirations, seizures, decrease urine output usually indicate sepsis or meningitis.
  - "Child with fever looks better, more active, and playing when fever is down, in which case it is unlikely to be sepsis or meningitis"
- Abdominal pain
  - Abdominal pain because of appendicitis, intussusception, testicular torsion, lower lobe pneumonia, acute pyelonephritis, or volvulus
  - Usually the pain is progressive, abnormal vital signs, lethargy, abdominal distension, or bilious vomiting
  - Abdominal pain because of gastroenteritis or mesenteric adenitis tends to improve with time

Physical examination

- Degree of fever, presence of tachycardia out of proportion to the fever, the presence of tachypnea, and hypotension all suggest serious infection
- Determine if any evidence of inspiratory stridor, expiratory wheezing, grunting, coughing, retractions, or nasal flaring
- Pericardial friction, loud murmur, and distant heart sound may indicate infectious process involving the heart
- Tenderness to percussion, guarding indicate peritoneal irritation seen in appendicitis
- Abdominal distension, bilious vomiting is ominous sign of bowel obstruction
- Tachycardia, cool extremities, delayed capillary refill time, mottled or pale skin, and effortless tachypnea are common symptoms of shock
- Hypotension is a late sign of shock
- Swelling and redness of the tissue around the eye, proptosis, limitation of the eye movement, and reduced visual acuity indicates deep eye infection or orbital cellulitis
- Determine if the fontanel is flat, depressed or bulging
- Meningeal signs may not always present in children younger than 18 months with meningitis (absence of meningeal signs at any age do not rule out meningitis)
- Hypertension, bradycardia, and bradypnea indicates increased intracranial pressure
- Coma, fixed and dilated pupil(s), and decerebrate posturing are common triad of transtentorial herniation

Endotracheal intubation

- Proper internal diameter (ID)
- Uncuffed endotracheal tube size (mm ID) = (age in years/4) + 4
- For example, if the child is 8 years old, ID = 8/4 + 4 = 6
- Cuffed endotracheal tube size (mm ID) = (age in years/4) + 3

O. Naga (✉)
Pediatric Department, Paul L Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue,
El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_4,

Shock

Definitions
- Shock is a life-threatening state that occurs when oxygen and nutrient delivery are insufficient to meet tissue metabolic demands
- Oxygen delivery (DO_2) is determined by cardiac output (CO) and the arterial content of oxygen (Cao_2)
- Cardiac output is the product of stroke volume (SV) and HR: CO (L/min) = SV (L) × HR/min.
- Arterial oxygen content (equation) = $(Hgb \times 1.36 \times SaO_2) + (0.0031 \times PaO_2)$

Stages of shock
- Compensated
  - During the earliest stage of shock, vital organ function is maintained by a number of compensatory mechanisms, and rapid intervention can reverse the process
  - If unrecognized or undertreated, compensated shock progresses to decompensated shock
- Decompensated
  - This stage is characterized by ongoing tissue ischemia and damage at the cellular and subcellular levels
  - Inadequate treatment leads to terminal shock, defined as irreversible organ damage despite additional resuscitation

Hypovolemic Shock

Background
- The most common form of shock occurring in children
- Diarrhea, bleeding, thermal injury, and inappropriate diuretic use can cause hypovolemic shock

Clinical presentation
- Tachycardia
- Tachypnea
- Signs of poor perfusion, including cool extremities, weak peripheral pulses, sluggish capillary refill, skin tenting, and dry mucous membranes
- Orthostatic hypotension may be an early sign
- Hypoperfusion, end-organ damage; weak central pulses, poor urine output, mental status changes, and metabolic acidosis

Cardiogenic Shock

Background
- Cardiogenic shock refers to failure of the heart as a pump, resulting in decreased cardiac output

Common causes
- Depressed myocardial contractility, e.g., infection, exposure to toxins, severe hypocalcemia or hyperkalemia
- Arrhythmias, e.g., supraventricular tachycardia
- Outflow obstruction from left heart, e.g., Hypoplastic left heart syndrome, aortic stenosis, and coarctation of the aorta
- Tricuspid atresia, pulmonary atresia, and tetralogy of fallot are three cyanotic congenital lesions that obstruct outflow from the right heart
- Myocarditis or pericarditis, and congenital cardiomyopathies should be part of the differential diagnosis for any child presenting with signs of poor perfusion
- Coronary ischemia, e.g., anomalous left coronary artery from the pulmonary artery (ALCAPA)
- Congenital lesions resulting in significant left-to-right shunts (e.g., ventricular septal defects, truncus arteriosus, ALCAPA) typically present between 6 weeks and 3 months of age as pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) falls
- Bilateral pneumothoraces and cardiac tamponade both prevent diastolic filling of the heart

Clinical presentation
- Lethargy, poor feeding, tachycardia, and tachypnea
- Typically appear pale and have cold extremities and barely palpable pulses
- Femoral pulse is usually absent in the cases of critical coarctation of the aorta and significantly lower blood pressure (BP) in the lower extremities compared with the right upper extremity
- Oliguria
- More specific signs to cardiogenic shock include a gallop rhythm, rales, jugular venous distension, and hepatomegaly

Management
- Chest radiography reveals cardiomegaly and pulmonary venous congestion
- Elevated central venous pressure (CVP), other forms of shock CVP is low
- Electrocardiography and echocardiography immediately if there is any suspicion of cardiogenic shock
- Empiric treatment for possible septic or cardiogenic shock should not be delayed for echocardiography

Distributive or Neurogenic Shock

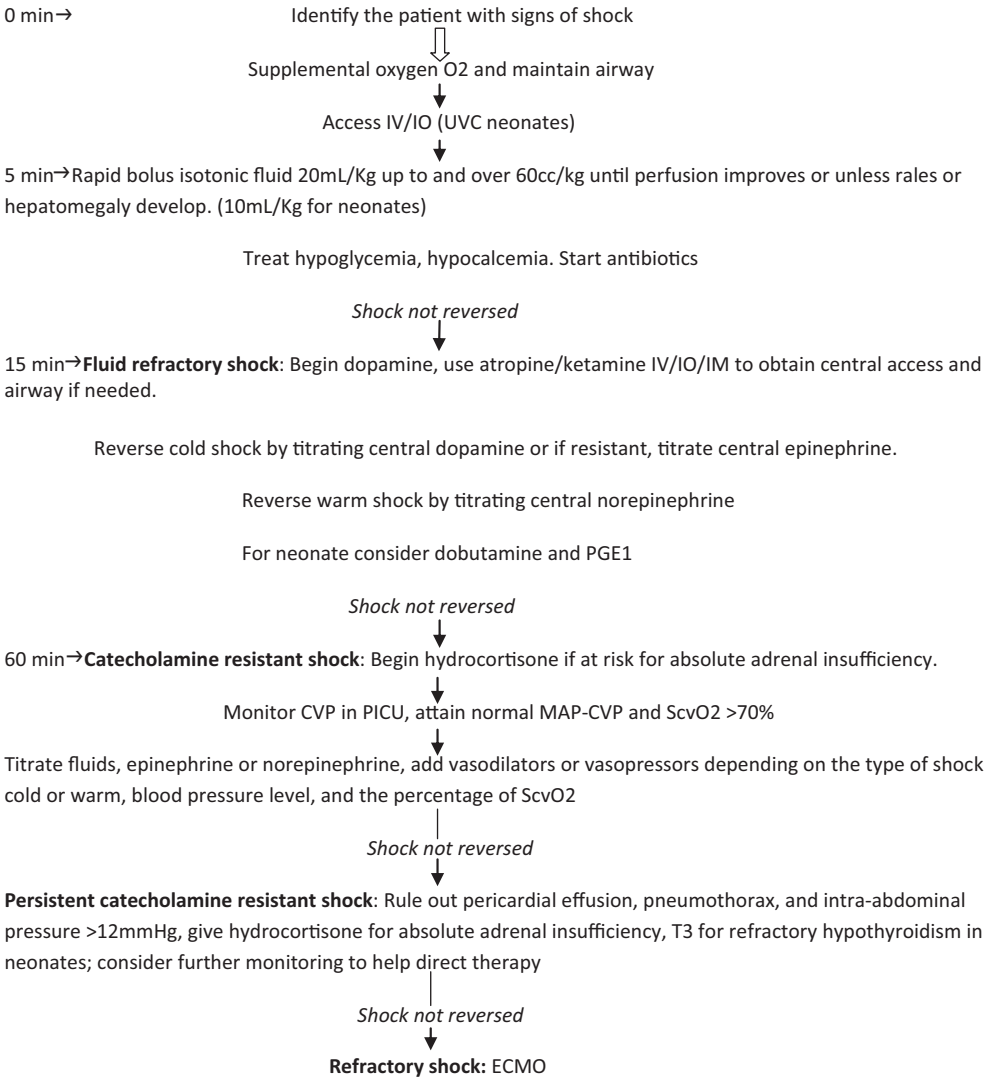
Definition
- Distributive shock is caused by derangements in vascular tone that leads to end-organ hypoperfusion

Causes

- Anaphylaxis or immunoglobulin E-mediated hypersensitivity reaction
- Neurogenic: Spinal cord trauma and spinal or epidural anesthesia; unlike other forms of shock, neurogenic shock exhibits hypotension without reflex tachycardia
- Septic shock in some children presents with vasoplegia

Septic Shock

- Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), when SIRS is triggered by an infection, is defined as sepsis
- Overwhelming inflammation resulting in hypo- or hyperthermia, tachycardia, tachypnea, and either an elevated or depressed white blood cell count (Table 1)



Algorithm for goal-directed management of hemodynamic support in septic shock summary. Adapted from 2007 ACCM clinical practice parameters for hemodynamic support of pediatric and neonatal septic shock. IV = intravenous, IO = intraosseous, UVC = umbilical venous catheter, IM = intramuscular, PGE1 = prostaglandin, CVP = central venous pressure, MAP = mean arterial pressure, ScvO2 = mixed venous oxygen saturation, ECMO = extracorporeal membrane oxygenation

Table 1 Difference between cold shock and warm shock

Cold shock	Warm shock
Low cardiac output and high SVR	High cardiac output and low SVR
Tachycardia, mottled skin, cool extremities with prolonged capillary refill, and diminished peripheral pulses	Tachycardia, plethora, warm extremities with flash capillary refill, bounding pulses, and a widened pulse pressure
Low or normal blood pressure	Low blood pressure
Dopamine with or without epinephrine may reverse the shock	Dopamine with or without norepinephrine may reverse the shock

SVR systemic vascular resistance

Management of Shock

Airway (Table 2)

- Regardless of the cause of shock, initial resuscitation must be guided by the ABCs (airway, breathing, circulation)
- Supplemental oxygen should be administered immediately
- Intubation is indicated for the patient whose mental status is altered, who is unable to protect his or her airway, or who has impending respiratory failure
- Positive-pressure ventilation also is a powerful tool to decrease afterload to the left heart of the patient presenting in cardiogenic shock
- Patients suffering shock may develop acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) which usually requires protective strategy of ventilation

Access

- Obtaining rapid vascular access with at least two wide-bore peripheral intravenous lines is critical to the timely treatment of circulatory shock
- Umbilical venous catheter (neonates only)
- Intraosseous needle (infants and children) if no other access
- Central venous access provides more stable, long-term access and should be obtained in patients who have fluid-refractory shock and who require titration of vasopressors and inotropes
- Sedatives and analgesics
- Fluid therapy
- Rapid volume resuscitation is the single most important intervention to help restore adequate organ perfusion in patients presenting with various forms of hypovolemic shock
- Initial rapid bolus of 20 mL/kg of isotonic fluid followed by immediate reassessment and titration of additional fluid administration to goals of normal BP and perfusion (capillary refill <2 s, 1 mL/kg per hour urine output, normal mental status) or until signs of fluid overload occur (rales, increased work of breathing, gallop rhythm, hepatomegaly, CVP increases without additional hemodynamic improvement)
- Patients may require up to 200 mL/kg of isotonic fluid within the first hour, particularly in cases of vascular paralysis, to restore adequate perfusion

Table 2 General evaluation of accident victim. (Adapted from: Committee on Trauma, American College of Surgeons (2008). *ATLS: Advanced Trauma Life Support Program for Doctors* (8th ed.). Chicago: American College of Surgeons)

Assessment	Management
A. Airway/cervical spine: Assess airway patency while immobilizing the cervical spine	1. Open and secure airway
	2. Maintain cervical spine immobilization
B. Breathing: Assess adequacy of oxygenation via pulse oximetry and ventilation by observing respiratory rate and tidal volume (chest rise)	1. Provide 100% oxygen
	2. Assisted ventilation as needed
	3. Treat life threatening chest injuries, including: Tension pneumothorax Open chest wound Flail chest Cardiac tamponade
C. Circulation: Assess adequacy of circulation and perfusion Measure heart rate, blood pressure, capillary refill time	1. Re-establish perfusion with fluid resuscitation (20 ml/kg 0.9% saline fluid boluses or 10 ml/kg doses of packed red blood cells)
	2. Treat significant hemorrhage
D. Disability: Assess neurologic status by examining pupil equality/reactivity and level of consciousness (alert, responsive to voice, responsive to pain, unresponsive)	1. Maximize oxygenation and perfusion, normalize ventilation (no hyperventilation)
	2. Consider adjunctive therapies (oncotic agents, diuretics)
E. Exposure: Examine for other life-threatening injuries	1. Remove all clothes

Antibiotics
- Broad-spectrum antibiotics based on age should be administered within the first hour of presentation when sepsis is suspected
- Appropriate specimens for blood, urine, and cerebrospinal fluid cultures should be obtained before antibiotic administration, although difficulty obtaining samples should not delay administration

Crystalloid versus colloid
- Isotonic crystalloid or 5% albumin for volume resuscitation in the first hour
- Beyond the first hour, the guidelines recommend crystalloid for patients who have Hgb values greater than 10 g/dL (100 g/L) and packed red blood cell transfusion for those whose Hgb values are less than 10 g/dL (100 g/L)
- In addition to restoring circulating volume, packed red blood cells also serve to increase oxygen-carrying capacity
- Fresh frozen plasma administered as an infusion is recommended for patients who have a prolonged International Normalized Ratio (INR)

Cardiovascular support
- In cases of fluid-refractory shock and cardiogenic shock, cardiovascular agents are necessary
- The choice of agent depends largely on the underlying cause and the clinical presentation of shock
- Selection of an appropriate agent is based on its known effects on inotropy, chronotropy, SVR, and PVR

Inotropic agents
- Dopamine, dobutamine, and epinephrine work on $beta_1$ receptors in the myocardium increase cytoplasmic calcium concentration and enhance myocardial contractility

Vasopressors
- At higher doses, for example, dopamine and epinephrine have increasing alpha-adrenergic effects, leading to peripheral vasoconstriction and increased SVR
- Dobutamine, on the other hand, causes peripheral and pulmonary vasodilation due to $beta_2$-adrenergic effects

Vasodilators
- Nitroprusside is a pure vasodilator used to decrease afterload and improve coronary perfusion in neonates and children who have cardiogenic shock
- Prostaglandin E1 is a potent vasodilator that relaxes smooth muscle in the ductus arteriosus to maintain patency
- It should be initiated immediately in cases of suspected cardiogenic shock presenting within the first 2 weeks after birth until a ductal-dependent lesion has been ruled out by echocardiography
- Inhaled nitric oxide is a selective pulmonary vasodilator that may be considered in the treatment of cardiogenic shock involving right ventricular failure

Inodilators
- Milrinone is a phosphodiesterase III inhibitor that has gained popularity in the treatment of cardiogenic shock due to its positive inotropic and lusitropic effects as well as its ability to reduce systemic and pulmonary afterload through vasodilation

Corticosteroids
- Hydrocortisone 50 mg/m^2 per 24 h in pediatric patients who have catecholamine-resistant septic shock and suspected or proven adrenal insufficiency
- Corticosteroids also should be administered to patients who have distributive shock caused by anaphylaxis or spinal trauma
- Antihistamines may help prevent additional mast cell degranulation in anaphylactic shock

Glycemic control
- Children presenting in shock often have a number of metabolic derangements, including hyper- or hyponatremia, hypocalcemia, and hypoglycemia. These disorders should be suspected and treated promptly

ECMO (Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation)
- Although ECMO has a definitive role in the treatment of cardiogenic shock refractory to maximum pharmacologic support, its role in the treatment of refractory septic shock has been less clear

Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome

Background
- It is a clinical entity of dyspnea, cyanosis resistant to supplemental oxygen, and bilateral chest infiltrates on chest radiography
- The most significant changes in mechanical ventilation management over the past several years have been the recommendations for the use of lower tidal volumes and limitation of pressure

Etiologies
- Septic shock (most common)
- Other more common etiologies include infectious pneumonia, aspiration pneumonia, aspiration of gastric contents and other noxious substances (e.g., hydrocarbons), burn injury, inhalational injury (e.g., thermal injury, noxious gases), transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI), pancreatitis, fat embolism, and ventilator-induce lung injury (VILI)

Clinical presentation
- History of exposure to gaseous fumes or hydrocarbon ingestion and potential aspiration
- Dyspnea usually develops shortly after the initiating stimulus, and it becomes progressively severe, reflecting the increasing alveolar flooding and decreasing pulmonary compliance
- Cough may be present
- Exacerbation of underlying chronic lung diseases can lead to severe wheezing as the chief complaint
- Mild respiratory distress, and lung sounds may remain clear on auscultation initially
- Tachypnea is typically the initial physical finding as pulmonary edema develops, as pulmonary compliance decreases, and as tidal volume decreases toward the functional residual capacity (FRC)
- Patients may develop hypoxia that is out of proportion to the underlying disease
- Over a period of hours to days, hypoxemia worsens, and the patient develops worsening dyspnea and tachypnea
- Supplemental oxygen may maintain adequate oxygenation but often fails to improve the overall clinical appearance
- Crackles may be audible throughout the lung fields, signifying pulmonary edema seen on coinciding chest radiographs
- Concomitant fever may reflect the underlying process causing ARDS (e.g., pneumonia, sepsis) or may reflect massive cytokine release

Investigations
- Arterial blood gas (ABG)
- Complete blood count (CBC)
- Electrolytes and blood urea nitrogen (BUN)

Chest radiography
- It is essential for diagnosing ARDS
- Radiographic findings immediately after the inciting event may be entirely normal or may show only the primary disease process
- Then, as the disease progresses, the lung fields become diffusely and homogeneously opaque

Management
- No treatment for ARDS is definitive
- Early anticipatory management may avoid late complications and poor outcome
- Treat the primary cause (e.g., sepsis, pneumonia) if possible
- Ventilation
  - Ventilation is the cornerstone of treating the patient with ARDS
  - Although there is no absolute criteria for derangement of gas exchange, PaO2 < 60 torr while breathing > 60 % oxygen, PaCO2 > 60 torr, and PH < 7.25 are often reasons to initiate ventilation
  - Use a minimum positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP) of 5 cm H2O. Consider use of incremental FiO2/PEEP
  - Oxygenation goal: PaO2 55–80 mmHg or SpO2 88–95 %
  - Permissive hypercapnic strategy; may allow reductions in rate and peak inspiratory pressure (PIP), thereby limiting further barotrauma/volutrauma
  - Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) and bilevel positive airway pressure (BiPAP) therapies via nasal mask or face mask have been successful in maintaining adequate oxygenation and ventilation in some patients
- Lung surfactant
  - Lung surfactant may prevent alveolar collapse, maintain pulmonary compliance, optimization of oxygenation, enhance the ciliary function, enhance the bacterial killing, and down-regulate the inflammatory response
- Nitric oxide (NO)
- ECMO

Brain Death

Definition
- Clinical demonstration of irreversible cessation of function of the entire brain, including cerebral cortex and the brain stem

History
- Known and irreversible cause
- Absence of confounding factors such as:
  - Central nervous system depressing drugs
  - Hypothermia
  - Neuromuscular blockers
  - Severe electrolyte and metabolic disorders that significantly affect consciousness
  - Un-resuscitated shock

Clinical criteria
- Comatose without spontaneous movement or respiratory effort
  - No response to auditory or visual stimuli
  - Bilateral absence of motor responses, excluding spinal reflexes
- Absence of brain reflexes
  - Pupils:
    - Dilated or midpoint and absence of light reflex

  - Ocular movements:
    - Absence of oculovestibular reflex (ice-water caloric test), tympanic membrane should be intact
    - Absence of oculocephalic reflex (doll's eye test), cervical spine should be intact
  - Absence of facial sensation
  - Absence of pharyngeal and tracheal reflexes
- Examination interval
  - Two examination by two separate clinicians are recommended

Apnea test

- No respiratory effort in response to apnea, and a rise in PaCO2, as documented by blood gas assessment

Ancillary studies

- Electroencephalogram (EEG)
- Cerebral flow study (angiography or nuclear medicine flow)
- Doppler ultrasonography (US)
- Computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) angiography studies

Suggested Readings

1. Surviving Sepsis Campaign. International guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock: 2008. Crit Care Med. 2008;36:296–327.
2. American College of Critical Care Medicine. Clinical practice parameters for hemodynamic support of pediatric and neonatal septic shock: 2007 update from the American College of Critical Care Medicine. Crit Care Med. 2009;37:666–88.
3. Report of Special Task Force. Guidelines for the determination of brain death in children. American Academy of Pediatrics Task Force on Brain Death in Children.Pediatrics. 1987;80:298–300.

Emergency Care

Steven L. Lanski and Osama Naga

Poisoning

Background
- Children less than 6 years have the greatest risk.
- Adolescent exposure either intentional or occupational
- Plant ingestions either substance experimentation or attempted self-harm
- The website http://www.aapcc.org contains useful information about poison centers

Prevention of poisoning
- Child-resistant packaging
- Anticipatory guidance in well child care
- Poison proofing child's environment, e.g., labeling and locked cabinets
- Parents to utilize online sources and contact poison control emergency number
- Carbon monoxide detectors
- Maintenance of fuel-burning appliances
- Yearly inspection of furnaces, gas pipes, and chimneys
- Car inspection for exhaust system
- No running engine in a closed garage
- Avoid indoor use of charcoal and fire sources

Evaluation of unknown substance
- Call poison control center, describe the toxin, read the label, and follow the instruction
- Pattern of toxidrome
- Amount of exposure, number of pills, number of the remaining pills, amount of liquid remaining
- Time of exposure
- Progression of symptoms
- Consider associated ingestions and underlying medical conditions

General measures for toxic exposures
- Emergency department evaluation in ingestion of a large or potential toxic doses
- Wash the skin with soap and water
- Activated charcoal absorb the substances and decreases bioavailability
- Activated charcoal is ineffective in the following; CHEM-ICaL:
  - Caustics
  - Hydrocarbons
  - Ethanol (alcohols)
  - Metals
  - Iron
  - Cyanide
  - Lithium
- Ipecac no longer used, and induction of emesis is contraindicated in hydrocarbons and caustics
- Gastric lavage
  - Contraindicated in hydrocarbons, alcohols and caustics
  - It can be used if life-threatening ingestion within 30–60 min
- Whole bowel irrigation

Anticholinergic Ingestion

Agents
- Diphenhydramine, atropine, Jimsonweed (Datura Stramonium), and deadly night shade (Atropa Belladonna)

O. Naga (✉)
Pediatric Department, Paul L Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University, Health Sciences Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, Texas 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

S. L. Lanski
Department of Pediatric Emergency Medicine, Providence Memorial Hospital, 2001 N. Oregon Street, El Paso, TX 79902, USA
e-mail: steven1.lanski@tenethealth.com

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_5,

Background
- Jimson weed and deadly night shade produce anticholinergic toxins, e.g., atropine, scopolamine, and hyoscyamine
- Common garden vegetables in the solanum genus, including tomatoes, potatoes, and eggplants.
- Cause anticholinergic symptoms

Clinical presentation (anticholinergic symptoms)
- *Dry* as a bone: Dry mouth, decrease sweating, and urination
- *Red* as a beet: Flushing
- *Blind* as a bat: Mydriasis, blurred vision
- *Mad* as a hatter: Agitation, seizures, Hallucinations
- *Hot* as a hare: Hyperthermia
- *Bloated* as a Toad (ileus, urinary retention)
- *Heart* runs alone (tachycardia)

Management
- Activated charcoal
- Physostigmine may be indicated to treat severe or persistent symptoms

Carbamazepine Ingestion

Mild ingestion
- Central nervous system (CNS) depression
- Drowsiness
- Vomiting
- Ataxia
- Slurred speech
- Nystagmus

Severe intoxication
- Seizures
- Coma
- Respiratory depression

Treatment
- Activated charcoal
- Supportive measures
- Charcoal hemoperfusion can be effective for severe intoxication

Clonidine

- Antihypertensive medication with α-2 adrenergic receptor blocking ability
- Commonly used in children with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)
- A dose as small as 0.1 mg can cause toxicity in children

Common symptoms
- Lethargy
- Miosis
- Bradycardia
- Hypotension but it may cause hypertension
- Apnea

Treatment
- Supportive care, e.g., intubation, atropine, dopamine as needed
- Electroencephalogram (EEG), blood gases
- Toxicity usually resolve in 24 h

Opiates

Common opiates
- Morphine, heroin, methadone, propoxyphene, codeine, meperidine
- Most cases are drug abuse

Symptoms
- Common triad of opiate poisoning (pinpoint pupil, coma, respiratory depression)
- Drowsiness to coma
- Miosis
- Change in mood
- Analgesia
- Respiratory depression
- Hypotension with no change in heart rate (HR)
- Decreased gastrointestinal (GI) motility
- Nausea and vomiting
- Abdominal pain

Treatment
- Airway, breathing, and circulation (ABCs)
- Intubation if necessary
- Naloxone as needed

Phenothiazine Ingestion

Common drugs
- Promethazine (Phenergan), prochlorperazine, and chlorpromazine

Symptoms
- Hypertension
- Cogwheel rigidity
- Dystonic reaction (spasm of the neck, tongue thrusting, oculogyric crisis)
- CNS depression

Treatment
- Charcoal
- Manage blood pressure
- Diphenhydramine for dystonic reaction

Foxglove (Digitalis) Ingestion

Source
- Foxglove plants.
- Produces cardioactive glycosides.
- They are also found in lily of the valley (Convallaria).

Clinical presentation
- Similar to digoxin toxicity
- Hyperkalemia
- CNS depression
- Cardiac conduction abnormalities

Treatment
- Digoxin-specific antibody fragments can be lifesaving

Seeds (Cherries, Apricots, Peaches, Apples, Plums) Ingestion

- Amygdalin is contained in seeds and produces hydrogen cyanide which is a potent toxin
- Inhibition of cellular respiration and can be lethal

Mushrooms Ingestion

- Ingestion of mushrooms also may have fatal consequences in species that harbor amatoxins (Amanita) and related compounds

Clinical presentation
- Nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea; delayed onset (6 h)
- A second latent period is followed by acute and possibly fulminant hepatitis beginning 48–72 h after ingestion

Management
- Activated charcoal
- Whole bowel irrigation
- Supportive care, including liver transplant if necessary, is the mainstay of therapy

Acetaminophen Ingestion

Background
- The single toxic acute dose is generally considered to be >200 mg/kg in children and more 7.5–10 g in adult and can cause hepatic injury or liver failure
- Any child with history of acute ingestion of >150 mg/kg of acetaminophen should be referred for assessment and measurement of acetaminophen level

Clinical presentation
- First 24 h
  - Asymptomatic or nonspecific signs
  - Nausea, vomiting, dehydration, diaphoresis, and pallor
  - Elevation of liver enzyme
- 24–72 h after ingestion
  - Tachycardia and hypotension
  - Right upper quadrant pain with or without hepatomegaly
  - Liver enzyme is more elevated
  - Elevated prothrombin time (PT) and bilirubin in severe cases
- 3–4 days post ingestion
  - Liver failure
  - Encephalopathy, with or without renal failure
  - Possible death from multi-organ failure or cerebral edema
- 4–14 days post ingestion
  - Complete recovery or death

Management
- Measure serum acetaminophen level 4 h after the reported time of ingestion
- Acetaminophen level obtained <4 h after ingestion cannot be used to estimate potential toxicity
- Check acetaminophen level 6–8 h if it is co-ingested with other substance slow GI motility, e.g., diphenhydramine
- Rumack–Matthew nomogram (Fig. 1)
  - Plot 4-h value of a single acute ingestion
  - Risk of hepatotoxicity possible if 4-h level is equal or greater than 150 mcg/ml. If fall on upper line (200 mcg/ml at 4 h) hepatotoxicity is probable
- Assess the liver function
  - Obtain hepatic transaminases level, renal function tests, and coagulation parameters
- If acetaminophen level >10 μg/ml even with normal liver function, start the N-acetylcysteine (NAC)
- If acetaminophen level is low or undetectable with abnormal liver function, NAC should be given

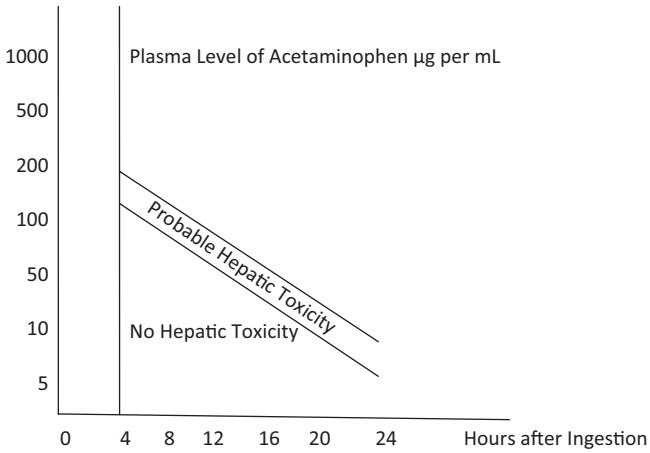


Fig. 1 Rumack–Matthew nomogram for acetaminophen poisoning. (Adapted from Rumack BH, Matthew H. Acetaminophen poisoning and toxicity. Pediatrics 55:971–876, 1975)

- Patients with a history of potentially toxic ingestion more than 8 h after ingestion should be given the loading dose of NAC and decision to continue treatment should be based on acetaminophen level or liver function test
- NAC therapy is most effective when initiated within 8 h of ingestion
- Liver transplant if severe hepatotoxicity
- Consult poison control center at 1-800-222-1222

Ibuprofen Ingestion

Background
- Inhibit prostaglandin synthesis
- May cause GI irritation, ulcers, decrease renal blood flow, and platelet dysfunction
- Dose > 400 mg/kg can cause seizure and coma
- Dose < 100 mg/kg usually does not cause toxicity

Clinical presentation
- Nausea, vomiting and epigastric pain
- Drowsiness, lethargy, and ataxia may occur
- Anion gap metabolic acidosis, renal failure, seizure and coma may occur in severe cases

Management
- Activated charcoal
- Supportive care

Salicylic acid Ingestion

Products contain an aspirin
- Baby aspirin
- Regular aspirin at home includes: Anti-diarrheal medications, topical agents, e.g., keratolytics and sport creams

Toxic dose
- Refer to emergency departments for ingestions > 150 mg/kg
- Ingestion of > 200 mg/kg is generally considered toxic, > 300 mg/kg is more significant toxicity, > 500 mg/kg is potentially fatal

Clinical presentation
- Acute salicylism; nausea, vomiting, diaphoresis, and tinnitus
- Tachypnea, hyperpnea, tachycardia, and altered mental status can be seen in moderate toxicity
- Hyperthermia and coma are seen in severe acetylsalicylic acid toxicity

Diagnosis
- Classic blood gas of salicylic acid toxicity is respiratory alkalosis, metabolic acidosis, and high anion gap
- Check serum level every 2 h until it is consistently down trending

Management
- Initial treatment is gastric decontamination with activated charcoal, volume resuscitation, and prompt initiation of sodium bicarbonate therapy in the symptomatic patients
- Goal of therapy includes a urine pH of 7.5–8.0, a serum pH of 7.5–7.55, and decreasing salicylate levels

Tricyclic Antidepressants Ingestion

Toxicity
- Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) can cause significant toxicity in children even with ingestion of 1–2 pills (10–20 mg/kg)

Clinical presentation
- It gives the clinical feature of anticholinergic toxidrome; delirium, mydriasis, dry mucous membrane, tachycardia, hyperthermia, hypotension, and urinary retention
- Cardiovascular and CNS symptoms dominate the clinical presentation
- Most common cardiac manifestations; widening of QRS complex, premature ventricular contractions, ventricular arrhythmia
- Refractory hypotension is poor prognostic indicator, and is the most common cause of death in TCAs toxicity

Electrocardiography
- A QRS duration > 100 ms identifies patients who risk for seizures and cardiac arrhythmia

- An R wave in lead aVR of > 3 mm is independent predictor of toxicity
- Electrocardiography (ECG) parameter is superior to measured serum of TCAs

Management
- Stabilization of patient is the most important initial step specially protecting the airway, and ventilation support as needed, activated charcoal in appropriate patients
- Obtain ECG as soon as possible
- ECG indication for sodium bicarbonate therapy include: QRS duration > 100 ms, ventricular dysrhythmias and hypotension

Caustic Ingestion

Background
- Strong acid and alkalis < 2 or > 12 pH can produce severe injury even in small-volume ingestion
- Patient can have significant esophageal injury without visible oral burns.

Clinical presentation
- Pain, drooling, vomiting, and abdominal pain
- Difficulty in swallowing, or refusal to swallow
- Stridor, and respiratory distress are common presenting symptoms
- Esophageal stricture caused by circumferential burn and require repeated dilation or surgical correction

Management
- Emesis and lavage are contraindicated
- Endoscopy should be performed within 12–24 h in symptomatic patients, or on basis of history and characteristics of ingested products

Organophosphate and Insecticide Exposure

Clinical presentation
- DUMBBELLS - Diarrhea, Urination, Miosis, Bradycardia, Bronchospasm, Emesis, Lacrimation, Lethargy, Salivation, and Seizures

Management
- Wash all exposed skin with soap and water and immediately remove all exposed clothing
- Fluid and electrolyte replacement, intubation, and ventilation, if necessary
- Antidote is atropine and pralidoxime

Hydrocarbon Ingestion

Products contain hydrocarbon substances
- Mineral spirits, kerosene, gasoline, turpentine, and others

Clinical presentation
- Aspiration of small amount of hydrocarbons can lead to serious, and potentially, life-threatening toxicity
- Pneumonitis is the most important manifestation of hydrocarbon toxicity
- Benzene is known to cause cancer, most commonly acute myelogenous leukemia
- Inhalants can cause dysrhythmias and sudden death including toluene, propellants, volatile nitrite, and the treatment is beta blocker

Management
- Emesis and lavage are contraindicated
- Activated charcoal should be avoided due to risk of inducing vomiting
- Observation and supportive care, each child who is not symptomatic should be observed for at least 4–6 h in Emergency department (ED)
- Neither corticosteroids or prophylactic antibiotics have shown any clear benefits

Methanol Ingestion

- Toxicity primarily caused by formic acid

Clinical presentation
- Drowsiness, nausea, and vomiting
- Metabolic acidosis
- Visual disturbances; blurred and cloudy vision, feeling being in snow storm, untreated cases can lead to blindness

Management
- Methanol blood level and osmolar gap may be used as surrogate marker
- IV fluids, glucose and bicarbonate as needed for electrolyte imbalances/dehydration
- Fomepizole is the most preferred antidote for both methylene and ethylene glycol. Ethanol can be used if Fomepizole is unavailable
- If > 30 ml methanol ingested, consider hemodialysis

Ethylene Glycol Ingestion (Antifreeze)

Clinical presentation
- Nausea, vomiting, CNS depression, anion gap metabolic acidosis
- Hypocalcemia, renal failure due to deposition of calcium oxalate crystals in the renal tubules

Management
- Osmolar gap can be used to estimate ethylene glycol level
- IV fluids, glucose and bicarbonate as needed for electrolyte imbalances/dehydration
- Fomepizole the most preferred antidote for both methylene and ethylene glycol. Ethanol can be used if Fomepizole is unavailable

Carbon Monoxide Poisoning

Sources of CO
- Wood-burning stove, old furnaces, and automobiles

Clinical presentation
- Headache, malaise, nausea, and vomiting are the most common flu or food poisoning like early symptoms
- Confusion, ataxia, syncope, tachycardia, and tachypnea at higher exposure
- Coma, seizure, myocardial ischemia, acidosis, cardiovascular collapse, and potentially death in severe cases

Management
- Evaluate for COHb level in symptomatic patients; arterial blood gas with CO level, creatine kinase in severe cases, and ECG in any patient with cardiac symptoms
- 100% oxygen to enhance elimination of CO, use until CO < 10% and symptoms resolve
- Severely poisoned patient may benefit from hyperbaric oxygen specially if COHb > 25%, significant CNS symptoms, or cardiac dysfunction

Iron Ingestion

Background
- It is a common cause of pediatric poisoning.
- Ingestion of > 60 mg/kg/dose is toxic

Clinical presentation
- Gastrointestinal stage (30 min−6 h)
  - Nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain
  - Hematemesis, and bloody diarrhea in severe cases
- Stability stage (6–24 h)
  - No symptoms: Patient must be observed during this stage
- Systemic toxicity within (48 h)
  - Cardiovascular collapse
  - Severe metabolic acidosis
- Hepatotoxicity and liver failure (2–3 days)
- Gastrointestinal and pyloric scarring (2–6 weeks)

Management
- Abdominal X-ray
  - May show the pill
  - Chewable and liquid form vitamins usually not visible
- Serum iron < 300 mcg/dl in at hours is nontoxic
- Iron blood level > 500 mcg/dl is toxic

Treatment
- Chelation with IV deferoxamine if serum iron > 500 mcg/dl (Table 1)

Head Trauma

- Most head trauma are not serious and require only observation.

Physical signs of possible serious injuries
- Basilar skull fracture
  - Raccoon eyes
  - Battle's sign
  - Hemotympanum
- Temporal fracture
  - Potential middle meningeal artery injury
  - Hearing loss
  - Facial paralysis
  - Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) otorrhea
  - Facial paralysis
- Scalp swelling or deep lacerations
- Pupillary changes
- Retinal hemorrhage and bruises
  - In infant indicate possible abuse

Indication for head CT scan
- Change in mental status
- Loss of consciousness more than 1 min
- Acute skull fracture
- Bulging fontanelle
- Signs of basilar skull fracture
- Focal neurological sign
- Seizures
- Irritability
- Persistent vomiting

Table 1 Common antidotes for poisoning

Poison	Antidote
Acetaminophen	*N*-Acetylcysteine (mucomyst)
Anticholinergics	Physostigmine
Benzodiazepines	Flumazenil
β-blockers	Glucagon
Calcium channel blockers	Insulin and calcium salts
Carbon monoxide	Oxygen
Cyanide	Nitrates
Digitalis	Digoxin-specific fragments antigen-binding(Fab) antibodies
Ethylene Glycol and methanol	Fomepizole
Iron	Deferoxamine
Isoniazid (INH)	Pyridoxine
Lead and other heavy metals, e.g., mercury and arsenic	BAL (dimercaprol)
Methemoglobinemia	Methylene blue
Opioids	Naloxone
Organophosphates	Atropine and pralidoxime
Salicylates	Sodium bicarbonate
Sulfonylureas	Octreotide
Tricyclic antidepressants	Sodium bicarbonate

Management of head trauma

- Protection of airway if unresponsive or Glasgow Coma Scale less than 8
- Intracranial pressure (ICP) monitoring
- Maintain cerebral perfusion pressure at 40 mmHg
- IV mannitol or 3 % saline if increased ICP
- Mild hyperventilation
- Control hyperthermia
- Consult neurosurgery

Drowning

Drowning is a major cause in head injuries and death

- Initial peak
  - Toddler age group
- Second peak
  - Male adolescents
- Children younger than 1 year of age
  - Often drown in bathtubs, buckets, and toilets
- Children 1–4 years of age
  - Likely drown in swimming pools where they have been unsupervised temporarily (usually for < 5 min)
  - Typical incidents involve a toddler left unattended temporarily or under the supervision of an older sibling
- Adolescent and young adult age groups (ages 15–24 years)
  - Most incidents occur in natural water
- Approximately 90 % of *drowning* occur within 10 yards of safety
- Parent should be within an arm's length of a swimming child (anticipatory guidance)

Mechanism of injury

- Initial swallowing of water
- Laryngospasm
- Loss of consciousness
- Hypoxia
- Loss of circulation
- Ischemia
- CNS injury (the most common cause of death)
- Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) may develop
- Salt water drowning classically associated with:
  - Hypernatremia
  - Hemoconcentration
  - Fluid shifts and electrolyte disturbances are rarely seen clinically
- Fresh water drowning classically associated with:
  - Hyponatremia and hemodilution
  - Hyperkalemia
  - Hemoglobinuria and renal tubular damage
- Management of drowning and near drowning
  - Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) at the scene
  - Admit regardless of clinical status
  - All children with submersion should be monitored in the hospital for 6–8 h
  - If no symptoms develop can be discharged safely
  - 100 % oxygen with bag and mask immediately
  - Nasogastric tube for gastric decompression
  - Cervical spine immobilization if suspected cervical injuries
  - Positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP) and positive pressure ventilations in case of respiratory arrest
  - Continuous cardiac monitoring
  - Bolus of normal saline or Ringer's lactate
  - Vasopressors
  - Defibrillation if indicated

Wounds

General principles of wound care
- The time and mechanism of injury because these factors relate to subsequent management options.
- Accidental or non-accidental trauma
- The timing of the injury may affect management (lacerations > 8–24 h old may not be repaired depending on location).
- Acute wounds often can be repaired primarily
- Older wounds may require delayed primary closure or healing by secondary intention

Hemostasis
- Persistent bleeding despite direct pressure can be controlled with the careful application of a tourniquet above the injury
- The use of tourniquets may lead to ischemia, and the need for a tourniquet can indicate a more severe soft tissue or vascular injury that may require surgery
- Blood pressure cuff inflated to suprasystolic pressures is effective
- Local infiltration with lidocaine containing epinephrine; except:
  - Digits
  - Ears
  - Nose
  - Penis

Wound cleaning
- Decontamination of the wound is the most important step in preventing infectious complications.
- Irrigation.
- Removal of foreign material from the wound is essential to minimize the risk of infection

Dressings
- Once the wound has been evaluated, decontaminated, and repaired, an appropriate dressing should be applied
- Topical antibiotic ointments (e.g., bacitracin) and an occlusive dressing (moist wound heals better)
- Dressings can be left in place for 24–48 h and then changed once or twice daily
- Wounds that cross joints may require splinting or bulky dressings to minimize movement and tension on the wound

Prophylaxis
- All children who have cutaneous wounds should have their tetanus status reviewed and appropriate prophylaxis administered
- Empiric use of antibiotics is not indicated except bites

Puncture Wounds

Background
- Most are plantar puncture wounds from nails, punctures also can occur in other parts of the body.
- Immediate evaluation should assess for any life-threatening injuries, especially for puncture wounds of the head, neck, chest, and abdomen
- Particular attention should be paid to wound depth, possible retained foreign bodies, and risk of infection

Evaluation
- Timing and mechanism of the injury
- Puncture wounds that are older than 6 h, occur from bites, have retained foreign body or vegetative debris, or extend to a significant depth have a higher risk of infection
- Radiography may help identify a retained foreign body or fracture
- Ultrasonography is a convenient, radiation-free, and highly sensitive modality for identifying retained foreign bodies

Management
- Copious irrigation
- Most puncture wounds can be managed in the outpatient setting with an antibiotic, dressing and warm soaks
- Most infected puncture wounds are caused by *S. aureus* or *S. pyogenes*, and respond to oral antibiotics
- Infected puncture wounds that result from a nail through a tennis shoe should be evaluated for possible *pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection
- Additional imaging and intravenous antibiotics may be necessary to treat more serious infections, including cellulitis, abscess, osteochondritis, and osteomyelitis
- Surgical consultation for potential debridement or retained foreign body removal should be considered for wounds refractory to medical management

Lacerations

- Laceration is a traumatic disruption to the dermis layer of the skin
- The most common anatomic locations for lacerations are the face (~60%) and upper extremities (~25%)

Evaluation
- An evaluation for life-threatening injuries is the first priority
- Ongoing bleeding that may cause hypovolemic shock
- Applying direct pressure usually is successful
- Sphygmomanometer may be used for up to 2 h on an extremity

- Ring tourniquet on a digit for up to 30 min to help control ongoing blood loss
- Lacerations of the neck should be evaluated for deeper structural injuries
- If developmentally appropriate, two-point discrimination at the finger pads provides the best assessment of digital nerve function
- It is critical to identify foreign material within the laceration

Anesthetics and anxiolysis
- The use of the topical anesthetic LET (4% ***L***idocaine, 1:2000 ***E***pinephrine, and 0.5%***T***etracaine) has been shown to be effective and to reduce length of stay
- LET usually is effective 20–30 min after application to a laceration site on the face but often needs twice that amount of time to be effective elsewhere
- Blanching of the site after application most often indicates achievement of effective anesthesia
- A local anesthetic also may be used to prepare for placement of sutures

Closure of lacerations
- Dermabond: It is critical that the laceration be dry and well approximated to avoid application below the epidermal surface, which may cause the wound to gape open or lead to a "Dermabond Oma"
- Evenly spaced suture placement: The general rule is sutures should be spaced the same distance as they are placed from the wound edge. For irregular wound shapes, approximate the midpoint of the wound first and then work laterally

Lip lacerations
- Lip laceration require special care if the injury crosses the vermilion border
- It is essential to approximate the vermilion border with a suture. Failure to do so may result in a poor cosmetic outcome
- An infraorbital or mental nerve block along the lower gum line may be considered to reduce tissue distortion for lip lacerations, including those through the vermilion border

Lacerations of the nail bed
- It may be painful and produce anxiety for the child and parent
- A digital nerve block should be applied to provide adequate analgesia for this injury
- If the nail has been removed during the injury, the nail bed should be repaired with absorbable sutures by using a reverse cutting needle
- The nail should be placed under the eponychium (cuticle) to preserve this space
- If a nail is not available, a small piece of sterile aluminum foil from the suture pack may be used as a substitute for 3 weeks
- If possible, a small hole can be placed in the nail plate to allow for drainage and to avoid a subungual hematoma
- The nail can be secured with tissue adhesive and tape adhesive
- Approximately half of all nail bed injuries are associated with a fracture of the distal phalanx
- No evidence that antimicrobial prophylaxis reduces the rate of infection
- Most hand surgeons recommend a 3- to 5-day course of antibiotic (e.g., cephalexin)
- Wrapping dressings too tightly around the digit should be avoided because this may cause tissue ischemia and infarction
- Daily dressing changes are recommended to evaluate the wound

Removal times for sutures (sutures removed before 7 days are unlikely to leave suture tracks)
- Face 3–5 days
- Scalp 5–7 days
- Trunk 5–7 days
- Extremities 7–10 days
- Joints 10–14 days

Animal and Human Bites

Dog Bites

- Dog bite causes a crushing-type wound.
- Extreme pressure of dog bite may damage deeper structures such as bones, vessels, tendons, muscle, and nerves.

Cat Bites

- The sharp pointed teeth of cats usually cause puncture wounds and lacerations that may inoculate bacteria into deep tissues
- Infections caused by cat bites generally develop faster than those of dogs

Other Animals

- Foxes, raccoons, skunks, and bats exposure are a high risk for rabies

Human Bites

Three general types of injuries can lead to complications:
- Closed-fist injury
- Chomping injury to the finger
- Puncture-type wounds about the head caused by clashing with a tooth

Common bacteria involved in bite wound infections include the following:

Dog bites
- *Staphylococcus* species
- *Eikenella* species
- *Pasteurella* species

Cat bites
- *Pasteurella* species
- *Bacteroides* species

Human bites
- *Eikenella Corrodens*
- *Staphylococcus, Streptococcus*
- *Staphylococcus aureus* is associated with some of the most severe infections
- Human bites can transmit the following organism:
  - Hepatitis B, hepatitis C, herpes simplex virus (HSV), and syphilis

Clinical presentation
- Time and location of event
- Type of animal and its status (i.e., health, rabies vaccination history, behavior,)
- Circumstances surrounding the bite (i.e., provoked or defensive bite versus unprovoked bite)
- Location of bites (most commonly on the upper extremities and face)

Laboratory
- Fresh bite wounds without signs of infection do not need to be cultured
- Infected bite wounds should be cultured to help guide future antibiotic therapy
- CBC and blood culture if clinically required.

Imaging studies
- Radiography is indicated if any concerns exist that deep structures are at risk (e.g., hand wounds, deep punctures, crushing bites, *especially over joints*)

Management
- Debridement and removing devitalized tissue
  - It is an effective means of preventing infection
- Irrigation
  - In general, 100 ml of irrigation solution per centimeter of wound is required with normal saline
- Primary closure
  - It may be considered in limited bite wounds that can be cleansed effectively (this excludes puncture wounds, i.e., cat bites)
  - Other wounds are best treated by delayed primary closure
- Facial wounds
  - Because of the excellent blood supply, are at low risk for infection, even if closed primarily.
  - The risk of infection must be discussed with the patient prior to closure

General management of bites
- Fresh bite wounds without signs of infection do not need to be cultured
- Infected bite wounds should be cultured to help guide future antibiotic therapy
- Local public health authorities should be notified of all bites and may help with recommendations for rabies prophylaxis
- Consider tetanus and rabies prophylaxis for all wounds

Antibiotic therapy
- All human and animal bites should be treated with antibiotics.
- The choice between oral and parenteral antimicrobial agents should be based on the severity of the wound and on the clinical status of the victim
- *Oral Amoxicillin–Clavulanate* is an excellent choice for empirical oral therapy for human and animal bite injuries
- Parenteral Ampicillin–Sulbactam is the drug of choice in severe cases
- If patient is allergic to penicillin, clindamycin in combination with trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole can be given
- Antirabies treatment may be indicated for the following: If stray dog, not captured and dog not provoked prior to attack not captured, or known dogs found to have rabies within 10 days of bite, or any dog or animal proven to have rabies.

Snake Bites

Background
- Most snakebites are non poisonous and are delivered by non poisonous species.
  - North America is home to 25 species of poisonous snakes
  - Characteristics of most poisonous snakes
  - Triangular head
  - Elliptical eyes
  - Pit between the eyes and nose
  - For example, rattlesnakes, cotton mouth and copperh eads
  - Few snakes with round head are venomous, e.g., coral snakes (red on yellow bands)

Clinical presentation
- Local manifestation
  - Local swelling, pain, and paresthesias may be present
  - Soft pitting edema that generally develops over 6–12 h but may start within 5 min
  - Bullae
  - Streaking
  - Erythema or discoloration
  - Contusions
- Systemic toxicity
  - Hypotension
  - Petechiae, epistaxis, hemoptysis
  - Paresthesias and dysesthesias—Forewarn neuromuscular blockade and respiratory distress (more common with coral snakes).
  - The time elapsed since the bite is a necessary component of the history
  - Determine history of prior exposure to antivenin or snakebite. (this increases risk and severity of anaphylaxis).
  - Assessment of vital signs, airway, breathing, and circulation

Laboratory
- CBC with differential and peripheral blood smear
- Coagulations profile
- Fibrinogen and split products
- Blood chemistries, including electrolytes, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), creatinine
- Urinalysis for myoglobinuria
- Arterial blood gas determinations and/or lactate level for patients with systemic symptoms

Radiography
- Baseline chest radiograph in patients with pulmonary edema
- Plain radiograph on bitten body part to rule out retained fang

Management
- Prehospital care
- Monitor vital signs and airway
- Restrict activity and immobilize the affected area
- Immediately transfer to definitive care
- Do not give antivenin in the field

Indication for antivenom
- Hemodynamic or respiratory instability
- Abnormal coagulation studies
- Neurotoxicity, e.g., paralysis of diaphragm
- Evidence of local toxicity with progressive soft tissue swelling
- Antivenom is relatively specific for snake species against which they designed to protect
- There is no benefit to administer antivenom to unrelated species due to risk of anaphylaxis and expenses as well

Orthopedic consultation
- Surgical assessment focuses on the injury site and concern for the development of compartment syndrome
- Fasciotomy is indicated only for those patients with objective evidence of elevated compartment pressure
- Bitten extremities should be marked proximal and distal to the bite and the circumference at this location should be monitored every 15 min to monitor for progressive edema and compartment syndrome

Black Widow Spider Bite

Background
- Black spider with bright-red or orange abdomen
- Neurotoxin acts at the presynaptic membrane of the neuromuscular junction, and decreased reuptake of acetylcholine and severe muscle cramping

Clinical presentation
- Pricking sensation that fades almost immediately
- Uncomfortable sensation in the bitten extremity and regional lymph node tenderness
- A “target” or“ halo” lesion may appear at the bite site
- Proximal muscle cramping, including pain in the back, chest, or abdomen, depending on the site of the bite

- Dysautonomia that can include nausea, vomiting, malaise, sweating, hypertension, tachycardia, and a vague feeling of dysphoria

Management
- *Analgesics* should be administered in doses sufficient to relieve all pain
  - *Oral medications* may be tried for minor pain
  - *Intravenous opioid analgesics*, such as morphine or meperidine, should be administered to all patients who are experiencing significant pain
  - Benzodiazepines are adjunctive to the primary use of analgesics
- Hydration and treatment of severe hypertension
- Hypertension
  - Frequently, adequate analgesia alleviates hyperten sion
  - *Dangerous hypertension is rare,* but if it is present despite adequate analgesia, nitroprusside or antivenin should be considered

Brown Recluse Spider

Background
- Dark, violin-shaped mark on the thorax
- Venom causes significant local skin necrosis

Clinical presentation
- Almost painless bite, and only rarely is a spider recovered
- Erythema, itching, and swelling begin 1 to several hours after the bite
- Central ischemic pallor to a blue/gray irregular macule to the development of a vesicle
- The central area may necrose, forming an eschar
- Induration of the surrounding tissue peaks at 48–96 h
- Lymphadenopathy may be present
- The entire lesion resolves slowly, often over weeks to months

Management
- Tetanus status should be assessed and updated
- Signs of cellulitis treated with an antibiotic that is active against skin flora
- Treatment is directed at the symptoms

Scorpion Stings

Background
- The only scorpion species of medical importance in the USA is the Arizona bark scorpion (*Centruroides Sculpturatus*).
- Toxins in its venom interfere with activation of sodium channels and enhance firing of axons.

Clinical presentation
- Local pain is the most frequent symptom
- Usually no local reaction
- In small children
  - Uncontrolled jerking movements of the extremities
  - Peripheral muscle fasciculation, tongue fasciculation, facial twitching, and rapid disconjugate eye movements
  - May misdiagnosed as experiencing seizures
- Severe reaction
  - Agitation
  - Extreme tachycardia
  - Salivation
  - Respiratory distress

Management
- Maintenance of a patent airway and mechanical ventilation in severe cases
- Victims may be managed solely with supportive care:
  - Analgesia and sedation
  - Airway support and ventilation
  - Supplemental oxygen administration
- Antivenin therapy also may obviate or reduce the need for airway and ventilatory support

Status Epilepticus

- Status epilepticus (SE) is defined as a seizure that lasts more than 30 min
- Treatment of SE should be based on an institutional protocol, such as the following:

Management
- Initial management
  - Attend to the ABCs before starting any pharmacologic intervention
  - Place patients in the lateral decubitus position to avoid aspiration of emesis and to prevent epiglottis closure over the glottis

  - Make further adjustments of the head and neck if necessary to improve airway patency
  - Immobilize the cervical spine if trauma is suspected
  - Administer 100 % oxygen by facemask
  - Assist ventilation and use artificial airways (e.g., endotracheal intubation) as needed
  - Suction secretions and decompress the stomach with a nasogastric tube
  - Carefully monitor vital signs, including blood pressure
  - Carefully monitor the patient's temperature, as hyperthermia may worsen brain damage
  - In the first 5 min of seizure activity, before starting any medications, try to establish IV access and to obtain samples for laboratory tests and for seizure medications
  - Infuse isotonic IV fluids plus glucose at a rate of 20 ml/kg/h (e.g., 200 ml D5NS over 1 h for a 10-kg child)
  - In children younger than 6 years, use intraosseous (IO) infusion if IV access cannot be established within 5–10 min
- Laboratory
  - Finger stick blood glucose
  - If serum glucose is low or cannot be measured, give children 2 ml/kg of 25 % glucose
  - If the seizure fails to stop within 4–5 min, prompt administration of anticonvulsants may be indicated
  - BMP and other lab depending on the history and physical examination
- Anticonvulsant medication: Selection can be based on seizure duration as follows:
  - 6–15 min: Lorazepam (0.05–0.1 mg/kg IV or IO slowly infused over 2–5 min); or diazepam per rectum at 0.5 mg/kg, not to exceed 10 mg
  - 16–35 min: Phenytoin (Dilantin) or fosphenytoin (15–20 mg or PE/Kg max 1500 mg), not to exceed infusion rate of 1 mg/kg/min; do not dilute in D5 W; if unsuccessful, phenobarbital 15–20 mg/kg IV; increase infusion rate by 100 mg/min; phenobarbital may be used in infants before phenytoin
  - 45–60 min: Pentobarbital anesthesia (patient already intubated); or midazolam, loading dose 0.1–0.3 mg/kg IV followed by continuous IV infusion at a rate of 0.1–0.3 mg/kg/h
  - *Pentobarbital anesthesia* is administered as follows:
  - Loading dose: 5–7 mg/kg IV
  - May repeat 1-mg/kg to 5-mg/kg boluses until EEG exhibits burst suppression; closely monitor hemodynamics and support blood pressure as indicated
  - Maintenance dose: 0.5–3 mg/kg/h IV; monitor EEG to keep burst suppression pattern at 2–8 bursts/min
  - Other specific treatments may be indicated if the clinical evaluation identifies precipitants of the seizures. Selected agents and indications are as follows:
  - Naloxone—0.1 mg/kg/dose, IV preferably (if needed may administer IM or SQ) for narcotic overdose
  - Pyridoxine—50–100 mg IV/IM for possible dependency, deficiency, or isoniazid toxicity
  - Antibiotics—If meningitis is strongly suspected, initiate treatment with antibiotics prior to CSF analysis or CNS imaging

Burns

First-degree burn
- Superficial, dry, painful to touch, and heals in less than 1 week

Second-degree burn
- Partial thickness and pink or possibly mottled red
- Exhibits bullae or frank weeping on the surface
- Usually is painful unless classified as deep and heals in 1–3 weeks
- Second-degree burns commonly are caused by scald injuries and result from brief exposure to the heat source

Third-degree burn
- It is the most serious
- Pearly white, charred, hard, or parchment-like
- Dead skin (eschar) is white, tan, brown, black, and occasionally red
- Superficial vascular thrombosis can be observed

Electrical burns
- Superficial burns can be associated with deep tissue injuries and complications
- Complications of electric burns
  - Cardiac arrhythmia
  - Ventricular fibrillation
  - Myocardial damage
  - Myoglobinuria
  - Renal failure
  - Neurologic damage can develop up to 2 years following an electrical burn
  - Guillain–Barré syndrome
  - Transverse myelitis
  - Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
  - Paresis
  - Paralysis
  - Eye injuries

  - Cataracts are the most common complications
  - Fractures and joint dislocation can occur

Management

- *The superficial burn* wound that extends to less than 10% total body surface area (TBSA) usually can be treated on an outpatient basis unless abuse is suspected
- *Cotton gauze occlusive dressing* to protect the damaged skin from bacterial contamination:
  - Eliminate air movement over the wound (thus reducing pain)
  - Decrease water loss
  - Dressings are changed daily
- *Topical antimicrobial agent* should be applied to the wound prior to the dressing for prophylaxis, e.g., silver sulfadiazine
  - *Silver sulfadiazine* has activity against *Staphylococcus aureus, Escherichia coli, Klebsiella* spp, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Proteus* spp, and *Candida albicans*
  - The primary adverse effect of silver sulfadiazine is leukopenia, which occurs in 5–15% of treated patients
- Application of various wound membrane dressings can promote healing with less painful wound dressing changes

Initial treatment of a child who has extensive burns

- Fluid resuscitation to prevent shock
- Early excision and grafting of the burn wound coupled with early nutrition support
- Identification of airway involvement due to inhalation injury
- Measures to treat sepsis
- Fluid Administration
  - Once the nature and extent of injury are assessed, fluid resuscitation is begun.
  - Two large-bore intravenous catheters
  - Parkland Formula for fluid requirements
    - 4 ml/kg/day for each percent of body surface area (BSA) burned
  - The first half of the fluid load is infused over the first 8 h post-burn
  - The remainder is infused over the ensuing 16 h
  - The infusion rates should be adjusted to maintain a urine flow of 1 ml/kg per hour
  - During the second 24 h, fluid administration is reduced 25–50%

Resuscitation

ABCs

- Stabilize airway, be sure it is patent
- Place on oxygen, determine if patient requires assisted ventilations
- Chest compressions if no heartbeat or if < 60 bpm (< 80 in infants and not increasing with ventilation)
- IV fluids 20 ml/kg normal saline or lactated ringers

Shock

- Goals—improve tissue perfusion, improve metabolic imbalance, restore end-organ function.
- Types
  - Hypovolemic—dehydration, blood loss
  - Distributive—anaphylaxis, neurogenic, sepsis
  - Cardiogenic—poor cardiac function
  - Obstructive—cardiac tamponade, tension pneumothorax
- Treatment
  - Position—trendelenburg may be helpful
  - Oxygen
  - IV access
  - Fluid resuscitation—20 ml/kg bolus crystalloid if not improving after 2–3 boluses consider packed red blood cells (PRBC) may use less fluid in cardiogenic shock
  - Vasopressors if refractory to fluids
  - Warm shock (septic)—norepinephrine
  - Normotensive shock—dopamine
  - Hypotensive shock—epinephrine
  - Adrenal insufficiency—fluid refractory and pressor dependent shock should make you suspect adrenal insufficiency
  - If suspected give hydrocortisone 2 mg/kg (100 mg max)
  - Septic shock—antibiotics
  - Anaphylaxis—epinephrine, diphenhydramine, H2 blockers and steroids
- Monitoring
  - Cardiopulmonary status
  - Temperature
  - Mental status
  - Urine output
  - Labs help with end-organ function assessment and for sepsis evaluation

Tachycardias with Pulse

- Sinus—narrow complex, determine cause and treat accordingly
  - Causes 4 H's and 4 T's plus pain
    - Hypoxemia, hypovolemia, hypothermia, hypo/hyperkalemia–metabolic
    - Tension pneumothorax, tamponade, toxins, thromboembolism
- Supraventricular—> 220 infants and > 180 children, usually narrow complex, no p waves, consistent rate

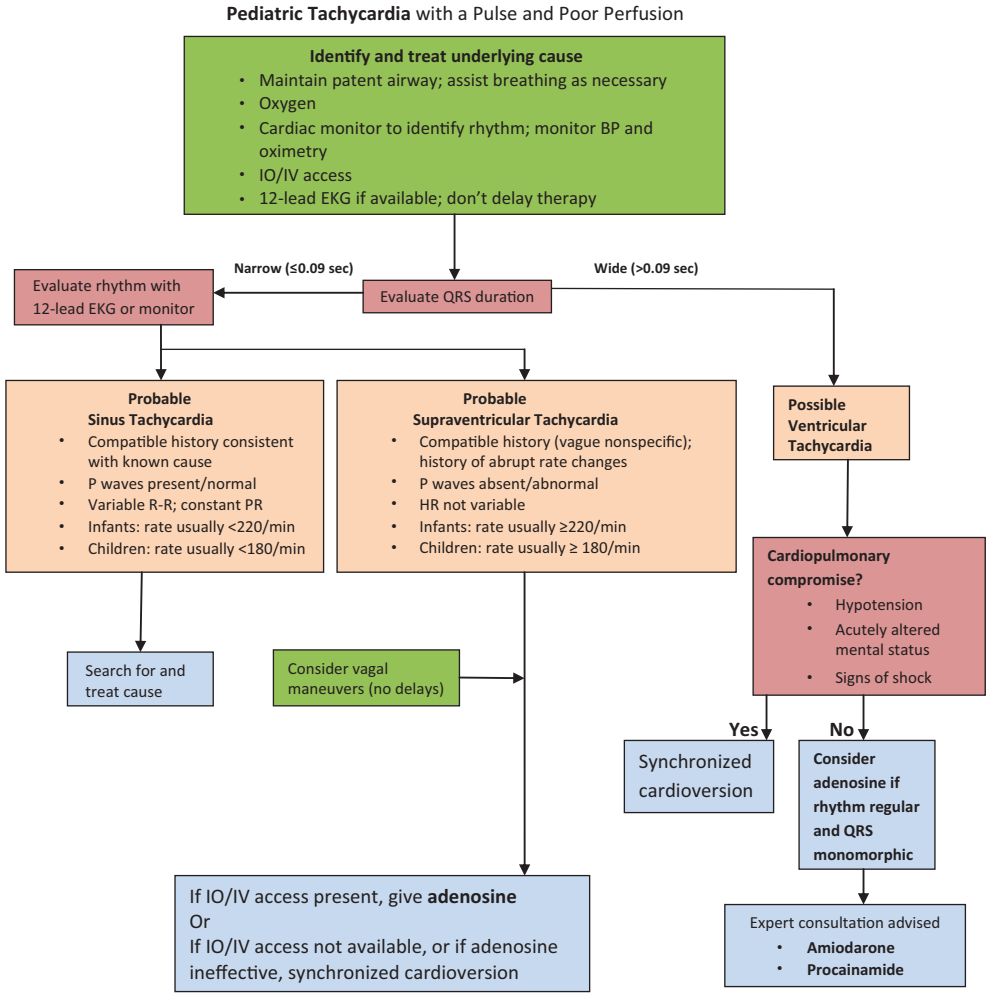


Fig. 2 Pediatric advance life support tachycardia algorithm. *HR* heart rate, *IV* intravenous, *IO* intraosseous, *EKG* electrocardiogram. (Kleinman ME et al. American Heart Association guideline for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care, part 14. Circulation 2010, 122, suppl. 3, pp. S876–S908, Fig. 3, p. S888)

  - Adenosine if stable 0.1 mg/kg (6 mg max) if unsuccessful 0.2 mg/kg (12 mg max), rapid push
  - Synchronized cardioversion if unstable 0.5–1 J/kg increase to 2 J/kg (Fig. 2)
- Ventricular tachycardia—wide complex tachycardia—sharks tooth appearance
  - Establish cause and treat if stable
  - Synchronized cardioversion 0.5–1 J/kg if unsuccessful 2 J/kg
  - Amiodarone 5 mg/kg, lidocaine and procainamide are other options
- Torsades de pointes—ventricular tachycardia with oscillating amplitudes
  - IV Magnesium 25–50 mg/kg (max 2 g) if cardiovascularly stable
  - Defibrillation if unstable 2 J/kg increase to 4 J/kg if lower dose unsuccessful

Tachycardia without Pulse

- Asystole—no electrical activity will look like flat line on monitor
  - CPR and epinephrine 0.1 ml/kg (1:10,000)
- Pulseless electrical activity (PEA)—may look like sinus tachycardia but with no pulse (no ventricular contractions)
  - CPR and epinephrine 0.1 ml/kg (1:10,000)
- Ventricular tachycardia (without pulse) or ventricular fibrillation
  - CPR
  - Defibrillate 2 J/kg increase to 4 J/kg if initial unsuccessful
  - Add epinephrine after second defibrillation if unsuccessful
  - Defibrillation followed by epinephrine each round every 3–5 min
  - Amiodarone and lidocaine can be considered after epinephrine attempted

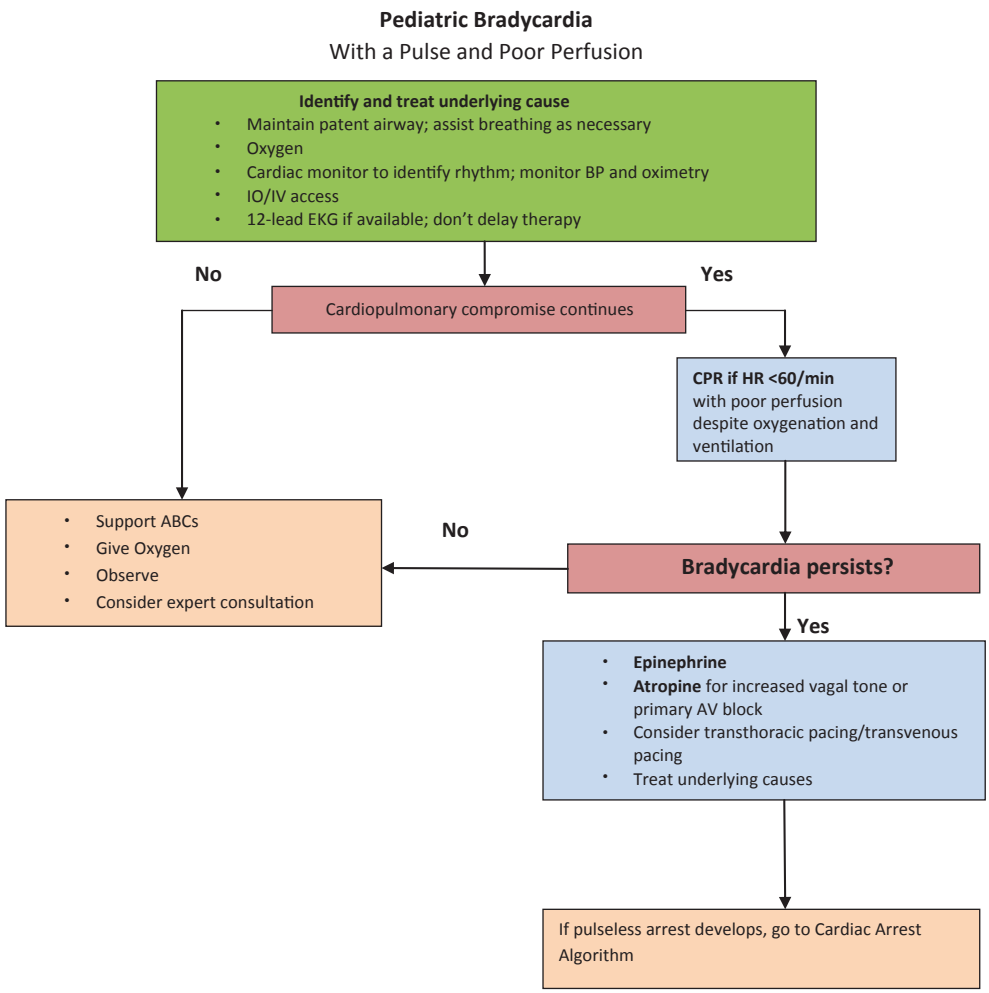


Fig. 3 Pediatric advance life support bradycardia algorithm. *IV* intravenous, *IO* intraosseous, *ABCs* airway, breathing, and circulation, *AV* atrioventricular (conductor), *EKG* electrocardiogram, *HR* heart rate, *BP* blood pressure, *CPR* cardio-pulmonary resuscitation. (Kleinman ME et al. American Heart Association guideline for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care, part 14. Circulation 2010, 122, suppl 3, pp. S876–S908, Fig. 2, p. S887)

- Bradycardia—most common pre-arrest rhythm in children with hypotension, hypoxemia and acidosis (Fig. 3)
  - Sinus bradycardia
    - Maybe non-pathologic in case of well conditioned individuals like athletes
    - Causes include: hypothermia, hypoglycemia, hypoxia, hypothyroidism, electrolyte imbalance, toxic ingestion, head injury with raised ICP
    - Treatment—identify cause and treating that condition
    - HR < 60 bpm in a child who is a well-ventilated patient, but showing poor perfusion, chest compression should be initiated
    - If HR remains below 60 despite adequate ventilation and oxygenation, then epinephrine or atropine (0.02 mg/kg—0.1 mg min and 0.5 mg max) should be given
    - Symptomatic bradycardia unchanged by above may require pacing
- **AV mode blocks**
  - First degree—prolonged PR interval
    - Generally asymptomatic
  - Second degree—2 types
    - *Type 1*—Wenckebach
      - Progressive PR prolongation until no QRS propagated
    - *Type 2*—regular inhibition of impulse
      - Usually every other P results in QRS
  - Third degree—complete dissociation between P and QRS
  - Reversible causes of cardiac arrest (Fig. 4)
    - Hypovolemia
    - Hypoxia
    - Hydrogen ion (acidosis)
    - Hypoglycemia
    - Hypo-/hyperkalemia
    - Tension pneumothorax
    - Tamponade cardiac
    - Toxins
    - Thrombosis, pulmonary
    - Thrombosis, coronary

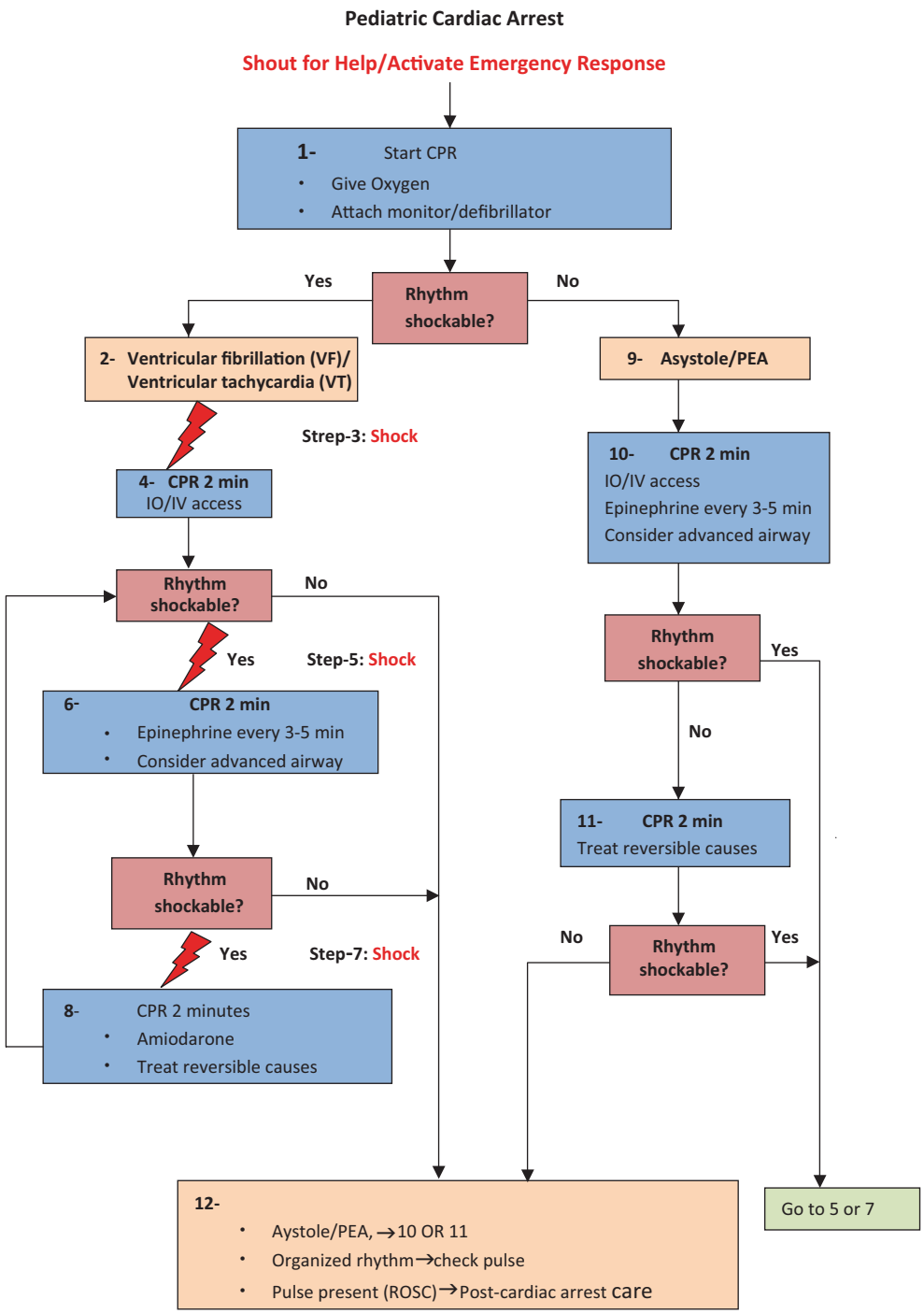


Fig. 4 Pediatric advance life support bradycardia algorithm. *ROSC* return of spontaneous circulation, *IV* intravenous, *IO* intraosseous, *CPR* cardiopulmonary resuscitation. (Kleinman ME et al. American Heart Association guideline for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care, part 14. Circulation 2010, 122, suppl 3, pp. S876–S908, Fig. 1, p. S885)

Suggested Readings

1. Graeme KA. Toxic plant ingestions. Wilderness medicine, 5th ed.Philadelphia: Mosby; 2007.
2. O'Donnell KA, Ewald MB. Poisoning. In: Kliegman RM, Stanton BF, St. Geme JW, Schor NF, Behrman RE, editors. Nelson Text book of pediatrics, 19th ed. Philadelphia:Elsevier Saunders; 2011. pp. 250–47 (Chapter 58).
3. Wingert WA, Chan L. Rattlesnake bites in southern California and rationale for recommended treatment. West J Med. 1988;148:37.
4. Clark RF, Kestner SW, Vance MV. Clinical presentation and treatment of black widow spider envenomation: a review of 163 cases. Ann Emerg Med. 1992;21:782–7.
5. Wright SW, Wrenn KD, Murray L, Seger D. Clinical presentation and outcome of brown recluse spiderbite. Ann Emerg Med. 1997;30:28–32.

6. Curry SC, Vance MV, Ryan PJ, et al. Envenomation by the scorpion *Centruroides Sculpturatus*. J ToxicolClinToxicol. 1984;21:417–49.
7. Epilepsy Foundation of America's Working Group on Status Epilepticus. Treatment of convulsive status epilepticus. Recommendations of the Epilepsy Foundation of America's Working Group on Status Epilepticus. JAMA. 1993;270:854–9.
8. Herndon DN, editor. Total burn care, 2nd ed. London: Saunders; 2002.
9. Nichols DG, Yaster M, et al. Golden hour: handbook of pediatric advanced life support. St Louis: Mosby; 1996.
10. Chameides L, Samson RA, et al. Pediatric advanced life support. Dallas: American Heart Association; 2012.

Genetics and Dysmorphology

Osama Naga, Golder Wilson and Vijay Tonk

Autosomal Dominant

Background

- Autosomal dominant (AD) inheritance is determined by the presence of one abnormal gene on one of the autosomes (chromosomes 1–22).
- Autosomal genes exist in pairs with each parent contributing one copy.
- Affected individuals have a 50% chance of passing on the deleterious gene with each pregnancy, therefore having affected child by the disorder (Fig. 1).

Characteristics of genetic transmission in autosomal dominant cases

- Both sexes are equally affected.
- Both sexes can transmit to offspring.
- No generation is skipped (unless not completely expressed).
- Every affected child has a parent with the disorder, except the new or spontaneous mutation.

Mosaic germline mutation

- It is significant because it can be passed to offspring.
- Typically, a person with *only* germline mosaicism will not be affected with the disorder caused by the mutation because the mutation is not in the other cells of the body, it is in sperm or ova.
- Commonly seen with AD and X-linked disorders.
- Because the mosaic germline mutation is present in the egg or sperm cell, it will also be present in all cells of the child developing from that germ cell.
- If it is an autosomal dominant mutation, the child will be affected with the disorder and will not be a mosaic like his or her parent.
- Unaffected parents can have more than one child with an AD disorder. This can be caused by germline mosaicism.
- Example of autosomal dominant diseases:
  - Osteogenesis imperfecta
  - Neurofibromatosis
  - Polycystic kidney disease
  - Achondroplasia

Sporadic mutation

- Unaffected parents have a child with an AD disorder.
- It is because of a new mutation that occurred by chance in only one egg or sperm cell, not in a proportion of them.

Autosomal Recessive

Background

- Involves mutation in both copies (alleles) at a gene locus.

Characteristics of genetic transmission in autosomal recessive cases

- Males and females are equally affected.
- Males and females can each transmit a copy of mutated gene.
- Recurrence risk for parents with a previous affected child is 25%.
- The risk of parents who are carrying a mutated gene to have an affected child is one-fourth or 25%.
- Consanguinity increases the risk of having an offspring with an AR disorder (Fig. 2).

O. Naga (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center—Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

G. Wilson · V. Tonk
Departments of Pediatrics and Clinical Genetics, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 3601 4th Street, Stop 9407, Lubbock, TX 79430, USA
e-mail: theggnome@aol.com

V. Tonk
e-mail: vijay.tonk@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_6,

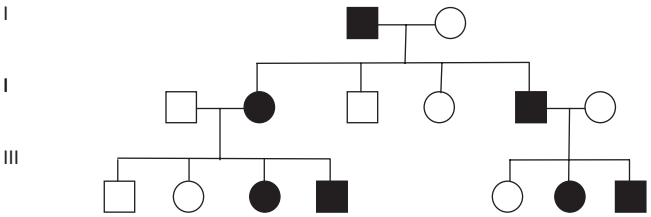


Fig. 1 Autosomal dominant pedigree. *Black* affected patients

X-Linked Disorders

Background

- Only females can transmit the disease to their son.
- If a generation has only female, the disease will appear to have skipped that generation.

Characteristics of genetic transmission in X-linked recessive cases

- Males are more commonly and more severely affected than females.
- Female carriers are generally unaffected, or if affected, they are affected more mildly than males.
- Female carriers have a 25 % risk for having an affected son, a 25 % risk for a carrier daughter, and 50 % chance of having a child that does not inherit the mutated X-linked gene.
- Affected males will have only carrier daughters.
- Affected males will have no chance of having affected son because they will pass their Y chromosome to their sons.
- Male-to-male transmission excludes X-linkage.
- X-linked dominant diseases can manifest in either male or females (Fig. 3).

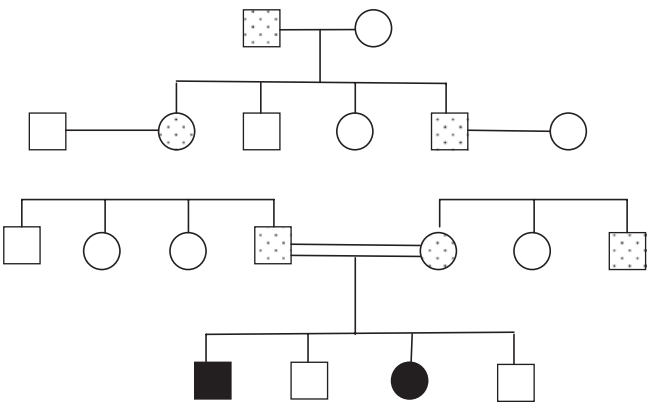


Fig. 2 Autosomal recessive pedigree with parental consanguinity. *Dots* carriers, *black* affected patients

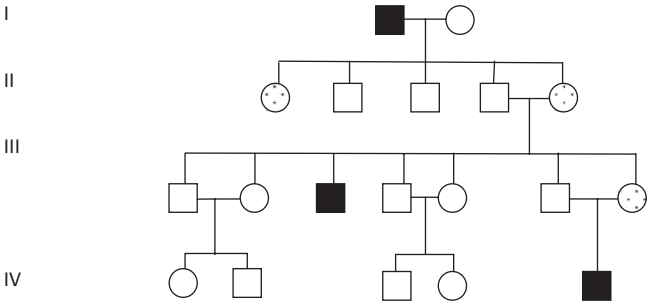


Fig. 3 X-linked recessive pedigree. *Dots* carriers, *black* affected patients (e.g., hemophilia)

Example of X-linked recessive diseases

- Hemophilia A
- Duchenne and Becker muscular dystrophy
- Hunter syndrome
- Fabry disease

Example of X-linked dominant diseases

- X-linked hypophosphatemia
- Incontinentia pigmenti
- Rett syndrome
- Most cases of Alport syndrome

Genomic Imprinting

Background

- Gene expression depends on whether the affected gene is transmitted from the mother or the father.
- Uniparental disomy occurs if both copies of a chromosome in a part or whole come from one parent.

Example of genomic imprinting

- The first imprinted genetic disorders to be described in humans were the reciprocally imprinted Prader–Willi syndrome and Angelman syndrome.
- Both syndromes are associated with loss of the chromosomal region 15q11-13 (band 11 of the long arm of chromosome 15).
- Paternal inheritance of a deletion of this region is associated with Prader–Willi syndrome (characterized by hypotonia, obesity, and hypogonadism).
- Maternal inheritance of the same deletion is associated with Angelman syndrome (characterized by epilepsy, tremors, and a perpetually smiling facial expression).

Mitochondrial Disorders

Background

- Mitochondria have the only genetic material outside of the nucleus.

- The mitochondrial genome is haploid (contains only one copy of each gene) whereas the nuclear genome is diploid.
- An egg contains 100,000–1,000,000 mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) molecules, whereas sperm contain only 100–1000).
- In mitochondrial inheritance, the ovum not the sperm, transmits all of the mitochondria to their zygote.
- Mother carrying a mtDNA mutation of sufficient frequency—some individuals have mixtures of normal and abnormal mtDNA called heteroplasmy—will pass it on to all her offspring.
- The father will rarely pass mitochondrial mutations on to his offspring because sperm have few mitochondria.

Examples of mitochondrial inherited disease

- MELAS
  - Mitochondrial encephalopathy
  - Stroke-like episodes
  - Lactic acidosis
- MERRF (myoclonic epilepsy and red ragged fibers disease)
  - Progressive myoclonic epilepsy
  - Myopathy
  - Dementia
  - Hearing loss
- Leigh disease
  - Basal ganglia defects
  - Hypotonia
  - Optic atrophy in infancy or early childhood
- Kearns–Sayre syndrome
  - Ophthalmoplegia
  - Retinitis pigmentosa,
  - Myopathy
  - Cardiac conduction defect

Multifactorial Inheritance

Background

- Multifactorial inheritance means that "many factors" (multifactorial) are involved in causing a birth defect.
- The factors are usually both genetic and environmental, where a combination of genes from both parents, in addition to unknown environmental factors, produce the trait or condition.
- Often one gender (either males or females) is affected more frequently than the other in multifactorial traits.
- There appears to be a different "threshold of expression," which means that one gender is more likely to show the problem over the other gender.
  - *For example*, hip dysplasia is nine times more common in females than males.

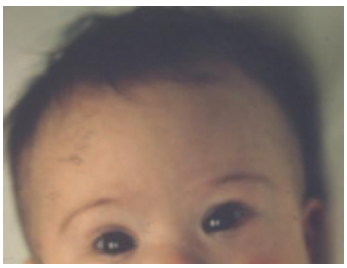
Multifactorial inheritance characteristics

- The higher the number of the affected individuals in the family, the higher the recurrence risks.
- The recurrence risk is higher if the affected individual is a member of the less commonly affected sex
  - e.g., Autism is more common in boys than girls but if a girl in the family has autism, it is twice as likely to recur in a sibling than if a boy is the one with autism.
- Recurrence risk is higher if the affected individual suffers the more severe form of the disease.
- Recurrence risk correlates with the prevalence in the general population.
- Folic acid supplementation early in pregnancy decrease the risk of neural tube defect.

Indications for chromosomal analysis

- Birth defects
- Development delay
- Intellectual disability
- Growth abnormalities

Down Syndrome (Fig. 4)



Background

- Trisomy 21 nondisjunction is most common cause (95% of cases).
- Robertsonian translocation is 4% and 1% is mosaic
- Trisomy 21 recurrence risk if non disjunctional add 1% to maternal age related risk which range from 1–4%, so most likely 96–99% will not have a child with Down syndrome
- If the couple has a child with trisomy 21 the risk of recurrence is 1%
- Trisomy translocation if confirmed; blood test should be requested from parents in order to determine the carrier status and the risk of recurrence
- Risk of recurrence in Robertsonian translocation
  - If the mother is a carrier 14q:21q translocation; the risk is 15% with amniocentesis and 10% for a live-born child with Down Syndrome.
  - If the mother is 21q:21q translocation the risk of recurrence is 100%

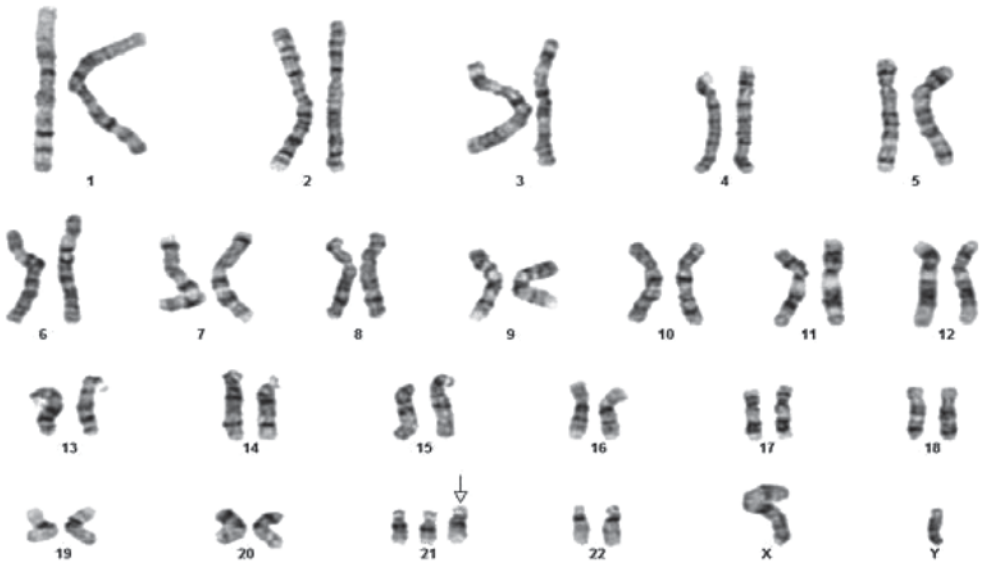


Fig. 4 47,XY.+21: Abnormal male karyotype with trisomy 21, consistent with Down syndrome

Clinical Features

- Most common
  - Hypotonia
  - Small ears
  - Intellectual disability (ID)
- More specific to Down syndrome
  - Brachydactyly (short, broad fingers and toes. Broad space between the first and second toes)
  - Absent to very small nipple buds
  - Central placement of the posterior hair whorl
- Common in Down syndrome but not specific
  - Microcephaly
  - Up-slanted palpebral fissure
  - Flat midface
  - Full cheeks
  - Epicanthal folds
  - Single transverse creases (simian lines)
  - Speckled iris (Brushfield spots)
  - High arched palate
  - Hypoplasia of of the middle phalanx of the fifth finger
- Cardiac defects
  - Nearly 50% are affected
  - Endocardial cushion (atrioventricular septal) defects are most common
  - Ventricular septal defect
- GI defect
  - Duodenal atresia
  - Hirschsprung disease (look for classic double bubble sign indicating duodenal atresia on abdominal X-ray)
- Developmental disorder
  - IQ ranges from 20 to 50
  - Social behavior are beyond that expected for mental age

Evaluations and health supervision

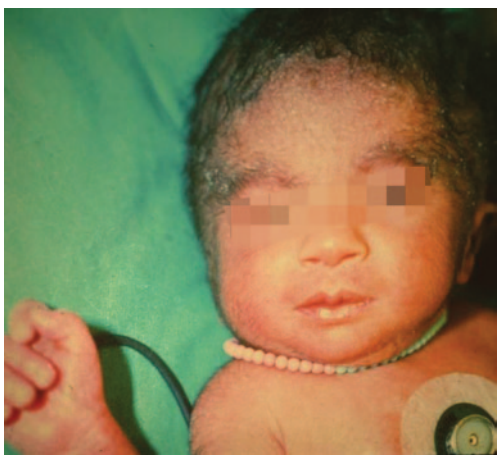
- Cardiac
  - Heart defects (~50% risk). Perform an echocardiogram
  - Refer to a pediatric cardiologist for evaluation any infant whose postnatal echocardiogram results are abnormal.
- Feeding problems
  - Refer all infants who have marked hypotonia as well as infants with slow feeding, choking with feeds, recurrent pneumonia, or other recurrent or persistent respiratory symptoms and unexplained failure to thrive for a radiographic swallowing assessment
- Ophthalmology
  - Check at birth by looking for a red reflex specially for cataract.
  - Cataracts may progress slowly and, if detected, need prompt evaluation and treatment by an ophthalmologist with experience in managing the child with Down syndrome.
  - Check for strabismus and astigmatism.
- Congenital hearing loss
  - Brainstem auditory evoked response or otoacoustic emission, at birth, according to the universal newborn hearing screening guidelines.
  - Complete any needed follow-up assessment by 3 months.
- GI
  - Duodenal atresia or anorectal atresia/stenosis by performing a history and clinical examination.
  - If constipation is present, evaluate for restricted diet or limited fluid intake, hypotonia, hypothyroidism, or gastrointestinal tract malformation, including stenoses or Hirschsprung disease, for which there is an increased risk.

  - Gastroesophageal reflux, which is usually diagnosed and managed clinically. If severe or contributing to cardiorespiratory problems or failure to thrive, refer for subspecialty intervention.
  - Celiac screening at 2 years or with symptoms.
- Respiratory
  - Obstructive apnea due to narrow airway: start screening at 1 year and each visit or anytime if any symptoms.
  - Apnea, bradycardia, or oxygen desaturation in a car safety seat for infants who are at increased risk because they have had cardiac surgery or are hypotonic.
  - A car safety seat evaluation should be conducted for these infants before hospital discharge.
  - Stridor, wheezing, or noisy breathing. If severe or contributing to cardiorespiratory problems or feeding difficulty, refer to pediatric pulmonologist to assess for airway anomalies.
  - Tracheal anomalies and small tracheal size may also make intubation more difficult.
- Hematologic abnormalities
  - Obtain a complete blood cell count.
  - Leukemoid reactions, or transient myeloproliferative disorder (TMD).
  - TMD is found almost exclusively in newborn infants with Down syndrome and is relatively common in this population (10%).
  - TMD usually regresses spontaneously within the first 3 months of life, but there is an increased risk of later onset of leukemia for these patients (10–30%).
  - Polycythemia is also common in infants with Down syndrome (18–64%) and may require careful management.
  - Infants with TMD and polycythemia should be followed according to subspecialty consultation recommendations.
  - Parents of infants with TMD should be counseled regarding the risk of leukemia and made aware of the signs, including easy bruising, petechiae, onset of lethargy, or change in feeding patterns.
  - Leukemia is more common in children with Down syndrome than in the general population but still rare (1%).
- Endocrinology
  - Congenital hypothyroidism (1% risk).
  - Screen for hypothyroidism; at birth, repeat at 3, 6, and 12 months then annually thereafter even if is normal.
  - Obtain thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) concentration if state newborn screening only measures free thyroxine (T4).
  - Congenital hypothyroidism can be missed if only the T4 concentration is obtained in the newborn screening.
  - Many children with Down syndrome have mildly elevated TSH and normal free T4 levels.
  - Management of children with abnormal thyrotropin or T4 concentrations should be discussed with a pediatric endocrinologist.
  - Skeletal
  - Atlantoaxial subluxation or instability at each visit by history and physical exam, and radiograph by 3–5 years or when planning to participate in contact sports.
  - Do radiograph if neck pain, torticollis, gait disturbance, or weakness.
- Immunization
  - All routine immunizations should be given.

Trisomy 18 (Edwards Syndrome; Fig. 5)

Background

- Among liveborn children, trisomy 18 is the second most common autosomal trisomy after trisomy 21.
- Four-to-one boys-to-girls ratio.
- Risk of recurrence in future pregnancy is less than 1%.
- The risk is higher with increased maternal age.



Clinical Presentation

- Apneic episodes
- Poor feeding
- Marked failure to thrive
- Intrauterine growth retardation (IUGR)
- Microcephaly
- High forehead
- Intellectual disability
- *Rocker bottom feet*
- Clubfoot/clenched fist
- Overlapping fingers
- Hypoplastic nails
- *Ventricular septal defect (VSD)* is most common (90% have structural heart defect).

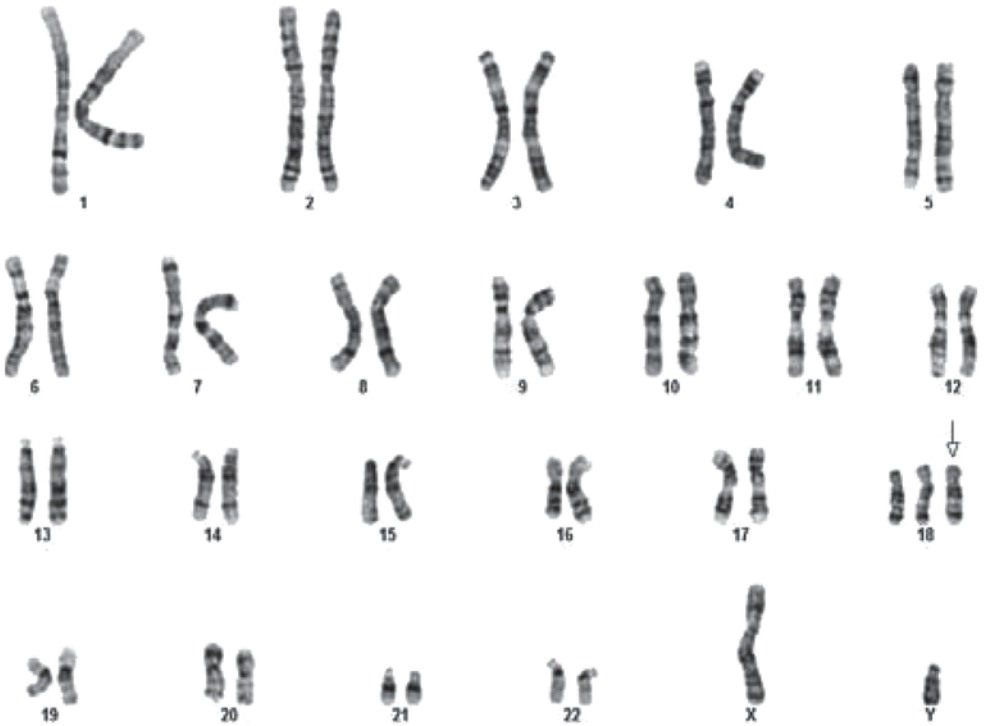


Fig. 5 47,XY,+18: Abnormal male karyotype with trisomy 18, consistent with Edwards syndrome

Prognosis
- Newborns have a 40% chance of surviving to age 1 month.
- Infants have a 5% chance of surviving to age 1 year.
- Children have a 1% chance of surviving to age 10 years.
- Mostly die early because of central apnea.

Trisomy 13 (Patau Syndrome; Figs. 6 and 7)

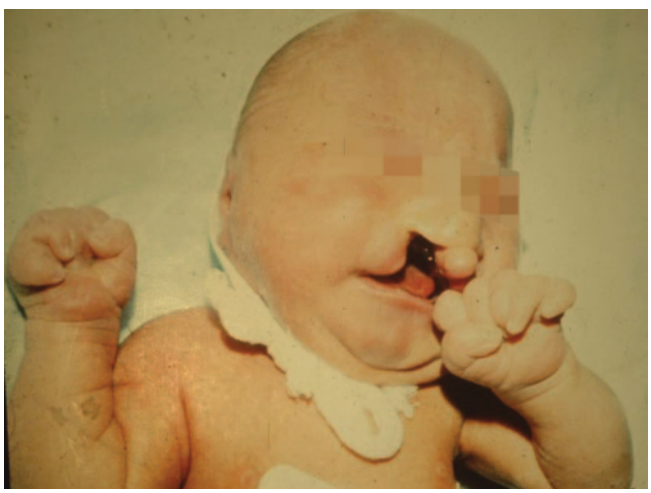


Fig. 6 Cleft lip and palate, postaxial polydactyly consistent with trisomy 13 Patau syndrome

Background
- It is the least common and most severe of the viable autosomal trisomies.
- Risk of recurrence < 1%.
- The risk is higher with increased maternal age.

Clinical presentation
- Cleft lip
- Cleft palate
- Polydactyly (postaxial)
- Microcephaly
- Microphthalmia
- Scalp defects (cutis aplasia)
- Omphalocele
- Hernias
- Neural tube defects
- Cardiac defects occur in 80% of cases, e.g., Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) or VSD
- Genital anomalies

Prognosis
- Median survival is only 2.5 days; 82% die within 1 month, and 95% die within 6 months.

47,XXY (Klinefelter Syndrome; Fig. 8)

Background
- Klinefelter syndrome is the most common chromosomal disorder associated with male hypogonadism and infertility.

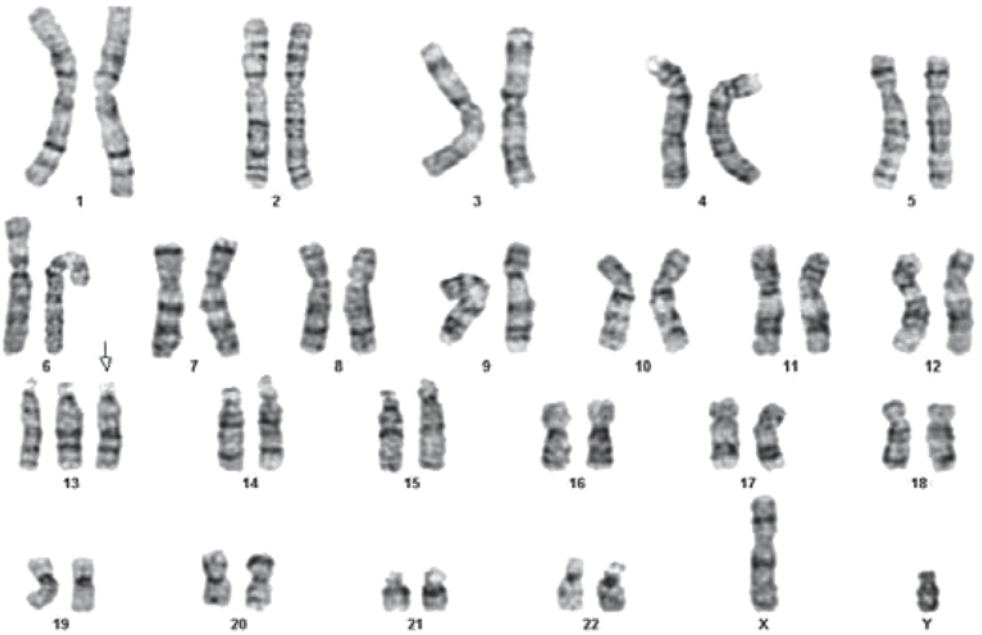


Fig. 7 47,XY,+13: Abnormal male karyotype with trisomy 13, consistent with Patau syndrome

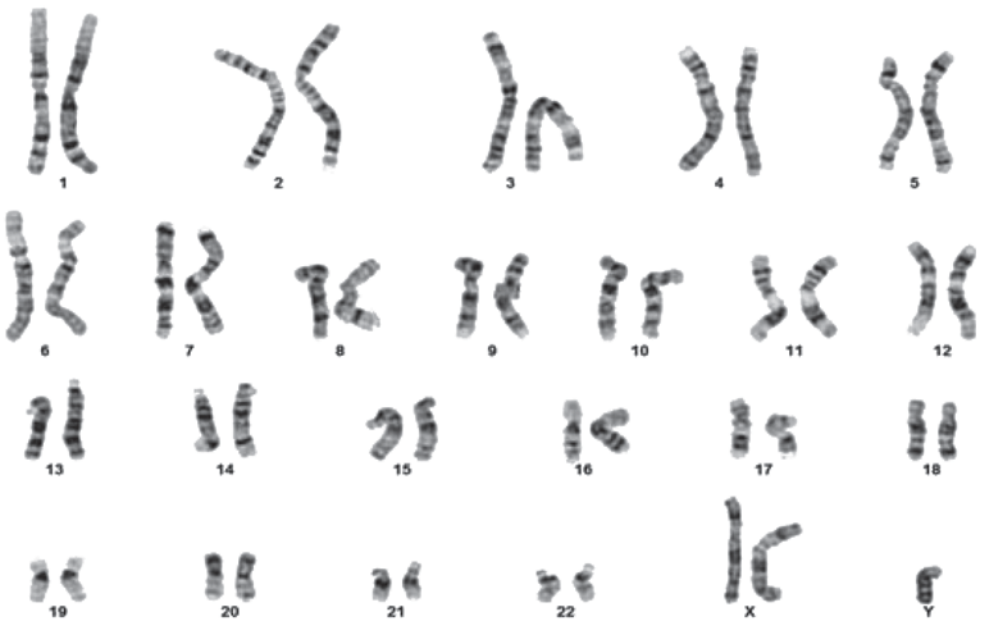


Fig. 8 47,XXY: Abnormal karyotype with an extra X sex-chromosome, consistent with Klinefelter syndrome

- It is defined classically by a 47,XXY karyotype with variants that demonstrate additional X and Y chromosomes.

Clinical presentation

- Language impairment
- Academic difficulty
- Poor self-esteem
- Behavioral problems
- Fatigue and weakness
- Osteoporosis
- Hypogonadism (pathognomonic)
- Subnormal libido
- Erectile dysfunction
- Small penis
- Infertility (azoospermia)
- Delayed secondary sexual characteristics
- Tall with gynecomastia

Risk of cancers

- Patients with Klinefelter syndrome have an increased risk of extra testicular germ cell tumors and possibly increased risk of breast cancer.
- The risk of breast carcinoma in men with the XXY variant may approach 20 times that of healthy men.

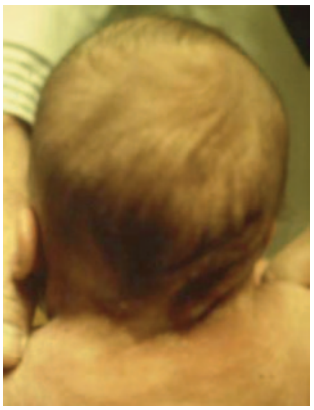


Fig. 9 Female infant with webbed neck and low posterior hairline due to lymphedema consistent with Turner syndrome

- Laboratory (typical patient with Klinefelter syndrome presents with):
- *Low* serum testosterone levels.
- *High* luteinizing hormone (LH) and follicle stimulating hormone (FSH) levels, and, often, elevated estradiol levels.
- The decline in testosterone production is progressive over the life span, and not all men suffer from hypogonadism.
- Karyotype: 47,XXY

X (Turner Syndrome; Figs. 9 and 10)

Background

- Short female is considered Turner syndrome until otherwise is proved.
- The frequency is approximately 1 in 2000 live-born female infants.
- As many as 15% of spontaneous abortions have a 45,X karyotype.
- Turner syndrome is caused by the absence of one set of genes from the short arm of one X chromosome.
- *45,X karyotype* (about two thirds are missing the paternal X chromosome)
- In addition to monosomy X, a similar clinical picture is found with a 46,XXiq karyotype and in some individuals with mosaic karyotypes.
- A deletion of the *SHOX* gene can cause a similar skeletal phenotype known as Leri-Weill dyschondrosteosis.

Clinical Presentation

- *Lymphedema*: Lymphedema may be present at any age and is one finding that can suggest Turner syndrome on fetal ultrasonography.
- *Webbed neck* and low posterior hairline due to lymphedema.
- *Short stature 95%*
- *Ovarian failure*
  - Suspect ovarian failure in girls who have no breast development by age 12 years or who have not started menses by age 14 years.
  - Elevated levels of LH and FSH confirm ovarian failure.
- *Pubic hair*: Pubic hair development is normal.
- *Dental*: A high arched palate suggests the diagnosis. Patients may have dental crowding or malocclusion.

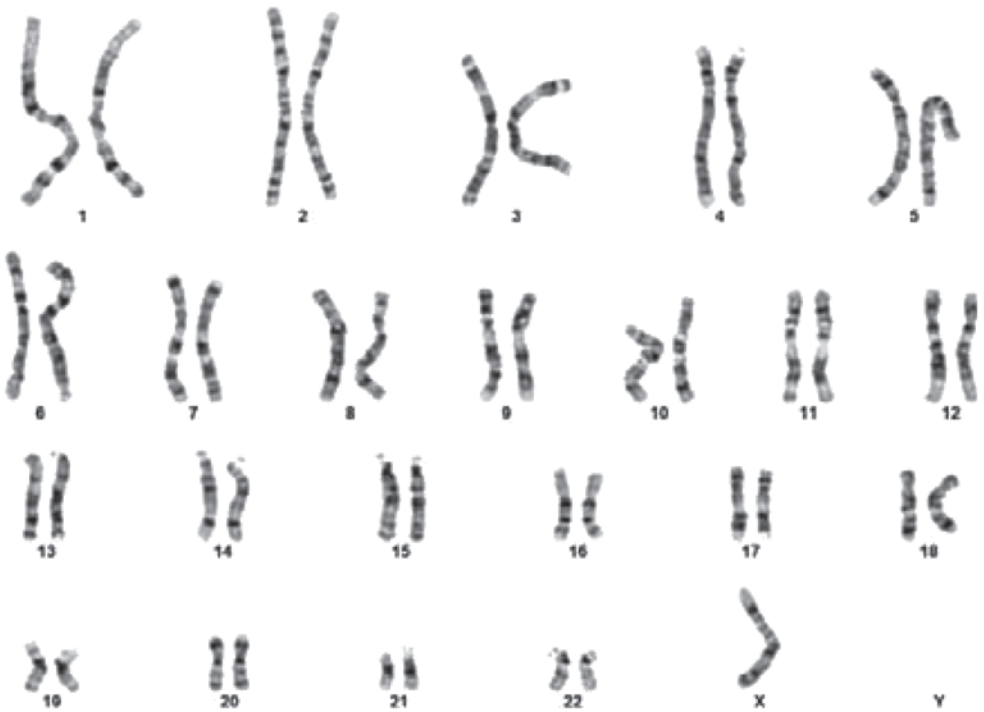


Fig. 10 45, X: Abnormal karyotype with one X sex chromosome, consistent with Turner syndrome

- *Cubitus valgus* (increased carrying angle): This is a common skeletal anomaly in girls due to abnormal development of the trochlear head.
- *Madelung deformities*
- *Short fourth metacarpal or metatarsal*
- *Shield chest:* The chest appears to be broad with widely spaced nipples.
- *Eye*: Ptosis, strabismus, amblyopia, and cataracts are more common in girls with Turner syndrome.
- *Scoliosis*: This occurs in 10% of adolescent girls with Turner syndrome and may contribute to short stature. Scoliosis screening is essential.
- *Cardiac*
  - Bicuspid aortic valve is 50% of the cases
  - Hypertension
  - Coarctation of aorta 15–20%
  - Murmur
  - Hypoplastic left heart
- *Endocrinology*
  - Hashimoto's thyroiditis (50% positive antithyroid antibodies)
  - 10–30% develop hypothyroidism
  - Carbohydrate intolerance (screening for diabetes is best obtain by Hemoglobin A1c or fasting glucose level) avoid glucose tolerance test
- *Horseshoe kidney*
- *Alopecia, nevi, cutis laxa, and vitiligo*
- *Nails:* Many patients have hypoplastic or hyperconvex nails
- *Otitis media*

Diagnosis
- Turner syndrome may be prenatally diagnosed by amniocentesis or chorionic villous sampling.
- Obtain a karyotype by one of these methods if ultrasonography of a fetus reveals a nuchal cystic hygroma.
- Karyotype for females with short stature.
- Elevated levels of LH and FSH confirm ovarian failure.

Health supervision
- Echocardiogram and renal ultrasound at the time of diagnosis
- TSH and free for every 1–2 years
- Audiology screening

Treatment
- See endocrinology chapter

Noonan Syndrome

Background
- Mutations in the RAS-MAPK signaling pathway are responsible for Noonan syndrome.
- Abnormal gene at 12q.

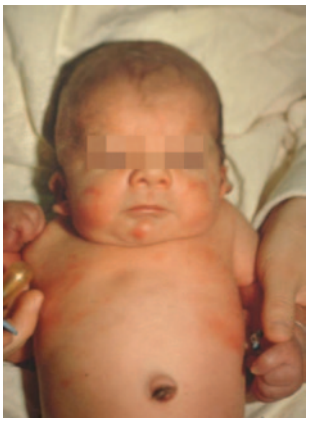
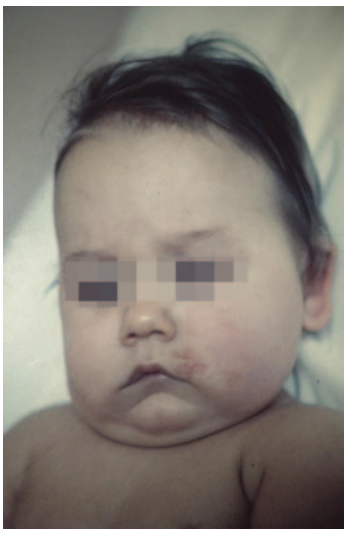


Fig. 11 Short webbed neck of an infant with Noonan syndrome

- Turner-like and affect also the boys.

Clinical presentation
- Short stature
- Cubitus valgus
- Short webbed neck (Fig. 11)
- Small penis
- Cryptorchidism
- Bleeding disorder
- Pulmonary valvular stenosis

Prader–Willi Syndrome (PWS)



Background
- PWS is a disorder caused by a deletion or disruption of genes in the proximal arm of chromosome 15
- Loss of imprinted genomic material within the *paternal* 15q11.2-13 locus

Clinical presentation
- Diminished fetal activity
- *Severe hypotonia at birth*

- Failure to thrive initially
- Hyperphagia
- Obesity
- Short stature
- Small hands and feet
- Hypogonadism
- Intellectual disability (ID)
- Strabismus

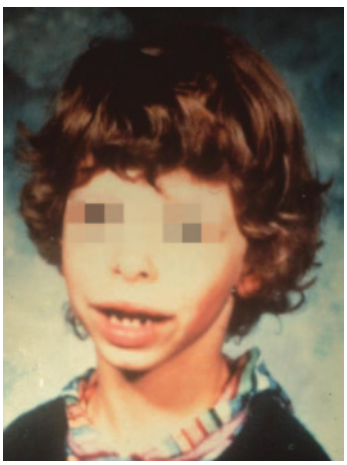
Diagnosis
- DNA Methylation patterns by Southern blot hybridization or polymerase chain reaction (PCR)

Angelman Syndrome

Background
- The loss of maternal genomic material at the 15q11.2-13 locus results in Angelman syndrome

Clinical Presentation
- Consistent (100%)
  - Developmental delay
  - Speech impairment
  - Ataxia of gait and/or tremulous movement of limbs
  - Frequent laughter/smiling; apparent happy demeanor; easily excitable personality
- Other common features
  - Microcephaly
  - Seizures, onset usually <3 years of age
  - Strabismus
  - Hypotonia
  - Fair hair
  - Seizure
  - Severe intellectual disability (ID)

Williams Syndrome (7q11.23)



- **Background**
  - Due to a deletion at chromosome band 7q11.23 that

Clinical Presentation
- Failure to thrive
- Periorbital fullness with downturned, prominent lower lip
- Friendly "cocktail party" personality
- Stellate pattern of the iris
- Strabismus, and cataract
- Supravalvar aortic stenosis (SVAS)
- Intellectual disability (ID)
- Sensorineural hearing loss
- *Idiopathic hypercalcemia*

Diagnosis
- Fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) for the 7q11.23 elastin gene deletion

WAGR Syndrome

Background
- Due to deletion on chromosome 11 (11p13-)
- Resulting in absence of the loss of several genes e.g. PAX6 and Wilms tumor I (WTI)

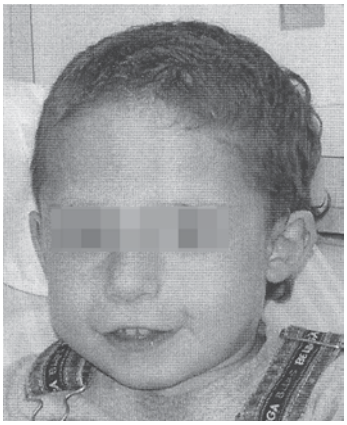
Clinical presentation
- Wilms tumor 50%
- Aniridia
- Genitourinary anomalies (hypospadias, cryptorchidism, small penis, and hypoplastic scrotum)
- Intellectual disability (ID)
- Gonadoblastoma

Alagille Syndrome

Background
- Microdeletion of the 20p12 gene corresponding to JAG1 results in Alagille syndrome

Clinical presentation
- Triangular face and pointed chin
- Cholestasis due to bile duct paucity
- Jaundice, and pruritus
- Xanthomas
- Supravalvar pulmonary stenosis (67% of patients with peripheral pulmonary stenosis, and 7–16% tetralogy of fallot)
- Ocular defect (posterior embryotoxon)
- Butterfly vertebrae

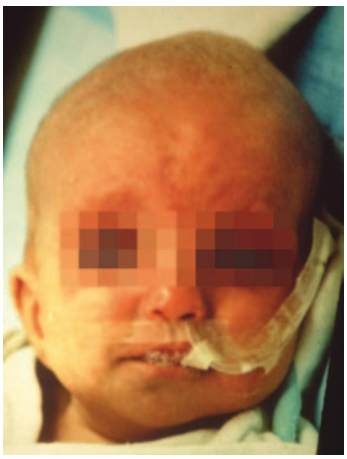
DiGeorge Syndrome



Background
- It is 22q11.2- deletion syndrome
- It is referred to as DiGeorge syndrome, and velocardiofacial (VCF) syndrome or CATCH 22

Clinical presentation
- *Cleft* palate
- *Absent thymus* (thymus agenesis and immune deficiency)
- *Congenital heart disease*
  - Tetralogy of fallot is the most common
  - Interrupted aortic arch
  - Truncus arteriosus
- *Hypocalcemia (17–60%)*
  - Due to hypoplasia or agenesis of parathyroid gland
  - Can cause seizures
  - This is frequently a self-limiting problem (usually 50% resolve by 1 year)
- *Immunodeficiency (77%)*
  - Recurrent infections secondary to immune deficiency may be observed
  - Mild-to-moderate defect in T-cell lineage as a consequence of thymic hypoplasia.
  - Variable secondary humoral defects, including hypogammaglobulinemia and selective antibody deficiency, may be present.
- Short stature
- Behavioral problem

4P-Wolf–Hirschhorn Syndrome



Background
- 4p deletion.
- Thirteen percent are due to one of the parents having a balance chromosome translocation.

Clinical Presentation
- Greek helmet facies (ocular hypertelorism, prominent, glabella, and frontal bossing)
- Growth deficiency
- Microcephaly
- Beaked nose
- Hypertension
- Hypotonia
- Congenital cardiac malformation
- Seizures 90%

5p-Cri-Du-Chat Syndrome

Background
- Due to a deletion of the short arm of chromosome 5

Clinical Presentation
- Mewing cry in infants (may be due to laxity or abnormities in the larynx)
- Hypotonia
- Down-slanting palpebral fissures
- Short stature
- Microcephaly

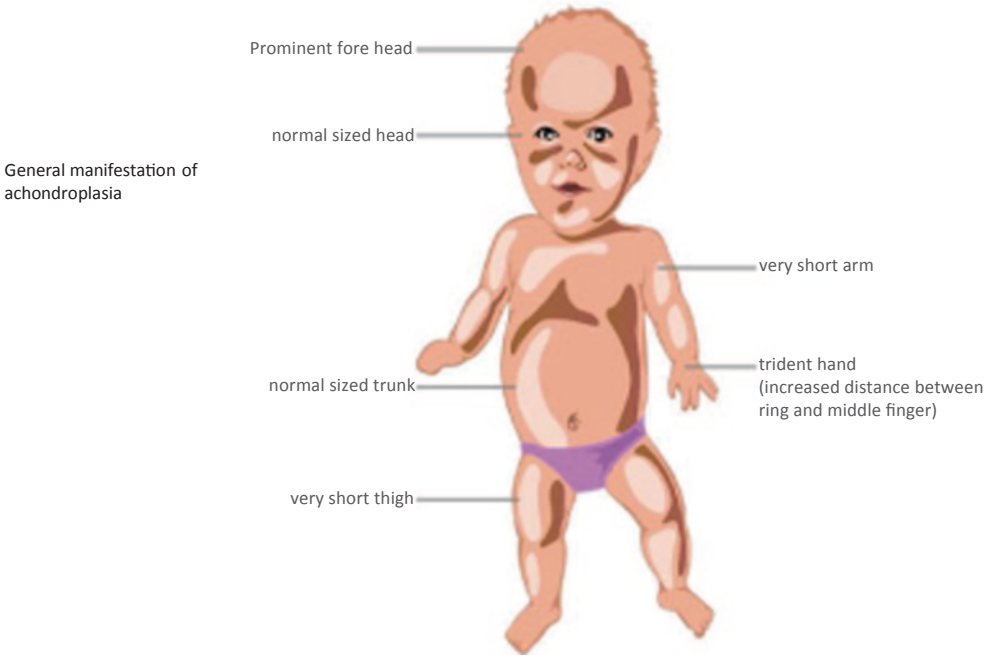


Fig. 12 General manifestations of achondroplasia

- High arched palate
- Intellectual disability (ID)
- Moon face, and wide and flat nasal bridge
- Cardiac manifestation occurs in about one-third of affected children.

De Grouchy Syndrome

Background
- Deletion of the long arm of chromosome 18

Clinical Presentation
- Narrowed ear canal
- Depressed midface
- Protruded mandible
- Elevated lower lip
- Deep set eyes
- Intellectual disability (ID)
- Hypotonia
- Club foot
- Cryptorchidism

Achondroplasia

Background
- Mutation in the gene for fibroblast growth factor receptor 3 (FGFR3) on chromosome 4.
- Autosomal dominant.
- More than 80% of these are new mutations.
- Achondroplasia is the most common type of short limb disproportionate dwarfism.
- Short-limb dwarfing conditions.

Clinical Presentation (Fig. 12)
- Short stature below third percentile
- *Motor milestones* such as head control and independent sitting, standing, and ambulation may lag by 3–6 months.
- Short lengths of most proximal segment of upper arms and legs compared to distal segment (disproportionate short stature with rhizomelic shortening)
- Trident hands
- Macrocephaly
- Flat nasal bridge, prominent forehead, and mid-facial hypoplasia
- *Stenosis of foramen magnum* and/or craniocervical junction can cause; apnea, quadriparesis, growth delay, and hydrocephalus
- Abnormal curvature of the spine (e.g., kyphosis, lordosis, scoliosis)

Management
- Growth hormone is currently being used to augment the height of patients with achondroplasia
- Limb lengthening

Marfan Syndrome (Figs. 13, 14, and 15)

Background
- It is heritable genetic defect of connective tissue.
- Autosomal dominant mode of transmission.

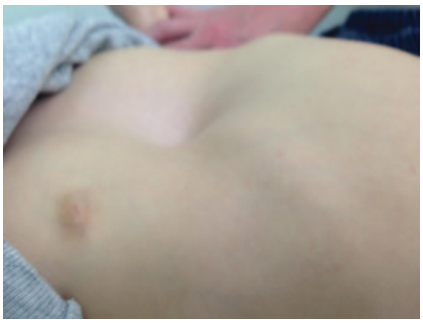


Fig. 13 A child with Marfan syndrome, the chest showing pectus excavatum

- Defect in *FBN1* gene on chromosome 15; which codes for fibrillin.
- Boys and girls are equally affected.
- Most common cause of death due to aortic dissection and rupture of aorta.

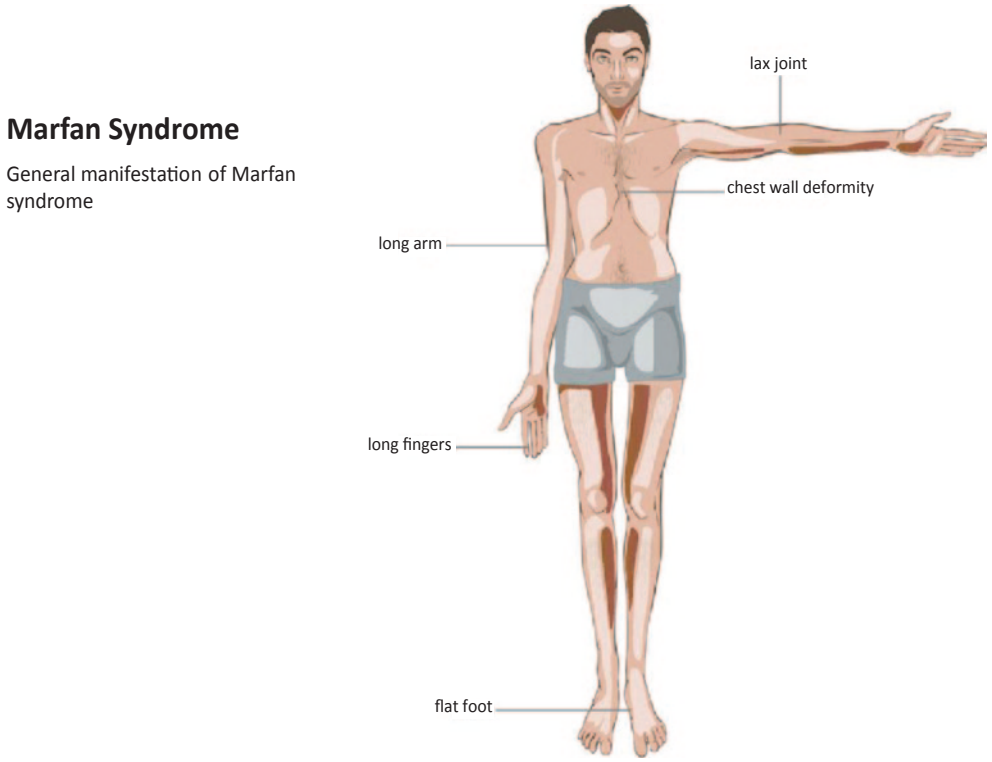
Major criteria

- Skeletal system
  - *Pectus carinatum* (pigeon breast)
  - Pectus excavatum (funnel chest) (Fig. 13)
  - Wrist sign (overlapping of the thumb and 5th finger when encircling the wrist (Fig. 14)
  - Scoliosis > 20 %
  - Reduced extension of the elbow (< 170 %)
  - Protrusio acetabuli (inward bulging of acetabulum)
- Ocular system
  - *Ectopia lentis* (upward displacement of the lens or dislocated lens)
- Cardiovascular
  - Dilatation *of the ascending aorta*
  - *Dissection of* the ascending aorta
- Dura
  - Lumbosacral dural ectasia (dilatation)

Minor Criteria

- Skeletal
  - *High arc*hed palate
  - Moderate pectus excavatum
  - Joint hypermobility
- Cardiovascular
  - *Mitral valve prolapse*
- Pulmonary
  - Dilatation of the main pulmonary artery
  - Spontaneous pneumothorax
  - Apical blebs
- Skin
  - Striae atrophicae
  - Recurrent incisional hernias

Fig. 14 General manifestation of Marfan syndrome



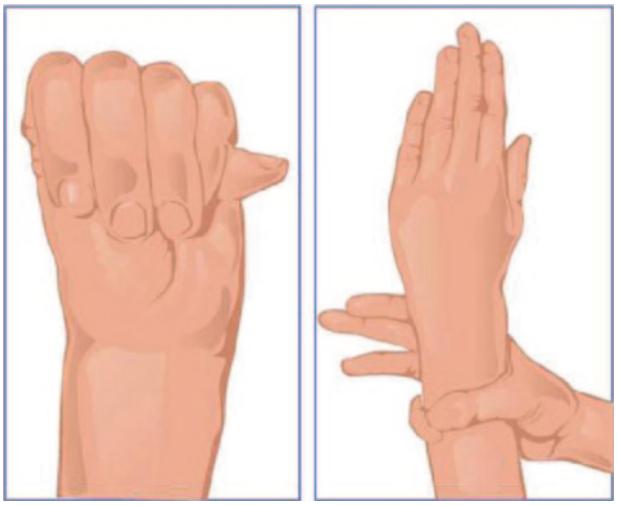


Fig. 15 Thumb and wrist signs in Marfan syndrome

Diagnosis

- Diagnosis based on clinical diagnostic criteria (Ghent Criteria)
  - A first-*degree relative and/or positive results of molecular studies*
  - *Plus major inv*olvement in one organ system and minor involvement in a second organ system
- *Major criteria* in at least two different organ systems and involvement in a third organ system
- *Family member*—Presence of a major criterion in the family history, one major criterion in an organ system, and involvement of a second organ system
- *Skeletal system*: at least two major criteria or one major criterion plus two minor criteria must be present
- *Ocular*: at least two minor criteria must be present
- *Dura*: one major criterion
- *Skin and CVS*: at least one minor criterion
- *Pulmonary*: at least one minor criterion
- No specific laboratory test exists with which to make the diagnosis of MFS
- Genetic test may assist in the diagnosis

Management

- Early identification and appropriate management is critical for patients with MFS
- Echocardiogram every 6 months or 1 years
- Beta-blockers have been demonstrated to slow aortic growth and thus delay the time to aortic surgery

Ehlers–Danlos Syndrome (Fig. 16)

Background

- Due to a mutations in over 40 genes, including collagens 3 and 5

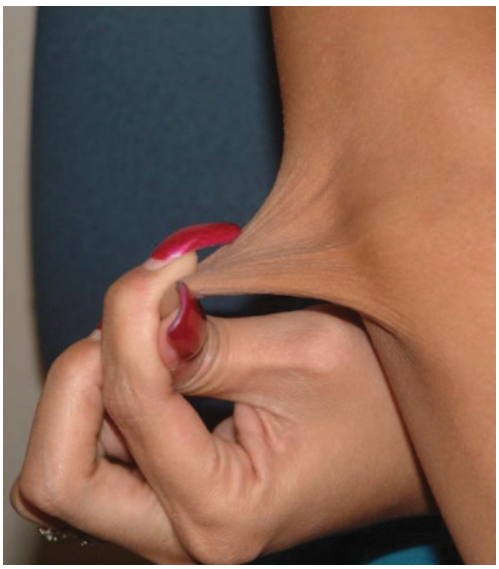


Fig. 16 Marked skin extensibility in a patient with Ehlers-Danlos syndrome

- Autosomal dominant
- More than 40 different inherited disorders; often involving a genetic defect in collagen or related genes that modify connective-tissue synthesis and structure.
- In 20% of families with autosomal dominant Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, the disease appears to be linked to loci that contain the COL5A1 or COL5A2 genes.
- Clinical recognition of the types of Ehlers-Danlos syndrome is important.
- Type IV is associated with arterial rupture and visceral perforation, with possible life-threatening consequences.
- Type I is the most common.

23 days old female with blue sclera (Figure A), the mother (Figure B) and the older brother has osteogenesis imperfecta Type 1 and multiple fractures

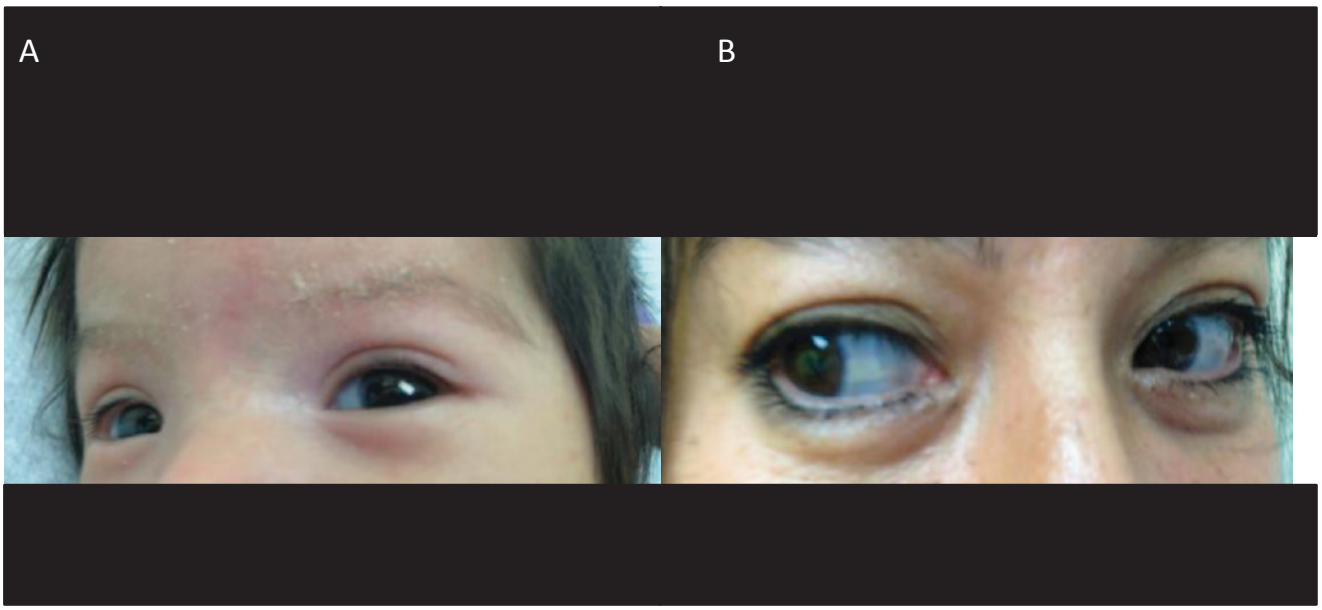


Fig. 17 Blue sclera in a 23 days old female infant and her mother who has type I osteogenesis imperfecta

Clinical presentation of Type I

- Skin
  - Marked skin extensibility with frequent lacerations and subsequent scarring in different body locations.
  - Surgical sutures heal poorly, with easy dehiscence.
  - Bruises are less common in this type than in other forms.
  - Varicosities and molluscoid pseudotumors are common.
- Joints
  - Joint hypermobility is severe and affects all parts of the body.
  - Spontaneous dislocations can occur, but immediate reduction is easy.
- Skeletal
  - Kyphoscoliosis
  - Hallux valgus
  - Pes planus (i.e., flat feet)
- Cardiac defects
  - Aortic root dilatation
  - Mitral valvular prolapse
- Prematurity with rupture of the fetal membranes is specific to this type.

Osteogenesis Imperfecta (Fig. 17)

Background

- It is a defect in collagen type 1 which is an important constituents of bone, ligaments, dentin, and sclera.
- The defect can be qualitative or quantitative reduction in type collagen.
- Mutations in genes encoding type 1 collagen (COL1A1 or COL1A2 genes) accounting for approximately, 80% of osteogenesis imperfecta cases.
- Types I–IV are all autosomal dominant.

Classically four types of osteogenesis imperfecta have been reported (Silence Classification):

- Type I: Mild forms
- Type II: Extremely severe (lethal); is often lethal due to fractures in utero
- Type III: Severe
- Type IV: Moderate
- Other types has been added

Clinical presentation

- General Manifestations
  - *Blue sclera (Fig. 17)*
  - *Growth retardation*

  - *Easy bruising*
  - *Osteoporosis*
  - *Presenile hearing loss*
  - *Dentinogenesis imperfecta may be present*
- Skeletal manifestation
  - *Repeated fractures*
  - *Macrocephaly*
  - *Triangular facies*
  - *Malocclusion of the jaw*
  - *Barrel ches*t
  - Kyp*hoscoliosis*
  - *Progressive limb deformities*
  - *Generaliz*ed bone aches

Diagnosis
- Genetic testing
  - Direct seq*uencin*g of COL1A1 or COL1A2 genes
- Skin biopsy
  - C*ollagen can be isolated from cultured fibroblasts and assesse*d for defects, with an accuracy of 85–87%.

Management
- Bisphosphonate therapy
- Vitamin D
- Calcium supplement
- Genetic, endo, orthopedic, and audiology consultations

Beckwith–Wiedemann Syndrome

Background
- Eighty percent of patients demonstrate genotypic abnormalities of the distal region of chromosome arm 11p
- Sporadic appearance

Clinical Presentation
- Severe hypoglycemia
- Macrosomia
- Organomegaly
- Large tongue
- Hemihypertrophy
- Posterior helical indentation (pits of the external ear)
- Omphalocele
- Wilms tumor

Sotos Syndrome (Fig. 18)

Background
- Cerebral gigantism

Clinical Presentation
- Large for gestational age (LGA)

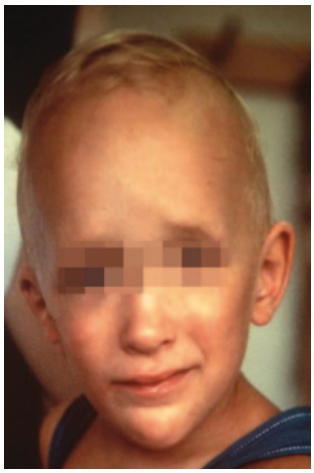


Fig. 18 Macrocephaly in a child with Sotos syndrome

- Increased growth velocity
- Advanced bone age
- Macrocephaly
- Facial dysmorphism
- Autism
- Mild intellectual disability (ID)

Poland Sequence

- Pectoral muscle defect
- Rib defect
- Dextrocardia if the defect on the left

Treacher Collins Syndrome

Background
- Autosomal dominant
- Most new mutations
- Due to mutation of gene 5

Clinical Presentation
- Facial bone
  - Underdev*eloped mandibular and zygomatic bones*
  - *Small and* malformed jaw and malocclusion may occur
- Ears
  - External ear anomalies
  - Stenosis or atresia of the external auditory canals is described
  - Conductive hearing loss
- Eye
  - Coloboma of the lower eyelids
  - Aplasia of lid lashes to short eye lashes
  - Downslanting palpebral fissures

  - Vision loss can occur
- Cleft palate

Waardenburg Syndrome

Background
- Autosomal dominant

Clinical presentation
- Sensorineural hearing loss
- Iris pigmentary abnormality (two eyes different color or iris bicolor or characteristic brilliant blue iris)
- Hair hypopigmentation (white forelock or white hairs at other sites on the body; poliosis)
- Dystopia canthorum (lateral displacement of inner canthi)
- First-degree relative previously diagnosed with Waardenburg syndrome
- Premature graying of the hair (before age 30).

Pierre–Robin Sequence

- Mandibular hypoplasia (micrognathia)
- Displacement of the tongue (glossoptosis) interrupted closure of the lateral palatine ridges, and cleft palate
- Respiratory distress and feeding problem

Amniotic Band Sequence or Amniotic Rupture Sequence (Fig. 19)

Background
- Cocaine is a common cause

Clinical Presentation
- Disruptive cleft as resulting from adherent of amniotic bands to any body parts
- Cleft of the face
- Constricting bands causing limb or digit amputations

Goldenhar Syndrome (Fig. 20)

- Hemifacial microsomia
- Epibulbar lipodermoids
- Vertebral defect
- Cardiac anomalies (VSD or outflow tract obstruction)
- Renal anomalies
- Incomplete development of the ear (Fig. 20)
- Conductive hearing loss

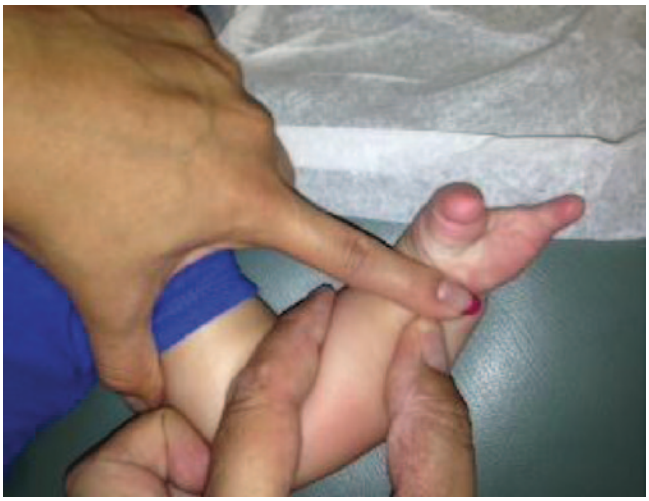


Fig. 19 Six-month-old female with amniotic band sequence in the her left hand and amputated three middle fingers

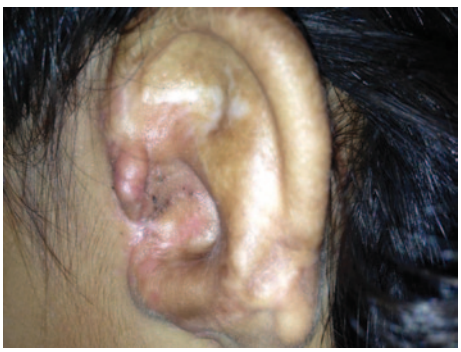


Fig. 20 A child with Goldenhar syndrome has incomplete development of the ear

Craniosynostosis

Background
- Craniosynostosis consists of premature fusion of one or more cranial sutures, often resulting in an abnormal head shape.
- It may result from a primary defect of ossification (primary craniosynostosis) or, more commonly, from a failure of brain growth (secondary craniosynostosis).

Types of craniosynostosis
- Scaphocephaly
  - Early fusion of sagittal sutures
  - Long and narrow head shape
- Anterior plagiocephaly
  - Early fusion of one coronal suture
  - Unilateral flattening of the forehead

- Posterior plagiocephaly
  - Early closure of one lambdoid suture
- Brachycephaly
  - Early bilateral coronal suture fusion
- Trigonocephaly
  - Early fusion of metopic sutures
  - Keel-shaped forehead and hypotelorism
- Turricephaly
  - Early fusion of coronal, sphenofrontal, and frontoethmoidal sutures
  - Cone-shaped head

Syndromes are associated with craniosynostosis

- Apert syndrome
  - Craniosynostosis
  - Syndactyly
- Crouzon syndrome
  - Craniosynostosis
  - Ear canal malformation
  - Exophthalmos
  - Mandibular prognathism
  - Concave face
- Pfeiffer syndrome
  - Craniosynostosis
  - Broad thumb and toes
- Carpenter syndrome
  - Tower-shaped skull (craniosynostosis)
  - Additional or fused digits (fingers and toes)
  - Obesity
  - Reduced height

Plagiocephaly

- Positional flattening of the skull.
- Ipsilateral frontal prominence.
- Anterior displacement of the ipsilateral ear

Acknowledgements Dr. Vijay Tonk and Dr. Golder Wilson would like to say thank you to Ms. Cortney Becker, Genetics Division Administrator at TTUHSC, and Ms. Caro Gibson, Chief Technologist at TTUHSC, for their support and contributions to this project.

Suggested Readings

1. Goldstein H, Nielsen KG. Rates and survival of individuals with trisomy 13 and 18. Data from a 10-year period in Denmark. *Clin Genet*. 1988;34:366–72.
2. Jorgensen KT, Rostgaard K, Bache I, et al. Autoimmune diseases in women with Turner's syndrome. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2010;62:658–66 [Best Evidence].
3. Horton WA, Hall JG, Hecht JT. Achondroplasia. Lancet. 2007;370(9582):162–72.
4. Ammash NM, Sundt TM, Connolly HM. Marfan syndrome-diagnosis and management. *Curr Probl Cardiol*. 2008;33:7–39.
5. Kent L, Bowdin S, Kirby GA, Cooper WN, Maher ER. Beckwith Weidemann syndrome: a behavioral phenotype-genotype study. *Am J Med Genet B Neuropsychiatr Genet*. 2008;147B:1295–7.
6. Trainor PA, et al. Treacher Collins syndrome: etiology, pathogenesis and prevention. Eur J Hum Genet. 2009;4:275–83.

Metabolic Disorders

Osama Naga

Abbreviations

PKU	Phenylketonuria
MCAD	Medium-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency
OTC	Ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency
MPS	Mucopolysaccharidosis
NPD	Niemann–Pick disease
X-ALD	X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy
MSUD	Maple syrup urine disease
IEM	Inborn errors of metabolism

General Rules in Approaching a Child with Metabolic Disease (Table 1)

Most are autosomal recessive except

- OTC, Hunter's, Fabry's disease, Lesch–Nyhan disease, and X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy are X-linked recessive.
- All mitochondrial disorders are maternally passed on.
- *Metabolic acidosis*: Metabolic acidosis usually with elevated anion gap occurs with many IEMs and is a hallmark of organic acidemias and manifestations include tachypnea, vomiting, and lethargy.
- *Hypoglycemia*: Hypoglycemia (plasma glucose level <50 mg/dL) is rare in children and may be associated with undiagnosed fatty acid oxidation defect or endocrine disorder.
- Ammonia level (Fig. 1)
  - Ammonia level greater than 100 mcg/dL in the neonate and greater than 80 mcg/dL beyond the neonatal period is considered elevated.
  - Ammonia is highest in the urea cycle defects often exceeding 1000 mcg/dL and causing primary respiratory alkalosis sometimes with compensatory metabolic acidosis.
  - Ammonia in organic acidemias, if elevated, rarely exceeds 500 mcg/dL, and in fatty acid oxidation defects is usually less than 250 mcg/dL.
  - Major exceptions include nonketotic hyperglycinemia (lethargy, coma, seizures, hypotonia, spasticity, hiccups, apnea), and pyridoxine deficiency (encephalopathy, intractable seizures).

Initial laboratory evaluation

- Obtain complete blood count (CBC) to screen for neutropenia, anemia, and thrombocytopenia.
- Obtain serum electrolytes, bicarbonate, and blood gases levels to detect electrolyte imbalances and to evaluate anion gap (usually elevated) and acid/base status.
  - Obtain blood urea nitrogen and creatinine levels to evaluate renal function.
  - Obtain bilirubin level, transaminases levels, prothrombin time, and activated partial thromboplastin time to evaluate hepatic function.
  - Obtain ammonia levels if altered level of consciousness, persistent or recurrent vomiting, primary metabolic acidosis with increased anion gap, or primary respiratory alkalosis in the absence of toxic ingestion.
  - Obtain blood glucose and urine pH, ketones, and reducing substances levels to evaluate for hypoglycemia.
  - Obtain lactate dehydrogenase, aldolase, creatinine kinase, and urine myoglobin levels in patients with evidence of neuromyopathy.

Secondary tests

- Plasma quantitative amino acids and acylcarnitines
- Urine organic acids, acylglycine, and/or orotic acid

O. Naga (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Science Center—Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_7,

Table 1 Major categories of inherited metabolic diseases

Major categories of inherited metabolic diseases	Examples
Organic acidemias	Isovaleric acidemia, propionic acidemia, 3-methylcrotonyl-CoA carboxylase deficiency, multiple carboxylase deficiency (biotinidase deficiency), methylmalonic acidemia, MSUD, glutaric acidemia type 1
Disorders of amino acid metabolism	Phenylketonuria, tyrosinemia, alkaptonuria homocystinuria, nonketotic hyperglycinemia
Urea cycle defects	Ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency (OTC), carbamoyl phosphate synthetase I deficiency
Disorders of fatty acid oxidation and mitochondrial metabolism	Medium-chain acyl-coenzyme A dehydrogenase deficiency (MCAD)
Disorders of carbohydrate metabolism	Galactosemia, glycogen storage diseases, McArdle disease, Pompe disease, fructose metabolic diseases
Lysosomal storage disorders	Gaucher's disease, Niemann–Pick disease, Tay-Sachs disease, Fabry disease
Disorders of peroxisomal function	Zellweger syndrome, X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy (X-ALD)
Disorders of porphyrin metabolism	Acute intermittent porphyria
Disorders of purine or pyrimidine metabolism	Lesch–Nyhan syndrome

- Serum lactate and pyruvate levels
- Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) lactate, pyruvate, organic acids, neurotransmitters, and/or disease-specific metabolites
- Other tests depending on each case

General management
- Access and establish airway, breathing, circulation.
- *NPO* (especially no protein, galactose, or fructose).
- *Dextrose* for hypoglycemia.
- D10–D15 with electrolytes to maintain serum glucose level at 120–170 mg/dL.
- If necessary, treat hyperglycemia with insulin.

Hyperammonemia
- Hyperammonemia therapy if associated with encephalopathy due to urea cycle defect.
- Ammonul must be given by central line. Arginine HCl can be mixed with Ammonul.
- *Hemodialysis*
  - If ammonia is ≥500–600 mg/dL before administering Ammonul, or is ≥300 mg/dL and rises after Ammonul, consider hemodialysis.
- Pyridoxine (B6) for possible pyridoxine-responsive IEM (seizures unresponsive to conventional anticonvulsants).

Section 1: Organic Acidemias (Fig. 2)

Common types
- Isovaleric acidemia
- Maple syrup urine disease (MSUD)
- Methylmalonic acidemia
- Propionic acidemia
- 3-methylcrotonyl-CoA carboxylase deficiency
- Multiple carboxylase deficiency (biotinidase deficiency)
- Glutaric acidemia type 1.
- *An organic acidemia* should be suspected in a patient who presents with hypoglycemia and hyperammonemia in the presence of metabolic acidosis.
- *Some organic acidemias* also result in granulocytopenia and thrombocytopenia and are mistaken for sepsis.

Isovaleric Acidemia (Odor Sweaty Feet)

Background
- It is also called isovaleric aciduria.
- It is isovaleric acid CoA dehydrogenase deficiency.
- It is a rare autosomal recessive which disrupts or prevents normal metabolism of the branched-chain amino acid leucine.
- It is a classical type of organic acidemia.

Clinical presentation
- Newborn period
  - Episode of severe metabolic acidosis with ketosis
  - Vomiting
  - Encephalopathy
  - May lead to coma and death
  - Odor of sweaty feet
- During childhood
  - Usually precipitated by infection or increased protein intake
  - Pancytopenia and acidosis in the infants who survive the acute attack

Diagnosis
- Sweat odor feet is the keyword
- Urine organic acids
- Prenatal diagnosis is possible.

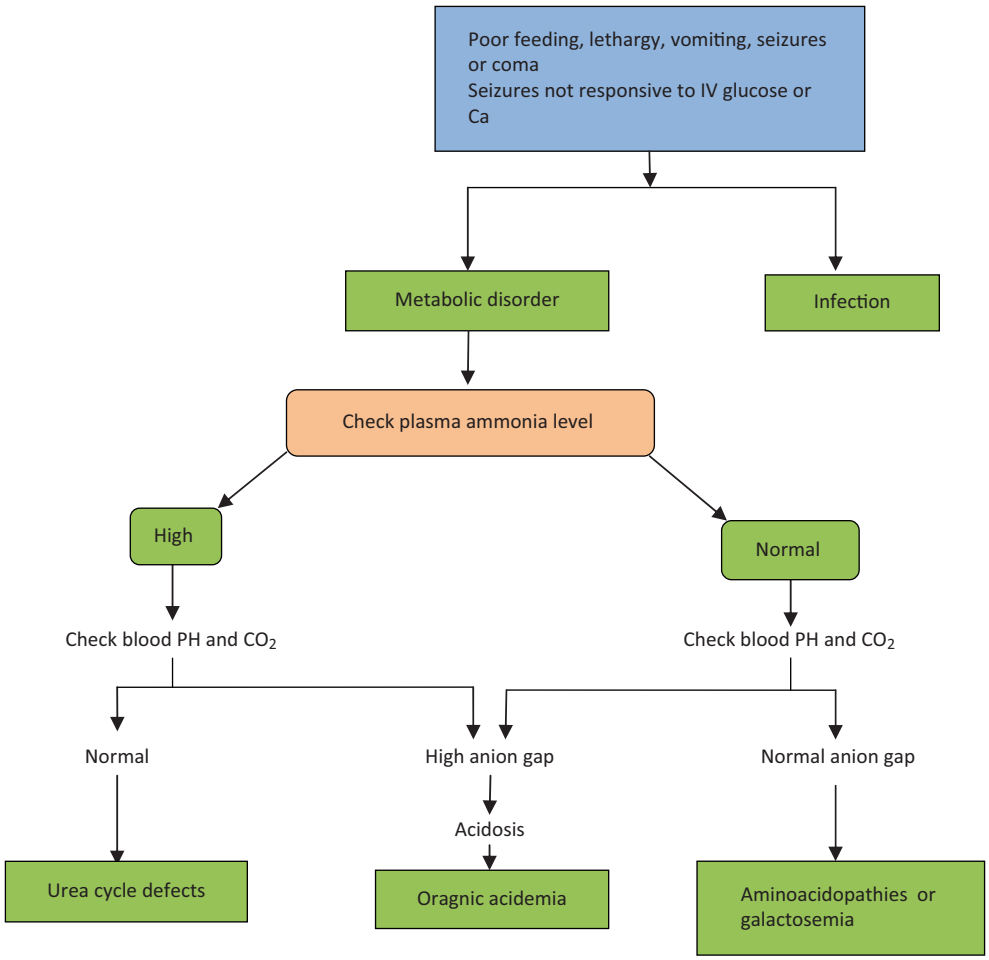


Fig. 1 Clinical approach to a newborn with suspected inborn errors of metabolism (IEM)

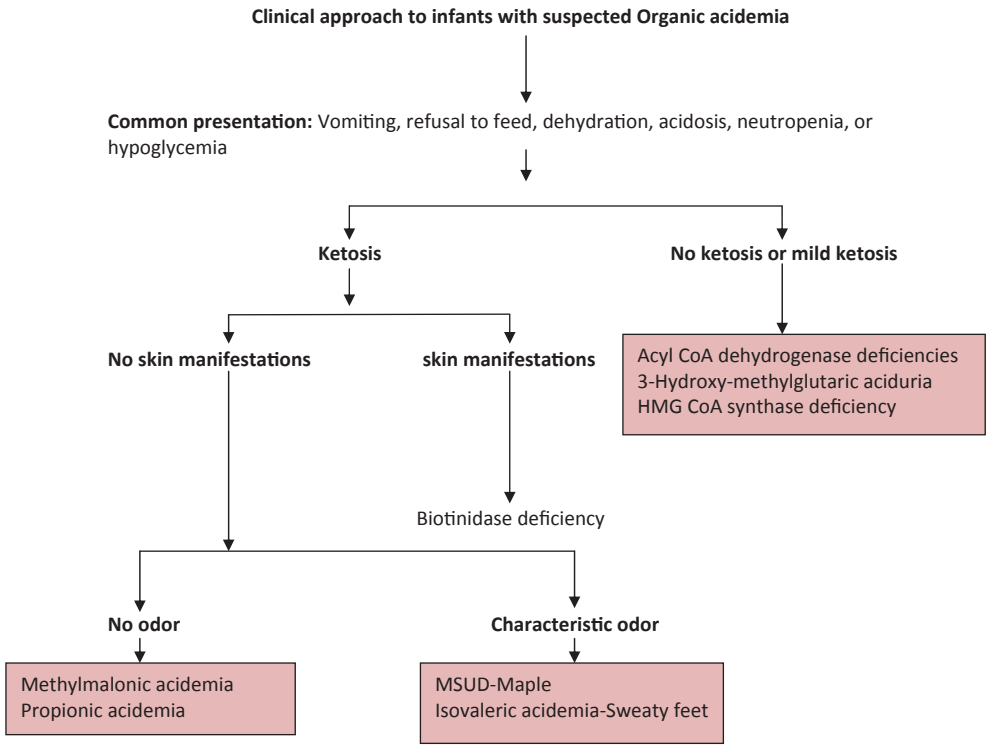


Fig. 2 Clinical approach to infants with suspected organic acidemia

Treatment
- IV glucose and bicarbonate *in acute attack.*
- Restriction in leucine intake.
- Carnitine and/or glycine to increase conversion of isovaleryl-CoA to isovalerylglycine.

Maple Syrup Urine Disease

Background
- Maple syrup urine disease (MSUD) is an aminoacidopathy secondary to an enzyme defect in the catabolic pathway of the branched-chain amino acids leucine, isoleucine, and valine.
- Accumulation of these three amino acids and their corresponding keto acids leads to encephalopathy and progressive neurodegeneration in untreated infants.
- Early diagnosis and dietary intervention prevent complications and may allow for normal intellectual development.

Clinical presentation
- The urine smells like maple syrup
- Feeding difficulty
- Irregular respiration
- Loss of Moro reflex
- Severe seizures
- Opisthotonos rigidity
- Death from cerebral edema

Diagnosis
- Metabolic acidosis due to ketoacidosis
- Increased anion gap
- Increase leucine, isoleucine, and valine in plasma and urine, finding of alloisoleucine is diagnostic for MSUD.
- Demonstration of decreased branched-chain ketoacid dehydrogenase activity in cultured amniotic cells during pregnancy.

Treatment
- Dietary control of leucine, isoleucine, and valine.
- Frequent monitoring of branched-chain amino acids, even every 1–2 days in early life, is important because of the changing protein requirements of the newborn.

Prognosis
- Normal growth and development can progress if diagnosis and treatment occurs before about 10 days of age.

Methylmalonic Acidemia

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Deficiency of methylmalonyl-CoA mutase function

Clinical presentation
- Hyperammonemia
- Ketoacidosis
- Thrombocytopenia
- Vomiting
- Failure to thrive in chronic cases
- Renal failure may occur

Diagnosis
- Organic acid or massive urinary methylmalonic acid in urine, also homocystinuria

Treatment
- Restriction of dietary protein
- Carnitine is useful
- Liver and kidney transplantation may be curative
- Give Betaine and IM Vitamin B12 if the patient has methylmalonic aciduria and homocystinuria

Propionic Acidemia

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Deficiency in propionyl-CoA carboxylase

Clinical Presentation
- Severe ketoacidosis with or without hyperammonemia in neonates.
- Infant may present with encephalopathy, vomiting, and bone marrow suppression.
- Some infant may present with ketoacidosis due to infection or vomiting.
- *Cardiomyopathy* is a late onset complication.

Diagnosis
- Urine organic acid.
- Large amount of 3-hydroxypropionic and *methylcitric acids* in urine is the most specific.
- Abnormal ketone bodies.

Treatment
- Dietary restriction of protein < 1 g/kg/day.
- Carnitine is helpful in increasing excretion of propionyl-CoA.

Prognosis
- Most children die in early age.

Isolated Beta-methylcrotonyl-CoA Carboxylase deficiency

Background
- Autosomal recessive

- It is due to inadequate enzyme to break down leucine.
- *Age*: 1–3 years

Clinical presentation
- Vomiting
- Diarrhea
- Metabolic acidosis
- Hypotonia
- Hypoglycemia

Treatment
- Long-term leucine restriction

Biotinidase Deficiency

Background
- Deficiency in holocarboxylase synthetase or biotinidase
- Many states in US do newborn checkup for biotinidase

Clinical triads
- Alopecia
- Skin rash (periorificial dermatitis)
- Encephalopathy
- *Without treatment* patient may develop seizure, hearing loss, and blindness
- Sudden infant death syndrome

Diagnosis
- Urine organic acid
- Increased 3-methylcrotonylglycine and 3-hydroxyisovaleric acid with lactic acid in urine

Treatment
- Oral biotin

Glutaric Aciduria Type I or Glutaric Acidemia

Background
- Due to lack of glutaryl-CoA dehydrogenase
- Defect in catabolism of lysine, hydroxylysine, and tryptophan

Clinical presentation
- May present with macrocephaly at birth but generally normal development until they have stressor e.g., febrile illness then they may develop hypotonia, spams, jerking, and rigidity or dystonia.
- Retinal hemorrhage and subdural hematoma usually mistaken for child abuse.

Treatment
- Carnitine

Section 2: Disorders of Amino Acid Metabolism

- Phenylketonuria
- Tyrosinemia
- Homocystinuria
- Alkaptonuria
- Nonketotic hyperglycinemia

Phenylketonuria (PKU)

Background
- The most common inborn error of amino acid metabolism
- The deficiency of the enzyme phenylalanine hydroxylase (PAH) impairs the body's ability to metabolize the essential amino acid phenylalanine.
- Elevated phenylalanine levels negatively impact cognitive function.

Clinical presentation
- *Fair skin and hair*
- *Eczema* (including atopic dermatitis)
- Light sensitivity
- Increased incidence of pyogenic infections
- Hair loss

Other manifestations of untreated PKU:
- Intellectual disability (the most common finding overall)
- *Musty or mousy odor*
- Epilepsy (50%)
- Extrapyramidal manifestations (e.g., parkinsonism)
- Eye abnormalities (e.g., hypopigmentation)

Diagnosis
- Elevated phenylalanine levels

Imaging studies
- Cranial magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) studies may be indicated in older individuals with deficits in motor or cognitive function.
- Cranial MRI may show areas of demyelinations and volume loss in severe cases.

Dietary treatment
- Genetic testing and confirming the diagnosis is important before dietary restriction.
- The mainstay of dietary management for patients with PKU consists of phenylalanine restriction.
- Essential amino acids, vitamins and minerals supplementations.

Pharmacologic management
- Sapropterin, a form of the tetrahydrobiopterin (BH_4) cofactor may lower phenylalanine levels in some patients.

Non Classic phenylketonuria
- Deficiency of tetrahydrobiopterin, a cofactor for the enzyme phenylalanine hydroxylase.
- Usually present with marked hypotonia, spasticity, posturing, and psychomotor developmental delay.

Type I Hepatorenal Tyrosinemia

Background
- Due to deficiency of fumarylacetoacetate hydrolase enzyme
- Infants affected early and most have a rapid course to death

Clinical presentation
- Failure to thrive
- Hepatomegaly
- Hepatoblastoma
- Associated with RTA, resembling fanconi syndrome, as well as X-ray fraying of rickets

Diagnosis
- High level of tyrosine in plasma and succinylacetone in blood and urine

Treatment
- NTBC (nitisinone) to block tyrosine metabolism, low diet in tyrosine and phenylalanine.

Tyrosinemia Type II (Oculocutaneous Tyrosinemia)

Cause
- Due to deficiency of tyrosine aminotransferase.

Clinical presentation
- Intellectual disability in 50%.
- Corneal ulcer and red papular keratotic lesions on their palms and soles.

Management
- Diet low in tyrosine, but even this may not be curative.

Homocystinuria

Background
- Classic homocystinuria follows an autosomal recessive inheritance and has a prevalence of 1:200,000 live births.
- Defect in cystathionine beta synthase enzyme leading to increased homocysteine.

Clinical presentation
- Marfanoid features
- Pectus excavatum, pectus carinatum, and genu valgum
- Developmental delay
- Increased risk of thromboembolism
- Intellectual disability
- Limited joint mobility
- Lens dislocated downward and medially

Diagnosis
- Homocystinuria
- Serum methylmalonic acid is the most specific
- High serum methionine
- Megaloblastic anemia

Treatment
- 50% respond to large dose of pyridoxine, folic acid, cobalamin, betaine, and methionine restriction.

Prognosis
- Near-normal life expectancies but will have progressive intellectual disability (ID).
- Half of patients with homocystinuria will have psychiatric disease, and one-fifth will have seizures.
- Acute stroke symptoms may occur in these patients.

Difference between Homocystinuria and Marfan syndrome (Table 2)

Alkaptonuria

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Due to deficiency of homogentisic acid dioxygenase

Clinical presentation
- Black urine when left standing
- Dark brown or black pigments in the diaper
- Slate blue or gray discoloration may be found in the sclerae or ear cartilage.
- Calcifications may be palpable in the discolored areas, particularly in the cartilage of the ear.
- Arthritis

Table 2 Difference between Homocystinuria and Marfan syndrome

Homocystinuria	Marfan syndrome
Autosomal recessive	Autosomal dominant
Intellectual disability	Normal intelligence
Ocular lens usually dislocated downward (ectopia lentis)	Ocular lens usually dislocated upward (ectopia lentis)
Limited joint mobility	Lax joint (hyperflexibility)
Normal aorta	Aortic dilatation
Associated with thromboembolism	Not associated with thromboembolism

Diagnosis
- Homogentisic acid in urine can be identified.
- PCR

Management
- Reduction of phenylalanine and tyrosine is a reasonable approach.
- Vitamin C
- Older individuals may require removal of lumbar discs with fusion, also may require replacement of the affected joints.

Glycine Encephalopathy (Nonketotic Hyperglycinemia)

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Due to a defects in the glycine cleavage system, an enzyme responsible for glycine catabolism.

Clinical presentation
- Glycine encephalopathy
- Unremitting seizures
- Apnea
- *Hiccups*
- Hypotonia
- Burst suppression pattern on EEG
- Coma
- Death in infancy

Diagnosis
- Increase glycine in CSF

Treatment
- Na benzoate may help for seizures, treatment usually unsuccessful.

Section 3: Urea Cycle Disorders

- Ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency (OTC)
- Citrullinemia
- Argininemia
- Argininosuccinic acidemia
- Carbamyl phosphate synthetase deficiency (CPS) *Key-words:* Serum ammonia levels may exceed 2000 mg/dL, and very low blood urea nitrogen (BUN) level (Fig. 3)

Ornithine Transcarbamylase (OTC) Deficiency

Background
- Ornithine transcarbamylase (OTC) deficiency is an X-linked genetic disorder of the urea cycle.

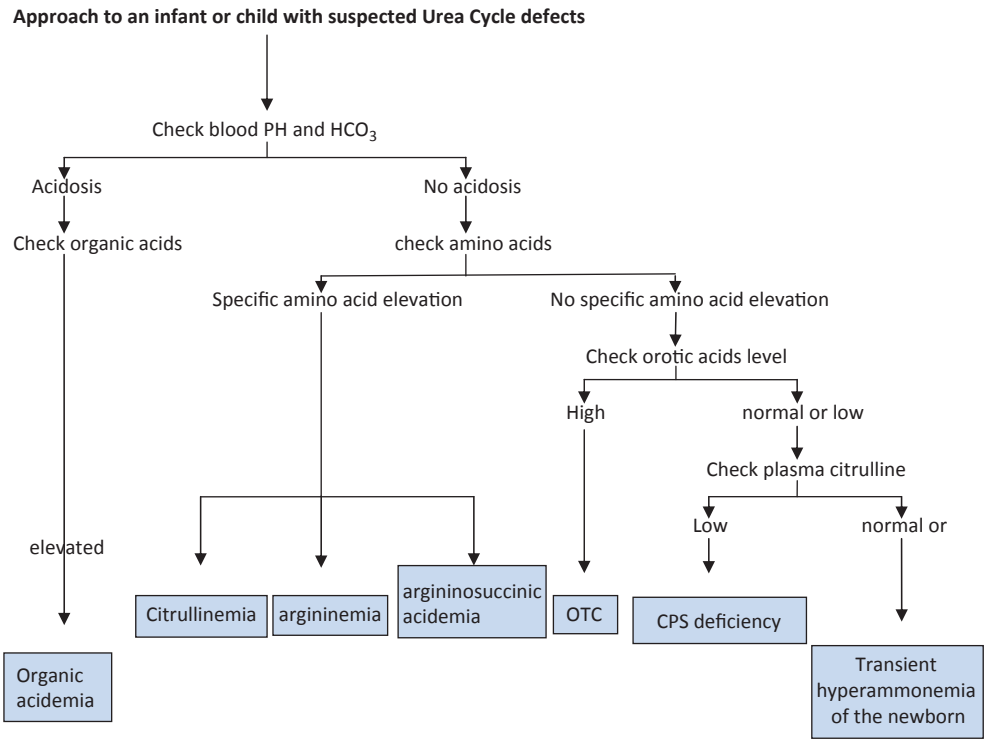


Fig. 3 Clinical approaches to infants born with symptomatic hyperammonemia. *CPS* carbamyl phosphate synthetase, *OTC* ornithine transcarbamylase

- Associated with very high level levels of ammonia in the blood.
- Mysteriously presents in childhood in otherwise normal individuals.
- Disease is more severe in males than females and tend to present earlier.

Clinical presentation
- Heavy or rapid breathing
- Lethargy
- Vomiting
- Female may present with severe migraine-like headache after excessive protein intake.
- Seizures
- Hypothermia
- Somnolence
- Cerebral edema
- Coma
- Decorticate or decerebrate posturing
- Death (if treatment is not forthcoming or effective)

Diagnosis
- Serum ammonia levels may exceed 2000 mg/dL
- Very low blood urea nitrogen (BUN) level
- Normal liver and kidney function in most cases, unless hypoxia or shock supervenes
- Elevated ornithine, glutamine, and alanine levels and relatively low citrulline levels
- Elevated urinary orotic acid level

Management
- Immediate temporary discontinuation of protein intake
- Compensatory increases in dietary carbohydrates and lipids
- Hemodialysis for comatose patients with extremely high blood ammonia levels; rapid reduction can be achieved with hemodialysis
- Intravenous administration of sodium benzoate, arginine, and sodium phenylacetate

Section 4: Disorders of Fatty Acid Oxidations and Mitochondrial Metabolism

- Medium-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency
- Glutaric acidemia type II
  - *Keywords* : Fasting e.g., (sick or vomiting), hypoglycemia and hyperammonemia without ketosis

Medium-Chain Acyl-CoA Dehydrogenase Deficiency (MCAD) (Fatty Acid Oxidation Defect)

Background
- Hypoketotic hypoglycemia due to Medium-chain acyl-coenzyme A (CoA) dehydrogenase (MCAD) deficiency.
- Beta-oxidation of fatty acids for the production of energy only is required during periods of fasting.
- Clinical manifestations do not become apparent unless substantial fasting has occurred.
- Most common in first 2 years of life.

Clinical presentation
- Vomiting, and diarrhea
- Fasting induced lethargy and hypoglycemia.
- Seizure and coma are very common.
- Associated with Reye syndrome, and SIDS.
- Between episodes of illness, affected patients are normal.

Diagnosis
- Laboratory findings during periods of decompensation include hypoketotic hypoglycemia and hyperammonemia provoked by fasting.
- Definitive diagnosis requires plasma acylcarnitine profile.

Treatment
- Treatment of these disorders usually includes the avoidance of fasting, supplementation with carnitine, and administration of dextrose during acute episodes.

Prevention
- *Avoid fasting more* than 4–5 h (Fasting is contraindicated)
- Carbohydrate snacks at bedtime
- Carnitine may be helpful
- 25 % of babies die before the result of newborn screen.

Glutaric Acidemia Type II

Cause
- Due to multiple (Acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency)

Clinical presentation
- Neonate may present with severe hypoglycemia, metabolic acidosis, and hyperammonemia
- Sweaty odor feet
- Cardiomyopathy
- Severe renal cystic dysplasia

Treatment
- Avoid fasting
- Carnitine is useful

Section 5: Disorders of Carbohydrate Metabolism

- Galactosemia
- Galactokinase deficiency
- Glycogen storage diseases
- Von Gierke disease
- Pompe disease
- McArdle disease
- Pompe disease
- Adenylate deaminase deficiency
- Deficiency of fructose 1, 6-bisphosphate aldolase
- Fructokinase deficiency
- Mucopolysaccharidosis (MPS)

Galactosemia

Background
- Hereditary galactosemia is among the most common carbohydrate metabolism disorders.
- Can be a life-threatening illness during the newborn period.
- Galactose-1-phosphate uridyl transferase (GALT) deficiency is the most common enzyme deficiency that causes hypergalactosemia.

Clinical presentation
- Jaundice
- Vomiting
- Hypoglycemia
- Lethargy
- Irritability
- Seizure
- Cataract
- Vitreous hemorrhage
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Poor weight gain
- Cirrhosis
- Ascites
- Intellectual disability

Diagnosis
- Clinically
- Reducing substance in urine
- Definitive diagnosis G-1-PU in RBCs or other tissue.
- It is important not to exclude the diagnosis of galactosemia because the urine does not contain reducing substances.
- If galactosemia is suspected, galactose-1-phosphate uridyltransferase should be assayed in erythrocytes.
- Prenatal diagnosis can be made by enzyme assay of cultured amniotic cells or cells obtained by chorionic villus sampling.
- Heterozygous and homozygous mothers are instructed to follow a galactose-free diet throughout their pregnancies.

Treatment
- Elimination of galactose from diet

Complications
- *E.coli* sepsis could be the initial presentation
- Ovarian failure, amenorrhea
- Developmental delay, and learning disability even with good treatment

Galactokinase Deficiency

- Cataract alone
- Chromosome 17
- Treatment is restriction of galactose.

Glycogen Storage Diseases

- 0—Glycogen synthase deficiency
- Ia—Glucose-6-phosphatase deficiency (von Gierke disease)
- II—Acid maltase deficiency (Pompe disease)
- III—Debranching enzyme deficiency (Forbes-Cori disease)
- IV—Transglucosidase deficiency (Andersen disease, amylopectinosis)
- V—Myophosphorylase deficiency (McArdle disease)
- VI—Phosphorylase deficiency (Hers disease)
- VII—Phosphofructokinase deficiency (Tarui disease)

Von Gierke Disease (Glucose-6-phosphate deficiency)

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Age: early infancy

Clinical presentation
- Hypoglycemia
- Lactic acidosis
- Hyperuricemia
- Hyperlipidemia
- Neutropenia
- Hepatomegaly without elevated liver enzyme
- Doll like face (fatty cheeks) thin extremities.

- Failure to thrive
- Seizure

Associated problems
- Gout
- Hepatic adenoma
- Pulmonary hypertension
- Pancreatitis

Diagnosis
- No response to glucagon or epinephrine
- Genetic testing

Management
- For older children, uncooked cornstarch will sustain blood glucose for 4–6 h.
- For young children, continuous nasogastric tube feeding of glucose is necessary to sustain normal blood glucose level especially at night.
- If surgery is required continuous infusion of glucose 24–48 h prior to surgery

Pompe Disease

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Located on chromosome 17
- Type II glycogen storage disease
- Due to acid alpha-1, 4-glucosidase deficiency

Clinical presentation
- Infantile form
  - The most severe form
  - Infant is usually normal at birth but soon develop generalized muscle weakness, macroglossia, hepatomegaly, and cardiomegaly
  - Death < 1 year
- Juvenile/late childhood
  - Muscle weakness
  - Respiratory and digestive symptoms without cardiac involvement
  - Death may occur before twenties

Diagnosis
- ECG shows high voltage QRS and shortened PR interval
- Elevated CPK, AST, and LDH
- Muscle biopsy will show vacuoles that full of glycogen on staining

Treatment
- Unfortunately, no cure exists
- Enzyme replacement therapy (ERT) may benefit the patients specially, if combined with immune modulation

McArdle Disease, Muscle Phosphorylase Deficiency

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Chromosome 11

Clinical presentation
- Presented in twenties to thirties
- Exercise induced cramps and exercise intolerance
- Burgundy colored urine due to myoglobinuria, and rhabdomyolysis

Diagnosis
- Elevated CPK at rest and increase after exercise

Treatment
- Avoid strenuous exercise, to prevent rhabdomyolysis, and oral fructose/glucose intake can improve exercise tolerance.

Adenylate Deaminase Deficiency

Background
- Autosomal recessive trait

Clinical presentation
- Muscle weakness
- Cramping after strenuous exercise

Diagnosis
- CPK level may be increased
- No myoglobinuria
- Muscle biopsy is normal

Treatment
- Oral D-ribose may prevent the symptoms if given in the beginning of exercise.

Deficiency of Fructose 1, 6-Bisphosphate Aldolase

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- *Age* 4–6 months
- *Keywords;* healthy infant start having symptoms after introduction of juice or any source of fructose or sucrose.

Clinical presentation
- Infant is healthy until fructose or sucrose is ingested e.g. juice or sweetened cereals.
- Jaundice, vomiting, lethargy, seizures, and irritability.

- Hepatomegaly
- Prolonged clotting factors
- Elevated liver enzyme
- If sugar intake continued will lead to hypoglycemia, organ failure and death.

Diagnosis
- Reducing substance in urine during episode
- IV fructose will cause hypoglycemia and hypophosphatemia.

Treatment
- Avoid all sources of fructose, sucrose, and sorbitol

Prognosis
- It is very good; reversal of damage and Intellectual disability is uncommon.

Fructokinase Deficiency

Background
- Deficiency of the enzyme hepatic fructokinase is a clinically benign condition characterized by the incomplete metabolism of fructose in the liver, leading to its excretion in urine

Clinical presentation
- Asymptomatic

Diagnosis
- Fructosuria
- Reducing substance in urine

Treatment
- No treatment is required

Mucopolysaccharidosis (MPS)

Background
- Group of disorders due to a defect in the catabolism of glycosaminoglycans, and accumulation of macromolecules in target organs.
- All MPS are autosomal recessive except Hunter's syndrome is X-linked.
- MPS have normal development initially.
- Abnormalities are seen in infancy or sometimes later in childhood.

MPS type I (Hurler syndrome)
- Clinical presentation
  - Coarsened facial features
  - Midface hypoplasia
  - Large tongue
  - Umbilical or inguinal hernia, large head > 95 %
  - Recurrent URIs
  - Hepatosplenomegaly
  - Cardiac disease (valvular or coronary involvement)
  - Atlantoaxial subluxation
  - Corneal clouding
  - Deafness are very common.
- Prognosis
  - Related to cardiac involvement can be early cardiomyopathy and death.

MPS type II (Hunter Syndrome)
- Defect in iduronate-2 sulfatase on chromosome Xq27-28
- Only males are affected (very rare in females)
- Present in the first 2 years of life
- *No corneal clouding*
- Coarse facial feature
- Learning difficulties
- Middle ear disease
- Joint stiffness
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Skin rash; pebbly ivory skin lesions on the back, arms, and thighs (pathognomonic but rare in children)

MPS type III (Sanfilippo syndrome)
- Located on chromosome 17
- Inability to catabolize heparan sulfate
- Severe CNS involvement
- Developmental Delay
- Recurrent URIs
- Sleep disturbance
- Severe challenging behavior and hyperactivity and unaware of self-harming
- Swallowing dysfunction
- May deteriorate to vegetative state

MPS type IV (Morquio syndrome)
- Due to deficiency of galactose-6-sulfate
- Leads to defective degeneration of keratan
- Short trunk dwarfism
- Fine corneal deposits
- Skeletal dysplasia
- Normal intelligence
- Odontoid dysplasia

Treatment
- BMT may prevent intellectual deterioration, increase survival rate.
- Enzyme replacement therapy is the treatment of choice.
- Orthopedic surgery for spinal deformity.

Section 6: Lysosomal Storage Disorders

- Gaucher's disease
- Niemann–Pick disease
- Tay–Sachs disease
- Fabry disease
- Wolman disease
- Metachromatic leukodystrophy

Gaucher Disease

Background
- Gaucher disease is a lipid storage disease characterized by the deposition of glucocerebroside in cells of the macrophage-monocyte system.
- The disorder results from the deficiency of the enzyme glucocerebrosidase.
- Autosomal recessive
- Age 2–18 years
- Mutations in Ashkenazi Jews > 95 %
- All forms of Gaucher usually develop hepatosplenomegaly, bone lytic lesions, some lung disease

Types of Gaucher disease
- Type 1—non neuronopathic form (The most common and does not affect the CNS)
- Type 2—acute neuronopathic form
- Type 3—chronic neuronopathic form

Clinical presentation
- Growing pain in lower extremities especially at night due to bone infiltration
- skin pigmentation.
- *Splenomegaly*
- Abdominal protuberance due to very large spleen.
- Hypersplenism; significant thrombocytopenia, can result in severe bleeding, pallor, and anemia.

Diagnosis
- Bone marrow aspiration: Gaucher storage cells wrinkled paper like tissue.
- Deficiency of glucocerebrosidase in leukocytes and culture skin.
- Loss of bone tabulation on X-ray

Treatment
- Splenectomy is *contraindicated*.
- Enzyme replacement therapy (ERT) for type 1 Gaucher disease e.g., imiglucerase (Cerezyme)

Niemann–Pick Disease (NPD)

Background
- Niemann–Pick disease (NPD) is a lipid storage disorder
- Due to deficiency of acid sphingomyelinase.
- NPD types A
  - Very rare neurovisceral disease
  - Occurs mainly in ashkenazi Jews
  - Hepatosplenomegaly
  - Progressive loss of motor skills
  - Cherry red spot in macula
- NPD type B
  - Common in Ashkenazi Jews
  - Inherited as autosomal recessive traits
  - Isolated splenomegaly
- NPD type C
  - It results from defects in cholesterol metabolism
  - Located on Chromosome 18
  - Age: 3–4 years of age
  - Due to cholesterol ester accumulate in lysosome

Clinical Presentation of NPD Type C
- Dysphagia is common may lead to feeding tube
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Poor school performance in older children
- Cataplexy and narcolepsy are very common
- Ataxia
- Supranuclear and vertical-gaze palsy
- Voluntary, vertical eye movement usually lost, but reflex and doll eye movement are preserved
- Death in teenage is common.

Diagnosis
- Intra-lysosomal accumulation of unesterified cholesterol in cultured fibroblast.

Tay–Sachs Disease

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Due to deficiency of beta-hexosaminidase alpha subunit
- Neurons has lamellar inclusions
- No visceral involvement

Clinical presentation
- *Noise or light startles* the baby with quick extension of arms and legs with clonic movement (unlike Moro reflex this does not diminish with repeated stimuli)

- Axial hypotonia
- Hypertonia and hyperreflexia of extremities
- Seizure to auditory stimuli
- By 2–3 year of age the child is usually in decerebrate posture, become blind, and unable to respond to stimuli
- *Cherry red spots > 90 % of cases*

Juvenile and adult form
- Occurs in Ashkenazi Jews
- Affected children usually labeled clumsy, and awkward
- Proximal muscle weakness, occurs with fasciculations
- Anxiety, depression, suicide
- They may ambulate until age of sixties.

Fabry Disease

Background
- Deficient activity of lysosomal enzyme α-galactosidase (α-Gal A)
- Only sphingolipidoses transmitted as X-linked

Clinical presentation
- Severe episodic pain in hands and feet
- Hypohidrosis or anhidrosis
- Angiokeratoma skin rash
- Corneal opacities
- Autonomic nervous system dysfunction
- Chronic abdominal pain and diarrhea
- Renal failure
- Congestive heart failure
- Seizures, hemiparesis, and ataxia is a cerebrovascular complication

Diagnosis
- (α-Gal A) activity may be measured in plasma, serum, and leukocytes

Treatment
- Painful peripheral neuropathy may respond to carbamazepine or gabapentin
- IV alpha galactosidase may relieve pain
- Renal transplant for end stage renal disease

Wolman Syndrome

Background
- A milder form of lipoprotein lysosomal acid lipase deficiency
- Termed cholesteryl ester storage disease
- May not be manifest until adult life

Clinical Presentation
- Feeding difficulties with frequent vomiting shortly after birth
- Diarrhea
- Steatorrhea
- Abdominal distention
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Failure to gain weight or sometimes weight loss
- Atherosclerosis may develop
- Severe anemia
- Liver dysfunction or failure
- Failure to thrive
- Very few infants with Wolman disease survive beyond the first year of life

Diagnosis
- Variable hypertriglyceridemia usually are present
- Hypercholesterolemia
- *Bilateral adrenal calcifications on CT scan.*

Metachromatic Leukodystrophy

Background
- Lysosomal storage diseases
- Progressive, inherited, and neurodegenerative disorders

Clinical presentation
- Gait disturbances
- Memory deficits
- Seizures (may be present)
- Tremors
- Loss of motor developmental milestones
- Loss of previously achieved skills
- Truncal ataxia
- Optic atrophy

Diagnosis
- Arylsulfatase A enzyme activity may be decreased in leukocytes.

Treatment
- No effective treatment to reverse neurological deterioration.

Section 7: Peroxisomal Disorders

Background
- Peroxisomes are important for beta-oxidation of very long-chain fatty acids (VLCFA) and detoxification of hydrogen peroxide.

- Peroxisomes are also involved in the production of cholesterol, bile acids, and plasmalogens, which contribute to a big part of the phospholipid content of the brain white matter.

Example of Peroxisomal disorders
- Zellweger Syndrome
- X-Linked Adrenoleukodystrophy (X-ALD)

Zellweger Syndrome

Clinical presentation
- *Typical craniofacial dysmorphism*; high forehead, a large anterior fontanelle, hypoplastic supraorbital ridges, broad nasal bridge, micrognathia, deformed ear lobes, and redundant nuchal skin folds.
- *Neurologic features*; severe psychomotor retardation, profound hypotonia with depressed deep tendon reflexes (DTRs), neonatal seizures, and impaired hearing.
- *Brain*; cortical dysplasia
- *Ocular features*; congenital cataract, glaucoma and retinal degeneration
- *Calcific stippling* of the epiphyses or patella
- Small renal cysts
- Liver cirrhosis.

Diagnosis
- Confirm diagnosis by increased level of very long chain fatty acids (*VLCFA*).

Prognosis
- Most die by 1 year of age

X-linked Adrenoleukodystrophy (X-ALD)

Background
- Affect mainly the boys
- Accumulation of very long chain fatty acids (VLCFA) in the white matter, peripheral nerves, adrenal cortex and testis.

Clinical presentation
- Early development is entirely normal, and the first neurologic manifestations most commonly occur at 4–8 years of age.
- Early manifestations are often mistaken for attention deficit hyperactivity disorders
- Progressive neurological disorders includes: impaired auditory discrimination, visual disturbances, spatial disorientation, poor coordination, and seizures supervene later in the disease.
- Progression leads to a vegetative state in 2 years and death afterward.
- Adrenal insufficiency

Diagnosis
- Elevated level of (VLCFA)
- *The MRI pattern is quite characteristic:*
- Lesions are symmetrical and demyelination is progressive.
- Late in the disease the brain stem and ultimately the cerebellum may be involved.

Section 8: Disorders of Porphyrin Metabolism (Porphyrias)

- Enzyme defect in heme synthesis
- Overproduction and accumulation of porphyrin

Acute Intermittent Porphyria

Background
- AIP is an autosomal dominant disease that results from defects in the enzyme porphobilinogen-deaminase.
- This enzyme speeds the conversion of porphobilinogen to hydroxymethylbilane.

Most common drug induces AIP
- Barbiturate, sulfa, carbamazepine, valproic acid, griseofulvin, birth control bills.

Clinical presentation
- Abdominal pain is the most common symptom.
- Ileus, abdominal distension and decrease bowel sound.
- No abdominal tenderness and no fever because its neurological and not inflammatory.
- Nausea, vomiting
- Limb, neck, and chest pain
- Dysuria, and urinary retention may occur
- Peripheral neuropathy: proximal muscle weakness, some sensory changes,
- Mental changes; anxiety, depression, insomnia, and paranoia during the acute attacks.

Diagnosis
- Decrease HMB synthase in RBCs
- Normal level of porphobilinogen in the stool will rule out AIP

Treatment
- Narcotics
- Phenothiazine for nausea and vomiting

- Promptly start glucose infusion in the form of 10% dextrose, at least 300–400 g should be given in 24 h.
- Plasma-derived intravenous heme; 1–4 mg/kg/d for up to 14 days is the definitive treatment and mainstay of management. Thrombophlebitis is the major adverse effect.

Porphyria Cutanea Tarda

Background
- Occur after exposure to halogenated aromatic hydrocarbons e.g., excess alcohol
- Excess iron and estrogen also is a common cause
- It is the most common of porphyrias
- Due to deficiency in hepatic URO-decarboxylase

Clinical presentation
- Cutaneous photosensitivity
- Fluid filled vesicles and bullae on sun exposed areas
- Hypertrichosis
- Hyperpigmentation
- Increase the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma

Diagnosis
- Presence of high level of porphyrin in liver, plasma, urine and stool helps with diagnosis
- Low level of hepatic URO-decarboxylase on RBCs

Treatment
- Avoiding exposure to offending agents
- Phlebotomy usually reduces hepatic iron
- Usually remission occurs after five to six phlebotomies

Erythropoietic Protoporphyria

Background
- Autosomal dominant
- The source of protoporphyrin is bone marrow reticulocyte
- Due to partial deficiency of ferrochelatase

Clinical presentation
- Hyperpigmentation
- Changes in skin pigments
- Skin edema, erythema, and petechiae
- Blisters, crusted erosions, and scarring may occur

Diagnosis
- Elevated levels of protoporphyrin in bone marrow, RBCs, plasma, bile and feces is diagnostic
- Liver function is usually normal

Treatment
- Beta-carotene improves tolerance to sunlight
- Cholestyramine and activated charcoal may increase excretion of protoporphyrin in feces
- Transfusion and IV heme may be helpful in reducing protoporphyrin production.

Section 9: Disorders of Purine or Pyrimidine Metabolism

Lesch–Nyhan Disease (Hypoxanthine Guanine Phosphoribosyltransferase Deficiency)

Background
- Lesch–Nyhan disease is X-linked
- Affect mainly boys
- Due to deficiency of hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (HGPRT) deficiency

Clinical presentation
- Usually males are normal at birth
- Failure to thrive
- Vomiting
- Self mutilation
- Lips and fingers biting
- Kidney stones
- Gout

Diagnosis
- High level of uric acid
- HGPRT deficiency on RBCs

Treatment
- Supportive
- Hydration and allopurinol (inhibiting the metabolism of hypoxanthine and xanthine to uric acid)

Section 10: Various Metabolic Disorders

Familial Hypercholesterolemia

Background
- Very common 1/200–1/500
- Autosomal dominant

Indication for screening children and adolescents:
- Parents or grandparents, at 55 years of age or less, have coronary atherosclerosis by arteriography or a documented myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, peripheral vascular disease, cerebrovascular disease, or sudden cardiac death.

- Child or adolescent of a parent with an elevated blood cholesterol level (>240 mg/dL) in either parents.
- Children and adolescents when the parental history is not obtainable and/or when other cardiovascular risk factors e.g., DM, hypertension and obesity are present.
- Selective screening may begin as early as age 2 years, or thereafter as risk factors dictate.
- A parent with high cholesterol, measure total cholesterol (nonfasting cholesterol), followed by a fasting lipoprotein analysis (HDL, LDL, and triglyceride levels).
- Total cholesterol exceeds 200 mg/ dl, do not repeat, order lipid profile.
- Total cholesterol is borderline (170–199 mg/dL), the measurement should be repeated and averaged with the first. If the average is borderline or high, a fasting lipoprotein analysis should be performed.
- <170 mg/dl repeat in 5 years with healthy lifestyle

Clinical presentation
- Achilles tendinitis or tenosynovitis, flat, orange colored skin lesions (planter xanthoma).
- Untreated male will develop coronary heart disease 100%, 75% for untreated female.

Diagnosis
- Cholesterol level 600–1000 mg/dl

Management
- *The Step-One diet* recommends the same intake as the population approach (*20–30%* of calories from total fat and < *10%* from saturated fat, *plus* < *300 mg* cholesterol per day).
- *The Step-Two* diet includes 20 to 30% of calories from total fat, less than 7% of total calories from saturated fat, and less than 200 mg cholesterol per day.
- *The initiation and maintenance of this diet requires careful assessment, planning, and instruction by a health professional, usually a registered dietitian or other qualified nutrition professional*

Drug therapy
- Children older than 10 years after a trial of diet therapy for 6–12 months and when the following conditions are met:
- LDL-cholesterol remains above *190 mg/dL*
- LDL-cholesterol exceeds *160 mg/dL* with a family history of premature cardiovascular disease; or
- LDL-cholesterol exceeds *160 mg/dL* in the presence of two or more other risk factors (cigarette smoking, hypertension, HDL-cholesterol <35 mg/dL, severe obesity, diabetes mellitus, physical inactivity) which have not been successfully controlled.
- *Drugs recommended for children are bile acid sequestrants (cholestyramine and colestipol).*
- *Use of HMG Co-A reductase inhibitors ("statins") is more common among adolescents with multiple risk factors.*
- *DD: Sitosterolemia.* It has tendon xanthoma in the first decade but only moderate hypercholesterolemia.

Smith–Lemli–Opitz Syndrome

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Defect in cholesterol biosynthesis
- Deficient activity of 7-dehydrocholesterol reductase
- Cholesterol is important for embryogenesis

Clinical presentation
- Microcephaly
- Broad nasal tip
- Hypertelorism
- Cleft palate
- Micrognathia
- Anteverted nostrils
- Ptosis
- Low-set ears
- Narrow bifrontal diameter
- Postaxial polydactyly
- Hypospadias
- Ambiguous genitalia

Diagnosis
- Elevated dehydrocholesterol
- Low cholesterol or normal

Treatment
- Dietary cholesterol
- Bile salt supplements

Krabbe Disease

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Mutation in the GALC gene located on chromosome 14 (14q31)
- Galactocerebrosidase deficiency

Clinical presentation
- Demyelinating manifestations
- Convulsions
- Quadriplegia
- Blindness, deafness

- Intellectual disability (ID)
- Progressive neurologic symptoms that lead to death by age 2.

Treatment
- No cure
- Bone marrow transplantation may benefit early course of the disease.

Menkes Disease (Kinky Hair Disease)

Background
- X-linked disease
- Impaired uptake of copper

Clinical presentation
- Premature delivery
- Hypothermia or temperature instability
- Hypotonia
- Hypoglycemia
- Abnormal feature: facies, pudgy cheeks, and sagging jowls, and lips
- Hair and eyebrows are sparse
- Kinky hair (pili torti under microscope)
- Progressive neurological deterioration
- Seizures and loss of milestones

Diagnosis
- Low serum copper and ceruloplasmin
- Copper and ceruloplasmin levels may be normal in the milder variants and in the neonatal period.

Body Odors

Trimethylaminuria also called fish odor syndrome
- Decaying fish

Maple syrup urine disease
- Smell like caramel, maple syrup or have a malty odor.

Phenylketonuria
- The person may present a musty, mousy, wolflike, barney, horsey or stale smell.

Multiple acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency
- The person presents variable body odor of sweaty feet.

Isovaleric acidaemia
- Isovaleric acidemia is a odor of cheesy, acrid, sweaty feet.

Tyrosinemia
- Cabbage or rancid butter.

Diabetes mellitus, and diabetic ketoacidosis
- Fruity breath

3-Methylcrotonylglycinuria
- The patient presents an odor like male cat urine.

Cystinuria
- Because cystine is one of the sulfur-containing amino acids patient smells,“rotten egg” odor.

Hypermethioninemia
- Fishy, sweet and fruity, rancid butter or boiled cabbage odor.

Suggested Readings

1. Berry GT, Segal S, Gitzelmann R. Disorders of galactose metabolism. In: Fernandes J, Saudubray M, van den Berghe G, Walter JH, editors. Inborn metabolic diseases—diagnosis and treatment. 4th edn. New York: Springer; 2006.
2. Kim HJ, Park SJ, Park KI, Lee JS, Eun HS, Kim JH, et al. Acute treatment of hyperammonemia by continuous renal replacement therapy in a newborn patient with ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency. Korean J Pediatr. 2011;54:425–8.
3. Grabowski GA. Phenotype, diagnosis, and treatment of Gaucher’s disease. Lancet. 2008;372:1263–71.
4. Wanders RJ. Peroxisomes, lipid metabolism, and human disease. Cell Biochem Biophys. 2000;32 Spring:89–106.

Fetus and Newborn Infants (Neonatology)

Osama Naga

Abbreviations

TTN	Transient tachypnea of newborn
PPHN	Persistent pulmonary hypertension of newborn
NEC	Necrotizing enterocolitis
HIE	Hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy
BPP	Brachial plexus palsy
CDH	Congenital diaphragmatic hernia
CMV	Congenital cytomegalovirus

Definitions

Live birth
- Live birth occurs when a fetus, whatever its gestational age, exits the maternal body and subsequently shows any signs of life, such as voluntary movement, heartbeat, or pulsation of the umbilical cord, for however brief a time and regardless of whether the umbilical cord or placenta are intact.

Gestational age
- The number of weeks in a pregnancy since the first day of the last normal menstrual period.

Small for gestational age (SGA)
- Birth weight < 10th percentile for the given gestational age.

Large for gestational age (LGA)
- Birth weight > 90th percentile for the given gestational age.

Low birth weight (LBW)
- Birth weight < 2500 g regardless the gestational age.

Very low birth weight (VLBW)
- Birth weight < 1500 g.

Extreme low birth weight (ELBW)
- Birth weight of less than 1000 g (2 lb, 3 oz).

Preterm
- An infant born before the last day of 37th week of gestation (259th day) of gestation.

Term
- An infant born between the first day of 38th weeks of gestation (260th day) and the end of the last day of 42nd week (294th day) of gestation.

Post-term
- An infant born on or after the first day of the 43rd week (295th day) of gestation.

Perinatal death
- Death occurring between the 28th week of gestation and the 28th day of life.

Prenatal Care

Routine prenatal laboratory tests
- Urine for protein, glucose, and bacteriuria
- Complete blood count (CBC)
- Blood type and Rh
- Red blood cell (RBC) antibodies
- Hepatitis B surface antigen
- Rapid plasma reagin (RPR) or Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL)
- Rubella antibodies
- Blood work for neural tube defect and chromosomal abnormalities if indicated
- Ultrasound at 18–20 weeks if indicated (Table 1)

O. Naga (✉)
Pediatric Department,
Paul L Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_8,

Table 1 Significant fetal ultrasonographic anatomic findings and postnatal management

Prenatal US finding	Measurements	Causes	Postnatal evaluation
Dilated cerebral ventricles	Ventriculomegaly ≥10 mm	Hydrocephalus Dandy-Walker cyst Agenesis of corpus callosum	Serial head US or CT evaluation for other system anomalies
Choroid plexus cyst	Unilateral or bilateral around 10 mm cyst	Trisomy 18 or 21	Karyotype if indicated Head US or CT scan evaluation other system anomalies
Nuchal pad thickening	≥6 mm at 15–20 weeks	Cystic hygroma, Turner syndrome, trisomy 18 or 21	Evaluation for other system malformation, Karyotype if indicated
Dilated renal pelvis	Pyelectasis ≥5–10 mm	Ureteropelvic junction obstruction Vesicoureteral reflux, Posterior, urethral valve, Ectopic ureterocele	Repeat renal ultrasound on day 5 and at 1 month; voiding cystourethrogram, prophylactic antibiotic if indicated

CT computed tomography, *US* ultrasonography

- Education about nutrition, vitamins, and pregnancy course
- Universal prenatal screening for vaginal and rectal group B Streptococcus (GBS) of all pregnant women between 35–37 weeks and intrapartum antibiotics if indicated
- Prenatal care delayed until after the first trimester is associated with higher infant mortality rate

General Neonatal Risks

- Delayed prenatal care.
- Maternal age: teens and >40 years of age.
- Male infant have higher mortality rate than female infants.
- Multiple births.
- Placental bleeding.
- Uterine abnormalities.
- Premature rupture of membrane.
- Chorioamnionitis.
- Maternal drug abuse, e.g., cocaine.
- Bacterial vaginosis.

Known Risk Factors of Prematurity

- Placental bleeding
- Uterine abnormalities
- Cocaine abuse
- Maternal chronic disease
- Premature rupture of membrane
- Chorioamnionitis
- Bacterial vaginosis

Factors Associated with Preterm High Mortality Rate

- Male sex
- 5 min Apgar <4
- Persistent bradycardia at 5 min
- Hypothermia
- Intrauterine growth retardation (IUGR)

Umbilical Cord

- Umbilical cord has two arteries and one vein.
- Single artery umbilical cord can be associated with other organ anomalies, e.g., heart and kidneys.
- Umbilical cord length is about 55 cm; umbilical cord <40 cm is short and can be associated with fetal complications, e.g., amniotic band and arthrogryposis.
- Longer cord more than 55 cm may be associated with knots, prolapse, or entwine the fetus.

Placenta

- *Placenta Accreta*: Develops when uterus lacks normal decidua because of previous trauma, e.g., previous C-section, and curettage
- *Placenta Percreta*: Develops when placenta penetrates the scars in the placenta accreta, resulting in serious bleeding
- *Placental Abruption*: Develops when a firm (organized) layer of blood forms after a retroplacental hemorrhage

Cesarean Section (C-section)

Indications for C-section

- Previous C-section
- Fetal distress
- Dystocia
- Mal-presentation
- Others

Fetal Distress

Definitions

- Non-stress test is the most common noninvasive test; it monitors the fetal heart rate accelerations that follow the fetal movement.
- Early *deceleration* is associated with head compression.

- *Variable deceleration is associated with uterine contractions*.
- *Late deceleration* is associated with fetal hypoxemia, maternal hypotension, or excessive uterine activity or any other factors that limits effective oxygenations of the fetus.
  - If late deceleration is not responding to oxygen supplementation, hydration, position change and discontinuation of labor stimulation prompt delivery is indicated.
- *Contraction stress test* is important for testing the wellbeing of fetus, e.g., *uteroplacental insufficiency,* IUGR.
  - *Contraction stress test,* measures the heart rate in relation to uterine contraction by giving oxytocin or nipple stimulation.
- *Biophysical profile test,* fetal movement, amniotic fluid volume, fetal breathing, and reflex movement, but does not assess the fetal growth.

Premature Rupture of Membranes (PROM)

Background

- PROM refers to a patient who is beyond 37 weeks' gestation and has presented with rupture of membranes (ROM) prior to the onset of labor.
- Preterm premature rupture of membranes (PPROM) is ROM prior to 37 week' gestation.
- Spontaneous premature rupture of the membranes (SPROM) is ROM after or with the onset of labor.
- Prolonged ROM is any ROM that persists for more than 24 h and prior to the onset of labor.

Management of PROM

- PROM occurs at term or at 36–38 weeks gestation
  - Evaluate the mother by speculum examination.
  - Check the fetus for the heart rate (FHR).
  - Identify the fetal presentation.
  - Most obstetricians induce labor at this point.
- PROM occurs at 34–36 weeks gestation
  - Newborn morbidity is very low and PROM is usually treated the same as at term.
- PROM occurs at 32–33 weeks gestation
  - Some obstetricians perform amniocentesis to test pulmonary maturity.
  - Others may allow simple bed rest with steroid therapy to induce maturity.
  - 48 h course of IV ampicillin and erythromycin followed by 5 days of amoxicillin and erythromycin is recommended during expectant management.
- Less than 28 weeks gestation
  - Some obstetricians give tocolysis, even with active contractions after the steroid therapy is started.
- Infection in conjunction with PROM
  - Deliver the baby as quickly as possible.

Chorioamnionitis

Background

- Chorioamnionitis is a complication of pregnancy caused by bacterial infection of the fetal amnion and chorion membranes.

Clinical presentation

- Maternal fever (intrapartum temperature >100.4 °F or >37.8 °C); most frequently observed sign
- Significant maternal tachycardia (>120 beats/min)
- Fetal tachycardia (>160–180 beats/min)
- Purulent or foul-smelling amniotic fluid or vaginal discharge
- Uterine tenderness
- Maternal leukocytosis (total blood leukocyte count >15,000–18,000 cells/μL)

Management

- Early delivery, supportive care, and antibiotic administration.
- Pharmacotherapy for the mother
  - Aqueous crystalline penicillin G
  - Clindamycin or cephalosporin: for penicillin-allergic patients
- Pharmacotherapy for the neonate
  - Ampicillin and gentamicin
- Supportive care of the septic neonate may include the following:
  - Warmth, monitoring of vital signs
  - Preparedness to perform a full resuscitation, including intubation, providing positive-pressure ventilation
  - Treatment of hypovolemia, shock, and respiratory and/or metabolic acidosis
  - Surfactant replacement therapy
  - Glucose homeostasis
  - Assessment and treatment of thrombocytopenia and coagulopathy, if present

Preeclampsia

Mild preeclampsia

- Presence of hypertension (blood pressure (BP) ≥140/90 mmHg) on two occasions, at least 6 h apart, but without evidence of end-organ damage, in a woman who was normotensive before 20 weeks' gestation.
- In a patient with preexisting essential hypertension, preeclampsia is diagnosed if SBP has increased by 30 mmHg or if diastolic blood pressure (DBP) has increased by 15 mmHg.

Severe preeclampsia
- Systolic blood pressure (SBP) of 160 mmHg or higher or DBP of 110 mmHg or higher on two occasions at least 6 h apart
- Proteinuria of more than 5 g in a 24 h urine collection or more than 3+ on 2 random urine samples collected at least 4 h apart
- Pulmonary edema or cyanosis
- Oliguria (<400 mL in 24 h)
- Persistent headaches
- Epigastric pain and/or impaired liver function
- Thrombocytopenia
- Oligohydramnios, decreased fetal growth, or placental abruption

Eclampsia
- Eclampsia is defined as seizures that cannot be attributable to other causes in a woman with preeclampsia.
- HELLP syndrome (hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme, low platelets) may complicate severe preeclampsia.

Management
- Delivery is the only cure for preeclampsia.
- Severe preeclampsia delivery should be initiated as quickly as possible by induction or C-section.

Medications used for BP control include the following:
- Hydralazine
- Labetalol
- Nifedipine
- Sodium nitroprusside (in severe hypertensive emergency refractory to other medications)

Diabetes Mellitus

- Good management of diabetes before and during pregnancy usually results in excellent outcome.
- There is still higher frequency in congenital anomalies even with good control of diabetes mellitus (DM) in the mother.
- The incidence of malformation is related to the degree of the hyperglycemia prior to conception.
- Mothers should keep the fasting blood sugar value at 60–100 mg/dL, and keep 1-h, post-meal values at 100–140 mg/dL.
- Before diabetic women become pregnant, they should have a glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA1c) of <6%, and maintain the same during pregnancy.
- The most common complication in well controlled mother with DM is macrosomia.

Newborn Examination

Apgar Score

- Dr. Virginia Apgar devised the Apgar score in 1952 as a simple and replicable method to quickly and summarily assess the health of newborn children immediately after birth.
- Apgar score at 1 min and 5 min does not correlate well with long-term neurobehavioral sequelae
- Apgar score <3 at 15 min has been associated with high mortality and severe neurologic sequelae (Table 2).

Newborn crying

- Weak cry or high pitched cry is abnormal.
- Hoarse cry may indicate hypothyroidism, or vocal cord paralysis.

Temperature

- Persistent abnormal temperature in normal temperature environment must be investigated.
- Hypothermia: Look for sepsis, hypoglycemia, hypothyroidism, or hypoxia.
- Hyperthermia: Look for high environmental temperature, sepsis, adrenal hemorrhage, or intracranial hemorrhage.

Skin

- Aplasia cutis congenita (congenital absence of the skin)
  - Absence of a portion of skin in a localized or widespread area at birth.

Table 2 Apgar score

SCORE	0	1	2
A—Activity	Absent	Arm and leg flexed	Active
P—Pulse	Absent	<100	>100
G—Grimace (reflex irritability)	No response	Grimace	Sneezes, cough and pulls away
A—Appearance	Blue, pale	Body pink, blue limbs	Completely pink
R—Respiration	Absent	Slow and irregular	Good and crying

Apgar score is done at 1 min, 5 min routinely and at 10 min, if needed

  - It most commonly (70%) manifests as a solitary defect on the scalp.
  - Consider trisomy 13 especially if associated with midline defect.
- Acrocyanosis cyanosis of hands and feet when exposed to colder temperature, this can be normal finding.
- Generalized cyanosis: significant hypoxemia (e.g., cardiac or respiratory) or methemoglobinemia.
- Pallor: anemia or poor perfusion (e.g., abruptio placenta or placenta praevia).
- Cutis marmorata (pale mottled skin): cold environment, sepsis or hypothermia
- Plethora (very red skin): polycythemia.
- Harlequin skin: one side is pink and other side pale with sharp line demarcation.
- Harlequin ichthyosis: thickening of the keratin layer in fetal skin, the skin contains massive, diamond-shaped scales, and tends to have a reddish color.
- Ecchymoses: usually due to birth trauma.
- Petechiae: Scattered localized petechiae are common after delivery, however extensive generalized petechiae must be investigated for thrombocytopenia or sepsis and other causes.

Subcutaneous Fat Necrosis of the Newborn (SCFN)
- Variably circumscribed nodules and plaques that have a deep, indurated feel, with overlying skin may be red, purple, or flesh-colored and may look taut and shiny.
- It is a self-limited process that does not require treatment.

Jaundice
- If present in the first day of life, the baby must be investigated for hemolytic anemia or sepsis.

Erythema toxicum
- Asymptomatic small papules, vesicles, and, occasionally, pustules are present on the skin.
- Seen on dependent areas, generally starting on the trunk. They then tend to spread centripetally.
- Surrounded by a distinctive blotchy erythematous halo on the trunk, extremities, and face.
- A simple Gram stain or Wright stain should reveal evidence of a sterile pustule populated primarily by eosinophils.
- Self-limited and requires *only* reassurance.

Mongolian spot
- Dark blue-grey lesions are most commonly seen in darker-skinned infants.
- The sacrum is the most commonly affected area. These lesions tend to fade over several years but may not completely disappear.
- No evaluation is needed.

Salmon patch
- Pink patches in the middle of the forehead and over the left eye are salmon patches.
- Also known as nevus simplex or "angel kisses."
- Eyelid spots generally fade over several months.
- Lesions on the glabella may take several years to resolve, and occasionally the outlines can be seen into adulthood, especially when the face is flushed.

Head

Head shape
- Head shape may vary depending on the birth position.
- Molding is temporary overlapping of bones and must be distinguished from craniosynostosis.

Fontanelles
- Anterior fontanelle is open, soft, and flat at birth, measures < 3.5 cm (usually closes between 7–19 months).
- Posterior fontanelle is often fingertip size or just barely open (usually close between 1–3 months).
- Bulging fontanelle indicates increased intracranial pressure.
- Hypothyroidism must be considered if posterior fontanelle persistently opened.

Caput succedaneum
- Definition
  - It is a diffuse edematous swelling of soft tissue of the scalp that may extend across the suture lines.
- Causes
  - Secondary to the pressure of the uterus or vaginal wall.
- Outcome
  - Edema disappears within 1 week.

Cephalhematoma
- Background
  - Subperiosteal hemorrhage with no discoloration of scalp that becomes firm and tense mass.
  - Cephalhematoma never extends across suture line.
  - Usually associated with underlying linear fracture and hyperbilirubinemia, it may be necessary to treat with phototherapy.
- Causes
  - Traumatic delivery
  - Forceps delivery
- Management
  - X-ray film or computed tomography (CT) scan should be obtained if skull fracture is suspected.
  - Hemoglobin and bilirubin should be monitored.
  - Most cephalhematoma resolve within 2–3 weeks. Aspiration is rarely necessary.

Subgaleal hemorrhage
- Background
  - Collection of blood under the aponeurosis that covers the scalp.
  - Usually secondary to rupture of emissary veins and associated with vacuum deliveries.

  - Massive bleeding usually associated with hereditary coagulopathy.
  - Many patients have a consumptive coagulopathy secondary to massive blood loss.
- Management
  - Patients should be monitored for hypotension and hyperbilirubinemia.
- Typically resolves within 2–3 weeks.

Traumatic epidural, subdural and subarachnoid hemorrhage
- Risk factors
  - Large head
  - Prolonged labor in breech or precipitous delivery
- Important
  - Child abuse must be suspected in all infants with subdural hemorrhage after the immediate neonatal periods.
- Diagnosis
  - Suspect subdural hemorrhage if megalocephaly, bulging fontanel, unexplained anemia, and jaundice, or seizures.
  - CT scan and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) are useful in the diagnosis.

Skull fracture
- Linear fracture: Linear fractures are benign and have excellent prognosis.
- Depressed fracture: Ping-pong ball, usually not associated with loss of bone continuity, the prognosis is good if neurological exam is normal.
- Basal fracture: Overall prognosis is not good and significant risk of permanent sequelae.

Eyes

- Cataract: Galactosemia, rubella infection.
- White pupillary reflex: Cataract, retinoblastoma, retinopathy of prematurity, or retinal coloboma.
- Coloboma (hole in the iris): :CHARGE syndrome; (Coloboma, Heart defect, Atresia choanae, Retarded growth and development, Genital abnormality, Ear abnormality), and Trisomy 13 (Patau syndrome)
- Strabismus: Persistent strabismus has to be referred immediately, occasional eye deviation can be normal in the first 4 months of life.
- Eyelids: Ptosis could be a sign of Horner syndrome or congenital myasthenia gravis. Maternal history, check the arms and the clavicles
- Subconjunctival hemorrhage hemorrhage: Common after birth trauma. It resolves spontaneously over a period of time.
- Congenital glaucoma: Enlarged cornea, that become progressively cloudy, a corneal diameter >11 mm has to be investigated.

Ears

- *Malformed ears* and low set ears are associated with many syndromes, look for urogenital malformation.
- *Preauricular pits and tags:* If isolated, no family history of renal disease or deafness, renal US is not routinely recommended.

NOSE

- *Nasal stuffiness* after birth can be a sign of drug withdrawal.
- *Choanal atresia* can be unilateral or bilateral (respiratory distress and cyanosis while feeding if bilateral).
- *Snuffles (rhinorrhea)* and saddle nose: Usually associated with syphilis.

Mouth

- Epstein pearls: Small white papule seen in the midline of the palate of this infant
  - It represents epithelial tissue that becomes trapped during the palatal fusion. It is a very common and benign finding.
- Bohn's nodules: White bumps present on the upper gum in infants
  - The exact etiology is unknown, but they are thought to arise from remnants of the dental lamina or from heterotopic salivary glands.
  - Present either on the lateral aspect of the gum or on the periphery of the palate.
  - These nodules are a benign finding and will disappear with time.
- Ranula: Benign mass comes out of the floor of the mouth
- High arched palate: Usually associated with syndromes
- Pierre Robin syndrome: Protruding tongue, micrognathia (small chin) with or without cleft palate.

Natal teeth
- Supernumerary (usually very loose and easy to be removed with a little pinch)
- True milk teeth (usually hard) and should not be removed

Ankyloglossia or tongue-tie
- It is a condition in which the bottom of the tongue is tethered to the floor of the mouth by a membrane (frenulum) so that the tongue's range of motion is unduly restricted.
- Frenulotomy is recommended if interfering with feeding or speech.

Neck

Obstetrical Brachial Plexus Injuries (OBPI)

Background

- *Erb's palsy* (Duchenne-Erb's palsy) is upper trunk nerve injury (C5 and C6), due to traction on the upper trunk.
- *Klumpke palsy* is injury to the C8-T1 nerve roots and the nearby stellate ganglion.
- Many cases of OBPI are transient, with the child recovering full function in the first week of life.

Classification

- Purely neurapraxic lesions
  - Stretching of nerve without disruption.
  - These lesions generally are reversible and do not leave sequelae.
- Axonotmetic lesions
  - Due to nerve fiber (axons) disruption with intact sheath.
  - Causes degeneration of the axon distal to the injury.
  - These injuries improve gradually over 4–6 months, depending on the level of the lesion.
- Neurotmesis lesions
  - The most severe.
  - Involves disruption of the axon and myelin sheath (total sever, avulsion injury).
  - Muscle atrophy from a neurotmesis lesion begins 3–6 months after injury and complete recovery is impossible (worst prognosis).

Clinical presentation

- Complete BPP (C5-T1)
  - Arm held limply at his/her side.
  - Deep tendon reflexes (DTRs) in the affected arm are absent.
  - Moro response is asymmetrical, with no active abduction of the ipsilateral arm.
  - Horner's syndrome (i.e., miosis, ptosis, anhidrosis) may occur; it is a bad prognostic sign usually associated with avulsion injury.
  - Respiratory distress and elevation of diaphragm may occur due to injury to phrenic nerve.
- Erb's palsy (C5-C7)
  - Arm adducted and internally rotated.
  - Elbow extended, and the forearm pronated.
  - Wrist flexed and the hand in a fist (waiter tip position).
  - Absent Moro's reflex, but grasp reflex is present on the affected side.
  - In the first hours of life, the hand also may appear flaccid, but strength soon returns.
  - About 80% of patients with Erb's palsy will show complete recovery within the first 3 months, 90% recovers by 12 months.
- Klumpke palsy (C8-T1)
  - It is rare.
  - Absent grasp reflex.
  - Supinated arm, elbow bent, the wrist extended and fingers flexed, "claw hand."
  - One third of the cases associated with Horner's syndrome.
  - Phrenic nerve injuries with Klumpke's palsy is evident.

Associated injuries

- The pediatrician must perform a careful examination of the infant with a OBPI to look for associated injuries.
- The most common associated (not causative) injuries include the following:
  - Clavicular and humeral fractures
  - Torticollis
  - Cephalohematoma
  - Facial nerve palsy
  - Diaphragmatic paralysis

Diagnosis

- Chest radiography: looking for clavicular fractures or elevation of diaphragm suggesting phrenic nerve injuries and root avulsion.
- MRI: High resolution MRI is the study of choice for evaluating obstetrical brachial plexus injuries.
- MRI is not indicated in cases of Erb's palsy, it is indicated for preoperative planning in severe cases requiring surgery.

Management

- Rehabilitation must start immediately after the diagnosis.
  - The arm can be fixed across the child's chest by pinning of his/her clothing to provide more comfort.
  - Gentle ROM exercises.
  - Dress the baby gently and avoid further traction on the arm.
  - Wrist extension splint is necessary to maintain proper wrist alignment and reduce the risk of progressive contractures.
- Absence of full recovery by age of 3 months, signs of root avulsion (Horner syndrome, phrenic nerve affection) and total palsy, and Klumpke's palsy are all indications for referral to orthopedics.

Chest

- Fracture of the clavicle is very common, crepitation usually found during examination.
- Supernumerary nipple is fairly common and considered minor anomalies.
- Widely spaced nipples are seen in Turner syndrome.
- Breast hypertrophy is common (because of maternal hormone), engorgement may increase during the first few days but then usually resolve.

Lung

Respiratory distress
- Respiratory rate in a newborn persistently more than 60 is abnormal.
- Grunting, nasal flaring, retractions, and tachypnea may be transient in the first few hours after birth; transient tachypnea of newborn (TTN). If it persists for more than 24 h, other causes must be explored.

Unilateral movement of the chest
- Phrenic nerve palsy
- Diaphragmatic hernia

Cough
- It is always abnormal in newborn.
- Pneumonia must be considered.

Heart

- Point of maximal cardiac impulse (PMI): Location is fourth to fifth intercostal space just medial to left midclavicular line.
- If PMI is displaced, chest X-ray is recommended for possible, pneumothorax, dextrocardia, diaphragmatic hernia or space occupying lesion.
- Bradycardia <80 beat/min is abnormal: Look for sepsis asphyxia, increased intracranial pressure, hypothyroidism, congenital heart disease and heart block.
- Tachycardia >180 beat/min (persistent): Look for fever, hypovolemia, anemia, tachyarrhythmia, hyperthyroidism and drug withdrawal.

Murmur
- 8% of murmurs at birth are associated with congenital heart diseases.
- Benign murmurs are usually due to transient changes in the postnatal circulation.
- Murmurs usually require work-up:
  - Persist after the first day of life
  - Cyanosis
  - Evidence of poor perfusion
  - Poor feeding

Blood pressure
- Systolic blood pressure in term infants <12 h usually between 60–90 mmHg.
- Blood pressure in both arms and one leg must be determined; a pressure difference of more than 20 mmHg in favor of the arms may be considered evidence of coarctation of the aorta.
- Absent pulse in the lower extremities is a red flag for coarctation of the aorta.

Abdomen

Liver/spleen
- Liver is normally palpated 1–2 cm below the right costal margin in newborn.
- Spleen is normally palpable not more than 1 cm below the left costal margin.

Abdominal masses
- Multicystic dysplastic kidney is the most common cause of an abdominal mass in the newborn period and is the most common cystic malformation of the kidney in infancy.
- Subcapsular hematoma of the liver (traumatic delivery).

Abdominal wall defects
- Umbilical hernia and diastasis recti
  - Usually benign and self-limited conditions.
  - Umbilical hernias are managed with observation, as these defects typically close by age 4 or 5 years.
  - Any defects that persist beyond this age should undergo surgical repair.
- Omphalocele
  - Incomplete closure of the abdominal wall and persistent herniation of the midgut.
  - The abdominal viscera are contained in a translucent sac, which is composed of amnion, wharton jelly, and peritoneum.
  - The umbilical vessels radiate onto the wall of the sac.
  - In 50% of cases, the liver, spleen, and ovaries or testes accompany the extruded midgut.
- Gastroschisis
  - Defect due to primary failure of the lateral ventral folds
  - Small and large intestine sitting outside and, not covered by membrane
- Prune belly syndrome (Eagle-Barrett syndrome)
  - Absence of anterior abdominal wall
  - Wrinkly folds of skin covering the abdomen
  - Usually associated with urinary tract anomalies (obstructive uropathy)
  - Undescended testis in males
- Urachal remnants
  - The developing bladder remains connected to the allantois through the urachus.
  - Remnants of this connection include a patent urachus, urachal sinus (free communication between the bladder and umbilicus), and urachal cyst.
  - Umbilical polyps can also be observed in association with a urachal remnant.
- Umbilical granuloma
  - Granulation tissue may persist at the base of the umbilicus after cord separation.
  - The tissue is composed of fibroblasts and capillaries and can grow to more than 1 cm.

  - Umbilical granulomas must be differentiated from umbilical polyps, which do not respond to silver nitrate cauterization.
- Omphalomesenteric remnants
  - Persistence of all or portions of the omphalomesenteric duct can result in fistulas, sinus tracts, cysts, congenital bands, and mucosal remnants.
  - Patients with mucosal remnants can present with an umbilical polyp or an umbilical cyst.
- Delayed separation of the umbilical cord
  - The umbilical cord usually separates from the umbilicus 1–8 weeks postnatally.
  - Topical antimicrobials are usually applied after delivery, followed by isopropyl alcohol until cord separation.
  - Delayed separation > 8 weeks may signify an underlying immune disorder.
- Single umbilical artery (SUA)
  - Most cords have one vein and two arteries.
  - 85 % of newborn with SUA are healthy.
  - Associated with anomalies in all major organ systems (e.g., cardiovascular, gastrointestinal, and central nervous systems).
  - The most common congenital abnormality usually involves the kidneys.
  - SUA is associated with an increased risk of chromosome abnormalities such as trisomy 13, trisomy 18, and triploidy.

Genitalia

Female

- Has two orifices one for the urethra just below the clitoris and must be differentiated from vagina.
- White discharge from the vagina is normal and sometime is bloody (withdrawal of maternal hormones) in the first few days after delivery.
- Imperforate hymen may result in hydrometrocolpos which may present with abdominal pain or bulging mass.

Male

Penis
- Term boys penile length is 3–4 cm.
- Less than 2.5 cm is abnormal (hormonal work-up).
- Prepuce is usually adherent and should not be forcibly retracted.

Chordee
- The penis usually curves downward, and the urinary opening may be on the underside of the penis (hypospadias).
- Epispadias: Can occur on the dorsum of the penis but is less common than hypospadias.

Testis
- Normally in the scrotum in term infants but may be palpated in the upper scrotum or in inguinal canal.
- Testicular torsion can occur in infancy and would manifest as an enlarged testicles and overlying discoloration of the scrotum.

Hydrocele/inguinal hernia
- Hydrocele is a collection of fluid within the processus-vaginalis (PV) that produces swelling in the inguinal region or scrotum.
- Hydrocele without hernia usually disappears without surgery.
- If patent processusvaginalis (PPV) is small in caliber and only large enough to allow fluid to pass, the condition is referred to as a communicating hydrocele.
- If the PPV is larger, allowing ovary, intestine, omentum, or other abdominal contents to protrude, the condition is referred to as a hernia.
- The inguinal region and scrotum should not connect with the abdomen.
- Hydrocele that changes in size or persists is indicative of an indirect inguinal hernia and peritoneal communication exit, and indicative for surgical correction.

Ambiguous genitalia
- Small penis, bifid scrotum, large clitoris, and pigmented fused vulva all are signs of ambiguous genitalia.
- Initial laboratory screening.
  - Chromosomal analysis
  - Endocrine screening
  - Serum chemistries/electrolyte tests (possible CAH)
  - Androgen-receptor levels
  - 5-alpha reductase type II level
- Genetic and endocrinology consultation.

Anus

- Anus has to be examined carefully and confirm not just a fistula.
- Presence of meconium does not rule out imperforate anus.
- Meconium may pass from the fistula.
- Meconium usually passes in the first 24 h of birth and 99 % of term infants will pass meconium within the first 48 h.
- Impaction of meconium that causes intestinal obstruction is often associated with cystic fibrosis.

Back and Spinal Column

Sacral dimple
- Indication or US or MRI
  - Multiple dimples
  - Dimple diameter more than 5 mm
  - Dimple > 2.5 cm above the anus (the higher the lesion, the higher the risk)
  - Dimple outside the sacrococcygeal region
- Indication for referral to neurosurgery
  - Abnormal US or MRI, e.g., occult spinal dysraphism; split cord malformation, dermal sinus tract, tethered spinal cord, and intraspinal lipoma
  - Other associated cutaneous findings, e.g., hypertrichosis and hemangioma
  - Abnormal neurologic examination

Extremities

Developmental dysplasia of the hip
- Ortolani and Barlow test; see ortho chapter

Hemihypertrophy
- Wilms tumor occurs also in association with either hemihypertrophy of the extremities or Beckwith-Weidemann syndrome.

Arthrogryposis
- It is a nonprogressive condition characterized by congenital multiple joint contractures.
- Usually associated with:
  - Short umbilical cord
  - Polyhydramnios (some cases may be associated with oligohydramnios)
  - Pulmonary hypoplasia
  - Micrognathia
  - Ocular hypertelorism

Polydactyly
- Ulnar or postaxial polydactyly
  - It is the most common and usually isolated condition.
  - Usually autosomal dominant.
- Radial or preaxial polydactyly
  - Usually syndromic and usually associated with other anomalies.

Amniotic band (Streeter dysplasia)
- Tight ring around the limb or any parts of the body causing sharp, deep creases, depression, or even intra-uterine amputation

Neonatal Prophylaxis

Eye prophylaxis
- Ophthalmic Erythromycin 0.5 % ointment within 1 h after delivery
- Prevent *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* ophthalmia neonatorum

Hepatitis B prophylaxis
- Hepatitis B vaccine IM only if the mother is hepatitis B negative.
- Hepatitis B vaccine and hepatitis B immunoglobulin if the mother is positive for hepatitis B surface antigen.
- If the mother is positive, baby should receive the second dose of hepatitis B vaccine at 1 month of age.

Vitamin K
- Vitamin K 1 mg intramuscular (IM) injection in the first few hours after delivery
- Prevents hemorrhagic disease of newborn

Umbilical cord care
- Application of topical antimicrobial, e.g., triple-dye
- Keep uncovered
- May use alcohol for disinfection and keep it dry

Circumcision
- Contraindicated if associated hypospadias.
- It is not a routine, it is the parent preference.

Intrauterine Growth Retardation (IUGR)

Definition
- IUGR, which is defined as less than 10 % of predicted fetal weight for gestational age, may result in significant fetal morbidity and mortality if not properly diagnosed.

Causes
- Chronic hypertension
- Preeclampsia early in gestation
- DM
- Systemic lupus erythematosus
- Chronic renal disease
- Smoking, drugs, and alcohol

Diagnosis
- Although no single biometric or doppler measurement is completely accurate for helping make or exclude the diagnosis of growth restriction, screening for IUGR is important to identify at-risk fetuses.

Assessment of gestational age (Table 3)

Table 3 Gestational age ranges according to the physical characteristics of newborn and maturity

Body parts	Characteristics	Weeks of gestation range
Vernix (waxy or cheese-like white substance found coating the skin of newborn babies)	Covers body in a thick layer Covers the scalp, back, creases	24–38 weeks
	Covers the creases, scant	38–39 weeks
	No vernix	40–41 weeks
		>42 weeks
Skin	Thin, visible venules, edema	24–31 weeks
	Smooth, thicker, no edema	32–35 weeks
	Pink	36–37 weeks
	Few vessels seen	38–39 weeks
	Desquamation starting; pale pink	40–41 weeks
	Thick, pale, desquamation over all areas	≥42 weeks
Hair	Appears on head	20–22 weeks
	Eyebrows and eyelashes	23–27 weeks
	Fine, woolly out from head	28–36 weeks
	Silky, single strands, lies flat	37–41 weeks
	Receding hairline, loss of baby hair	≥42 weeks
Lanugo (very fine, soft, and usually unpigmented, downy hair can be found on the body of a fetus or newborn baby)	Covers all body	22–32 weeks
	Disappears from face	33–37 weeks
	Present on shoulders only	38–41 weeks
	None present	≥42 weeks
Nail plates	Appears at	20–22 weeks
	Nails to fingertips	32–41 weeks
	Nails extend beyond fingertips	≥42 weeks
Ears	Flat, shapeless	24–33 weeks
	Superior incurving beginning	34–35 weeks
	Upper 2/3 incurving	36–38 weeks
	Well-defined incurving to lobe	≥39 weeks
Cartilage	Pinna soft, stays folded	24–31 weeks
	Cartilage scant, returns slowly	32–35 weeks
	Thin cartilage, springs back	36–39 weeks
	Pinna firm, remains erect	≥40 weeks
Breast tissue and areola	No breast tissue or barely visible	24–33 weeks
	Areola raised	34–35 weeks
	Breast tissue a 1–2 mm nodule	36–37 weeks
	Breast tissue a 3–5 mm nodule	38 weeks
	Breast tissue a 5–6 mm nodule	39 weeks
	Breast tissue a 7–10 mm nodule	≥40 weeks
Testes	Palpable in inguinal canal	28–35 weeks
	Palpable in upper scrotum	36–39 weeks
	Palpable in lower scrotum	≥40 weeks
Scrotum	Few rugae	28–35 weeks
	Rugae more on anterior portion	36–39 weeks
	Rugae cover the entire scrotum	40–41 weeks
	Pendulous	≥42 weeks
Labia and clitoris	Prominent clitoris; labia majora small and separate	30–35 weeks
	Labia majora almost covers clitoris	36–39 weeks
	Labia minora, clitoris covered	≥40 weeks
Sole creases	No anterior sole creases	24–31 weeks
	1–2 anterior creases	32–33 weeks
	2–3 anterior creases	34–35 weeks
	2/3 of the anterior sole with creases	36–37 weeks
	Heel creases present	38–41 weeks
	Deeper creases over entire sole	≥42 weeks
Skull firmness	Bone are soft	Up to 27 weeks
	Soft to 1 in. from anterior fontanelle	28–34 weeks
	Spongy at edges of fontanelle with firm center	35–37 weeks
	Bones hard with sutures movable	38–41 weeks
	Bone hard, sutures cannot be moved	≥42 weeks

Multiple Births

Definition

- Multiple births occur when multiple fetuses are carried during a pregnancy with the subsequent delivery of multiple neonates.

Types

- *Dizygotic twins* develop when two ovum are fertilized, dizygotic twins have separate amnions, chorions, and placentas.
- *Monozygotic twins* develop when a single fertilized ovum splits after conception. An early splitting (i.e., within 2 days after fertilization) of monozygotic twins produces separate chorions and amnions.

Associated complications

- Premature delivery
- Malpresentation
- Congenital abnormalities
- Umbilical cord compression
- Abruptio placenta
- Twin-twin transfusion
- Fetal growth restrictions
- Conjoined twins
  - Occur only in monoamniotic, monochorionic twins
  - Occur in 1/50,000 births

Infants of Diabetic Mother (IDM)

Background

- Hyperglycemia during pregnancy causes fetal hyperglycemia and fetal hyperinsulinemia.
- Fetal congenital malformations are most common when maternal glucose control has been poor during the first trimester of pregnancy.
- Preconceptional glycemic control in women with diabetes cannot be overstated.
- Maternal hyperglycemia during late gestation is more likely to lead to fetal macrosomia, hypoxia, polycythemia, and cardiomegaly with outflow tract obstruction.

Complications

- Fetal macrosomia
  - >90th percentile for gestational age or >4000 g in the term infant occurs in 15–45% of diabetic pregnancies.
  - It is most commonly observed as a consequence of maternal hyperglycemia and fetal hyperinsulinemia.
  - Infant may appear puffy, fat, ruddy, and often hypotonic.
  - LGA infants should be routinely screened for hypoglycemia.
- Impaired fetal growth
  - Infants whose birth weight is below the tenth percentile are considered SGA.
  - Maternal renovascular disease is the common cause of impaired fetal growth in pregnancies complicated by maternal diabetes.
  - Perinatal asphyxia, more common in infants with impaired fetal growth.
- Pulmonary disease
  - *Respiratory distress syndrome* may present within the first few hours after birth with tachypnea, nasal flaring, intercostal retractions, and hypoxia.
  - Transient tachypnea of the newborn.
  - *Persistent pulmonary hypertension* of the newborn secondary to polycythemia may occur.
- Metabolic and electrolyte abnormalities
  - Hypoglycemia is caused by hyperinsulinemia due to hyperplasia of fetal pancreatic beta cells consequent to maternal-fetal hyperglycemia.
  - Because the continuous supply of glucose is stopped after birth, the neonate develops hypoglycemia due to insufficient substrate.
  - Hypoglycemia may present within the first few hours of life and may persist for a week.
  - Infant may present with no symptoms.
  - Jitteriness, irritability, apathy, poor feeding, high pitched or weak cry, hypotonia, or frank seizure activity may occur.
- Hypocalcemia or hypomagnesemia
  - Symptoms may include jitteriness or seizure activity.
  - Hypocalcemia (levels <7 mg/dL) is believed to be associated with a delay in parathyroid hormone synthesis after birth.
- Iron deficiency
  - 5% of all IDMs demonstrate abnormalities of iron metabolism at birth.
  - Iron deficiency increases the infant's risk for neurodevelopmental abnormalities.
- Polycythemia
  - Caused by increased erythropoiesis triggered by chronic fetal hypoxia.
  - Clinically "ruddy" appearance, sluggish capillary refill, or respiratory distress.
  - Hyperviscosity due to polycythemia increases the IDM's risk for stroke, seizure, necrotizing enterocolitis, and renal vein thrombosis.
- Hyperbilirubinemia
  - The increased red-cell mass results in increased number of RBCs that are taken out of circulation each day and increase the bilirubin burden presented to the liver.
- Thrombocytopenia
- Cardiovascular anomalies

  - Cardiomyopathy with ventricular hypertrophy and outflow tract obstruction may occur in as many as 30% of IDMs.
  - The cardiomyopathy may be associated with congestive failure with a weakly functioning myocardium or may be related to a hypertrophic myocardium with significant septal hypertrophy and outflow tract obstruction.
  - Echocardiography is indicated if cardiomegaly or hypoperfusion.
  - Increased risk of congenital heart defects, including (most commonly) ventricular septal defect (VSD) and transposition of the great arteries (TGA).
- Congenital malformations
  - Anencephaly is 13 times higher in IDM.
  - Spina bifida is 20 times higher in IDM.
  - Sacral agenesis; the risk of caudal dysplasia is up to 600 times higher in IDM.
  - Hydronephrosis, renal agenesis, and ureteral duplication.
  - Small left colon syndrome, and duodenal or anorectal atresia.

Management of hypoglycemia
- Screening policy for hypoglycemia during the hours after birth is necessary to detect hypoglycemia.
- If blood glucose < 36 mg/dL, intervention is needed if:
  - Plasma glucose remains below this level.
  - Blood glucose does not increase after feeding.
  - Infant develops symptoms of hypoglycemia.
- If blood value is less than 20–25 mg/dL
  - Immediate intravenous (IV) therapy with 2 mL/kg infusion of dextrose 10%.
  - Maintenance of a continuous infusion of dextrose at an infusion rate of 6–8 mg/kg/min of dextrose is necessary once bolus therapy is complete.
  - Failure to do so may result in rebound hypoglycemia as a result of heightened pancreatic insulin release triggered by the glucose infusion.
  - Once the infant's glucose levels have been stable for 12 h, IV glucose may be tapered by 1–2 mg/kg/min.

Hyperbilirubinemia

Pathophysiology
- Hemolysis of RBCs→Hemoglobin is released.
- Biliverdin reductase reduces biliverdin to unconjugated (indirect) bilirubin.
- *Unconjugated bilirubin* binds to albumin and is transported to the liver.
- *Unconjugated bilirubin* can become unbound if albumin is saturated or if bilirubin is displaced from albumin by medications (e.g., sulfisoxazole, streptomycin, chloramphenicol, *ceftriaxone,* ibuprofen).
- *Unbound unconjugated* bilirubin can cross the blood brain barrier and is toxic to the central nervous system.
- Once unconjugated bilirubin reaches the liver, it is conjugated by uridine diphosphate glucuronosyl transferase (*UGT1A1*).
- *Hepatic UGT1A1* increases dramatically in the first few weeks after birth.
- At 30–40 weeks' gestation, UGT1A1 values are approximately *1%* of adult values, rising to adult concentrations by *14 weeks of age*.
- Conjugated (direct) bilirubin is excreted into the intestine via the gallbladder and bile duct.
- Bacteria in the intestine can deconjugate bilirubin, allowing it to be reabsorbed into the blood. The rest of the bilirubin is excreted with the stool.

Physiologic Jaundice

- **Background**
- Unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia that occurs after the first postnatal day.
- It can last up to 1 week.
- *Total serum bilirubin* (TSB) concentrations peak in the first 3–5 postnatal days.
- A decline to adult values over the next several weeks.
- The TSB concentrations vary greatly in infants, depending on race, type of feeding, and genetic factors.

Physiologic jaundice occurs in infants for a number of reasons.
- They have a high rate of bilirubin production and an impaired ability to extract bilirubin from the body.
- Bilirubin production also is increased as a result of elevated hematocrit and RBC volume per body weight and a shorter life span of the RBCs (70–90 days).
- Infants have immature hepatic glucuronosyl transferase, a key enzyme involved in the conjugation of bilirubin that facilitates excretion from the body.

Clinical presentation
- Jaundice.
- The TSB concentration peaks at approximately 5.5 mg/dL (94.1 μmol/L) by the third postnatal day in white and African American infants.
- By 96 h of age, 95% of infants have TSB concentrations of less than 17 mg/dL.
- Bilirubinemia > 17 mg/dL is not physiologic.

Early Onset Breast Feeding Jaundice

Background
- Early-onset breastfeeding jaundice is the most common cause of unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia.

Causes
- Breastfeeding exaggerates physiologic jaundice in the first postnatal week because of caloric deprivation, leading to an increased in enterohepatic circulation.
- Mild dehydration and delayed passage of meconium also play roles.

Prevention
- Successful breastfeeding decreases the risk of hyperbilirubinemia.
- Infants need to be fed at least 8–12 times in the first few days after birth to help improve the mother's milk supply.
- The best way to judge successful breastfeeding is to monitor infant urine output, stool output, and weight.
- Newborns should have four to six wet diapers and three to four yellow, seedy stools per day by the fourth day after birth.
- Breastfed infants should lose no more than 10% of their body weight by the third or fourth postnatal day.
- Formula supplementation may be necessary if the infant has significant weight loss, poor urine output, poor caloric intake, or delayed stooling.
- Important to know: Water and dextrose solutions should not be used to supplement breastfeeding because they do not prevent hyperbilirubinemia and may lead to hyponatremia.

Late Onset Human Milk Jaundice

Background
- Usually occurs from the 6th through the 14th day after birth and may persist for 1–3 months.
- Exact mechanism is not entirely clear.
- It is suggested that beta-glucuronidases and nonesterified fatty acids in the human milk inhibit enzymes that conjugate bilirubin in the liver.

Management
- If serum bilirubin levels from 17–25 mg/dL breastfeeding can be discontinued for 48 h to observe whether a decrease in TSB concentration occurs.
- During this time, the mother should continue to express milk to maintain her supply and supplement the infant with formula.
- TSB concentrations usually peak between 12 and 20 mg/dL (205.2 and 342.1 μmol/L) and should decrease 3 mg/dL (51.3 μmol/L) per day. If this decrease occurs, breastfeeding should be restarted.
- Phototherapy can be administered with standard phototherapy units and biliblankets.

Jaundice in Premature Infants

- Hyperbilirubinemia is more common and more severe in preterm infants and lasts longer.
- Sick preterm newborns are more likely to have a delay in initiating enteral nutrition, resulting in an increase in enterohepatic circulation.
- Kernicterus is extremely uncommon, however, kernicterus does occur at lower TSB concentrations, even without acute neurologic signs.
- TSB values as low as 10–14 mg/dL (171.0–239.5 μmol/L) have resulted in milder forms of bilirubin-induced neurologic dysfunction (BIND) in preterm infants.
- Initiation of phototherapy according to the weight of infants and associated complications is paramount (Table 4).

Unconjugated Hyperbilirubinemia

Causes
- Increased bilirubin production
- Deficiency of hepatic uptake
- Increased enterohepatic circulation
- Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD); more common in African American
- Blood group incompatibility
- Structural defects in erythrocytes
- Impaired conjugation of bilirubin

Gilbert syndrome
- Autosomal recessive condition in which UGT1A1 activity decreases mildly in hepatocytes, typically resulting in a benign unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia.
- The likelihood of severe hyperbilirubinemia is increased if the infant also has G6PD deficiency.

Crigler-Najjar syndrome type I
- Severe deficiency of UGT1A1 results in bilirubin encephalopathy in the first few days or month after birth.

Crigler-Najjar syndrome type II
- The incidence of bilirubin encephalopathy is low.

Conjugated Hyperbilirubinemia

(see GI chapter for more details)

Background
- Conjugated bilirubin concentration greater than 1 mg/dL when the TSB concentration is 5 mg/dL (85.6 μmol/L) or less.

Table 4 Suggested maximal indirect serum bilirubin concentrations (mg/dL) in preterm infants according to the weight

Birthweight (g)	Uncomplicated	Complicated*
< 1000	12–13	10–12
1000–1250	12–14	10–12
1251–1499	14–16	12–14
1500–1999	16–20	15–17
2000–2500	20–22	18–20

*Complications include perinatal asphyxia, acidosis, hypoxia, hypothermia, hypoglycemia, sepsis, intraventricular hemorrhage, or kernicterus. Phototherapy usually started at 50–70 % of the maximal indirect bilirubin level. If the value greatly exceed this level, if the phototherapy is unsuccessful in reducing the bilirubin level or if signs of kernicterus exchange transfusion is indicated

Causes
- Cholestasis
- Biliary atresia
- Thyroid abnormalities
- Galactosemia

Kernicterus

Background
- Kernicterus is brain damage caused by unconjugated bilirubin deposition in basal ganglia and brain stem nuclei
- Bilirubin can cross the blood-brain barrier and enter the brain tissue if it is unconjugated and unbound to albumin, or if there is damage to the blood-brain barrier.
- Acute bilirubin toxicity in a term infant if there are no signs of hemolysis and the TSB concentration is greater than 25 mg/dL.
- If the TSB concentration is above 20 mg/dL, in a term infant who has hemolysis, the physician should be concerned.

Clinical presentation
- Poor suck
- High-pitched cry
- Stupor, hypotonia
- Seizures
- Hypertonia of extensor muscles
- Opisthotonus
- Retrocollis
- Fever
- Choreoathetotic cerebral palsy
- Ballismus
- Tremor
- Upward gaze
- Dental dysplasia
- Sensorineural hearing loss
- Cognitive impairment

Evaluation of Infant with Hyperbilirubinemia

Major risk factors for hyperbilirubinemia in full-term newborns
- Jaundice within first 24 h after birth
- A sibling who was jaundiced as a neonate
- Unrecognized hemolysis such as ABO blood type incompatibility or Rh incompatibility
- Nonoptimal sucking/nursing
- Deficiency in glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase
- Infection
- Cephalohematomas/bruising
- East Asian or Mediterranean descent
- ABO incompatibility may occur if the mother's blood type is O and the infant's blood type is A or B.
- Symptomatic hemolytic disease occurs in only 5 % of infant with ABO incompatibility.
- Hyperbilirubinemia in infants who have symptomatic ABO hemolytic disease usually is detected within the first 12–24 h after birth.
- If the mother is Rh-negative, the infant's cord blood should be evaluated for a direct antibody (Coombs) test, blood type, and Rh determination.
- If the mother's blood type is not O and is Rh positive, cord blood does not need to be tested.
- Infants should be assessed for jaundice at a minimum of every 8–12 h after birth.

Transcutaneous Bilirubin Devices

- Newer devices used to detect Transcutaneous bilirubin (TcB) have been shown to correlate well with Total serum bilirubin (TSB).
- Once a TcB or TSB has been measured, the result should be interpreted based on the nomogram.
- American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) subcommittee has recommended assessing TSB or TcB on all newborns before discharge.
- The value should be plotted on the nomogram to assess the risk level and if treatment is indicated (Fig. 1).

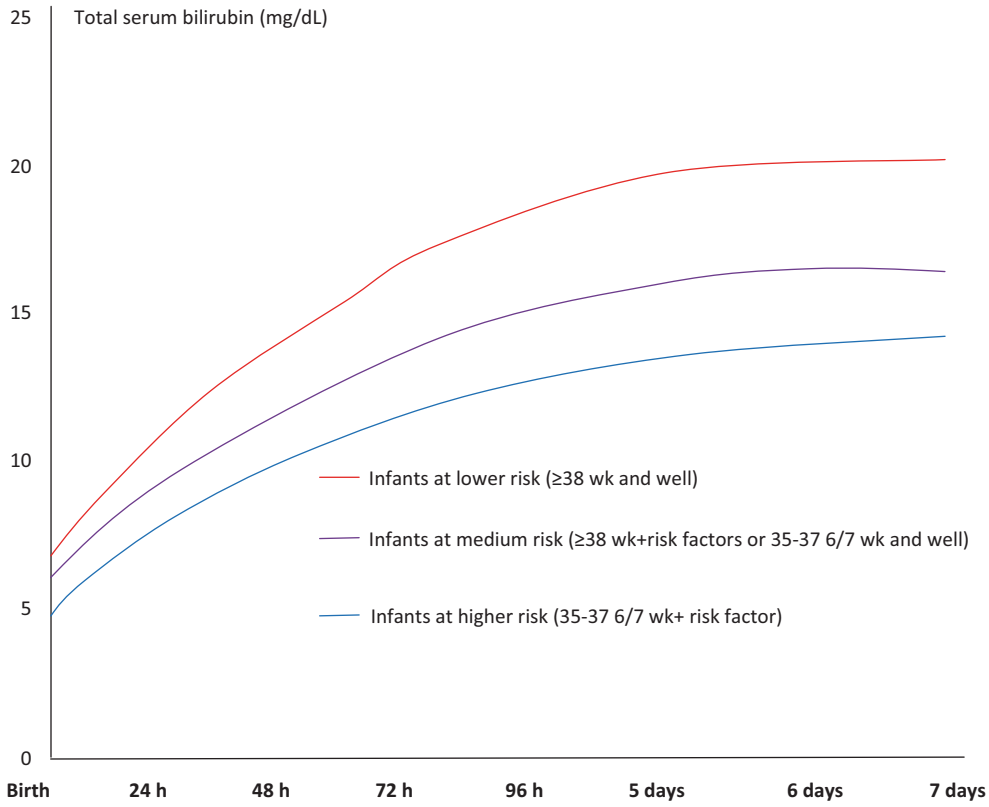


Fig. 1 Guideline for phototherapy in hospitalized infants of ≥35 weeks of gestation. (Adapted from American Academy of Pediatrics subcommittee on Hyperbilirubinemia: Management of hyperbilirubinemia in the newborn infant 35 or more weeks of gestation. Pediatrics 114:297–316)

Management of Hyperbilirubinemia

Feeding

- More frequent feeding.

Phototherapy

- Phototherapy works by converting bilirubin into a water-soluble compound called lumirubin, which is excreted in the urine or bile.
- Stopping once the bilirubin decreases 4–5 mg/dL.
- Others state that the value should decrease to 13–14 mg/dL if the child is readmitted for hyperbilirubinemia.

Complications of phototherapy

- Insensible water loss (increase fluid intake or the volume and frequency of feeding).
- Phototherapy may be associated with loose stool.
- Retinal damage (covering the eye is a routine during phototherapy).
- Intravenous immunoglobulin
- Exchange transfusion
- Management of cholestasis and conjugated hyperbilirubinemia (see GI chapter)

Anemia

Background

- Anemia developing during neonatal period (0–28 days of life) in infants of >34 weeks' gestation is indicated by central venous hemoglobin <13 g/dL or capillary hemoglobin <14.5 g/dL.
- Full term infant has Hb 16.5–18 g/dL (lower in premature infant).
- RBCs of a newborn have shorter 1/2 life (70–90 days), higher mean corpuscular volume (MCV; 110 fL), and higher proportion of reticulocytes (5–12%).
- Fetal hemoglobin (HbF) accounts for 60–90% at birth, but falls to adult levels (5%) by age 4 months.
- Capillary hematocrit (HCT) is falsely elevated.

Causes of anemia

- Hemorrhagic anemia
  - *Antepartum period,* e.g., abruptio placenta, placenta previa, anomalies of umbilical cord, twin twin transfusion
  - *Intrapartum period,* e.g., C-section, traumatic rupture of the umbilical cord, obstetric trauma, cord clamping problems
  - *Neonatal period,* e.g., Caput succedaneum, cephalhematoma, and intracranial hemorrhage

- *Defect in hemostasis,* e.g., congenital coagulation factor deficiency, thrombocytopenia absent radius (TAR) syndrome and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)
- *Hemolytic anemia,* e.g., Rh and ABO incompatibility, G6PD, hereditary spherocytosis and congenital TORCH
- *Hypoplastic anemia,* e.g., Diamond-Blackfan syndrome and aplastic anemia
- *Sepsis*

Clinical presentation
- Depends on the severity and type of anemia
- Pallor
- Congestive heart failure
- Shock

Diagnosis (Fig. 2)
- CBC with differential
- Reticulocyte count
- Blood Type of the mother and the baby
- Blood smear
  - Spherocytes: ABO hemolysis
  - Elliptocytes: hereditary elliptocytosis
  - Pyknocytes: hereditary G6PD
  - Schistocytes or helmets cells: consumption coagulopathy, e.g., DIC
- Direct Coombs' test; positive in autoimmune hemolysis
- Prothrombin Time (PT), partial thromboplastin time (PTT), Factor V, and Factor VIII levels
- Immunoglobulin M (IgM) level if TORCH infection is suspected
- Fetomaternal hemorrhage: Kleihauer-Betke test or flow cytometry technique
- Non-immune workup may require: enzyme studies, electrophoresis, membrane studies, ultrasound of brain, liver, spleen, adrenal

Management
- Simple replacement transfusion, or exchange transfusion
- Nutritional supplementation and treatment of the underlying primary disorder

ABO Incompatibility

Background
- Hemolytic process begins in utero and is the result of active placental transport of maternal isoantibody to the fetus.
- Transplacental transport of maternal antibody results in an immune reaction with the type A or B antigen on fetal erythrocytes.
- This disorder is most common with type A or B infants born to type O mothers.
- In type O mothers, isoantibody is predominantly immunoglobulin G (IgG, small size) and is capable crossing the placental membrane.
- Because of the large size of IgM found in type A or type B mothers cannot cross the placenta to the fetal erythrocytes.
- A1 antigen in infants has the greatest antigenicity and is associated with a greater risk of symptomatic disease.

Clinical presentation
- Jaundice
  - Usually more progressive and faster rate than physiologic jaundice
  - The onset usually within the first 24 h of life
- Anemia

Diagnosis
- Blood type and Rh factor in the mother and infant
- Reticulocyte count (usually the range between 10–30%)
- Direct Coombs' test
- Blood smear
- Bilirubin level (fractionated and total)

Management
- Maintenance of adequate hydration (e.g., more frequent feeding)
- Phototherapy
- Exchange transfusion in severe cases
- Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG)

Prognosis
- Overall prognosis is excellent.
- Early recognition and treatment may avoid any potential morbidity or severe hemolytic anemia.

Rh Incompatibility

Background
- Isoimmune hemolytic anemia because of Rh incompatibility that develops between Rh-negative mother previously sensitized to the Rh D antigen and her Rh positive fetus.
- Initial exposure of the mother to the Rh antigen occurs during birth, abortion, or ectopic pregnancy.
- Re-exposure to the Rh antigen will cause elevation of maternal specific IgG-Rh antibody, these antibodies passes through the placenta and attach to fetal erythrocyte causing extravascular hemolysis.

Clinical presentation
- Jaundice
  - Unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia
  - Appears within the first 24 h of life
- Anemia
- Hydrops fetalis

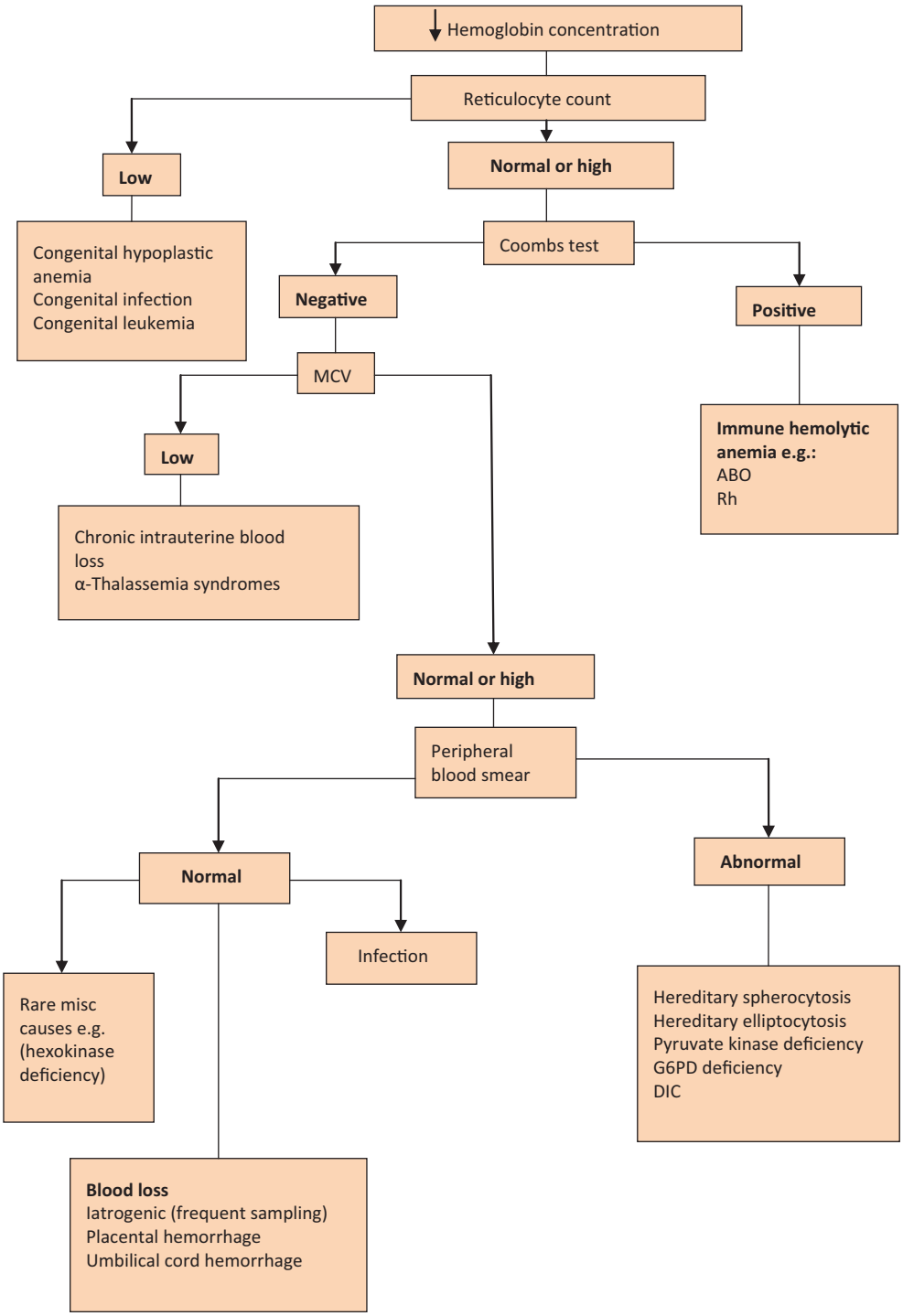


Fig. 2 Diagnostic approach to anemia in newborn infants. *DIC* disseminated intravascular coagulation, *G6PD* glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, *MCV* mean corpuscular volume. (Modified from Blanchette VS and Zipursky A. Assessment of anemia in newborn infants. Clin perinatol 11:489–510, 1984)

- Progressive hypoproteinemia
- Ascites, pleural effusion
- Severe chronic anemia and hypoxemia
- Cardiac failure
- Death

Diagnosis

- Blood type and Rh type (mother and infant)
- Reticulocyte count
- Direct Coomb's test
- Blood smear
- Bilirubin (fractionated and total)

Management

- Rho(D) immune globulin (RhoGAM) immunoprophylaxis at 28 weeks gestation in the absence of sensitization or within 72 h of suspected Rh antigen exposure or both will reduce the risk of sensitization to <1 %.

- Ultrasound.
- Intrauterine transfusion.
- Corticosteroids.
- Resuscitation of newborn.
- Serial unconjugated bilirubin studies.
- Phototherapy.
- Exchange transfusion.

Hemorrhagic Disease of the Newborn

Background
- Transient deficiency in vitamin-K dependent factors
- Usually present 48–72 h after birth
- Late-onset (>1 week) associated with vitamin K malabsorption, e.g., neonatal hepatitis, biliary atresia
- Presents earlier if mother on phenobarbital, phenytoin, or coumadin

Clinical presentation
- Bleeding can occur anywhere, e.g., gastrointestinal (GI), nasal, subgaleal, intracranial, and circumcision bleeding

Diagnosis
- Elevated PT due to low vitamin K

Treatment
- Treat with 1 mg IV vitamin K +/- FFP (fresh frozen plasma)

Prevention
- 1 mg vitamin K IM administration after birth

Respiratory Distress Syndrome (Hyaline Membrane Disease)

Background
- Hyaline membrane disease (HMD) is the most common cause of respiratory failure in the newborn.
- Occurs almost exclusively in premature infants.
- The incidence and severity of respiratory distress syndrome are related inversely to the gestational age of the newborn infant.
- Respiratory distress syndrome develops in premature infants because of impaired surfactant synthesis and secretion leading to lung atelectasis.
- HMD does not occur in all preterm babies.

Surfactant is stored in type II alveolar cells and composed of
- Dipalmitoyl Phosphatidylcholine
- Phosphatidylglycerol
- Apoproteins (surfactant protein SP-A, B, C, and D)
- Cholesterol

Risk factors
- Prematurity
- Maternal DM
- C-section
- Asphyxia

Factors decreases the risk of HMD
- Premature rupture of membranes
- Maternal hypertension
- Sub-acute placental rupture
- Maternal use of narcotics

Clinical presentation
- Tachypnea usually >60 breath cycle per minute.
- Expiratory grunting (from partial closure of glottis).
- Subcostal and intercostal retractions.
- Cyanosis.
- Nasal flaring.
- Extremely premature neonates may develop apnea and/or hypothermia.

Diagnosis
- Chest radiographs (Fig. 3)
  - Bilateral, diffuse, reticular granular, or ground glass appearances
  - Air bronchograms (prominent air bronchograms represent aerated bronchioles superimposed on a background of collapsed alveoli)
  - Poor lung expansion
- Echocardiogram if patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) is considered
- Blood gas
  - Hypoxia
  - Metabolic acidosis
  - Hypercarbia

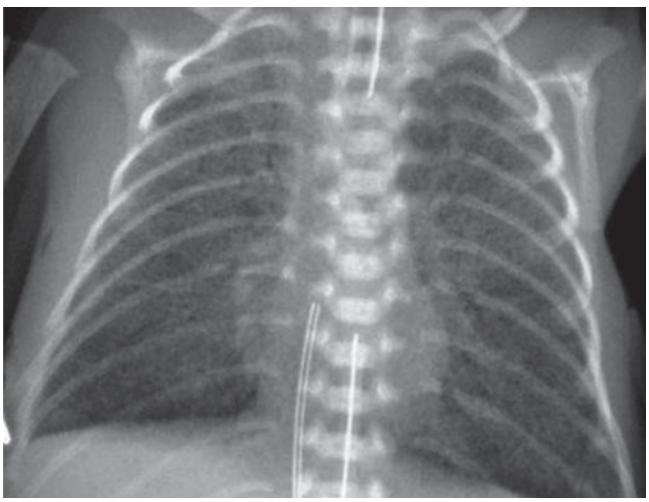


Fig. 3 A–P chest radiograph of premature newborn shows a bilateral and symmetrical diffuse ground glass lungs with a hyperinflated thorax (because of the intubation). Without intubation, the thorax typically has a low volume. In some patients, air-bronchogram can be seen. The patient has venous and arterial umbilical catheters

- Fetal lung test for maturity prediction
  - Lecithin-to-sphingomyelin ratio and/or
  - Testing for the presence of phosphatidylglycerol in the amniotic fluid obtained with amniocentesis

Management
- Maintain core temperature.
- Nasal continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) is often used in spontaneously breathing premature infants immediately after birth.
- Intubation and surfactant therapy as soon as possible.
- Mechanical ventilation if CPAP is not effective
- IV fluids; 10% glucose in the first 24 h.
- All infants < 28 weeks gestation receive prophylaxis surfactant therapy.
- Older infant should receive surfactant if they meet the criteria, most neonatologist consider infants who require > 50% FiO2 to maintain a PaO2 > 50 mmHg as a candidate for surfactant therapy.
- Cardiac causes should be considered in worsening cases with appropriate therapy.

Prenatal steroids
- Decrease the incidence and severity of HMD.
- Usually given to women at 24–34 weeks with high risk for preterm birth, e.g., premature rupture of membrane.

Transient Tachypnea of Newborn (TTN)

Background
- TTN is a self-limited disease and common condition in newborn.
- Infants with TTN present within the first few hours of life with tachypnea, increased oxygen requirement, and arterial blood gases (ABGs) that do not reflect carbon dioxide retention.
- Transient tachypnea of the newborn is the result of a delay in clearance of fetal lung liquid.
- Common with C-section delivery.

Clinical presentation
- Signs of respiratory distress (e.g., tachypnea, nasal flaring, grunting, retractions, cyanosis in extreme cases) become evident shortly after birth.
- The disorder is indeed transient with resolution usually occurring within 72 h after birth.
- Extreme cases may exhibit cyanosis.
- Prolonged course > 72 h or clinical deterioration may suggest other diagnosis.

Diagnosis
- Prominent perihilar streaking, which correlates with the engorgement of the lymphatic system with retained lung fluid, and fluid in the fissures.
- Small pleural effusions may be seen.
- Patchy infiltrates have also been described.

Treatment
- Supportive.
- Oxygen may be required.

Persistent Pulmonary Hypertension of Newborn (PPHN)

Background
- It is a syndrome characterized by marked pulmonary hypertension that causes hypoxemia and right-to-left intracardiac shunting of blood.
- PPHN is most often recognized in term or near-term neonates.
- Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), commonly prescribed antidepressants, have been reported to be associated with PPHN, especially during the third trimester of pregnancy.
- Higher frequency in babies with Down syndrome.

PPHN etiology and common associated conditions
- Idiopathic
- HMD
- Polycythemia
- Hypoglycemia
- Meconium aspiration
- Group B streptococcal pneumonia
- Diaphragmatic hernia
- Pulmonary hypoplasia

Clinical presentation
- Usually symptoms appear in the first 24 h.
- Tachypnea.
- Cyanosis.
- Respiratory distress (grunting, flaring, retraction, tachycardia).
- Loud, single second heart sound (S2).
- A harsh systolic murmur secondary to tricuspid regurgitation may be heard.
- Systemic hypotension, shock and evidence of poor perfusion may occur.

Diagnosis
- Hypoxemia is universal and unresponding to 100% O2.
- Differential cyanosis: Higher oxygen saturation in preductal blood (right radial artery) than that obtained from left radial or tibial arteries (postductal).
- Echocardiography is essential in distinguishing congenital heart disease from PPHN which a diagnosis of exclusion.

Management
- Treatment of the cause is the most important step.
- Mechanical ventilation.
- Hyperventilation.
  - Nitric oxide.

Meconium Aspiration Syndrome

Background
- Meconium aspiration is one of the most common etiologies of respiratory failure in newborns.

Factors increase the risk of meconium aspiration
- Placental insufficiency
- Maternal hypertension
- Pre-eclampsia
- Oligohydramnios
- Maternal drug abuse, especially of tobacco and cocaine
- Maternal infection/chorioamnionitis
- Fetal hypoxia

Clinical presentation
- Cyanosis.
- Nasal flaring.
- End-expiratory grunting.
- Intercostal retractions.
- Tachypnea.
- Barrel chest in the presence of air trapping.
- Auscultated rales and rhonchi (in some cases).
- Yellow-green staining of fingernails, umbilical cord, and skin may be observed.

Diagnosis
- Radiography
  - Air trapping and hyperexpansion
  - Diffuse chemical pneumonitis
  - Acute atelectasis
  - Pneumomediastinum

Prevention of meconium aspiration syndrome (MAS)
- AAP recommendation
  - If the baby is not vigorous (defined as depressed respiratory effort, poor muscle tone, and/or heart rate < 100 beats/min): Use direct laryngoscopy, intubate, and suction the trachea immediately after delivery. Suction for no longer than 5 s.
  - If no meconium is retrieved, do not repeat intubation and suction.
  - If meconium is retrieved and no bradycardia is present, reintubate and suction.
  - If the heart rate is low, administer positive pressure ventilation and consider suctioning again later.
  - If the baby is vigorous (defined as normal respiratory effort, normal muscle tone, and heart rate > 100 beats/min): Do not electively intubate. Clear secretions and meconium from the mouth and nose with a bulb syringe or a large-bore suction catheter.
  - In both cases, the remainder of the initial resuscitation steps should ensue, including drying, stimulating, repositioning, and administering oxygen as necessary.

Management
- Oxygen therapy.
- Surfactant therapy commonly used.
- Mechanical ventilation.
- Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) is used if all other therapeutic options have been exhausted.

Pneumothorax and Pneumomediastinum

Background
- Pneumothorax refers to the presence of air or gas in the pleural cavity between the visceral and parietal pleura, which results in violation of the pleural space.
- Pneumomediastinum is air in the mediastinum that may be confused with pneumothorax.

Clinical presentation
- Depending on the severity and how big is the pneumothorax
- Tension pneumothorax:
  - Cyanosis
  - Hypoxia
  - Tachypnea
  - Sudden decrease in heart rate
  - Hypotension
  - Narrowed pulse pressure
  - Decreased breath sound on the affected side

Radiography
- Shift of mediastinum away from the side of pneumothorax
- Depressed diaphragm
- Displacement of the lung to the opposite site

Management
- Symptomatic tension pneumothorax is an emergency. 1–2 min delay can be fatal.
- There is no time for chest X ray (CXR) confirmation.
- If the patient is deteriorating rapidly, a 22–24-gauge needle or angiocath can be placed for aspiration.
- The site of puncture should be at the second or third intercostal space along the midclavicular line.
- Asymptomatic pneumothorax 100 % oxygen for 8–12 h is usually effective.

Neonatal Sepsis

Background

- Neonatal sepsis may be categorized as early onset or late onset. Newborns with early onset sepsis, 85 % present within 24 h, 5 % present at 24–48 h, and a smaller percentage present within 48–72 h. Onset is most rapid in premature neonates.

- Late onset sepsis occurs at 4–90 days of life and is acquired from the caregiving environment.
- The microorganisms most commonly associated with early onset infection include the following:
  - GBS
  - *Escherichia coli*
  - Coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus*
  - *Haemophilus influenzae*
  - *Listeria monocytogenes*
- The microorganisms most commonly associated with late onset infection include the following:
  - *Coagulase-negative Staphylococcus*
  - *Staphylococcus aureus*
  - *E. coli*
  - Candida
  - GBS

Risk factors, e.g.

- Maternal GBS status
- PROM
- Prematurity
- Chorioamnionitis
- Initial Clinical Presentations of Infection in Newborn Infants (Table 5)

Common clinical manifestation of bacterial sepsis

- Pneumonia
- Meningitis
- Bacteremia
- Osteomyelitis
- Urinary tract infections

Investigations

- Cultures.
- Complete blood count and differential (normal count does not rule out sepsis)

Table 5 Initial clinical presentations of infection in newborn infants

System	Signs and symptoms
General	Fever, hypothermia, or temperature instability Hypoglycemia Poor feeding Not doing well Edema
Respiratory	Apnea Tachypnea, retractions Flaring, grunting Cyanosis
Cardiovascular	Pallor, mottling, cold, clammy skin Tachycardia Bradycardia Hypotension
Gastrointestinal	Vomiting Abdominal distension Diarrhea Hepatomegaly
Central nervous system	Irritability, lethargy Tremor, seizures Hyporeflexia, hypotonia Abnormal Moro reflex Irregular respiration Full fontanel High-pitched cry
Hematologic system	Jaundice Pallor Thrombocytopenia Petechiae, purpura Bleeding
Renal	Oliguria
Others	Leukocytosis or leukopenia Elevated immature WBCs, e.g., Bands Elevated C-reactive protein Thrombocytopenia, or DIC Lactic acidosis Hypoxemia Delayed capillary refill

WBCs white blood cells, *DIC* disseminated intravascular coagulation

  - Neutrophil ratios which is immature-to-total (I/T) ratio have been more useful in diagnosing neonatal sepsis.
- C-reactive protein.
- Procalcitonin.
- Coagulation studies.
- Lumbar puncture is warranted for early- and late-onset sepsis.
- Herpes simplex virus polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing in suspected cases.
- Chest radiography.
- CT scanning or MRI may be needed late in the course of complex neonatal meningitis to document obstructive hydrocephalus.
- Head ultrasonography in neonates with meningitis may reveal evidence of ventriculitis, abnormal parenchymal echogenicity, extracellular fluid, and chronic changes.
- Serially, head ultrasonography can reveal the progression of complications.

Management
- When neonatal sepsis is suspected, treatment should be initiated immediately because of the neonate's relative immunosuppression.
- Begin antibiotics as soon as diagnostic tests are performed.
- Cardiopulmonary support and IV nutrition may be required during the acute phase of the illness until the infant's condition stabilizes.
- Monitoring of blood pressure, vital signs, hematocrit, platelets, and coagulation studies is vital.
- Blood product transfusion, including packed red blood cells (PRBCs), platelets, and FFP, may be required on case by case basis.
- An infant with temperature instability needs thermoregulatory support with a radiant warmer or incubator.
- Surgical consultation for central line placement may be necessary in infants who require prolonged IV antimicrobial therapy for sepsis, if peripheral IV access cannot be maintained.

Medications
- The antibiotics commonly used to treat neonatal sepsis include ampicillin, gentamicin, cefotaxime, vancomycin, metronidazole, erythromycin, and piperacillin.
- The choice of antibiotic agents should be based on the specific organisms associated with sepsis.

Group B Streptococcal Infection in Neonates

Background
- GBS, also known as Streptococcus agalactiae, is best known as a cause of postpartum infection and as the most common cause of neonatal sepsis.
- Preterm neonates have higher rates of GBS late onset disease (LOD).
- Optimal timing of GBS screening is between 35 and 37 weeks.
- Adequate treatment of maternal GBS infection does not rule out GBS infection in infants.

Indication of intrapartum GBS prophylaxis
- Previous infant with invasive GBS disease
- GBS bacteriuria during any trimester of the current pregnancy
- Positive GBS vaginal-rectal screening culture in late gestation during current pregnancy
  - Intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis is not indicated in the two above circumstances if a cesarean delivery is performed before onset of labor on a woman with intact amniotic membranes.
- Unknown GBS status at the onset of labor (culture is not done, incomplete, or results unknown) and any of the following:
  - Delivery at <37 weeks' gestation
  - Amniotic membrane rupture ≥ 18 h
  - Intrapartum temperature $\geq 100.4\,°F$ ($\geq 38.0\,°C$)
  - Intrapartum nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT) positive for GBS

Secondary prevention of early onset GBS disease among newborn
- If no GBS prophylaxis was needed, the infant should be managed with routine newborn care.
- Full diagnostic evaluation and antibiotic therapy if *any* signs of neonatal sepsis at anytime.
- Blood culture, CBC with differential at birth (limited evaluation) and antibiotic therapy if chorioamnionitis.
- If IAP had not been given ≥ 4 h before delivery *and* infant <37 weeks gestation, or duration of rupture of membrane is ≥ 18 h, do a limited evaluation and observe for at least 48 h or more in the hospital.
- If IAP had not been given ≥ 4 h before delivery *and* infant >37 weeks gestation *and* duration of rupture of membrane <18 h, observe for at least 48 h or more in the hospital.
- If the mother received prophylaxis >4 h before delivery *and* the infant is >37 weeks and asymptomatic, provide a routine clinical care.

Clinical presentation
- Early-onset GBS infection 75%
  - Most infants present early in the first 8–12 h.
  - Respiratory distress (tachypnea, grunting, and retractions).
  - Pneumonia.
  - Cyanosis, apnea, poor perfusion and hypotension and signs of sepsis can rapidly develop.
  - Shock.
  - Death can occur.

- Late-onset GBS infection
  - Sepsis
  - Meningitis
  - Osteomyelitis

Diagnosis
- Leukopenia or leukocytosis.
- Bandemia.
- Thrombocytopenia.
- Abnormal PT and PTT.
- CXR may show signs of pneumonia.
- Abnormal cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) studies in cases of meningitis (see infectious disease chapter).

Treatment
- Ampicillin IV at 200 mg/kg divided every 8 h is widely used.
- Penicillin G IV can be used too.
- Pneumonia usually require 10–14 days.
- Meningitis usually treated for 14–21 days.
- Some recommending lumbar puncture at the end of therapy.

Congenital Rubella Infection

Background
- The risk of congenital rubella syndrome is higher if maternal exposure occurs during the first trimester during the phase of organogenesis.

Clinical presentation
- Cardiac
  - Patent ductus arteriosus
  - Pulmonary artery stenosis
- Ophthalmic
  - Microphthalmia
  - Cataract
  - Glaucoma
  - Rubella retinopathy: Salt-and-pepper pigmentary changes in the retina the most common ocular abnormality
- Hearing
  - Sensorineural hearing loss is the most common manifestation of congenital rubella syndrome.
- Skin
  - Blueberry muffin spots or neonatal purpura
- Low birth weight
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Jaundice

Congenital Cytomegalovirus (CMV) Infection

Background
- CMV is a member of a family of eight human herpes viruses.
- Classic hallmark of CMV infection is the cytomegalic inclusion cell.
- CMV is the most important cause of congenital infection in the developed world, and that it frequently leads to intellectual disability (ID) and developmental disability.
- Severity of symptoms depends on whether this is a primary maternal or recurrent CMV infection.

Clinical presentation
- Hearing
  - May be asymptomatic at birth.
  - Sensorineural hearing loss may develop months or even years after birth.
- Head and neurodevelopmental
  - Microcephaly
  - Intellectual disability (ID)
  - Developmental delay
  - Seizures
  - Cerebral palsy
- Prematurity and intrauterine growth retardation
- Hepatosplenomegaly and jaundice
- Blueberry muffin-like rash
- Thrombocytopenia and purpura

Diagnosis
- Viral culture
  - Viral culture is the most important diagnostic study in the evaluation of suspected CMV disease from any body fluid.
  - For example, urine, blood, saliva, or CSF can be cultured for CMV.
- CT scan
  - A CT scan of the head is required for infants with microcephaly or when congenital CMV infection.
  - Intracerebral calcifications typically demonstrate a *periventricular* distribution.
  - Ventriculomegaly.

Follow up
- Routine newborn audiologic screening may not detect cases of CMV-associated hearing loss.
- Periodic hearing test in patients with congenital CMV infection is required.

Congenital Toxoplasmosis

Background
- Infection in the first trimester, is less frequent but is more severe disease may result in fetal death in utero or

in a newborn with severe central nervous system (CNS) involvement, such as cerebral calcifications and hydrocephalus.
- Infection in the third trimester is more frequent, and the infant appears normal at birth but the symptoms may appear later in life, e.g., chorioretinitis.

Clinical presentation
- Classic triad
  - Chorioretinitis (Fig. 4)
  - Hydrocephalus
  - Intracranial calcifications
- Hydrops fetalis and death
- Intrauterine growth retardation
- Thrombocytopenia

Important
- More than 50% of congenitally infected infants are considered normal in perinatal period, but almost all such children develop ocular involvement later in life if they are not treated in infancy.

Congenital Syphilis

Background
- The transmission rate approaches 90% if the mother has untreated primary or secondary syphilis.
- Fetal infection can develop at any time during gestation.

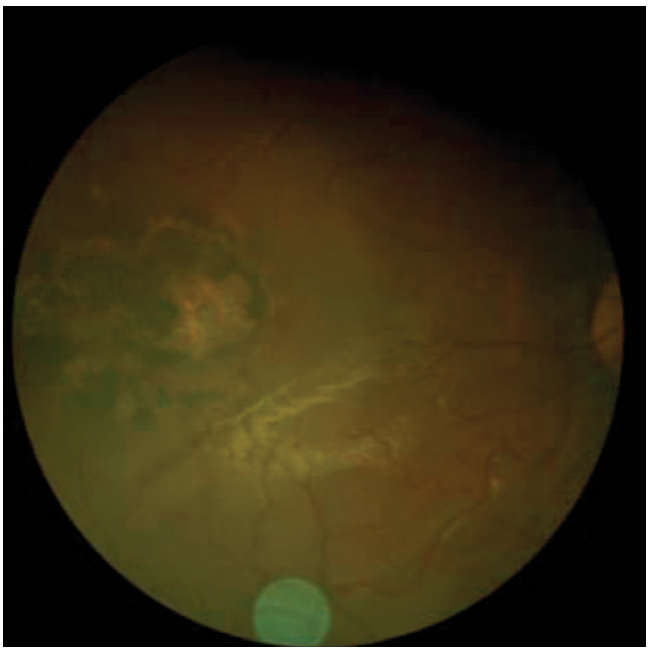


Fig. 4 Chorioretinal scar of the right eye, due to toxoplasmosis. (Courtesy of Dr. Violeta Radenovich)

Clinical presentation
- Asymptomatic: 60% of infants born with congenital syphilis are asymptomatic at birth.
- Hepatomegaly: It is the most common physical finding, reported in almost 100% usually with abnormal liver function.
- Skeletal abnormalities, e.g., periostitis or osteitis.
- Generalized lymphadenopathy.
- Maculopapular rash, also vesicular rash and bullae may develop. These lesions are highly contagious.
- Rhinitis ("snuffles"). Nasal secretions are highly contagious.
- Anemia and thrombocytopenia.
- Abnormal CSF examination is seen in a half of symptomatic infants but also can be found in 10% of those who are asymptomatic.

Diagnosis
- Nontreponemal serology screening tests: The rapid plasma reagin (RPR) and the Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL) are the best screening tools.
- A fourfold or greater rise in titer in the infant compared to the mother signifies probable active disease.
- Fourfold increase in titer following therapy suggests reinfection or relapse and necessitates reevaluation.

Treponema-specific tests
- *T. pallidum* immobilization (TPI), fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption (FTA-ABS), and *T. pallidum* particle agglutination (TPPA), these tests used to confirm a positive nontreponemal serology screening test.
- These test findings become positive soon after infection and typically remain positive for life, despite adequate treatment.
- These test results do not correlate with disease activity and are not quantified.

Management
- Treat congenital infection, either proven or presumed, with 10–14 days of aqueous penicillin G or procaine penicillin G.
- Aqueous crystalline penicillin G is recommended if congenital syphilis is proved or is highly suspected.
- Base dosage on chronologic, not gestational, age.
- The recommended dosage is 100,000–150,000 U/kg/d IV every 8–12 h to complete a 10- to 14-day course.

Infection is suspected with the following:
- Physical or radiographic evidence of active disease
- Serum quantitative nontreponemal titer at least four times greater than the maternal titer
- Reactive CSF VDRL test result or abnormal CSF cell count and/or protein levels

- Positive IgM fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption (FTA-ABS) test findings
- Positive dark-field microscopy findings or positive findings when staining for treponemes in placenta or umbilical cord

Failure to Pass Meconium in the First 48 h of Life

Background
- A total of 99% of term infants and 76% of premature infants pass a stool in the first 24 h of life.
- A total of 99% of premature infants pass a stool by 48 h.

Differential diagnosis
- Constipation
- Anorectal anomalies (imperforate anus)
- Meconium plug
- Meconium ileus
- Hirschsprung disease
- Ileal atresia
- Incarcerated hernia
- Malrotation

Meconium Plug

Background
- It is a transient form of distal colonic or rectal obstruction caused by inspissated, immobile meconium.
- Meconium plug syndrome is the mildest and most common form of functional distal obstruction in the newborns.
- It is more common in infants of diabetic mothers.
- Usually occurs in the lower colon or anorectal region.

Common associated conditions
- Small left colon syndrome
- Magnesium sulfate therapy for preeclampsia
- Maternal drug abuse
- Cystic fibrosis
- Hypothyroidism

Clinical presentation
- Failure to pass meconium in the first 24–48 h

Management
- Plain radiograph for any newborn who did not pass stool within the first 48 h of life.
- Rectal biopsy should be considered in all these infants because of the high risk of Hirschsprung's disease (10–15%).

Meconium Ileus

Background
- Meconium ileus accounts for about 30% of cases of intestinal obstruction in newborns.
- Cystic fibrosis is the underlying disorder in most infants with meconium ileus.
- Meconium ileus occurs in 15% of patients with cystic fibrosis.

Clinical presentation
- Typically, abdominal distention is present at birth.
- Within hours, as air is swallowed, the distention increases, and the infant vomits bile-stained material.
- Thickened bowel loops are often palpable and visible through the abdominal wall.
- Massive distention, abdominal tenderness or abdominal erythema indicates the presence of complications.
- Rectal examination is often difficult because of the small caliber of the rectum.

Diagnosis
- Abdominal radiographs: May reveal a distended bowel, few air-fluid levels, and in the right lower abdomen, meconium mixed with air "soup bubble," which has a ground-glass appearance on plain film.
- The presence of calcifications, free air, or very large air-fluid levels suggests complications.
- The difference between meconium ileus and meconium plug syndrome is in the site and severity of the obstruction.
- The small bowel is of narrow caliber below the plug and dilated above the plug.
- *Sweat test* or genetic testing for all infants with meconium ileus because of high risk of cystic fibrosis.

Management
- Simple meconium ileus may be successfully treated by administration of a diatrizoate meglumine (Gastrografin) enema and plenty of IV fluids; the success rate is 16–50%.
- If the Gastrografin enema is unsuccessful, operative evacuation of the obstructing meconium by irrigation will be necessary.
- Complications such as atresia, perforation and meconium peritonitis always require immediate surgery, including resection, intestinal anastomosis and ileostomy.

Necrotizing Enterocolitis (NEC)

Background
- NEC is the most common GI medical/surgical emergency occurring in neonates.

- An acute inflammatory disease with a multifactorial and controversial etiology, the condition is characterized by variable damage to the intestinal tract ranging from mucosal injury to full-thickness necrosis and perforation.
- NEC affects close to 10% of infants who weigh less than 1500 g, with mortality rates of 50% or more depending on severity.
- It can also be observed in term and near-term babies.
- The main cause of NEC still unclear but definitely the risk is higher in premature infants.

Clinical presentation
- Feeding intolerance
- Delayed gastric emptying
- Abdominal distention, abdominal tenderness, or both
- Ileus/decreased bowel sounds
- Abdominal wall erythema (advanced stages)
- Hematochezia
- Apnea
- Lethargy
- Decreased peripheral perfusion
- Shock (in advanced stages)
- Cardiovascular collapse
- Bleeding diathesis (consumption coagulopathy)

Diagnosis
- Abdominal radiograph
- The mainstay of diagnostic imaging is abdominal radiography; radiographic appearance of NEC depend on severity of NEC:
  - Abnormal gas pattern.
  - Dilated loops.
  - Thickened bowel walls (suggesting edema/inflammation).
  - *Pneumatosis intestinalis* (intramural air bubbles) is a radiologic sign pathognomonic of NEC.
  - *Abdominal free air* is ominous and usually requires emergency surgical intervention.
  - *Portal gas* represents air present in the portal venous system. Its presence is considered to be a poor prognostic sign.

Laboratory
- Hyponatremia
- Metabolic acidosis
- Thrombocytopenia
- Leukopenia or leukocytosis with left shift
- Neutropenia
- Prolonged PT and activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT), decreasing fibrinogen, rising fibrin split products (in cases of consumption coagulopathy)

Management
- Nothing by mouth and IV fluids.
- Rapid nasogastric decompression.
- Start IV antibiotics after cultures are taken:
  - Frequently used regimen is ampicillin, aminoglycoside (e.g., gentamicin) or third-generation cephalosporin (cefotaxime), and clindamycin or metronidazole.
  - Vancomycin should be included if staphylococcus coverage is deemed appropriate.
  - Medical management usually continues for 10–14 days with parenteral nutrition during that time.
- Consult with a pediatric surgeon at the earliest suspicion of developing NEC.

Indication for surgery
- Intestinal perforation with free air the peritoneal space
- Cellulitis of abdominal wall
- Peritoneal tap showing feces or pus
- If the infant keeps deteriorating despite the medical treatment

Congenital Diaphragmatic Hernia (CDH)

Background
- CDH is a variable degree of pulmonary hypoplasia associated with a decrease in cross-sectional area of the pulmonary vasculature and alterations of the surfactant system.

Clinical presentation
- Respiratory distress; tachypnea, grunting, retraction, and cyanosis.
- Scaphoid abdomen.
- Increased chest wall diameter.
- Bowel sound may be heard in the chest with a decrease in breath sound bilaterally.
- Respiratory distress and cyanosis in the first minutes or hours of life, although a later presentation is possible.
- The respiratory distress can be severe and may be associated with circulatory insufficiency, requiring aggressive resuscitative measures.
- Associated anomalies: Dysmorphisms such as craniofacial abnormalities, extremity abnormalities, or spinal dysraphism may suggest syndromic congenital diaphragmatic hernia.

Laboratory tests
- ABG measurements: to assess for pH, PCO_2, and PaO_2.
- Chromosome studies, including microarray analysis if associated anomalies.
- Levels of serum electrolytes, ionized calcium, and glucose.
- Continuous pulse oximetry is valuable in the diagnosis and management of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn.

Imaging studies
- Chest radiography: to confirm diagnosis of congenital diaphragmatic hernia and to rule out pneumothorax

- Cardiac and renal ultrasonography: to rule out associated anomalies
- Cranial sonography: when an infant is considered for extracorporeal support

Delivery room management
- Avoiding mask ventilation and immediately intubating the trachea
- Endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation: required in all infants with severe congenital diaphragmatic hernia who are present in the first hours of life

Management
- Placement of a vented orogastric tube and connecting it to continuous suction to prevent bowel distention and further lung compression.
- Avoiding high peak inspiratory pressures with mechanical ventilation; synchronizing ventilation with the infant's respiratory effort.
- Continuous monitoring of oxygenation, BP, and perfusion.
- Maintaining glucose and ionized calcium concentrations within reference range.
- Vasoactive agents (e.g., dopamine, dobutamine, milrinone).
- Echocardiogram is a critically important imaging study, and it guides therapeutic decision by measuring pulmonary and systemic artery pressure.
- Surgical correction.

Vomiting

Regurgitation
- Regurgitation is frequent during the neonatal period.
- Gastroesophageal reflux (see the GI chapter)
- Hematemesis
  - Most commonly swallowed maternal blood.
  - Apt test can confirm the diagnosis.
  - If it persists, lavage with physiologic saline may relieve it.

Bowel obstruction
- Bile stained emesis (ominous sign) suggests intestinal obstruction but may be also idiopathic.
- Midgut volvulus is an acute surgical emergency.
- Upper GI contrast series.
- Surgery consult must be done urgently if persistent bilious emesis, abdominal distension, visible peristaltic waves, and reduction or absence of bowel movement.

Hypoxic Ischemic Encephalopathy (HIE)

Background
- HIE is a clinical and laboratory evidence of acute or subacute brain injury due to asphyxia.
- Birth asphyxia causes 23 % of all neonatal deaths worldwide.

Pathogenesis
- Brain hypoxia and ischemia due to systemic hypoxemia, reduced CBF, or both are the primary physiological processes that lead to hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy.
- Excitatory amino acid (EAA) receptor overactivation plays a critical role in the pathogenesis of neonatal hypoxia-ischemia.
- During cerebral hypoxia-ischemia, the uptake of glutamate which is the major excitatory neurotransmitter of the mammalian brain is impaired.
- Accumulation of Na^+ coupled with the failure of energy dependent enzymes such as Na^+/K^+-ATPase leads to rapid cytotoxic edema and necrotic cell death.

Diagnosis
- Profound metabolic or mixed acidemia (pH <7) in an umbilical artery blood sample, if it was obtained
- Persistence of an Apgar score of 0–3 for longer than 5 min
- Neonatal neurologic sequelae (e.g., seizures, coma, hypotonia)
- Multiple organ involvement (e.g., kidney, lungs, liver, heart, intestines)

Clinical presentation
- Mild hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy
  - Muscle tone may be slightly increased, and deep tendon reflexes may be brisk during the first few days.
  - Poor feeding, irritability, excessive crying or sleepiness, may be observed.
  - The neurologic examination findings normalize by 3–4 days of life.
- Moderately severe hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy
  - The infant is lethargic, with significant hypotonia and diminished deep tendon reflexes.
  - The grasping, Moro, and sucking reflexes may be sluggish or absent.
  - The infant may experience occasional periods of apnea.
  - Seizures may occur within the first 24 h of life.
  - Full recovery within 1–2 weeks is possible and is associated with a better long-term outcome.
- Severe hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy
  - Stupor or coma is typical. The infant may not respond to any physical stimulus.

  - Breathing may be irregular, and the infant often requires ventilatory support.
  - Generalized hypotonia and depressed deep tendon reflexes are common.
  - Neonatal reflexes (e.g., sucking, swallowing, grasping, Moro) are absent.
  - Skewed deviation of the eyes, nystagmus, bobbing, and loss of "doll's eye" (i.e., conjugate) movements.
  - Pupils may be dilated, fixed, or poorly reactive to light.
  - Seizures.
  - Irregularities of heart rate and BP are common during the period of reperfusion injury, death from cardiorespiratory failure.

Laboratory studies
- Serum electrolyte levels, renal, liver and cardiac function study.
- Coagulation system—includes PT, PTT, and fibrinogen levels.
- ABG—Blood gas monitoring is used to assess acid base status and to avoid hyperoxia and hypoxia, as well as hypercapnia and hypocapnia.

Imaging studies
- Head imaging study, e.g., MRI of the brain or cranial ultrasonography
- ECG
- EEG
- Hearing test
- Retinal and ophthalmic examination

Management
- Fluid and ventilation management
- Treatment of seizures
- Hypothermia therapy
  - Extensive experimental data suggest that mild hypothermia (3–4 °C below baseline temperature) applied no later than 6 h following injury is neuroprotective.

Intraventricular Hemorrhage (IVH) and Leukomalacia

Background
- It is a predominant disorder of preterm infants.
- It originates in the periventricular subependymal germinal matrix with subsequent entrance of blood into the ventricular system.

Risk factors
- Extreme prematurity
- Birth asphyxia
- Pneumothorax
- Ventilated preterm infants
- Seizures
- Sudden elevation of arterial BP

Classification of IVH
- Grade I: Hemorrhage is confined to the germinal matrix
- Grade II: IVH without ventricular dilatation
- Grade III: IVH with ventricular dilatation
- Grade IV: Intraparenchymal hemorrhage

Clinical presentation
- Sudden drop in hematocrit level
- Apnea
- Bradycardia
- Acidosis
- Seizures
- Change in muscle tone
- Catastrophic syndrome (rapid onset stupor, coma, respiratory abnormalities, seizures, decerebrate posturing, fixed pupil to light, flaccid quadriparesis)

Diagnosis
- Ultrasonography is the study of choice.
- All infants younger than 30 weeks' gestation have to be screened by cranial ultrasonography at 7–14 days postnatal life and at 36–40 weeks postmenstrual age.
- Serial ultrasonography is indicated weekly to follow for progression of hemorrhage and the development of post-hemorrhagic hydrocephalus.

Complication
- Obstructive hydrocephalus
- Nonobstructive hydrocephalus
- Developmental impairment
- Cerebral palsy
- Seizures

Prognosis
- Grade I and grade II hemorrhage: Neurodevelopmental prognosis is excellent.
- Grade IV (severe PVH-IVH) IVH with either periventricular hemorrhagic infarction and/or periventricular leukomalacia (PVL): Mortality approaches 80 %. A 90 % incidence of severe neurological sequelae including cognitive and motor disturbances.

Prevention
- Avoid birth asphyxia
- Avoid large fluctuation of BP
- Avoid rapidly infusion of volume expanders
- Correct acid base abnormalities
- Correct coagulation abnormalities
- Gentle handling of preterm babies

Teratogens (Table 6)

Table 6 Teratogens

Drug	Effect on fetus
Phenytoin	Broad, low nasal bridge Midface hypoplasia and epicanthal fold Distal digital or nail hypoplasia Wide spaced eyes (hypertelorism) Cardiovascular abnormalities Neuroblastoma Bleeding (vitamin K deficiency)
Valproic acid	Neural tube defect (spina bifida) Cardiac, renal and limb anomalies
Warfarin	Bone stippling Facial anomalies Fetal bleeding and death
Lithium	Ebstein anomalies Hypothyroidism Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus Macrosomia
Cocaine	Limb defect or reduction Intracranial hemorrhage Leukomalacia Non-duodenal intestinal atresia Gastroschisis (most likely due to disruption of omphalomesenteric artery)
Marijuana	No specific feature to identify because of possible poly-drug abuse Irritability Tremulousness Abnormal response to visual stimuli
Cigarette smoking	Low birth weight for gestational age
Danazol	Virilization
Tetracycline	Retarded skeletal growth, pigmentation of teeth, hypoplasia of enamel, cataract, limb malformations

Fetal Alcohol Syndrome

Background

- Adverse fetal, neonatal, and pediatric effects occur with maternal alcohol consumption during pregnancy.
- The greater the intake of the alcohol the more severe the signs.
- No safe amount of alcohol during pregnancy is known yet.

Clinical presentation

- Small for gestational age
- Short palpebral fissures (< 10 % for age)
- Epicanthal folds
- Micrognathia
- Smooth philtrum
- Thin upper lip
- Microcephaly
- Intellectual impairment (mild-to-moderate intellectual disability (ID))
- Skeletal abnormalities, e.g., radioulnar synostosis
- Hearing and visual abnormalities, e.g., deafness and strabismus

Suggested Readings

1. Barnes-Powell LL. Infants of diabetic mothers: the effects of hyperglycemia on the fetus and neonate. Neonatal Netw. 2007;26:283–90.
2. Kattwinkel J, Perlman JM, Aziz K, Colby C, Fairchild K, Gallagher J, Hazinski MF, Halamek LP, Kumar P, Little G, McGowan JE, Nightengale B, Ramirez MM, Ringer S, Simon WM, Weiner GM, Wyckoff M, Zaichkin J. (Guideline) Neonatal resuscitation: 2010 American Heart Association guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. Circulation. 2010;122:909–19.
3. Ment LR, Bada HS, Barnes P, et al. Academy of neurology and the practice committee of the child neurology society. Neurology. 2002;25:1726–38.
4. Laptook A, Tyson J, Shankaran S, et al. Elevated temperature after hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy: risk factor for adverse outcomes. Pediatrics. 2008;122:491–9.
5. Callen PW. Ultrasonography in obstetrics and gynecology. 4th ed. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders; 2000.
6. Gornall AS, Kurinczuk JJ, Konje JC. Antenatal detection of a single umbilical artery: does it matter? Prenat Diag. 2003;23:117–23.
7. Hibbs AM, Black D, Palermo L, Cnaan A, Luan X, Truog WE, et al. Accounting for multiple births in neonatal and perinatal trials: systematic review and case study. J Pediatr. 2010;156:202–8.

Adolescent Medicine and Gynecology

Marwa Abdou and Osama Naga

Abbreviations

STDs	Sexually transmitted diseases
SMR	Sexual maturity rating
DSM-V	Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders-V

Physiological Changes and Development During Adolescence

Beginning of puberty in girls

- The mean age 9.7 years (7.8–11.6 years) in Caucasian girls.
- The mean age 8.1 years (6.1–10.1 years) in African American girls.
- Puberty for girls generally lasts an average of 4 years (1.5–8 years).
- Enlargement of the breast is the earliest sign of puberty.
- Menarche usually start 2–3 years after breast development.
- The girls who develop earlier than their peers in school may face psychological challenges.

Beginning of puberty in boys

- The mean age is 11.4 years (9.5–13.5 years).
- Puberty in boys usually lasts an average 3 years (2–5 years).
- The first change is enlargement of the testes, followed by pubic hair and penile growth, and subsequent growth at peak height velocity.

Skeletal growth

- The growth spurt in girls occurs earlier than boys (sexual maturity rating (SMR), SMR II–III for girls vs. SMR IV for boys).
- Girls reach their final height earlier than boys (average 16 years for girls vs. 18 years for boys).

Hematological changes

- In boys, blood volume, red blood cells (RBCs) mass, and hematocrit all increase during puberty under the effect of the testosterone (this is not the case with girls).

Risks and Conditions Associated with Adolescents

Death

- Automobile and motorcycle accidents are the leading causes of adolescent morbidity and mortality.
- Homicide is the second cause of death and the number one cause of death in African Americans adolescents.
- Most of the adolescent's medical care is received in the emergency departments.

Reasons for hospitalizations

- Number 1: pregnancy
- Number 2: mental disorders
- Number 3: injuries

Common problems

- Pregnancy
- Acne
- Smoking and illicit drugs
- Obesity
- Gynecomastia

M. Abdou (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, El Paso Children's Hospital, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: marwaali@doctor.com

O. Naga
Pediatric Department, Paul L Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_9,

Emancipation and Health Care Decisions

Emancipated minors
- If moved outside of the home and they pay their own bills.
- Married or member in military.
- Being parents, most states make them emancipated minors.

Minors seeking help
- Many states allow minors to seek help for pregnancy, contraception, drug, substance abuse, STD, and mental health issues without parental consent.

Best approach in difficult cases
- Encourage the minor to agree to bring the parents or guardian into decision-making process, with the physician acting as a facilitator.

Adolescent Routine Health Visit

Interview
- Allow adolescent to become autonomous, involve the parents only as much as the adolescent wishes.
- Interview the adolescent alone when discussing drugs, contraception, STDs, suicidal ideations.
- Ask about peer and family relationships, depression, sexual relationships, substance abuse, and eating disorders.

Physical examination
- Hearing and vision
- Blood pressure
- Scoliosis (refer to orthopedic if a 10 degree curvature or greater)
- Breast examination
- Pelvic examination, if sexually active and have menstrual problems or abdominal pain
- Scrotum examination for masses, hernia, varicocele, hydrocele, appropriate size of testis, e.g., Klinefelter has very small testis for age
- Obesity, calculate body mass index (BMI)
- Eating disorders, e.g., very low weight, dental problem

Laboratory
- Screen all asymptomatic sexually active adolescents for *Chlamydia, and gonorrhea* using the nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT) on urine specimen.
- American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) recommends urine annual dipstick urinalysis for leukocytes for all sexually active males and females.
- Cholesterol for youth with family history of early cardiovascular diseases.

Table 1 Indication for intervention in cases of obesity

Indication for intervention in cases of obesity
BMI ≥ 95th percentile
Or
BMI between 85th and 95th percentile *and*
Family history of premature heart disease, obesity, HTN, or DM
HTN
Cholesterol > 200 mg/dl
Increase of ≥ 2 points in BMI in 12 months
Adolescent is concerned about his or her weight

BMI body mass index, *HTN* hypertension, *DM* diabetes mellitus

Table 2 Indication for intervention in cases of eating disorders

Indication for intervention in cases of eating disorders
Weight loss > 10 % of previous weight
BMI < 5th percentile
Adolescent is concerned about distorted body image
Eating a large amount of food in a short period of time in a way that feels out of control

BMI body mass index

Immunization
- 11–12 years give Tdap, meningococcal conjugate vaccine (MCV4), and human papilloma virus (HPV, 3 doses series)
- 16 years booster dose of MCV4

Anticipatory guidance
- Promote injury prevention
- Seat belt use all the time
- Alcohol/substance abuse
- Helmet use
- Weapon safety
- Exercise preparedness to prevent injury
- Risky behaviors
- Indication for intervention in cases of obesity (Table 1)
- Indication for intervention in cases of eating disorders (Table 2)

Substance Abuse (Table 3)

Background
- Alcohol and smoking use is the highest in adolescence.
- Mean age of smoking is 12 years and 12.6 years for alcohol consumption.
- Girls smoke more than boys.
- Boys consume alcohol nearly twice as often as girls.

Red flags of substance abuse
- Adolescents present with behavioral problems.
- School failure.
- Emotional distress.

Table 3 Toxic effects of drugs

Toxic syndrome	Common signs	Common causes
Sympathomimetic syndrome	Delusion, paranoia, tachycardia, bradycardia (if pure α-adrenergic agonist), hypertension, hyperpyrexia, diaphoresis, mydriasis, hyperreflexia. Seizures, dysrhythmias may occur in severe cases	Cocaine, amphetamine, methamphetamine, over the counter decongestants
Anticholinergic syndrome	Delirium with mumbling speech, tachycardia, dry, flushed skin, dilated pupils, myoclonus, urine retention. Seizures and dysrhythmias may occur in severe cases	Antihistamines, antidepressant agents, antipsychotic agents, atropine, jimson weed, *Amanita muscaria*
Opiate, sedative, ethanol intoxication	Coma, respiratory distress, miosis, hypotension, bradycardia, hypothermia, pulmonary edema, hyporeflexia, needle marks. Seizure may occur in severe cases	Narcotics, benzodiazepine, ethanol, clonidine
Cholinergic syndrome	Confusion, central nervous system depression, weakness, salivation, lacrimation, urinary and fecal incontinence, gastrointestinal cramping, emesis, diaphoresis, muscle fasciculation, miosis, bradycardia or tachycardia, and seizures	Organophosphates, carbamate insecticide, some mushrooms

- Absent or hostile communication.
- Risky behaviors.
- New disinterest in sports.

Indications of substance abuse screening
- Unexplained accidents
- Trauma
- Psychiatric symptoms
- School failure or deterioration
- Increased school absence
- Suicide attempt
- Altered mental status

Consent for drug testing
- Drug testing of older competent adolescent should be voluntary.

Eating Disorders

Introduction
- Eating disorders in children, adolescents, and young adults represent serious mental health problems.
- These disorders can cause significant morbidity to body systems as well as devastating effects on the child's psychosocial development, family dynamics, and education.
- Anorexia nervosa has the highest fatality rate of any mental health disorder.

Suspicious behaviors
- Assumption of a vegetarian, vegan, low fat, or "healthier" diet, scrutiny of ingredient lists.
- Initiation of precise calorie counting, or weighing one's self several times daily.
- Taking smaller portions or taking a longer period of time to eat.
- Increasing the duration and intensity of exercise in an attempt to utilize more energy.
- Avoiding eating with family and friends or hiding food during social meals.
- Signs of purging activity include frequent trips to the bathroom after meals.
- Discovery of empty containers of diet pills or laxatives.
- Extra layers of clothing to cover up signs of emaciation and to retain body heat.

Indication of hospitalization of patient with eating disorders
- Anorexia
- Weight < 75 % of ideal body weight for age, gender, and stature
- Acute weight decline and refusal of food
- Hypothermia
- Hypotension
- Bradycardia
- Arrhythmia
- Syncope
- Suicidal risks
- Electrolyte disturbance
- Failure to respond to outpatient treatment

Anorexia Nervosa

Background
- Anorexia nervosa is a potentially life-threatening eating disorder characterized by the inability or refusal to maintain a minimally normal weight, a devastating fear of weight gain, relentless dietary habits that prevent weight gain, and a disturbance in the way in which body weight and shape are perceived.
- Usually involved in sports, e.g., gymnast, ballet dancers, marathons.

Table 4 Diagnostic criteria for anorexia nervosa

Criterion	DSM-V
Body weight	Restriction of energy intake relative to requirements leading to a markedly low body weight (less than that minimally expected for age and height)
Fear of weight gain	Intense fear of gaining weight or becoming fat, although underweight, or persistent behavior to avoid weight gain, although at a markedly low weight
Body image	A disturbance in the way one's body weight or shape is experienced; denial of the seriousness of low body weight; an undue influence of body weight or shape on self-evaluation

DSM-V diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders-V

Clinical presentation
- Hypotension, bradycardia, and hypothermia.
- Dry skin.
- Lanugo body hair.
- Thinning hair.
- Swelling of the parotid and submandibular glands.
- Atrophy of the breasts.
- Patients with purging behavior may have callouses to the dorsum of their dominant hand and dental enamel erosion.
- Loss of muscle mass.
- Low blood glucose (impaired insulin clearance).
- Low parathyroid hormone levels.
- Elevated liver function.
- Low white blood cell (WBC) count.

Laboratory
- Complete blood count (CBC)
- Metabolic panel
- Urinalysis
- Pregnancy test (in females of childbearing age)
- Diagnostic criteria for anorexia nervosa (Table 4)

Complications of anorexia nervosa
- Gastrointestinal
  - Gastric dilatation and rupture, delayed gastric emptying, decreased intestinal motility, elevated liver aminotransferase concentrations, elevated serum amylase concentrations, superior mesenteric artery syndrome
- Cardiovascular
  - Decreased left ventricular forces, prolonged QT interval corrected for heart rate, increased vagal tone, pericardial effusion, congestive heart failure
- Hematologic
  - Anemia, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia
- Endocrine and metabolic
  - Low bone density, euthyroid sick syndrome, amenorrhea, refeeding syndrome, electrolyte disturbances, decreased serum testosterone, or estradiol, hypercholesterolemia, hypercortisolism
- Renal
  - Increased blood urea nitrogen, calculi formation
- Neurological
  - Pseudo cortical atrophy, enlarged ventricles

Management
- The process of refeeding must be undertaken slowly, with modest increases in metabolic demands, in order to avoid refeeding syndrome.
- Refeeding syndrome
  - As the adolescent's caloric intake increases, low levels of serum phosphorus can lead to:
  - Rhabdomyolysis
  - Decreased cardiac motility, cardiomyopathy
  - Respiratory and cardiac failure
  - Edema, hemolysis, acute tubular necrosis
  - Seizures and delirium
  - Dangerous fluctuations in potassium, sodium, and magnesium levels
- A nutritionist or dietitian should be an integral part of the refeeding.
- Psychological therapy, e.g.,
  - Individual therapy (insight-oriented)
  - Cognitive analytic therapy
  - Cognitive behavioral therapy

Bulimia

Background
- Bulimia is divided into two subtypes, purging and non purging.
- Binge eating is seen in both subtypes.
- The purging subtype describes an individual who engages regularly in self-induced vomiting or the misuse of laxatives, diuretics, or enemas.
- The non purging subtype describes an individual who uses other inappropriate compensatory behaviors, such as excessive exercise or fasting to burn calories.
- It is important to note that patients who have bulimia often are not low weight and thus may easily hide their eating disorder.

Clinical presentation
- Fatigue
- Bloating
- Irregular menses
- Throat pain

Table 5 Diagnostic criteria for bulimia

Criterion	DSM-V
Binge eating	Eating an amount of food in a discrete period of time (2 h) that is definitely larger than most people would eat
Compensatory behavior	Recurrent inappropriate compensatory behavior in order to prevent weight gain such as self-induced vomiting, misuse of laxatives, diuretics, enemas, or other medications; fasting; or excessive exercise
Frequency of above behaviors	Binge eating and inappropriate compensatory behaviors both occur, on average, at least once a week for 3 months
Self-evaluation	Unduly influenced by body shape and weight
Relation to anorexia nervosa	The disturbance does not occur exclusively during episodes of anorexia nervosa

DSM-V diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders-V

- Bilateral parotid gland swelling
- Calluses on the dorsum of the fingers and loss of tooth enamel from acidic vomit
- Aspiration pneumonia
- Metabolic alkalosis
- Elevated serum amylase
- Diagnostic criteria for bulimia (Table 5)

Management
- Psychological therapy
- Management of associated conditions, e.g., obsessive, compulsive, or affective disorders
- Pharmacological therapy, consider selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), e.g., fluoxetine

Female Breast Masses

Introduction
- Estrogen is the most important factor in breast development.
- Asymmetrical growth of breasts where one is slightly bigger than other is normal.
- The most common breast masses are solitary cysts, fibrocystic changes, and fibroadenoma.
- Breast cancer in adolescent is extremely rare.
- Family history is extremely important.

Solitary cyst
- It is the most common breast mass.
- >50% of cases resolve spontaneously in 2–3 months.
- Follow up with serial exams.
- Breast ultrasound if cannot differentiate between cystic and solid mass by physical examination.
- Pain is commonly associated with solitary cystic masses.
- Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) can be used for pain.
- Oral contraceptive may reduce the frequency and duration.

Fibroadenomas
- Fibroadenomas are common benign lesions of the breast that usually present as a single breast mass in young women.
- Discrete solitary breast mass of 1–2 cm located in the upper outer quadrant in majority of cases.
- Fibroadenoma is usually smooth, mobile, nontender, and rubbery in consistency.
- They have no malignant potential.

Cystosarcoma phyllodes
- It is a rare rapidly growing lesion with a small risk of becoming malignant.

Intraductal papilloma
- Benign, slow-growing tumor located under the areola.
- It may present with a serous or bloody discharge.

Indication for surgical intervention
- Persistence of a mass or enlargement over three menstrual cycles.
- Ultrasound can be used for screening (mammography not used for adolescents).

Amenorrhea

Primary amenorrhea
- 16 years old with normal secondary sexual development, e.g., breast development
- 14 years old with absence of any breast maturation

Secondary amenorrhea
- Loss of menses for >3–6 consecutive months after previous regular cycles
- Loss of menses for >9–12 months in those with previously irregular cycles

Causes of amenorrhea (Fig. 1)
- Pregnancy is the most common cause of secondary amenorrhea.
- Central (hypothalamic or pituitary).
- Ovarian or anatomic (uterus, cervix, vagina, imperforate hymen).

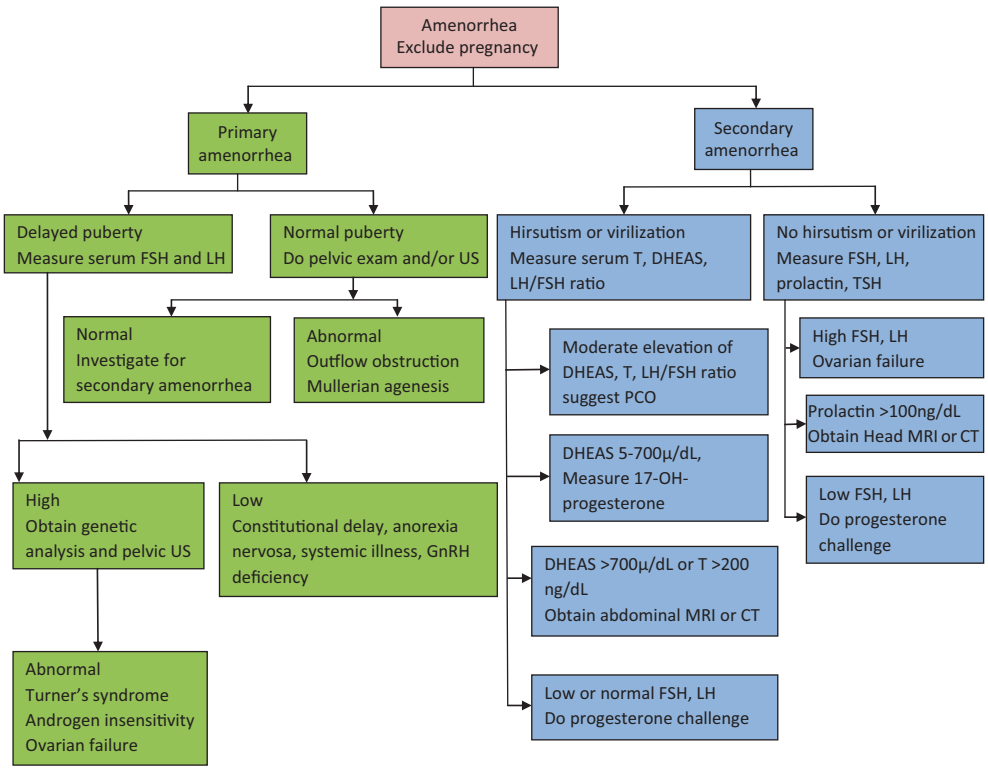


Fig. 1 Approach to the adolescent with amenorrhea. *CT* computed tomography, *DHEAS* dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate, *FSH* follicle-stimulating hormone, *GnRH* gonadotropin-releasing hormone, *LH* luteinizing hormone, *MRI* magnetic resonance imaging, *PCOS* polycystic ovary syndrome, *T* testosterone, *TSH* thyroid stimulating hormone, *US* ultrasonography. (Adapted from SIap GB. Menstrual disorders in adolescence. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 17:75–92, 2003)

Dysmenorrhea

Background

- It is a leading cause in school absenteeism in adolescents.
- Dysmenorrhea in most of the cases due to prostaglandin production before menses, which causes vasoconstriction, and muscular contractions.

Clinical presentation

- Abdominal pain and cramps

Management

- Ibuprofen, naproxen.
- Contraceptives are very effective in reducing or eliminating dysmenorrhea.

Dysfunctional Uterine Bleeding

- The most common cause of excessive bleeding that requires hospitalization in adolescence is abnormal bleeding disorders.
- During the first 2 years after menarche, anovulatory cycles are associated with bleeding episodes
- Abnormal bleeding at the time of menarche may be the first sign of bleeding disorders, e.g., von Willebrand disease.
- Lacerations of vagina, hymenal tear, and foreign bodies may present with vaginal bleeding.
- Vaginal adenocarcinoma in girls because their mothers were receiving diethylstilbestrol (DES).
- Cervical polyps.
- STDs.
- Endometrial diseases, e.g., endometritis.

Gynecomastia

- Occurs in 50% of boys between 10 and 16 years.
- The area may be tender and asymmetric.
- Most gynecomastia resolves spontaneously.
- Benign pubertal gynecomastia is usually <4 cm and does not need any specific workup or therapy.
- Large breast similar to female breast SMR II–III or more is unlikely to resolve spontaneously and may require surgery.

Rare causes of gynecomastia:

- Klinefelter syndrome
- Tumor of testicular, adrenal, or pituitary glands
- Anabolic steroids

Scrotal Masses

- Neoplasm usually presents as a painless mass that may be discovered accidentally on routine physical examination by the patient himself.
- May present with pain if hemorrhage or necrosis occurs.
- Back pain if retroperitoneal lymph node are present.
- 95% of testicular tumors are germ cell in origin, e.g., seminoma, embryonal carcinoma, teratoma, and choriocarcinoma. Other 5% are of stromal tissue origin.
- Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) is elevated in choriocarcinoma.
- α-fetoprotein is elevated in yolk sac tumor, and embryonal carcinoma.
- Most seminomas do not produce any markers.
- Investigation includes: Testicular ultrasonography (US), computed tomography (CT) scan of chest and abdomen.
- Treatment include: orchiectomy, peritoneal lymph node dissection, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy depending on staging.

Contraception

Background
- The only one that has 100% efficacy is abstinence.
- Intrauterine devices (IUDs) are 98–99% effective.
- Oral contraceptives are 99.9% effective if used correctly.
- Male condoms are 97% effective if used perfectly; male condom is the only contraceptive method beside the abstinence that protects against STDs.

Female contraceptive
- Implants
- Injectable depot medroxyprogesterone acetate
- Progestin-only oral contraceptives
- IUD
- Female condom
- Diaphragm—prevents pregnancy by acting as a barrier to the passage of semen into the cervix
- Cervical cap—acts as a mechanical barrier to sperm migration into the cervical canal and as a chemical agent with the use of spermicide
- Spermicidal agent

Absolute contraindication for oral contraceptive
- Abnormal vaginal bleeding of unknown cause
- Estrogen-dependent tumor
- Liver disease
- Thromboembolic disease
- Cerebral events

Relative contraindication of oral contraceptive
- Tobacco use
- DM
- Seizures
- Migraine
- Hypertension

Emergency contraception
- Levonorgestrel (Plan B), Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved if ≥18 years over the counter (OTC) or by prescription if <18 years.
- This agent is most effective if used as soon as possible but also up to 120 h after unprotected intercourse.

Sexually Transmitted Disease in Adolescents

Neisseria Gonorrhoeae

Background
- Most men are symptomatic.
- Female may present with pelvic inflammatory disease (PID).

Clinical presentation in females
- Vaginal discharge
- Dysuria
- Intermenstrual bleeding
- Lower abdominal pain: most consistent symptom of PID
- Right upper quadrant pain from perihepatitis (Fitz-Hugh-Curtis syndrome)

Clinical presentation in males
- Burning upon urination and a serous discharge; a few days later, the discharge usually becomes more profuse, purulent, and, at times, tinged with blood
- Acute epididymitis
- Rectal infection: may present with pain, pruritus, discharge, or tenesmus

Disseminated gonococcal infection
- Arthritis dermatitis syndrome is the most classic presentation.
- Migratory polyarthralgia, especially of the knees, elbows, and more distal joints.
- Septic arthritis; the knee is the most common site of purulent gonococcal arthritis.
- Skin rash (may involve the palms and soles).
- The dermatitis consists of lesions varying from maculopapular to pustular lesions which can be painful.
- Fever is common, but rarely exceeds 39 °C.
- Gonococcal endocarditis is rare (more common in men than in women).

Diagnosis
- Urinalysis (UA) and urine culture.
- NAATs are a new class of highly sensitive and specific diagnostic tests for *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *N. gonorrhoeae* infections.

Treatment
- Uncomplicated gonorrhea
  - Cefixime 400 mg orally in a single dose *or* Ciprofloxacin 500 mg orally in a single dose *or* Ofloxacin 400 mg orally in a single dose *or* Levofloxacin 250 mg orally in a single dose *or* Ceftriaxone 250 mg intramuscular (IM) in a single dose *and* treatment for *C. trachomatis*
  - Azithromycin 1 g orally in a single dose *or* Doxycycline 100 mg orally twice daily for 7 days for *C. trachomatis*
- Disseminated gonococcal infection
  - Ceftriaxone 1 gm intravenous (IV)/IM q 24 h
  - Cefotaxime 1 g IV q 8 h for 7 days is an alternative treatment.

Chlamydia trachomatis

Men
- Urethral discharge.
- Asymptomatic infection is common.
- Absent of G-negative intracellular diplococci in urethral smear.
- Presence of ≥5 WBCs/oil field is highly sensitive and specific for urethritis.

Females
- Mucopurulent cervicitis.
- Often asymptomatic.
- May have discharge or bleeding after intercourse.
- Annual screening of sexually active adolescent women even those without symptoms.
- PID increases risk of ectopic pregnancy; infertility is a common complication of chlamydial infection.
- NAATs (nucleic-acid amplification tests) are a new class of highly sensitive and specific diagnostic tests for *C. trachomatis* and *N. gonorrhoeae* infections.

Treatment
- Azithromycin 1 g orally in a single dose *or* doxycycline 100 mg orally twice daily for 7 days

Pelvic Inflammatory Disease

Background
- Most commonly due to untreated cervicitis.
- Untreated cervicitis can progress to an ascending genital tract infection (Salpingo-oophoritis or PID).
- *Chlamydia trachomatis and Neisseria gonorrhoeae* are the most commonly associated organisms.
- The highest rates of chlamydial/gonorrheal infections occur among adolescent females 14–24 years of age.
- Most infected individuals are asymptomatic specially females with chlamydial infections.
- Other organisms can cause PID; anaerobes, *Gardnerella vaginalis, Haemophilus influenzae*, *Streptococcus agalactiae, Mycoplasma hominis, Ureaplasma urealyticum*, and enteric gram-negative rods.

Clinical presentation
- Abdominal pain.
- Symptoms are more during menses.
- Abdominal tenderness (occasionally with rebound tenderness).
- Adnexal tenderness.
- Cervical motion tenderness.
- Elevated temperature.
- Mucopurulent cervical discharge.

Diagnosis of PID
- Elevated WBC count.
- Elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate or C-reactive protein concentration.
- Mucopurulent cervical discharge.
- Evidence of positive gonococcal or chlamydial infection.
- PID is diagnosed definitively by endometrial biopsy or laparoscopy.
- Pelvic ultrasonography may demonstrate:
  - Fluid in the cul-de-sac
  - Thickened fallopian tubes
  - Tubo-ovarian abscess

Treatment of PID
- Outpatient treatment
  - Ceftriaxone 250 mg IM X1 plus 1 gram azithromycin x1 or doxycycline 100 mg twice daily x14 days
  - Oral doxycycline or azithromycin for *C. trachomatis* genital tract infection in adolescents and adults
- Inpatient
  - Cefoxitin 2 g IV every 6 h plus doxycycline 100 mg oral twice daily for 14 days or IV clindamycin 900 mg IV every 8 h plus gentamicin IV

Trichomoniasis

- Trichomoniasis is due to the protozoa *Trichomonas vaginalis* (Table 6).
- Most men are asymptomatic.
- Most women will present with malodorous yellow-green thin and frothy discharge with vulvovaginal itching, burning, or soreness.

Table 6 Differential diagnosis of infections with vaginal discharge

Bacterial vaginosis	Trichomoniasis	Vulvovaginal candidiasis
Gardnerella vaginalis	*Trichomonas vaginalis*	*Candida albicans*
Homogenous, white, fishy odor, non-inflammatory discharge that smoothly covered the vaginal wall	Malodorous yellow-green thin and frothy discharge	Thin and watery, or thick and white, like cottage cheese discharge
Vulvar irritation is less common	Vulvar itching, vulval soreness and irritation	Vulval itching, vulval soreness and irritation
PH of vaginal fluid >4.5	PH of vaginal fluid >4.5	PH of vaginal fluid <4.5
Clue cells	Flagellated pyriform protozoa	Fungal cells
Metronidazole	Metronidazole	Antifungal topical cream or Fluconazole 150 mg oral tablet x 1

Table 7 Differential diagnosis of genital ulcers

Syphilis	*Chancroid*	*Lymphogranuloma venereum*
Treponema pallidum	*Haemophilus ducreyi*	*Chlamydia trachomatis serovars*
Chancre; painless ulcer palmar rash	Painful genital ulcers	Self-limited genital papules or ulcers followed by painful inguinal and/or femoral lymphadenopathy
Mucocutaneous lesions	Tender, suppurative inguinal lymphadenopathy	Commonly seen on coronal sulcus, prepuce, glans, and scrotum
Lymphadenopathy		Posterior vaginal wall, vulva in women
Cardiac, ophthalmic, auditory abnormalities (gummatous lesions)		
Late latent syphilis		
RPR or VDRL 4 folds rise or fall in titer	Negative dark-field examination	
FTA-ABS	Negative syphilis serologic test	
CSF VDRL if neurosyphilis suspected	HSV is negative	
Benzathine penicillin G 2.4 million unit x1 IM	Azithromycin 1 gm x1 or	Doxycycline 100 mg PO bid for 21 days
Doxycycline 100 mg bid x 14 days (only if non-pregnant and penicillin allergy)	Ceftriaxone 250 mg IM X1	Erythromycin base 500 mg PO qid for 21 days
Benzathine penicillin G 2.4 million unit IM q week for latent syphilis		Azithromycin 1 gm q week
Aqueous crystalline penicillin G 3–4 million IV q 4 h for neurosyphilis		TMP-SMX

RPR rapid plasma reagin, *VDRL* venereal disease research laboratory, *FTA-ABS* fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption test, *CSF* cerebrospinal fluid, *PO* by mouth , *TMP-SMX* trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole, *HSV* herpes simplex virus, *IM* intramuscular

- Strawberry cervix describes a diffuse or patchy macular erythematous lesion of the cervix.
- Flagellated pyriform protozoa, or trichomonads on saline wet mount is diagnostic.
- Treatment should be instituted immediately and, whenever possible, in conjunction with all sexual partners.
- Metronidazole and tinidazole are FDA approved.
- Pregnant women with symptoms can be treated with metronidazole as well.

Human Papillomavirus (HPV)

- HPV type 6 or 11 usually causes visible wart.
- Beside the genital area HPV type 6 or 11 can produce wart in the conjunctival, nasal, oral and laryngeal areas.
- HPV 16, 18, 31, 33, and 35 are associated with cervical neoplasia, also neoplasm of penis, anus, and vulva.
- Treatment of external genital wart, e.g.:
  - Podofilox 0.5% solution or gel.
  - Imiquimod 5% cream.
  - Cryotherapy.
  - Surgical removal.
- Note: C-section is not an indication because of genital wart, however C-section may be indicated if the genital wart obstructing the pelvic outlet.

Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)

Indication of HIV testing

- All who seek evaluation and treatment for STDs
- Adolescent with high risk behaviors

- Unexplained enlargement of parotid glands
- Adolescent with oral thrush
- Adolescent with acute retroviral syndrome; fever, malaise, lymphadenopathy, and skin rash

HIV testing

- Enzyme immunoassay (EIA) screening test.
- Western blot confirm the diagnosis.
- In cases of acute retroviral syndrome order HIV polymerase chain reaction-deoxyribonucleic acid (PCR DNA) test, because EIA may be negative in early presentations (first few weeks).

Herpes Simplex

- Genital herpes is HSV-2
- Painful itchy lesions with multiple vesicles
- Diagnosis; isolation of HSV in cell culture is preferred, serology testing for herpes immunoglobulin G (IgG).
- Treatment; acyclovir, famciclovir, valacyclovir

Pediculosis

- Lice can be sexually transmitted and must be included in the differential for an adolescent presenting with persistent pruritus or nits.
- Pediculosis usually presents with itching.
- Phthirus pubis (crab louse).
- Lice and nits present can be seen pubic hair, body and scalp.
- Treatment is permethrin 1% cream.

Scabies

- Caused by *Sarcoptes scabiei*.
- Presents with intense itching.
- Burrows in the webs of the fingers and toes.
- Treatment is permethrin 5% cream.
- Ivermectin 200 μ/kg orally, repeat in 2 weeks.

Vaccines Prevent STDs

- Hepatitis A
  - Single IM dose of immunoglobulin after exposure with a person with hepatitis A infection (sexual contact or sharing IV drugs) if unvaccinated.
  - Hepatitis A vaccine is recommended after exposure.
- Hepatitis B
  - Give hepatitis B immunoglobulin and hepatitis B vaccine after exposure (sexual contact or sharing IV drugs) with a person with hepatitis B if unvaccinated.
  - Hepatitis B vaccination is recommended.
- HPV
  - Quadrivalent papillomavirus virus vaccine (Gardasil) protects against HPV type 6, 11, 16, and 18.
  - Given in 3 dose series 0, 2, 6 months.

Suggested Readings

1. American Psychiatric Association. Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders. 4th ed. (Text revision: DSM-IV-TR). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association; 2000.
2. American Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Adolescence. Identifying and treating eating disorders. Pediatrics. 2003;111:204–11.
3. Work Group on Eating Disorders. Practice guideline for the treatment of patients with eating disorders. 3rd ed. Arlington: American Psychiatric Association; 2006.

Allergic and Immunologic Disorders

Osama Naga

Abbreviations

LTRA	Leukotriene receptor antagonist
HAE	Hereditary angioedema
ELISA	Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
CMC	Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis
MPO	Myeloperoxidase deficiency
CVID	Common variable immunoglobulin deficiency
CGD	Chronic granulomatous disease
THI	Transient hypogammaglobulinemia of infancy
XLP	X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome

Introduction

- Tree pollens are highest in the spring, grass pollens in the early summer, and weeds in the fall, may cause seasonal allergies or outdoor allergies
- Molds are high all year around and may cause persistent allergies or indoor allergies, e.g., *alternaria* and *cladosporium* in warmer seasons, *penicillium* and *aspergillus* in the colder seasons
- Dog and cat dander are very common
- Dust mite is a very important trigger of asthma and allergies, e.g., episode of coughing while cleaning the house.
- Nasal and ocular itching, clear runny nose, and frequent sneezing without fever or recent cold symptoms are suggestive symptoms of allergic rhinitis
- Dennie–Morgan lines are wrinkles below the eye and frequently accompany allergic rhinitis
- Tonsils and adenoid are frequently enlarged in patient with allergic rhinitis and may cause snoring, sleep apnea, and patient usually is a mouth breather
- Excessive tearing, conjunctival injection, rubbing the eye very frequent are suggestive symptoms of allergic conjunctivitis

Skin Testing

Background

- Prick and puncture tests are the most common screening tests for food allergy and can even be performed on infants in the first few months of life
- These tests provide useful and reproducible clinical information in a short period (i.e., 15–20 min), with minimal expense and negligible risk to the patient

Indication of skin testing

- Identification of aeroallergen triggers in patients who have asthma
- Allergic rhinitis not controlled with usual medications, specific avoidance is desired in such cases, e.g., pet dander
- Food allergy
- Insect sting allergy
- Vaccine, drug, or latex allergy
- Evaluation for moderate-to-severe atopic dermatitis
- Other conditions, including allergic fungal sinusitis, allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis, and eosinophilic esophagitis.

Medication that alter the result of skin test

- First generation nonselective antihistamine, e.g., (diphenhydramine) suppress skin reactivity for 3 days
- Second generation antihistamine (e.g., cetirizine, loratadine) may blunt skin test for up to 7 days
- Ranitidine and famotidine may blunt the skin test for up to 7 days
- Tricyclic antidepressants and phenothiazines may block skin reactivity for 2 weeks

O. Naga (✉)
Pediatric Department, Paul L Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue,
El Paso,TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_10,

- Medications to be stopped prior skin testing because it may make the treatment of anaphylaxis less effective.
  - Beta-blockers (should not be stopped without consulting the physician)
  - Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors
- Medications do not interfere with allergy skin test
  - Corticosteroids
  - Asthma medications, e.g., albuterol and montelukast

Method of testing
- Small drop of allergen, e.g., pollen or mite injected intradermally
- IgE receptors undergo crosslinking and activate mast cells and cause a release of histamine and other product leading to local vasodilatation resulting in wheals

In Vitro Allergy Testing

Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)
- RAST radioallergosorbent (RAST) testing, is outdated because of radiation and is rarely used today
- *ELISA* which uses antibodies linked to enzymes, as well as fluorescent enzyme immunoassays (EIA) and chemiluminescent immunoassays
- The accuracy of immunoassays varies with the system being used and the quality of the allergen.
- There is a good predictive value (>90%) for pollens of grass, trees, dust mites, and cats, whereas less accurate results may be obtained from venoms, weeds, latex, dogs, and molds.
- If testing is equivocal, it can be further evaluated by skin testing and, if indicated, a challenge to the allergen
- Both skin and ELISA are only suggestive evidence for sensitivity to particular item but negative skin-prick test is a strong evidence against allergy to an item

General rules in management of allergy
- Avoidance of specific triggers
- Encasing the mattresses and pillows with impermeable covers
- Laundering all bed linens with hot water at least every week
- Removal of carpets
- Reduce in-home humidity to less than 51% during the humid summer season in a temperate climate, result in significant reductions in mite and allergen levels.
- Removal of the pets is the best mean to reduce allergen burden but allergen can be detectable at 4–5 months after such removal

Medications
- *First generation* antihistamines: Diphenhydramine, chlorpheniramine, and hydroxyzine
  - Sides effect of first generation antihistamines:
  - Sedation
  - Interaction with acetylcholine receptors and can cause dry mouth, blurry vision
- *Second generation* antihistamine: Cetirizine, fexofenadine, loratadine, desloratadine
  - Second generation do not cross blood–brain barrier and are more specifically aimed at H1 receptor and not other receptors
- *Steroid*
  - Intranasal corticosteroids are the most effective agents for nasal allergy and do not have the systemic effects seen with oral steroids
  - Inhaled corticosteroids are important treatment measure in patient with persistent asthma
- *Immunotherapy*
  - Involves giving increasing doses of allergens via the subcutaneous route to induce alteration in the immune response to the allergen
  - Usually it takes 1–2 years before beneficial effect occur

Allergic Rhinitis (AR)

Background
- Allergic rhinitis (AR) is the most common chronic disease in children
- Often being mistaken for recurrent episodes of the common cold
- It is one of the major reasons for visits to pediatricians and is associated with a number of significant comorbidities
- AR is a hypersensitivity reaction to specific allergens that occur in sensitized patients
- It is mediated by immunoglobulin E (IgE) antibodies and results in inflammation (Table 1)

Classification
- *Intermittent disease* with symptoms <4 days/week or for duration <4 weeks usually related to outdoor allergens, e.g., pollens
- *Persistent disease* with symptoms >4 days/week and are present for >4 weeks, usually related to indoors allergens, e.g., molds

Clinical presentation
- Nasal congestion may be reported by parents as mouth breathing, snoring, or a nasal voice.

Table 1 Types of hypersensitivity

Hypersensitivity type	Associated disorders	Mediators	Description
Type I: Allergy (immediate)	Atopy Asthma Anaphylaxis	IgE	Fast response which occurs in minutes Free antigens cross link the IgE on mast cells and basophils, which causes a release of vasoactive biomolecules Testing can be done via skin test for specific IgE
Type II: Cytotoxic, antibody-dependent	Autoimmune hemolytic anemia Thrombocytopenia Rheumatic heart disease Membranous nephropathy	IgM or IgG Complement MAC (membrane attack complex)	Antibody (IgM or IgG) binds to antigen on a target cell, which is actually a host cell that is perceived by the immune system as foreign, leading to cellular destruction via the MAC Testing includes both the direct and indirect Coombs test
Type III: Immune complex disease	Serum sickness Lupus PSGN	IgG Complement Neutrophils	Antibody (IgG) binds to soluble antigen, forming a circulating immune complex. This is often deposited in the vessel walls of the joints and kidney, initiating a local inflammatory reaction
Type IV: Delayed-type hypersensitivity cell-mediated immune memory response, antibody-independent	Contact dermatitis TB skin test Chronic transplant rejection	T-Cell	T cells find antigen and activate macrophages

- Paroxysmal sneezing, nasal and palatal pruritus, nose blowing, sniffing, snorting, and occasional coughing
- Nasal pruritus often produces the classic sign of the allergic salute
- Itchy eyes and postnasal drip
- Seasonality, progression of symptoms, identifiable triggers, alleviating factors, and responsiveness to allergy medication
- Comorbid conditions such as headaches, sleep disturbance, fatigue, and impaired concentration and attentiveness at school
- Nasal turbinates may appear edematous, with a pale to bluish hue
- Cobblestoning from lymphoid hyperplasia may be seen on the posterior oropharynx
- Dark discolorations underneath the eyes, "allergic shiners," are due to venous engorgement and suborbital edema
- Dennie lines are folds under the eyes due to edema
- A transverse nasal crease is seen across the bridge of the nose in children who chronically push their palms upward under their noses (allergic salute; Fig. 1)
- Chronic mouth breathing from nasal obstruction may cause "allergic facies," with an open mouth, receding chin, overbite, elongated face, and arched hard palate

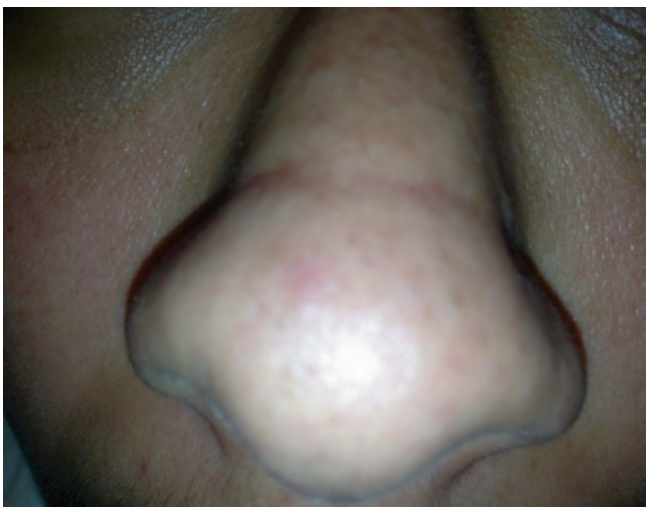


Fig. 1 A child with allergic rhinitis showing the transverse nasal crease across the bridge of the nose

Diagnosis

- History and physical examination are keys to diagnosing AR
- Percutaneous (prick or puncture) skin testing remains the most specific and cost-effective diagnostic modality
- ELISA immunology testing also may be used
- These tests can help to identify the offending allergen, and specific avoidance can be recommended
- Nasal smear for eosinophils with eosinophil count of greater than 4% in children may be help to distinguish AR from viral infections and nonallergic rhinitis

Management

- Allergen avoidance, whenever possible
- Intermittent disease (Outdoor environmental control)
  - Staying inside (5 am to 10 am)
  - Keep air-conditioning on during the spring, fall, and pollen seasons
- Persistent disease (Indoor environmental control)
  - Avoiding molds include humidity control < 51% in the home by using a dehumidifier
  - Use dust mite covers on the bed and pillows
  - Use hypoallergenic pillows and comforters

  - Wash linens in hot water to denature dust mite allergen
  - If allergic to pets get rid of them entirely or removing pets from the bedroom may help decrease exposure to their danders
- Intranasal corticosteroids (INS)
  - The first-line treatment and most effective for patients who have AR
  - Onset of action has been shown to be within 12 h
  - Can be used as needed
  - Epistaxis is most common side effect
  - Generally has no effect on growth over 1 year of treatment in pediatric patients
- H1 antihistamine
  - The most popular
  - Decreased sneezing, itching, and rhinorrhea, but oral antihistamines are notoriously ineffective in treating nasal congestion
  - Adverse effects include sedation, which can lead to reduced school and cognitive performance
  - Sedation effect can be avoided by using second-generation antihistamines that have low or no sedation effects
- Decongestants side effects
  - Cardiac-related events such as palpitations and tachycardia
  - Prolonged use of topical decongestant can lead to rhinitis medicamentosa (rebound nasal congestion)
- LTRA such as montelukast can be used
- Allergy immunotherapy
  - It is not used routinely for management of typical AR
  - Its use is reserved for severe cases
- Comorbidities
  - AR also is one of the risk factors associated with otitis media
  - 20% of children who have AR have otitis media with effusion and that 50% of the children who have chronic otitis media with effusion have AR
  - Poorly controlled rhinitis symptoms may exacerbate coexisting asthma
  - Allergic rhinitis may increase the risk of development of sinusitis

Anaphylaxis

Background

- Anaphylaxis is an acute, life-threatening systemic reaction that results from the sudden release of mediators from mast cells and basophils
- Prompt recognition of the signs and symptoms of anaphylaxis is critical to providing rapid and effective treatment
- Epinephrine is the most important medication for treating anaphylaxis, and earlier administration portends better prognosis

Causes

- Food
  - The most common cause of anaphylaxis in the outpatient setting is food
  - The foods most commonly implicated in food-induced anaphylaxis are peanuts, tree nuts, fish, shellfish, cow milk, soy, and egg
- Medications
  - Medications are the second most common cause of anaphylaxis in children
  - The two most frequent culprits are antibiotics, particularly β-lactam antibiotics, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
- Radiographic Contrast
  - Anaphylactoid reactions associated with radiographic contrast material occur in approximately 1% of patients
  - Pretreatment with oral corticosteroids and antihistamines can reduce the risk of anaphylactoid reactions from radiographic contrast material
- Stinging Insects
  - Hymenoptera stings by bees, vespids (yellow jacket, hornet, and wasps), and stinging fire ants can cause anaphylaxis, and can be fatal
  - Cutaneous symptoms can be treated symptomatically with cold compresses, oral antihistamines, and oral analgesics
  - Systemic symptoms should prompt immediate administration of epinephrine and immediate evaluation in a local emergency department
- Latex
  - Natural rubber latex is an emerging cause of anaphylaxis
  - It is common in certain patients, e.g., patients with spina bifida, bladder exstrophy due to frequent exposure and sensitization
- Vaccination
  - Anaphylaxis to vaccines is an exceedingly rare, but important cause of a life-threatening allergic reaction
  - Vaccine containing gelatin, egg, chicken, yeast, and neomycin can cause anaphylaxis
  - Patients can undergo skin testing to the components of the vaccine, such as gelatin, and to the vaccine itself
- Exercise
  - Exercise and physical exertion can lead to systemic mast cell mediator release, resulting in anaphylaxis
  - Few minutes of exercise can cause flushing, pruritus, diffuse warmth, urticaria, and fatigue
  - It may progress to angioedema, laryngeal edema, gastrointestinal symptoms, hypotension, or collapse if exercise is continued
  - Eating specific food 4–6 h before exercise is a common co-trigger, e.g., alcohol or NSAID

  - Taking the medication before exercise by up to 24 h may prevent it (food-exercise-induced anaphylaxis or medication-exercise-induced anaphylaxis)
- Immunotherapy
  - Subcutaneous allergen immunotherapy (allergy shots) is another potential cause of anaphylaxis
- Idiopathic

Clinical presentation
- Flushing, urticaria, pruritus, angioedema, cough, wheezing, stridor, dyspnea, abdominal cramping, vomiting, diarrhea, dizziness, and syncope
- The absence of cutaneous symptoms argues against anaphylaxis but cannot completely rule it out
- Allergic reactions that are IgE-mediated typically occur rapidly and usually within 1 h of ingesting the food
- Non-IgE-mediated reactions, such as food poisoning, occur more slowly and may be delayed by as much as 24 h from ingestion
- 80–90% of cases of food-induced anaphylaxis present with cutaneous findings of hives, angioedema, or both
- Cutaneous findings are uncommon in food poisoning
- A careful history from the patient, parent, caregiver, or other witnesses is helpful in determining a potential trigger

Differential diagnosis
- Vasovagal or neurogenic syncope
- Vocal cord dysfunction
- Asthma exacerbation
- Panic attack
- Isolated angioedema
- Food poisoning and other causes of shock
- Sepsis
- Cardiogenic shock

Management
- A serum tryptase level taken within 6 h of a suspected anaphylactic reaction may help to confirm the diagnosis in most of cases
- Referral to an allergist is warranted so that skin tests, specific IgE in vitro testing can be done
- Challenge tests may be considered for more definitive diagnosis, especially in difficult cases
- Epinephrine
  - The mainstay of short-term treatment for anaphylaxis
  - Aqueous epinephrine in a 1:1000 dilution (0.01 mg/kg in children; maximum, 0.3 mg)
  - Should be administered intramuscularly in the outer aspect of the thigh every 5 min as needed to control symptoms
- Epinephrine pens
  - Self-administration epinephrine pens must be carried for all patients at risk for anaphylaxis
  - For children under 30 kg, the dose is 0.15 mg
  - For children greater than or equal to 30 kg, the dose is 0.3 mg
- Diphenhydramine
  - Second-line therapy
  - 1–2 mg/kg every 6 h as needed
- Ranitidine
  - Histamine-2 (H2)-receptor antagonists may be considered
  - 1–2 mg/kg every 12 h as needed
- Inhaled Beta-2 agonist, e.g., albuterol if bronchospasm
- Glucocorticosteroids
  - It may not be helpful for short-term treatment but can be considered for prevention of recurrent or protracted anaphylaxis
  - Oxygen therapy and intravenous fluid
  - If hypoxia or hypotension
- Prevention
  - Avoid triggers or allergens
  - Penicillin reaction non-IgE-mediated:
    - e.g., vomiting, diarrhea, headache, or a non urticarial, nonpruritic rash
    - This cases can be given cephalosporin with no problem
  - Penicillin reaction IgE-mediated:
    - Anaphylaxis
    - Urticarial rash
    - First-generation cephalosporins in penicillin-allergic patients is 0.4%, whereas the increased risk is negligible for third-generation cephalosporins
  - Stevens–Johnson syndrome or toxic epidermal necrolysis associated with a particular medication
    - Same drug and structurally related drugs should be strictly avoided in the future

Food Allergies

Mechanism of food allergies
- IgE-mediated
  - Due to immune complexes, cell-mediated hypersensitivity, antigen-dependent cellular cytotoxicity
- Non-IgE-mediated
  - e.g., Lactase deficiency, or toxin exposure
- Most common triggers
  - Eggs, cow milk, peanuts, tree nuts, fish, shellfish, soy, and wheat

Clinical presentation
- Skin reaction, urticaria, or angioedema
- Usually the onset of reaction is quick within minutes
- Food can cause hives but long lasting hives are rare
- Anaphylaxis

- Cow milk can cause allergic colitis, bloody stool, and failure to thrive

Diagnosis
- Skin testing
- ELISA

Treatment
- Avoidance is the mainstay of treatment

Prognosis
- Allergies to peanuts, tree nuts, fish, shellfish tends to be lifelong
- Most of infants and children outgrow allergies to egg, milk, and soy protein

Drug Reaction

Causes of drug reaction
- Many drug reaction are idiosyncratic
- Few drug reaction due immune response
- Drug overdose
- Drug–drug interaction
- Drug side effects

Immune responses
- Specific IgE-hypersensitivity
- IgG-predominant response resulting in serum sickness
- Antibody-mediated hemolysis by binding of the drug to surface of RBCs
- Drug induced, delayed-type hypersensitivity reaction mediated by T-lymphocyte and monocytes

Timing of reaction
- If the drug given IV and immediate reaction occurs within an hour, an IgE-mediated process is likely
- If the reaction delayed up to 72 h, a delayed hypersensitivity reaction is likely
- Steven–Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis, fixed drug reactions, photosensitivity usually appear more than 72 h after exposure to drugs

Specific drug reaction
- Penicillin is composed of benzylpenicillin which is the major determinant of penicillin allergies
- Minor determinants, e.g., benzylpenicilloate are responsible for most anaphylaxis

Cross-reactivity
- Penicillin cross-reacts with cephalosporin at rate of 3–7 %
- Penicillin has a high rate of cross reactivity with imipenem
- Penicillin has no cross-reactivity with aztreonam yet

Desensitization
- Desensitization is necessary if the medication is the only clinically effective therapy
- e.g., pregnant women with syphilis or a person with neurosyphilis requiring definitive penicillin therapy and both require desensitization and use of IV penicillin
- Subsequent administration down the road may require repeat desensitization

Serum Sickness

Background
- Serum sickness is a type III hypersensitivity reaction that results from the injection of heterologous or foreign protein or serum
- Immune complex causes vascular injury and influx of neutrophils and eventual tissue injury or death
- Reactions secondary to the administration of nonprotein drugs are clinically similar to serum sickness reactions
- Serum sickness do not require prior exposure to an antigen (prior sensitization) and can occur on initial exposure
- Most common cause of serum sickness today is antibiotics, e.g., cefaclor and penicillin
- Stings from Hymenoptera (bees, wasps, and some ants) can induce serum sickness

Clinical presentation
- It may take 6–12 days for the reaction to develop, but can take up to 3 weeks
- If previous exposure has occurred, reaction may occur as quickly as 1–3 days post exposure
- Fever/malaise
- Skin rash: Urticarial (92 %) and/or serpiginous, the rash typically starts on the anterior lower trunk or the periumbilical or axillary regions and spread to the back, upper trunk, and extremities
- Arthritis is usually in the metacarpophalangeal and knee joints and usually symmetrical.
- Edema may occur, particularly the face and neck.
- Renal manifestations include proteinuria, microscopic hematuria, and oliguria
- Gastrointestinal complaints
- Headaches
- Myalgias
- Blurred vision
- Dyspnea/wheezing
- Lymphadenopathy
- Neurologic manifestation, e.g., peripheral neuropathy

Management
- Stop the offending agent
- Nonsteroidal can help for fever and muscle/bone pain
- Diphenhydramine or hydroxyzine will help to relieve urticaria and itching

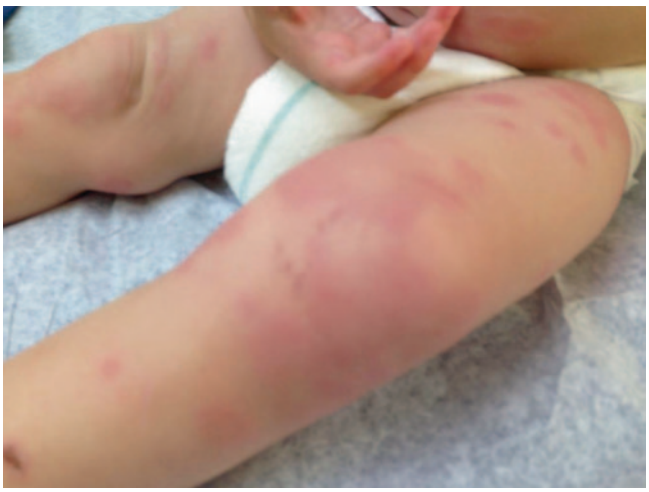


Fig. 2 An 18 months old with pruritic circumscribed and coalescent wheals

- Prednisone at 1–2 mg/kg/day can be given if other intervention is not helpful

Urticaria

Background
- Urticaria is a rash that consists of pruritic, blanching, erythematous, circumscribed, or (often) coalescent wheals
- Acute urticaria < 6 weeks
- Chronic urticaria is 6 weeks or more

Causes
- Common allergens include foods, medications, insects, pollens, and animal dander
- Physical factors, such as cold, pressure, heat, and light, can trigger urticaria
- Another common cause of urticaria in children is infectious illness, especially from viruses

Clinical presentation (Fig. 2)
- Wheals: Pruritic, blanching, erythematous, circumscribed, or (often) coalescent wheals

Differential diagnosis
- Papular urticaria
  - This is a common cause of papular, pruritic skin eruptions
  - Caused primarily by insect bite-induced hypersensitivity
  - Clusters on exposed areas of skin, sparing the genital, perianal, and axillary regions
  - The prevalence of papular urticaria peaks in children from the ages of 2−10 years
- Erythema multiforme
  - Lesions may resemble urticaria and may be triggered by the same etiologic agents such as infections and medications
  - Erythema multiforme is distinguished from urticaria by the targetoid appearance of the lesions
  - Patients who have erythema multiforme are at risk for development of mucosal and systemic involvement
- Urticaria pigmentosa (UP)

Treatment
- Identify the offending agent and avoiding it
- Second-generation antihistamines (loratadine, cetirizine, and fexofenadine) are effective in controlling urticaria
- Use of glucocorticosteroids should be reserved for children not responsive to H_1- and H_2-antihistamines or children afflicted with severe cases that involve significant angioedema
- Another alternative medication for treatment of acute urticaria is leukotriene modifiers, such as montelukast
- If anaphylaxis, such as laryngeal angioedema, respiratory, or gastrointestinal symptoms, a self-injectable epinephrine pen should be provided

Chronic Urticaria

Causes
- Chronic urticaria is defined by urticarial lesions persisting or recurring for more than 6 weeks.
- Physical factors are common triggers for chronic urticaria and can act alone or with urticaria of other causes
- The main types of physical urticaria are dermatographic, cholinergic, cold, pressure, solar, vibratory, and exercise induced

Differential diagnosis
- Urticaria pigmentosa (UP)
  - It is a form of cutaneous mastocytosis, usually benign, and can be associated with systemic mast cell activation
  - Lesions of urticaria pigmentosa are reddish brown macules that wheal like a hive when stroked (positive Darier sign)
- Urticarial vasculitis
  - It is rare in children but typically presents with fever, arthralgia, and painful fixed urticarial and petechial lesions that last longer than 24 h
  - Urticaria vasculitis is differentiated from typical chronic urticaria by the presence of nonpruritic, painful lesions with systemic symptoms

Diagnosis
- Infection may be the cause for the urticaria
- Positive serologic findings for *Chlamydia pneumoniae* and *Helicobacter pylori* can be found for these illnesses even in asymptomatic patients
- Other reported infectious causes are viral infections, urinary tract infections, and parasitic infections
- Autoimmune diseases that have been associated with chronic urticaria are thyroid disease, celiac disease, type 1 diabetes mellitus, inflammatory bowel disease, juvenile idiopathic arthritis, and systemic lupus erythematosus
- The most common specific autoimmune association with chronic urticaria is autoimmune thyroid disease
- If there is evidence of vasculitis, referral for skin biopsy may be indicated

Treatment
- Very similar to acute urticaria
- Specialists may use other therapies for children with chronic urticaria that has been refractory to standard therapies
- Examples of these medications include hydroxychloroquine, sulfasalazine, dapsone, omalizumab, colchicine, mycophenolate mofetil, and cyclosporine
- These medications require close monitoring for adverse effects and should be used only by those specialists experienced in prescribing these immune-modulating medications

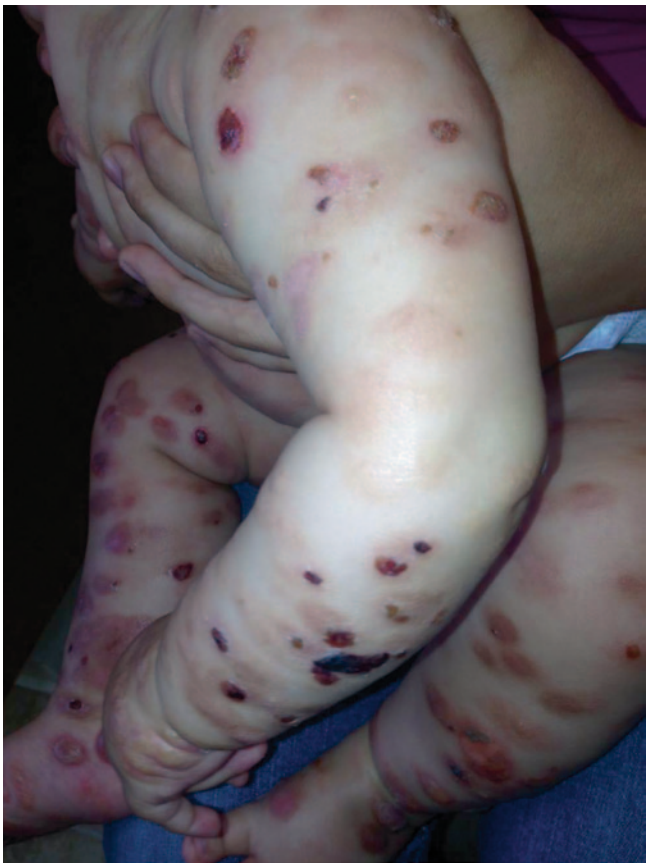


Fig. 3 An 8 months old girl with severe mastocytosis cutaneous type (urticaria pigmentosa) showing pruritic macules, papules, blisters, and crusts all over the body

Mastocytosis

Background
- Mastocytosis is a disorder characterized by mast cell proliferation and accumulation within various organs, most commonly the skin
- Cutaneous mastocytosis
  - Urticaria pigmentosa
- Systemic mastocytosis

Clinical presentation
- Most patients have pruritic cutaneous lesions
- Macules, papules, nodules, plaques, blisters, and bullae (Fig. 3)
- Face tend to be less affected
- Darier sign: Wheal and surrounding erythema develop in a lesion after rubbing it
- Some patients, especially those with extensive cutaneous disease, experience acute systemic symptoms exacerbated by certain activities or ingestion of certain drugs or foods
- Possible systemic symptoms include flushing, headache, dyspnea, wheezing, rhinorrhea, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and syncope
- Anaphylactic reactions to Hymenoptera stings may be the first sign of mastocytosis

Diagnosis
- CBC: in systemic mastocytosis, CBC may reveal anemia, thrombocytopenia, thrombocytosis, leukocytosis, and eosinophilia
- Plasma or urinary histamine level
- Elevated tryptase level

Treatment
- H1 and H2 antihistamines decrease pruritus, flushing, and GI symptoms
- Cromolyn is a mast cell stabilizer that improves diarrhea, flushing, headaches, vomiting, urticaria, abdominal pain, nausea, and itching in some patients
- Epipen for cases of anaphylaxis
- Avoid triggers

Prognosis
- Most patients with urticaria pigmentosa (UP) exhibit onset before age 2 years, which is associated with an excellent prognosis, often with resolution by puberty

- Cutaneous mastocytosis onset after age 10 years portends a poorer prognosis is associated more often with systemic disease, and carries a higher risk of malignant transformation

Hereditary Angioedema (HAE)

Background
- HAE usually present in childhood or adolescence with a mean age at onset between 8 and 12 years
- Type 1 is secondary to insufficient levels of C1 inhibitor
- Type 2 is associated with normal levels but dysfunctional C1 inhibitor
- Type 3 has normal functional levels of C1 inhibitor, this type is nonexistent in children and adolescents

Clinical presentation
- Recurrent, episodic, nonpruritic swelling of skin and mucosal tissues
- Laryngeal edema that may lead to death by asphyxiation
- Severe abdominal attacks manifested by intestinal edema
- The swelling can occur anywhere on the body, including lips, eyelids, hands, feet, and genitals
- The swelling usually develops over the course of 24 h and then resolves spontaneously in the next 24−36 h
- It can be triggered by minor injury, dental work, infection, stress, or menstruation
- The frequency of the swelling is patient specific, occurring as frequently as once per week or as rarely as once per year
- The disease is inherited commonly in an autosomal dominant fashion
- If a diagnosis of HAE is made, testing of first-degree relatives is recommended

Diagnosis
- The abdominal attacks may be mistaken for an acute abdominal condition, such as appendicitis or mechanical obstruction
- The angioedema of HAE occurs without pruritus or urticaria, develops more gradually over several hours, and is poorly responsive to antihistamines, corticosteroids, or epinephrine
- The diagnosis of HAE is made by confirming a deficiency in the C1 inhibitor, either quantitatively or qualitatively

Treatment
- The treatment of HAE begins with immediate management of the patient's airway, if compromised
- Intubation may be necessary for protection of the airway if laryngeal edema is present
- In children with severe or frequent attacks occurring more than once per month, long-term prophylaxis should be considered
  - Human C1 inhibitor, e.g., (Cinryze) can be used as acute treatment, short or long-term prophylaxis
  - Attenuated androgens, such as danazol or oxandrolone, and antifibrinolytics, such as tranexamic acid.

Immunology

Introduction

T lymphocyte

Characteristics
- It plays a central role in cell-mediated immunity
- T cells mature in the Thymus
- T cells distinguished from B lymphocyte and Natural killer cells by presence of a T cell receptors on the cell surface

Types of T lymphocyte
- Helper T cells (CD4+ T cells)
  - Promotes maturation of B lymphocyte and antibody production
  - CD4 regulatory cells prevent overproduction of antibody
  - Class II major histocompatibility complex (MHC) is loaded with extracellular proteins, it is mainly concerned with presentation of extracellular pathogens (e.g., bacteria that might be infecting a wound or the blood)
  - Class II molecules interact exclusively with CD4+ ("helper") T cells
- Cytotoxic cells ($CD8^+$ T)
  - Cytotoxic cells destroy virally infected cells and tumor cells, and are also implicated in transplant rejection
  - These cells are also known as $CD8^+$ T cells since they express the CD8 glycoprotein at their surface
  - These cells recognize their targets by binding to antigen associated with MHC class I molecules, which are present on the surface of all nucleated cells
  - Through IL-10, adenosine and other molecules secreted by regulatory T cells, the $CD8^+$ cells can be inactivated to an anergic state, which prevents autoimmune diseases
- Natural killer
  - *Natural killer T cells* do not require antigen to be presented with HLA antigen. NK cells do not bear CD3, CD4 or CD8
  - Upon activation, NKT cells are able to produce large quantities of interferon-gamma, IL-4, and granulo-

cyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor, as well as multiple other cytokines and chemokines (such as IL-2, Interleukin-13, Interleukin-17, Interleukin-21, and TNF-alpha)
- NKT cells seem to be essential for several aspects of immunity because their dysfunction or deficiency has been shown to lead to the development of autoimmune diseases (such as diabetes or atherosclerosis) and cancers

B Cells

Background
- B cells are surface membrane immunoglobulin-positive. B cells have one of IgG, IgE, or IgM plus IgD on their surface
- B cells are activated by CD4+ T cells

Antibodies (IgA, IgM, IgE, and IgD)
- *IgG*: In its four forms (IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4), provides the majority of antibody-based immunity against invading pathogen. The only antibody capable of crossing the placenta to give passive immunity to the fetus
- *IgM*: Expressed on the surface of B cells (monomer) and in a secreted form (pentamer) with very high avidity. Eliminates pathogens in the early stages of B cell-mediated (humoral) immunity before there is sufficient IgG
- *IgA*: It is the main immunoglobulin in secretions and is usually a dimer with the J chain and secretory component. Found in mucosal areas, such as the gut, respiratory tract, and urogenital tract, and prevents colonization by pathogens. Also found in saliva, tears, and breast milk
- *IgD*: Functions mainly as an antigen receptor on B cells that have not been exposed to antigen. It has been shown to activate basophils and mast cells to produce antimicrobial factors
- *IgE*: Binds to allergens and triggers histamine release from mast cells and basophils, and is involved in allergy. Also protects against parasitic worms

Initial Immunologic Testing of a Child with Recurrent Infections

CBC with manual differential and erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)
- Normal absolute lymphocyte count rules against T-cell defect
- Normal absolute neutrophil count rules against congenital or acquired neutropenia
- Normal platelet count excludes Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome
- Absence of Howell–Jolly bodies rules against asplenia
- Normal ESR makes chronic bacterial and fungal infection is unlikely

Screening test for B-cells defect
- IgA measurement; if abnormal, IgG and IgM measurement
- Isohemagglutinins
- Antibody titers to blood group substances, tetanus, diphtheria, *haemophilus influenza*, and *pneumococcus*

Screening tests for T-cell defects
- Normal absolute lymphocytic count makes T-Cell defect is unlikely
- *Candida albicans* intradermal skin test

Screening tests for phagocytic cell defects
- Absolute neutrophil count
- Respiratory burst assay

Screening test for complement deficiency
- CH50

Primary Defects of Cellular Immunity

DiGeorge Anomaly (CATCH22) (Table 2)

Background
- Microdeletion at 22q11.2
- Dysmorphogenesis of third and fourth pharyngeal pouches
- CATCH 22
  - C: Cardiac (conotruncal: TOF, truncus arteriosus, interrupted aorta)
  - A: Abnormal facies (short filtrum, low set ears, hypertelorism, antimongoloid slant)
  - T: Thymic hypoplasia—(cellular immune deficiency: abnormal number and function of T-cells)
  - C: Cleft palate
  - H: Hypoparathyroidism with hypocalcemia and tetany
  - 22: Chromosomes 22
- Types
  - Partial DiGeorge (most common)
  - Complete DiGeorge (less common) there is an association with CHARGE syndrome

Clinical presentation
- Neonatal hypocalcemic seizure is the most common presentation
- Most infant with abnormal facies and cardiac malformation have normal to near normal immune system
- Recurrent infection

Table 2 Clinical patterns in some of the primary immunodeficiencies

Clinical Features	Diagnosis
0–6 months of age	–
Unusual facial features, hypocalcemia, heart disease (conotruncal)	DiGeorge anomaly
Delayed umbilical cord detachment, leukocytosis, recurrent infection	Leukocyte adhesion defect
Persistent thrush, pneumonia, failure to thrive, diarrhea, small tonsils, not palpable LNs, profound lymphopenia, usually present in first few months of life	Severe combined immunodeficiency
Bloody stools, draining ears, small platelets, atopic eczema	Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome
Recurrent infections, neutropenia, pneumocystis jiroveci pneumonia, verruca vulgaris lesions, lymphoid hyperplasia	X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome
4–9 month old with recurrent mild infections, makes antibodies to diphtheria and tetanus toxoids.	Transient hypogammaglobulinemia of infancy (THI)
6 months to 5 years	–
Boy presents between 6–9 months with severe and recurrent infection, absent antibodies and absent tonsils	X-linked agammaglobulinemia
Severe progressive infectious mononucleosis	X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome
Recurrent staphylococcal abscesses, staphylococcal pneumonia with pneumatocele formation, coarse facial features, pruritic dermatitis	Hyper IgE syndrome
Persistent thrush, nail dystrophy, endocrinopathies	Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis
Short stature, fine hair, severe varicella	Cartilage hair hypoplasia with short-limbed dwarfism
Oculocutaneous albinism, recurrent infection, silvery hair	Chédiak–Higashi syndrome
Boy with liver abscess or abscesses, suppurative lymphadenopathy, antral outlet obstruction, pneumonia, osteomyelitis, nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT) reduced or no color change	Chronic granulomatous disease
Recurrent respiratory, GI, and GU tract infections, many patients are asymptomatic, risk of anaphylaxis with blood products	IgA deficiency
Hib infection after a child has been fully immunized is	IgG subclass deficiencies
Candidiasis with excessive raw egg ingestion, plus alopecia and seborrheic dermatitis	Biotin-dependent carboxylase deficiency
Healthy male until acquires fulminant often fatal infectious mononucleosis or EBV infection (mean age of presentation is < 5 years)	Duncan disease or X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome
Older than 5 and adults	–
Sinopulmonay infections, neurologic deterioration, telangiectasia	Ataxia-telangiectasia
Recurrent neisserial meningitis; CH50 test result is zero	C6, C7, or C8 deficiency
Sinopulmonary infections, splenomegaly, autoimmunity, malabsorption, normal level of B-lymphocyte, lymphoid tissue present such as tonsils	Common variable immunodeficiency

- Severe infection similar to SCID if complete absence of T cells (even B cell is normal but cannot produce specific antibodies due to absent T-cell help)
- GVHD may occur if infant with complete DiGeorge receives non-irradiated blood cells
- Intellectual disability (ID)

Diagnosis
- Hypocalcemia, and low parathyroid hormone
- Low absolute lymphocyte count
- Normal immunoglobulin, but a decrease in IgA and increase in IgE may be present
- *C. albicans* intradermal test; the skin reaction will rule out T-cell defect (the most effective)
- Flow cytometry for T-cell AND Natural killer CD antigens: this test for T-cell function with mitogen stimulation

Treatment
- Thymus transplant
- Major Histocompatibility complex (MHC)-compatible sibling or half matched parental stem cell transplant

Prognosis
- Prognosis of DiGeorge syndrome (DGS) varies widely
- It largely depends on the nature and degree of involvement of different organs
- Many adults live, long productive lives

Chronic Mucocutaneous Candidiasis (CMC)

Background
- The unifying feature of these heterogeneous disorders is impaired cell-mediated immunity against Candida species

Clinical presentation
- Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis
- Persistent thrush
- Nail dystrophy
- Endocrinopathies

Diagnosis
- Scrapings from the infected site are suspended in 10–20% KOH and microscopically examined
- Screening for associated endocrinopathy on yearly basis

Treatment
- Systemic antifungal therapy is the mainstay of CMC therapy

Primary Defects of Antibody Production

Bruton Agammaglobulinemia

Background
- X-linked agammaglobulinemia
- Defect in B lymphocyte development
- Severe hypoglobulinemia
- Almost no circulating B cells

Clinical presentation
- A boy and usually present at 6–9 months old when maternal circulating antibodies disappear
- More than 90% of affected males present with unusually severe or recurrent sinopulmonary infection
- No tonsils or palpable lymph node

Diagnosis
- Serum IgG, IgA, IgM are very low
- Absent circulating B cells by flow cytometry

Treatment
- Monthly IVIG
- Antibiotics as needed if bacterial infection

Common Variable Immunoglobulin Deficiency (CVID)

Background
- Lack of B lymphocytes or plasma cells that are capable of producing antibodies
- Genetics: most cases are sporadic, autosomal dominant, less common autosomal recessive
- It almost seen in the second and third decades and very rare before age of 6 years
- *Key to diagnosis:* Absence of specific antibodies even when total serum IgG is relatively spared, and present lymphoid tissue. (X-linked agammaglobulinemia; absent antibodies, absent tonsils, and occurs after the first 6 months of life)

Clinical presentation
- Recurrent infections—Permanent damage to the bronchi may occur, resulting in bronchiectasis
- As many as 20% of patients with CVID develop autoimmune complications, e.g.,
  - Rheumatoid arthritis
  - Vitiligo
  - Hemolytic anemia
- Thrombocytopenia, neutropenia, and gastrointestinal diseases have been associated with CVID
- Normal to increased size of tonsils
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Alopecia areata
- Alopecia universalis

Risk of malignancy
- Lymphomas of a B-cell phenotype are of particular concern

Diagnosis
- Decreased (not absent) serum IgA and IgG levels
- Occasionally, decreased serum IgM levels in the absence of other known causes of antibody deficiency
- An assessment of functional antibody production in response to natural antigens
- Evaluation of the antibody response after active immunization with polysaccharide or protein antigens (lack of specific antibodies)

Treatment
- Monthly IVIG
- Antibiotics if bacterial infections

Transient Hypogammaglobulinemia of Infancy (THI)

Background
- Prolonged increased in physiologic hypogammaglobulinemia
- Most common age of developing symptoms is 6–12 months
- Usually last for 3–5 years

Clinical presentation
- Frequent and recurrent otitis media, sinusitis, and bronchial infections.
- Life threatening infections are unusual but may occur
- Infections typically diminishes frequently in children > 3 years, even if serum immunoglobulin levels have not yet normalized

- Some cases are associated with atopic diseases e.g., Asthma and allergies
- T cell immunity is intact

Diagnosis
- Antibody titers to protein immunizations (e.g., tetanus toxoid, diphtheria toxoid, polio) are at normal or near normal concentrations
- This distinguishes THI from more serious B- and T-cell immunodeficiency disorders

Treatment
- Supportive
- Antibiotics
- VIG in severe cases

Selective IgA Deficiency (IgAD)

Background
- Isolated or complete absence of secretory IgA
- It is the most common immunodeficiency

Clinical presentation
- Various GI tract infections with viruses and bacteria
- *G lamblia* parasites manifest as chronic diarrhea with or without malabsorption
- Recurrent sinopulmonary infection is the most common illness associated with IgAD

Diagnosis
- Very low or absent IgA
- Low serum IgA levels in children aged 6 months to 4 years should be confirmed to be persistently low at age 4 years before making a lifetime diagnosis of IgAD

Treatment
- Antibiotics
- Patients with known or possible anti-IgA antibodies are still at increased risk of anaphylaxis or severe IgG-mediated reaction

XL-Hyper IgM Syndrome

Background
- X-linked immunodeficiency with hyper-immunoglobulin M
- It is a rare form of primary immunodeficiency disease caused by mutations in the gene that codes for CD40 ligand
- *Key to diagnosis*: Boy, mouth ulcers, verruca vulgaris, and recurrent infections.

Clinical presentation
- Mouth ulcers and rectal ulcers due to severe neutropenia
- Recurrent infections, pneumonia is the most common, occurring in more than 80 % of patients
- Warts
- Molluscum contagiosum
- Chronic diarrhea due to cryptosporidium species (21 %)

Risk of malignancy
- Hepatocellular carcinoma and carcinoid tumor has been reported

Diagnosis
- Neutropenia (63–68 %)
- Normal or elevated serum IgM levels associated with low or absent IgG, IgA, and IgE serum levels

Treatment
- Infectious episodes can be prevented with regular infusion of human immunoglobulin (Ig)
- Antimicrobial therapy should be based on culture and sensitivity results
- Prevention of *Cryptosporidium* infection using boiled or filtered water is recommended
- Patients with neutropenia may benefit from treatment with granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF)
- Bone marrow transplantation (BMT)

X-linked Lymphoproliferative Syndrome (XLP)

Background
- X-linked lymphoproliferative (XLP) syndrome is a rare immunodeficiency disease
- *Key to diagnosis*: healthy male until acquires severe EBV infection

Clinical presentation
- Healthy male until they acquire EBV infection
- The mean age of presentation is < 5 years
- Fulminant, often fatal *infectious mononucleosis* (50 % of cases)
- Most common presentation—severe EBV infection with 80 % mortality, due to extensive liver necrosis
- Lymphomas, predominantly involving B-lineage cells (25 %)
- Acquired hypogammaglobulinemia (25 %)
- 70 % of affected boys die by age 10
- Only two XLP patients are known to have survived beyond 40 years of age

Diagnosis
- Peripheral blood smears will show atypical lymphocytosis

- Chemistry profiles will show transaminitis and other findings of acute hepatitis
- Mutation analysis for the SH2D1A or XIAP gene mutation

Treatment
- Currently, the only cure for X-linked lymphoproliferative disease (XLP) is allogeneic stem cell transplantation

Hyper-IgE Syndrome (HIES)

Background
- It is a primary immunodeficiency disease
- HIES was initially reported to have an autosomal dominant (AD) inheritance pattern
- Autosomal recessive (AR) inheritance and sporadic cases have been reported
- *Key to diagnosis*: Eczema, pneumatoceles, and coarse facial features.

Clinical presentation
- Recurrent skin abscesses
- Recurrent pneumonia with pneumatocele (staphylococcal infections)
- Eczematous dermatitis
- Coarse facial features

Diagnosis
- Elevated serum IgE levels (100 times greater than the normal upper limits)

Treatment
- Prophylactic antimicrobials against *S aureus* and *Candida* species constitute the most important management of HIES
- The first-line anti-staphylococcal antibiotics are dicloxacillin or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
- Fluconazole is the drug of choice against *Candida* species
- Eczematous dermatitis requires rigorous topical therapy with steroids and a moisturizing cream
- *S aureus* infection. Generally, intravenous nafcillin or vancomycin for methicillin-resistant *S aureus* (MRSA) is first-line therapy

Primary Combined Antibody and Cellular Immunodeficiencies

Severe Combined Immunodeficiency Disease (SCID)

Background
- Absence of all immune function and also lack of natural killer (NK) cells and function
- The genetic mutations can be X-linked (most common in the USA), autosomal recessive, or sporadic
- *Keywords:* Boy, failure to thrive, absent tonsils, small lymph node, severe recurrent infection, bone abnormalities, and profound lymphopenia.

Clinical presentation
- Family history of consanguinity
- Sibling death in infancy (e.g., multiple deaths during infancy due to infection or unexplained deaths in male infants) or previous miscarriages in the mother
- Family history of SCID or other primary immunodeficiency
- Most patients present before 3 months of age
- Poor feeding
- Failure to thrive
- Chronic diarrhea
- Previous infections, especially pneumonia
- No tonsils, lymph nodes, or adenoids
- Very small thymus

Diagnosis
- Severe lymphopenia from birth
- Severe decrease or absent immunoglobulins
- No antibody response to vaccination

Treatment
- Stem cell transplant
- Transplant performed before the onset of severe persistent opportunistic infections
- Survival > 95 %

Complications
- Early GVHD from maternal cells crossing the placenta
- Without intervention, SCID usually results in severe infection and death in children by 2 years of age

Wiskott–Aldrich Syndrome

Background
- Genetics: X-linked Recessive (Xp11.22–23)
- Results from mutations in WASP protein (intracellular signaling molecule involved in T cell receptor signaling)
- *Keywords*: Eczema, small platelet, bleeding, and recurrent infections.

Clinical presentation
- Thrombocytopenia (small platelets)
- Prolonged bleeding from circumcision site
- Bloody diarrhea during infancy (usual presenting symptoms)
- Eczema-often seen before 6 months of age

- Recurrent infections (sinopulmonary infection, meningitis with encapsulated bacteria, and sepsis)
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Autoimmune cytopenias
- Vasculitis
- Increased risk of lymphoma associated with EBV infection and increased risk of leukemia
- Death usually by 6–11 years

Diagnosis
- Decreased T cell numbers (CD3+, CD4+, CD8+) and function; low IgM
- Prenatal Dx: Chorionic villus sampling, amniocentesis

Treatment
- Monthly IVIG
- Skin care
- Platelet transfusion
- Splenectomy
- Stem cell or Bone marrow transplants

Cartilage Hair Hypoplasia with Short-Limbed Dwarfism

- Short stature
- Fine hair
- Severe varicella infection

Ataxia-Telangiectasia

Background
- Ataxia-telangiectasia mutated (ATM) at 11q22–23
- Thymic hypoplasia and moderate decrease to T and B-cell mitogens
- Moderate decrease CD3 and CD4 percentage with normal to increased CD8

Clinical presentation
- Ataxia
  - Usually is the presenting symptom
  - Ataxic gait in the second year of life when starting to walk
  - Inability to ambulate independently by 10 years of age
- Telangiectasia (dilated blood vessels)
  - Ocular (3–7 years of age)
  - Cutaneous: on areas of trauma, sun exposure, flexor surfaces, and malar area
- Immune deficiency
  - Humoral and cellular apparent by 3–6 years of age
  - Abnormal number and function of T cells (hypoplastic thymus)
  - Variable immunoglobulin deficiency IgA (50–80 %)
  - Recurrent sinopulmonary infections
- Progressive neurologic disease

Risk of malignancy
- Lymphoreticular malignancy (most common cause of death)
- Adenocarcinoma
- Lymphoma and leukemia

Diagnosis
- Elevated alpha fetoprotein level (AFP)
- Decreased *IgA and IgE*
- Brain imaging cerebral atrophy and ventricular enlargement

Treatment
- IVIG
- Antibiotics
- BMT is not a viable option because of cellular radio sensitivity

Disorders Phagocyte Function

Leukocyte Adhesion Defect

Background
- Very rare autosomal recessive immunodeficiency
- Inability of neutrophils to adhere firmly to surfaces and undergo transepithelial migration
- Keywords: Delayed umbilical cord separation, and leukocytosis

Clinical presentation
- *Delayed umbilical* cord separation > 2 months
- *Persistent leukocytosis* with average WBCs count (45×10^9/L)
- Recurrent bacterial infection specially staphylococcal infections (recurrent skin abscess)
- Absence of pus and neutrophils at wound site
- Recurrent fungal infection
- Poor wound healing
- Skin infection may lead to chronic ulcer

Diagnosis
- Delayed separation of umbilical cord and persistent high white count is highly suggestive
- Flow cytometric measurements of surface glycoprotein (CD11 and CD18) expression on stimulated and unstimulated neutrophils using monoclonal antibodies

Treatment
- Prophylactic TMP/SMX
- BMT
- Gene therapy

Chediak–Higashi Syndrome

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Mutation in 1q2-q44 gene
- Abnormal lysosomal function
- Decreased neutrophil chemotaxis
- Decreased degranulation and bactericidal effect

Clinical presentation
- Partial oculocutaneous albinism
- Photophobia
- Rotary nystagmus
- Progressive peripheral neuropathy (teens)
- Mild bleeding diathesis (impaired platelet aggregation)
- Gingivitis/periodontitis, skin infections, mucous membrane infection, respiratory infections, and enterocolitis
- Gram +/− bacteria and fungi

Risk of Malignancy
- Life threatening lymphoma-like syndrome
- Leukemia and lymphoma
- Lymphohistiocytic infiltration of liver, spleen, and lymph nodes
- Pancytopenia
- Fulminant EBV infections

Diagnosis
- Large cytoplasmic granules (inclusion bodies) in all nucleated blood cells
- Granules are peroxidase positive

Treatment
- BMT +/− high dose ascorbic acid +/− interferon

Myeloperoxidase (MPO) Deficiency

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Decrease production of myeloperoxidase

Clinical presentation
- Usually asymptomatic
- May present with disseminated candidiasis

Treatment
- Treatment of fungal infection if present

Chronic Granulomatous Disease (CGD)

Background
- X-linked recessive
- NADPH oxidase deficiency
- Phagocytic cells are unable to generate hydrogen peroxide or hydroxyl radicals (superoxides)
- PMNs unable to kill ingested organisms
- *Keyword:* Boy with liver abscess

Clinical presentation
- Pyogenic infections of the skin, lungs, bones, liver, and GI tract
- Formation of granulomas and abscesses in the first 2 years of life
- Lymphadenitis, dermatitis, pneumonia, osteomyelitis at multiple sites
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Failure to thrive
- Anemia
- Chronic diarrhea

Diagnosis
- For screening of CGD, the nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT)
  - *Normal:* yellow purple
  - *CGD:* Reduced or no color change
- The most reliable and useful test of this type is a flow cytometric assessment of the respiratory burst using Rhodamine dye

Treatment
- BMT, supportive care, prophylactic TMP/SMX, surgical drainage of abscesses

Disorders of the Complement System

Complement Defect

Background
- Initial defect: associated with autoimmune diseases
- Terminal defect: Increase risk of infection

Clinical presentation
- Genetic deficiency of C1q, C1r/s, C2, C4, and C3 is associated with autoimmune diseases
- Genetic deficiency of C5, C6, C7, C8, C9 increase susceptibility to infections

- C5–C8 defect: susceptible to recurrent neisserial infections

Diagnosis

- Complement (CH_{50}) test: Screen for deficiencies in complement by performing the total serum classic hemolytic complement (CH_{50}) test
- Direct measurement of individual serum complement proteins, such as C3 and C4, can also be performed and is helpful in determining the diagnosis.

Treatment

- In most cases of meningococcal disease, treatment with meningeal doses of a third-generation cephalosporin covers most strains of N meningitidis.

Suggested Readings

1. Scadding G. Optimal management of nasal congestion caused by allergic rhinitis in children. Pediatr Drugs. 2008;10:151–62.
2. Lieberman P, Nicklas RA, Oppenheimer J, et al. The diagnosis and management of anaphylaxis practice parameter: 2010 update. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2010;126:477–80.
3. National Asthma Education and Prevention Program. Expert panel report 3: guidelines for the diagnosis and management of asthma. Full Report 2007. NIH Publication 07-4051. Bethesda: National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; 2007.
4. Shprintzen RJ, Goldberg RB, Lewin ML, Sidoti EJ, Berkman MD, Argamaso RV, et al. A new syndrome involving cleft palate, cardiac anomalies, typical facies, and learning disabilities: velo-cardio-facial syndrome. Cleft Palate J. Jan 1978;15:56–62.
5. [Guideline] Bonilla FA, Bernstein IL, Khan DA, et al. Practice parameter for the diagnosis and management of primary immunodeficiency. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol*. 2005;94:1–63.
6. Tiller TL, Buckley RH. Transient hypogammaglobulinemia of infancy: review of the literature, clinical and immunologic features of 11 new cases, and long-term follow-up. J Pediatr. 1978;92:347–53.
7. Arunachalam M, Sanzo M, Lotti T, Colucci R, Berti S, Moretti S. Common variable immunodeficiency in vitiligo. G Ital Dermatol Venereol. 2010;145:783–8.
8. Munir AK, Björkstén B, Einarsson R, Ekstrand-Tobin A, Möller C, Warner A, Kjellman NI. Allergy. 1995;50:55–64.

Rheumatologic Disorders

Osama Naga

Juvenile Idiopathic Arthritis (JIA)

Background

- It is the juvenile rheumatoid arthritis (JRA). A new nomenclature, JIA, is being increasingly used to provide better definition of subgroups.
- JIA is broadly defined as arthritis of one or more joints occurring for at least *6 weeks* in a child younger than 16 years of age.
- The etiology is not completely understood.
- It is multifactorial, with both genetic and environmental factors playing key roles.
- Commonly occurs in children between the ages of 0 and 17 years in the USA.
- The peak of systemic disease is between 1 and 5 years
- Four to fourteen cases per 100,000 children per year.
- HLA-A2 is associated with early-onset JIA.
- The class-II antigens (HLA-DRB1*08, 11, and 13 and DPB1*02) are associated with oligoarticular JIA.
- HLA-DRB1*08 is also associated with RF-negative poly JIA.
- Diagnosis of systemic JIA involves the exclusion of other conditions, such as infections, malignancy, collagen vascular diseases, and acute rheumatic fever (ARF).

Classification (Table 1)

- Oligoarticular JIA
  - Four joints or fewer
  - Occurs more frequently in girls
  - Peak incidence in children between 2 and 4 years of age
- Polyarticular JIA
  - Greater than 4 joints
  - More frequently in girls
  - The first peak is from 1 to 4 years of age
  - Second peak occurs at 6–12 years of age
- Systemic-onset JIA
  - Spiking fever

Clinical Presentation

- Oligoarticular JIA
  - Four or fewer joints in the first 6 months of disease.
  - Children generally are well appearing.
  - Knee being the most commonly affected joint (89%; Fig. 1).
  - Limping.
  - Joint is usually warm and swollen, which is not very painful or tender.
  - Pain is usually worse in the morning or after prolonged setting (the "gelling phenomenon").
  - Growth disturbance due to inflammatory effect on the growth plate.
  - Rheumatoid factor (RF) is often negative.
  - Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) and C-reactive protein (CRP) are tested to be normal in most of the patient.
  - No systemic symptoms, e.g., fever, rash, or fatigue.
  - 25–30% eventually may develop polyarticular JIA.
- Uveitis
  - Uveitis occur in girls affected with oligoarticular JIA at a young age who have positive antinuclear antibody (ANA) titers.
  - Ophthalmological screening evaluation is imperative in all children with JIA.
  - Screen ANA positive patient with JIA in the first 4 years with slit lamp every 3 months, 4–7 years every 6 months, and greater than 7 years every 12 months.
  - Complications include corneal clouding, cataracts, band keratopathy, synechiae, glaucoma, and visual loss if left untreated.
  - 70% of patient having positive ANA will increase risk of *uveitis*.

O. Naga (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Science Center—Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, 79905, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_11,

Table 1 Difference between oligoarticular JIA and polyarticular JIA

Classification	Oligoarticular JIA	Polyarticular JIA
Joints	Less than or equal to 4 joints affected	Greater than 4 joints affected
Sex	More frequently in girls	More frequently in girls
Peak incidence	2–4 years of age	First peak; 1–4 years of age Second peak; 6–12 years of age
Uveitis	More common	May develop but is rare
RF	Often negative	May be positive
ESR or CRP	ESR, CRP are usually normal	Usually elevated
Systemic disease	Unlikely	Likely, specially RF seropositive

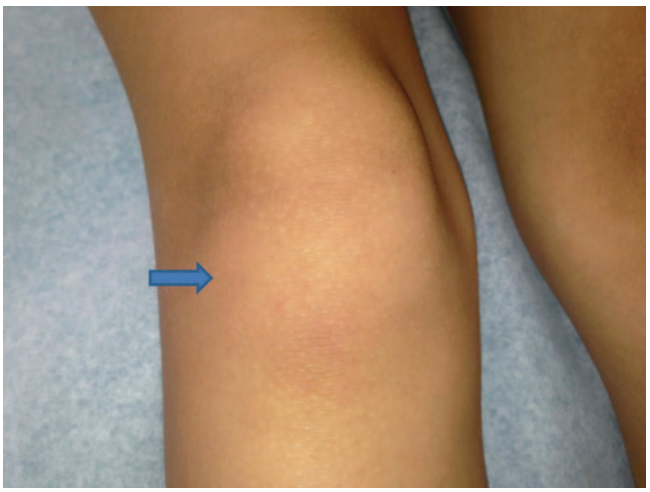


Fig. 1 Nine-year-old female with 3 years history of recurrent arthritis, morning stiffness, presenting with joint pain, swelling, and limping; the figure shows effusion and swelling in the right knee

- Polyarticular JIA
  - *Five or more joints* during the first 6 months of disease are diagnosed as having polyarticular JIA.
  - Morning stiffness.
  - Joint swelling.
  - Limited range of motion of the affected joints.
  - Fatigue.
  - Growth disturbance.
  - Elevated inflammatory markers.
  - Anemia of chronic disease.
  - Iritis may develop, although less frequently than in patients who have oligoarticular disease.
- RF-positive (seropositive)
  - Develop an arthritis similar to adult rheumatoid arthritis.
  - More aggressive disease course.
  - Symmetric, small joint involvement of both the hands and feet.
  - Cervical spine and temporomandibular joints also may be affected.
  - Rheumatoid nodules.
  - Boutonnière and Swan-neck contractures, joint deformity, and severe erosive disease.
- RF-negative (seronegative)
  - Fewer joints are involved and have a better overall functional outcome.
- Fever
  - High-spiking fevers of at least 2 weeks' duration in addition to arthritis.
  - Temperatures greater than 39 °C that occur daily or twice daily.
  - Rapid return of fever to baseline or below baseline (quotidian pattern).
  - The disease affects 10–15 % of children who have JIA, and tends to affect boys and girls equally.
  - Children often appear ill during febrile periods and look well when the fever subsides.
- Rash
  - Salmon-colored macular, evanescent rash.
  - Exacerbate during febrile periods.
  - It is nonpruritic.
  - Occurs most commonly on the trunk and proximal extremities, including the axilla and inguinal areas.
- Systemic features
  - Fatigue
  - Hepatosplenomegaly
  - Lymphadenopathy
  - Pulmonary disease
  - Interstitial fibrosis
  - Serositis
  - Pericarditis
  - Systemic features may precede the onset of arthritis by weeks to months

Complications of JIA

- Osteopenia
- Osteoporosis
- Permanent joint damage
- Persistent arthritis leading to significant disability
- Psychosocial factors, such as anxiety and school absenteeism

Laboratory abnormalities
- Anemia
- Leukocytosis (leukemoid reaction > 40,000)
- Thrombocytosis > 1 million
- Elevated liver enzymes
- Acute-phase reactants
  - Elevated ESR
  - Elevated CRP, and ferritin
- ANA titer is usually negative and is not helpful in making the diagnosis

Treatment
- *Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs* (NSAIDs) are the first line of treatment for patients who have JIA.
  - The most commonly used NSAIDs in children include ibuprofen, naproxen, and indomethacin.
  - NSAIDs may be sufficient to control cases of mild arthritis.
  - *Adverse effects*:
    - Abdominal pain.
    - Hematologic, renal, hepatic, and neurologic adverse effects may occur.
    - Naproxen can cause pseudoporphyria cutanea tarda, a rash manifested by small blisters in fair skinned children occurring after sun exposure.
- Intra-articular corticosteroid injections
  - May be very effective in limited cases of persistent oligoarthritis.
- Triamcinolone hexacetonide
- *Oral or intravenous (IV) corticosteroids indications*:
  - Systemic manifestations of JIA.
  - Severe polyarthritis.
  - High-dose Methylprednisolone or a "pulse" (30 mg/kg with a maximum of 1 g) may be given in systemic onset JIA that is refractory to oral corticosteroids or to gain control over the disease rapidly with fewer adverse effects than high-dose oral corticosteroids.
  - *Adverse effects*:
  - It is seen most commonly at higher dosages (e.g., greater than 20 mg/day):
  - Immunosuppression
  - Adrenal suppression
  - Increased appetite
  - Weight gain
  - Acne
  - Mood changes
  - Osteoporosis
  - Avascular necrosis
  - Cataract
  - Increased intraocular pressures
  - Cushingoid features
  - Diabetes

Methotrexate
- Disease-modifying antirheumatic agent.
- The effects of this medication generally are seen within 6–12 weeks.
- Folic acid can be administered to decrease these gastrointestinal (GI) side effects.
- Blood counts and liver enzymes are monitored every 4–8 weeks while a child is taking methotrexate.
- The treatment period is not defined clearly, but generally, a child is treated with methotrexate for at least 1 year after achieving disease remission.
- Methotrexate is a very safe and effective drug and is now considered a "gold-standard" therapy for children who have JIA.
- *Side effects*: nausea, vomiting, oral ulceration, hepatitis, blood count dyscrasias, immunosuppression, and teratogenicity.

Uveitis
- Treatment of uveitis depends largely on the ophthalmologist's recommendations.
- Dilating agents and topical corticosteroids are used first.
- If inflammation persists or the patient is unable to taper-off corticosteroid ophthalmic drops, often methotrexate is started.
- Infliximab and adalimumab also have been found to be quite beneficial in the treatment of uveitis.
- Autologous stem cell transplantation
- Physical therapy and occupational therapy
  - Improve mobility of affected joints
  - Maintain muscle strength
- Leg-length discrepancies may require treatment if they become significant and orthopedic referrals should be made when appropriate.
- Psychotherapy offered when needed

Prognosis
- Approximately 50% of children who have JIA continue to have active disease into adulthood.

Macrophage-Activation Syndrome (MAS)

Background
- Severely affected children with JIA may develop MAS.
- MAS can be triggered by viral infection, e.g., Parvovirus 19 and *Varicella*.
- MAS can be triggered by drugs, e.g., sulfa drugs and NSAIDs.

Clinical presentation
- Fever
- Hepatosplenomegaly

Table 2 Diagnostic criteria

Diagnostic criteria	Description
Malar rash	Fixed erythema, flat or raised, over the major eminences, tending to spare the nasolabial fold
Discoid rash	Erythematous raised patches with adherent keratotic scaling and follicular plugging; atrophic scarring may occur in older children
Photosensitivity	Skin rash as a result of unusual reaction to sunlight by history or physical observation
Oral ulcers	Oral or nasopharyngeal ulceration, usually painless and observed by physician
Arthritis	Nonerosive arthritis involving one or two peripheral joints, characterized by tenderness, swelling and effusion
Serositis	Pleuritis: convincing history of pleuritic pain or rub heard by physician or evidence of pleural effusion, *or* Pericarditis: documented by EKG, rub or evidence of pericardial effusion
Renal disorders	Persistent proteinuria > 0.5 g/dL or > 3+ if quantification not performed *or* cellular cast: may be red cells, hemoglobin, granular, tubular, or mixed
Neurological disorder	Seizures: in the absence of offending drugs, or known metabolic derangement; e.g., uremia, ketoacidosis, or electrolyte imbalance, *or* Psychosis: in the absence of offending drugs, or known metabolic derangements, e.g., uremia, ketoacidosis, or electrolyte imbalance
Hematological disorder	Hemolytic anemia with reticulocytosis *or* leukopenia: < 4000/mm^3 total on two or more occasions *or* lymphopenia: < 1500/mm^3 on two or more occasions *or* thrombocytopenia: < 100,000/mm^3 in absence of offending drugs
Antinuclear antibodies	An abnormal titer of ANA by immunofluorescence or an equivalent assay at any point in the absence of the drugs known to be associated with "drug-induced lupus" syndrome

- Rash
- Neurologic symptoms

Laboratory
- Pancytopenia
- Prolongation of the prothrombin time, and partial thromboplastin time
- Elevated transaminases early in MAS as high as 1000s
- Platelet and ESR may drop precipitously
- Elevated levels of D-dimer
- Elevated triglycerides
- Elevated serum ferritin
- Bone marrow may reveal hemophagocytosis

Treatment
- Prompt treatment is critical
- Corticosteroids and cyclosporine can prevent life threatening complications
- Methotrexate and sulfasalazine are contraindicated in MAS

Systemic Lupus Erythematosus (SLE)

Background
- SLE is a chronic, multisystem, autoimmune disease characterized by periods of increased disease activity caused by inflammation of blood vessels and connective tissue.
- Age of onset is ~ 12 years.
- Before puberty, the male:female ratio is 1:3, but after puberty it increases to 1:9.
- Higher in African American (20–30/100,000) and Puerto Rican girls (16.0–36.7/100,000).
- Incidence of SLE is higher in Hispanic, Native American, Pacific Islander, and Asian individuals than in white individuals.

Clinical presentation (Table 2)
- General Manifestations
  - Fatigue
  - Fever
  - Weight loss
  - Lymphadenopathy
  - Hepatosplenomegaly
- Malar or "butterfly" rash
  - It *is* the most common cutaneous manifestation and is the hallmark of the disease.
  - It develops on the malar eminences and crosses the nasal bridge while sparing the nasolabial folds.
  - The forehead and chin also may be affected.
  - The rash can appear as a blush or a maculopapular eruption with an associated scale and usually is not pruritic.
- Discoid lupus
  - It is a coin shape erythematous rash.
  - May affect the face, ears, and scalp, although the upper extremities and upper chest and back.
  - The central area may be hypopigmented.
  - Active border may appear hyperpigmented.
  - The lesions may heal with a scar or atrophy.
  - Discoid patches on the scalp may result in a scarring alopecia if the hair follicle is damaged.
- Arthralgia and nonerosive arthritis
  - Very common in SLE.
  - Symmetric involvement of both the large and small joints.
  - Primarily the knees, wrists, ankles, and fingers.
  - Jaccoud arthropathy (ulnar deviation of the second to fifth fingers and subluxation of the metacarpophalangeal joints).
- Myalgia and myositis
  - Less common

- Renal involvement
  - Renal disease is the greatest contributor to morbidity and mortality in the SLE population.
  - Renal disease may manifest as proteinuria, microscopic hematuria, hypertension, or elevated blood urea nitrogen and creatinine levels.
  - Eighteen percent of patients may develop nephrotic syndrome.
  - A renal biopsy with histologic, immunofluorescent, and electron micrographic analysis is necessary to classify the histologic type of renal disease.
  - Diffuse lupus nephritis (class IV) is the most common and most severe type of lupus nephritis, affecting ~65% of patients.
  - Most pediatric rheumatologists probably would start induction therapy with 3–6 months of cyclophosphamide and, if the patient has a good response, transition to mycophenolate mofetil (MMF).
- Neuropsychiatric involvement
  - Decreased concentration
  - Cognitive dysfunction
  - Psychosis
  - Seizures
  - Transverse myelitis
  - Central nervous system vasculitis
  - Stroke
- Hematologic involvement
  - Leukopenia, usually secondary to lymphopenia, is found in two-thirds of patients and may provide a clue to the diagnosis
  - Anemia
  - Coombs-positive hemolytic anemia
  - Normocytic normochromic anemia of chronic disease
  - Thrombocytopenia may be found in up to 30% of patients
- Antiphospholipid antibody syndrome (APLS)
  - Thrombocytopenia, arterial or venous thrombosis
  - Stroke
  - Transient ischemic attack
  - Chorea
  - Recurrent fetal loss
  - Avascular necrosis
  - Elevated anticardiolipin
  - Antiphospholipid antibodies
  - Prolonged partial thromboplastin time
  - Antithrombin III deficiency or protein S or C deficiency
- Pulmonary involvement
  - Pleuritis
  - Pleural effusion
  - Pneumonitis
  - Pulmonary hypertension
  - Pulmonary hemorrhage
  - Present with shortness of breath and a sudden drop in hemoglobin concentration
  - Pulse methylprednisolone in combination with cyclophosphamide therapy usually is required to treat pulmonary hemorrhage
- Cardiac involvement
  - Pericarditis
  - Pericardial effusion
  - Myocarditis
  - Bacterial endocarditis
  - Lupus valvulitis (Libman-Sacks endocarditis) may predispose patients undergoing dental procedures to bacterial endocarditis
  - Premature atherosclerosis
- GI involvement
  - Abdominal pain is a primary complaint
  - Serositis
  - Vasculitis; vasculitis puts patients at risk for bowel perforation
  - Pancreatitis may be caused by several factors, including active SLE, infection, or corticosteroid use
  - Enteritis
  - Most patients have functional asplenia and are at risk for sepsis from *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and other encapsulated bacteria
  - These patients should be immunized against pneumococcus, meningococcus, and *Haemophilus influenzae* type B.
- Endocrine involvement
  - Hypothyroidism is very common in SLE.
  - Hyperthyroidism, on the other hand, has been described rarely.
  - Diabetes mellitus may develop as a result of corticosteroid use and obesity.
  - Delayed puberty is common.
  - Irregular menses are common during periods of active disease.
- Laboratory evaluation
  - Complete blood count is needed to evaluate potential cytopenias.
  - A comprehensive metabolic panel may reveal transaminitis, hypoalbuminemia, or an elevated creatinine level.
  - Elevated ESR is very common.
  - CRP levels can remain normal.
  - A urinalysis for proteinuria, hematuria, and other components of active urinary sediment.
  - The ANA is found in 99% of patients with SLE, but also may be positive in other rheumatic diseases, such as mixed connective tissue disease and dermatomyositis.
  - The ANA also may be positive in up to one-third of the healthy population and in family members of patients with SLE.

- It is helpful that a negative ANA makes the diagnosis of SLE extremely unlikely.
- ANA is not useful to monitor disease activity.
- ANA titer of 1:1280 would be suspicious for SLE.
- The anti-dsDNA is very specific for SLE and may be found in > 75 % of patients
- The anti-dsDNA level usually is checked at the time of diagnosis and throughout the disease course to monitor disease activity, and to guide medication dosing.
- The anti-Smith antibody is highly specific for SLE and may be found in up to 50 % of patients.
- The anti-RNP antibody may be found in patients who have classic SLE, but often indicates the patient's diagnosis is a mixed connective tissue disease (SLE with features of systemic sclerosis or dermatomyositis).
- SS-A (anti-Ro) and SS-B (anti-La).
- Complement levels, specifically C3 and C4, are monitored in SLE, and low or undetectable levels are expected in SLE during periods of active disease.

Neonatal Lupus Erythematosus (NLE)

Background

- NLE occurs in 1 % of infants who experience transplacental passage of maternal SSA or SSB antibodies.

Clinical presentation

- Congenital heart block from antibody-mediated damage to the conducting system is the most feared complication, and may be seen in up to 30 % of infants born with NLE.
- Fetal bradycardia is the first sign of NLE and must be evaluated at 16 weeks' gestation and at continuing intervals throughout pregnancy.
- Rash; the rash of NLE is erythematous with a raised border, particularly prominent on sun-exposed areas and around the eyes, the skin may have a fine scale.
- Ultraviolet (UV) light will worsen the rash and should be avoided as much as possible.
- Cytopenias.
- Hepatitis with hepatomegaly.

Treatment

- Mothers are started on dexamethasone as soon as a fetus is identified as having heart block to decrease maternal antibodies and inflammation of the conducting system and to delay the onset of fibrosis.

Prognosis

- Except for the heart block, all other manifestations will resolve without intervention, usually within 6 months.
- Approximately 30–50 % of infants who develop congenital heart block will require pacemaker implantation, usually within the first 24 months.
- Close follow-up.

Drug-Induced Lupus (DIL)

Background

- The prevalence of DIL is equal in males and females, although minocycline-induced lupus is usually seen in adolescent girls using the medication for treatment of acne. Chronic use of the medication is required to develop DIL.
- Medications that induce DIL include:
  - Minocycline, procainamide, hydralazine, penicillamine, isoniazid
  - Quinidine
  - Phenytoin, carbamazepine
  - Infliximab, adalimumab, and etanercept

Clinical presentation

- Patients often present with constitutional symptoms, photosensitive rash, arthralgia, myalgia, and serositis.
- Subacute cutaneous lupus also may be present.

Diagnosis

- Positive antihistone antibodies are present in 95 % of patients with DIL
- Classic SLE also may test positive for anti-histone antibodies.
- Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies may be positive.

Treatment of DIL

- Discontinue the offending agent.
- A trial of NSAIDs, hydroxychloroquine, and possibly corticosteroids may be needed.
- Symptoms usually abate within weeks to months of stopping the medication; however, in some patients DIL will evolve into true SLE.

Management of SLE

Hydroxychloroquine

- It is one of the mainstays of treatment for any patient with SLE
- Controls the rash
- Prevents disease flares
- Well tolerated
- Some patients may suffer abdominal discomfort
- Adverse effect
  - Retinal toxicity; therefore, patients need to be screened by an ophthalmologist at baseline and then every 6–12 months

- NSAIDs are the usual first-line medications, along with hydroxychloroquine
- Methotrexate
- Cyclophosphamide
- MMF

Mixed Connective Tissue Disease (MCTD)

Background
- It is a combination of SLE, scleroderma, and dermatomyositis
- More common in girls 80%

Clinical presentation
- Raynaud's phenomenon
- Arthritis and joint abnormalities in 80% of cases
- Fever
- Dorsal hand edema
- Rash
- Myositis
- Acute pericarditis
- Pericardial effusion
- Mitral valve prolapse
- Dysphagia
- Restrictive lung disease
- Renal disease

Diagnosis
- Positive anti-RNP antibodies, ANA, RF, and hypergammaglobulinemia

Treatment
- Similar to SLE

Sjögren Syndrome

Background
- Sjögren syndrome, which is rare in pediatric patients, is a slowly progressive inflammatory disorder that involves the exocrine glands.

Clinical presentation
- Recurrent parotitis (more common in pediatrics)
- Keratoconjunctivitis sicca (more common in adults)

Diagnosis
- Serology: anti-Ro (SS-A) or anti-La (SS-B)

Associated diseases
- SLE
- Rheumatoid arthritis
- Scleroderma
- Biliary cirrhosis

Management
- Artificial tears
- Pilocarpine tablets
- Antimalarial for skin rash and arthritis

Prognosis
- These children do very well, but at risk for developing lymphomas, e.g., mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT), or non-Hodgkin B-cell lymphoma

Ankylosing Spondylitis (AS) and Spondyloarthropathy

Background
- AS, is a chronic, multisystem inflammatory disorder involving primarily the sacroiliac (SI) joints and the axial skeleton.

Clinical presentation
- Low back pain (insidious onset) is the most common symptom
  - Worse in the morning or with inactivity
  - Improvement with exercise
- Presence of symptoms for more than 3 months
- Stiffness of the spine and kyphosis resulting in a stooped posture are characteristic of advanced-stage AS
- Peripheral enthesitis
- Arthritis
- Fatigue is another common complaint

Extra-articular manifestations of AS can include the following
- Uveitis
- Cardiovascular disease
- Pulmonary disease
- Renal disease
- Neurologic disease
- GI disease
- Metabolic bone disease

Laboratory
- Normochromic normocytic anemia of chronic disease
- Elevated ESR or CRP (75%)
- Elevated alkaline phosphatase (ALP)
- Creatine kinase (CK) is occasionally elevated
- *Human leukocyte antigen-B27* (HLA-B27)-positive
  - Determining *HLA-B27* status is not a necessary part of the clinical evaluation and is not required to establish the diagnosis

Radiography
- Sacroiliitis is a bilateral inflammatory condition leading to bony erosions and sclerosis of the joints.
- Lumbar spine of a patient with end-stage AS shows bridging syndesmophytes, resulting in bamboo spine.

Treatment
- No definite disease-modifying treatment exists for individuals with AS
- NSAID
- Surgery in advanced cases

Prognosis
- The outcome in patients with a spondyloarthropathy, including AS, is generally good compared with that in patients with a disease such as rheumatoid arthritis.

Enthesitis Arthropathy

- Arthritis
- Enthesitis
- Sacroiliac joint tenderness
- Inflammatory spinal pain
- HLA-B27
- Positive family history
- Anterior uv**eitis**

Arthritis with Inflammatory Bowel Disease (IBD)

- Incidence is equal in boys and girls, not associated with HLA-B27.
- Arthritis flares with gut flares, peripheral joints are commonly affected.
- If associated with HLA-B27, will be not dependent on gut flares**.**

Reactive Arthritis

Backgrounds
- Reactive arthritis is a type of arthritis associated with an infection at a distant site, distinct from that of the affected joints.
- Previously known as Reiter's syndrome.
- 3:1 male predominance.
- Male patients and those who are HLA-B27 positive tend to have more severe disease.

Associated pathogens
- *Chlamydia trachomatis*.
- GI infections caused by *Shigella* spp., *Salmonella* spp., *Yersinia* spp., or *Campylobacter* spp. potentially can lead to reactive arthritis.
- *Streptococcus pyogenes* has been known to cause reactive arthritis.
- *Neisseria meningitidis* can be associated with reactive arthritis as well.

Clinical presentation
- Arthritis (Monoarthritis or oligoarthritis)
- Urethritis (Urethritis occurs even with GI infection)
- Cervicitis
- Bilateral mucopurulent conjunctivitis
- Uveitis
- Photophobia
- Calcaneal and plantar pain and tenderness
- Arthralgia
- Fever
- Weight loss
- Malaise
- Symptoms start from a few days to 6 weeks after infection
- Symptoms of reactive arthritis may last weeks to months.

Diagnosis
- Elevated ESR and CRP concentration or positive urine, cervical, or urethral culture for *C. trachomatis*.
- Synovial fluid tests can be helpful in excluding other disease processes.
- HLA-B27 positivity is supportive of the diagnosis.
- ANA and RF with suspected autoimmune process.
- Imaging studies often are normal, but should be obtained particularly if other disorders such as pyogenic arthritis or osteomyelitis are considered.

Treatment
- It is primarily supportive and involves giving NSAIDs.
- Local cold treatment, and avoidance of overuse of the affected joints.
- A positive genitourinary culture requires treatment of the patient and sexual partners with appropriate antibiotics.
- Local corticosteroid injections in certain cases.
- Antibiotic in severe cases as doxycycline.
- Resistant cases: methotrexate, or anti-tumor necrosis factor (TNF).

Juvenile Psoriatic Arthritis

Background
- Psoriatic arthritis is most commonly a seronegative oligoarthritis found in patients with psoriasis.

Clinical presentation
- Arthritis
  - Distal interphalangeal joints (DIP) are commonly affected
  - Arthritis may precede the psoriasis by many years
- Psoriasis
- Dactylitis

- Nail findings
  - Pitting
  - Oil spot
  - Onycholysis
- Family history in at least one first degree

Laboratory
- No specific lab
- Imaging studies can distinguish psoriatic arthritis from other causes
- Early bony erosions occur at the cartilaginous edge, and initially, cartilage is preserved, with maintenance of a normal joint space

Treatment
- NSAIDs
- Methotrexate
- Anti-TNF-alpha medications

Juvenile Dermatomyositis (JDM)

Background
- JDM is a systemic, autoimmune inflammatory muscle disorder and vasculopathy that affects children younger than 18 years.
- JDM primarily affects the skin and the skeletal muscles.
- Gottron papules, a heliotrope rash, calcinosis cutis, and symmetrical, proximal muscle weakness.

Clinical presentation
- Constitutional
  - Respiratory, and GI symptoms may occur within 3 months of onset of JDM.
  - Eruption of skin lesions, pruritus may be present in 38 % of children.
  - Photosensitive rashes may occur.
  - Muscle involvement can be insidious, with development of functional limitations such as difficulty getting out of bed or tiring easily from sporting events.
  - Other common symptoms include fever, dysphagia, dysphonia or hoarseness, myalgias, arthralgias, abdominal pain, and melena from GI involvement as a consequence of vasculopathy.
- Gottron papules
  - Shiny, elevated, violaceous papules, and plaques present over the bony prominences.
  - Example, metacarpophalangeal joints, the proximal interphalangeal joints, the distal interphalangeal joints, the elbows, the knees, and the ankles.
  - Sparing of the interphalangeal spaces is observed.
- Heliotrope
  - Rash; a purple or dusky mauve color in the periorbital region, and an overlying scale.
- Calcinosis cutis
  - The deposits are firm, white or flesh-colored nodules over bony prominences.
  - High-mineral content of calcium hydroxyapatite, as well as osteopontin, osteonectin, and bone sialoprotein.
- Symmetrical, proximal muscle weakness
- Periungual (nail) changes
- Cuticular thickening
- Dilated tortuous capillaries

Diagnosis
- Elevated creatine phosphokinase (CPK), aldolase, lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), or transaminases
- Positive EMG
- Positive muscle biopsy for (degeneration, phagocytosis, necrosis)

Treatment
- Prednisone 2–3 mg/kg/day, sun screen, sun avoidance, and hydroxychloroquine for skin protection

Systemic Scleroderma

Background
- Scleroderma is characterized by skin induration and thickening accompanied by various degrees of tissue fibrosis and chronic inflammatory infiltration in numerous visceral organs, prominent fibroproliferative vasculopathy, and humoral and cellular immune alterations.

Clinical presentation
- The CREST calcinosis, Raynaud's phenomenon, esophageal dysmotility, sclerodactyly, telangiectasia, and positive centromere antibodies.
- Diffuse systemic is more frequent with lung, and renal involvement, positive SCL 70 (topoisomerase).

Management
- Lung scan with resolution
- Angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor
- Calcium (Ca) channel blocker, *e.g.*, nifedipine
- Alpha blocker, e.g., doxazosin
- Dipyridamole (Persantine)
- Corticosteroid can exacerbate renal crisis!

Localized Scleroderma

Background
- It is the most common form in children, is also called linear scleroderma, morphea, deep morphea, generalized morphea.

Clinical presentation
- Streak involve the face En Coup de Sabre, (dueling stroke from a sword) streak can become more indurated, extend deeper, into muscle and bone (melorheostosis) can be associated with seizure, uveitis, dental defects, and facial abnormalities.

Diagnosis
- All lab tests are usually normal including: SCL 70, centromere antibodies, RNP, smith, SSA.
- Anti-single strand DNA antibodies may be found positive.

Treatment
- Mainly supportive, e.g., seizure or uveitis.
- Physical therapy if joints are involved.

Prognosis
- Resolve spontaneously within 3–4 years.

Behcet's disease

Background
- Behcet disease affects any size of blood vessels.
- Painful recurrent orogenital ulcers, inflammatory eye disease, joints, and GI can be involved.

Clinical presentation
- Recurrent oral ulcers three times over 1 year, plus at least two of the following:
  - Recurrent genital ulceration
  - Eye lesion
  - Positive pathergy test
- *Pathergy test*: prick the skin with needle, after 48 h check the skin. Papule or pustule surrounded by redness is considered positive.

Treatment
- Azathioprine or infliximab can be used.

Vasculitic Disorders

Henoch-Schönlein Purpura (HSP)

Background
- HSP is the most common systemic vasculitis of childhood.
- Incidence of approximately 10 per 100,000 children per year.
- The average age of occurrence is 6 years.
- Most patients being younger than 10 years of age.
- HSP is a form of leukocytoclastic vasculitis.

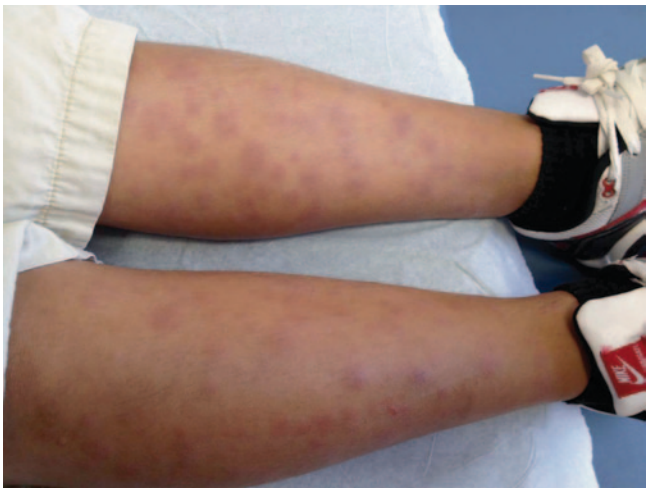


Fig. 2 Fifteen-year-old boy with HSP, the lower extremities showing deep red dusky macules with varying diameters

- Group A beta-hemolytic *Streptococcus* has been studied the most extensively, although a direct link is controversial.

Clinical presentation
- Purpura (Fig. 2)
  - Nonthrombocytopenic purpura is the first and most common presentation.
  - Palpable purpuric lesions are observed in 100% of cases.
  - Typically on pressure-bearing areas.
  - The lesions may appear initially as deep red macules and progress to palpable purpura or hemorrhagic bullae.
  - First most common petechiae can be anywhere; specially buttocks and pressure dependent areas, which lasts from 4 days to 4 weeks.
- Arthritis
  - It is the second most common presentation.
  - Joint involvement is seen in 50–80% of patients.
  - Knees and ankles most affected.
- Subcutaneous edema
  - Edema may involve the scalp, periorbital area, dorsum of the hands and feet, and genitalia may occur.
- Abdominal pain, and GI bleeding
  - GI disease is noted in 67% of affected children.
  - Due to submucosal and subserosal hemorrhage and edema.
  - Intussusception develops in 4–5% of patients.
  - Intussusception is usually ileoileal.
  - Bowel ischemia, infarction, and fistula formation.
  - Intestinal perforation have been reported.
- Nephritis
  - Hematuria
  - Proteinuria

  - Hypertension
  - Renal failure may occur
  - Chronic renal disease may occur in up to 50% of patients who have combined nephritic and nephrotic presentations
- Other, less common features:
  - Orchitis
  - Seizures and coma
  - Guillain-Barré syndrome
  - Parotitis
  - Carditis and pulmonary hemorrhage

Treatment
- Treatment of HSP generally is supportive.
- Emphasizing maintenance of hydration.
- Nutrition, and electrolyte balance.
- Pain medications for abdominal and joint discomfort.
- Antihypertensive therapy for persistent hypertension may be indicated.
- The role of glucocorticoid treatment is controversial.
- Corticosteroids, when started early, increase the odds of the abdominal pain resolving within 24 h, may decrease the chance of persistent renal disease, and may reduce the risk of intussusception.

Prognosis
- Follow-up with frequent urinalysis and blood pressure evaluations is recommended for 4 months.
- The overall prognosis is good: 67% of children who have HSP run the course of the disease within 4 weeks of onset.
- Recurrence affects about 25% of patients.
- If there are no initial abnormalities in the urine and the urine remains normal at 4 months, patients should return to routine care.
- Studies confirm that chronic renal insufficiency and hypertension may develop up to 10 years after the initial onset of symptoms.
- Typically, renal failure occurs in patients who present with acute glomerulonephritis and have persistent nephrotic syndrome.
- Serum creatinine concentrations, urinalysis, and blood pressure measurements should continue to be followed closely in this subset of children.
- Overall, progression to end-stage renal failure is seen in a very small number of children (1–5%) who have HSP.

Kawasaki Disease (KD)

Background
- KD is an acute febrile vasculitic syndrome of early childhood that, although it has a good prognosis with treatment, can lead to death from coronary artery aneurysm (CAA) in a very small percentage of patients.
- Superantigen of strep or staph stimulating the immune system has been suggested.

Remember the criteria
- FEBRILE: *F*ever, *E*nanthem, *B*ulbar conjunctivitis, *R*ash, *I*nternal organ involvement (not included in the criteria), *L*ymphadenopathy, *E*xtremity changes.
- *Diagnostic criteria* established by the American Heart Association (AHA) are fever lasting longer than 5 days and four of the five following main clinical features:
  - Changes in the peripheral extremities: Initial reddening or edema of the palms and soles, followed by membranous desquamation of the finger and toe tips or transverse grooves across the fingernails and toenails (Beau lines).
  - Polymorphous rash (not vesicular): Usually generalized but may be limited to the groin or lower extremities.
  - Oropharyngeal changes: Erythema, fissuring, and crusting of the lips; strawberry tongue; diffuse mucosal injection of the oropharynx.
  - Bilateral, nonexudative, painless bulbar conjunctival injection.
  - Acute nonpurulent cervical lymphadenopathy with lymph node diameter greater than 1.5 cm, usually unilateral.

Associated symptoms
- Hydrops of gallbladder
- Diarrhea, vomiting, or abdominal pain—61%
- Irritability—50%
- Vomiting alone—44%
- Cough or rhinorrhea—35%
- Decreased intake—37%
- Weakness—19%
- Joint pain—15%

Lab suggesting Kawasaki
- Elevated acute phase reactants (CRP≥3.0 mg/dL or ESR≥40 mm/h).
- White cell count ≥15,000/μL.
- Normocytic, normochromic anemia for age.
- Pyuria: ≥10 white blood cells/high-power field, *do not cath for UA if suspect Kawasaki (it is a mucositis of urethra, do not miss it with a cath)*.
- Serum alanine aminotransferase level >50 U/L.
- Serum albumin ≤3.0 g/dL.
- After 7 days of illness, platelet cell count ≥450,000/μL.

Factor increase the risk of coronary aneurysm
- Age younger than 1 year or older than 6 years
- Male sex
- Fever ≥14 days

- Serum sodium concentration < 135 mEq/L
- Hematocrit < 35 %
- White cell count > 12,000/mm^3

Classic treatment
- Aspirin 80–100 mg/kg/day until fever resolve.
- Decrease aspirin to 3–5 mg/kg/day if fever resolved and stop if no cardiac involvement, most common cause of death is myocardial infarction.
- Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) at a dose 2 g/kg as single infusion over 12–14 h, watch for anaphylaxis or aseptic meningitis.

Other medications include the following
- Corticosteroids: typically in patients unresponsive to standard therapies
- Methotrexate or cyclophosphamide: in IVIG-resistant cases
- Infliximab: in refractory cases with coronary aneurysms
- Antiplatelet medications (e.g., clopidogrel, dipyridamole): in patients at increased risk for thrombus with significant coronary involvement
- Anticoagulants (e.g., warfarin, low-molecular-weight heparin): in patients with large aneurysms in whom the risk of thrombosis is high

Complications
- CAA
- Most common cause of death is myocardial infarction

Polyarteritis Nodosa (PAN)

Background
- Systemic PAN is characterized by necrotizing inflammatory lesions that affect medium and small muscular arteries.
- Mostly at vessel bifurcations, resulting in microaneurysm formation, aneurysmal rupture with hemorrhage, and thrombosis, which lead to organ ischemia or infarction.
- PAN is rare in childhood, and most cases of PAN are idiopathic.
- Some infections with organisms such as streptococci, staphylococci, hepatitis B, and cytomegalovirus are known to be associated with PAN.

Clinical manifestations
- Fever, malaise, fatigue, myalgia, arthralgia in large joints, tender subcutaneous nodules, abdominal pain, flank pain, and hypertension.
- Aneurysms are found most commonly in the kidney, liver, and mesenteric arteries, and their presence is associated with more severe and extensive disease.

Diagnosis
- Criteria for the diagnosis of childhood PAN:
  - Evidence of necrotizing vasculitis or angiographic abnormalities of medium-sized or small-sized arteries
  - Skin involvement, such as skin nodules, ulcers, or superficial or deep infarctions
  - Myalgia/muscle tenderness
  - Hypertension
  - Peripheral neuropathy
  - Proteinuria
  - Hematuria
  - Red blood cell casts
  - Definitive diagnosis by angiography or biopsy
  - Conventional angiography is the preferred imaging technique for diagnosing PAN

Management
- Corticosteroids, cyclophosphamide, mycophenolate, IVIG, and azathioprine are treatment options.
- Antiplatelet agents can be used as a prophylaxis to prevent thrombosis.

Prognosis
- Renal involvement has the greatest adverse effect on outcome.
- Death associated with PAN occurs as a result of uncontrolled vasculitis, infectious complications related to treatment-induced immunosuppression, and vascular complications of the disease.

Takayasu Arteritis

Background
- Takayasu arteritis is a rare disease.
- Pulseless arteritis is a granulomatous vasculitis of large vessels, aorta, or its major branches.
- Takayasu arteritis has been reported in pediatric patients as young as age 6 months and in adults of every age.
- *In children*, Takayasu arteritis is one of the more common etiologies of renovascular hypertension.

Clinical presentation
- Fever
- Arthritis
- Myalgia
- Pulseless artery
- Claudication
- Dizziness
- Headaches
- Visual problem

Diagnosis
- Takayasu arteritis (Takayasu arteritis) has no specific markers.
- Complete blood count (CBC) reveals a normochromic, normocytic anemia in 50% of patients with Takayasu arteritis.
- Acute phase reactants are elevated.
- Leukocytosis and thrombocytosis.
- Arteriography is the criterion standard for assistance in the diagnosis of Takayasu arteritis.
- Computerized tomography (CT) scanning and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).

Treatment
- Steroid
- Cyclophosphamide

Wegener Granulomatosis "Granulomatosis with Polyangiitis" (GPA)

Background
- GPA was formerly known as Wegener granulomatosis.
- It is a rare multisystem autoimmune disease of unknown etiology.
- Its hallmark features include necrotizing granulomatous inflammation and pauci-immune vasculitis in small- and medium-sized blood vessels.

Clinical presentation
- General, e.g., fevers, night sweats, fatigue, lethargy, loss of appetite, weight loss
- Ophthalmic manifestations, e.g., episcleritis, uveitis, optic nerve vasculitis
- Chronic sinusitis not responding the conventional treatment
- Epistaxis
- Pulmonary infiltrates
- Cough
- Hemoptysis
- Myalgias, arthralgias, arthritis, typically affecting large joints
- Crescentic necrotizing glomerulonephritis characterized by urinary sediment with more than five RBCs per HPF or erythrocyte casts
- Palpable purpura or skin ulcers

Diagnosis
- Elevated inflammatory markers (ESR, CRP)
- Cytoplasmic antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (c-ANCA) directed against PR3 is most specific for GPA

Treatment
- Cyclophosphamide with high-dose glucocorticoids (induction of remission)

Pain Syndromes

Growing Pain

Background
- Growing pains are intermittent non articular pains occurring in childhood and are diagnosed by exclusion based on a typical history and normal physical examination findings.
- Growing pains may occur in any growing child but usually present between the ages of 3–10 years.
- The condition generally is regarded as benign.

Cause
- The cause of the pain is unknown.

Diagnosis
- The pain typically occurs at night and frequently is limited to the calf, thigh, or shin.
- Unlike inflammatory joint pain, the discomfort is short-lived and relieved with heat, massage, or mild analgesics.
- The child otherwise is healthy and is asymptomatic during the day, having no functional limitations.
- There may be a history of growing pains in the family.
- Importantly, the physical examination never is associated with physical findings such as swelling, redness, warmth, or fever.

Management
- Reassurance
- Supportive measures and typically does not require any further investigations
- Heat, massage, or mild analgesics, e.g., acetaminophen or ibuprofen

Hypermobility Syndrome

Background
- The joint hypermobility syndrome is a condition that features joints that easily move beyond the normal range expected for a particular joint.
- Hypermobile joints tend to be inherited.

Clinical presentation
- Most children are asymptomatic
- Joint pain

- Muscular pain
- Transient joint effusion
- *Hyperextension of joints*
- Hyperextension of elbow > 10°
- Flexion of the trunk with knees fully extended so the palms rest on the floor
- No signs of Marfan or Ehlers Danlos syndrome

Red flags for possible inherited condition
- High arched palate
- Ocular or cardiac lesions
- Skin hyperelasticity
- Arachnodactyly
- Velvety skin texture

Management
- NSAID
- Swimming may help relieving the symptoms

Prognosis
- Good

Fibromyalgia

Background
- More frequent in girls
- It is most prevalent in girls 13–15 years of age

Clinical presentation
- 3 months of chronic pain
- Body aching and stiffness
- Pain may be described as sharp, dull, constant, intermittent, burning, heavy or numb
- They toss and turn at night from the pain
- Tender points, aggravated by cold, humid, fatigue, relieved by heat, massage, dry weather, activity

Diagnosis
- No specific labs
- CBC, CRP, ESR, ANA, CPK, and TFT are within normal limit

Treatment
- It is supportive, NSAID, amitriptyline can help with sleep disturbance
- Children usually improve more than adults

Reflex Sympathetic Dystrophy

Background
- Reflex sympathetic dystrophy (RSD) is a clinical syndrome of variable course and unknown cause characterized by pain, swelling, and vasomotor dysfunction of an extremity.
- This condition is often the result of trauma or surgery.

Clinical presentation
- Chronic pain syndrome.
- Pain affect one or more limb, and become swollen, red, mottled, warm, cold, sweatiness (sympathetic reflex).
- Pain is usually out of proportion of touch; hyperalgesia

Diagnosis
- Diagnosis is mainly clinical.
- Plain radiographs usually demonstrate pronounced demineralization in the underlying bony skeleton of the involved extremity (i.e., Sudeck's atrophy) that may become more severe with disease progression. No joint erosions are present.
- Bone scan with less uptake of the affected part.

Management
- Aggressive physical therapy is the most important aspect of treatment.
- Gabapentin or amitriptyline.

Periodic Fever

Familial Mediterranean Fever (MEFV)

Background
- Autosomal recessive disorder.
- *MEFV* gene appear to cause the disease in many cases.
- *MEFV located on chromosome 6*.
- Usually present before age of 10.

Clinical presentation
- Paroxysms or attacks of fever and may be other symptoms usually last 48–96 h
- Peak intensity occurring within the first 12 h
- *Periodic fever*
- Temperatures rise rapidly to 38–40 °C (100.4–104 °F).
- Fever usually recurs in predictable cycles for 3–5 days every month or several times a year
- Severe abdominal pain with fever

- Pleuritis
- Pericarditis
- Scrotal swelling and pain which may mimic testicular torsion
- Erysipelas-like rash may appear around the ankle
- Arthritis
- Arthralgia
- Myalgia is also common
- *Amyloidosis*
  - Proteinuria followed by nephrotic syndrome, and, inevitably, death can occur from renal failure due to amyloidosis.
  - One third of patients with amyloidosis develop renal vein thrombosis.
  - Prolonged survival resulting from colchicine therapy.

Diagnosis
- Based on the clinical presentation, periodicity of symptoms and response to colchicine.
- ESR, CRP, fibrinogen, and White blood counts (WBCs) may be elevated during the episodes of fever then normalize in between flares.
- Genetic testing is diagnostic in 50 % of the cases.

Treatment
- Daily colchicine treat acute attacks and prevent future attacks.
- Administer colchicine therapy daily (0.6 or 0.5 mg bid, depending on the dosage form available).
- Start with the regimen for acute attacks in patients not taking daily colchicine is 0.6 mg every hour for four doses, then 0.6 mg every 2 h for two doses and then 0.6 mg every 12 h for four doses.
- Colchicine should be started as soon as the patient recognizes that an attack is occurring.
- In patients who do not respond to twice-a-day dosing, administer colchicine three, or even four, times a day.
- In patients who have difficulty tolerating colchicine, start therapy at once-a-day dosing and gradually increase the dose.
- In patients whose conditions were not responsive to oral colchicine, the addition of 1 mg IV once a week can reduce the number of attacks.

Side effect of colchicine
- Diarrhea
- Bone marrow suppression

Advantage of colchicine
- Prevent amyloidosis in all patients.
- Prevent attacks in 65 % of patients.
- Increasing the dose to 2 mg a day in two divided doses will prevent the attacks in 95 % of populations.

Periodic Fever, Aphthous Stomatitis, Pharyngitis, and Cervical Adenitis (PFAPA)

Background
- It is a benign syndrome that occurs in children between age of 6 months and 7 years.
- Mean age is 3 years.

Clinical presentation
- Periodic fever which usually last longer than MEFV from 5–7 days.
- Periodicity is usually less than 4 weeks.
- Usually there is no signs of infection.
- Children are in a good health between episodes.
- Fever cycles usually stops by the teenage years.

Diagnosis
- It is a clinical diagnosis
- Quick response to prednisone

Treatment
- Depend on whether the symptoms are interfering with daily life routine.
- Prednisone three doses 1 mg/kg/dose 12 h apart.

TNF Receptor-1-Associated Periodic Syndrome (TRAPS)

Background
- TNF receptor-1-associated periodic syndrome
- Autosomal dominant with incomplete penetrance

Clinical presentation
- Periodic fever
- Episodes usually last longer than 2 weeks
- Conjunctivitis
- Periorbital edema
- Abdominal pain which make it confused with FMF but fever in TRAPS is much longer
- Myalgia
- Single or multiple erythematous rash on extremities

Treatment
- TRAPS do not respond to colchicines
- TRAPS respond to NSAID, prednisone, etanercept and anakinra

Hyper-immunoglobulin (Ig) D Syndrome

Background
- Hyper-IgD syndrome
- Autosomal recessive disorder
- Due to mutation in MVK gene

Clinical presentation
- Episodes of fever that last 3–7 days

Diagnosis
- Elevated IgD

Treatment
- Colchicine, prednisone, IVIG, NSAID, etanercept, and anakinra

Suggested Readings

1. Weiss JE, Ilowite NT. Juvenile idiopathic arthritis. Rheum Dis Clin North Am. 2007;33:441–70.
2. Hochberg MC. Updating the American College of Rheumatology revised criteria for the classification of systemic lupus erythematosus. Arthritis Rheum. 1997;40:1725.
3. Long SS, Pickering LK, Prober CG, Gutierrez KM. Infectious and inflammatory arthritis. In: Long SS, Pickering LK, Prober CG, editors. Principles and practice of pediatric infectious diseases. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2009. p. 484–92.
4. Ozen S, Pistorio A, Iusan SM, et al. Paediatric Rheumatology International Trials Organisation (PRINTO). EULAR/PRINTO/PRES criteria for Henoch-Schönlein purpura, childhood polyarteritis nodosa, childhood Wegener granulomatosis and childhood Takayasu arteritis: Ankara 2008. Part II: Final classification criteria. Ann Rheum Dis. 2010;69:798–806.
5. de Pablo P, Garcia-Torres R, Uribe N, et al. Kidney involvement in Takayasu arteritis. Clin Exp Rheumatol. 2007;25:S10–4.
6. van der Linden S, van der Heijde D. Ankylosing spondylitis. Clinical features. Rheum Dis Clin North Am. 1998;24:663–76, vii.

Infectious Diseases

Osama Naga and M. Nawar Hakim

Prevention of Infectious Diseases

Child-Care Center

Risk of acquiring infections in child-care center

- Poor hygiene increases the risk of young children for recurrent infections and development of antibiotic resistance.

Prevention

- Good hand washing; wash hands with soap and water, alcohol-based antiseptic is acceptable
- Disinfecting environmental surfaces
- Frequent facility cleaning
- Appropriate food handling
- Teach children and staff to sneeze or cough into elbow (not hands)
- Use gloves when contacting body fluids

Common organism in child-care centers:

- *Shigella infection*
  - Transmitted from infected feces (person-to-person contact)
  - *Do*: stool bacterial cultures for any symptomatic contact
  - *Know*: if *Shigella* infections are confirmed should receive appropriate antibacterial treatment
  - *Return to child-care center*:
    - If diarrhea has resolved and stool cultures are negative
- *Nontyphoidal Salmonella species*
  - No antibiotic is required except:
    - Infants younger than 3 months of age
    - Immunocompromised host
  - Infected individuals should be excluded from child care until symptoms resolve
- *Salmonella* serotype *typhi*
  - Treatment is indicated for infected individuals
  - *Return to child-care center*
    - *5 years of age or younger*: 48 h after antibiotic treatment
    - *Older than 5 years*: 24 h after the diarrhea has resolved
- *Other risk of infection*: e.g., giardia, rotavirus, cryptosporidiosis, respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), parainfluenza virus, adeno, rhino, and corona viruses *hemophilus influenza*, pneumococcal, hepatitis A and, cytomegalovirus infections

Prevention of Hospital and Office Infection

- *Standard precautions* are indicated in the care of all patients including:
- Hand hygiene before and after each patient contact
- Protective equipment when needed

Preventive methods

- Alcohol-based products are preferred because of their superior activity and adherence
- Soap and water are preferred when hands are visibly soiled or exposed to a spore-forming organism, e.g., (*Clostridium difficile* is the most common)
- Gloves, isolation gowns, masks, and goggles for any exposure to body fluids contaminated materials or sharps
- Strict aseptic technique for all invasive procedures, and for catheter care

O. Naga (✉)
Pediatric Department, Paul L Foster School of Medicine,
Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center
4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

M. N. Hakim
Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine,
Texas Tech University Health Science Center,
4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: nawar.hakim@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_12,

- Separate well and sick children areas in the medical offices

Examples of infections and agents requiring transmission-based precautions

- *Contact precautions*, e.g., RSV, *C. difficile*, and *Staphylococcus aureus*
  - Gloves and gowns are required when there is direct patient contact
- *Droplet precautions*, e.g., Influenza, *Neisseria meningitidis*, and *Bordetella pertussis*
  - Use of a surgical mask is required
  - A single room is preferred
  - *Remember* all office and hospital staff should receive an annual influenza immunization
- *Airborne precautions*, e.g., *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, measles, and varicella (with contact precautions)
  - *Negative pressure* airborne infection isolation room
  - Room needs 6–12 air changes per hour or recirculated through a high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter
  - Tested N95 or similar *sealing mask*

Prevention of Infection Through Breast Feeding

- *Exclusive breastfeeding* for the first 6 months is recommended by American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP)

Immunologic characteristics of breast milk

- *Postpartum colostrum* contains high concentrations of antibodies and other infection-protective elements (natural immunization).
- The actual antibodies against specific microbial agents present in an individual woman's milk depends on her exposure and response to the particular agents.
- *Lactoferrin*: Limits bacterial growth by iron chelation.
- *Lysozyme*: Bacterial cell wall lysis.
- *Lactalbumin*: Enhance the growth Bifidobacterium and affects immune modulation.
- *Casein*: Limits adhesion of bacteria and facilitates the growth of Bifidobacterium.
- *Carbohydrates*: Enhance the growth of probiotics.
- *Lipids*: Lytic effect on many viruses and are active against Giardia as well.

Absolute contraindication of breast feeding

- *Human immunodeficiency virus 1 (HIV-1) infection* (if replacement feeding is acceptable, feasible, affordable, sustainable, and safe)
- *Human T-lymphotropic virus 1 and 2 infection* (varies by country; in Japan, breastfeeding is initiated)
- *Tuberculosis* (active, untreated pulmonary tuberculosis, until effective maternal treatment for the initial 2 weeks or the infant is receiving isoniazid)
- *Herpes simplex* virus infection on a breast (until the lesions on the breast are cleared)

Medical Evaluation of Internationally Adopted Children

- Evaluation for tuberculosis (TB) infection and purified protein derivative (PPD) testing

Immunizations

- Written immunization record is accepted for the number of doses, interval, and appropriate age of immunization
- *Serologic testing* to determine protective antibodies: Tetanus antibodies (the test of choice) other antibodies for diphtheria, polio, and hepatitis B can be measured
- Pertussis titer do not reliably predict protection against infection
- Measles vaccine should not be administered routinely to children younger than 1 year

Prevention of Vector-Borne Disease

- *Chemoprophylaxis* before travelling to endemic areas, e.g., mefloquine for malaria should be given before travelling to endemic areas
- Use mosquito netting during sleep in tropical areas
- Use protective clothing and garments
- *Repellents*, e.g., DEET (<30%) applied to children as young as 2 years of age and should be used in endemic area
  - *DEET* can be applied every 6–8 h all over the body areas
  - Insecticide should not applied to children's hands because of risk of ingestion
- Use of occlusive cloth to prevent tick bite is paramount
- *Immunization* against disease when travelling to endemic area 1–2 months before, e.g., dengue, typhus, cholera depending on the country of destination

Recreational Water Use

- Exposure to contaminated water can cause diarrhea, and other infections, e.g., swimmer's ear
- *Cryptosporidium* is the most common cause of gastrointestinal diseases associated with recreational water
- *People with diarrhea* should not participate in recreational water activities
- Children with diarrhea should avoid swimming for 2 weeks after cessation of diarrhea
- *Avoid* ingestion of water
- Clean the child with soap and water before swimming
- Diaper change in the bathrooms

Infections in Immunocompromised Hosts

Malnutrition
- Protein energy malnutrition causes immune deficiency and increase susceptibility to infection

Asplenia
- e.g., sickle cell anemia, congenital or surgical asplenia
- Bacteremia and meningitis due to *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae* type b and *N. meningitidis*
- Special vaccine consideration
  - Pneumococcal conjugate and polysaccharide vaccines are indicated for all children with asplenia at the recommended age.
  - Following administration of appropriate number of doses of PCV13, pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine (PPSV23) should be administered starting at 24 months of age.
  - A second dose of PPSV23 should be administered 5 years later.
  - Two primary doses of quadrivalent meningococcal conjugate vaccine should be administered 2 months apart to children with asplenia from 2 years of age through adolescence, and a booster dose should be administered every 5 years.

Malignancy
- Neutropenia ANC <500 increases the risk of bacterial infection
- Fever may be the only the manifestation
- Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) (opportunistic infection)
- Burn injury

Indwelling catheters
- Central-related catheter infections are common complication e.g.:
- Coagulase negative staphylococci
  - Vancomycin is therapeutic drug of choice
- *Candida* infection is another common cause

Antibiotics

Aminoglycosides, e.g., gentamicin, tobramycin, and amikacin

Mechanism of action
- Inhibit bacterial protein synthesis by binding to bacterial 30S ribosome

Drug activity
- Against aerobic gram-negative organism, e.g., *Yersinia pestis* plague, *Francisella tularensis*
- It has some activity against *Staphylococcal* species, *Mycobacterium*, *Entamoeba histolytica*, *Cryptosporidium parvum*

Drug toxicity
- Nephrotoxicity and ototoxicity

Drug Monitoring
- Indication for monitoring aminoglycosides
  - If the drug to be used 5 days or more
  - If there is renal impairment
  - Trough level is used only but the peak level used in certain circumstances
- Trough level:
  - Serum level of drug obtained just *before* the fourth or fifth dose
  - Trough concentration for gentamicin or tobramycin that are greater than 2 μg/mL associated with risk of toxicity
  - Prolonging the interval or decreasing the dose can be used to address elevated trough level
- Peak level (not commonly used)
  - Should be measured 30 min *after* completion of fourth or fifth dose
  - If too low increase the dose by 25 % to reach the desired peak level (e.g., gentamicin peak level 8–10 μg/mL)
- *Drug use in serious infections* (used in combination with other antibiotics), e.g.,
  - Septicemia
  - Neutropenic fever
  - Nosocomial respiratory infections
  - Complicated intra-abdominal infections
  - Pyelonephritis

Beta Lactam Antibiotics

Classes of beta lactam antibiotics
- Penicillins
- Cephalosporins
- Carbapenems
- Monobactams

Mechanism of action of beta lactams:
- Inhibit cell wall synthesis by binding and inhibiting cell wall proteins called penicillin-binding proteins (PBPs).

Penicillins, e.g., crystalline penicillin

Indications
- Periodontal infections
- Erysipeloid
- Group A and group B streptococci

- Syphilis
- Meningococcal meningitis and meningococcemia

Ampicillin

Bacterial coverage
- Similar to penicillin but its spectrum extends to some gram-negative bacteria

Indications
- *Listeria monocytogenes* meningitis
- Enterococcal infections
- Urinary tract infections (UTIs) caused by susceptible strains of *Escherichia Coli*

Amoxicillin-Clavulanate (Augmentin)

Bacterial coverage
- Addition of beta-lactamase inhibitors increase coverage to *methicillin-sensitive S. aureus* (MSSA)
- Extended coverage for respiratory infections, e.g., sinusitis, otitis media, bronchitis

Drug of choice for bite wounds
- *Pasteurella* is susceptible to penicillin
- *Pasteurella* and *S. aureus* are the likely organisms in most of animal bites

Penicillinase Resistant Penicillins, e.g., nafcillin or oxacillin

- Drug of choice only for staphylococcal infection (MSSA) but the resistance is rapidly expanding.

Anti-Pseudomonal Penicillins, e.g., piperacillin and ticarcillin

Bacterial coverage
- Extended gram-negative coverage including *Pseudomonas* species, *S. aureus* and *H. influenzae*
- Addition of beta-lactamase inhibitors:
  - Piperacillin-tazobactam (Zosyn)
  - Ticarcillin-clavulanate (Timentin)
- Drug of choice, e.g., *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*

Cephalosporins (penicillinase-resistant)

- *First generation cephalosporin*, e.g., cefazolin and cephalexin
  - Bacterial coverage
    - Many gram-positive cocci including methicillin-sensitive *S. aureus* and most *Streptococcus*
    - No reliable central nervous system (CNS) penetration, do not use for meningitis or arteriovenous (AV) shunts infections
  - Indications
    - Skin and soft tissue infection
- *Second generation cephalosporins*, e.g., cefaclor, cefoxitin, cefuroxime, and cefotetan
  - Bacterial coverage
    - Maintains gram-positive activity but less than first generation
    - Greater coverage for gram-negative bacteria than first generation, e.g., (*H. influenzae Enterobacter aerogenes*, and some *Neisseria*)
    - Extend the coverage to respiratory gram negative, e.g., (*H. influenzae and Moraxella*)
    - Has variable activity against gut anaerobes except cefuroxime
    - Do not use for meningitis
  - Indications
    - Abdominal surgeries
    - Community acquired pneumonia
    - Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)
- Third generation cephalosporins
  - Bacterial coverage
    - Extended gram-negative activity, loss of gram-positive activity
    - Penetrates the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) well
    - Has greater activity in deep tissue infections and less toxicity than aminoglycosides
    - Only few drugs are active against *P. aeruginosa*, e.g., ceftazidime
  - Ceftriaxone
    - Has the longest half-life and effective against most *S. pneumoniae*
    - Crosses the blood brain barrier and indicated as the primary therapy for meningitis
    - Ceftriaxone can be used as single agent for empiric treatment of meningitis while lab results are pending except neonates ampicillin need to be added to cover for *Listeria*
  - Cefotaxime
    - Bacterial coverage is the same as ceftriaxone
    - It is preferred in neonates or < 30 days old
- Fourth generation cephalosporin, e.g., cefepime
  - Bacterial coverage
    - Equal gram-positive as the first the generation cephalosporins
    - Equal gram-negative as the third generation cephalosporins
    - Excellent *Pseudomonas* coverage

Carbapenems, e.g., imipenem/cilastatin and meropenem

- Imipenem is a very-broad-spectrum carbapenem antibiotic.
- It is very active against *Bacteroides fragilis*.
- It kills most Enterobacteriaceae, pseudomonas, gram-positive bacteria, and is inhibitory for listeria, and *Enterococcus faecalis*.
- *Imipenem can lower the seizure threshold and should not be used in patients with seizures or renal insufficiency*.
- Meropenem is a similar carbapenem with a longer half-life, less likely than imipenem to cause seizures.

Monobactam, e.g., aztreonam

- Aztreonam is often used in patients who are penicillin allergic or who cannot tolerate aminoglycosides.
- Aztreonam has strong activity against susceptible aerobic and facultative gram-negative bacteria, including *P. aeruginosa*, most *Enterobacteriaceae*.
- Aztreonam is not active against gram-positive cocci or anaerobes.

Other Commonly used Antibiotics

Clindamycin

Mechanism of action
- Inhibit bacterial protein synthesis by binding to 50S ribosomal subunit

Bacterial coverage
- Active against many strains of methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA)
- Active against anaerobes
- Active against most staphylococcal and streptococcal infections

Adverse reaction
- Diarrhea including *C. difficile* enterocolitis

Macrolides, e.g., azithromycin and clarithromycin

Mechanism of action
- Inhibit bacterial protein synthesis by binding to 50S ribosomes
- Azithromycin does not inhibit cytochrome P-450 as erythromycin or clarithromycin do

Bacterial coverage
- Azithromycin is the drug of choice for pertussis, *Mycoplasma* and *Chlamydia*

Adverse reaction
- Gastrointestinal irritation
- Hypertrophic pyloric stenosis if used in children less than 1 month of age

Rifampin

Bacterial coverage
- Tuberculosis
- Invasive *H. influenzae*

Indications
- Close contacts to a child who has invasive meningococcal infection
- Combination with vancomycin in certain staphylococcal infections (VP shunt, osteomyelitis, endocarditis)
- Persistent group A streptococcal pharyngitis in combination with beta-lactam antibiotics
- MRSA carriage eradication attempt

Fluoroquinolones, e.g., ciprofloxacin

AAP recommendation of fluoroquinolones use in children
- If the pathogen is multidrug resistant
- No safe and other effective alternative
- Parenteral therapy is not feasible
- No other effective alternative oral agents

Bacterial coverage
- UTIs caused by multidrug resistant gram negatives rods
- Resistant gram negative rods:
  - *P. aeruginosa*
  - Gastrointestinal and respiratory tract infection
  - Chronic or acute osteomyelitis

Adverse reaction
- Fluoroquinolones has no documented evidence of increased incidence of arthropathy in pediatric patient using fluoroquinolones

Tetracycline

Bacterial coverage
- Tetracycline provides coverage against tick borne organisms, e.g., (Lyme disease, Rocky Mountain spotted fever)

- Doxycycline and minocycline are used for acne (*Propionibacterium acnes*)
- Doxycycline may have MRSA coverage as well

Adverse reaction
- Tetracyclines causes staining of dental enamels.
- Tetracycline is not recommended in children less than 8 years old.
- Tetracyclines can be used in children younger than 8 years in life threatening situations, e.g., rocky mountain spotted fever (doxycyclines is the drug of choice).
- Doxycycline does not cause staining of permanent teeth comparing to tetracyclines.

Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole

Bacterial coverage
- *Pneumocystis jiroveci* which is common in immunocompromised patient, e.g., HIV
- Urinary tract infection, treatment, and prophylaxis (drug of choice in susceptible patients)
- Methicillin-resistant staphylococcal infection
- Gastroenteritis due to salmonella, shigella, and isospora belli
- *Burkholderia cepacia*
- Brucella

Adverse reaction
- Rash
- Neutropenia
- Stevens–Johnson syndrome

Vancomycin

Mechanism of action
- Inhibits bacterial cell wall synthesis by binding tightly to peptidoglycan precursors and blocking polymerization

Bacterial coverage
- Confirmed gram positive infection in patient seriously ill or allergic to beta-lactam antibiotics
- Initial empiric treatment in a child (> 2 months) with meningitis in combination with third generation cephalosporin
- Methicillin-resistant staphylococcal infection
- Prophylaxis before prosthetic device implantation requiring major surgery
- Enterally for *C. difficile*
- Acute infectious endocarditis if *S. aureus* is the likely cause

Adverse reaction
- Red man syndrome, or red neck syndrome
  - Vancomycin releases histamine that can cause pruritus, erythema of the head and neck
  - This is a related drug infusion problem just slow down the infusion rate and premedicate the patient with diphenhydramine
- Ototoxicity and nephrotoxicity (follow the trough level and adjust the dose accordingly)
- Misuse of vancomycin cause development of resistance

Indications
- *C. difficile* diarrhea (It is not systemically absorbed)
- S. *aureus* infections

Antivirals

Acyclovir

Mechanism of action
- Terminates the viral deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) synthesis when incorporated into the viral DNA chain.

Appropriate use of acyclovir
- Herpes simplex virus (HSV) type 1 and HSV type 2
- Varicella
- Treatment of recurrent primary genital HSV2 or primary HSV1 mucocutaneous infections
- IV acyclovir is the drug of choice for treatment of HSV encephalitis

Major side effect of acyclovir
- Acute renal failure due to precipitation in the renal tubules (proper hydration and slower infusion can minimize this problem)
- Nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea

Valacyclovir

Background
- Newer potent oral antiviral (Inhibits DNA polymerase; incorporates into viral DNA)

Indications
- HSV1
- HSV2
- Varicella-Zoster virus (VZV)

Ganciclovir

Indications

- CMV infection

Foscarnet

- CMV infection

Other Antiviral Agents, Against DNA Viruses

- Famciclovir, valganciclovir, penciclovir, and cidofovir

Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors

Mechanism of action

- These drugs inhibit replication of HIV by interfering with the reverse transcriptase enzyme

Indication

- HIV infection

Example of nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors and their side effects

- Zidovudine (ZDV)
  - Significant side effect; bone marrow suppression
- Didanosine (ddI)
  - Significant side effects; pancreatitis and peripheral neuropathy
- Zalcitabine (ddC)
  - Significant side effects; stomatitis and neuropathy
- Stavudine (d4T)
  - Contraindication:
    - Cannot be combined with ddI in pregnant women can cause fatal lactic acidosis
  - Side effects; pancreatitis and peripheral neuropathy
- Abacavir
  - Most serious side effect is FATAL hypersensitivity

Nonnucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors (NNRTI)

Indication

- HIV infection

Example of NNRTI and common side effects

- Efavirenz
  - Teratogenic
- Nevirapine
  - Rash

Protease Inhibitors

Mechanism of action

- Inhibit the HIV protease enzyme that involved with processing the completed virus

Indication

- HIV infection

Examples of protease inhibitors medications and the common side effects

- Indinavir
  - Asymptomatic hyperlipidemia
  - Nephrolithiasis
- Nelfinavir
  - Diarrhea
- Saquinavir

Antiparasites

Permethrin

- Excellent safety profile
- Five percent permethrin is the drug of choice for treatment of scabies
- It paralyze the parasite and cause death
- One percent permethrin solution is effective for head lice
- It is not recommended in infants younger than 2 months and during pregnancy

Metronidazole

Mechanism of action

- Metronidazole is nitroimidazole bactericidal drug

Indications

- Anaerobic bacteria
- *Clostridium*
- *Trichomonas vaginalis*
- *Gardnerella vaginalis*
- *Treponema pallidum*
- Oral spirochetes
- *Helicobacter pylori*

Malathion

- It is the most effective drug in the treatment of pediculosis or head lice
- It has ovicidal activity
- Single topical application is effective in resistant cases

Chloroquine

Indication

- It is the drug of choice for malaria prophylaxis in the sensitive chloroquine regions, e.g., Central and South America
- Drug should be administered 1–2 weeks before travelling

Adverse effect

- Gastrointestinal (GI) upset, headache, dizziness, blurred vision, insomnia, and pruritus

Mefloquine and atovaquone/proguanil

- Commonly used for prophylaxis for malaria in chloroquine resistant regions, e.g., Africa and Middle east

Antifungals

Amphotericin B

Indication

- Active against broad array of fungi, e.g., *Candida*, *Aspergillus*, Zygomycetes, *Histoplasma*, *Coccidioides immitis*

Toxicity

- Febrile drug reaction
- Hypokalemia
- Hypomagnesemia
- Nephrotoxicity (liposomal preparation is equally effective and less nephrotoxic)

Fluconazole

Indications

- It is equally effective for treatment of invasive *Candida albicans* in neonates as amphotericin B
- Treatment of oropharyngeal or esophageal candidiasis in immunocompromised patients
- Treatment of vulvovaginal *Candida*
- Treatment of cryptococcal meningitis

Griseofulvin

- It is the standard first-line therapy for tinea capitis
- No laboratory assessment of hepatic enzyme if used <8 weeks
- Serum liver enzyme monitoring every 8 weeks; prolonged therapy is a risk of hepatotoxicity
- Consume with fatty meals for maximum absorption, e.g., peanut butter

Herpes Family Viruses (DNA Viruses)

- HSV-1, HSV-2
- Epstein–Barr virus (EBV)
- CMV
- VZV
- Human Herpesvirus type 6 (HHV-6)
- Human Herpesvirus Type 7 (HHV-7)
- Human Herpesvirus Type 8 (HHV-8)

Herpes Simplex Virus HSV-1 and HSV-2

Background

- HSV (both types 1 and 2) belongs to the family Herpesviridae
- It is a double-stranded DNA virus
- Characterized by neurovirulence, latency, and reactivation
- The reactivation and replication of latent HSV always in the area supplied by the ganglia in which latency was established
- Reactivation can be induced by various stimuli (e.g., fever, trauma, emotional stress, sunlight, and menstruation)

Mode of transmission

- *HSV-1*; direct contact with infected secretions or lesion
- HSV-2; direct contact with infected genital lesions or secretions (sexual transmission or during birth in neonates)
- Risk of infection with HSV-1 increases with age
- Incubation period of approximately 4 days, but can range from 2 to 12 days.
- Period of communicability; viral shedding period that lasts at least 1 week and up to several weeks.
- Newborn to mothers with primary herpes infection are more likely to be infected than infants born to mother with recurrent genital herpes simplex infection
- Herpes simplex virus can be transmitted from a person with a primary recurrent infection regardless whether any symptoms are present

Diagnosis

- The gold standard for laboratory diagnosis is the viral culture

- HSV polymerase chain reaction (PCR; useful for CSF testing)
- HSV IgG and IgM antibodies
- *Herpetic gingivostomatitis* (HSV-1 common in infant and young children)
  - Fever
  - Multiple round ulcers or superficial erosions commonly affecting the palate, tongue, and gingiva
  - Diffuse erythema and swelling of the gingiva
  - Drooling, foul-smelling breath, and anorexia
  - Dehydration in children whose painful lesions result in poor fluid intake
  - Pain control and sufficient rehydration is the mainstay of management

Herpes labialis
- The most common manifestation of HSV-1 infection
- Recurrent orofacial herpes (commonly called fever blisters or cold sores)
- The outer vermilion border is a common location
- The crusted lesions often are confused with staphylococcal or streptococcal impetigo (secondary bacterial infection may occur)
- Oral acyclovir or valacyclovir can be effective if started within 1–2 days of prodromal symptoms

Genital herpes
- Most commonly caused by HSV-2 which is a sexually transmitted infection (STI)
- *Possible routes are*:
  - Hematogenous route
  - Direct spread from mucocutaneous sites through the peripheral nerves
- Complications
  - Urinary retention
  - Psychological morbidity
  - Aseptic meningitis
- Treatment
  - Oral antiviral medication can be effective if started early
  - Chronic suppressive therapy with an oral antiviral is recommended for patients experiencing frequent recurrences (at least six episodes per year)

Herpetic keratoconjunctivitis
- Ocular HSV infection is the second most common infectious cause of blindness worldwide
- HSV-1 is the predominant cause
- Neonates afflicted with ocular HSV may have associated systemic or CNS disease
- Management
  - Prompt referral to ophthalmology is recommended to prevent complications such as permanent scarring, secondary bacterial infection, meningoencephalitis, and vision loss
  - Treatment consists of both topical ophthalmic antiviral (trifluridine, vidarabine, idoxuridine) and oral antiviral medications

Herpetic Whitlow (Fig. 1)
- Due to autoinoculation of HSV-1 (more in children) or HSV-2 (more in adolescents)
- Vesiculoulcerative lesions affect the pulp of the distal phalanx of the hand associated with deep-seated swelling, and erythema
- Oral antiviral medications are optional and are used in extensive disease

Herpes gladiatorum (Fig. 2)
- HSV-1 is more likely to be the agent than HSV-2
- Herpes gladiatorum occurs in contact sports, e.g., wrestling and boxing
- Most commonly affects exposed areas, e.g., face and upper extremities
- Patients should avoid contact sports during outbreaks until the culture results are negative
- Suppressive therapy is likely to be effective, but data about such therapy are insufficient

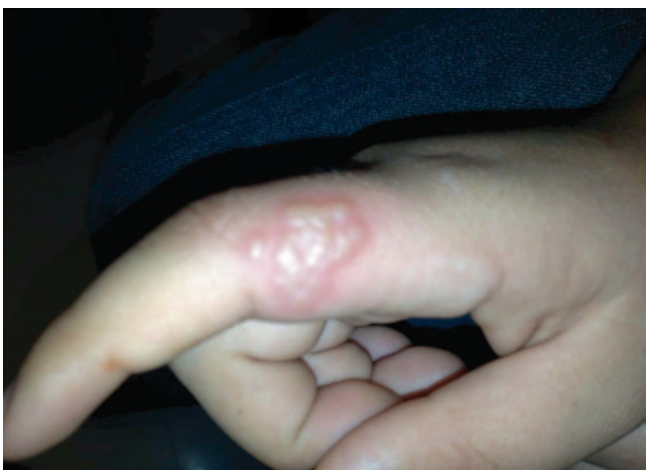


Fig. 1 Herpetic Whitlow: 8 years old boy with painful blisters, grouped vesicular lesions with surrounding erythema on the index finger

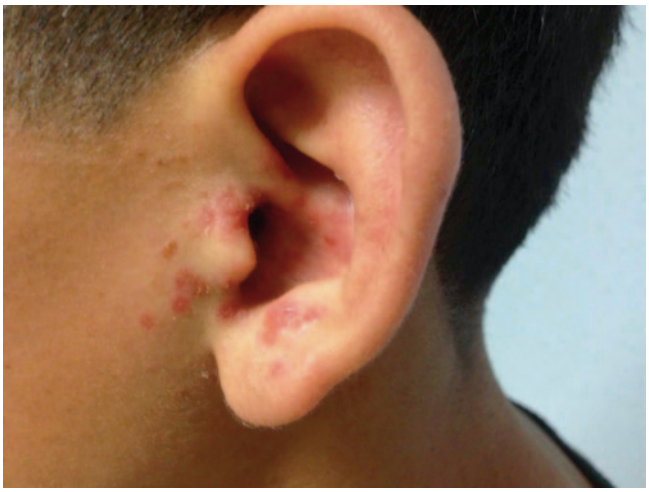


Fig. 2 Herpes gladiatorum: 16 years old boy wrestling player presents with painful blisters in the left ear

Herpes encephalitis and meningitis

- Herpes encephalitis
  - Altered mental status
  - Personality changes
  - Seizures
  - Focal neurologic findings
- HSV meningitis
  - CSF pleocytosis, with lymphocyte predominance and red blood cells
  - *High protein* in the CSF
- Mollaret meningitis
  - Recurrent aseptic meningitis (mostly herpetic)
  - Episodes of severe headache, meningismus
  - Fever that resolve spontaneously
- Complications
  - Bell palsy, atypical pain syndromes, trigeminal neuralgia, ascending myelitis, and postinfectious encephalomyelitis.
- *Recommended therapy*: Parenteral acyclovir for 21 days.

Neonatal herpes

- Neonatal herpes usually manifests in the first 4 weeks after birth
- Clinical presentation
  - Lesion; skin, eye, and mouth (SEM)
  - CNS (often presenting with seizures, lethargy, and hypotonia)
  - Disseminated (including liver, adrenal glands, lungs)
- Disseminated neonatal HSV
  - Shock
  - Elevated liver enzymes
  - Disseminated intravascular coagulation
  - Multiple organ system failure
- Management
  - *Institute therapy* pending culture results if significant suspicion exists, e.g.,
  - Sepsis syndrome with negative bacteriologic culture results
  - Severe liver dysfunction
  - Fever and irritability
  - Abnormal CSF findings, particularly if seizures are present
- *Timely diagnosis* and prompt initiation of treatment are crucial

Eczema herpeticum

- Eczema herpeticum also is known as Kaposi varicelliform eruption
- HSV infections of skin with underlying barrier defect, e.g., atopic dermatitis
- Vesicles and crusts coalescing into plaques on underlying eczematous skin
- Management
  - Intravenous (IV) antiviral therapy
  - Antibiotic therapy for secondary bacterial infection
  - Topical emollients
  - Topical corticosteroids in areas of atopic dermatitis once systemic antiviral therapy has been initiated
  - The use of calcineurin inhibitors is contraindicated in eczema herpeticum

Epstein–Barr Virus (EBV)

Background

- EBV or human herpesvirus 4, is a gammaherpesvirus that infects more than 95% of the worlds population with infection
- Mode of transmission primarily by oral contact with saliva
  - EBV is shed in saliva at high concentrations for more than 6 months following acute infection and intermittently at lower concentrations for life
  - Young children directly or through the handling of toys
  - Adolescents; close contact such as kissing

Clinical presentation

- *EBV infection in healthy person; Infectious mononucleosis* (EBV is the most common cause)
  - Fever
  - Sore throat (similar to streptococcal pharyngitis but more painful)
  - Cervical lymphadenopathy commonly anterior and posterior cervical lymph node (may compromise the airway)
  - *Splenomegaly* (90%); 2–3 cm below the left costal margin is typical

Table 1 Serum Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) antibodies in EBV infection (Adapted from the Red Book Epstein-Barr Virus infections., 27th ed. AAP; 2006)

Infection	VCA IgG	VCA IgM	EA (D)	EBNA
No previous infection	–	–	–	–
Acute infection	+	+	+/–	–
Recent infection	+	+/–	+/–	+/–
Past infection	+	–	+/–	+

VCA viral capsid antigen, *EA (D)* early antigen diffuse staining, *EBNA* EBV nuclear antigen

  - Hepatomegaly (10%)
  - Fatigue and malaise (might take from 6 months to few years to improve)
  - Rash
  - This condition generally is a benign, self-limited illness in healthy persons
- EBV infection in immunocompromised persons
  - Nonmalignant EBV-associated proliferations, e.g., virus-associated hemophagocytic syndrome
  - Nasopharyngeal *carcinoma, Burkitt's lymphoma, and Hodgkin disease*

Diagnosis
- Heterophile antibodies test is Not recommended for children younger than 4 years of age
- The IgM-VCA (most valuable and specific serologic test)
- EBV serology (Table 1)

Management
- Short courses of corticosteroids for fewer than 2 weeks can be given in the following cases:
  - Upper airway obstruction
  - Thrombocytopenia complicated by bleeding
  - Autoimmune hemolytic anemia
  - Seizures
  - Meningitis

Cytomegalovirus (CMV)

Background
- CMV is a double-stranded DNA virus and is a member of the Herpesviridae family. At least 60% of the US population has been exposed to CMV.
- CMV usually causes an asymptomatic infection; afterward, it remains latent throughout life and may reactivate.

Mode of transmission and period of communicability
- Vertical transmission
  - CMV can be maternally transmitted during pregnancy, perinatally, or after postnatal exposure
  - *Postnatally can be transmitted via human milk*
  - Risk decreased by the use of pasteurized human milk
- Horizontal transmission
  - Exposure to CMV can occur from almost all body fluids, including:
    - Urine, saliva, and tears
    - Genital secretions and transplanted organs
  - Toddlers infected postnatally with CMV shed the virus in their urine for a mean of 18 months (range 6–40 months)
  - Healthy adults infected with CMV will shed the virus for only up to several weeks
  - Shedding of CMV in toddlers in child care centers can be as high as 70%
- Transfusion and transplantation
  - Can be eliminated by CMV-negative donors
  - Filtration to remove white blood cells (WBCs)
  - Latent form in tissue and WBCs can be reactivated many years later

Congenital CMV infection
- Microcephaly
- Periventricular calcifications
- Chorioretinitis, strabismus, microphthalmia, and optic nerve atrophy
- Hypotonia, poor feeding, ventriculomegaly, cerebellar hypoplasia
- Intrauterine growth restriction
- Prematurity
- Jaundice
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Thrombocytopenia; petechiae and purpura
- Sensorineural hearing loss (SNHL); 7–15% will develop progressive SNHL later in childhood

Diagnosis
- Perinatally:
  - CMV immunoglobulin M in fetal blood or by isolating the virus from amniotic fluid
- Postnatally:
  - Congenital CMV is confirmed by detection of the virus in urine, blood, and saliva within the first 3 weeks of life by culture or PCR

Treatment
- Congenital CMV
  - Treatment of unclear benefit
  - CNS disease is sometime treated with ganciclovir for 6 weeks
  - Pneumonitis, hepatitis, and thrombocytopenia is sometimes treated with ganciclovir for 2 weeks
- CMV retinitis in HIV
  - Ganciclovir and valganciclovir are indicated for induction and maintenance therapy

- CMV pneumonitis in BM or stem cell transplant patients
  - Ganciclovir plus CMV immune globulin are used together

Varicella-Zoster Virus (VZV); Chickenpox

Background
- VZV is herpesvirus family member, and is highly contagious
- Spreading via direct contact, airborne droplets, and transplacental passage
- VZV is the cause of chickenpox and herpes zoster

Clinical presentation
- *The prodrome*: is low-grade fevers, headaches, and malaise developing after the incubation period
- Skin lesions initially appear on the face and trunk
- Each lesion starts as a red macule and passes through stages of papule, vesicle, pustule, and crust
- The vesicle on a lesion's erythematous base leads to its description as a pearl or dewdrop on a rose petal
- The lesions predominate in central skin areas and proximal upper extremities with relative sparing of distal and lower extremities
- Subsequent central umbilication and crust formation
- Patients are considered contagious until all lesions crust over
- *Chickenpox* generally is a benign self-limited illness, especially in healthy children under age 12 years

Complication
- Acute complications
  - Bacterial superinfection of cutaneous lesions, specially Streptococcus pyogenes which can progress to cellulitis and myositis
  - Pneumonia (major cause of morbidity and mortality), hepatitis, and thrombocytopenia
- Post-infectious complications
  - Cerebellar ataxia
  - Encephalitis

Shingles (Herpes Zoster)

Background
- VZV is the cause of chickenpox and herpes zoster
- Herpes zoster reactivation of the dormant virus residing in cells of the dorsal root ganglia
- Shingles classically is a unilateral rash consisting of grouped vesicles on an erythematous base, covering one to three adjacent dermatomes, often accompanied by pain and pruritus
- The diagnosis can be rapidly confirmed by vesicular fluid testing by using either VZV PCR or direct fluorescent antibody (DFA) assay

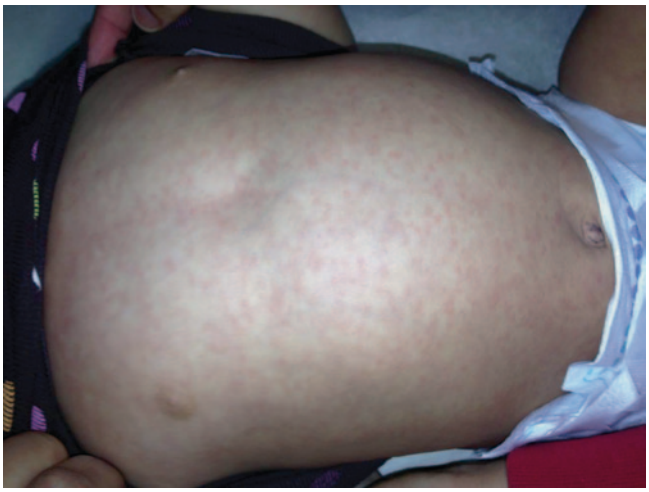


Fig. 3 Roseola infantum: 9 months old boy afebrile presents with small, pale pink papules and blanchable, maculopapular exanthem, had high fever for 3 days before the rash

Congenital varicella syndrome:
- low-birth weight
- Intracranial calcifications and cortical atrophy
- MR and seizures
- Chorioretinitis and cataract
- *Cicatricial scarring* of body or extremities is diagnostic especially if infection at 8–20 weeks gestation

Prevention
- Children can go back to school if all lesions are crusted
- *VZIG* given to the baby born to infected mother if < 5 days before birth or 2 days or less after birth
- *Intravenous acyclovir* is indicated for varicella infection in infants born to mothers who experience chickenpox from 5 days before until 2 days after delivery

Human Herpesvirus Type (HHV)-6 or Roseola Infantum (Exanthem Subitum)

Background
- Caused by HHV-6 or -7
- Commonly affect age between 6 and 18 months

Clinical presentation (Fig. 3)
- *Very high fever* for several days, followed by maculopapular rash after the resolution of fever

- *Maculopapular rash* appears on the trunk and extremities hours to days after fever
- They may have lymphadenopathy, vomiting, diarrhea, febrile seizure, or respiratory symptoms
- HHV-6 is a common cause of febrile seizure

Management
- Mainly supportive

Human Herpesvirus-7 (HHV-7)

- Childhood febrile illness, somewhat unclear

Human Herpesvirus-8 (HHV-8)

- Kaposi sarcoma
- Hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis

Other DNA Viruses

- Parvovirus B19
- Adenovirus

Parvovirus B19 (Erythema Infectiosum/Fifth Disease)

Background
- Incubation period 4–14 days
- Mode of transmission: by respiratory secretions

Clinical presentation
- Erythema infectiosum
  - Mild constitutional symptoms, e.g., Fever, malaise, myalgia, and headache
  - Bright red facial rash (slapped cheek appearance)
  - Circumoral pallor
  - Lacy maculopapular rash begin on the trunk and move to extremities (Fig. 4). The rash last for 2–4 days.
  - Rash may be pruritic, does not desquamate, may recur with bathing or exercise
  - Arthritis or arthralgia may occur
- Aplastic anemia
  - Hemolytic disease such as sickle cell anemia, spherocytosis, thalassemia transient low to zero reticulocyte leukopenia
  - Transient low to zero reticulocyte, and leukopenia

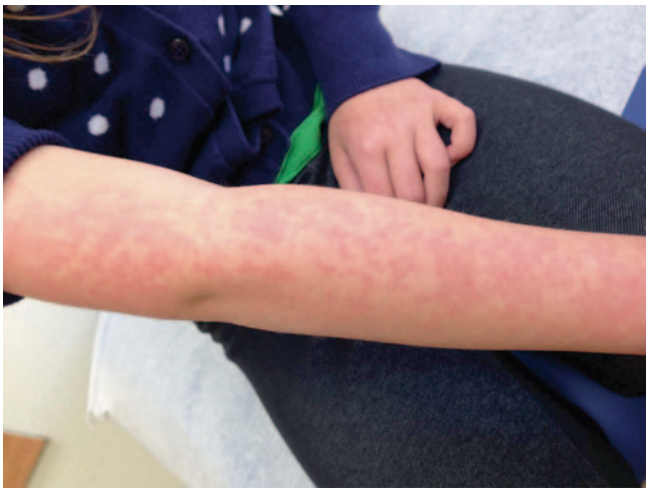


Fig. 4 Erythema infectiosum: erythematous maculopapular rash on the arm, which fades into a classic lacelike reticular pattern as confluent areas clear

- Chronic anemia in HIV disease
- Adult acute arthritis
- Hydrops fetalis

Remember
- Rash is not infectious and children can go to school without restrictions

Adenovirus

Background
- Mode of transmission:
  - Person to person through contact with respiratory secretions
  - Fecal-oral transmission, and via fomites
- *Outbreaks* usually are concentrated in winter, spring, and early summer otherwise all year round
- Incubation period:
  - Respiratory infections from 2 to 14 days
  - Gastrointestinal disease from 3 to 10 days

Clinical presentation
- Respiratory tract infection:
  - Nonspecific febrile illness
  - Upper respiratory tract infection
  - Otitis media
  - Pharyngitis
  - *Exudative* tonsillitis
  - Pneumonia
- Pharyngoconjunctival fever:
  - Fever, tonsillitis (sometimes suppurative)

  - Follicular conjunctivitis, coryza, and diarrhea
  - Cervical and preauricular lymphadenopathy is common
  - Generalized rash in association with fever, conjunctivitis, and pharyngitis can be mistaken for Kawasaki disease

Laboratory
- Antigen detection and viral culture and serology

Management
- Adenoviral infections generally are self-limited and require no more than supportive treatment.

Respiratory Viruses

- Influenza
- Parainfluenza
- Respiratory syncytial virus
- Human metapneumovirus
- Rhinovirus
- Coronavirus

Influenza Virus

Background
- *Influenza* is an orthomyxovirus
- *Types*: A, B, and C. Types A and B are responsible for epidemic disease in humans
  - Influenza A viruses found in humans are *H1N1 and H3N2*
  - Frequent antigenic change, or *antigenic drift*:
    - Point mutations during viral replication, results in new influenza virus variants
    - Point mutations causing seasonal *epidemics* that generally occur in winter months in temperate zones
  - Occasionally, influenza A viruses form a new subtype through *antigenic shift*, creates the possibility of a *pandemic*
- *Mode of transmission*:
  - Large-particle respiratory droplet between individuals
  - Contact with contaminated surfaces
  - Incubation period is 1–4 days

Clinical presentation
- Fever, malaise, myalgia, headache, nonproductive cough, sore throat, and rhinitis.
- Children also may develop croup or bronchiolitis.
- Younger children may have febrile seizures or sepsis like symptoms.
- Uncomplicated influenza disease typically resolves within 3–7 days.

Complications
- Primary viral pneumonia
- Secondary bacterial infections such as pneumonia (*S. aureus and S. pneumoniae*)
- Sinusitis and otitis media
- Encephalitis
- Underlying medical conditions such as asthma or congenital heart disease *increases morbidity*

Diagnosis
- Rapid antigen-detection tests, immunofluorescence
- Viral culture, and reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR)
- In general, testing should be performed when the results are expected to affect patient care

AAP immunization guidelines
- *AAP* recommend annual vaccination of all children ages 6 months through 18 years before the start of influenza season.
- Regardless of seasonal epidemiology, children 6 months through 8 years of age who previously have *not* been immunized against influenza require two doses of trivalent inactivated influenza vaccine (TIV) or live-attenuated influenza vaccine (LAIV) administered at least 1 month apart to produce a satisfactory antibody response.

Three types of influenza vaccine
- TIV.
- Quadrivalent influenza vaccine now available.
- LAIV.
- Egg allergy is not a contraindication to influenza vaccine anymore, except severe allergic reaction (e.g., anaphylaxis)

Indication of antiviral medications
- Children who have influenza and are at high risk for complications, regardless of the severity of their illness.
- Healthy children who have moderate-to-severe illness.
- *Oseltamivir* is a neuraminidase inhibitors approved for treatment and prophylaxis of both influenza A and B.
- *Oseltamivir* is administered orally.
- The most common adverse effects are nausea and vomiting, although neuropsychiatric events have been reported.

Avian Influenza H5N1

Background
- Reported cases were in south Asia, Iraq, Turkey, and Egypt
- Highly pathogenic strain in birds and poultry
- It is not a human strain

Mode of transmission
- Human who have close contact to infected birds or poultry
- Visiting market selling live infected birds

Clinical presentation
- Severe lower respiratory disease in infected persons

Prevention
- H5N1 specific vaccine (developed and approved)
- Avoid visiting markets where live birds are sold
- Thorough cooking inactivates the virus but avoidance poultry if there a concern is more appropriate

Parainfluenza Virus

Background
- Parainfluenza viruses are paramyxoviruses distinct from the influenza family

Clinical manifestation
- May cause a clinical syndrome similar to that of influenza
- It is major cause of laryngotracheobronchitis (croup) in children (see respiratory section)
- They also can cause pneumonia and bronchiolitis
- Most parainfluenza infections are self-limited

Respiratory Syncytial Virus

Background
- Infection with RSV, the most common cause of bronchiolitis
- More than 90,000 hospitalizations of RSV infections
- High risk infants of severe bronchiolitis:
  - Infants younger than 3 months of age are at increased risk for apnea
  - Prematurity
  - Neonatal respiratory distress syndrome
  - Unrepaired congenital heart disease

Clinical presentation
- Upper respiratory prodrome is very common
- Cough, nasal congestion, and rhinorrhea
- Tachypnea
- Increased work of breathing
- Nasal flaring and grunting
- Inter-costal, supracostal, and subcostal retractions
- Suprasternal, Intercostal,and subcostal retractions
- Crackles, wheezes, and referred upper airway noise
- Upper airway obstruction can contribute significantly to increased work of breathing
- Variable hypoxemia

Diagnosis
- Based on history and physical examination
- Routine laboratory or radiologic studies are not recommended to support the diagnosis
- Common radiologic findings include hyperinflation, areas of atelectasis, and infiltrate

Management
- *Suctioning* may increase comfort and improve feeding.
  - Excessive suction can be associated with nasal edema and lead to additional obstructions.
- Know the "Day of illness" the worsening clinical symptoms, with peak symptomatology around day 3–4 of illness.
- Intravenous fluid hydration and oxygen administration may be required.
- Bronchodilators use is not recommended by AAP for routine use.
  - If an improvement in clinical status is documented, continued treatment with bronchodilator therapy might be considered.
- Corticosteroid medications, inhaled or administered systemically, should not be used in the treatment of bronchiolitis.
- Initiation of antibiotic therapy for suspected acute otitis media (AOM) should be based on patient age, severity of illness, and diagnostic certainty.
- Chest physiotherapy should not be used to treat bronchiolitis.

Human Metapneumovirus

Background
- Humans are the only source
- Overlap with RSV season

Clinical presentation
- Bronchiolitis indistinguishable from RSV bronchiolitis
- Most children have one human metapneumovirus infection before 5 years of age

Treatment
- Supportive

Rhinoviruses (RVs)

- The most common cause of common cold (25–80 % of cases).
- The common cold is an acute respiratory tract infection (ARTI) characterized by mild coryzal symptoms, rhinorrhea, nasal obstruction, and sneezing.
- The most common virus triggers asthma.
- About 200 antigenically distinct viruses from eight different genera can cause common cold as well (66–75 %).

Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS) Associated Coronavirus Infection

Background
- Outbreak occurred with hundreds of reported death cases in China, Hong Kong, Taiwan, and Singapore.
- Can cause SARS.
- SARS-associated coronavirus (SARS-CoV).
- Through air travel can spread to many areas of the world, e.g., Canada.
- It is a serious potentially life-threatening viral infection.

Mode of transmission
- Airborne is the primary route

Clinical presentation
- Most cases affect adults
- Young children usually develop milder symptoms if infected
- Fever, cough, difficulty breathing

Treatment
- Mainly prevention
- No specific treatment showed benefits

Gastrointestinal Viral Infection

- Norovirus (Norwalk virus)
- Rotavirus

Norwalk Virus

Background
- Norovirus, formerly referred to as Norwalk virus, is the most common cause of epidemic nonbacterial gastroenteritis in the world.
- CDC report that noroviruses account for more than 96 % of all viral gastroenteritis cases in the USA.

Clinical presentation
- Nausea and vomiting (profuse, nonbloody, nonbilious)
- Watery diarrhea (nonbloody)
- Abdominal cramps
- Headaches
- Low-grade fever is common: but temperatures may reach 38.9 °C
- Myalgias and malaise

Rotavirus

Background
- It is a cause of severe acute gastroenteritis
- The disease is significant in infants who are not immunized with rotavirus vaccine

Clinical presentation
- Severe watery diarrhea, electrolyte imbalance, and metabolic acidosis
- Severe dehydration can occur

Immunization
- Oral human attenuated monovalent rotavirus (RV1) or Rotarix for 2 and 4 months of age by mouth

RNA Viruses

- Enterovirus
- HIV
- Measles
- Mumps
- Rubella
- Rabies
- Arboviruses

Enteroviruses

Non-polio viruses (coxsachievirus A and B, echoviruses and enterovirus)
- Background
  - More common in the summer
  - Enteroviruses transmitted by the feco-oral route and person to person
- Meningitis/Encephalitis
  - Meningitis commonly caused by echovirus
  - Common in older children
  - Fever, headache, photophobia, and nuchal rigidity, CSF pleocytosis
  - Severe complications: seizure, hemiparesis, hearing loss, and mental deterioration

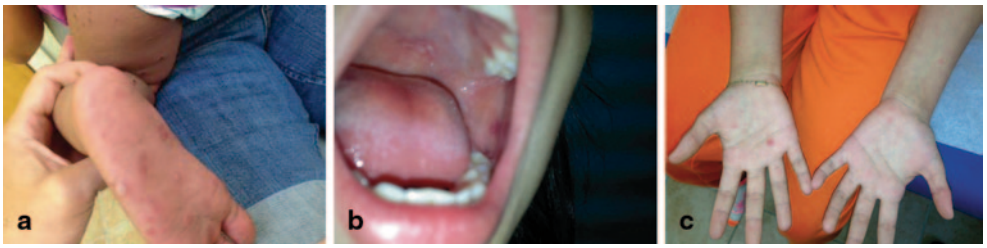


Fig. 5 Hand-foot-mouth disease: **a.** Tender vesicles and macules on an erythematous base, and crusted vesicles on the foot and the leg. **b.** Multiple vesicles that erode and become surrounded by an erythematous halo in the mouth. **c.** Erythematous macules and vesicles on the palm

- No signs toxicity as in bacterial meningitis
- *Best diagnostic test*: CSF enterovirus PCR

- Herpangina
  - Caused by Coxsackievirus type A is a subgroup of enterovirus which is a subgroup of picornavirus
  - *Sudden onset of high fever* in 3–10 years of age, and can be associated with vomiting, malaise, myalgia, and backache
  - Poor intake, drooling, sore throat, dysphagia, and dehydration may occur
  - *Oral lesions*:
    - One or more small tender papular pinpoint vescular lesions, on erythematous base on anterior pillars of the faucets, soft palate, uvula, tonsils, and tongue, then ulcerate in 3–4 days.
- Hand-foot-mouth disease (Fig. 5)
  - Coxsackie A16 and enterovirus 71
  - Fever (may be present)
  - Oral vesicles and ulcers on buccal mucosa and tongue
  - Painful vesicles on hands and feet, it may affect the groin, and buttocks
  - Usually last for 7–10 days
  - Most common complication is dehydration due to odynophagia
- Acute hemorrhagic conjunctivitis
  - Subconjunctival hemorrhage
  - Swelling, redness, and tearing of the eye
  - Resolve spontaneously within 7 days
- Myocarditis/pericarditis
  - Commonly caused by Coxsackievirus B or echovirus
  - Common symptoms; shortness of breath, chest pain, fever, and weakness
- Congenital and neonatal infection
  - Can range from mild febrile infection to encephalitis and negative bacterial culture
  - Can cause hepatic necrosis

Poliovirus infection

- Background
  - Polioviruses are enterovirus belong to family of Picornaviridae
- Clinical presentation
  - Fever common in less than 6 years of age
  - Aseptic meningitis
  - Flaccid paralysis in a descending manner without reflexes
  - The poliovirus destroys the anterior horn cells in the spinal cord
- Diagnosis
  - Viral stool culture
  - Throat swab
- Treatment
  No curative treatment
- Prevention
  - Polio vaccine (IPV/OPV)

Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)

Background

- HIV is RNA virus
- Highest infectivity due to the very high (3–4 weeks) initial viremia
- Nearly all patients seroconvert within 6 months of acquiring the infection

Mode of transmission

- *HIV infection is transmitted* by two principal modes in the pediatric age group:
- Mother-to-child
  - Transplacental transfer
  - Exposure to maternal blood, amniotic fluid, and cervicovaginal secretions during delivery
  - Postpartum through breastfeeding
- *Behavioral* (risk behavior in adolescent either unprotected sex or injection drugs)

Clinical presentation

- During the "window period:
  - Infected person has a negative HIV antibody test result, but HIV RNA testing results are usually positive
- Acute retroviral syndrome, characterized by:

  - Fever, lymphadenopathy, rash, myalgia, arthralgia, headache, diarrhea, oral ulcers, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and transaminitis
- Red flags of HIV infection
  - Thrush in apparently healthy child or adolescent
  - Invasive candidal infections
  - Recurrent severe infections
  - Lymphadenopathy and/or hepatosplenomegaly
  - Failure to thrive
  - Parotid enlargement

Diagnosis
- Infants born to HIV-positive mothers
  - *Most infants* are normal at birth and then may develop lymphadenopathy, HSM, chronic diarrhea, failure to thrive, and oral candidiasis.
  - Within the first 48 h, 14 days, and 4 weeks of life, 38, 93, and 96% of infected children, respectively, have positive HIV DNA PCR results.
  - Any positive HIV DNA PCR finding should be confirmed with follow-up HIV DNA PCR before infection is diagnosed.
  - *HIV DNA PCR* testing: HIV infection can be ruled out if one of the following is true:
  - DNA HIV PCR results are consistently negative in an infant older than 4 months in the absence of breastfeeding.
  - Two DNA HIV PCR results obtained at least one month apart are negative in an infant older than 6 months.
  - *HIV antibody* testing between 12 and 18 months of age to confirm the loss of maternal antibody is optional.
- Screening and diagnosis of children older than age 18 months
  - Screening enzyme-linked immunoassay (EIA)
  - Confirmatory test such as western blot is performed if EIA is positive

Evaluation of HIV positive children
- CD4 percentage and absolute cell counts
- Plasma HIV RNA concentration (viral load)
- HIV genotype to assess for baseline resistance, and mutations
- Complete blood count with differential count
- Serum chemistries with liver and renal function tests
- Lipid profile and urinalysis
- For children younger than 5 years of age, CD4 percentage is the preferred test for monitoring immune status
- Screening for hepatitis B and C infection as well as for tuberculosis is recommended for all HIV-infected patients

Treatment of HIV
- Triple-drug combination antiretroviral therapy effectively controls HIV infection

Prevention
- *Breastfeeding* is contraindicated in HIV positive mothers.
- *All exposed infants* should receive 6 weeks of ZDV
- Condoms and abstinence are the best forms of preventing sexual transmission of AIDS
- Cesarean delivery and treatment of HIV-positive mothers (specially with high viral load) decreases the risk of transmission of HIV to their infants
- *Immunization* of infants and children
  - Immunization schedule for HIV-exposed children is *the same* as for their healthy peers, with only a few exceptions:
    - Patients who have severely symptomatic illness.
    - Patient with CD4 percentage of less than 15% or CD4 counts of less than 200 cells/mm^3 should not receive measles-mumps-rubella (MMR), varicella vaccines or live vaccines.
  - *Annual influenza immunization* is recommended for all children older than age 6 months, but only the killed vaccine.

Measles

Background
- *Mode of transmission*: respiratory droplets (airborne).
- The virus is infectious for 3–4 days before the onset of morbilliform rash and 4 days after the exanthem.

Diagnosis
- IgM level serology (most reliable test)
- Antigen detection in respiratory epithelial cells
- Tissue by immunofluorescent method or PCR

Clinical presentation
- Coryza
- Cough
- Conjunctivitis
- High fever
- Koplik spots
- Rash is erythematous maculopapular rash spread from up–down and disappear the same way

Prevention
- Intramuscular (IM) immunoglobulin prophylaxis should be given to unimmunized child if exposed to measles infection
- Infants (6–12 months) should be pre-vaccinated before travelling to high risk areas, e.g., India.

- Children received measles vaccine before 1 year do not count and need to receive two doses of MMR after 12 months for full immunization.
- Infected child with measles should be placed under airborne precaution transmission and isolated for 4 days after the rash and for all duration of illness if immunocompromised.

Complications
- Otitis media is the most common
- Pneumonia (common cause of death)
- Encephalitis
- Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE) is rare and it may occur after 6–15 years

Mumps

Background
- Mumps is an acute, self-limited, systemic viral illness characterized by the swelling of one or more of the salivary glands, typically the parotid glands.
- The illness is caused by a specific RNA virus, known as Rubulavirus.

Mode of transmission
- Airborne and contact to respiratory secretions
- Incubation period is 12–25 days

Clinical presentation
- Symptoms in the patient's history consist mostly of fever, headache, and malaise.
- Within 24 h, patients may report ear pain localized near the lobe of the ear and aggravated by a chewing movement of the jaw.
- Unilateral or bilateral parotid swelling at least for 2 days.

Complications
- Encephalitis and orchitis
- Arthritis, thyroiditis, pancreatitis, myocarditis, oophoritis (rare)

Diagnosis
- Serology and virus isolation

Prevention
- MMR vaccine at 1 and 4 years of age
- Isolation of infected individual is 9 days from the onset of parotid swelling
- Unimmunized children should stay at home for 26 days from the last case in school

Rubella

Background
- The name rubella is derived from a Latin term meaning "little red".
- Rubella is generally a benign communicable exanthematous disease.
- It is caused by rubella virus, which is a member of the Rubivirus genus of the family Togaviridae.
- Disease transmission: by droplet inhalation from the respiratory tract of an infected host.
- Incubation period: 14–21 days.
- Communicability: Patients are infectious 2 days before and 5–7 days after the rash.

Clinical presentation
- Lymphadenopathy:
  - Retroauricular
  - Postauricular
  - Posterior occipital
- Rash:
  - Maculopapular erythematous rash last for 3 days
  - Forschheimer spots; rose colored spot on soft palate
- Other manifestation:
  - Pharyngitis and conjunctivitis
  - Anorexia, headache, and malaise
  - Low-grade fever and polyarthritis

Complications
- Congenital rubella syndrome
  - Cataract, salt and pepper chorioretinitis, and deafness
  - PDA
  - IUGR and microcephaly
  - HSM and jaundice
  - Blueberry muffin rash
  - Anemia, thrombocytopenia, and leukopenia
  - B-cell, and T-cell deficiency
  - Metaphyseal lucencies
- Infant with congenital rubella may shed the virus from the nasal mucosa > 1 year to susceptible contact

Rabies Virus

Background
- Rabies virus is a RNA virus classified in the Rhabdoviridae family
- Usually is transmitted by bats and carnivores, e.g., raccoon, foxes, and coyotes

Clinical presentation
- Anxiety
- Dysphagia

- Seizures
- Encephalitis
- In most cases progress to death

Prophylaxis recommendation
- All person bitten by, bats, carnivores, e.g., raccoon, foxes, and coyotes
- Domestic animals that may be infected
- Open wound or scratch contaminated with saliva of infected animals or human
- Prompt local flushing and cleaning the wound with soap and water
- The need for tetanus and antibiotic should be considered

Passive and active immunization should be started as soon as possible
- Human rabies immunoglobulin (passive).
- Rabies vaccine (active).
- Both should be given together.
- Human rabies immunoglobulin as much as possible of the dose should be infiltrated directly to wound, the remainder of the dose should be given intramuscularly.
- Rabies vaccine should be given IM, the first dose immediately after exposure then repeated at days 3, 7, and 14.

Arboviruses

- West Nile virus
- Dengue fever

West Nile Virus

Background
- It is the most common arbovirus identified in the USA
- West Nile virus is transmitted by mosquitoes
- Typically the spring and summer
- California, Colorado, and Idaho are the most common location

Clinical presentation
- Most cases are asymptomatic
- May present with fever and flu-like symptoms
- Fever, headache, altered mental status, paresis, nerve palsies, or coma in more severe cases

Diagnosis
- Fourfold rise in virus-specific serum antibodies, or positive IgM-CSF antibody titer is helpful in the diagnosis

Treatment
- Supportive

Dengue Fever

Background
- Dengue fever is an arbovirus transmitted by mosquitoes
- Typically the spring and summer
- History of travel to endemic area is the most important part to assist in the diagnosis of Dengue fever
- Endemic in Latin America and Puerto Rico
- Key West, Miami, Florida are endemic areas in the USA

Clinical presentation
- Severe muscle, and joint pain
- Headache, and retro-orbital pain
- Nonspecific rash, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and respiratory symptoms
- It can lead to dengue shock syndrome and death

Laboratory
- It may show leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and modest elevation of liver enzyme
- Fourfold rise in virus-specific serum antibodies, or positive IgM-CSF antibody titer is helpful in the diagnosis
- *Treatment* is supportive

Hepatitis A Virus (HAV)

Background
- HAV is the most common cause of viral hepatitis worldwide
- No known animal reservoir
- Mode of transmission is fecal-oral route
- Incubation period is 15–50 days
- *Highest period of communicability* is 1 week before and after the onset of symptoms
- CD8+T cells are responsible for the destruction of infected liver cells

Clinical presentation
- In children younger than 5 years may be asymptomatic or with just few symptoms
- Older children and adult may develop symptoms of acute infection which may last 2 weeks to several months
- Malaise, anorexia, fever, nausea, vomiting, and eventually jaundice
- Most of the cases generally resolve without sequelae within a few weeks

Diagnosis
- *Anti-HAV immune globulin M* (IgM) in a single serum sample is a good test for current or recent infection.

Prevention
- HAV vaccine at 12 months and booster dose at least 6 months after the initial dose.
- Prevention of HAV infection can be promoted by enforcing good hygiene in child care centers, with conscientious hand washing after changing diapers and before handling food.
- If travelling is imminent to endemic areas or the patient is immunocompromised, immunoglobulin (IG) can be administered simultaneously with vaccine.

Treatment
- Mainly supportive
- Avoid acetaminophen, it can exacerbate damage to liver cells

Prognosis
- HAV does not carry the risk of chronic infection
- Immunity after infection is life-long

Hepatitis B Virus (HBV)

Background
- The infection has an incubation period of 2–6 months
- HBV is commonly transmitted via body fluids such as blood, semen, and vaginal secretions
- HBV does not spread by breast feeding, kissing, hugging, sharing utensils

Clinical presentation
- Acute self-limited hepatitis:
  - Increase in serum transaminases and resolution of the infection within 6 months
  - Nausea
  - Fever
  - Abdominal pain
  - Jaundice, fatigue
  - General malaise
- Fulminant hepatitis:
  - Acute hepatitis associated with a change in mental status due hepatic encephalopathy
- Chronic hepatitis:
  - Generally is asymptomatic in childhood, having minimal or no effect on growth and development
  - Serum transaminase values usually are normal
  - They can flare at any time

Hepatitis B viral serology and liver functions tests
- *HBsAg* is the first serologic marker to appear and found in infected persons, its rise correlates with the acute symptoms.
- *Anti-HBc* is the single *most valuable serologic* marker of acute HBV infection, because it appears as early as HBsAg, and continue later in the course of the disease when HBsAg disappeared.
- *Anti-HBs* marks serologic recovery and protection; marks vaccine immunity.
- *Both Anti HBs and Anti HBc* are detected in person with resolved infection.
- *HBeAg* is present in person with active acute or chronic infection and marks infectivity.
- *Anti-HBe* marks improvement and is the goal of therapy in chronically infected patients.
- *Remember*: Alanine transaminase (AST) and aspartate aminotransferase (ALT) can be derived from muscle, you should verify that serum creatine kinase and aldolase values are within the normal range before assuming that the elevated serum AST and ALT values are hepatic in origin.
- Test reflecting cholestasis
  - High-serum concentrations of gamma-glutamyl transferase
  - High-serum alkaline phosphatase
  - High-conjugated bilirubin
- Test reflecting liver failure
  - High-prothrombin time, despite administration of vitamin K
  - *Low-serum albumin* concentrations are the most useful indicators of impaired synthetic liver function
- HBV perinatal infection
  - Nearly all perinatally acquired HBV infection are asymptomatic
  - Maternal screening of all pregnant women for HBV is now standard
  - Prophylaxis for all newborns of HBV-positive women in the first 12 h after birth:
    - Combination of passive (IgG) and active immunization (first dose of the vaccine) followed by the complete HBV vaccine schedule
  - Breastfeeding does not increase the risk of transmission

Treatment is mainly supportive
- Interferon-Alpha2b and lamivudine are the current approved therapy

Hepatitis C Viral Infection (HCV)

Background
- HCV is a spherical, enveloped, single-stranded RNA virus belonging to the Flaviviridae family and *Flavivirus* genus
- Egypt had the highest number of reported infections with 22 % prevalence of HCV antibodies in persons in Egypt.

Mode of transmission
- Infants and children

  - The maternal-fetal route is the principal route of transmission
- Adults
  - Injection during drug abuse is the most common mode of transmission

Long term complication of HCV infection
- Chronic carrier
- Chronic hepatitis
- Hepatocellular carcinoma

Testing for HCV
- *HCV infection* is investigated by measuring anti-HCV antibody and is confirmed by the detection of serum HCV RNA by PCR.
- *Screening of infants* born to HCV-infected mothers is recommended by measuring serum anti-HCV antibody *at 18 months of age*.
- Know that children with chronic hepatitis C infection should undergo periodic screening tests for hepatic complications and the treatment regimens are available.

Treatment (see GI chapter for more details)
- Genotype 1 is the most aggressive and most resistant to antiviral therapy
- Genome 2 and 3 has a better response
- *Remember*: A high rate of spontaneous mutations in the viral genome is the reason for the lack of an effective vaccine.

Human Papillomavirus (HPV)

Background
- Oncogenic strain 16 and 18 are responsible for two thirds of all cervical cancers
- Nononcogenic HPV type 6 and 11 are responsible for >90% of anogenital wart

Immunization
- Quadrivalent vaccine contains types 6, 11, 16, and 18
- Bivalent vaccine contains 16 and 18

Bacterial Pathogens

Gram Positive Bacteria

S. aureus

Background
- *S. aureus* is a well-known cause of both local and invasive infection
- Coagulase positive

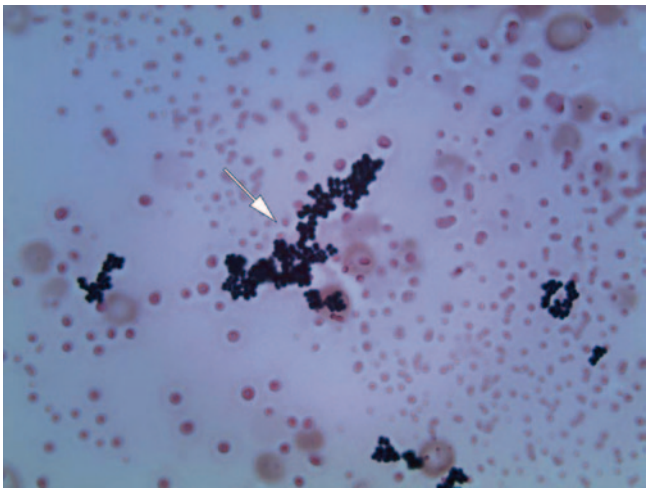


Fig. 6 *Staphylococci* in blood culture (gram stain, original magnification ×1000). The bacteria are gram-positive cocci and grow inpairs, tetrads, and clusters (*arrow*)

- Grapelike clusters (Fig. 6)
- *S. aureus* colonizes the nares and skin in 30–50% of children

Common staphylococcal infections:
- Bullous and crusted impetigo.
- Soft tissue or lymph node infection.
- If the organism seeds the bloodstream, dissemination to joints, bones, kidney, liver, muscles, lung, and heart valves may occur, causing substantial morbidity and potential mortality.
- *S. aureus* is the most common cause of osteomyelitis, except sickle cell anemia patients is usually caused by *salmonella*.
- Children with cyanotic congenital heart disease are at high risk of staphylococcal brain abscess.
- Children who undergo neurosurgical procedures, specially shunt revisions at high risk for staphylococcal infection.
- Catheters are usually associated with staphylococcal infection and must be removed if the patient develops symptoms or positive culture, and antibiotic must be started.

Folliculitis/Furunculosis/Carbunculosis (Fig. 7a and b)

Background
- Folliculitis: superficial inflammation centered around a follicle.
- Furuncles: bacterial folliculitis of a single follicle that involves a deeper portion of the follicle.
- Carbuncle: bacterial folliculitis that involves the deeper portion of several contiguous follicles.

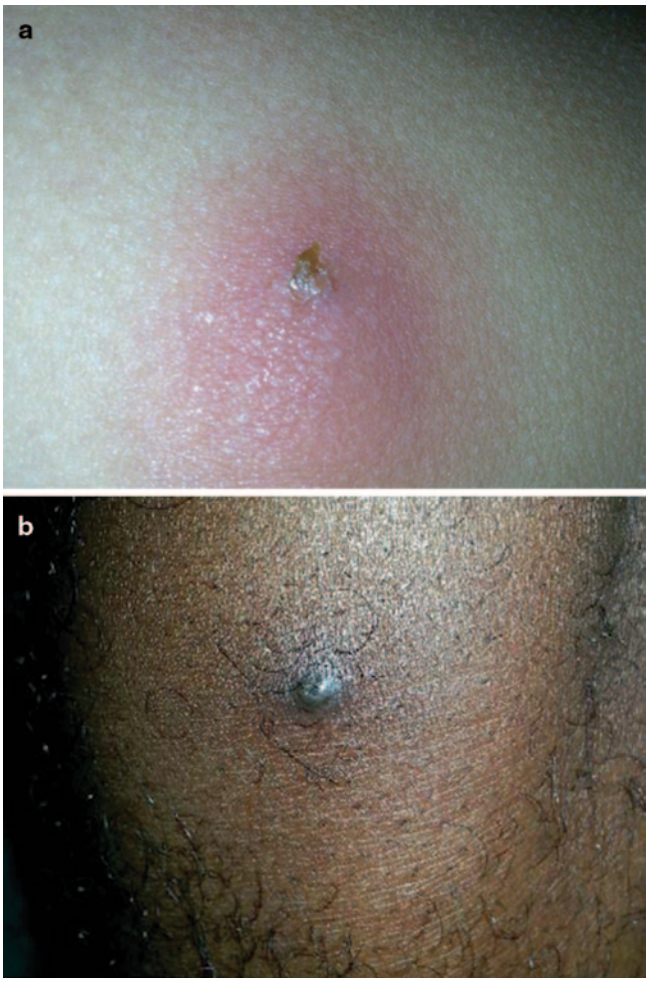


Fig. 7 **a** Furuncle: erythematous tender papulonodule with central punctum and point of fluctuant. **b** Folliculitis: Superficial inflammation centered around a follicle, tender to touch

- Bacterial folliculitis most often caused by *S. aureus*.
- Hot tub folliculitis is usually caused by gram-negative bacteria (most often *P. aeruginosa*. It is self limited).
- Usually the child looks healthy and does not appear ill.
- Abscess (< 5 cm) drainage alone is curative and should be performed along with a request for culture.

Management
- Indication of antibiotics
  - The child has high fever or other systemic symptoms.
  - The abscess is larger than 5 cm.
  - Located in a critical location or in a difficult to drain area.
  - Signs and symptoms persist following incision and drainage.
- Common anti-staphylococcal antibiotics:
  - TMP-SMX effective against MRSA
  - Cephalexin remains a good empiric choice for MSSA and GAS infections
  - Clindamycin
  - Doxycycline (in children older than 8 years of age)
- Recurrent staphylococcal skin infections recommendations:
  - Enhanced hygiene and environmental cleaning
  - Treatment for anyone in the family who has active disease
  - Nasal mupirocin
  - Skin decolonization (chlorhexidine or bleach baths)
  - Treatment with antibiotic-based decolonization regimens (usually rifampin plus an additional agent) in selected cases

Toxic Shock Syndrome (TSS)

Background
- Production of toxic shock syndrome toxin-1 (TSST-1).
- Can be caused by *S. aureus* or *S. pyogenes*.

Risk factors
- Tampon
- Surgical implants
- Invasive staphylococcal disease, including pneumonia and skeletal infection
- Nasal packing
- Progressive skin infection in cases caused by *S. pyogenes*

Clinical presentation
- Fever
- Vomiting
- Hypotension (abrupt onset)
- Hypocalcemia
- Watery diarrhea
- Myalgia
- Strawberry tongue
- Conjunctival hyperemia
- Rash with hand and foot desquamation
- Blood culture is usually negative if the cause is *S. aureus*
- Blood culture is usually positive if the cause is *S. pyogenes*

Treatment
- Vancomycin or clindamycin
- In cases of tampon-associated TSS, must be removed immediately and the recommended length of therapy is 10–14 days
- IV fluid and routine management of shock.
- Do not treat hypocalcemia unless is symptomatic or electrocardiogram (EKG) changes.
- Anytime there is a postsurgical toxic shock, any device implanted during surgery must be removed immediately.

Staphylococcal Scalded Skin Syndrome (SSSS)

Background
- SSSS also known as Ritter's Disease of the Newborn
- Ritter disease and staphylococcal epidermal necrolysis, encompasses a spectrum of superficial blistering skin disorders caused by the exfoliative toxins of some strains of *S. aureus*.
- SSSS differs from bullous impetigo, the exfoliative toxins are restricted to the area of infection in bullous impetigo, and bacteria can be cultured from the blister contents.
- Exfoliative toxins cause separation of the epidermis beneath the granular cell layer. Bullae and diffuse sheet -like desquamation occurs.
- Exotoxin is a protein and is classified as either type A or B. Most are type A.

Clinical presentation
- Fever, malaise, and irritability.
- Most of the patients do not appear severely ill.
- Tenderness to palpation.
- Dehydration may be present and can be significant.
- Nikolsky sign (gentle stroking of the skin causes the skin to separate at the epidermis.
- Bacteremia may or may not present.

Diagnosis
- Blood culture is usually negative in children (but positive in bullous impetigo) and is usually positive in adults.
- A chest radiograph should be considered to rule out pneumonia as the original focus of infection.
- A biopsy of the affected area will demonstrate separation of the epidermis at the granular layer.

Management
- Fluid rehydration is initiated with Lactated Ringer solution at 20 mL/kg initial bolus.
- Repeat the initial bolus, as clinically indicated, and followed by maintenance therapy with consideration for fluid losses from exfoliation of skin being similar to a burn patient.
- Prompt treatment with parenteral anti-staphylococcal antibiotics is essential.

S. aureus Food Poisoning

Background
- *S. aureus* is the most common cause of food poisoning in the USA
- Eating from contaminated food containing preformed enterotoxin
- Usually associated with meat, baked food filled with cream, and mayonnaise
- Incubation period < 4–6 h

Clinical presentation
- Nausea, vomiting, and abdominal cramps in few hours after exposure to contaminated food
- Fever may be present
- Some children can have severe dehydration

Management
- Hydration
- No antibiotic is required

Staphylococcal, Coagulase-Negative

Background
- *Staphylococcus epidermidis* and *Staphylococcus saprophyticus* are example of coagulase-negative staphylococci
- *S. epidermidis* is methicillin-resistant in most cases
- *S. epidermidis* is the most common cause of catheter-related bacteremia
- Catheter become contaminated when passing through the skin
- *S. epidermidis is a common contaminant in the blood cultures*

Common source of infection
- Skin, mucus membrane
- Nosocomial infection
- Intravenous catheter
- Ventriculoperitoneal shunts
- Prosthetic devices, e.g., heart valves, joints, and pacemakers
- Bone marrow transplant
- Premature infants (intravascular catheter)

Management
- Removal of the foreign body may be necessary to clear the infection.
- In neonatal intensive care unit (NICU), positive culture must be initially treated if a suspicious of infection.
- Draw two cultures from two different sites to be considered positive, both culture should be positive within 24 h.
- Vancomycin is the drug of choice.

Methicillin-Sensitive S. aureus (MSSA)

Background
- Most of *S. aureus* strains produce beta-lactamase enzyme and are resistant to penicillin and ampicillin

Drug of choice
- Nafcillin or oxacillin

Alternative drugs
- Cefazolin
- Clindamycin

- Vancomycin
- Ampicillin + sulbactam

Methicillin-Resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA)

Background
- MRSA strains are resistant to all beta-lactamase resistant (BLR) beta-lactam and cephalosporin antimicrobial agents as well as other antimicrobial agents.

Drug of choice in MRSA cases (oxacillin MIC, 4≥µg/mL)
- Vancomycin ± gentamicin or ± rifampin (multidrug resistance)
- e.g., endocarditis, septicemia, and CNS infection (combination therapy is recommended)
- *Alternative drugs in MRSA cases* (multidrug resistance)
  - Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
  - Linezolid
  - Quinupristin/dalfopristin
  - Fluoroquinolones

Community (not multidrug resistance)
- Vancomycin ± gentamicin (or ± rifampin) for life threatening infections, e.g., endocarditis.
- Clindamycin (if strain susceptible) for pneumonia, septic arthritis, osteomyelitis, skin, or soft tissue infection.
- Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for skin or soft tissue infections.
- Vancomycin.
- Vancomycin-intermediately susceptible *S. aureus*.

Eradication of nasal carriage of S. aureus
- Use mupirocin twice a day for 1–7 days.

Group B Streptococcus (GBS) or Streptococcus agalactiae

Background
- Gram-positive diplococcus
- Transmission
  - The primary reservoir in adults is the lower gastrointestinal tract, followed by the genitourinary tract.
  - The presence of GBS in the maternal genital tract at birth is the significant determinant of colonization and infection in the infant.
- The most common maternal manifestations are asymptomatic bacteriuria, urinary tract infection (UTI), bacteremia, chorioamnionitis, and endometritis.

Early onset disease (EOD)
- Typically occurs within the first 24 h after birth but can occur up to 1 week of age.
- Infants can present with a range of illness, from asymptomatic bacteremia to septic shock.
- Respiratory symptoms, such as tachypnea, grunting, flaring, apnea, and cyanosis, are the initial clinical findings in more than 80% of neonates.
- Hypotension is present in 25%.
- Lethargy, poor feeding, temperature instability, abdominal distention, pallor, tachycardia, and jaundice.

Late onset disease (LOD)
- Presents most commonly within the first 4–6 weeks after birth
- Bacteremia without a defined focus remains the most common manifestation
- Meningitis is more common in LOD than EOD
- Pneumonia, cellulitis, and osteoarticular infections

Diagnosis of invasive GBS infection
- Isolation of the organism from a normally sterile body site, such as blood or CSF
- C-reactive protein level and white blood cell count, may be helpful

Management
- Initial treatment for EOD usually is ampicillin plus gentamicin, until the identity of the pathogen is determined.
- If meningitis is suspected, the ampicillin dose should increase 150–200 mg/kg/day and the gentamicin dose is 7.5 mg/kg/day.
- The drug of choice for treatment of proven GBS infections is penicillin.
- The recommended dosage for treatment of bacteremia without meningitis is 200,000 units/kg/day and increases to 300,000–500,000 units/kg/day for meningitis.
- Length of treatment depends on the site of infection.
- Bacteremia without a focus requires 10 days of therapy.
- Meningitis requires a minimum of 14 days.

Prevention Guidelines
- The drug of choice for intrapartum prophylaxis remains intravenous penicillin, with ampicillin as an acceptable alternative.
- Both agents are given every 4 h until delivery, with at least one dose administered 4 h before birth.

S. pneumonia (Pneumococcal Infection)

Background
- *S. pneumoniae* is a gram-positive, catalase-negative, alpha-hemolytic bacterium.
- The bacteria are gram-positive diplococci (Fig. 8).

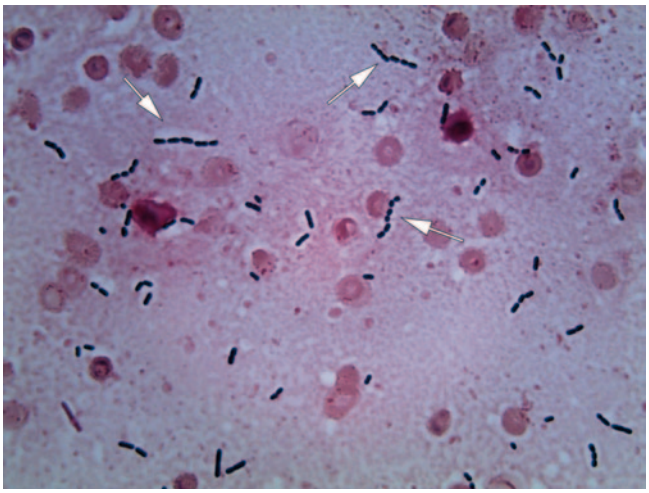


Fig. 8 *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (pneumococci) in blood culture (gram stain, original magnification ×1000). The bacteria are gram-positive diplococci (*arrows*). They are often lancet-shaped

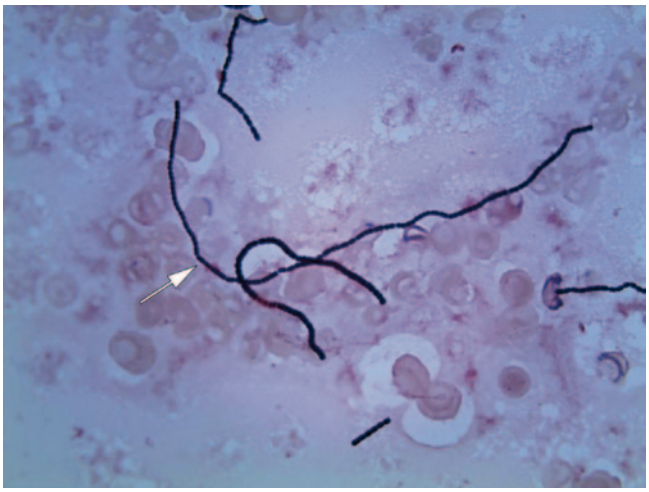


Fig. 9 *Streptococci* in blood culture (gram stain, original magnification x1000). The bacteria are gram-positive cocci and grow in chains (arrow)

- Introduction of PCV7 and PCV13 significantly reduced invasive pneumococcal disease in children.

Risks of invasive pneumococcal disease (IPD)

- The highest age-specific attack rates of IPD occur during the first 2 years after birth
- Children who have sickle cell disease
- Children who have asplenia
- Congenital immune deficiencies
- Immunosuppressive medications or bone marrow transplants also are at increased risk
- CSF leaks, e.g., neurosurgical procedures or skull fractures
- Cochlear implants

Clinical Manifestations

- Common pneumococcal infections include:
  - AOM
  - Sinusitis
  - Pneumonia
  - Bacteremia (most common manifestation of invasive pneumococcal disease)
  - Meningitis (leading cause of meningitis)
- Pneumonia
  - *S. pneumoniae* is the most common bacterial cause of community-acquired pneumonia in both children and adults
  - High fever and ill appearing
  - Cough and tachypnea
  - Respiratory distress
  - Crackles
  - Diminished breath sounds
  - Lobar consolidation may be noted on chest radiography in older children
  - *Know that* Infants and young children may have bronchopneumonia with a scattered distribution of parenchymal consolidation
  - Pleural fluid may be evident in some patients

Diagnosis

- Pneumococcal infection is diagnosed with certainty by isolation of the organism from blood or normally sterile body fluids such as CSF, pleural, synovial, or middle-ear fluid.
- Antigen detection.
- Susceptibility test.

Treatment

- *Outpatient Pneumonia*: Amoxicillin or amoxicillin-clavulanate in dosages recommended for AOM should be administered to children whose pneumonia is managed as outpatients.
  - Cefuroxime axetil and cefdinir also are effective empiric agents
- *Inpatient pneumonia* Parenteral penicillin, ampicillin, cefuroxime, cefotaxime, and ceftriaxone are acceptable treatments for hospitalized children who have pneumonia.
- *Pneumococcal meningitis* due to concerns about antibiotic resistance, the treatment of proven or suspected cases mandates empiric therapy with *cefotaxime or ceftriaxone plus vancomycin*.

Streptococcus pyogenes

- *Group A Streptococcus* (GAS) is a gram-positive bacterium that grows in chains (Fig. 9).

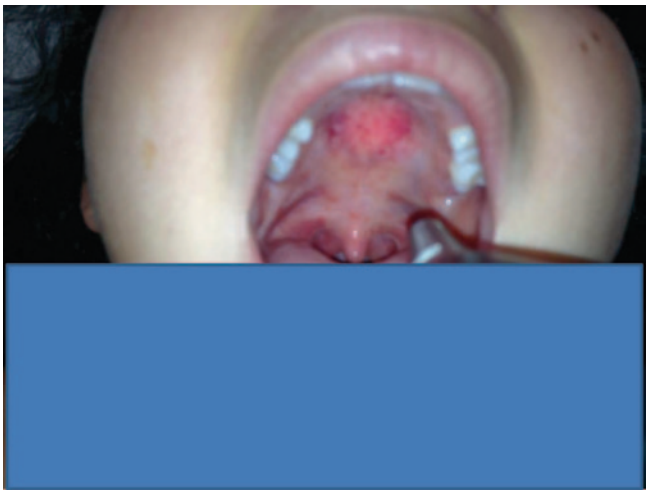


Fig. 10 Streptococcal pharyngitis: palatal petechiae, rapid strep was positive in this patient

Group A Beta-Hemolytic Strepotococci (GABHS) Pharyngitis

Background

- GAS is a gram-positive bacterium that grows in chains
- The most common GAS infection
- Most often in school-age children
- Transmission results from contact with infected respiratory tract secretions
- Close contact in schools and child care centers
- The incubation period for GAS pharyngitis is 2–4 days

Clinical presentation

- Sore throat, fever, headache, and abdominal pain is the most classic presentation
- Nausea, vomiting may occur
- Pharyngeal erythema and palatal petechiae (Fig. 10)
- Inflammation of the uvula
- Anterior cervical lymphadenopathy
- Tonsillar exudates may or may not present

Diagnosis

- Rapid antigen detection test is highly recommended to decrease overuse of antibiotics.
- Testing of asymptomatic household contacts not recommended except when contacts are at increased risk of developing sequelae of GAS infection, e.g., rheumatic fever, poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis, or toxic shock syndrome.
- If rapid antigen detection test (RADT) positive treat (specificity of 95%).
- If RADT is negative do throat culture (sensitivity of 65–90%).
- Treatment of GAS sore throat as long as 9 days after the onset of symptoms still effectively prevents rheumatic fever, initiation of antibiotics is seldom of urgent importance.

Treatment

- Reduces complications.
- Decrease the duration of infection.
- Reduces transmission to others.
- *Oral penicillin* V K (250–500 mg twice to three times a day for 10 days) is the antibiotic treatment of choice for GAS pharyngitis.
- *Amoxicillin* (50 mg/kg, maximum 1 g, once daily for 10 days) often is used instead of oral penicillin because of its more palatable liquid formulation.
- *Cephalosporins or macrolides* may be used as first-line therapy in patients allergic to beta-lactam antibiotics but otherwise are not recommended as first-line therapy.
- Intramuscular penicillin G benzathine 600 000 U for children who weigh <27 kg and 1.2 million U for heavier children as single dose (if the adherence is a problem but is painful)
- *Know that* treatment is indicated if a GAS carrier develops an acute illness consistent with GAS pharyngitis.

Treatment to eradicate GAS carriage indications

- History of acute rheumatic fever
- Close contact who has a history of rheumatic fever
- Families experiencing repeated episodes of GAS pharyngitis
- *Eradication regimens* include clindamycin, cephalosporins, amoxicillin-clavulanate

Indications for tonsillectomy include

- More than seven documented GAS infections in 1 year or
- More than five episodes in each of the preceding 2 consecutive years
- Know that incidence of pharyngitis decreases with age

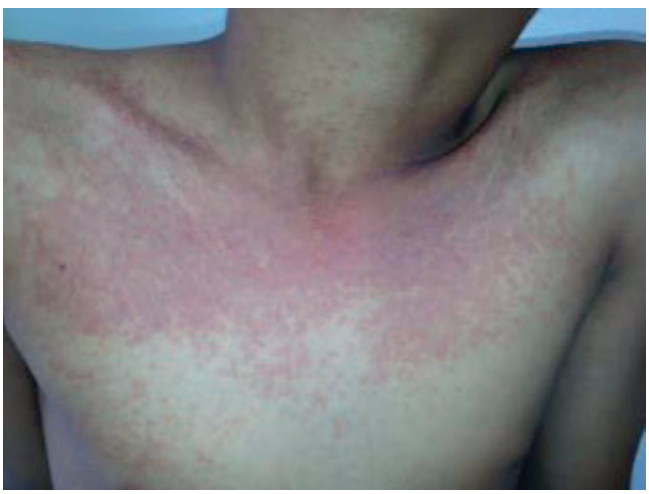


Fig. 11 Scarlet fever: fine erythematous punctate eruption with dry, rough texture to the skin that resembles the feel of coarse sandpaper and scarlet macules overlying the generalized erythema

Scarlet Fever

Background

- Scarlet fever (scarlatina) is a syndrome characterized by exudative pharyngitis, fever, and scarlatiniform rash.
- It is caused by toxin-producing GABHS found in secretions and discharge from the nose, ears, throat, and skin.

Clinical presentation

- Fever may be present.
- Patient usually appears moderately ill.
- On day 1 or 2, the tongue is heavily coated with a white membrane through which edematous red papillae protrude (classic appearance of white strawberry tongue).
- By day 4 or 5, the white membrane sloughs off, revealing a shiny red tongue with prominent papillae (red strawberry tongue).
- Red, edematous, exudative tonsillitis.
- Diffuse, erythematous, blanching, fine papular rash that resembles sandpaper on palpation (Fig. 11)
- The rash is prominent especially in the flexor skin creases of the antecubital fossa (Pastia lines which pathognomonic for scarlet fever).
- Circumoral pallor.
- Desquamation after the rash starts to fade (usually the rash last about 1 week).

Diagnosis

- Throat culture or rapid streptococcal test
- Anti-deoxyribonuclease B and antistreptolysin-O titers (antibodies to streptococcal extracellular products)

Management

- Penicillin remains the drug of choice (documented cases of penicillin-resistant group A streptococcal infections still do not exist).
- First-generation cephalosporin may be an effective alternative.

Streptococcosis

- Occur in children younger than 3 years
  Young infants may not present with classic pharyngitis
- Low-grade fever
- Thick purulent nasal discharge
- Poor feeding
- Anterior cervical lymphadenopathy
- Some patient may be toxic with high fever, malaise, headache, and severe pain upon swallowing

Impetigo

Background

- GAS impetigo is a superficial bacterial skin infection (small percentage)

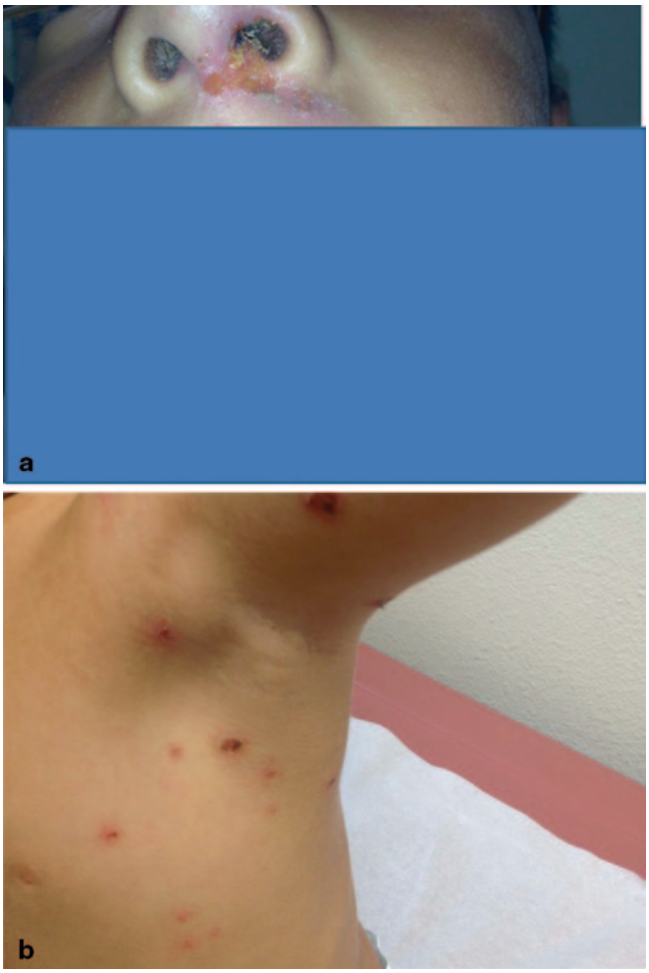


Fig. 12 **a** Impetigo: honey crusted lesions under the nostril and on the cheek. **b** Impetigo: honey crusted lesions on the arm and trunk

- In North America the etiologic agent is primarily *S. aureus*

Clinical presentation: Fig. 12a and b

- Common (i.e., crusted or nonbullous) impetigo: Initial lesion is a superficial papulovesicular lesions that rupture easily.
- The lesion becomes purulent and covered with an amber-colored crust.
- Bullous impetigo: superficial fragile bullae containing serous fluid or pus forms and then ruptured to form a round, very erythematous erosions.
- The lesions usually located in exposed area specially the face and extremities.
- Lesions usually often spread due to autoinoculation.

Treatment

- Topical mupirocin or retapamulin for localized lesions.
- Multiple localized lesions may require systemic treatment that covers both GAS and staphylococcal infections, such as cephalexin or clindamycin.
- Should not go back to school until at least 24 h after beginning appropriate antimicrobial.
- Avoid close contact with other children if possible.

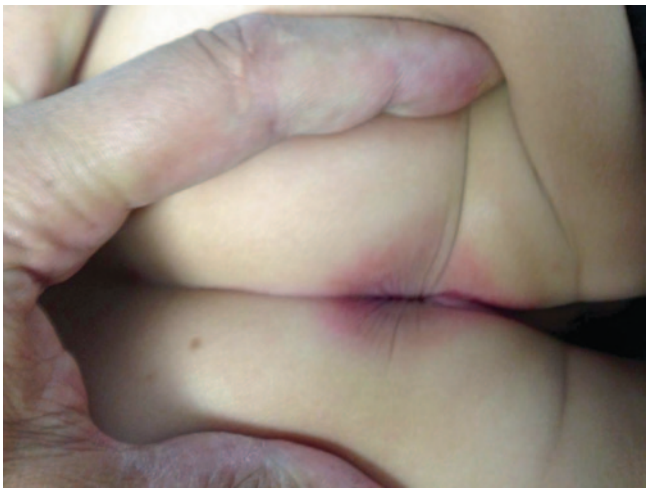


Fig. 13 *Perianal Streptococcal Dermatitis*: 4 years old present with rectal pain, itchiness, and discomfort when sitting, the PE shows, bright red, sharply demarcated rash around the anal area. Strep test was positive

Perianal Streptococcal Dermatitis

Background
- GABHS
- It primarily occurs in children between 6 months and 10 years of age
- It is often misdiagnosed and treated inappropriately
- Early antibiotic treatment results in dramatic and rapid improvement in symptoms

Clinical presentation
- Perianal rash, itching, and rectal pain; blood-streaked stools may also be seen in one third of patients.
- Bright red, sharply demarcated rash around the anal area (Fig. 13).

Diagnosis
- A rapid streptococcal test of suspicious areas can confirm the diagnosis.
- Routine skin culture is an alternative diagnostic aid.

Management
- Treatment with oral amoxicillin or penicillin is effective.
- Topical mupirocin three times per day for 10 days.
- Follow-up is necessary, because recurrences are common.

Erysipelas GAS

Clinical presentation
- Erythema and edema
- Sharply defined and elevated border tender to palpation
- Systemic signs such as fever often are present
- Lymphangitis may occur

Management
- *Systemic antibiotic* therapy is required
- Parenteral antibiotics may be needed, especially in immunocompromised patients

Acute Rheumatic Fever (ARF)

Background
- ARF is caused by previous GAS pharyngeal infection
- It is most common among children ages 5–15 years

Classified according to Jones criteria
- Evidence of recent GAS infection
  - Positive throat culture or rapid strep test
  - Elevated or rising antistreptococcal antibody titer
- Minor criteria
  - Fever
  - Arthralgia
  - Elevated acute phase-reactant
  - Prolonged PR interval
- Major criteria
  - Arthritis (migratory polyarthritis in 75 % of cases)
  - Carditis or valvulitis
  - Erythema marginatum
  - Subcutaneous nodules
  - Sydenham chorea

Diagnosis
- *Evidence of a preceding GAS infection* along with the presence of two major manifestations or one major and two minor manifestations
- Streptococcal antibodies: antistreptolysin O (ASO), antihyaluronidase (AHase), and antideoxyribonuclease B (anti-DNase B) antibodies

Treatment of ARF
- *Eradication* of GAS requires the same antibiotic regimens that are used to treat GAS pharyngitis
- *Household contacts* should be treated if the cultures are positive for GAS
- *Aspirin* 80–100 mg/kg/day and continued until all symptoms have resolved
- *Carditis* is managed with therapies used for heart failure
- *Prophylactic antibiotics* should be started immediately after the therapeutic antibiotic course is complete:
  - *Penicillin V*, sulfadiazine, or macrolides for patients at lower risk of ARF recurrence
  - *Benzathine penicillin G* IM every 4 weeks for patients at higher risk of ARF recurrence
  - Prophylaxis should continue for several years, typically until a patient is an adult and recurrence-free for 10 years
  - Longer prophylaxis is indicated if the patient has residual heart disease

Poststreptococcal Glomerulonephritis

Background
- It is the most common cause of acute nephritis worldwide

Clinical presentation
- Asymptomatic microscopic hematuria or
- Nephritic syndrome
  - Hematuria
  - Proteinuria
  - Edema
  - Hypertension
  - Elevated serum creatinine values

Diagnosis
- *Urinalysis* shows hematuria with or without red blood cell casts, proteinuria, and often pyuria
- *Serum C3* complement values are low
- *Negative* throat or skin cultures at the time of diagnosis
  - Latent period from onset of infection to onset of nephritis

Treatment
- Supportive management of the clinical manifestations.
- Hypertension and edema:
  - Loop diuretics such as furosemide
  - Sodium and water restriction
- *Know* that clinical manifestations of PSGN typically resolve quickly.
- Serum creatinine return to baseline by 3–4 weeks.
- Hematuria resolve within 3–6 months.
- Proteinuria may persist for up to 3 years.

Prognosis
- Excellent in most children

Streptococcal Toxic Shock Syndrome

Background
- GAS TSS is a form of invasive GAS disease associated with the acute onset of shock and organ failure.

Risk factors
- Injuries resulting in bruising or muscle strain.
- Surgical procedures.
- Varicella infection.
- NSAIDs use.
- Streptococcal exotoxins that act as superantigens, causes release of cytokines leading to capillary leak, leading to hypotension and organ damage.

Clinical presentation
- Fever.
- Abrupt onset of severe pain, often associated with a preceding soft-tissue infection, e.g., cellulitis or osteomyelitis
- *Know that* patient may be normotensive initially, but hypotension develops quickly.
- Erythroderma, a generalized erythematous macular rash may develop.

Diagnosis
- Leukocytosis with immature neutrophils
- Elevated serum creatinine values
- Hypoalbuminemia
- Hypocalcemia
- Elevated creatine kinase concentration
- Myoglobinuria, hemoglobinuria
- Positive blood cultures
- Diagnosis of GAS TSS requires isolation of GAS e.g., blood or CSF

Treatment for GAS TSS
- *Aggressive* fluid replacement is essential to maintain adequate perfusion to prevent end-organ damage.
- *Vasopressors* also may be required.
- *Immediate* surgical exploration and debridement is necessary, and repeated resections may be required.
- *Empiric therapy* with broad-spectrum IV antibiotics to cover both streptococcal and staphylococcal infections e.g.,:
  - *Clindamycin* IV plus *penicillin G* IV
- Immune globulin intravenous (IGIV) also may be used as adjunctive therapy.

Pediatric Autoimmune Neuropsychiatric Disorder Associated with Group A Streptococci (PANDAS)

Background
- PANDAS describes a group of neuropsychiatric disorders, in particular obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD), tic disorders, and Tourette syndrome, that are exacerbated by GAS infection.
- *Diagnostic criteria* for PANDAS include:
  - Tourette syndrome; abrupt onset in childhood
  - Relationship between GAS infection and episodic symptoms confirmed by RADT, throat culture, or skin culture or serologic testing
  - Evaluation for GAS infection should be considered in children who present with the abrupt onset of OCD or tic disorder

Management
- Treatment of the GAS infection and neuropsychiatric therapy
- Behavioral therapy and pharmacological therapies, including:

- Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) for OCD
- Clonidine for tics

Necrotizing Fasciitis

Background
- GAS necrotizing fasciitis is a form of invasive GAS disease. This infection is characterized by extensive local necrosis of subcutaneous soft tissues
- GAS pyrogenic exotoxins that act as superantigens, which activate the immune system

Clinical presentation
- Fever, hypotension, malaise, and myalgias
- Rapidly increasing pain; and erythematous skin that progresses to blisters, bullae, and crepitus with subcutaneous gas.

Laboratory findings
- Leukocytosis with a predominance of neutrophils
- Elevated creatine kinase, lactate, and creatinine values
- Positive blood cultures

Diagnosis
- Diagnosis is clinical and requires a high degree of suspicion because of the rapid progression of infection.

Treatment
- *Early and aggressive* surgical exploration and debridement
- *Antibiotic therapy* with penicillin G IV plus clindamycin IV, and aminoglycoside as well is recommended
- Hemodynamic support if GAS TSS is present as well
- *Repeat surgery* is necessary until all necrotic tissue has been removed
- Antibiotic therapy should continue for several days after completion of surgical debridement

Listeria monocytogenes

Background
- Aerobic gram-positive bacillus
- Mood of transmission
  - Unpasteurized milk
  - Soft cheese
  - Undercooked poultry
  - Prepared meat
  - Asymptomatic vagina carrier in pregnant women

Clinical presentation
- Neonatal sepsis early onset < 7 days causes bacteremia or pneumonia
- Neonatal sepsis late onset > 7 days causes meningitis

Treatment
- Ampicillin and aminoglycoside

Corynebacterium diphtheriae

Background
- Gram-positive pleomorphic bacillus
- It is rare due to immunization against diphtheria

Clinical presentation
- Low-grade fever
- Sore throat
- Malaise
- Difficulty swallowing
- Bilateral cervical lymphadenopathy
- Grayish exudates over mucous membrane
- Bleeding after attempting to remove the membrane

Treatment
- Antitoxin should be started immediately if diphtheria is suspected called equine hyperimmune antiserum IV to neutralize the toxins.
- Diphtheria toxins can cause myocarditis, necrosis, peripheral neuritis.
- Airway obstruction and neck swelling (bull neck) can occur.
- *Know that* close contact should receive single IM dose of penicillin G benzathine or oral erythromycin regardless their immunization status.

Enterococcus

Background
- Gram-positive cocci.
- Normal inhabitant of the gastrointestinal tract.
- *E. faecalis* and *E. faecium*.
- Most neonatal enterococcal infections are nosocomial and occur after second week of life, usually with bacteremia due to line infection or necrotizing enterocolitis (common symptoms in neonates include, fever, bradycardia, apnea, and abdominal distention).

Associated infections
- Bacteremia in neonates
- Catheter associated bacteremia
- Endocarditis
- Intra-abdominal abscess
- UTI

Antibiotics
- It is resistant to all cephalosporins and vancomycin as well
- It is susceptible to aminoglycoside and linezolid

- It is imperative to do sensitivity test because of increasing resistance
- Sensitive enterococcal sepsis or endocarditis must be treated with vancomycin, PCN, ampicillin, in addition to gentamicin

Bacillus anthracis

Background
- Large positive rods (bacilli) that cause anthrax
- Types of anthrax: cutaneous anthrax, pulmonic and gastrointestinal
- Inoculation occurs from handling contaminated substance, e.g., wool, and in the mail in cases of bioterrorism

Clinical presentation
- Painless papules and ulcers
- Painless black eschar with painless swelling and induration

Treatment
- Penicillin G or quinolones, e.g., ciprofloxacin

Bacillus cereus

Background
- It is a soil dwelling gram-positive rods, beta hemolytic bacterium.
- Produces gastrointestinal symptoms due enterotoxin production in vivo in the GI tract.

Clinical presentation
- Vomiting with incubation period 1–6 h (the emetic form is commonly associated with fried rice left at room temperature)
- Diarrhea with incubation period 8–16 h
- Eye infection after traumatic eye injuries in contact lens wearers

Diagnosis
- It is usually clinical
- *B. cereus* spores in stool
- Isolated toxins from suspected food items

Treatment
- Self limited and require no antibiotics

Arcanobacterium haemolyticum

Background
- *A. haemolyticum* (can be mistaken with strep pharyngitis or scarlet fever)
- Gram positive bacillus
- Grows slowly as small colonies with narrow bands of hemolysis on blood-enriched agar
- Growth enhanced by culture on rabbit or human blood with incubation in 5 % CO_2

Clinical presentation
- Common in teenagers and young adults
- 0.5–3 % of acute pharyngitis
- *Except* for absence of palatal petechiae and strawberry tongue, the disease indistinguishable from that caused by group A *Streptococcus*
- Fever
- Pharyngeal exudates
- Cervical lymphadenopathy
- Scarlatiniform or maculopapular pruritic rash in 50 % of cases usually spares the palm and soles

Treatment
- Macrolides: erythromycin or azithromycin

Anaerobes

Clostridium botulinum

Background
- *C. botulinum* is an anaerobic gram-positive rod that survives in soil and marine sediment by forming spores.
- Human botulism is caused by neurotoxins A, B, E, and occasionally F.

Infant botulism
- Ingestion of honey or exposure to soils increases the risk
- Age between 3 weeks and 6 months
- Symptoms develop 3–30 days from the time of exposure
- Clinical presentation
  - Constipation usually is the initial finding
  - Feeding difficulty is a common presenting symptoms
  - Hypotonia
  - Increased drooling
  - Weak cry
  - Truncal weakness
  - *Cranial nerve palsies*
  - Generalized weakness with ventilatory failure
- Treatment of infant botulism
  - Botulism immune globulin (BIG) IV should be started as early as possible if clinically suspected.
  - No antibiotics.

Foodborne botulism
- Background
  - Most common source is home canned food.

  - Symptoms develop 12–36 h after toxin ingestion.
  - Wound botulism is similar except the incubation period between 4 and 14 days.
- Clinical presentation
  - Initial symptoms: dry mouth, nausea, and diarrhea
  - Bilateral cranial nerve palsies
  - Eye diplopia and blurring vision
  - Dysphagia
  - Upper extremity weakness
  - Respiratory dysfunction
  - Lower extremity dysfunction
- Diagnosis
  - Stool toxins detection
- Treatment of botulism in older patients
  - Equine trivalent antitoxin (Type A, B, and E)
  - Wound debridement for wound botulism is recommended

Clostridium perfringens

Background
- Gram-positive, rod shaped, anaerobic, spore forming bacterium of the genus *Clostridium*
- Spores found in raw meat and poultry

Clinical presentation
- Sudden onset of diarrhea
- Crampy abdominal pain

Management
- Resolve with 24 h
- No treatment is necessary

Clostridium tetani

Background
- *C. tetani*, an obligate anaerobic gram-positive bacillus, is the pathogen responsible for tetanus.
- It is nonencapsulated and form spores that are resistant to heat, desiccation, and disinfectants.
- Contaminated deep puncture wounds, open wounds, soil, and animals (wool) containing spores are the most common sources of this bacteria.

Neonatal tetanus
- Contaminated umbilical cord is a common source of infection.
- Poor feeding (poor suck and swallowing due to muscle spasm).
- *Constant crying*
- Decreased movement
- Spasm and rigidity

Generalized tetanus
- Trismus (lockjaw)
- Sardonic smile (risus sardonicus)
- Severe muscle spasm
- Opisthotonos (severe hyperextension)
- Laryngeal spasm can lead airway obstruction and death
- Tetanic seizure is severe tonic contractions with high fever
- Diagnosis is always clinical

Treatment
- Human tetanus immune globulin immediately
- Penicillin G or metronidazole
- Muscle relaxants

Prevention of tetanus
- Routine immunization with Dtap and Tdap

Prevention in wound injuries guideline
- Tetanus vaccine + /−Tetanus immunoglobulin (TIG)
  - Dirty wound, immunization is unknown or less than three tetanus shots: Give *TIG + tetanus vaccine*
  - Dirty wound, immunized > 5 years and < 10 years: Immunize, no TIG
  - Dirty wound, immunized < 5 years: No treatment
  - Clean wound, immunized < 10 years: No treatment
  - Clean wound, immunized > 10 years: Immunize, no TIG

Clostridium difficile

Background
- Gram-positive anaerobes
- Colonization
  - Around 50% of infants younger than 1 year are colonized
  - Carriage decrease by 1–5% by 2 years of age
- Risk factor:
  - Having infected roommate or having symptomatic patient in the same ward
  - *Antibiotics*, e.g., beta-lactams drugs, clindamycin, and macrolides
  - Underlying bowel disease or surgeries
- *Symptomatic disease* is due to toxins A and B produced by the organism

Clinical presentation
- Asymptomatic colonization is common in infants and young children

- Watery diarrhea
- Abdominal cramps
- Abdominal tenderness
- *In severe cases*:
  - Systemic toxicity
  - Bloody diarrhea
  - Toxic megacolon, perforation or even death are complications of pseudomembranous colitis

Diagnosis
- Documenting toxin A and B in stool (should be tested promptly or stored at 4 °C)
- Endoscopic finding of pseudomembranous enterocolitis
- Examination for occult blood is not diagnostic
- In young infants you must consider other causes because they are colonized

Treatment
- Oral or IV metronidazole
- Oral vancomycin with or without metronidazole can be used in severe cases
- Oral vancomycin can be used alone in those who do not respond to metronidazole

Prevention

Hand washing with water and soap
- *Know that* alcohol based product are not effective in eradications of the organisms
- Diluted bleach solution is the best for decontamination of surfaces
- Limit antibiotic use
- Infected child should be excluded from child care facility for the duration of diarrhea

Actinomycosis

Background
- Actinomycosis is a subacute-to-chronic bacterial infection caused by filamentous, gram-positive, non acid-fast, anaerobic-to-microaerophilic bacteria.
- It is characterized by contagious spread, suppurative and granulomatous inflammation, and formation of multiple abscesses and sinus tracts that may discharge sulfur granules.

Clinical presentation
- The most common clinical forms of actinomycosis are cervicofacial (i.e., lumpy jaw) usually caused by dental infection.
- In women, pelvic actinomycosis is possible when IUD in place.

Treatment
- Initial therapy should include IV penicillin or ampicillin for 4–6 weeks followed by high dose of oral penicillin, clindamycin or doxycycline.

Gram Negative Bacteria

Gram Negative Anaerobes

Bacteroides and Fusobacterium anaerobes

Causes Variety of Clinical Manifestations Depending on the Location
- Head and neck
  - Retropharyngeal abscess
  - Peritonsillar abscess
  - Dental abscess
  - Ludwig angina
- CNS
  - Brain abscess
  - Subdural and epidural empyema
- Lung
  - Aspiration pneumonia
  - Lung abscess
  - Pleural empyema
- Abdomen
  - Peritonitis
  - Appendicitis
  - Intra-abdominal abscess
- Skin and soft tissue
  - Infected bite wound
  - Necrotizing fasciitis
  - Cellulitis
- Antibiotics with anaerobic activity
  - Clindamycin
  - Penicillin
  - Ampicillin-sulbactam
  - Amoxicillin-clavulanic acid
  - Metronidazole

Campylobacter species

Background
- *Campylobacter jejuni* (gram-negative motile bacilli)
- It is one of the most common agent associated with bacterial gastroenteritis

Common sources
- Uncooked poultry (chicken and turkey)
- Unpasteurized milk
- Dogs and cats

Clinical presentation
- *Bloody diarrhea*
- Abdominal pain (may mimic inflammatory bowel disease in severe cases)
- Tenesmus
- Fever

Diagnosis
- Stool culture in a selective media at temperature 42 °C incubated in gas mixture O_2 and CO_2

Azithromycin is the drug of choice
- Antibiotic is recommended to shorten the duration of illness and prevent relapse

Chlamydophila pneumoniae

Background
- *C. pneumoniae* is distinct antigenically, genetically, and morphologically from *Chlamydia* species
- Transmitted from person to another via respiratory secretion

Clinical presentation
- Patient may be asymptomatic or mildly to moderately ill
- Illness is usually prolonged with cough persist for 2–6 weeks
- Pneumonia and pulmonary rales
- Acute bronchitis and bronchospasm
- Less commonly nonexudative pharyngitis, laryngitis, otitis media, and sinusitis

Diagnosis
- Chest radiography; may reveal an infiltrate
- No reliable test to identify the organism is available
- Fourfold increase in immunoglobulin (Ig) G titer or IgM titer of ≥ 16 is evidence of acute infection

Treatment
- Macrolides or tetracycline

Chlamydophila psittaci

Background
- *C. psittaci* is obligate intracellular bacterial pathogen.
- Birds are major reservoir of *C. psittaci*, e.g., parakeets, and parrots, also animal such as goats and cows may become infected.

Clinical presentation (Psittacosis)
- Fever
- Nonproductive cough
- Headache
- Malaise
- Extensive interstitial pneumonia can occur
- Pericarditis, hepatitis, and encephalitis can occur (rare)

Diagnosis
- Same as *C. pneumonia*

Treatment
- Tetracyclines are preferred therapy except children less than 8 years of age
- Macrolides, e.g., azithromycin

Chlamydia trachomatis

Background
- It is the most frequently identified infectious cause of neonatal conjunctivitis; it is transmitted perinatally from infected mothers.

Clinical presentation
- The symptoms typically develop 5–14 days after birth
- Conjunctival edema
- Hyperemia
- Watery-to-mucopurulent discharge
- A pseudomembrane may form and bloody discharge may be present if infection is prolonged

Management
- *Know* that topical prophylaxis with erythromycin or silver nitrate given to all infants to prevent neonatal gonococcal conjunctivitis is ineffective against chlamydial conjunctivitis.
- *Important*: when chlamydial conjunctivitis is diagnosed in an infant, the infant's mother and her sexual partner(s) must be tested.
- Treatment is erythromycin PO 50 mg/kg/day in four divided doses × 14 days.
- Topical treatment alone is ineffective
- *Remember*: untreated infections may result in corneal and conjunctival scarring.

Pneumonia due to C. trachomatis

Background
- Small, gram-negative, obligate intracellular organisms.
- Transmitted to the infant from the birth canal.

- Generally presents as a subacute infection 2–19 weeks after birth.
- C. *trachomatis* infection may cause neonatal conjunctivitis, nasopharyngitis, otitis media, and pneumonitis.

Clinical presentation
- Rhinorrhea, congestion, or conjunctivitis
- Tachypnea
- *Staccato cough*
- Crackles (rales)
- Wheezing (rare)
- Preterm infants may have episodes of apnea

Diagnosis
- Chest radiography reveals infiltrates and hyperinflation
- Laboratory testing may reveal:
  - Peripheral eosinophilia
  - Elevated serum immunoglobulins
- A positive nasopharyngeal culture is considered diagnostic of infection

Treatment
- Antibiotic treatment should be started presumptively on clinical grounds.
- Oral erythromycin for 14 days or azithromycin, 20 mg/kg/day, once daily × 3 days.
- If untreated, symptoms can last for months and include persistent hypoxemia.
- Remember: Diagnosis of chlamydial pneumonia in an infant necessitates treatment of the infant's mother and her sexual partner.

Trachoma

Background
- This disease is a chronic keratoconjunctivitis caused by the obligate intracellular bacterium C. trachomatis.
- Disease transmission occurs primarily between children and the women who care for them.
- *Trachoma* is the most common infectious cause of *blindness* worldwide.

Clinical presentation
- Chronic follicular keratoconjunctivitis with corneal neovascularization resulting from untreated or chronic infection.
- Blindness occurs in up to 15% of those infected.
- Trachoma rarely occurs in the USA.

Diagnosis
- It is a clinical diagnosis and nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) can confirm the causative agent.
- The cicatricial phase has unique clinical features, which lead to definitive diagnosis in most cases.

Treatment
- Azithromycin

Neisseria gonorrhoeae (Gonococcal Infections)

Background
- *N. gonorrhoeae* is a gram-negative diplococcus.
- Gonococcal infection is the second most common bacterial disease in the USA that is classified as a reportable and notifiable infection.
- It is the highest in youth, especially females between 15 and 19 years of age.
- The incubation period is 2–7 days.
- A child abuse evaluation must be performed in any prepubertal case of gonococcal infection.

Neonatal conjunctivitis
- Conjunctivitis due to mucosal transmission during vaginal delivery.
- Topical antibiotics (erythromycin, silver nitrate, or tetracycline) to the eyes of a newborn within 1 h of birth can prevent the infection.
- Treatment is ceftriaxone 125 mg IM × 1.

Gonococcal pharyngitis
- *Genital-oral activity* is the major risk
- Infection is asymptomatic in most cases
- Patients who have gonococcal pharyngitis have a significant public health impact
- *Gonococcal pharyngitis* are at risk for developing disseminated gonococcal infection (DGI)
- Pharyngeal infection clears spontaneously within 12 weeks
- Treatment is ceftriaxone 250 mg IM × 1

Gonococcal urethritis
- Dysuria and a mucopurulent penile discharge
- They may be coinfected with other sexually transmitted organisms, most commonly, *C. trachomatis*
- *Positive leukocyte esterase* usually seen in urine specimen
- Diagnosis of gonococcal urethritis
- Presence of intracellular diplococci in urethral discharge
- Treatment is ceftriaxone 250 mg IM × 1 plus azithromycin 1 g × 1

Epididymitis (gonococcus)
- Dysuria and a mucopurulent discharge
- Scrotal edema as well as scrotal, inguinal, or flank pain
- Urinalysis may demonstrate WBCs

- In most cases, this infection is transmitted sexually and may be an extension of urethritis

Gonococcal proctitis
- Most cases of proctitis due to N. gonorrhoeae occur in homosexual males
- Clinical presentation
  - Anal discharge
  - Rectal bleeding
  - Anorectal pain
  - Tenesmus
  - Constipation

Disseminated gonococcal infection (DGI)
- DGI infection occurs in 0.5–3 % of people infected with *N. gonorrhoeae*
- DGI usually cause an asymptomatic genital infection
- Migratory arthritis (wrist, ankle, and knee) are the most common locations
- Dermatitis
- Tenosynovitis
- Fever and chills may occur
- Elevated white blood cell count
- DGI occurs more commonly in females

Screening methods for infection *N. gonorrhoeae* and *Chlamydia*
- Culture is the gold standard for diagnosing *C. trachomatis*.
- Standard collection sites include the endocervix, male and female urethra, nasopharynx, conjunctiva, vagina, and rectum.
- Nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) amplify nucleic acid sequences specific for the organism of interest.
- The ease of using urine specimens, together with the high sensitivity of NAATs, has made these tests the preferred method for screening.
- The presence of gram-negative intracellular diplococci on microscopy suggests the diagnosis of a gonococcal infection.

N. meningitidis (Meningococcal Infections)

Background
- Aerobic gram-negative diplococcus *N. meningitidis*.
- Natural commensal organism living in the nasopharynx of humans.
- Children younger than 2 years of age have a nearly five-fold greater risk of contracting meningococcal disease than the general adult population.
- Risk of transmission; crowded living conditions, e.g., college dormitories, military barracks.

Clue to clinician of invasive meningococcal infection
- Rash
  - *Any rash* appearing in the context of a sudden febrile illness should raise concern
  - *Meningococcal rash* is typically present within 24 h of any symptomatology
  - *Petechiae* may be intraoral or conjunctival or be hidden in skinfolds
  - *Early rash* may not be petechial
- True rigors
  - Shaking chill that cannot be stopped voluntarily
  - Prolonged (10–20 min)
- Neck pain
  - Severe pain in the neck, back, or extremities
  - May manifest in younger children as refusal to walk
  - *Meningismus*: In patients older than 3 years, the classic signs of Kernig and Brudzinski may be elicited
- Vomiting
  - May be associated with headache or abdominal pain without diarrhea
- Cushing triads:
  - Bradycardia
  - Hypertension
  - Respiratory depression
- Purpura fulminans (meningococcemia)
  - Aggressive spread of purpura to large areas with ischemic necrosis
  - Sudden drops in blood pressure
  - Acute adrenal hemorrhage (Waterhouse–Friderichsen syndrome)

Diagnosis
- *Culture* of the organism from a normally sterile site is the gold standard for bacteriologic diagnosis.
- Cerebrospinal fluid study:
  - *CSF WBC* counts are elevated in most patients who have meningitis.
  - CSF *WBC* counts are low or even normal if the disease is severe and rapidly progressive.
  - *Markedly* low glucose and elevated protein values are associated with the diagnosis of meningitis.
- All patients with meningococcal disease or meningitis must be tested for CH50 or CH100 assay (20 % of children with meningococcal disease will end having a complement deficiency).

Management
- *Know that* antibiotics or fluids should not be delayed for the sake of cultures or other testing.
- *Penicillin* is effective treatment for both severe meningococcal septicemia (SMS) and meningococcal meningitis if the diagnosis is certain.

- *Broad-spectrum antibiotics* effective against N. meningitidis and other potential pathogens are indicated (e.g., ceftriaxone, cefotaxime, vancomycin).
- *Emergency care evaluation* and preferably transported via emergency medical services to allow for prompt delivery of intravenous fluids and airway management if the condition is suspected.
- *Large isotonic fluid boluses* (20 mL/kg) over the first 5 min.
- *Inotropic/vasoactive* agent such as dopamine or dobutamine.
- *Hydrocortisone* may be beneficial in children who have SMS and respond poorly to vasopressors.

Prevention and indication of MCV4 (A, C,Y, and W-135)

- MCV4 is routinely recommended at 11–12 years of age.
- Unvaccinated adolescents through 18 years of age should receive a dose at the earliest opportunity.
- Military recruits and all college freshmen who will be living in campus dormitories.
- Persons who have terminal complement component deficiencies.
- Anatomic or functional asplenia.
- Note: 30% of infections are due to serogroup B which is not covered by the vaccine.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis, e.g., Rifampin, ciprofloxacin, azithromycin, or ceftriaxone should be used for contacts:
  - Child care contact
  - Direct exposure to oral secretions of individual with meningococcal disease (such as personnel providing mouth-to-mouth resuscitation)

Haemophilus influenzae

Background

- Pleomorphic gram-negative coccobacillus.
- Used to be the most common cause of meningitis and serious bacteremia in children.
- Introduction of the *H. influenzae* vaccine quickly reduced the incidence of encapsulated *H. influenza* type b.
- Nontypeable strains are still responsible for a large number of mucosal infections, including conjunctivitis, otitis media, sinusitis, and bronchitis.

Bacterial meningitis

- Peak age is less than 1 year.
- Mortality rate around 5%.
- Common complications include: subdural empyema, brain infarct, cerebritis, ventriculitis, brain abscess, and hydrocephalus.
- Long-term sequelae occur in 15–30% of survivors with sensorineural hearing loss, others include language disorders, intellectual disability (ID), and developmental delay.
- Dexamethasone before or with antibiotics such as ceftriaxone or cefotaxime to prevent hearing loss and neurologic sequelae.

Epiglottitis

- *H. influenzae* type b (Hib) was the predominant organism (>90%) in pediatric epiglottitis cases (other bacteria can cause epiglottitis as well, e.g., *S. pneumoniae*, group A beta-hemolytic streptococci, *S. aureus*, and *Moraxella catarrhalis*.
- Occurs primarily in children (ages 2–7 years).
- The clinical triad of drooling, dysphagia, and distress is the classic presentation.
- Fever with associated respiratory distress or air hunger occurs in most patients.
- Treatment in patients with epiglottitis is directed toward relieving the airway obstruction and eradicating the infectious agent.
- Optimally, initial treatment is provided by a pediatric anesthesiologist and either a pediatric surgeon or a pediatric otolaryngologist.
- Once the airway is controlled, a pediatric intensivist is required for inpatient management.

Buccal infections

- Buccal cellulitis previously was always caused by *H. influenzae* infection before the vaccine.
- Always associated with bacteremia if present.
- Present with palpable cellulitis on both checks, purplish in color and child looks very toxic.

Periorbital cellulitis

- Previously *H. influenzae* was the a common cause, now pneumococcus bacteria is the most common etiology
- Minor trauma or insect bite of the eye lid usually associated with preseptal cellulitis due to *S. aureus* or a Group A *Streptococcus*

Pyogenic arthritis

- *H. influenzae* was the most common cause of septic arthritis before Hib vaccine in children less than 2 years of age

Occult bacteremia

- Occult bacteremia with *H. influenzae* will result in in 30–50% developing meningitis or other deep, or focal infection from occult bacteremia.
- All occult bacteremia from *H. influenzae* has to be treated immediately.

Pneumonia

- Pneumonia from *H. influenzae* used to cause about one third of bacterial pneumonia before Hib vaccine and

usually associated with pleural effusion, positive blood culture in most of the cases.

Treatment (Patient with life threatening illness)
- *Remember*: the organism produces beta lactamase which makes amoxicillin is ineffective.
- Cefotaxime or ceftriaxone is the antimicrobial of choice.
- Meropenem or chloramphenicol is another option.
- Amoxicillin is the drug of choice for noninvasive diseases such as otitis media or sinusitis, if amoxicillin fails, uses antibiotics against beta-lactamase-producing strains, e.g., *nontypeable H. influenzae* including amoxicillin/clavulanic, TMP-SMX, azithromycin, cefuroxime axetil, cefixime, and cefpodoxime.

Rifampin antibiotic prophylaxis for contact with invasive *H. influenzae type b* infection
- All household who did not receive immunization
- Less than 4 years with incomplete immunization
- Younger than 12 months who did not complete primary HIB immunization
- Immunocompromised child
- Nursery school and child care center if two or more cases within 60 days

Helicobacter pylori

Background
- *H. pylori* is a gram-negative microaerophilic bacillus
- It is *spiral, curved, or U-shaped and has two to six flagella* at one end under microscope
- Transmission is fecal-oral, oral-oral from human-to human contact

Diagnosis
- *Know that* AAP recommends testing only when treatment for *H. pylori* infection would be warranted.
- Endoscopy remains the gold standard for evaluating *H. pylori*.
- *H. pylori* stool antigen and urea breath test is a promising diagnostic tools.
- Serologic tests for *H. pylori* are unreliable marker of disease.

Treatment indications
- Endoscopically confirmed gastric or duodenal ulcer
- Histologically proven gastric metaplasia
- Gastric mucosa-associated lymphoid lymphoma (MALT)
- Prior ulcer disease and current active infection

First-line: 14 days treatment regimens for children generally include
- Clarithromycin (15 mg/kg/day divided twice a day, up to 500 mg per dose) with:
  - Either amoxicillin (50 mg/kg/day divided BID, up to 1 g per dose) or metronidazole (20 mg/kg/day divided BID, up to 500 mg per dose) and
  - Proton-pump inhibitor (PPI)

Mycoplasma pneumonia

Background
- *M. pneumonia* is the leading cause of pneumonia in school age children and young adults
- Infection is prevalent in person living in group setting

Clinical presentation
- Pulmonary manifestations
  - Nonproductive cough
  - Chills
  - Scattered rales
  - Skin rash
  - Bilateral infiltrate on chest radiograph
- Extrapulmonary manifestation
  - Pharyngitis
  - Rash
  - Stevens–Johnson syndrome
  - Hemolytic anemia
  - Arthritis
  - CNS disease (encephalitis, cranial nerve palsy (specially CNIII))

Testing for mycoplasma
- IgG and IgM serology or cold agglutinin
- Mycoplasma DNA PCR

Treatment
- Mycoplasma lacks the cell wall and beta lactams are not effective
- Azithromycin is the drug of choice

Pasteurella multocida

Background
- Small gram-negative coccobacilli, it is a normal flora in number of animals, e.g., dog and cats.
- Dog or cat bite is a common risk.

Clinical presentation
- Erythema, tenderness, and edema usually develop rapidly within 24 h.
- Infection occurs few days after the bite is usually caused by *S. aureus*.

Treatment
- Clean the wound with soap and water.
- Treatment should cover potential pathogens, e.g., *P. multocida*, *S. aureus*, and *anaerobes*.
- Administration of antibiotic within 8–12 h of injury may decrease the risk of infection.
- Amoxicillin-Clavulanate is the drug of choice
- Ampicillin-sulbactam IV in severe cases
- Clindamycin and TMP-SMX is appropriate for children allergic to penicillin.

Bordetella pertussis

Background

- Pertussis is a small gram-negative coccobacillus that infects only humans.
- Pertussis is spread by aerosol droplets expelled while coughing or sneezing in proximity to others.
- Incubation period of 7–14 days.

Clinical presentation
- Catarrhal phase
  - Lasts from 1 to 2 weeks
  - Mild fever
  - Cough
  - The cough worsens as the patient progresses to the paroxysmal phase
- Paroxysmal phase
  - Lasts from 2 to 6 weeks
  - Rapid fire or staccato cough
  - Five to ten uninterrupted coughs occur in succession, followed by a "whoop" as the patient rapidly draws in a breath
  - May occur several times per hour
  - Can be associated with cyanosis, salivation, lacrimation, and posttussive emesis
  - Despite the severe spells, patients often appear relatively well between episodes
  - Whoop is usually absent in infants less than 6 months of age
  - Gasping, gagging, and apnea can occur
- Convalescent phase
  - Decreasing frequency and severity of the coughing episodes
  - Lasts from weeks to months

Complications of pertussis
- Pertussis is most severe in infants < age 6 months
- Apnea
- Pneumonia
- Seizures
- Encephalopathy
- Death

Thoracic pressure related complications
- Pneumothorax or pneumomediastinum
- Subcutaneous emphysema
- Superficial petechial hemorrhage
- Rib fracture
- Rectal prolapse
- Intracranial hemorrhage

Diagnosis
- PCR is beginning to replace culture as the diagnostic test of choice for *B. pertussis* in many clinical settings.
- PCR for *B. pertussis* is a rapid, specific, and sensitive diagnostic test that will remain positive late in the course of the illness.
- Leukocytosis as high as 60,000 can be seen.
- Absolute lymphocytosis.

Management
- Infants afflicted with pertussis often require hospitalization for fluid, nutritional, and respiratory support.
- If left untreated, most individuals will clear *B. pertussis* spontaneously from the nasopharynx within 2–4 weeks of infection.
- Antibiotics can shorten the course and attenuate the severity of pertussis if started early, and shorten the period of contagiousness as well.
- Once the paroxysmal phase antibiotics are not effective in altering the course of the disease.
- Azithromycin is the drug of choice:
  - Infant less than 6 months 10 mg/kg per day as single dose for 5 days
  - Older infants and children 10 mg/kg as a single dose on day 1 then 5 mg/kg per day as a single dose on days 2-5

Prophylaxis to close contacts is the same as the treatment
- Infants less than 1 year
- Pregnant women
- Immunocompromised
- Underlying lung disease

Immunization
- Because immunity to pertussis from the DTaP series wanes over time, a booster dose is recommended at age 11–18 years.

Legionella pneumophila

Background
- Gram-negative bacilli that requires a particular media to grow (enriched, buffered, charcoal yeast extract)
- *Legionella* infection is rare in children

- *Legionella* is an aerobic bacteria
- *Legionella* is present in water
- It is a multisystem disease

Clinical presentation
- Fever
- CNS symptoms; delirium and confusion
- Pneumonia similar to mycoplasma; the CXR looks much worse than the exam

Treatment
- Azithromycin
- Quinolones and rifampin to severely ill patients

Brucellosis

Background
- Brucellosis is a zoonotic infection caused by the bacterial genus *Brucella*.
- Brucellosis caused by gram-negative bacillus.
- The bacteria are transmitted from animals to humans by ingestion through infected food products, e.g., unpasteurized milk or cheese, direct contact with an infected animal, or inhalation of aerosols.
- *Brucella melitensis* (from sheep; highest pathogenicity).
- *Brucella suis* (from pigs; high pathogenicity).
- *Brucella abortus* (from cattle; moderate pathogenicity).
- *Brucella canis* (from dogs; moderate pathogenicity.

Clues to Brucella infection
- Fever of unknown origin.
- Culture negative endocarditis.
- Individuals at greatest risk for brucellosis are those exposed to goats, sheep, cows, camels, pigs, reindeer, rabbits, or hares, both in areas of endemic disease and in areas where the disease is not endemic.
- Bone/joint inflammation.
- Orchitis.
- Hepatic abscess.
- CNS symptoms.

Diagnosis
- Elevated liver enzymes is a common finding
- Culture can take 4–6 weeks (alert laboratory if suspecting *Brucella*)
- Serology is the most commonly used method for diagnosis
- Point-of-care assays are available that offer fast and accessible diagnostic capabilities
- PCR

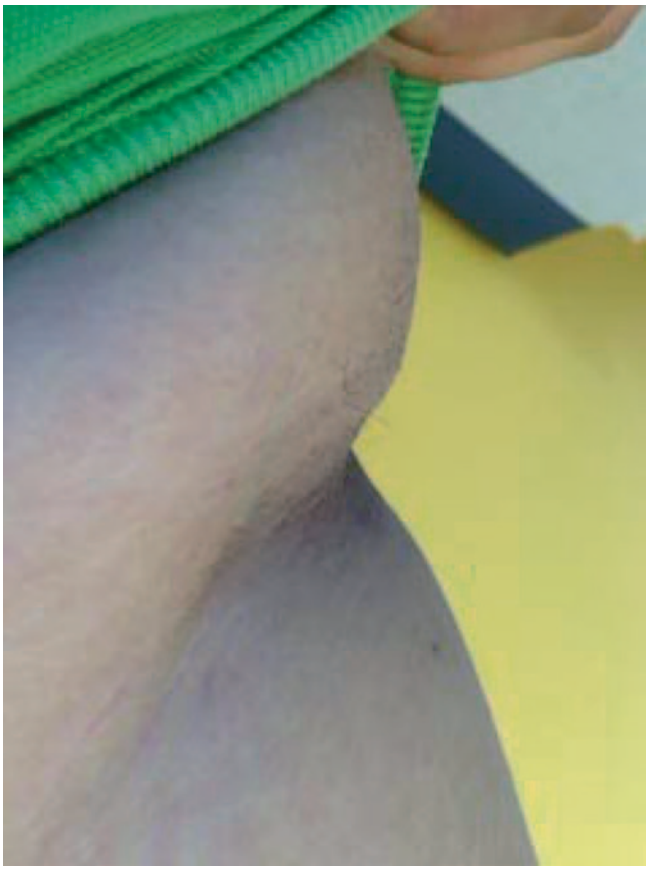


Fig. 14 Fourteen years old female with large tender axillary lymphadenopathy, she has kittens at home

Treatment
- Doxycycline, gentamicin, streptomycin, rifampin, or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMZ).

Bartonella henselae (Cat-scratch disease)

Background
- *B. henselae* is gram negative rod or bacilli with a polar flagellum.
- Kittens or cats less than 1 year old are most common source (no human to human).
- Transmission can occur by petting alone with subsequent self-inoculation via a mucous membrane, skin break, or conjunctiva.
- *Clue for the diagnosis*; contact with cats and lymphadenopathy.

Clinical presentation
- *Regional lymphadenopathy* (cervical and axillary are common locations; Fig. 14)
  - Usually large and may be tender, warm and erythematous

  - Suppuration can occur in 30 % of cases
  - Node may remain enlarged for several months
  - Papule at the site of scratch may precedes the development of lymphadenopathy
- Parinaud oculoglandular syndrome:
  - *Painless* nonpurulent conjunctivitis
  - Ipsilateral preauricular lymphadenopathy
- Other clinical presentations
  - Fever of unknown origin (FUO)
  - Hepatic splenic microabscesses
  - Painful osteolytic lesions
- Patients may recall being scratched, licked, or bitten by a cat in the previous 2–8 weeks
- Fever, anorexia, headache, sore throat, or arthralgia may occur
- Lymphadenopathy remains regional and typically resolves within 2–4 months but may last up to 6–12 months

Diagnosis
- Indirect fluorescence assay (IFA) testing and Enzyme-linked immunoassay (ELISA) are used to detect serum antibody to *B. henselae*.
- An antibody titer that exceeds 1:64 suggests recent *Bartonella* infection.
- Lymph node biopsy generally is not indicated in typical cases of CSD.

Treatment
- Cat-scratch disease is self limited.
- Use of antibiotics is controversial and not indicated for typical CSD in immunocompetent patients.
- Azithromycin, doxycycline, or rifampin may reduce the time for lymph node swelling to resolve.
- Antipyretics and analgesics.

Surgical Treatment
- *Remember*: Incision and drainage is not recommended (risk of sinus tract and persistent drainage).
- Aspiration will be diagnostic and therapeutic; repeated aspirations may be performed if pus re-accumulates and pain recurs.

Citrobacter

- Cause brain abscess in neonates
- Order CT or MRI if CSF grow citrobacter otherwise is very rare disease

Klebsiella

- It is a rare cause of pneumonia and meningitis.
- It also can cause UTIs but is less common than *E. Coli*.
- Most *klebsiella* are resistant to ampicillin.

Pseudomonas species

Background
- Gram-negative organism
- Found in the soil and freshwater
- Gains entry through hair follicles or via skin breaks

Risk factors
- Cystic fibrosis (see pulmonary chapter)
- Associated with progressive deterioration of pulmonary function
- Associated with hot tub folliculitis
- Ocular infection from contaminated lenses
- Puncture wound osteomyelitis
- In immunocompromised patients, e.g., ecthyma gangrenosum
- Hospitalized and debilitated patients
- Burn
- Ventilator associated pneumonia

Clinical presentation according to the site of infection
- *Pseudomonas* key words
  - Nail-puncture wound through tennis shoes
  - IV drug abuse, with endocarditis, or osteomyelitis
  - Diabetes with otitis media
  - Leukemia with ecthyma gangrenosum
- Hot tub folliculitis
  - Clinical presentation:
    - The rash onset is usually 8 h to 5 days after exposure to contaminated water
    - Erythematous pruritic macules that progress to papules and pustules
    - Rash usually spares, face, neck, soles, and palms
    - Usually confused with insect bites (history is important)
    - Rash clears spontaneously within 2–10 days
  - *Self limited* require no antibiotics
  - Acetic acid 5 % compresses for 20 min twice a day for 4 days for symptomatic relief

Antimicrobial therapy
- Piperacillin, ticarcillin
- Ceftazidime (third generation)
- Cefepime (fourth generation)
- Carbapenems (e.g., meropenem, imipenem)
- Aminoglycoside (gentamicin)
- Aztreonam
- Certain fluoroquinolones (ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin)

Nontyphoidal Salmonella

Background
- Gram-negative bacilli that are usually motile bacteria
- It is a common cause of diarrhea

- Incubation period 6–72 h

Mode of transmission
- Contaminated poultry, beef, eggs, fruits, vegetables, bakery and dairy products
- Turtles, iguana and exotic reptiles

Clinical presentation
- Can be asymptomatic
- Most common presentation is gastroenteritis
- Abrupt onset of fever, nausea, and vomiting
- Abdominal cramps
- Moderate to severe watery diarrhea are to most common manifestation

Diagnosis
- Stool may show leukocytes, mucus, and blood.
- CBC; leukocytosis and shift to the left.
- The Patient can be a carrier after symptoms for 4–5 weeks.

Indication of antibiotic therapy
- In infants less than 3 months
- Infant < 12 months with temperature > 39 °C
- Hemoglobinopathies, e.g., sickle cell anemia, HIV, and neoplastic diseases
- Immunocompromised patients at any age

Typhoid fever

Background
- *Salmonella enterica*, *Serovar typhi* (*S. typhi*)
- Mode of transmission
  - Poor sanitation and overcrowding
  - Spread by fecal-oral contamination of food or water by individuals who are carriers for *S. typhi* in either stool or urine
  - Typhoid is endemic in many developing areas

Clinical presentation
- Fever "can exceed 104 °F (40 °C)"
- Malaise
- Chills
- Headache, anorexia, myalgias, and dry cough may be seen
- Abdominal pain is common
- Diarrhea is more likely in children
- Abdominal tenderness, hepatosplenomegaly, and a coated tongue
- *Rose spots* (pink, blanchable maculopapular lesions that are 2–4 mm in diameter) are seen on the torso and abdomen
- *Know* that neonatal typhoid generally presents within 3 days of birth with fever, emesis, diarrhea, abdominal distention, pronounced hepatomegaly, jaundice, and sometimes, seizures
- *Know that* absence of abdominal or intestinal changes is not typical of typhoid

Diagnosis
- Blood cultures are the mainstay of diagnosis
- Stool culture

Treatment and Prognosis
- Treatment includes:
  - Hydration and correction of fluid-electrolyte imbalance
  - Antipyretics and antibiotics
- *The choice of antibiotic* as well as the route and duration depends on the host, site of infection, and sensitivities of the organism.
- *Multidrug resistant (MDR) strains*, including resistance to ampicillin and TMP-SM have emerged.
- IV cefotaxime or ceftriaxone for 14 days is appropriate.
- *For severe typhoid* with obtundation, stupor, coma, or shock:
  - Two-day course of IV dexamethasone may be life-saving.

Shigella

Background
- *Shigella* is a gram-negative bacilli
- *Shigella dysenteriae* and *Shigella flexneri* usually cause bloody diarrhea
- *Shigella sonnei* and *Shigella boydii* usually cause watery diarrhea
- Ingestion of as few as 10 organism can cause diarrhea
- Incubation period is 2–4 days
- Outbreak can occur in child care centers

Mode of transmission
- Person to person
- Feco-oral
- Ano-oral
- House flies
- Contaminated fomites

Clinical presentation
- Range from mild diarrhea to life-threatening dysentery
- Fever
- Abdominal camps
- High-volume watery stools
- Small-volume bloody stool may follow 24–48 h later
- Blood-mucoid stool is a common presentation

- Rectal prolapse occurs in 5–8 %

Complications
- Hemolytic-uremic syndrome
- Seizures
- Colonic perforation
- Toxic encephalopathy

Diagnosis
- Stool culture is diagnostic
- Stool study with large number of neutrophil is suggestive but not specific
- Peripheral WBCs are usually elevated; bandemia is very common

Treatment
- Antimicrobial therapy is recommended for all patient with shigellosis.
- Antimicrobial therapy for 5 days will shorten the duration and eradicate the organism from stool.
- Oral ampicillin or TMP-SMX but the resistance makes them useless of *Shigella* infection.
- Ceftriaxone, ciprofloxacin or azithromycin are usually effective.
- Ciprofloxacin is not recommended if less than 18 years, if there is an alternative.

Daycare center
- Once *Shigella* is identified in a daycare or household, all other symptomatic individuals in these environments should be cultured for *Shigella* as well.
- Anyone found to have *Shigella* cannot return to daycare until the diarrhea has stopped and stool culture test is negative.

Escherichia coli

Background
- *E. coli* is a gram-negative, lactose fermenting, motile rod, belonging to the Enterobacteriaceae.
- *E. coli* is one of the most frequent causes of many common bacterial infections, including cholecystitis, bacteremia, cholangitis, urinary tract infection (UTI), and traveler's diarrhea, and other clinical infections such as neonatal meningitis and pneumonia.

Acute bacterial meningitis
- The vast majority of neonatal meningitis cases are caused by *E. coli* and group B streptococcal infections.
- Pregnant women are at a higher risk of colonization with the K1 capsular antigen strain of *E. coli*, which commonly observed in neonatal sepsis.
- Low-birth weight and a positive CSF culture result portend a poor outcome.
- Most survivors have subsequent neurologic or developmental abnormalities.

Pneumonia
- *E. coli* respiratory tract infections are uncommon and are almost always associated with *E. coli* UTI.

Intra-abdominal infections
- *E. coli* intra-abdominal infections often result from a perforated viscus (e.g., appendix, diverticulum) or may be associated with intra-abdominal abscess, cholecystitis, and ascending cholangitis.
- They can be observed in the postoperative period after anastomotic disruption. Abscesses are often polymicrobial.
- *E. coli* is one of the more common gram-negative bacilli observed together with anaerobes.

Enteric infections
- Enterotoxigenic *E. coli* (ETEC) is a cause of traveler's diarrhea; *TMP-SMX is the drug of choice*.
- Enteropathogenic *E. coli* (EPEC) is a cause of childhood diarrhea; can be treated with *TMP-SMX*
- Enteroinvasive *E. coli* (EIEC) causes a *Shigella* -like dysentery.
- Enteroaggregative *E. coli* (EAEC) is primarily associated with persistent diarrhea in children in developing countries, and enteroadherent *E. coli* (EAEC) is a cause of childhood diarrhea and traveler's diarrhea in Mexico and North Africa.
- Enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* (EHEC) causes hemorrhagic colitis or hemolytic-uremic syndrome (HUS).
- Strains of STEC serotype O157:H7 have caused numerous outbreaks and sporadic cases of bloody diarrhea and HUS.

E. coli (O157:H7)

Background
- Gram-negative rods.
- It occurs in all ages.
- Transmitted via ingestion of contaminated food, e.g., (ground beef) or infected feces.
- The disease linked to eating undercooked beef, and unpasteurized milk or apple juice.
- Produces shiga toxins; the most virulent strain.
- The incidence of *E. coli* O157:H7 > *Shigella*.

Clinical presentation
- Usually begin as nonbloody diarrhea then become bloody
- Severe abdominal pain is common
- Fever in one third of the cases
- May progress to hemorrhagic colitis in severe cases
- Hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS) may occur

Management
- *No antibiotic* is proven to be effective and no prove that antibiotic increase the risk HUS.
- No antibiotics are indicated.
- Do not use antimotility agents.

UTIs
- The urinary tract is the most common site of *E. coli* infection, *and more than 90% of all uncomplicated UTIs are caused by E. coli infection.*
- *The recurrence rate after a first E. coli infection is 44% over 12 months.*
- *E. coli UTIs are caused by uropathogenic strains of E. coli. E. coli causes a wide range of UTIs, including uncompl*icated urethritis, cystitis, pyelonephritis, and urosepsis.

Other miscellaneous *E. coli* infections:
- Sept*ic arthritis.*
- *Endocarditis.*
- *So*ft tissue infections especially in patients with diabetes.

Yersinia enterocolitica

Background
- Smal*l-gram-negative coccobacillus*
- *It produces entero and endotoxins*
- *Pigs are commonly infected*
- *Ingestion of raw or improperly prepared food, such as pork (pork intestine or chitterlings), contaminated unpas*teurized milk, and water

Clinical presentation
- *Blood and mucus in stool*
- *Fever*
- *Right lower quadrant pain*
- *Leukocytosis*
- *Usu*ally confused with appendicitis

Treatment
- No tre*atment for isolated intestinal infection*
- *If extraintestinal manifestation or immune compromised antibiotic is indicated*
- *Cefotaxime, TMP-SMX (if older than 2 months), or amino*glycosides

Yersinia pestis

Background
- Gram-ne*gative coccobacillus that causes plague*
- *Wild rodents are the reservoir*
- *It is transmitted by flea or direct contact such as skinning the animals*
- *Has a high mortality rate*
- *Keywo*rd (adenopathy and hunting) like tularemia

Clinical presentation
- Localized ly*mphadenopathy "buboes" that suppurate*
- *Bubonic type can lead to pneumonic form that rapidly transmitted by coughing to others*
- *If not treated*, it can lead to sepsis and death

Diagnosis
- Lymph node aspiration or serology

Treatment
- Gentamicin *has been used successfully in the treatment of human plague*
- *Doxycycline (as dosed for anthrax) is a recommended alternative in patients who cannot take aminoglycosides or in* the event of a mass casualty scenario, making parenteral therapy unachievable.

Francisella tularensis

Background
- Gram-*negative pleomorphic bacillus that causes tularemia or "rabbit fever"*
- *It is found in many animals specially the rabbits*
- *Its transmitted by ticks and blood sucking flies*
- *Organism can be ingested or inhaled*
- *It is prevalent in Desert SW; Arkansas, Missouri, and Oklah*oma

Clinical presentation
- Fever, c*hills, myalgias, and arthralgias*
- *Irregular ulcers at the site of inoculation*
- *Lymphadenopathy that suppurate and form an ulcer*
- *Oculoglandular tularemia (Unilateral conjunctivitis, corneal ulceration)*
- *Pneumonic tularemia (Dry cough, dyspnea, and pleuritic-type chest pain)*
- *Typhoid*al tularemia—Fever, chills, myalgias, malaise, and weight loss

Diagnosis
- Serology, e.g., ELISA or PCR

Treatment
- Gentamicin or tetracycline

Prevention
- Avoid tick-infested areas, check cloth for ticks and use tick repellents.
- Avoid exposure to dead or wild mammals and wear gloves if such exposure is necessary; hands should be thoroughly washed afterwards.

Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever (RMSF)

Background
- It is a tickborne rickettsial disease
- Common in the Southeastern USA
- Caused by *Rickettsia rickettsii*

Clinical presentation
- Fever
- Malaise
- Headache
- Abdominal pain
- Myalgias
- 3–4 days later the rash will appear
- Maculopapular rash start in the wrist and ankle spread centrally as well as palm and sole
- Rash become petechial and purpuric

Laboratory
- ELISA or indirect fluorescent antibody detecting immunoglobulin IgM and IgG to the organism
- PCR is also available through CDC and prevention

Treatment
- No need to wait to confirm the diagnosis to start treatment
- Tetracycline particularly doxycycline is the treatment of choice even in children less than 8 years
- Antibiotic is given for 5–7 days or at least 3 days after fever resolve
- Best outcome if the treatment started within 5 days of illness

Complication
- Vasculitis
- DIC
- Death

Ehrlichiosis

Background
- Gram-negative cocci
- Transmitted by tick bite
- Monocytic ehrlichiosis (HME)
- Granulocytic ehrlichiosis (HGE)
- Common location
  - Southeastern and Southcentral USA

Clinical presentation
- Similar to RMSF but usually without rash
- Leukopenia
- Neutropenia
- Thrombocytopenia
- Hyponatremia in most of the cases
- Elevated liver enzymes

Treatment
- Drug of choice is doxycycline (Table 2)

Borrelia burgdorferi (Lyme Disease)

Background
- Tick-borne infection caused by spirochete *B. burgdorferi*
- Transmitted by *Ixodes* species ticks in the nymphal stage
- Commonly seen in the summer.
- Common areas in the USA are Northeast to mid-Atlantic, e.g., Connecticut, New York, and New Jersey

Early localized disease stage I
- Erythema migrans (pathognomonic skin lesion) either bullseye or clear center
- Myalgia
- Arthralgia
- Fever

Early disseminated disease stage II (weeks-months later)
- Recurrent erythema migrans (rare)
- *Meningitis* (lymphocytic)
- Cranial nerve palsies, e.g., *Bell palsy*
- Peripheral neuropathy, e.g., *foot drop*
- *Heart block*; first, second, or third degree heart block

Late disseminated disease stage III
- Arthritis
- Oligo-migratory arthritis

Table 2 Difference between RMSF and ehrlichiosis

Difference	Rocky mountain spotted fever	Ehrlichiosis
Mode of transmission	Tick	Tick
Rash	Very common including palm and sole	Rare
Neutropenia	Less common	More common
Thrombocytopenia	Yes	Yes
Anemia	May be present	Anemia is not a feature of ehrlichiosis
Hyponatremia	Yes	Yes
Liver enzyme	May be elevated	Usually elevated
Treatment	Doxycycline	Doxycycline

- *Remember*: Lyme disease can be confused with Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis

Diagnosis
- Erythema migrans is pathognomonic and is an early lesion and antibodies not developed yet.
  - No need to test the patient in order to treat in the first few weeks.
- Serologic testing is to confirm the diagnosis in stage two or three or in atypical cases.
- Initial test is sensitive enzyme immunoassay assay (EIA); high false positive rate.
- Confirm with western blot test.

Treatments
- Isolated Bell palsy or erythema migrans
  - Amoxicillin if < 8 years old
  - Doxycycline 100 mg bid if > 8 years old
- Cardiac and neurologic complications:
  - Ceftriaxone 75-100 mg/kg/day

Treponema pallidum

Background
- TP is spirochete mobile bacteria
- Mode of transmission:
  - Sexual contact
  - Perinatal
  - Exposure to infected blood or tissue

Clinical presentation
- Primary syphilis
  - Genital chancre
  - It is a painless papule, and then become painless ulcer, which is very contagious
- Secondary syphilis 2–10 weeks after the chancre heals
  - Maculopapular rash involve the palm and sole
  - Condyloma lata (wart like plaques around the anus or the vagina)
  - Generalized lymphadenopathy
- Tertiary syphilis (symptomatic late syphilis)
  - Cardiovascular, CNS, gummatous lesions

Diagnosis
- Screening methods:
  - RPR (rapid plasma reagin) and VDRL correlates with disease activity
  - EBV infection can cause false positive results
- FTA-ABS confirm the diagnosis and this test remain positive for life

Treatment
- Penicillin
- Doxycycline or tetracycline if allergic to penicillin

Congenital syphilis (see chapter The Fetus and Newborn Infants)

Leptospirosis

Mode of transmission
- Swimming with dog or contact with fresh water contaminated with the urine of an animal that is a chronic carrier, e.g., rats.

Clinical presentation
- Fever
- Headache
- Elevated liver enzyme

Diagnosis
- Early blood culture, later in the disease urine culture may show the organism

Treatment
- Penicillin or doxycycline

Mycobacterium tuberculosis

Background
- *M. tuberculosis*, a tubercle bacillus, is the causative agent of TB.
- Mycobacteria, such as *M. tuberculosis*, are aerobic, non spore-forming, non motile, facultative, curved intracellular rods measuring 0.2–0.5 μm by 2–4 μm.
- It retains many stains after decolorization with acid-alcohol, which is the basis of the acid-fast stains used for pathologic identification.
- TB is transmitted most commonly via airborne spread.
- Kissing, shaking hand, and sharing food do not spread the infection.
- TB is unlikely to spread from child to another child < 4 years of age.
- TB is likely to spread from infected adult to children (usually household or daycare).

Risk factors
- Foreign-born individuals in the USA have TB rates 9.5 times higher than those in the US-born persons
- Immigrants from Mexico, Philippines, Vietnam, China, and India
- Untreated HIV infection
- Immunocompromising conditions
- Recent latent tuberculosis infection (LTBI)
- Intravenous drug use
- Certain medical conditions such as diabetes and renal failure

Clinical presentation

- Only 5–10% of children older than 3 years of age who have untreated LTBI progress to disease.
- Most LTBI progress to disease within 1–2 years of initial infection.
- The most common site of infection is the lung, which accounts for up to 80% of all cases of disease.
- Pulmonary Disease
  - Infants and adolescents are more likely to be symptomatic than 5–10-year-old children
  - Cough (usually last 3 weeks or longer)
  - Hemoptysis
  - Low-grade fever
  - Weight loss (rare)
  - Night sweat
  - Loss of appetite
  - Hilar or mediastinal adenopathy may be seen
  - Cavity lesions
- Superficial lymphadenopathy:
  - The most common extrapulmonary form of TB.
  - Children who have TB lymphadenopathy tend to be older than those who have nontuberculous mycobacterial lymphadenopathy.
  - *Common locations*: anterior cervical, followed by posterior triangle, submandibular, and supraclavicular.
  - *LNs* usually measure 2–4 cm and lack the classic inflammatory findings of pyogenic nodes.
  - There may be overlying violaceous skin discoloration.
  - Surgical node excision is not curative but may be necessary to establish the diagnosis.
  - Most children respond well to a 6-month course of multidrug therapy, but occasionally therapy must be extended to 9 months, based on clinical response.
- CNS disease
  - Tuberculomas, occurring in 5% of children who have CNS TB, appear as a single rim-enhancing lesions ranging from 1 to 5 cm.
  - In TB meningitis, CSF analysis typically demonstrates lymphocytes, a low-glucose concentration, and a high-protein value.
  - The most common findings on CNS imaging:
    - Hydrocephalus and Basilar enhancement.
    - Vascular lesions involving the basal ganglia and midbrain also are common.
  - TB should be considered in cases of childhood stroke.
- Pleural TB
  - More seen in older child and adolescent.
  - Can occur in isolation or concomitantly with pulmonary parenchymal disease.
  - Symptoms include chest pain, fever, cough, dyspnea, and anorexia.
  - Auscultatory findings mimic those of bacterial pneumonia.
  - Most children have positive TST results.
  - Effusions are more common on the right and rarely bilateral.
  - The pleural fluid is exudative and lymphocytic.
  - A 6-month course of therapy is recommended.
- Miliary tuberculosis
  - Due to lymphohematogenous spread, it is a disease of the young or immunocompromised children.
  - Miliary disease can present shortly after primary infection.
  - Multiorgan involvement is common.
  - Clinical presentation:
    - Pyrexia.
    - Hepatomegaly and splenomegaly.
  - The TST is insensitive in these patients because disseminated disease can produce TST anergy.
  - AFB culture from gastric aspirates can have a yield as high as 50%.
  - A prolonged course of therapy (9–12 months) should be administered to patients who have disseminated disease.
- Skeletal TB
  - The most common manifestations of skeletal disease are:
    - *Spondylitis*.
    - Arthritis.
    - Osteomyelitis.
  - *Most patients are in the second decade of life*.
  - Spinal involvement (Pott disease), which can affect even young children.

Table 3 Positive tuberculin test reaction results in infants, children, and adolescents

Induration of 5 mm or more	Induration 10 mm or more	Induration more than 15 mm
Children in close contact with known or suspected contagious people with tuberculosis Children with suspected tuberculosis either clinically or on chest radiograph Children receiving immunosuppressive therapy or with immunosuppressive conditions, including HIV Children who are immunosuppressed for other reasons (e.g., taking the equivalent of >15 mg/day of prednisone for 1 month)	Children <4 years of age Infants, children, and adolescents exposed to adults in high-risk categories Recent immigrants (<5 years) from high-prevalence countries Injection drug users Residents and employees of high-risk congregate settings, e.g., homeless, incarcerated Persons with clinical conditions that place them at high risk, e.g., DM, Hodgkins, and Lymphoma	Children 4 years of age or older without any risk

  - Skeletal lesions can develop more than 10 years after initial infection.
  - Magnetic resonance imaging is the preferred imaging choice because it can demonstrate lesions months before plain radiographs.
  - Chest radiographs are positive in 50 % of children who have skeletal TB.
  - TST results are usually positive.
- *Other Forms* TB include
  - Abdominal
  - Renal
  - Cutaneous disease

TB testing

- *Cultures can be obtained* by sequential sputum sampling or by gastric aspiration of early morning secretions in the younger child
- The bacillus grows slowly
  - 6–8 weeks to grow on Lowenstein-Jensen media
  - 2–3 weeks to grow in liquid media
- *AFB stains include Kinyoun*, auramine-rhodamine (Truant), and Ziehl-Neelsen
  - *Truant stains* are the most sensitive
- Tuberculin skin test (TST) (Table 3)
  - It is measured in millimeters of induration (not erythema).
  - Reading is 48–72 h after placement.
  - *Know* If a child returns for TST interpretation after 72 h and has induration meeting the criteria for positivity.
  - *A negative result never* eliminates the possibility of TB disease because many disseminated forms of TB, including TB meningitis can induce anergy to the skin test
- False-negative TST results:
  - Recent measles infection
  - High-dose corticosteroid treatment, irradiation
  - Immunosuppressive therapy
  - Immunocompromising medical conditions
- A false-positive TST result:
  - Primarily in children exposed to nontuberculous (environmental) mycobacteria
  - Children recently received a bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccine
  - *A boosting phenomenon*: children received multiple sequential TSTs
  - It is recommended that children be screened for risks of exposure to TB by history initially
- BCG vaccine
  - TST can be interpreted normally in a child who received a single dose of the BCG vaccine as a young child
  - Having received a BCG as an infant may not explain a positive skin test result later in life
  - The assumption that BCG receipt is the cause of a positive TST could lead to a lack of treatment for high-risk children who potentially could benefit from LTBI therapy
- Whole blood interferon-gamma release assays (IGRAs)
  These assays have several potential advantages:
  - Only one office visit is required.
  - There is no risk of the boosting phenomenon.
  - More specificity for LTBI because the antigens in the IGRAs are shared less commonly with nontuberculous mycobacteria and are not found on BCG.
  - This test cannot distinguish LTBI from TB disease.
- Chest radiographs
  - Children who have LTBI usually have normal-appearing chest radiographs.
  - An isolated calcified lesion in a child who has a positive TST result can be treated as LTBI.
  - The most common abnormal radiographic finding is hilar or mediastinal adenopathy.
  - Other findings can include infiltrates, atelectasis, pleural effusions, cavities, or miliary disease**.**

TB exposure

- Children younger than 4 years of age and immunocompromised children
  - Should be started on medication, usually isoniazid (INH), pending results of repeated skin testing.
  - If the second skin test result is negative, medication can be discontinued.
- Children experiencing TB exposure who are older than age 4 years and immunocompetent can be observed off medications pending the second skin test result in 2-3 months

TB infection (LTBI)

- The child demonstrating a positive skin test result should be treated for LTBI to decrease the risk of disease progression later in life.
- The mainstay of therapy for LTBI is INH administered for a 9-month course.
- An alternative for patients intolerant of INH is rifampin, which is administered for 6 months.

Treatment of TB

- The standard initial regimen:
  - INH, rifampin, pyrazinamide (PZA), and ethambutol.
  - INH, rifampin, and ethambutol are administered for 6 months and PZA is stopped after the first 2 months.
  - If the source case's isolate is known to be susceptible to the other three drugs, ethambutol need not be given.
  - These medications are efficacious, available in oral formulation, and well-tolerated by children.
- The usual treatment duration for pulmonary and most extrapulmonary forms of TB is 6 months for isolates that are susceptible to all first-line TB drugs.
- Exceptions are treating children who have disseminated or CNS TB, where treatment courses of 9–12 months often are used; children infected with MDR-TB.
- Give vitamin B6 (pyridoxine).
- Children coinfected with TB and HIV.

  - Initial therapy should include four drugs, if possible.

Side effects of antituberculous medications
- INH, rifampin, and PZA are all hepatotoxic
- Ethambutol can cause decrease in visual activity (decrease color perception is the first sign of deterioration).
- Streptomycin can cause oto-nephrotoxicity.

Challenging clinical scenarios
- Adult in the household has infectious TB
  - All children in the household should have chest radiographs and TSTs performed.
  - Children younger than 4 years of age should be started empirically on INH until the TST is repeated in 2–3 months.
  - If the second TST result is negative and the child is immunocompetent, INH can be discontinued.
  - If the TST result is positive or the child is immunocompromised, INH should be continued for 9 months.
- Infant whose mother has TB
  - The TST is helpful only if the result is positive, which is very rare.
  - If the mother has a positive TST result and negative chest radiograph (LTBI), the child needs no evaluation.
  - If the mother has radiographic features consistent with TB, the neonate requires evaluation for congenital TB.
  - If the infant does not have congenital TB, he or she should be separated from the mother until the infant is receiving INH and pyridoxine (if the mother is breastfeeding) and the mother is receiving appropriate multidrug therapy.
  - Once the infant is receiving INH, separation is unnecessary and breastfeeding should be encouraged unless INH resistance is suspected.
- Health-care workers (HCWs)
  - If positive TST results they should receive chest radiographs.
  - If the chest radiograph is negative, the HCW may be offered therapy for LTBI after weighing the risks and benefits of INH in adults.
  - If the chest radiograph is positive, the HCW needs to be evaluated further.

Follow-up
- Children who have TB disease should be seen monthly while receiving therapy to document medication tolerance and adherence, weight gain, and achievement of appropriate milestones.

Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare

Background
- *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* complex is the most common cause of nontuberculous disease in children
- Usually occur in children with impaired cell immunity
- Exposure to ubiquitous soil

Clinical presentation
- Cervical lymphadenitis
  - Overlying skin is usually pink to violaceous
  - Usually unilateral
  - Increase in size over several weeks
- Cutaneous infections
- Ear infections
- Disseminated infections (high fever, night sweats, weight loss, lymphadenopathy, abdominal pain, diarrhea, and anemia)
- Osteomyelitis
- Pulmonary diseases

Management
- Complete resection of infected lymph node is diagnostic and curative
- Azithromycin in combination ethambutol or rifampin

Nocardia

Background
- *Nocardia* are weakly gram-positive, beaded and filamentous bacteria found worldwide in soils
- *It is hard to isolate*

Clinical presentation (it may present with any of the following)
- Thin walled cavitary lung lesions
- Focal brain abscess
- Neutrophilic chronic meningitis
- Nodular skin lesions

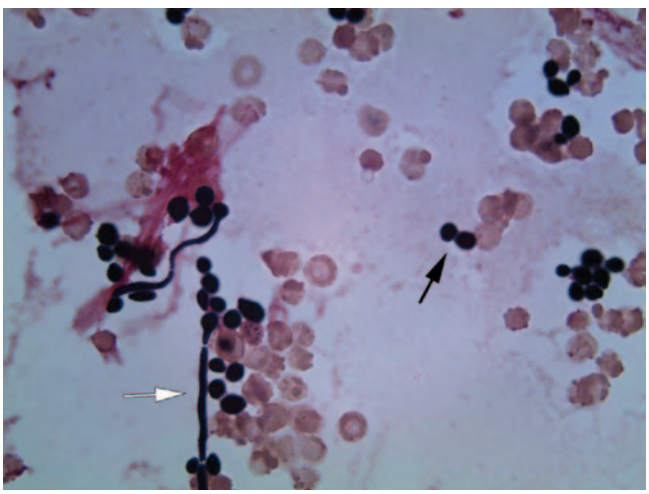


Fig. 15 *Candida albicans* in blood culture (gram stain, original magnification × 1000). Budding yeast cells (blastoconidia, *black arrow*) and pseudohyphae (*white arrow*)

Treatment
- High-dose sulfonamide or TMP-SMX
- In severely ill patients combination of drugs can be used; amikacin plus imipenem

Fungal Infections

Candida Species

- *Candida albicans* is the most commonly isolated species, and cause infections (Candidiasis or thrush).
- Systemic infections of blood stream and major organs (invasive candidiasis or candidemia, particularly in immunocompromised patients.
- *Candida* appears as budding yeast cells and pseudohyphae (Fig. 15).

Oral Thrush

Background
- Common is the first 6 postnatal months
- Possibly due to infants' immunologic immaturity

Infection sources
- Contaminated bottle nipples, pacifier, or dropper, e.g., vitamin dropper.
- Infected mother's nipples (although the incidence is high in formula fed infants).
- Maternal vaginal colonization with *Candida*.

Recognize
- Recurrent or persistent oral thrush beyond 6–12 months raises the concern of immunodeficiency, especially if associated with failure to thrive or hepatosplenomegaly.

Risk of infection
- Use of inhaled steroid without adequate rinsing afterward or oral antibiotics can cause oral thrush.
- Poorly controlled diabetes in adult can cause candida infection however is not associated with gestational diabetes.

Clinical presentation
- Infant may have trouble feeding in severe cases.
- Tiny focal white area that enlarge to white patches on oral mucosa (Fig. 16).
- If scraped with a tongue blade, lesions are difficult to remove and leave behind an inflamed base that may be painful and may bleed.
- Examine the patient with diaper dermatitis for oral lesions.

Treatment
- Oral nystatin.
- Once-daily oral fluconazole is superior to oral nystatin for resistant thrush and effective candidal diaper dermatitis.

Candidal Diaper Dermatitis

Clinical presentation
- Lesions consist of beefy-red plaques, often with scalloped borders.
- Satellite papules and pustules may be observed surrounding the plaques (Fig. 17).
- Maceration is often present, especially in intertriginous areas.

Treatment
- Once-daily oral fluconazole is superior to oral nystatin for resistant thrush and effective candidal diaper dermatitis.
- Topical clotrimazole if resistant to topical nystatin.

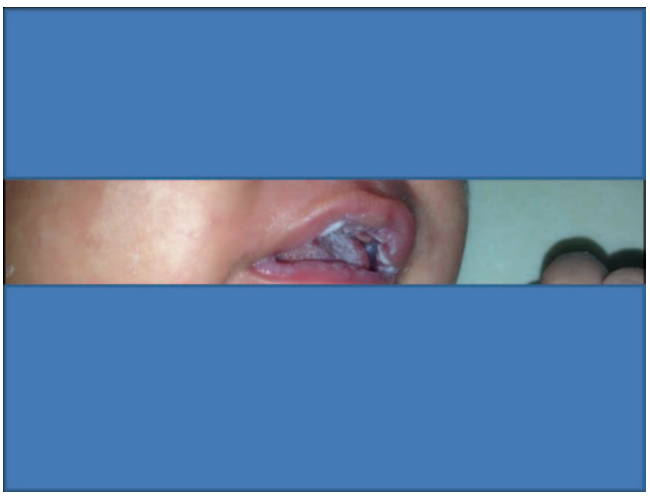


Fig. 16 Thrush: Tiny focal white areas that enlarge to white patches on oral mucosa, it was difficult to remove the white spots with the tongue blade

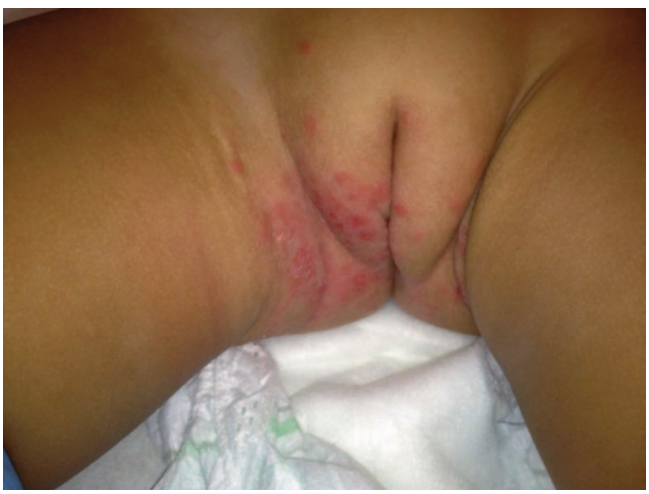


Fig. 17 Candidal diaper rash: lesions consist of beefy-red plaques, with satellite papules

Vulvovaginitis

Background
- Common in pubertal and adolescent girls
- Risk factors
  - Oral antibiotics
  - Oral contraceptive
  - Pregnancy
  - Poor hygiene
  - Diabetes

Clinical presentation
- Vulvar/vaginal erythema, and itching
- White, cottage cheese like vaginal discharge

Treatment
- Topical nystatin or clotrimazole
- Single dose of oral fluconazole

Candidal Infections in Neonates

Background
- Very low-birth weight
- Prolonged venous catheter (obtain culture from the catheter)

Treatment
- Remove the catheter
- Parenteral amphotericin (lipid-complex formulation (less nephrotoxic))
  - Monitor for hypokalemia

Aspergillus

Background
- *Aspergillus* species is ubiquitous molds found in organic matter.
- Most common species affect the human is *Aspergillus fumigatus* and *Aspergillus niger*.

Mode of transmission
- Inhalation of fungus spores

Clinical presentation
- Underlying asthma or cystic fibrosis
  - May presents with fever and pulmonary infiltrates not responsive to antibiotics (allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis)
  - Patient may cough mucous plug
- Underlying preexisting cavities, e.g., TB, sarcoidosis, or CF
  - Aspergilloma or fungal ball, it may cause hemoptysis
- Allergic fungal sinusitis
  - Present with purulent discharge and unilateral opacity
- Immunocompromised patient may present:
  - Fever, cough, dyspnea, pleuritic chest pain, and hemoptysis

Diagnosis
- Elevated IgE level
- Deterioration of lung function and increase in sputum production in chronically ill patients, e.g., CF or asthma
- Peripheral eosinophilia
- Sputum culture
- Bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL)
- CT scan

Treatment of allergic pulmonary aspergillosis
- Oral steroids

Cryptococcosis

Background
- Infection with the encapsulated yeast *Cryptococcus neoformans* can result in harmless colonization of the airways
- It can also lead to meningitis or disseminated disease, especially in persons with defective cell-mediated immunity.
- *Cryptococcosis* represents a major life-threatening fungal infection in patients with severe HIV infection and may also complicate organ transplantation, reticuloendothelial malignancy, corticosteroid treatment, or sarcoidosis.

Clinical presentation
- Severity of symptoms and presentation depends on the immune status and the affected organs
- *Pulmonary*; cough, pleuritic chest pain, fever, dyspnea, weight loss, and malaise
- *Meningitis*; headache, lethargy, confusion, seizures, and coma
- *Skin*; papules, pustules, nodules, ulcers, or draining sinuses

Diagnosis
- Cutaneous lesions: Biopsy with fungal stains and cultures.
- Blood: Fungal culture, cryptococcal serology, and cryptococcal antigen testing.
- Cerebrospinal fluid: India ink smear, fungal culture, and cryptococcal antigen testing.
- In AIDS patients with cryptococcal pneumonia, culture of bronchoalveolar lavage washings.

Treatment for cryptococcal meningitis
- Amphotericin B, and flucytosine for 2 weeks

- Flucytosine speeds clearance of viable yeast from CSF but is potentially toxic, especially in patients with renal dysfunction
- Then fluconazole for 8-10 weeks

Malassezia furfur

Overview
- Can cause tinea versicolor (see skin disorders)
- Can cause neonatal infection in NICU babies receiving TPN with lipids
- NICU babies with *M. furfur* may present with fever, bilateral interstitial infiltrates, and increased WBCs
- *M. furfur* requires olive oil overlay to grow

Management of infection in Neonates
- Removal of catheters
- Stop lipid infusion
- Start amphotericin B or fluconazole

Histoplasmosis

Background
- Endemic areas: Ohio, Missouri, and Mississippi River valleys
- Mode of transmission
  - Inhalation of spores from birds excreta or contaminated soil
  - No person to person transmission

Clinical presentation
- Flu like symptoms
- Pulmonary infiltrates
- Hilar lymphadenopathy with or without calcifications
- Erythema nodosum
- In younger children may develop progressive disseminated histoplasmosis

Treatment
- Amphotericin B

Coccidioides (Coccidioidomycosis)

Background
- Endemic areas
  - California, Arizona, New Mexico, and Texas
- Mode of transmission
  - Inhalation of airborne spores

Clinical presentation
- Most cases are asymptomatic
- Fever
- Cough
- Weight loss (common)
- Fatigue
- Shortness of breath
- Chills
- Erythema nodosum
- Night sweat
- Mild respiratory distress or respiratory failure in severe cases

Diagnosis
- Culture and DNA probe is the most definitive method for the diagnosis
- High index of suspicion is important in patient who travelled or underlying medical conditions
- Elevated ESR
- Lymphocytosis and monocytosis
- Eosinophilia > 5 %
- Chest radiography may show consolidations and hilar lymphadenopathy

Treatment
- Amphotericin B in Severe disseminated disease
- Fluconazole for CNS infections

Blastomyces
- *Blastomyces* causes illness similar to *Histoplasma* and *Coccidioides*
- It is seen in Arkansas and Wisconsin hunters and loggers
- Outbreak occurred in kids visited Wisconsin lodge and beaver dam
- *Blastomyces* may disseminate to the skin and cause crusted skin lesions
- Bone lesion more common with blastomycosis
- Itraconazole or amphotericin B is the treatment of choice depending on the severity

Sporotrichosis schenckii
- Common in florists
- Symptoms may take from 7 to 30 day after inoculation
- Present with painless papule at the site of inoculation then ulcerates
- Extracutaneous manifestation may occur
- Itraconazole is the drug of choice
- Saturated solution K iodide, is much less costly and still recommended as an alternative treatment

Protozoa

Giardia lamblia (Giardiasis)

Background
- Giardiasis is an infection of the small intestine caused by the flagellated protozoan *Giardia intestinalis*.
- Mode of transmission

- Travelers and hikers who drink water contaminated with stool from infected animals such as beavers, muskrats, and sheep.
- Outbreaks also may occur from sewage contamination of water supplies.
- Unprotected anal sex also is a source of transmission.
- Child care centers from fecal-oral transmission.
- Food-associated outbreaks may occur.

Clinical presentation
- Most infections remaining asymptomatic
- Watery diarrhea with abdominal cramping
- Nausea
- Vomiting
- Weight loss
- Flatulence

Diagnosed
- Microscopic examination of the stool for cysts or by antigen detection

Treatment
- Indicated for all symptomatic patients.
- Metronidazole, a single dose of tinidazole, or nitazoxanide for 3 days.
- Immunocompromised patients, e.g., AIDS at increased risk for chronic giardiasis and treatment failure.

Entamoeba histolytica

Background
- Amebiasis is caused by pathogenic species of *Entamoeba*
- Mode of transmission
  - Fecal-oral route
  - Travel to high-risk area, e.g., Mexico

Clinical presentation
- Can be asymptomatic
- Amebic dysentery or colitis
  - Bloody diarrhea with mucus
  - Tenesmus
- Hepatic abscess
  - Fever
  - Abdominal pain
  - Tender enlarged liver
  - Elevated liver enzymes
  - Elevated ESR

Diagnosis
- Stool microscopic examination
- Stool antigen
- Serum antibody
- Ultrasound if liver abscess is suspected

Treatment
- Symptomatic cases.
  - Metronidazole followed by paromomycin or iodoquinol to eradicate colonization.
- Asymptomatic amebiasis in non endemic areas should be treated with a luminal agent (iodoquinol, paromomycin, or diloxanide furoate) to eradicate infection.
- Amebic liver abscess can be cured without drainage and even by 1 dose of metronidazole.

Cryptosporidiosis

Background
- Cryptosporidiosis, caused by *Cryptosporidium* protozoa
- Transmitted via feco-oral route; child care centers, and *swimming pools*

Clinical presentation
- *Diarrhea*
- Chronic diarrhea in immunodeficient patients

Treatment
- Many immunocompetent patients who have cryptosporidiosis have self-limited disease and do not require therapy
- A 3-day course of nitazoxanide:
- To reduce the duration and transmission of diarrhea in children older than 1 year of age
- No swimming pool for at least 2 weeks after the diarrhea stopped

Toxoplasma gondii (Toxoplasmosis)

Background
- Obligate intracellular protozoa
- *Mode of transmission*
  - Ingestion of contaminated raw or uncooked meat
  - Cats excreta
  - Organ transplants
  - Transplacental to fetus causes congenital toxoplasmosis (see chapter Fetus and Newborns)

Clinical presentation
- Most cases are asymptomatic
- Fever
- Malaise
- Rash
- Myalgia
- Cervical lymphadenopathy (most common sign)
- Brain abscess (test for HIV)
- Chorioretinitis usually present years later (mostly congenital)

Diagnosis
- Head CT: ring-enhanced lesion
- Toxoplasma IgM antibodies
- PCR

Treatment
- Pyrimethamine plus sulfadiazine and folic acid
- Lifelong therapy in HIV patients

Pneumocystis jiroveci (Carinii)

Background
- Unicellular fungi that do not respond to antifungal treatment
- Mode of transmission is unknown
- Commonly seen in immunocompromised patients, e.g., HIV patients

Clinical presentation
- Subacute diffuse pneumonitis
- Dyspnea
- Tachycardia
- Oxygen desaturation
- Nonproductive cough
- Fever

Diagnosis
- Chest radiography
  - Bilateral diffuse interstitial disease
- Low CD4
- Bronchoalveolar lavage
- Lung biopsy

Treatment
- TMP-SMX
- IV pentamidine in severe cases
- *Prophylaxis* in immunocompromised patients
  - TMP-SMX

Plasmodium (Malaria)

Background
- Intracellular protozoa
- Transmitted by mosquito bites in endemic area, e.g., south Africa

Plasmodium falciparum
- Most severe
- Symptoms develop within a month from returning from endemic area
- Most common cause of congenital malaria
- Complications
  - Cerebral malaria
  - Pulmonary edema
  - Severe anemia
  - Renal failure
  - Shock
- Treatment
  - *Chloroquine sensitive*:
    - Chloroquine
  - *Chloroquine resistant*:
    - Quinine plus doxycycline or clindamycin
    - Or atovaquone-proguanil
    - Or mefloquine
  - *Severe cases*:
    - Quinidine gluconate IV plus doxycycline or clindamycin
- *Plasmodium malariae*, *P. vivax*, and *P. ovale*
  - Periodicity of symptoms
  - Nephrotic syndrome-P. malariae (most benign form)
  - Hypersplenism and splenic rupture-*P. vivax* and *P. ovale*
  - *Treatment*
    - Chloroquine plus primaquine for *P. vivax*, and *P. ovale*
    - Chloroquine phosphate for *P. malaria*

Clinical presentation of malaria
- History of travelling to endemic areas in the past years
- Paroxysmal fever, sweat and rigors
- Pallor and jaundice
- Headache and myalgia
- Abdominal pain
- Vomiting and diarrhea
- In se*vere cases*
  - Change in mental status
  - Hepatosplenomegaly
  - Anemia
  - Thrombocytopenia
  - Hypotension
  - Hypoglycemia
  - Hyperkalemia
  - Respiratory distress

Diagnosis
- RBCs smear

Prevention
- Travelling to chloroquine resistant areas, e.g., South Africa
  - Atovaquone-proguanil 2 weeks before and 4 weeks after or
  - Doxycycline (> 8 years old)
  - Mefloquine (safe for pregnant)
- Travelling to chloroquine sensitive areas, e.g., South America
  - Chloroquine 2 weeks before and 4 weeks after or
  - Atovaquone-proguanil or
  - Mefloquine

Helminthic Organisms

Enterobius vermicularis (Pinworm)

Mode of transmission
- From one person to another via feco-oral route
- Eggs survive up to 3 weeks and are ingested from finger nails, bedding, and toys
- Autoinfection

Clinical presentation
- Anal and vulvar itching (more at night)
- Enuresis

Diagnosis
- Visualizing the adult worm at night on the perineum
- Transparent tape collected over three consecutive mornings under microscope low power

Treatment
- Albendazole

Ascaris lumbricoides (Ascariasis)

Mode of transmission
- Ingestion of eggs from contaminated soil (feco-oral)

Clinical presentation
- Most patient are asymptomatic
- Nonspecific abdominal pain or discomfort
- Intestinal obstruction (large number of worms)
- Due to larvae migration to the liver and lung:
  - Obstructive jaundice
  - Peritonitis
  - Cough (Loeffler's syndrome)

Diagnosis
- Seeing the ova on microscopic stool examination
- Seeing the adult worm itself

Treatment
- Albendazole or pyrantel pamoate

Necator americanus (Hookworm) or Ancylostoma duodenale

Background
- Found in rural, tropical and subtropical locales
- *Mode of transmission*
  - Skin penetration of larvae from soil contaminated by human feces
  - Can cause itchiness and burning sensation
  - May be ingested as well
  - Can cause pharyngitis and gastroenteritis

Clinical presentation (blood sucker worm from the intestine)
- Failure to thrive
- Short stature
- Anemia due to chronic blood loss

Diagnosis
- Finding the eggs stool (may take 5–10 weeks after infection)

Treatment
- Albendazole

Trichuriasis (Whipworms)

- It is due to infection of large intestine with *Trichuris trichiura*.
- More common in the Southern USA.
- Transmitted to human by ingesting eggs.
- Usually asymptomatic if only few worms.
- Can cause fever, abdominal pain, weight loss, blood in stool and rectal prolapse.
- Presence of eggs in stool is diagnostic.
- Treatment is mebendazole.

Trichinosis (Trichinella spiralis)

- *Trichinella spiralis* is usually found in pork.
- Symptoms depend on the worm location.
- After ingestion the eggs hatch, larvae invade the duodenum, and causes abdominal symptoms.
- Larvae penetrate, reach bloodstream, end in muscular tissue and causes muscle pain.
- If the larvae reach the heart can cause myocarditis.
- Ocular involvement; presence of chemosis, periorbital edema, and eosinophilia usually suggest the diagnosis.
- Diagnosis is confirmed by rising titers.

Strongyloides stercoralis

- *S. stercoralis* is common in certain areas of the USA.
- In the USA this infection is common in Kentucky and Tennessee.

- It is the only helminthic organism replicates in the body with autoinfection, and the infection may persist for decades.
- Can cause pulmonary symptoms with eosinophilia and GI symptoms as well.
- It is potentially fetal in immunosuppressed patients.
- *Diagnosis* of serial stool studies for *larvae* not the eggs.
- *Treatment* is ivermectin or thiabendazole.

Toxocariasis

- *Toxocara canis* and *Toxocara catis* can cause visceral larva migrans.
- It is transmitted to human by ingesting soil contaminated with dog or cat excreta.
- In human larva do not develop into adult worms but rather migrate through the host tissue; causing eosinophilia.
- Treatment is albendazole or mebendazole.

Cestodes (Platyhelminthes)

- Platyhelminthes include cestodes (tapeworms) and trematodes (flukes).
- Cestodes are flatworms (tapeworms).The pork tapeworm. Taenia solium, present in two different ways.
- If the cysticerci are ingested, taeniasis develops and tape worm grows in the intestine.
- If contaminated food with eggs is ingested, the patient will develop cysticercosis.
- Cysticerci go in CNS and the eyes and do nothing until they die.
- Diagnosis of neurocysticercosis must be considered in the patients with new onset seizures and history of travelling to or immigration from Mexico, Central or South America or who is a household from these areas.

Trematodes (Platyhelminthes)

- *Trematodes* or flukes.
- *Clonorchis sinensis* is the Chinese liver fluke.
- *Schistosoma haematobium* infects the bladder and cause urinary symptoms.
- *Schistosoma mansoni* is a fluke found in Africa, the Middle East, and South America.
- *Schistosoma japonicum* is found in Asia.
- Most serious complications of Schistosomiasis is cirrhosis with esophageal varices.
- Treatment is praziquantel

Fever Without Focus

Febrile Neonate

Background

- It is difficult to distinguish between a serious bacterial infection and self limited viral illness in this age group.
- Neonates who have fever and do not appear ill have a 7% risk of having a serious bacterial infection.
- Serious bacterial infections include occult bacteremia, meningitis, pneumonia, osteomyelitis, septic arthritis, enteritis, and UTI.
- Late onset neonatal bacterial diseases, e.g., group B *Streptococci*, *E. coli*, and *Listeria* monocytogenes and perinatal herpes (HSV) infection.
- If the neonate has fever recorded at home by reliable parents, the patient should be treated as febrile neonate.
- If excessive clothing and blanket falsely elevating the temperature, the excessive covering should be removed and retake the temperature in 15–30 min.

Management

- All febrile neonates must be hospitalized.
- Full sepsis evaluation including blood, urine, CSF should be cultured.
- Child should receive empirical antibiotics such as cefotaxime and ampicillin.
- Acyclovir should be included if HSV infection is suspected.
- CSF studies should include cell count, glucose, and protein level, Gram stain, cultures; HSV, and enterovirus PCR should be considered.
- Stool culture and CXR may be included.

Fever in 1–3 Months Infants

Background

- Large majority of the children with fever without localizing signs in 1–3 months age group likely viral syndrome.
- Most viral diseases has distinct seasonal pattern unlike bacteria, e.g., respiratory syncytial virus, and influenza more common during winter and enterovirus infection more common during summer and fall.

Management

- *Ill appearing* (toxic) febrile infants ≤3 months:
  - Require prompt hospitalization, immediate parenteral antibiotics after blood and CSF cultures are obtained.
- *Well appearing* infants 1–3 months who is previously healthy with no evidence of focus of infection:
  - WBCs count of 5000–15,000 cells/μL, an absolute band count of ≤1500 cells/μL, and normal urinalysis, and negative culture (blood and urine) results are unlikely to have a serious bacterial infection.

Table 4 Differential diagnosis of fever of unknown origin (FUO)

Fever type	Differential diagnosis
Infectious	*Viral*: EBV, CMV, hepatitis, HIV, parvovirus B19 *Bacterial*: tuberculosis, cat scratch, *Brucella*, *Salmonella*, tularemia, meningococcemia *Other*: toxoplasmosis, coccidioidomycosis, rubella *Common*: otitis media, sinusitis, pneumonia, UTI, osteomyelitis, septic arthritis, meningitis *Less common*: malaria, Lyme disease, endocarditis, acute rheumatic fever
Rheumatologic	Juvenile idiopathic arthritis, SLE, dermatomyositis, scleroderma, sarcoidosis, polyarteritis nodosa, other vasculitides
Oncologic	Leukemia, lymphoma, neuroblastoma, Ewing sarcoma, hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis
Autoimmune	Inflammatory bowel disease, macrophage activation syndrome
Drug related	Penicillin, cephalosporins, sulfonamides, phenytoin, acetaminophen
Other	Kawasaki disease, central fever, factitious fever, thyrotoxicosis

- The decision to obtain CSF studies in the well appearing 1–3 months old infant depends on the decision to administer empirical antibiotics.
- If close observation without antibiotics planned, a lumbar puncture may be deferred.

Fever in 3–36 Months of Age

Background

- Approximately 30 % of febrile children in the 3–36 months age group have no localizing signs of infection.
- Viral infections are the cause of the vast majority of fevers in this population.
- Risk factors indicating probability of occult bacteremia
- Temperature ≥ 39 °C, WBC count ≥ 15,000/μL, elevated absolute neutrophil count, bands, ESR and CRP.
- The risk of bacteremia and/or pneumonia or pyelonephritis, among infants 3–36 months of age increases as temperature (specially > 40 °C) and WBCs count (specially > 25,000) increases.

Management

- *Toxic appearing* febrile children 3–36 months of age who do not have focal infection should be hospitalized, and prompt institution of parenteral antibiotics after blood, urine and CSF cultures are obtained (full sepsis evaluation).
- *For nontoxic appearing* infants who have temperature < 39 °C can be observed as outpatient with no diagnostic test or antibiotics.
- *For nontoxic infants* who have rectal temperature ≥ 39 °C, options include obtaining obtaining a blood culture, and administering empirical antibiotic therapy (ceftriaxone, a single dose 50 mg/kg not to exceed 1 g) or blood culture with no antibiotic and observing the patient within 24 h as out-patient. (Careful observation without empirical antibiotics is generally prudent).

Fever of Unknown Origin (FUO)

Background

- FUO was defined as:
  - More than 3 weeks' duration of illness. Temperature greater than 38.3 °C (101 °F) on several occasions.
  - Failure to reach a diagnosis despite 1 week of inpatient investigation.
- Patients with undiagnosed FUO (5–15 % of cases) generally have a benign long-term course, especially when the fever is not accompanied by substantial weight loss or other signs of a serious underlying disease.
- FUO last more 6 months in uncommon in children and suggests granulomatous or autoimmune disease (Table 4).

Approach

- Age of the patient is helpful:
  - Children > 6 years of age often have respiratory or genitourinary tract infection, localized infection (abscess, osteomyelitis), JIA, or rarely leukemia.
  - Adolescent patients more likely to have TB, inflammatory bowel disease, autoimmune process or lymphoma in addition to the causes of FUO in younger children.
- Exposure to wild or domestic animals, and zoonotic infection.
- History of pica should be elicited; ingestion of dirt is a particularly important due to infection with *Toxocara canis* or *Toxoplasma gondii*.
- Physical examination is essential to find any physical clues to underlying diagnosis, e.g., lymphadenopathy, rash, joint swelling, etc.
- Laboratory it is determined on case-by-case bases.
- ESR > 30 mm/h indicates inflammation and need further evaluation.
- ESR > 100 mm/h suggests tuberculosis, Kawasaki disease, malignancy or autoimmune disease.
- Low ESR does not eliminate the possibility of infection.
- CRP is another acute phase reactant that is elevated and returns to normal more rapidly than ESR.
- Cultures, serologic studies, imaging studies and biopsies depending on each case.

Treatment

- The ultimate treatment of FUO is tailored to the underlying diagnosis.

- Empirical trials of antimicrobial agents may be dangerous and obscure the diagnosis of infective endocarditis, meningitis, parameningeal infection, and osteomyelitis.
- Antipyretics for fever and relief of symptoms.

Central Nervous System (CNS) Infections

Encephalitis

Definition
- Inflammation of the brain

Causes
- Viral, e.g., West Nile virus and herpesvirus (most common)
- Bacteria, e.g., *Mycoplasma*, tertiary syphilis
- Noninfectious, e.g., autoimmune
- Prion protein
- Parasitic
- Fungal
- Acute cerebellar ataxia
  - Ataxia
  - Nystagmus
  - Cerebellar dysarthria

Epidemiology
- WNV remains the most commonly encountered arboviral encephalitis agent.
- California encephalitis viruses have the greatest proportion of pediatric symptomatic infections (88 % of cases).
- Eastern equine encephalitis has the highest overall mortality rate of 42 %.
- The importance of local epidemiological information and seasonality cannot be ignored.
- Enteroviruses are most often seen in spring and summer.
- Arthropod-borne illnesses, in the summer and fall.

Clinical presentation
- Altered mental status
- Seizures
- Weakness
- Sensory disturbances
- Nonepileptic movement disorders
- Young children in absence of identifiable cause may present with:
  - Somnolence
  - Disinterest in feeding
  - Weak suck and irritability
  - Loss of head control
  - Abnormal eye movements
- Further clinical clues:
  - Fever (either acutely or in the 1–4 week interval before the onset of symptoms)
  - Meningeal irritation
  - Any child presenting with uncharacteristic behavior that is persistent and disproportionate to environmental and situational factors

Initial evaluation of the patient include:
- Seasonal presentation.
- History of immunosuppression.
- Travel history.
- Recent local epidemiological information.
- Presence of focal neurologic symptoms or deficits.

Investigation
- Complete blood count.
- Complete metabolic panel.
- Urinalysis.
- MRI or CT scan for intracranial pressure.
- EEG.
- Enteroviral infections can produce a sepsis-like syndrome with more remarkable hematologic abnormalities.
- Neonatal HSV infections sometimes produce hepatic function abnormalities and disseminated intravascular coagulation.
- SIADH.
- Lumbar puncture if normal pressure.
- Cerebrospinal spinal fluid study:
  - The lumbar puncture is the single most utilized test for the diagnosis of encephalitis.
  - Increased opening pressure.
  - Normal or elevated protein concentration.
  - Normal glucose level.
  - Pleocytosis, polymorphonuclear leukocytes and then converts to lymphocytic in many viral cases.
  - Monocytic, predominance may show with progression of the disease.
  - Hemorrhagic pleocytosis with HSV.
  - Atypical lymphocytes with EBV.
  - Mononuclear leukocytes with echovirus or varicella-zoster infection.
  - PCR amplification of viral DNA.
  - Pleocytosis tends to be less dramatic in parainfectious encephalitis or acute cerebellar ataxia.
  - Fourfold rise in titer, especially immunoglobulin M, against a suspected agent is most often considered diagnostic.
- Intravenous acyclovir while waiting for lumbar puncture, or while waiting for laboratory results, including HSV PCR.
- Intracranial hypertension conservative measures
  - Head elevation

- Hyperventilation
- Fluid restriction
- Mannitol is used on a limited basis

Treatment of seizure

- Benzodiazepines (midazolam, lorazepam, diazepam) in the beginning followed by loading dose of fosphenytoin, or Phenobarbital.

Meningitis

Neonatal Streptococcal Meningitis

- GBS remains the predominant neonatal meningitis pathogen.
- Early-onset disease, infants typically manifest with signs suggestive of sepsis, often with pneumonia, but less commonly with meningitis.
- Late-onset disease; the typical infant who has late-onset disease is 3–4 weeks of age and presents with meningitis or bacteremia.

Neonatal Gram-negative Meningitis

- Gram-negative bacillary meningitis is rare and *E. coli* being the most commonly isolated pathogen.
- Other gram-negative neonatal meningitis pathogens such as *Citrobacter koseri, Enterobacter sakazakii*, and *Serratia marcescens*.

Neonatal Herpes Simplex (HSV) Infection

- HSV in the newborn can present as isolated skin or mucous membrane lesions, encephalitis, or a disseminated process.
- HSV infection occurs most commonly in infants born to mothers who have active primary infection.
- Frequently no maternal history or clinical evidence is available to alert the practitioner to this diagnosis.
- The incubation period is 2 days to 2 weeks, and most infants who develop HSV CNS infection are 2–3 weeks of age.

Neonatal *Listeria meningitis*

- Common sources:
  - Unpasteurized milk
  - Soft cheeses
  - Prepared ready-to-eat meats
  - Undercooked poultry
  - Unwashed raw vegetables
- Can precipitate abortion and preterm delivery.
- Septic appearance in the neonate is typical in cases of early onset.
- Papular truncal rash has been identified.

S. pneumoniae

- *Pneumococcus* is the leading pathogen causing bacterial meningitis in infants and young children in developed countries.

N. meningitidis

- Meningococcal disease generally occurs in otherwise healthy individuals and often has a fulminant presentation with high fatality rates.

Aseptic meningitis

- Enteroviruses virus infection is the most common.
- *B. burgdorferi* in mid-Atlantic states.
- Vasculitis in the setting of systemic lupus erythematosus or Kawasaki disease.
- Drug-induced: such as ibuprofen, and IV immunoglobulin

Other Causes of Meningitis

- *M. tuberculosis*
- *B. burgdorferi*
- *Rickettsia rickettsii*

Clinical Manifestations of Meningitis

- Infants younger than 1 month of age who have viral or bacterial meningitis
  - Fever
  - Hypothermia
  - Lethargy
  - Irritability
  - Poor feeding
- Signs and symptoms of increased intracranial pressure and meningeal inflammation
  - Vomiting
  - Apnea
  - Seizures also can occur
- Older children and adolescents often experience
  - Malaise
  - Myalgia
  - Headache
  - Photophobia
  - Neck stiffness
  - Anorexia
  - Nausea.

Physical Examination

- Altered levels of consciousness can present as irritability, somnolence, lethargy, or coma
- Intracranial pressure include:
- Papilledema.
- Diplopia.
- Unilateral or bilateral dilated pupil.

Table 5 Cerebrospinal fluid analysis (Adapted from Wubbel L, McCracken GH. *Pediatr* Rev. 1998)

	Glucose (mg/dL)	Protein (g/L)	White blood cell ($\times 10^3$/mcL)	Differential count	Gram stain
Healthy newborn	30–120	30–150	<0.03	No PMNs	Negative
Healthy child	40–80	20–40	<0.01	No PMNs	Negative
Bacterial meningitis	<½ serum Often <10	>100	>1.0=1000	>50 PMNs Often >90%	
Enteroviral meningitis	>1/2 serum	40–60	0.05–0.5	>50% PMNs early <50% PMNs later >48 h	Negative
Lyme meningitis	>1/2 serum		0.05–0.5	Predominance of lymphocytes and monocytes	Negative
Tuberculous meningitis	<1/2 serum	>100	0.05–0.5	Predominance of lymphocyte	Negative

This table is just a guide and should not be used in isolation without clinical correlation because overlap between values in each of these categories is significant

PMN polymorphonuclear leukocytes.

- Poorly reactive pupils.
- Bulging fontanelle in infants.
- Head circumference always should be obtained, especially in those who have an open fontanelle.
- Meningismus is suggestive of meningeal irritation.
- Kernig sign:
  - The patient lies supine and the thigh is flexed at a right angle to the trunk. If knee extension from this position elicits pain, the Kernig sign is positive.
- Brudzinski sign:
  - The patient lies supine and flexes his or her neck.
  - A positive sign occurs if the patient also reflexively flexes the lower extremities, typically at the knees.
- *Absence* of Kernig and Brudzinski signs does not exclude meningitis.
- Exanthems typical for enterovirus, borreliosis (erythema migrans), and invasive meningococcal or pneumococcal disease (petechiae and purpura) may be present.

Diagnosis

- All children who are suspected of having meningitis should have their CSF examined unless lumbar puncture is contraindicated.
- Contraindications of lumbar puncture include:
  - Focal neurologic deficits.
  - Signs of increased intracranial pressure.
  - Uncorrected coagulopathy.
  - Cardiopulmonary compromise.
- *Computed tomography (CT) scan* is performed before lumbar puncture if any signs of ICP.
- CSF finding of Bacterial meningitis (Table 5).
  - *Glucose* concentration usually is less than one half of the measured serum value.
  - *Protein* value often is greater than 1.0 g/dL (10 g/L).
  - *WBC* often greater than 1.0×10^3/mcL (1.0×10^9/L), with a predominance of polymorphonuclear leukocytes.
  - *Gram stain* is extremely helpful if positive.
  - *CSF culture* remains the gold standard for diagnosing bacterial meningitis.
- CSF finding viral meningitis
  - WBC count of $0.05–0.5 \times 103$/mcL ($0.05–0.5 \times 109$/L).
  - Neutrophil predominance is common early in the course of infection, shifting to lymphocytic predominance quickly during the illness.
  - Glucose and protein concentrations frequently are normal, although the protein value can be slightly elevated. Gram stain is universally negative.
  - In cases of enteroviral meningitis, enteroviral PCR can confirm the diagnosis.
- Tuberculous meningitis, epidemiologic clue, high protein and lymphocytosis.
- SIADH and hyponatremia commonly occur in bacterial meningitis.
- Leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and coagulopathy may be present in meningococcal and rickettsial infection.

Management

- Therapy should not be delayed if CNS infection is suspected.
- Appropriate antimicrobials are required in bacterial meningitis, HSV encephalitis, Lyme meningitis, tuberculous meningitis, and rickettsial infection, and in all cases, timely diagnosis and correct antimicrobial choice are critical.
- If the practitioner cannot perform a lumbar puncture or there are contraindications to CSF examination, a blood culture should be obtained and antibiotics administered promptly.

Drug choice and duration

- For infants
  - Ampicillin (300 mg/kg/day divided every 6 h) and cefotaxime (200–300 mg/kg/day divided every 6 h) is appropriate.
  - Acyclovir (60 mg/kg/day divided every 8 h) should be added if HSV infection is a concern.
  - Vancomycin (60 mg/kg/day given every 6 h) should be added, if the Gram stain suggests pneumococcus.

- Children older than 2 months of age
  - Vancomycin (60 mg/kg/day divided every 6 h) plus ceftriaxone (100 mg/kg/day given in one dose or divided into two doses) or cefotaxime (200–300 mg/kg/day divided every 6 h) should be used for empiric coverage.
  - Once culture and susceptibility data are available, definitive therapy can be selected.
- HSV meningitis
  - Neonatal HSV CNS infection typically is treated with IV acyclovir (60 mg/kg/day divided every 8 h) for 21 days.
  - The dosing for non-neonates is 30 mg/kg/day divided every 8 h IV for 14–21 days.
  - Follow-up CSF HSV DNA PCR should be evaluated at day 21 and the course of therapy extended if the result still is positive.

Corticosteroids in bacterial meningitis
- Adjunctive treatment has reduced rates of mortality, severe hearing loss, and neurologic sequelae significantly in adults who have community-acquired bacterial meningitis.
- For children beyond the neonatal age groups, available data suggest that the use of adjunctive corticosteroids may be beneficial for Hib meningitis and could be considered in cases of pneumococcal meningitis.
- The dose of dexamethasone for bacterial meningitis is 0.6 mg/kg/day divided into four doses and administered IV for 4 days. The first dose should be given before or concurrently with antibiotics.

Care of the child exposed to meningitis
- Meningococcal and Hib disease create an increased risk for secondary infection in contacts.
- Rifampin generally is the drug of choice for chemoprophylaxis in children.

Prognosis
- Intellectual deficits (intelligence quotient <70), hydrocephalus, spasticity, blindness, and severe hearing loss are the most common sequelae.
- Hearing loss occurs in approximately 30% of patients, can be unilateral or bilateral, and is more common in pneumococcal than meningococcal meningitis.

Brain Abscess

Causes of brain abscess
- Chronic otitis media
- Paranasal sinus infection
- Mastoiditis
- Head injury
- *S. aureus*
- Metastatic spread, e.g., endocarditis
- Right-to-left cardiac or pulmonary shunts, especially in the presence of cyanotic congenital heart disease

Clinical presentation
- Headache (most common)
  - May be throbbing
  - Worsen with changes in posture or Valsalva maneuver
- Drowsiness
- Confusion
- Vomiting
- Drowsiness, and coma
- Hemiparesis
- Papilledema

Frontal lobe abscesses
- Apathy, memory deficits
- Personality change
- Mental slowing

Cerebellar abscesses
- Nystagmus
- Defective conjugate eye movements to that side
- Ataxia
- Hypotonia

Laboratory diagnosis
- Little in the laboratory investigation of patients who have brain abscesses is specific to the diagnosis except for culture of the purulent material and antibiotic sensitivity of the responsible organism.

Neuroimaging
- CT scan of the brain:
  - Ill-defined
  - Low-density change within the parenchyma
  - Enhancement occurs following administration of contrast material
  - Classic ring-enhancing lesion with surrounding edema
  - Calcification is common in abscesses in neonates
- Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

Antimicrobial therapy
- For abscesses arising as a result of sinusitis in which streptococci are the most likely organisms, penicillin or cefotaxime and metronidazole.
- Chronic otitis media or mastoiditis often is associated with *P. aeruginosa* and *Enterobacteriaceae*, antibiotics to treat abscesses secondary to these infections should include penicillin, metronidazole, and a third-generation cephalosporin.

- Metastatic abscesses require a regimen based on the likely site of primary infection.
- *S. aureus* commonly is isolated in abscess following trauma.

Surgical intervention

- Provide a specimen of purulent material for bacteriologic analysis and antibiotic sensitivity testing.
- Remove purulent material, thereby lowering intracranial pressure and decreasing the mass effect of the abscess.
- Decompress and irrigate the ventricular system and debride the abscess in the event of its rupture into the ventricular system.

Suggested Readings

1. American Academy of Pediatrics, American Public Health Association, and National Resource Center for Health and Safety in Child Care and Early Education. Caring for our children: national health and safety performance standards: guidelines for out-of-home child care programs. 2nd ed. Elk Grove Village, Ill: American Academy of Pediatrics and Washington, DC: American Public Health Association; 2002.
2. Coats DK, Demmler GJ, Paysse EA, Du LT, Libby C. Ophthalmologic findings in children with congenital cytomegalovirus infection. J AAPOS. 2000;4:110–6.
3. Fatahzadeh M, Schwartz RA. Human herpes simplex virus infections: epidemiology, pathogenesis, symptomatology, diagnosis, and management. J Am Acad Dermatol. 2007;57:737–63.
4. American Academy of Pediatrics. Cytomegalovirus infection: Varicella-zoster infections. In: Pickering LK, Baker CJ, Kimberlin DW, Long SS, editors. Red Book: 2009 report of the committee on infectious diseases. 28th ed. Elk Grove Village: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2009. p. 714–27.
5. Committee on Pediatric AIDS. HIV testing and prophylaxis to prevent mother-to-child transmission in the United States. Pediatrics. 2008;122:1127–34.
6. American Academy of Pediatrics. HIV. In: Pickering LK, Baker CJ, Long SS, McMillan JA, editors. Red Book: 2006 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 27th ed. Elk Grove Village: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2006. p. 401–11.
7. Subcommittee on Diagnosis and Management of Bronchiolitis. Diagnosis and management of bronchiolitis. Pediatrics. 2006;118:1774–92.
8. American Academy of Pediatrics. Cat-scratch disease. In: Pickering LK, Baker CJ, Long SS, McMillan JA, editors. Red Book: 2006 report of the committee on infectious diseases. 27th ed. Elk Grove Village: AAP; 2006. p. 246–8.
9. American Academy of Pediatrics. Chlamydial infections. In: Pickering LK, Baker CJ, Long SS, editors. Red Book: 2006 report of the committee on infectious diseases. 27th ed. Elk Grove Village: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2006. p. 249–57.
10. American Academy of Pediatrics. Gonococcal infections. In: Pickering LK, Baker CJ, Long SS, McMillan JA, editors. Red Book: 2006 report of the committee on infectious diseases. 27th ed. Elk Grove Village: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2006. p. 301–9.
11. American Academy of Pediatrics. Tuberculosis. In: Pickering LJ, Baker CJ, Kimberlin DW, Long SS, editors. Red Book: 2009 report of the committee on infectious diseases. 28th ed. Elk Grove Village: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2009. p. 680–701.
12. Duong M, Markwell S, Peter J, Barenkamp S. Randomized, controlled trial of antibiotics in the management of community-acquired skin abscesses in the pediatric patient. Ann Emerg Med. 2010;55:401–7.
13. American Academy of Pediatrics. Group A streptococcal infections. In: Pickering LK, Baker CJ, Kimberlin DW, Long SS, editors. Red Book: 2009 report of the committee on infectious diseases. 28th ed. Elk Grove Village: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2009. p. 616–28.
14. Amren DP, Anderson AS, Wannamaker LW. Perianal cellulitis associated with group A streptococci. Am J Dis Child. 1966;112:546–52.

Gastrointestinal Disorders

Osama Naga

Nutrition and Nutritional Disorders

Breast milk

- Composition
  - Carbohydrate; lactose
  - Protein; alpha-lactalbumin
  - Fat; arachidonic acid (ARA), docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) present at varying concentrations
- Protective effect
  - Infection; it has secretory IgA
  - Chronic disorders, e.g., allergies, celiac, crohn, lymphoma, and obesity
  - Hospitalizations
  - Infant mortality
- Absolute contraindications of breast feeding
  - HIV and HTLV (human T-lymphotropic virus)
  - Tuberculosis infection (until completion of approximately 2 weeks of appropriate therapy)

Preterm formula

- Carbohydrate; corn syrup solids (glucose polymers)
- Protein; whey protein:casein ratio of 60:40, similar to that of human milk
- Fat: Medium chain triglyceride is the predominant fat
- Calcium to phosphorus ratio is 2:1 for maximal absorption
- The trace mineral with the highest concentration in a preterm infant formula is zinc
- The content of zinc is tenfold higher than that of copper

Term formula

- Carbohydrate; lactose
- Protein; Whey:casein ratio is 18:82, the predominant protein is beta-globulin
- Fat; long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs), arachidonic acids (ARA), docosahexaenoic acid (DHA)

Marasmus (Nonedematous malnutrition)

- Severe energy and protein malnutrition
- Weight loss, listlessness, and emaciations
- Wrinkled skin, shrunken and wizened face
- Severe muscle wasting and hypotonia
- Subnormal temperature and slow pulse
- Visible intestinal pattern

Kwashiorkor (edematous malnutrition)

- Severe protein malnutrition
- Lethargy, apathy, and irritability
- Loss of muscle tissue
- Edema
- Increase susceptibility to infections, vomiting, diarrhea, and anorexia
- Patchy, hyper, and hypopigmentation
- The hair is sparse and thin, streaky red or gray in dark skin children

Overweight and obesity

- Bwackground
  - Body Mass Index (BMI): in children>2 years BMI>95th percentile is obese
  - BMI between 85th and 95th is overweight
  - Immediate comorbidity of obesity; type 2 diabetes mellitus, hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease
  - Social isolation, sadness, loneliness, low self esteem, discriminations, and peer problem are the most common complications of obesity in children and adolescents
- Metabolic syndrome criteria
  - BMI >95%, Hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and hyperinsulinemia
- Protective factors
  - Breast feeding

O. Naga (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Science Center—Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_13,

  - Improved food choices
  - Increased physical activities
  - Reduced screen time, e.g., TV, computers, and video games

Vitamins

Vitamin A deficiency
- Nyctalopia (night blindness)
- Photophobia
- Xerophthalmia (dry eye)
- Bitot spots
- Impaired resistance (e.g., higher fatality rate with measles infection in unimmunized children with Vit A deficiency)
- Keratinization of mucous membrane and skin
- Retarded growth
- Keratomalacia (clouding of the cornea is a medical emergency and require a large parenteral dose of vitamin A)

Vitamin A excess
- Anorexia
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Pseudotumor cerebri
- Alopecia

Thiamine (Vit B1) deficiency
- Infantile beriberi: congestive heart failure, neuritis, hoarseness, anorexia, restlessness
- Dry beriberi—peripheral neuropathy, paresthesia, irritability, anorexia
- Wet beriberi—heart failure, edema
- Wernicke–Korsakoff syndrome—neurological problems, psychosis

Riboflavin (Vit B2) deficiency
- Stomatitis, cheilosis, glossitis, photophobia, lacrimation

Niacin (Vit B3) deficiency
- Pellagra (diarrhea, dermatitis, dementia, death)

Pyridoxine (Vit B6) deficiency
- Microcytic anemia, seizures in infancy, dermatitis, sensory neuropathy

B12 (cobalamin) deficiency
- Background
  - Total body stores of vitamin B12 are 2–5 mg of which half is stored in the liver
  - Children require 0.7 mcg/day vitamin B12 and in adolescence, 2 mcg/day
  - Cobalamin deficiency from malabsorption develops after 2–5 years and deficiency from dietary inadequacy in vegetarians develops after 10–20 years
- Source
  - Almost exclusively from animal foods
- Common causes
  - Strict vegans
  - Ileal resection
  - Crohn's disease (CD)
  - Pernicious anemia
- Clinical presentation
  - Megaloblastic anemia
  - Hypersegmentation of neutrophil
  - Paraesthesia
  - Peripheral neuritis
  - Subacute combined system degeneration
  - Vitiligo
- Treatment
  - Treatment of the cause and B12 supplementation

Vitamin C deficiency (scurvy)
- Gingivitis, cutaneous hemorrhage/purpura, petechial hemorrhage, T-cell dysfunction
- Ophthalmic problems (blepharitis, conjunctivitis, corneal opacities)

Vitamin D deficiency (see endocrinology chapter)
- Causes
  - Nutritional cause remains the most common cause of rickets globally
- Clinical presentation
  - Patient may have no symptoms
  - Poor growth
  - Tetany
  - Muscle weakness
  - Skeletal deformities
  - Delayed teeth formation
  - Hypocalcaemia or low to normal level of calcium
  - Hypophosphatemia
  - Increased parathyroid hormone
  - Elevation of serum alkaline phosphatase
  - Decrease calcium deposition to the bone and increase in the amount of unmineralized osteoid tissue (Osteopenia)

Vitamin E deficiency (tocopherol)
- Function
  - Membrane bound antioxidant by inhibiting free radical-catalyzed lipid peroxidation and terminating radical chain
- Common causes
  - Biliary atresia
  - Common in children with cystic fibrosis (CF)
  - Other causes of fat malabsorption
- Clinical presentation
  - Neuroaxonal degeneration and loss of reflexes
  - Tremors

  - Hemolytic anemia especially in preterm infants

Folic acid deficiency
- Common causes
  - Poor nutrient content in diet, e.g., goat milk
  - Inflammatory bowel disease; e.g., CD
  - Increased requirements, e.g., sickle cell anemia, malignancy
  - Drugs; anticonvulsants, e.g., phenytoin and methotrexate
  - Inborn errors of folic acid metabolism; methylene tetrahydrofolate reductase deficiency
- Clinical presentation
  - Megaloblastic anemia and hypersegmentation neutrophil
  - Glossitis
  - Listless
  - Growth retardations
- Treatment
  - Treatment of the cause and folic acid supplementation

Vitamin K deficiency
- Function
  - Maintains prothrombin, and Factors VII, IX, and X
- Common sources
  - Dark leafy vegetables
  - Soybean
  - Bacterial synthesis in the intestine
- Cause of vitamin K deficiency
  - Malabsorption, e.g., CF
  - Ulcerative colitis (UC)
  - Intestinal resection or bowel loss
  - Antibiotics, e.g., cephalosporin
  - Breast milk is deficient in vitamin K
- Clinical presentation
  - Hemorrhagic disease of the newborn
  - Common in home born with no IM vitamin K given after birth
- Diagnosis
  - Elevated PT and normal aPTT
- Prophylaxis
  - Routine Vitamin K prophylaxis 0.5–1 mg IM at birth

Minerals

Iron deficiency
- Decreased work capacity, growth retardation, increased susceptibility to infection, irritability
- Stomatitis, glossitis, cheilitis, disaccharidase deficiency
- Increased lead absorption
- Craving for ice (pagophagia)
- Lower IQ scores/decreased scholastic performance

Zinc deficiency
- Alopecia, dermatitis
- Frequents infections due to T-cell dysfunction
- Ophthalmologic problems
- A*crodermatitis enteropathica*
  - Autosomal recessive inherited defect in zinc transport
  - Presents 1–2 months after birth of formula fed or 1–2 months after stopping breastfeeding

Copper deficiency
- Microcytic anemia
- Chronic diarrhea
- Neutropenia
- Flaring of long-bone metaphysis
- Periosteal elevations
- Fractures
- Menkes Kinky Hair Syndrome
  - X-linked recessive defect in copper transport ATPase
  - Growth retardation, abnormal hair (kinky, colorless, friable)
  - Cerebellar degeneration, optic atrophy, and early death (usually by age 3 years if untreated)
  - Progressive neurodegenerative condition; symptoms begin during first few months of life
  - Hypothermia, hypotonia, and generalized myoclonic seizures
  - Serum copper and ceruloplasmin levels are low, but cellular copper content is increased (copper uptake across the brush border of intestine is increased but transport from these cells into plasma is defective)
  - Copper-histidine therapy given subcutaneously each day for life (particularly if started during neonatal period) has been shown to be effective in preventing neurologic deterioration in some patients

Selenium deficiency
- Cardiomyopathy
- Abnormalities of hair and nails
- Myositis
- Macrocytic anemia

Biotin deficiency
- Alopecia
- Brawny dermatitis
- Hypotonia
- Hyperesthesia

Iodine deficiency
- Goiter
- Cretinism (hypothyroid dwarfism with mental deficiency)

Failure to Thrive

Background
- Physical sign that a child is receiving inadequate nutrition for optimal growth and development
- A child who is below the third or fifth percentile on the weight-for-length curve
- Unfortunately, no standard uniform approach exists to identify reliably each child who has failure to thrive (FTT) solely by use of growth curves

Clinical approach
- FTT often is a multifactorial condition
- Identify psychosocial problems, family stress, and if any evidence of neglect
- Type of milk, formula, foods, and vitamins are being offered
- Formula being prepared correctly or is it too dilute?
- Excessive amount of juice, which may lead to satiety without supplying adequate calories
- Detect the oromotor dysfunction, developmental delay, or feeding aversions due to behavior problems
- Associated gastroesophageal reflux disease, malrotation with intermittent volvulus, or increased intracranial pressure
- Ask about stool frequency and consistency for possibility of malabsorption syndrome
- Obtain the results of CF screening, although such screening does not have 100% sensitivity or specificity, therefore, asking about family history of respiratory and gastrointestinal disorders should be elicited
- Celiac disease in infants older than 6 months
- Family history suggestive of milk protein intolerance or sensitivity, or celiac disease
- Congestive heart failure, chronic renal disease, or endocrine disorders increase metabolic demand and cause FTT
- Subtle signs of dysmorphology, such as minimal discrepancies in limb length that may be found in Russell–Silver syndrome
- If initial growth measurements have not included the head circumference and weight-length ratio or BMI, they should be obtained

Laboratory evaluation of FTT
- Complete blood count with red cell indices (to evaluate for anemia and iron deficiency)
- Complete chemistry panel (including tests for renal and hepatic function)
- Celiac screening
- Stool examination for fats and reducing substances
- Sweat chloride test for CF
- Screening for hypothyroidism or growth hormone deficiency should be considered only if the child's length has decelerated and is below the 50th percentile on the length-for-age chart
- Length above the 50th percentile is a strong evidence that no endocrine disorder is present
- Routine 2-week admissions for FTT are not practical today
- It is very difficult to evaluate weight changes over 2 or 3 days

Indication for hospitalization
- Severe malnutrition
- Medically unstable
- Outpatient management failure
- Evidence of physical abuse or neglect
- Very disturbed parents
- Abnormal child–parents interactions
- Poor parental functioning

Management
- Watch behavioral and interaction problem during feeding
- Treatment of the cause

Acute Abdominal Pain

Clues to Acute Abdominal Pain

Sudden onset
- Midgut volvulus
- Intussusception
- Ovarian torsion
- Testicular torsion

Trauma
- Visceral rupture or injuries, e.g., rupture of spleen or liver
- Hemorrhage, e.g., duodenal hematoma
- Musculoskeletal injury

Bilious vomiting
- Volvulus
- Intussusception

Tenderness and guarding
- Appendicitis
- Cholecystitis

Related to meals
- Gastritis
- Peptic ulcers disease

Female
- PID
- Fitz-Hugh–Curtis syndrome (perihepatitis)
- Ectopic pregnancy

Nonspecific acute abdomen
- Constipation
- Gastroenteritis

- UTI
- Functional abdominal pain

Bleeding
- Upper gastrointestinal (GI) bleed either hematemesis or melena
- Lower GI bleed; currant jelly stool
  - intussusception

Acute Appendicitis

Leading and misleading points in the diagnosis of appendicitis
- A*norexia* is classic
  - Hunger does not rule out appendicitis
- Pneumonia
  - Right lower lobe pneumonia can mimic appendicitis
- Limping
  - Retrocecal appendix can cause limping
  - Tends to be more slow in presentation
  - Pain may mimic symptoms of septic arthritis of hip or psoas muscle abscess
- Know that
  - Many patients experience relief of symptoms after perforation and pressure relief
  - If the adjacent structure wall off the infectious process delay in presentation is very likely
  - If perforation leads peritonitis, diffuses abdominal pain and rapid development of toxicity; and sepsis
  - Multiple episodes of vomiting is very unusual presentation of early acute appendicitis (typically is one or two times or none)
  - Diarrhea and urinary symptoms are common

Clinical presentation
- Nausea and vomiting
  - May not present
- Fever
  - Absence of fever does not rule out appendicitis
- Abdominal pain
  - Pain with any movement (especially walking) are important signs when present
  - Abdominal pain is usually progressive
- Guarding
  - Gentle finger percussion is a better test for peritoneal irritation
  - Avoid digital rectal examination; it is uncomfortable and unlikely to contribute to evaluation of appendicitis in most cases
- Localized abdominal tenderness *is the single most reliable finding in the diagnosis of appendicitis*
- Rovsing sign
  - Right lower quadrant (RLQ) pain with palpation of the left lower quadrant (LLQ); referred rebound tenderness when palpating the LLQ
- Obturator sign
  - RLQ pain with internal and external rotation of the flexed right hip
- Psoas sign
  - RLQ pain with extension of the right hip or with flexion of the right hip against resistance
- Dunphy sign
  - Sharp pain in the RLQ elicited by a voluntary cough
- Markle sign
  - Pain elicited in a certain area of the abdomen when the standing patient drops from standing on toes to the heels with a jarring landing

Laboratory
- Complete blood count (CBC) can be *normal* in the first 24 h
- Leukocyte < 8000 in a patient with history of illness > 48 h viewed as highly suspicious for alternative diagnosis
- White blood cell (WBC) count may be markedly elevated > 20,000 in perforated appendix
- Urinalysis frequently demonstrates WBCs but should be free of bacteria
- Gross hematuria is uncommon and suggests primary renal pathology
- Amylase and liver enzyme if pancreatitis and cholecystitis are considered
- C-Reactive protein is nonspecific and not widely used
- Serum Amyloid A protein is consistently high with appendicitis 86–83% sensitivity and specificity, respectively

Ultrasound criteria for appendicitis
- Wall thickness > 6 mm
- Luminal distension
- Lack of compressibility
- Normal appendix must be visualized to rule out appendicitis
- D*isadvantage*: inability to visualize the appendix in 20% of cases, e.g., obesity, bowel distension, or pain

CT scan
- C*T scan* is the gold standard test for appendicitis and can be used if:
  - Physical findings are uncertain
  - An experienced ultrasonographer is not available
  - Equivocal presentations after serial examination and observation for 12–24 h

Management of appendicitis
- Appendicitis is a surgical abdomen
- Morphine or analgesia do not change diagnostic accuracy

- A*ntibiotics*
  - Cefoxitin; one preoperative dose is important
  - Postoperative antibiotics in cases of perforation e.g.,
- Ampicillin, gentamicin, and clindamycin or metronidazole
- Piperacillin/tazobactam (Zosyn)
- Imipenem/cilastatin
- Appendicitis complicated with abscess or mass can be treated without immediate appendectomy
- Oral or IV antibiotics can be completed at home in cases of perforation or abscess

Volvulus

Critical to know (volvulus is a surgical emergency)
- Incomplete rotation of the embryonic bowel
- Cutting off blood flow to the small intestine
- Delay in surgical intervention can cause short gut or death
- Volvulus typically presents early, before 1 year of age, but it can occur at *any age*

Clinical presentation
- Pain
  - Dull, aching abdominal pain may be the first symptom
  - Dramatic pain also may be the presentation
  - Pain can be hard to detect in infants
- Vomiting
  - Bile-stained emesis
  - Bile-stained emesis signals a surgical emergency
- Abdominal distention
  - Upper abdominal distention may be present
- Other symptoms may include
  - Anorexia
  - Intermittent apnea
  - FTT
  - Parents may report constipation
- Rectal bleeding
  - It is a late sign indicating vascular compromise to the mucosa

Diagnosis
- A plain radiograph may show a dilated stomach and proximal duodenum
- Upper gastrointestinal study with contrast

It is the primary test for a volvulus study
- Recently, Doppler ultrasonography has been used to detect volvulus and malrotation

Urgent surgical consultation
- The bowel must be untwisted before vascular necrosis occurs
- An appendectomy typically is performed because the appendix would be left in an abnormal location, which would make diagnosing appendicitis more difficult

Intussusception

Background
- Intussusception is probably the most frequent cause of intestinal obstruction in children
  - The intestine is pulled antegrade into the adjacent part of intestine, trapping the more proximal bowel in the distal segment
- Age
  - More commonly in infants than in older children
- Common sites
  - Junction of the ileum and colon, where the ileum is pulled into the colon
- Lead points
  - Polyp and tumor (my explain late presentations)
  - Meckel diverticulum

Causes
- The cause in infants typically is unknown
- Hypertrophy of mesenteric lymph nodes caused by a viral infection

Clinical presentation
- Crampy pain when peristalsis occurs and causes additional stretching and squeezing of the trapped intestine
- Abdominal pain:
  - Periumbilical region
  - RLQ
  - Pain often is intermittent in intussusceptions, continuous in appendicitis
- Lethargy is out of proportion of abdominal pain
- Vomiting (can be bilious)
- Pallor
- May lie quietly between the peristaltic waves
- Prolonged obstruction
  - Abdominal distention
  - Rectal bleeding
- Red currant jelly, is not seen commonly, but when seen, it suggests vascular compromise
- Ileocolic; a sausage-shaped mass may be palpable in the right side or in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen

Diagnosis
- Abdominal radiographs may show obstruction, and a mass also may be visible
- Ultrasound; tubular mass in longitudinal view and doughnut or target appearance

- Ultrasonography is very accurate in detecting intussusceptions and is considered the test of choice

Treatment and confirmation of the intussusceptions
- Air contrast enema
- Air is safer and cleaner than liquid and is more effective
- If the enema fails, surgery must be performed to reduce the intussusceptions

Acute Pancreatitis

Causes
- Infections, medications, or trauma
- Gallstones, abnormal ductular anatomy, systemic illness, and metabolic problems

Clinical presentation
- Upper abdominal pain, usually referred to the back
- Vomiting
- Abdominal tenderness
- Abdominal distension

Diagnosis
- Se*rum amylase and lipase* must be measured
  - Enzymes greater than three times the upper limit of normal, pancreatitis most likely is the cause of the symptoms
  - Normal values do not exclude the diagnosis
- Coagulopathy
- Leukocytosis
- Hyperglycemia
- Glycosuria
- Hypocalcemia
- Hyperbilirubinemia.
- CT scan or ultrasonography

Recurrent acute pancreatitis
- Pancreatic-insufficient CF should be excluded, along with genetic forms of pancreatitis
- Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography or endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography should be considered

Treatment is supportive
- Nothing by mouth (NPO)
- Narcotics should be used for severe pain
- Intravenous fluids and intravenous acid suppression
- If vomiting continues, gut "rest," a nasogastric tube can be used to decompress the stomach
- In severe cases, patients require intensive care due to the fluid shifts and hypotension accompanying necrotic pancreatitis

Acute Cholecystitis

Background
- Cholecystitis is defined as inflammation of the gallbladder and is traditionally divided into acute and chronic subtypes
- Cholecystitis may also be considered calculous or acalculous, but the inflammatory process remains the same
- Consider cholecystitis and other gallbladder diseases in the differential diagnosis in any pediatric patient with jaundice or abdominal pain in the right upper quadrant, particularly if the child has a history of hemolysis
- Cholelithiasis is the most common cause of acute or chronic cholecystitis in adults and children

Causes
- Acute acalculous cholecystitis is most often associated with systemic illness, e.g., dehydration, increased cholesterol saturation, and biliary stasis
- Acute calculous cholecystitis results from a sudden obstruction of the cystic duct by gallstones
- As obstruction and inflammatory tissues damage progress, bacteria may proliferate
- Bile cultures are positive in 75% of the cases, usually with E coli, enterococci, or Klebsiella species
- *Gallstones*
  - Frequently with hemolytic disorders, such as sickle cell disease
  - Infants and children who have received peripheral alimentation

Clinical presentation
- Right upper quadrant pain
  - The pain may radiate to the right shoulder or scapula
  - Murphy sign:
    - Palpation of the right upper quadrant at the costal margin while the patient breathes
    - Positive sign if the patient feels pain
    - Murphy sign is strongly suggestive of gallbladder disease
- Fever
- Vomiting
- Jaundice often are present

Ultrasonography
- Can show the presence of stones and a thickened gall bladder wall with possible gall bladder dilatation
- The ultrasonographer can produce a positive Murphy sign with the transducer

Hepatobiliary scintigraphy: if the gallbladder cannot be visualized

Laboratory
- Elevation in liver enzymes, especially gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT) and alkaline phosphatase
- The WBC count and direct bilirubin are usually elevated
- The amylase value can be elevated, making it harder to know if the problem is cholecystitis or pancreatitis

Treatment
- Bowel rest, intravenous pain control, and intravenous fluids
- If fever is present or the child looks ill or unstable, antibiotics are needed for enteric bacteria
- The timing of curative cholecystectomy is determined best with the surgeon

Complications of cholecystitis
- Perforation of the gallbladder, with peritonitis or abscess formation

Acalculous cholecystitis
- Typically occurs during a significant systemic illness such as sepsis
- Illness requiring a stay in the intensive care unit

Choledocholithiasis and Cholangitis

Background
- Choledocholithiasis
  - It is a stone in the bile duct usually present with biliary colic and abdominal pain
- Cholangitis
  - Infection of bile duct
  - Complete obstruction causes duct dilation, jaundice, and eventually cholangitis
  - Bile duct obstruction which allows bacteria to ascend from the duodenum, most (85%) cases result from common bile duct stones
  - Common infecting organisms include gram-negative bacteria (e.g., *Escherichia coli, Klebsiella* sp, *Enterobacter* sp)

Clinical presentation
- Fever, right upper quadrant pain and jaundice (Charcot Triad)
- Tenderness are consistent with impacted stones

Laboratory
- Elevated (GGT), alkaline phosphatase, and conjugated bilirubin concentrations
- Aminotransferase may be elevated as well
- Amylase and lipase values should be assessed because of possibility of associated pancreatitis

Ultrasonography
- Stone may be seen, but sometimes stones can be hard to see
- A dilated duct also may be present

Management
- Antibiotics should be started if fever is present
- The child is given nothing by mouth but should receive intravenous fluids and narcotic analgesics
- The gastroenterologist and surgeon should be consulted if the stone does not pass spontaneously because either surgery or an endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography with stone removal may be necessary

Inguinal Hernia

Background
- All pediatric inguinal hernias require operative treatment to prevent the development of complications, such as inguinal hernia incarceration or strangulation
- The processus vaginalis is an outpouching of peritoneum attached to the testicle that trails behind as it descends retroperitoneally into the scrotum. When obliteration of the processus vaginalis fails to occur, inguinal hernia results

Clinical presentation
- The infant or child with an inguinal hernia generally presents with an obvious bulge at the internal or external ring or within the scrotum
- Visible swelling or bulge, commonly intermittent, in the inguinoscrotal region in boys and inguinolabial region in girls
- The swelling may or may not be associated with any pain or discomfort
- The bulge commonly occurs after crying or straining and often resolves during the night while the baby is sleeping
- Hernia and hydrocele; transillumination may not be beneficial because any viscera that is distended and fluid-filled in the scrotum of a young infant may also transilluminate
- Inguinal hernia incarceration: The bowel can become swollen, edematous, engorged, and trapped outside of the abdominal cavity
- Femoral hernia: A femoral hernia can be very difficult to differentiate from an indirect inguinal hernia

Diagnosis
- Based on the clinical presentation
- Ultrasonography to differentiate between a hydrocele and an inguinal hernia

Management

- Hydrocele without hernia in neonates: This is the only exception in which a surgical treatment may be delayed for 12 months
- Inguinal hernias do not spontaneously heal and must be surgically repaired because of the risk of incarceration
- Generally, a surgical consultation should be made at the time of diagnosis, and repair (on an elective basis) should be performed very soon after the diagnosis is confirmed

Esophagus

Esophageal Atresia, Tracheoesophageal Fistula (TEF)

Background
- Most common type
  - Blind upper esophagus and TEF connected to distal esophagus
- Most common missed type during infancy
  - H type TEF; diagnosed later due to chronic respiratory problem
- Nonsyndromic 50%
- Syndromic or association e.g.,
  - VATER/VACTERL association (vertebral anomalies, anal atresia, cardiac malformations, tracheo-esophageal fistula, renal anomalies, and limb abnormalities)

Clinical presentation
- Neonates presents with frothing and bubbling at mouth and nose after birth
- Cyanosis, respiratory distress, and coughing
- Maternal history of polyhydramnios

Diagnosis
- Inability to pass nasogastric tube
- Plain radiograph: coiled nasogastric tube in esophageal pouch, air distended stomach indicate TEF

Management
- Surgery

Regurgitation

- *Regurgitation*, commonly referred to as "spitting up," is the effortless passage of gastric contents into the pharynx or mouth
- It is a result of gastroesophageal reflux occurs commonly in the first year of life

Rumination

Background
- Defined as voluntary, habitual, and effortless regurgitation of recently ingested food
- Following this voluntary regurgitation, gastric contents are expulsed from the mouth or re-swallowed
- Symptoms do not occur during sleep and do not respond to the standard treatment of GER

Diagnosis
- Symptoms must be present for longer than 8 weeks
- Rumination is not associated with retching

Associated medical conditions
- Intellectual disability
- Bulimia
- Underlying psychological disturbances

The management of rumination
- Multidisciplinary approach
- Primary focus on behavioral therapy and biofeedback
- Tricyclic antidepressants and nutritional support may be necessary

Gastroesophageal Reflux (GER)

Background
- Passage of gastric contents into the esophagus
- It is a normal physiologic process in healthy infants

Clinical presentation
- Usually occur after feeds
- Volume of emesis are commonly 15–30 ml but may occasionally larger
- Most infant otherwise healthy, happy, and gaining weight
- 80% resolved by 6 months
- 90% resolved by 12 months
- If apnea, aspiration pneumonitis, or FTT occur, the condition must be evaluated

Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease (GERD)

Background
- Reflux in infants becomes evident in the first few months peak at 4 months, resolves mostly by 12 months and all by 24 months
- Pediatric patients with gastroesophageal reflux disease typically cry and show sleep disturbance and decreased appetite

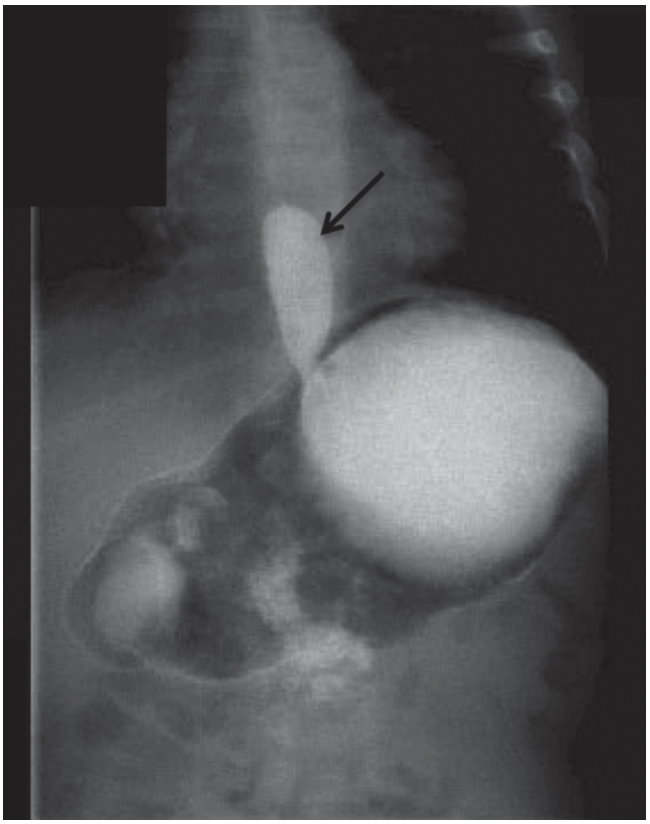


Fig. 1 Upper GI contrast study showing reflux of the contrast into the lower esophagus (*arrow*)

Clinical presentation
- Infants
  - Irritability
  - Arching
  - Chocking
  - Gagging
  - Feeding aversion
  - FTT
  - Aspiration pneumonitis
  - Obstructive apnea
- Older children
  - Abdominal
  - Chest pain
  - Arching and turning the head (Sandifer)
  - Asthma
  - Laryngitis
  - Sinusitis

Diagnosis
- Upper GI series; fluoroscopic examination with barium (Fig. 1)
- Esophageal pH monitoring
- Endoscopy
- Gastric emptying scan (Scintigraphy)
  - Can assess gastric emptying
  - The scan may identify esophageal reflux and aspirations
  - The major diagnostic role is in the assessment of pulmonary aspiration
  - Patients should be rescanned after 24 h, in order to assess delayed pulmonary soilage by refluxed gastric contents

Management
- Short trial of hypoallergenic milk formula (Nutramigen, alimentum) to exclude cow milk or soy milk protein allergy
- Elevate the head of the bed or carried upright position
- H2-receptor antagonist: cimetidine, famotidine, nizatidine, ranitidine
- Proton pump inhibitors: omeprazole, lansoprazole, pantoprazole, rabeprazole, and esomeprazole
- Metoclopramide
- Erythromycin: motilin receptor antagonist
- *Severe cases*
  - Nissen fundoplication

Eosinophilic Esophagitis (EE)

Background
- Esophageal epithelium is infiltrated with eosinophils

Clinical presentation
- Vomiting
- Chest pain
- Epigastric pain
- Dysphagia
- Food impaction or stricture
- Ineffective anti-reflux therapy
- May be associated with atopy, food allergy, peripheral eosinophilia, and elevated IgE

Management
- Endoscopy is the mainstay for diagnosis
- Elimination diet with proven allergies, inhaled and systemic steroids, and montelukast
- If left untreated can cause esophageal stricture

Esophageal Varices

Background
- Cavernous or portal vein thrombosis is the most common type
- Umbilical vein thrombosis in neonates

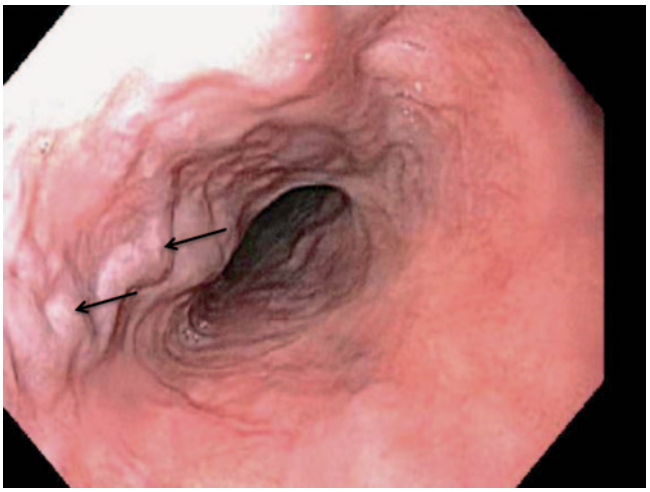


Fig. 2 Endoscopic picture of esophageal varices (*arrows*). (Courtesy Dr. Sherif Elhanafi)

Causes
- Portal hypertension
- Mediastinal tumor
- Superior Vena Cava (SVC) thrombosis

Clinical presentation
- Hematemesis
- Splenomegaly

Diagnosis
- Upper endoscopy (Fig. 2)

Management
- Treatment of the cause
- Sclerotherapy
- Beta blockers may prevent esophageal bleeding

Foreign Body in the Esophagus

Background
- Majority of cases between 6 months and 3 years
- Coins and small toys item are the most common
- Upper esophageal sphincter (UES) cricopharyngeus is the most common site, and the next is the lower esophageal sphincter (LES)

Clinical presentation
- 30% of cases are asymptomatic
- Any history of ingestion should be taken seriously and investigated even with no symptoms
- Initial bout of choking, gagging, and coughing may be followed by salivation, dysphagia, and refusal to eat
- Vomiting
- Pain in the neck, throat, or sternal notch regions
- Stridor, wheezing, cyanosis, or dyspnea if FB impinge on the larynx
- Cervical swelling, erythema, subcutaneous crepitations suggest perforation

Diagnosis
- Plain film AP and lateral Neck, chest and abdomen (wood, glass, plastic, bone, and aluminum may be radiolucent)

Management
- Batteries must be removed immediately, they cause mucosal injury as little as 1 h, involving all esophageal layers within 4 h
- Asymptomatic blunt object, e.g., coin can be observed for up to 24 h
- If no history of esophageal surgery; glucagon can be used to facilitate the passage by decreasing LES pressure (0.05 mg/kg IV)
- Symptomatic patient with esophageal FB must be removed immediately.

Caustic Esophageal Injuries

Background
- Ingestion of caustic agents
- More predominant in males
- Age between 1 and 3 years is more common
- Alkalines cause severe injuries rapidly after ingestion and more damage to:
  - Oropharynx
  - Hypopharynx
  - Esophagus (45%)
- Acid agents cause more damage to the stomach after ingestion

Clinical presentation
- Dysphagia
- Drooling
- Abdominal pain
- Hematemesis
- Respiratory distress

Management
- Avoid neutralizing agents, e.g., vinegar or sodium bicarbonate
- Endoscopy is indicated after 6 h to document full extent of injuries
- Endoscopy should not be later than 4 days post-ingestion to minimize perforation

Complication
- Esophageal stricture

Stomach

Vomiting

Diagnostic Clues to a Child with Vomiting

Fever with or without abdominal pain
- Gastroenteritis
- Systemic infection

Projectile
- Pyloric stenosis

Undigested food
- Achalasia

Bile stained
- Volvulus
- Intussusception

Bulging fontanelle
- Meningitis
- Intracranial tumor

Adolescent
- Pregnancy
- Drugs
- Bulimia

Cyclic Vomiting (Abdominal Migraine)

Background
- Episodes of vomiting interspersed with well interval
- Idiopathic cyclic vomiting may be migraine equivalent

Clinical presentation
- *Prodromes:* Pallor, intolerance to noise, light, nausea, lethargy, headache or fever
- *Precipitants:* Excitement, infection, or stress
- Average 12 episodes per year
- Each episode may last 1–3 days with four or more emesis per hour

Diagnosis
- *Diagnosis of exclusion:* lab based on history and physical examination, endoscopy, contrast upper GI, brain MRI, and metabolic studies

Treatment
- Hydration and Ondansetron
- *Sumatriptan*
  - Can abort episode of cyclic vomiting in children and adults

Prevention
- Amitriptyline or cyproheptadine

Peptic Ulcer Disease

Background
- Peptic ulcer disease is rare in children
- *Helicobacter pylori* is the most common cause

Clinical presentation
- Abdominal pain
- Indigestion
- Dyspepsia

Diagnosis
- The primary goal of testing is to diagnose the cause of clinical symptoms
- Testing helicobacter pylori for all children with abdominal pain is not indicated
- Tests based on the detection of antibodies (IgG, IgA) against *H pylori* in serum, whole blood, urine, and saliva are not reliable for use in the clinical setting
- Blood test of HP may indicate past infection
- The test of choice is upper gastrointestinal endoscopy with biopsy of gastric antrum
- Carbon 13 urea breath test (UBT): becoming increasingly more available
- *H pylori* fecal antigen test: Can be used to detect eradication after treatment.

Indication of endoscopy
- Upper GI bleeding (Fig. 3)
- In children with first-degree relatives with gastric cancer, testing for *H pylori* may be considered
- Persistent undiagnosed abdominal pain

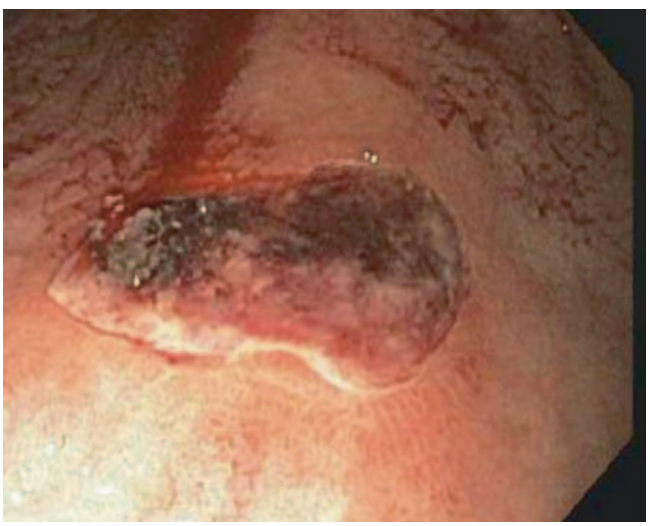


Fig. 3 Gastric ulcer with blood clot. (Courtesy Dr. Sherif Elhanafi)

Treatment of Helicobacter pylori infection indication
- *H pylori*-positive PUD, eradication of the organism is recommended
- *H pylori* infection is detected by biopsy-based methods in the absence of PUD, *H pylori* treatment may be considered
- The decision to treat *H pylori*-associated gastritis without duodenal or gastric ulcer is subject to the judgment of the clinician and deliberations with the patient and family, taking into consideration the potential risks and benefits of the treatment in the individual patient
- Children infected with *H pylori* and whose first-degree relative has gastric cancer, treatment can be offered
- MALT (mucosal associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma)
- A "test-and-treat" strategy is not recommended in children

Antibiotic Therapy
- First line
  - Triple therapy with a PPI + amoxicillin + imidazole or
  - PPI + amoxicillin + clarithromycin or
  - Bismuth salts + amoxicillin + imidazole or
  - Sequential therapy involves dual therapy with a PPI and amoxicillin for 5 days followed sequentially by 5 days of triple therapy
  - It is recommended that the duration of triple therapy be 7–14 days
- Second line
  - Quadruple therapy is with PPI + metronidazole + amoxicillin + bismuth

Follow-up test
- Endoscopy can confirm the eradication of HP
- The 13 C-urea breath test (UBT) is a reliable noninvasive test to determine whether *H pylori* has been eradicated
- *H pylori* fecal antigen test
- It is recommended that clinicians wait at least 2 weeks after stopping proton pump inhibitor (PPI) therapy and 4–6 weeks after stopping antibiotics to perform biopsy-based and noninvasive tests (UBT, stool test) for *H pylori*

Zollinger–Ellison Syndrome (ZES)

Background
- Zollinger–Ellison syndrome (ZES) is caused by a non beta islet cell, gastrin-secreting tumor of the pancreas that stimulates the acid-secreting cells of the stomach to maximal activity, with consequent gastrointestinal mucosal ulceration

Clinical presentation
- Abdominal pain
- Recurrent gastritis or intractable to treatment
- Diarrhea
- Hypoglycemia

Diagnosis
- Fasting serum gastrin level
- Serum Ca for MEN1 syndrome (hyperparathyroidism, pancreatic endocrine tumors, and pituitary tumors)
- Somatostatin-receptor scintigraphy (SRS) available in major medical centers

Management
- Proton pump inhibitors
- Surgery if no hepatic metastasis

Foreign Body in the Stomach

Background
- Once in the stomach, 95 % of all ingested objects will pass without difficulty through the remainder of GI tract
- Perforation is less than 1 % of all objects

Management
- Conservative observation unless a very large and sharp object can be followed radiologically
- Most of objects takes 4–6 days, although might take 3–4 weeks
- In older children and adult elongated object > 5–6 cm tend to lodge in the stomach
- In infants and toddlers elongated object > 3 cm tend to lodge in the stomach
- Thin object > 10 cm fail to pass through the duodenum should be removed
- Open safety pin has to be removed
- All magnets have to be removed
- Sharp object, e.g., sharp pin can be managed conservatively
- Objects in the rectum can be observed for 12–24 h

Bezoars

Background
- Accumulation of exogenous matter in the stomach and intestine
- Trichobezoars; hair, phytobezoars; plants and animal material, lactobezoar and chewing gums

Clinical presentation
- Gastric outlet obstruction complete or partial
- Anorexia, vomiting, weight loss, severe halitosis, abdominal pain, and distension

Diagnosis
- Plain film, US, or CT scan can confirm the diagnosis

Management
- Endoscopic removal
- Surgery if endoscopy is not successful
- lactobezoar usually resolve when withhold feeding for 24−48 h

Pyloric Stenosis

Background
- 1–3/1000 incidence
- Male four times than females especially the first newborn

Clinical presentation
- Nonbilious vomiting immediately after feeding may be intermittent
- May or may not be projectile initially but usually progressive
- After vomiting, infant is hungry and wants to eat again
- More common after 3 weeks of age
- Can be as early as one week or as late as 5 months

Laboratory
- Hypochloremic metabolic alkalosis
- Serum K usually maintained but there may be total K body deficit
- Jaundice is associated with a decrease in the glucuronyl transferase in 5% of cases

Diagnosis
- Ultrasound
  - Pyloric thickness > 4 mm
  - Pyloric length > 14 mm

Management
- The infant should remain nothing by mouth (NPO)
- Immediate treatment requires correction of fluid loss, electrolytes, and acid-base imbalance
- Correction of alkalosis is very important to prevent apnea after anaesthesia
- Infants can be successfully hydrated within 24 h
- Ramstedt pyloromyotomy is the procedure of choice, during which underlying antro-pyloric mass is split leaving the mucosal layer intact
- In most infants feeding can be initiated within 12–24 h after surgery
- Frequent small feeding
- Apnea may occur after surgery
- Medical management should be reserved for patients who are poor surgical candidates or whose parents are opposed to surgery.

Duodenal Obstruction

Background
- 1/10,000 incidence
- Associated syndrome: 20–30% *Down syndrome*
- Associated congenital anomalies: duodenal atresia, esophageal atresia, congenital heart disease, anorectal, and renal anomalies

Clinical presentation
- Bilious vomiting
- No abdominal distension
- Jaundice
- History of polyhydramnios

Diagnosis
- KUB: Double-bubble sign

Management
- Nasogastric tube for decompression
- Electrolyte replacement
- Echocardiography and radiology of chest and spine must be done to evaluate for associated life threatening anomalies

Superior Mesenteric Artery Syndrome (Cast Syndrome)

Background
- Compression of duodenum after rapid weight loss
- Loss of mesenteric fat mass result in collapse of SMA on duodenum compressing it between SMA anteriorly and aorta posteriorly

Clinical presentation
- Epigastric pain, nausea, eructation, voluminous vomiting (bilious or partially digested food)
- Postprandial discomfort, early satiety
- Subacute small bowel obstruction
- Symptoms of superior mesenteric artery (SMA) syndrome often develop from 6–12 days after scoliosis surgery

Diagnosis
- Upper GI with demonstration of duodenum cut off just right to midline accompanied with proximal duodenal and gastric dilatation

Management
- Nutrition and lateral or prone position can relief the obstruction
- Metoclopramide can help
- Naso-jejunal tube can be placed to bypass the point of obstruction if positioning is not helping

- Finally total parenteral nutrition if everything fail
- Rarely surgical intervention is needed

Constipation

Background
- Constipation is a very common frustration for children, parents, and physicians.
- It is reported to account for nearly 5 % of all the outpatient visits to pediatric clinics and more than 25 % of all referrals to pediatric gastroenterologists
- Painful defecation and encopresis (involuntary passage of stool from the anus) usually are the first manifestations noted
- Constipation generally is defined by the hard nature of the stool, the pain associated with its passage, or the failure to pass three stools per week
- It would be preferable to define constipation as the failure to evacuate the lower colon completely with a bowel movement.

Causes and mechanism of functional constipation
- Painful bowel movement, too busy, stress, dietary changes, prolonged withholding→result in fecal stasis→fluid reabsorption in colon→stools become harder and larger→decrease muscle tone and peristalsis due to fecal impaction

Other causes of constipation
- Aganglionosis (Hirschsprung)
- Spinal cord dysplasia/Hypotonia syndromes
- Botulism
- Obstruction, e.g., meconium ileus, CF, anterior anal ring, small left colon
- Hypothyroidism, diabetes mellitus
- Medications, e.g., iron

Clinical presentation of functional constipation
- Occurs in infancy and childhood
- Usually passes meconium in the first 48 h
- Normal or large stool caliber
- Frequent encopresis
- Abundant stool in rectal vault
- Not associated with other anomalies
- May present with mild, moderate or severe abdominal pain
- Anal fissure and rectal bleeding due to large stool caliber

Management
- Behavioral modification
- Polyethylene glycol is considered safe and effective if used on daily basis not as needed

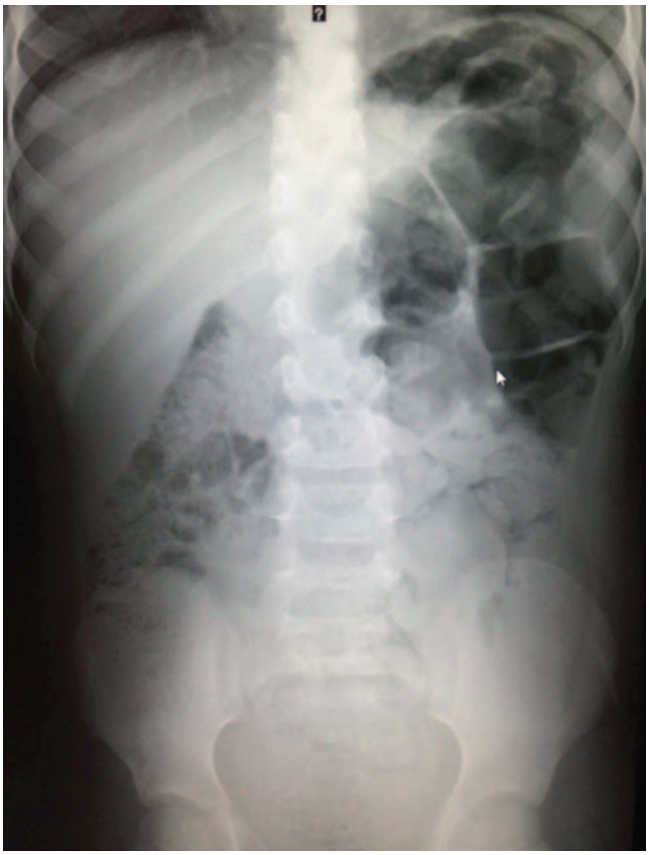


Fig. 4 A 5 years old with encopresis for 2 years and fecal impaction, the X-ray shows large amount of stool in the colon and rectum

- Disimpaction is essential if fecal impaction or encopresis is the presentation (Fig. 4)
- Nonretentive constipation can be treated with
  - Increase fiber intake, e.g., methylcellulose
  - Increase fluid intake

Anal Fissure

Background
- Anal fissure is a laceration of the anal mucocutaneous junction
- Likely secondary to forceful passage of a hard stool
- Can be seen in infants < a year even with frequently quiet soft stool

Clinical presentation
- History of constipation often described
- Painful bowel movement
- Patient may voluntarily retain the stool and exacerbate the constipation resulting in harder stool

Diagnosis
- Inspection of perianal area
- Skin tag
- Hard stool in the ampulla

Treatment
- Treatment of constipation
- Topical lidocaine or EMLA if painful
- Sitz bath and stool softener

Hirschsprung Disease

Background
- The most common cause of intestinal obstruction in neonates 1/5000
- Associated syndromes
  - Down syndrome
  - Smith–Lemli–Opitz syndrome
  - Waardenburg syndrome
- Absent ganglion cells in the bowel wall, as a result of the failure of migration in neuroblast from proximal to distal bowel
- Delayed passage of meconium after the first 48 h of life is a red flag (99% of normal full-term infant will pass meconium within 48 h)

Constipation	Hirschsprung Disease
Passage of meconium in the first 48 h	Delayed passage of meconium >48 h
Full rectal vault	Empty rectal vault
Large stool caliber	Pencil-thin stool
Normal ganglion cells in the myenteric and submucosal plexus	Lack of ganglion cells in the myenteric and submucosal plexus
Encopresis	No encopresis

Distinctive feature of constipation with Hirschsprung Disease
- Onset usually in infancy
- Delayed passage of meconium
- Pencil-thin stools
- No encopresis
- Absence of stool in the rectal vault
- Associated with other anomalies

Unusual presentation
- Passage of meconium then intermittent constipation
- FTT from protein losing enteropathy
- Breastfed infant may not suffer like formula fed infants

Clinical presentation
- Failure to pass stool leads to dilatation of the proximal segment
- Stasis can lead to enterocolitis C-diff, staph, and anaerobic coliforms; early recognition will decrease the morbidity and mortality rate at this stage
- Large stool with fecal soiling is not Hirschsprung, typically will be small pellets ribbon like, and have fluid consistency
- Rectal exam will demonstrate elevated anal tone, and empty rectal vault followed by explosive foul smelling feces and gas

Diagnosis
- *Rectal suctioning biopsy* is the procedure of choice
  - Biopsy will show absence of ganglion cells
- Anorectal manometry (elevated anal tone)
- Barium enema shows narrowed rectum

Treatment
- Surgical resection with temporary colostomy and definitive treatment at 6–12 months of age

Rectal Prolapse

- Chronic constipation is the most common cause in the USA
- Mild exteriorization of rectal mucosa to as long as 10–12 cm
- Medical treatment is essential and has to be tried before surgery
- Manual reduction; cover the finger with a piece of toilet paper and gently push it to the rectum, then immediately withdraw the fingers, paper will come out late by itself
- Stool softener
- Linear mucosal burn 4–8 lines, healing will retract the rectal mucosa back within the anal canal

Recurrent Abdominal Pain (RAP)

Background
- Recurrent or chronic abdominal pain affects between 15 and 35% of the pediatric population worldwide
- Up to one third of cases of RAP may be found to have organic causes
- Most children who do not have specific organic disorders have functional RAP

"Red flags" that might indicate specific organic diseases are
- Family history of inflammatory bowel disease
- Fever
- Weight loss
- Night awakening
- Anemia

- Chronic diarrhea
- Bloody stools
- Localized tenderness

Functional GI disorders
- Functional dyspepsia
  - Postprandial abdominal pain, with feelings of bloating, gas, or heartburn
  - May be associated with gastroesophageal reflux
- Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS)
  - IBS is characterized by cramping pain with alteration in bowel movements
- Abdominal migraine
  - Abdominal pain with episodes of headache and pallor may be an abdominal migraine

Indication of endoscopy
- Esophagitis
- Celiac disease
- Peptic ulcer diseases
- *Helicobacter pylori* gastritis

Inflammatory Bowel Disease (IBD)

Background
- Genetic and environmental factors
- CD is less in Hispanic and Asian
- Risk of Inflammatory Bowel Disease (IBD) in family members of affected individual from 7 to 35%
- The relative of patient with CD is at a higher risk of crohn than UC

Associated genetic disorders
- Turner syndrome
- Hermansky–Pudlak syndrome (AR, oculocutaneous albinism, platelet storage deficiency, e.g., epistaxis and menorrhagia in females
- P-ANCA (perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies) is found in 70% of patient with UC <20% in patient with CD
- ASCA (*Anti- Saccharomyces cerevisiae Antibodies*) in 55% of patients with CD
- Extra-intestinal manifestation is more common with ulcerative colitis than with CD

Ulcerative Colitis (UC)

Background
- UC is a disease characterized by remitting and relapsing inflammation of the large intestine
- 25% of the patients with severe UC require colectomy within 5 years

Table 1 The difference between ulcerative colitis (UC) and CD

Features	Crohn's disease (CD)	Ulcerative colitis (UC)
Rectal bleeding, diarrhea mucous, pus	Less common	Common
Abdominal pain	Common	Variable
Abdominal mass	Common	Not present
Growth failure	Common	Variable
Mouth ulcers, perianal disease, fissures, strictures, and fistulas	Common	Rare
Skipping lesions	Common	Not present
Transmural involvement	Common	Unusual
Extraintestinal manifestation including: sclerosing cholangitis, chronic active hepatitis, and ankylosing spondylitis	Less common	Common
Arthralgias and arthritis	Common	Less common
Erythema nodosum (EN)	Common	Less common
Pyoderma gangrenosum (PG)	Rare	Common
Toxic megacolon	None	Present
Risk for cancer	Increased	Greatly increased
ASCA	55%	5%
P-ANCA	<20%	70%

- Risk of colon cancer increases after 8–10 years of the disease, then increases by 0.5–1% per year
- The risk is delayed by 10 years if limited to the descending colon
- If patient >10 years with UC, screening with colonoscopy and biopsy every 1–2 years

Clinical presentation
- Blood in stool and diarrhea are the typical presentations
- Abdominal pain, cramping, and tenesmus specially with bowel movement
- Fulminant colitis; fever, severe anemia, hypoalbuminemia, leukocytosis, >5 bloody stools per day for 5 days
- Chronicity is an important part of the diagnosis

Associated conditions (Table 1)
- Pyoderma gangrenosum
- Sclerosing cholangitis
- Chronic active hepatitis
- Ankylosing spondylitis
- Iron deficiency anemia from chronic blood loss
- Folate deficiency secondary to sulfadiazine

Diagnosis (Fig. 5)
- Endoscopy and biopsy confirm the diagnosis
- Colonoscopy and barium enema are contraindicated in toxic megacolon
- *Plain Radiograph;* Loss of haustration in air-filled colon, marked dilatation >6 cm in toxic megacolon

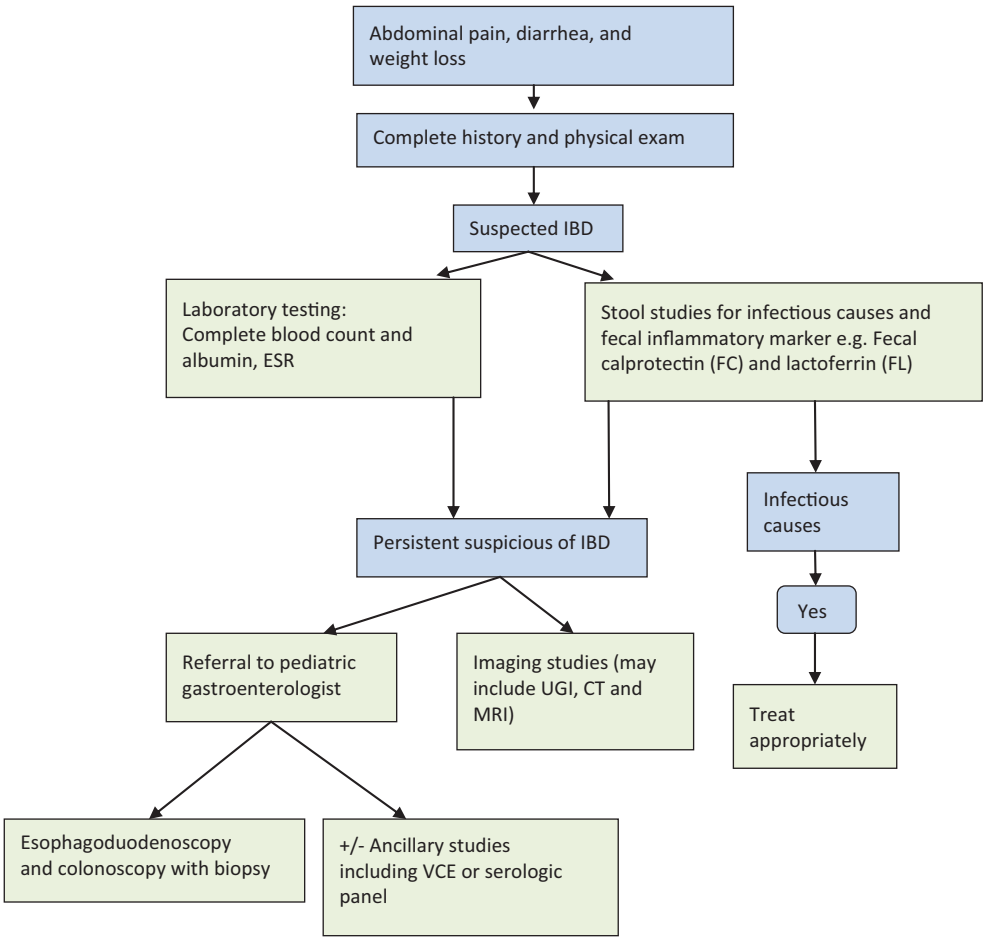


Fig. 5 Clinical approach of a child with suspected inflammatory bowel disease (IBD). *ESR* = erythrocyte sedimentation rate, *UGI* = upper gastrointestinal, *VCE* = video capsule endoscopy

Management
- Sulfasalazine, mesalamine, and oral steroids if moderate to severe colitis
- *Other medications* includes; azathioprine, cyclosporine, 6-mercaptopurine, infliximab which have showed good clinical response in adults

Crohn's Disease (CD)

Background
- The most common location small intestine 30 % (terminal ileitis 70 %)
- Patient with small bowel disease are more likely to have obstructive pattern with RLQ pain

Clinical presentation
- Colonic type diarrhea, bleeding, and cramping
- Growth failure from chronic inflammation (more common in CD than UC)
- Abscess and fistulas which can affect any organ

Extra-intestinal manifestation, e.g.,
- Oral ulcers
- Peripheral arthritis
- Erythema nodosum

Laboratory
- B12 deficiency due to malabsorption
- Anemia often iron deficiency anemia
- Oxaluria with 2ry kidney stones due to rapid absorption of oxalate
- Elevated ESR
- Hypoalbuminemia
- High level of *Anti- Saccharomyces cerevisiae Antibodies*

Diagnosis (Fig. 5)
- Colonoscopy (erythema, friability, loss of vascular pattern
- The most specific histology caseating granuloma

Management
- Sulfasalazine and mesalamine in mild cases
- *Infliximab:*
- PPD test should be done before starting infliximab

Irritable Bowel Syndrome (IBS)

Background
- Recurrent abdominal pain and altered bowel habits

Clinical presentation
- Abdominal pain often relieved with defecation
- No rectal bleeding
- No associated anemia, weight loss, or fever
- It should be determined that celiac disease is not present

Diagnosis
- Exclusion of all organic conditions causing abdominal pain
- Typical clinical presentation

Treatment
- Antispasmodic agents
- Tricyclic antidepressants
- Selective serotonin-reuptake inhibitors may improve symptoms

Gluten-Sensitive Enteropathy (Celiac disease)

Background
- Small intestine mucosal damage secondary to exposure to specific dietary protein (*wheat products*)
- *Wheat products*, e.g., Cereal grains that includes wheat, rye, and barley
- Pure oats are not considered an offending agent

Associated diseases, e.g.,
- Diabetes mellitus type1
- Down syndrome
- Williams syndrome
- Turner
- Thyroiditis
- Selective IgA deficiency

Clinical presentation
- Diarrhea (the most common symptom) stool is pale, loose, and offensive
- Abdominal distension
- FTT is less common
- Muscle wasting and loss of muscular power
- Hypotonia
- Dermatitis herpetiformis
- Dental enamel defects
- Short stature
- Delayed puberty
- Osteoporosis
- Persistent iron deficiency anemia

Diagnosis
- *Anti-tissue transglutaminase* antibody test is most sensitive and specific diagnostic blood test
- Anti-endomysial IgA antibodies
- The above two test can be falsely negative in IgA deficiency
- *Definitive diagnosis* is small intestinal biopsy showing flattening of the small intestinal mucosa

Management
- Lifelong exclusion of gluten, no wheat, barley, or rye in diet
- Follow-up with tissue transglutaminase level 6 months after withdrawal to document reduction in antibodies
- Patients response very well to diet restriction
- Any small amount of gluten can cause mucosal damage
- Follow-up with dietitian is very important
- Follow up the growth curve

Cystic Fibrosis (CF)

Background
- CF is a major cause of pancreatic exocrine failure in children
- It is an autosomal recessive disorder caused by a mutation in the *CFTR* gene on chromosome 7, leading to defective chloride channel function
- Approximately 90 % of the patients with CF have pancreatic insufficiency

Clinical presentation
- FTT
  - Patients with pancreatic dysfunction will present in the first 6 months of life
- Steatorrhea
  - Large, pasty, and greasy stool
  - Stool tend to float in toilet water because of the increased gas content
- Hypoalbuminemia
- Edema
- Anemia
- Fat-soluble vitamin (A, D, E, and K) deficiency
- Calcium oxalate kidney stones
  - Fatty acids in the intestine can bind calcium, leaving oxalate free increasing the risk of kidney stones

Diagnosis
- Sweat chloride testing
- Genetic testing

Investigations for malabsorption
- Stool study

  - Occult blood
  - Fecal leukocytes, indicate an inflammatory condition
  - PH and reducing substances, reflect carbohydrate malabsorption
  - Qualitative fecal fat excretion or stain for fat globules
  - Bacterial culture and examination for ova and parasites if infection is suspected
  - Fecal alpha-1-antitrypsin
  - Fecal elastase
  - 72-h stool collection, which can be used with a 72-hour dietary history to estimate fat malabsorption
  - This test is not performed routinely because of the difficulty in collecting the 72-hour stool sample from a child
- A complete blood count can be used to screen for anemia and neutropenia
- The use of total protein and albumin values can assess protein intake and loss
- *Endoscopy* with small bowel biopsy is the gold standard for documenting villous injury and can offer a definitive diagnosis in many circumstances
  - Several biopsies are obtained from the duodenum or jejunum for disaccharidase enzyme activity

Management
- Oral pancreatic enzyme replacement derived from the processed porcine pancreas
- Enzymes are administered as 500–1500 units of lipase per kilogram per meal
- *Fibrosing colonopathy* can occur if the enzyme dose exceed 2500 lipase units per kilogram per meal
- Fat-soluble vitamin supplements are given routinely to those who have CF
- Gastric acid suppression with histamine-2 blockers or proton pump inhibitors can optimize the intraluminal action of the supplemental enzymes
- Beyond infancy give starch, ingested starch is found in wheat, rice, and corn as polysaccharides

Complications of vitamin and minerals malabsorption, e.g.,
- Vitamin E deficiency
  - Progressive neurologic deterioration
  - Ataxia
  - Ophthalmoplegia
- Vitamin A deficiency
  - Follicular hyperkeratosis
- Vitamin D deficiency
  - Osteopenia
  - Rickets
- Vitamin K deficiency
  - Easy bruising
  - Bleeding
- Zinc malabsorption
  - Acrodermatitis enteropathica
  - Dermatitis involving the perioral and perianal skin and distal extremities
  - Hypogeusia (reduced ability to taste)
  - FTT
  - Chronic diarrhea
  - Edema
  - Alopecia
  - *Treatment:*
    - Zinc sulfate produces a dramatic clinical recovery

Shwachman–Diamond Syndrome

Background
- The second most common cause of pancreatic insufficiency
- Autosomal recessive disorder

Clinical presentation
- Exocrine pancreatic failure
- Skeletal abnormalities
- Bone marrow dysfunction
- Primarily cyclic neutropenia
- Know the possibility of improvement in pancreatic function

Protein Losing Enteropathy

Causes
- Primary enteric lymphatic obstruction
  - Primary intestinal lymphangiectasia
- Secondary intestinal lymphangiectasia
  - Whipple disease
  - Lymphoma
  - Radiation enteritis
- Cardiac causes of increased systemic venous pressure
  - Post-Fontan procedure
  - Constrictive pericarditis including when seen with Familial Mediterranean Fever
  - Congestive heart failure
  - Cardiomyopathy
- Genetic causes
  - Juvenile polyposis
- Infection of GI tract, e.g., Malaria, *Clostridium difficile, Giardia lamblia, Helicobacter pylori*
- Inflammatory bowel diseases
- Cow's milk/soy protein allergy
- Eosinophilic gastroenteritis
- Henoch–Schonlein purpura
- Celiac disease (Gluten sensitive enteropathy)
- Hypertrophic gastropathy (Menetrier disease)

Clinical presentation
- Edema
- Localized edema suggestive of primary intestinal lymphangiectasia
- Manifestation of underlying cause

Diagnosis
- Serum albumin and globulin; the most prominent laboratory abnormality is a decrease in serum albumin and globulin
- Alpha-1 antitrypsin: Presence of Alpha-1 antitrypsin in the stool is an important diagnostic clue because it is not normally absorbed or secreted into the bowel
- Viral serology, e.g., CMV infection is usually associated with hypertrophic gastropathy (Menetrier disease)

Management
- Focused treatment on correcting the underlying process causing the protein-losing gastroenteropathy

Intestinal Lymphangiectasia

Background
- Obstruction of lymphatic drainage of the intestine

Associated condition
- Turner syndrome
- Noonan syndrome
- Klippel–Trenaunay
- Weber syndrome
- Heart failure

Clinical presentation
- Protein losing enteropathy is the main cause of the clinical manifestation of this disease

Diagnosis
- Presence of Alpha-1 antitrypsin in stool
- Direct measurement of alpha-1 antitrypsin clearance from plasma

Management
- Replace long-chain fat with medium-chain Triglycerides in diet or formula and treatment of the cause

Short Bowel Syndrome

Background
- Loss > 50 % of small intestine with or without portion of large intestine can result in generalized malabsorption
- Child's small intestine 200–250 cm, adult's 300–800 cm
- Infant with 15 cm bowel with ileocecal valve or 20 cm or more without ileocecal valve can eventually weaned from TPN
- Trophic feeds will increase pancreatobiliary flow and decrease TPN toxicity

Long-term complications of short bowel
- Renal stones secondary to steatorrhea Ca, binds to fat and not to oxalate, excess oxalates reabsorbed, and excreted in urine
- Bloody diarrhea secondary colitis as a result of enteral feeding (this may improve with hypoallergenic diet)
- Constipation

Small Bowel Bacterial Overgrowth

Background
- Overgrowth of aerobic and anaerobic bacteria in the small bowel
- The normal small intestine has a relatively few bacteria residing inside

Mechanism of development of diarrhea
- Bile acids are deconjugated and fatty acids hydroxylated by bacteria
- These processes lead to an osmotic diarrhea

Conditions may result in bacterial overgrowth
- Short bowel syndrome
- Pseudo-obstruction
- Bowel strictures
- Malnutrition

Clinical presentation
- Abdominal pain
- Diarrhea

Diagnosis
- Breath hydrogen with lactulose testing

Treatment
- Metronidazole or with nonabsorbable rifaximin

Diarrhea

Important tips for management of Diarrhea
- Vitamin A deficiency increases the risk of dying from diarrhea, measles, malaria by 10–24 %
- Zinc deficiency increases the risk of mortality from diarrhea pneumonia and malaria

- Persistent diarrhea lasts at least 14 days, nutritional supplementation is very important
- Ondansetron is an effective and less toxic antiemetic if diarrhea associated with persistent vomiting and may limit dehydration and hospitalizations

Extraintestinal manifestations and clues to causative agent
- Reactive arthritis; *Salmonella, shigella, Yersinia, campylobacter, cryptosporidium, clostridium difficile*
- Guillain Barre syndrome; *Campylobacter*
- Glomerulonephritis; *Shigella, Campylobacter, Yersinia*
- Appendicitis like presentation; *Yersinia*
- IgA nephropathy; *Campylobacter*
- Erythema nodosum; *Yersinia, Campylobacter, Salmonella*
- HUS; *Shigella dysenteriae 1, E-Coli 0157:H7*
- Hemolytic anemia; *Campylobacter, Yersinia*

Antibiotics and Drug of Choice in treatment of diarrhea
- Shigella
  - Ciprofloxacin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, and azithromycin
  - Third-generation cephalosporin is appropriate empiric therapy in the setting of acute illness
- Salmonella
  - Antibiotics are indicated in infants < 3 months, patients with systemic diseases, malignancy, or immunocompromised
  - Third generation cephalosporin, e.g., Cefotaxime
- Clostridium difficile
  - Metronidazole oral or IV is the first line, may use again if relapse, this just means reinfection and is not a resistance
  - If no response, the second line is vancomycin (oral)
- Entameba histolytica
  - Metronidazole followed by iodoquinol or paromomycin
- Campylobacter Jejuni
  - Erythromycin or azithromycin

Probiotics
- Compete with pathogen for nutrition
- Produce bacteriocin which is a local antibiotics against pathogens
- Produce lactic acids and decrease luminal PH
- Improve the integrity of mucosal barrier by stimulating mucin production
- Increase the level of IgA antibodies
- Diseases will benefit from Probiotics
  - Acute infectious diarrhea
  - Antibiotic associated diarrhea
  - NEC
  - Lactase deficiency
  - Irritable bowel syndrome
  - IBS
  - Celiac Disease
  - Food protein hypersensitivity
  - He*licobacter pylori* infection
- Probiotics *is not recommended* in immunocompromised or patient under metabolic stress

VIPoma

- Watery diarrhea–hypokalemia–acidosis syndrome
- Excessive secretion of vasoactive intestinal peptide

Chronic Diarrhea

Background
- *Chronic diarrhea* is a common complaint in pediatric medicine

Clinical presentation
- Stool volume > 10 g/kg per day in infants and toddlers and > 200 g/day in older children
- Diarrhea should not be defined solely by stool weight
- Some adolescents and adults may have up to 300 g of formed stool per day without any complaints
- > 14 days of symptoms meets criteria of chronic diarrhea

Chronic Nonspecific Diarrhea (CNSD)

Background
- The most common form of persistent diarrhea in the first 3 years after birth
- The typical time of onset may range from 1–3 years of age and can last from infancy until age 5 years
- The role of ingested carbohydrates in CNSD has been emphasized in light of a typical toddler's affection for fruit juices

Clinical presentation
- May pass 4–10 loose bowel movements per day without blood or mucus
- Specific to CNSD; these patients pass stools only during waking hours
  - As the day progresses, stools become more watery and smaller in volume
- *Undigested food* remnants in the stool due short transit time of enteral contents

Management
- Reassurance is the cornerstone of therapy for CNSD

- Parents should be reassured that their child is growing well and is healthy
- Fruit juice intake should be minimized or changed to types of juice with low sucrose and fructose loads
- Increase fat to encourage normal caloric intake and to slow intestinal transit time, not to restrict fiber, and to assure adequate but not overhydration

Disaccharide Intolerance

Background
- Lactase deficiency is the most common type

Lactose intolerance
- Age of onset varies among populations
- African American children becoming lactose intolerant before age 5 years
- White children typically do not lose lactase function until after age 5 years
- *Congenital lactase deficiency* is exceedingly rare

Secondary Lactase Deficiency

Background
- Small intestinal mucosal injury when lactase enzyme is lost from the tip of the villi

Causes include
- Rotaviral infection
- Parasitic infection
- Celiac disease
- CD
- Other enteropathies

Clinical presentation
- Gassy discomfort and flatulence
- The unabsorbed lactose serves as an osmotic agent, resulting in an osmotic diarrhea

Diagnosis
- Successful lactose-free diet trial for 2 weeks or by hydrogen breath-testing

Treatment
- Treatment entails minimizing lactose intake because the symptoms are dose-dependent and may not require complete removal of dietary lactose
- Artificial lactase enzyme may be taken once the diagnosis has been made

Intractable Diarrhea of Infancy

Background
- Persistent diarrhea after an acute episode of presumed infectious diarrhea, e.g.,
  - Postenteritis
  - Post gastroenteritis diarrhea
  - Postenteritis enteropathy or "slick gut"

Clinical presentation
- Osmotic diarrhea with increased fluid requirements secondary to carbohydrate malabsorption is common
- Without nutritional support, patients may become severely ill

To prevent intractable diarrhea of infancy (IDI)
- Avoiding formula dilution
- Promoting early feeding that reduces intestinal permeability, illness duration and improves nutritional outcomes
- Dietary protein and fat are important in recovery
- Simple carbohydrates should be minimized
- Regular diet is recommended
  - *Know that* BRAT diet (bananas, rice, applesauce, toast) in the management of diarrhea is unnecessary and nutritionally suboptimal
- *Refeeding syndrome* is a risk for severely malnourished patients. Intravenous hydration may be necessary in treating IDI
- Tolerance of enteral feeds and resolution of diarrhea typically occur within 2–3 weeks

Allergic Enteropathy

Background
- Allergic enteropathy or eosinophilic enteropathy
- Small intestinal mucosal damage
- Malabsorption of protein, carbohydrate, and fat
- Protein malabsorption may lead to hypoalbuminemia and diffuse swelling
- Profuse vomiting and diarrhea may lead to severe dehydration, lethargy, and hypotension
- Mimicking sepsis in a young infant
- Serum IgE levels may or may not be elevated

Clinical presentation
- FTT
- Vomiting
- Diarrhea

Management
- Protein hydrolysate or amino acid-based elemental formulas are necessary if breastfeeding on a restricted diet is

not possible. Once the inciting dietary protein is removed, the enteropathy will resolve

Allergic Colitis

- *Allergic colitis* occurring in otherwise healthy and thriving infants
  - As in allergic enteropathy, allergic colitis is induced by food proteins
  - The most common cause being cow milk and soy proteins

Management
  - Avoid cow milk and soy milk protein in breast feeding women
  - Protein hydrolysate or amino acid-based elemental formulas are necessary, if not breast feeding, or if breast feeding on a restricted diet is not possible.

Immunodeficiency States Associated with Chronic Diarrhea

Background
- Children with primary immunodeficiency states often present with chronic diarrhea
- *X-linked agammaglobulinemia* may result in diarrhea secondary to
  - Chronic rotaviral infections
  - Recurrent giardiasis
- *IgA deficiency* may lead to
  - Recurrent giardiasis
  - Bacterial overgrowth
  - Associated with a 10- to 20-fold increased incidence of celiac disease
- *Hyper-IgM syndrome*
  - *Chronic diarrhea*
- *Human immunodeficiency virus syndromes*
  - *Cryptosporidium parvum*
- *Common variable immunodeficiency* lead to
  - Diarrhea
  - Significant malabsorption
- *Neonatal insulin-dependent diabetes* with intractable diarrhea should raise suspicion for
  - Syndrome of immune dysregulation
  - Polyendocrinopathy
  - Enteropathy (autoimmune)
- *Glycogen storage disease type 1B* and chronic granulomatous disease may presents very similarly to CD, likely related to defective intestinal mucosal immunity

Congenital Secretory Diarrhea

Congnital chloride diarrhea (CCD) and Congenital sodium diarrhea (CSD)
- Both diseases present before birth with polyhydramnios resulting from in utero diarrhea
- May cause life-threatening dehydration and electrolyte disturbances

Congnital chloride diarrhea (CCD)
- Severe hypochloremia
- Metabolic alkalosis

Congenital sodium diarrhea (CSD)
- Hyponatremia with alkaline stools
- Metabolic acidosis

Diagnosis
- Stool electrolytes often aid in the diagnosis
- Genetic testing can identify defective chloride transport genes in some patients with CCD

Management
- Aggressive fluid and electrolyte replacement is the mainstay of therapy for both diseases

Tufting Enteropathy

Background
- Tufting enteropathy, also known as intestinal epithelial dysplasia

Clinical presentation
- Presents in the first few months after birth
- Growth failure
- Intractable watery diarrhea
- Significant electrolyte abnormalities

Diagnosis
- Histology of the small bowel reveals
  - Villous atrophy and crypt hyperplasia without significant inflammation
  - Closely packed enterocytes appear to create focal epithelial “tufts”

Management
- Affected infants typically become dependent on parenteral nutrition to allow normal growth and development
- Small bowel transplant is potentially curative, but the associated morbidity and mortality are high

Microvillus Inclusion Disease

Background
- Rare cause of chronic secretory diarrhea in the neonatal period

Clinical presentation
- Diarrhea so watery that it may be mistaken for urine
- Contrary to what occurs in CCD and CSD, polyhydramnios typically is not seen

Diagnosis
- Small bowel villous atrophy but without inflammation or expected crypt hyperplasia, and "microvillous inclusions"

Management
- Aggressive intravenous rehydration and electrolyte replacement are necessary to maintain life during infancy
- Lifelong parenteral nutrition in most cases

Johanson–Blizzard Syndrome

- Hypoplasia of the alae nasi
- Deafness
- Malabsorption
- Imperforate anus
- Urogenital malformations
- Dental anomalies
- Diabetes
- Hypothyroidism

Pearson Syndrome

- Pancreatic insufficiency
- Refractory sideroblastic anemia
- Death frequently ensues in infancy or early childhood due to sepsis or metabolic disarray

Gastrointestinal Bleeding (Fig. 6)

Hemodynamic stability
- The best indicator of significant blood loss is orthostatic changes in heart rate and blood pressure.
- Orthostatic change is defined as an increase in pulse rate by 20 beats/min or a decrease in systolic blood pressure of 10 mmHg or more on moving the patient from the supine to the sitting position

Rate of bleeding indicators
- Low rate of bleeding
  - Coffee-ground emesis or melena
- High rate of upper GI bleeding
  - Bright red blood
- Hematocrit is unreliable index of the severity of acute GI bleeding
- *A low MCV of red cells* suggests chronic bleeding

Upper Versus Lower GI Bleeding
- *Hematemesis* is the classic presentation of upper GI bleeding
- *Bloody diarrhea* and bright red blood mixed or coating normal stool are the classic presentations of lower GI bleeding
- *Hematochezia, melena,* or occult GI blood loss could represent upper or lower GI bleeding
- *Nasogastric (NG) tube* in cases of acute-onset hematochezia or melena
- Presence of blood in the stomach diagnostic of:
  - Upper GI bleeding
  - Significant duodenal hemorrhages that usually reflux into the stomach
- Clearing of aspirated fluid during repeated NG lavage suggests that bleeding has stopped
- Suspicion of bleeding esophageal varices is not a contraindication to passage of an NG tube
- Persistent red or pink aspirate suggests ongoing bleeding and the need for more emergent diagnostic evaluation

Is it Blood?
- *Guaiac test* is the current recommended qualitative method for confirming the presence of gross or occult blood in vomit or stool

Bright red blood
- Substances may simulate bright red blood
  - Food coloring
  - Colored gelatin
  - Children's drinks

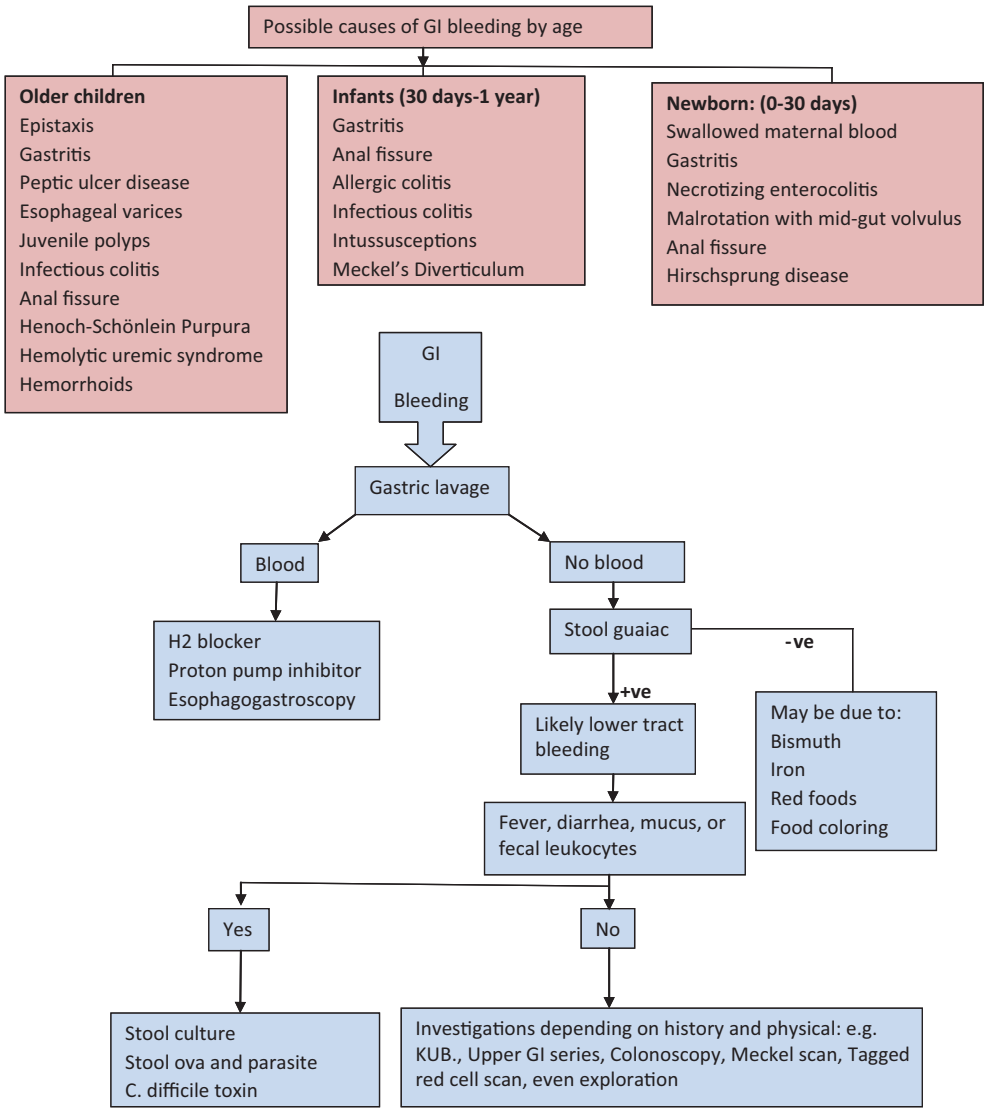


Fig. 6 General approach to a child present with GI bleeding

Melena

- Substances may simulate melena
  - Bismuth
  - Iron preparations
  - Spinach
  - Blueberries
  - Grapes
  - Licorice

General management of GI bleeding

- Supportive measures include
  - Stabilization of hemodynamic status
  - Correction of any coagulation or platelet abnormal ities
  - Blood transfusion if necessary
  - Iron supplementation
  - Because both intravascular and extravascular volumes are reduced in acute GI bleeding, crystalloid (normal saline, Ringer lactate) is the solution of choice for initial intravenous resuscitation
  - Colloid solutions or blood are used only when blood loss is massive
  - Intravenous acid suppression has been shown to improve ulcer healing in adults
- Control of active upper GI bleeding
  - Vasoactive agents, including octreotide and vasopressin, e.g., esophageal varices
  - Endoscopic sclerotherapy, e.g., esophageal varices
- Control of active lower GI bleeding
  - Lower GI bleeding rarely is life-threatening
  - Meckel diverticulum is treated by surgical resection
  - Endoscopy can treat colonic lesions such as polyps, bleeding ulcers, telangiectasias, or small hemangiomas.
  - Juvenile polyps are removed by snare polypectomy

Upper GI Bleeding

Hematemesis

- Acute hematochezia or melena with positive NG aspirate for blood

Causes
- Swallowed blood; sources
  - Epistaxis (common)
  - Breastfeeding
  - Swallowed maternal blood in neonates
  - Dental work
  - Tonsillectomy
- Upper GI mucosal lesions
- Reactive gastritis
- Stress ulcer
- Peptic ulcer
- Variceal bleeding
- Mallory–Weiss tear
- Hemobilia (hemorrhage into the biliary tract)

Diagnosis
- *Upper endoscopy is the test of choice for evaluating hematemesis*
- Upper endoscopy during active bleeding usually can identify the site of bleeding, distinguish variceal from mucosal bleeding, and identify diffuse gastritis
- The combination of gastric lavage and intravenous erythromycin prior to endoscopy improves stomach cleansing
- For optimal diagnostic results, endoscopy should be performed soon after active bleeding has stopped

Mallory–Weiss Tear Syndrome

Background
- Acute mucosal laceration of the gastric cardia or the gastroesophageal junction

Clinical presentation
- Hematemesis following repeated forceful retching, vomiting, or coughing
- Abdominal pain (musculoskeletal in origin due to forceful emesis
- Vomiting episodes usually are linked to a concurrent viral illness

Management
- Upper endoscopy is the diagnostic tool for esophageal tears
- In most cases, Mallory–Weiss tears spontaneously resolve
- Endoscopic band ligation in persistent cases

Reactive Gastritis

Types
- Diffuse *Reactive gastritis* associated with:
  - Trauma
  - Surgery
  - Burns
  - Severe medical problems requiring hospitalization in an intensive care
- Localized reactive gastritis may be associated with
  - Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAID gastr opathy)
  - Alcoholic gastritis
  - Helicobacter pylori infection
  - Viral infection
  - Bleeding from localized gastritis usually manifests as coffee-ground emesis

Esophageal Varices

- Variceal bleeding with history of liver disease caused by portal hypertension:
  - Hepatomegaly
  - Splenomegaly
  - Ascites
  - Jaundice
  - Scleral icterus
- Variceal bleeding with no previous history of liver disease is suggested by:
  - History of jaundice
  - Hepatitis
  - Blood transfusion
  - Chronic right heart failure
  - Portal vein thrombosis, e.g., (history of abdominal surgery or neonatal sepsis, shock, exchange transfusion, omphalitis, umbilical vein catheterization).

Assessment of esophageal varices
- Bleeding from mucosal lesions usually stops spontaneously.
- The initial laboratory evaluation reveals a normal hematocrit, MCV, platelet count, coagulation profile, total and direct bilirubin, liver enzymes, total protein, and albumin
- Affected patients can be prescribed oral inhibitors of gastric acid secretion and followed as outpatients
- Infants younger than 1 year of age or any patient who has a history of significant upper GI blood loss, acute hematemesis associated with heme-positive stool, or physical or biochemical evidence of possible portal hypertension should be hospitalized for observation
- APT test to determine if maternal source of blood in neonates

- All neonates who have hematemesis should be screened for coagulopathy due to:
  - Vitamin K deficiency
  - Maternal thrombocytopenic purpura
  - Hemophilia
  - Von Willebrand disease.

Management of esophageal varices
- Prevention of rebleeding
  - Medical therapy includes acid suppression with antacids, histamine2-receptor antagonists, or PPIs.
  - In addition, binding agents such as sucralfate have been shown to increase ulcer healing
  - Sucralfate is particularly effective for esophageal bleeding due to caustic or mechanical forms of mucosal damage
- Secondary prophylaxis in variceal bleeding
  - Patients who have portal hypertension due to cavernous transformation of the portal vein have relatively normal liver parenchyma and function and tend to develop spontaneous portosystemic shunts over time. Thus, secondary prophylaxis bridges the time from presentation until spontaneous shunts form or until the patient's age and radiographic evaluation predict success from shunt surgery
  - Secondary prophylaxis combines endoscopic and pharmacologic modalities. The endoscopic options include injection sclerotherapy and variceal band ligation

Lower GI Bleeding (Hematochezia)

Causes
- *Intestinal ischemia*, e.g., intussusception, midgut volvulus (associated with malrotation, mesenteric cyst, intestinal duplication, or internal hernia), incarcerated hernia, or mesenteric thrombosis, suggestive symptoms:
  - Acute hematochezia
  - Ill-appearing child (either extreme irritability or lethargy)
  - Acute abdominal pain
  - Tenderness
- Painless passage of blood per rectum suggests:
  - Meckel diverticulum
  - Polyp
  - Intestinal duplication
  - Intestinal submucosal mass (GIST)
  - Angiodysplasia/vascular malformation
  - Food-induced proctocolitis (cow or soy milk protein)

Assessment of patients with hematochezia
- Plain abdominal film (KUB) to check for intestinal obstruction, NEC or abnormal gas pattern
- Endoscopy
- Meckel scan (99Tc-pertechnetate nuclear scan) to look for a Meckel diverticulum
- Wireless capsule endoscopy has revolutionized evaluation of the GI tract and now is being applied in pediatrics
- Laparoscopy and intraoperative enteroscopy may be indicated in difficult case with unknown source of bleeding
- Before proceeding with laparoscopy in a patient who has obscure GI bleeding, repeated upper endoscopy and colonoscopy should be considered

Meckel Diverticulum (MD)

Background
- It is a remnant of the yolk sac and remains attached to the intestine and develop lining epithelium similar to that of the stomach
- 2–3 % of infants, 2 ft (50–75 cm) from ileocecal valve (depends on the age of the patient), and usually arise in the first 2 years of life (Rule of 2s)
- May occur in the first decade of life
- Ulceration of adjacent ileal mucosa from acid of ectopic stomach mucosa can cause intermittent painless bleeding

Clinical presentation
- Significant painless rectal bleeding is Meckel Diverticulum until otherwise is proved
- Stool is brick or currant jelly colored, bleeding can be less dramatic melanotic stools
- Anemia and hypovolemia (the bleeding is usually self limited due to contraction of splanchnic vessels)
- Obstruction because MD may act as a leading point for intussusceptions
- Meckel diverticulitis with a similar presentation like appendicitis

Diagnosis
- The most sensitive test is Meckel diverticulum scan, 99 technetium pertechnetate
- The uptake can be enhanced by cimetidine, glucagon, and gastrin

Treatment
- Surgical

Bright Red Rectal Bleeding

Causes
- Anal fissure
- Anal trauma
- Internal hemorrhoids

- Juvenile polyps, which account for more than 95 % of all polyps found in children

Assessment of bright red blood rectal bleeding
- Colonoscopy is indicated for any child who has unexplained rectal bleeding that is documented either visually or by chemical testing
- Juvenile polyps occur most commonly in the left colon on a stalk and may be removed by snare and cautery

Occult Blood Loss

Causes
- The most common causes are inflammatory disorders (including esophagitis)
- Food-induced proctocolitis (cow or soy milk proteins)
- Peptic ulcers
- Reactive gastritis
- Eosinophilic gastroenteritis or colitis
- Cow milk protein allergy or allergic colitis in newborn infants
- Celiac disease
- Henoch–Schönlein purpura
- CD
- Ulcerative colitis
- Polyps (Fig. 7)
- Meckel diverticulum
- Vascular anomalies rare
- Infection
- Neoplasia
- Infectious causes of occult GI blood loss include hookworm, ascariasis, amoebic infection, *Strongyloides* infection, and tuberculosis

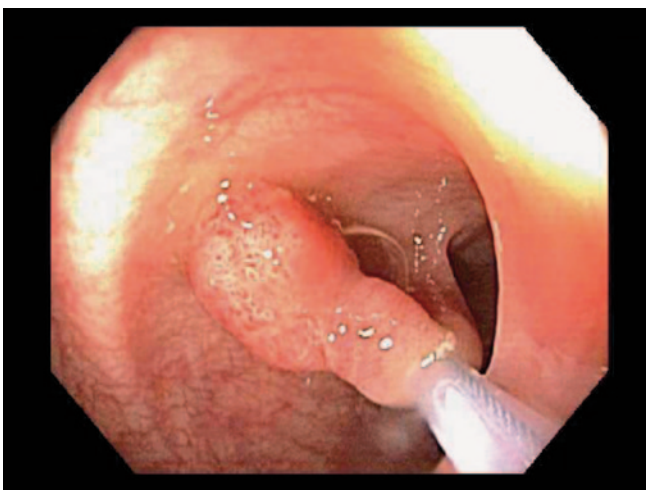


Fig. 7 Pedunculated, adenomatous polyp in the colon. (Courtesy Dr. Sherif Elhanafi)

Upper endoscopy indications
- Chronic epigastric abdominal pain
- CD (growth deceleration, diarrhea, arthralgia or arthritis, perianal skin tags or fistula)
- Occult-positive stool and iron deficiency anemia, it is reasonable to perform both upper endoscopy and colonoscopy

Hamartomatous Polyposis

Background
- It is the most common childhood bowel tumor 1–3 %
- Age 2–10 years

Clinical presentation
- Bright red painless bleeding immediately after defecation
- Solitary polyp is common but two or more may occur
- Range from few mm to 3 cm in size
- Prolapsed polyp; beefy, dark red, pedunculated mass compare to bright red rectal mucosal prolapse

Diagnosis
- Colonoscopy can confirm the diagnosis

Treatment
- Removal

Juvenile Polyposis

Background
- Multiple juvenile polyps > 5
- Autosomal dominant
- May be associated with congenital anomalies

Clinical presentation
- Painless bleeding
- Intussusceptions
- If entire GI is involved; FTT, malabsorption, anemia, hypoalbuminemia, and abdominal pain

Associated risk
- Risk of cancer is low without family history, two or fewer polyps
- Three or more increase risk of malignancy
- Multiple polyps or family history of juvenile polyposis should undergo endoscopy every 2 years

Peutz–Jegher Syndrome

- Rare autosomal dominant 1/120:000
- Mucosal pigmentation; lips and gums
- Hamartomas of GI
- Recurrent intussusceptions
- Bleeding
- Risk of cancer in 50 % of patient

Wilson's Disease

Background
- Wilson's disease or hepatolenticular degeneration is an autosomal recessive genetic disorder in which copper accumulates in tissues
- Manifests as neurological or psychiatric symptoms and liver disease
- Wilson's disease should be considered in children with: unexplained chronic liver disease, neurologic symptoms, or behavioral changes

Clinical presentation
- Asymptomatic hepatomegaly
- Neurologic disorders; intention tremors, dysarthria, dystonia, lack of coordination, decrease school performance
- Behavioral changes, e.g., depression, psychosis, anxiety
- Kayser–Fleischer rings
- Hemolytic anemia may be the initial manifestation

Diagnosis
- Best screening test is serum ceruloplasmin level (<20mg/dL)
  - (ceruloplasmin may increase during acute inflammation, pregnancy and contraceptive)
- Increase urinary copper > 100 microgram/day
- Liver biopsy can confirm the diagnosis

Management
- Restrict copper intake
- Oral D-Penicillamine

Jaundice

- Unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia (see fetus and newborn infants chapter)

Conjugated hyperbilirubinemia
- Conjugated hyperbilirubinemia is defined biochemically as a conjugated bilirubin level of ≥ 2 mg/dL and > 20 % of the total bilirubin.

Cholestasis

Definition
- Cholestasis is an elevation of serum-conjugated bilirubin

Causes
- Generalized hepatocellular injury
- Obstruction to bile flow at any level of the biliary tree
- Systemic disease leading to hypoxia or poor circulatory flow also can impair bile formation
- Neonatal cytomegalovirus infection or TORCH family
  - CMV is the most common congenital infectious cause of neonatal cholestasis

Early recognition of cholestasis
- Persistent jaundice at 2 weeks after birth should alert the care provider to the possibility of cholestasis
- Acholic stools represent significant cholestasis
- Hepatomegaly, with or without splenomegaly

Initial approach to infant with cholestasis
- Abnormal lab associated with cholestasis
  - Conjugated hyperbilirubinemia
  - Serum aspartate aminotransferase (AST) elevation
  - Alanine aminotransferase (ALT) elevation
  - Gamma glutamyltransferase (GGT) level usually is elevated in cholestasis
- Urinalysis and urine culture will assess for urinary tract infection
- Reducing substances in the urine suggests galactosemia
- Newborn screens for
  - CF
  - Hypothyroidism
  - Galactosemia
  - Other inborn errors of metabolism
- Advanced hepatic injury should prompt immediate referral to a pediatric tertiary care facility
  - Prolonged prothrombin time
  - Elevated ammonia level
  - Low serum albumin concentration
  - Hypoglycemia

Biliary Atresia (BA)

Background
- BA is the most common cause of neonatal cholestasis, accounting for ~ 40–50 % of all cases
- *The embryonic form of BA*, which is associated with:
  - Heterotaxy syndrome
  - Polysplenia
- *The acquired form of BA* is far more common (~ 85 %)

  - The etiology of this disease is unclear

Clinical presentation
- Usually asymptomatic at birth
- Develop jaundice in the first weeks after birth
- Typically, they feed well and thrive
- Acholic, or clay-colored stool
  - The finding of acholic stools in the setting of a jaundiced newborn should prompt expedient evaluation for BA

Diagnosis
- Abdominal ultrasonography
  - Rule out other anatomic abnormalities of the common bile duct, such as choledochal cyst (CDC)
  - Identify anomalies associated with the embryonic form of BA
- Liver biopsy
  - Bile ductular proliferation
  - Portal tract inflammation
  - Fibrosis, and bile plugs within the lumen of bile ducts
- Intraoperative cholangiogram
  - The gold standard in confirming the diagnosis of BA

Management
- Kasai portoenterostomy to reestablish bile flow
- Early, Kasai procedure if performed
  - Before 60 days after birth, leads to initial biliary flow in approximately two-thirds of patients
  - After 90 days after birth the chance of bile drainage is markedly diminished

Alagille Syndrome

Background
- *Alagille syndrome* is an autosomal dominant mutation of the Jagged1 gene on chromosome 20.

Clinical presentation
- Cholestasis
- Paucity of bile ducts
- Peripheral pulmonary stenosis
- Butterfly vertebrae
- Posterior embryotoxon of the eye
- Broad prominent forehead
- Small pointed chin
- Deep-set eyes

Outcome
- Some children experiencing a gradual improvement in cholestasis
- Others progress to cirrhosis, requiring liver transplantation

Hepatomegaly

Background
- Hepatomegaly more than 3.5 cm in newborn below the right costal margin
- Hepatomegaly more than 2 cm below the right costal margin in children

Causes of liver diseases in children and adolescents
- Hepatitis
  - Viral
  - Autoimmune
  - Toxic
  - Drug related
- Wilson disease
- Budd–Chiari Syndrome (hepatic vein obstruction)
- Fatty liver disease
- Congestive heart failure
- Storage liver disease
  - Fat
  - NASH
  - Rey syndrome
  - Glycogenesis
  - Mucopolysaccharidosis

Evaluation of hepatic dysfunction (initial evaluation)
- Complete blood count
- Reticulocyte count
- Comprehensive metabolic panel
- Fractionated bilirubin
- Erythrocyte sedimentation Rate
- Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase
- Prothrombin time (PT)

Evaluation for the etiology of liver dysfunction
- Hepatitis serologies A, B, and C
- Alpha-1-antitrypsin
- Alpha-fetoprotein
- Serum ceruloplasmin
- Antinuclear antibodies
- Antismooth muscle antibodies
- Anti-liver/kidney microsomal antibodies
- Sweat chloride
- Serum lipid profile

Hepatitis B Virus Infection

Background
- *Hepatitis B virus* (HBV) is transmitted hematogenously and sexually
- The outcome of this infection is a complicated viral-host interaction that results in either an acute symptomatic disease or an asymptomatic disease

- HBV is not spread by feeding, kissing, hugging, sharing utensils

Clinical presentation
- Fatigue
- Anorexia
- Myalgia
- Low grade fever
- Jaundice
- Hepatomegaly
- Hepatic encephalopathy
- Mental confusion
- Coma

Diagnosis
- *HBsAg* is the first serologic marker to appear and almost found in infected persons, its rise correlates with the acute symptoms
- *Anti-HBc* is the single *most valuable serologic* marker of acute HBV infection because it appears as early as HBsAg continue later in the course of the disease when HBsAg disappeared
- *Anti-HBs* marks serologic recovery and protection
- *Both Anti HBs and Anti HBc* are detected in person with *resolved infection*
- *HBeAg* is present in person in *active acute or chronic infection and marks infectivity*
- *Anti-HBe* marks improvement and is the goal of therapy in chronically infected patients
- *HBV DNA* seen in patients with HBeAg typically falls once Anti-HBe develop

Treatment
- Treatment is mainly supportive
- Interferon-Alpha2b and lamivudine are the current approved therapy

Prevention
- Routine hepatitis B immunization to children and health-care personnel
- Children with HBV should not excluded from school, day care, and play unless are prone to biting
- Hepatitis B immunoglobulin indicated only for specific postexposure circumstances
- In immunosuppressed and infants <2000 g fourth dose is recommended
- Despite decline in the Anti-HBs titer in time most vaccinated individuals remain protected

Hepatitis C Virus Infection

Background
- Hepatitis C is an infection caused by the hepatitis C virus (HCV) that attacks the liver and leads to inflammation.
- The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that about 3 % of the world's population has been infected with HCV and that there are more than 170 million chronic carriers who are at risk of developing liver cirrhosis and/or liver cancer
- Genome 1 has a poor response to HCV therapy
- Genome 2 and 3 have a better response

Essential update
- FDA approves sofosbuvir, a new drug with breakthrough therapy designation, for chronic hepatitis C

Clinical presentation
- Arthralgias
- Paresthesias
- Myalgias
- Pruritus
- Mental status changes (hepatic encephalopathy)
- Ankle edema and abdominal distention (ascites)
- Hematemesis or melena (variceal bleeding)
- Fetor hepaticus
- Gynecomastia and small testes
- Abdominal signs: Paraumbilical hernia, ascites, caput medusae, hepatosplenomegaly, abdominal bruit
- Ankle edema
- Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis
- Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura

Diagnosis
- Complete blood cell count with differential
- Liver function tests, including alanine aminotransferase level
- Thyroid function studies
- Screening tests for coinfection with HIV or hepatitis B virus (HBV)
- Hepatitis C antibody testing: Enzyme immunoassays (EIAs), rapid diagnostic tests (RDTs), and point-of-care tests (POCTs)
- Recombinant immunoblot assay
- Qualitative and quantitative assays for HCV RNA (based on polymerase chain reaction [PCR] or transmission-mediated amplification (TMA))
- HCV genotyping

Management
- Treatment of acute hepatitis C includes the following:
  - 6 months of standard interferon (IFN) therapy is commonly successful
  - Initiation of therapy is typically 2–4 months after onset of illness

- The two goals of treatment of chronic hepatitis C are as follows:
  - To achieve sustained eradication of HCV (i.e., sustained virologic response)
  - To prevent progression to cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), and decompensated liver disease necessitating liver transplantation
- Combination therapy e.g., IFN with ribavirin
- Protease inhibitors (e.g., boceprevir and telaprevir) as third component of combination therapy
- No response to antiviral therapy, advanced fibrosis: Screen for hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) and varices, and evaluate for liver transplantation if appropriate

Autoimmune Hepatitis

Background
- Autoimmune hepatitis is a chronic disease of unknown cause and is characterized by continuing hepatocellular inflammation and necrosis and has a tendency to progress to cirrhosis
- 25–30% mimic viral hepatitis

Clinical presentation
- Approximately one third of the patients presented with symptoms of acute hepatitis marked by fever, hepatic tenderness, and jaundice
- Hepatomegaly
- Some patient develop cirrhosis
- Bleeding esophageal varices
- Hepatic encephalopathy
- Spleen is commonly enlarged
- Edema and ascites may be present
- Other autoimmune condition may be present, e.g., arthritis, vasculitis, nephritis, thyroiditis, and Coomb's positive anemia

Diagnosis
- Serum aminotransferase: Can be as high as 1000s IU/L in symptomatic patient
- Serum bili predominantly direct 2–10 mg/dl
- ALP and GGT are normal to slightly elevated
- Elevated Gamma-globulin may > 16 g/dl
- Prolonged prothrombin time (PT) (detrimental sign)
- Positive anti-actin smooth muscle, antinuclear and antimitochondrial antibodies
- High level anti-*liver-kidney microsomal antibodies (LKM)*

Management
- Prednisone, azathioprine, 6-Ursodeoxycholic acid
- >75% remission, transaminases and bilirubin level fall to near normal in 1–3 months, abnormalities of PT and serum albumin respond over longer period of time 3–9 months
- 50% are weaned off all medications
- Relapses usually respond to treatment
- Liver transplantation for whom medical therapy has failed

Fulminant Hepatitis

Clinical presentation
- Progressive jaundice
- Fetor hepaticus
- Fever
- Anorexia
- Vomiting
- Abdominal pain

Clinical signs of liver function deterioration
- Rapid decrease in liver size is ominous sign without clinical improvement
- Patient is often somnolent, confused, may become responsive only to painful stimuli
- Patient can progress to deeper stages of coma to which extensor responses; decerebrate and decorticate postures

Diagnosis
- Elevated serum bilirubin direct and indirect, aminotransferases (do not correlate with the severity of the illness may actually decrease as the patient deteriorates)
- Blood ammonia concentration is usually increased but hepatic coma can occur with normal ammonia level
- PT is always elevated and often does not improve with vitamin K administration
- Hypoglycemia
- Hypokalemia, hyponatremia, and metabolic acidosis or respiratory alkalosis may develop
- Hypophosphatemia is a sign of liver regeneration

Management
- Supportive, e.g., avoid fluid overload, treat hypoglycemia
- Early phosphorus administration are associated with better prognosis
- Vitamin K and plasmapheresis are needed to correct coagulopathy
- Treatment of the cause, e.g., acetaminophen overdose is treated with an antidote for hepatotoxicity (i.e., N-acetylcysteine)
- Management of ICP
- Liver transplantation

Prognosis
- Brain stem herniation is the most common cause of death due to cerebral edema and increased ICP

Portal Hypertension

Background

- Elevation of portal pressure > 10–12 mm Hg
- It is a major cause of morbidity and mortality in children with liver disease
- In children, extrahepatic obstruction due to portal vein thrombosis is the most common cause
- Cavernous transformation (extensive collateral of small blood vessels from paracholedochal and epicholedochal venous system)
- In children with biliary atresia, CF, and other liver diseases, the incidence of intrahepatic obstruction causing portal hypertension is increasing as they survive longer

Clinical presentation

- Bleeding from the esophageal varices is the most common presentation
- Cholestasis and liver dysfunction with elevated serum bili and transaminases may occur in portal vein obstruction

Diagnosis

- US, CT, or MRI

Management

- Endoscopic treatment of esophageal varices and liver transplantation

Suggested Readings

1. Stanton K. Nutrition. In: Maqbool A, Stetter N, Stallings V, editors Nelson text book of pediatrics. 19th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier; 2011. pp. 160–211.
2. Binder HJ. Causes of chronic diarrhea. N Engl J Med. 2006;355:236–9.
3. Fine KD, Schiller LR. AGA technical review on the evaluation and management of chronic diarrhea. Gastroenterology. 1999;116:1464–86.
4. Williams H. Green for danger! Intestinal malrotation and volvulus. Arch Dis Child Ed Pract. 2007;92:ep87–e91.
5. Bundy DG, Byerley JS, Liles EA, Perrin EM, Katznelson J, Rice HE. Does this child have appendicitis? JAMA. 2007;298:438–51.
6. Oettinger R, Brunnberg A, Gerner P, Wintermeyer P, Jenke A, Wirth S. Clinical features and biochemical data of Caucasian children at diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis. J Autoimmun. 2005;24:79–84.

Respiratory Disorders

Karen Hardy and Osama Naga

Diagnostic Testing for Respiratory Conditions

Pulmonary Function Testing (PFT)

- Lung volumes and capacities are defined
  - Four volumesRV residual volume
    - ERV expiratory reserve volume
    - TV tidal volume
    - IRV inspiratory reserve volume
  - Capacities are sums of volumes
    - TLC total lung capacity (all four volumes)
    - IC inspiratory capacity (TV + IRV)
    - FRC functional residual capacity (RV + ERV)
    - VC vital capacity (RV + ERV + TV)
  - Spirometry
    - Forced or slow-maneuver breathing from TLC to RV capturing VC
    - Displays volume exhaled and flow rates for the process
    - Interpreted to show obstruction (low flows), restriction (low volumes) or mixed process (Fig. 1)
    - Measurement of RV
      - Impossible with spirometry
      - Gained by
        - Plethysmography, most accurate
        - Nitrogen wash out, less accurate if obstructive process present

Oximetry

- PaO2—partial pressure of arterial oxygen.
- SpO2—saturation pulse correlated showing percentage of binding sites of hemoglobin with oxygen attached.
- These are related via the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve which is S shaped.
  - Oxygen saturation shifts to the left with alkalosis, hypocarbia and hypothermia, shifting to the right with increased temperature, acidosis, hypercarbia and increased 2,3 DPG. A shift to the left means oxygen binds more avidly to the hemoglobin, to the right less so.
- Oximetry readings are affected by dyes, nail polish, high-intensity light, impaired perfusion, artificial nails, methemoglobin, and carboxyhemoglobin. It is less accurate at low saturations or with motion.
- SpO2 and PaO2 are not equal. It is important to obtain a blood gas to understand acid–base balance and carbon dioxide as well as saturation in sick patients, especially those supported on supplemental oxygen which can improve saturation and falsely reassure a caregiver.

Blood gas analysis

- Capillary blood gas can give representation of arterial sample if heel is adequately warmed and perfusion is excellent.
- Blood gases will be inaccurate if permitted to remain warm outside of the body and delays in reading occur since WBC metabolism will continue consuming oxygen and generating waste products leading to increased acidosis.

Imaging the chest

- Radiation basics

K. Hardy (✉)
Pediatric Pulmonary and Cystic Fibrosis Center, Children's Oakland and California, Pacific Medical Centers, 747 52nd Street, Oakland, CA 94609, USA
e-mail: khardy@mail.cho.org

O. Naga
Pediatric Department, Paul L Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_14,

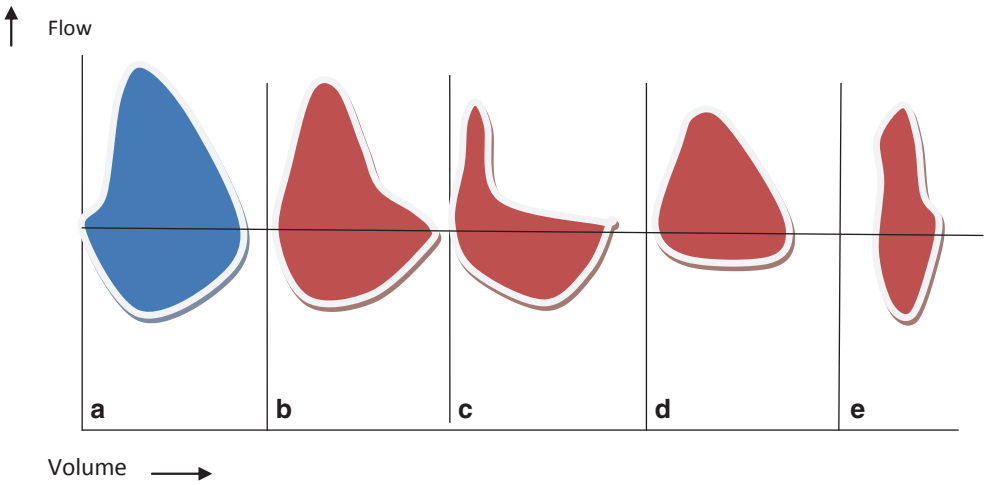


Fig. 1 Flow volume loop configurations in normal and different pulmonary disorders. Loop *above line* is expiratory loop; loop *below line* is inspiratory. **a** Normal, **b** early small airway obstruction, **c** chronic obstructive disease, **d** variable extrathoracic large airway obstruction, e.g., vocal cord pathologies, **e** restrictive diseases

  - mSv is a milliSievert unit which reflects the ionizing radiation from plain films, fluoroscopy, and CT imaging
  - A single chest X-ray (CXR) provides 0.1 mSv = background radiation on the earth in 10 days time
  - A standard helical CT of newborn chest 1.7 mSv to 5.4 mSv in an adult-sized teenager
    - Low-dose protocols can halve these numbers
    - Ultra-low dose protocols are as low as 0.14 mSv and useful for children likely to require multiple CT during a lifetime
- Suggested modalities for various issues
  - Plain CXR: suspected vascular ring, pneumonia
  - Plain expiratory or decubitus views: suspected foreign body
  - Plain decubitus: pleural fluid, pneumothorax
  - Virtual bronchoscopy: persistent anomalies of tracheobronchial tree
  - Ultrasound: pleural effusion, complicated pneumonia
  - CT scan: chest wall structure, lung abscess, airspace disease, bronchiectasis, anterior or middle mediastinal masses, complicated pneumonia, asthma complications
  - PET scan: anterior, middle mediastinal masses
  - MRI: posterior mediastinal mass, pulmonary vascular bed, rings, new programs to better visualize the lung and spare radiation being evaluated

Upper airway obstruction
- Early increase in PCO2 and proportionate decrease in PO2 and responds well to supplemental oxygen initially

Intrapulmonary airway obstruction
- Mild: decrease PCO2, normal to decreased PO2
- Moderate: Normal PCO2, decrease PO2 moving toward failure
- Severe: increase PCO2 and decrease PO2
- Supplemental oxygen will support patient, but imperative to monitor carbon dioxide as well

Alveolar interstitial pathology
- Diffusion defects occur and cause poor transit of oxygen with desaturation first at exercise and then also at rest

R–L shunt
- Early decrease in PO2
- Normal or low PCO2, high PCO2 if fatigue develop
- Testing with 100 % oxygen helps to define this issue
  - Response to supplemental oxygen is fair to poor depending on shunt volume

Stridor

Background
- Stridor is an abnormal, high-pitched sound.
- Produced by turbulent airflow through a partially obstructed airway.
- The timing of the sound can help to localize the narrowing. Because the extrathoracic airway collapses with inspiration any swelling/obstruction in this location will cause inspiratory stridor. Glottic obstruction/right at the cords will produce a to-and-fro noise. Subglottic will produce noise first on exhalation.
- Could be supraglottic, glottic subglottic, and/or trachea.

Differential diagnosis of acute stridor
- *Laryngotracheobronchitis or croup* (see amplified discussion)

- *Foreign body aspiration* (see amplified discussion)
- *Bacterial tracheitis* (see amplified discussion)
- *Retropharyngeal abscess*
  - Children younger than 6 years
  - Abrupt onset of high fevers, difficulty swallowing, refusal to feed, sore throat, hyperextension of the neck, and respiratory distress
- *Peritonsillar abscess*
  - Adolescents and preadolescents
  - Severe throat pain, trismus, and trouble swallowing or speaking
- Spasmodic croup, also termed acute spasmodic laryngitis
  - Occurs most commonly in children aged 1–3 years
  - May be associated with GI reflux
- *Allergic reaction or anaphylaxis*
  - History of allergy
  - Other organ involvement, e.g., itchiness or hives
- *Epiglottitis (see amplified discussion)*

Differential diagnosis of chronic stridor

- *Laryngomalacia*
  - *Background*
    - The most common cause of inspiratory stridor in the neonatal period and early infancy
    - Accounts for up to 75% of all cases of stridor
  - *Clinical presentation*
    - Exacerbated by crying or feeding
    - Placing the patient in a prone position with the head elevated improves the stridor
    - Supine position worsens the stridor
  - *Diagnosis*
    - Flexible laryngoscopy can confirm the diagnosis but may miss tracheal abnormalities
    - If moderate to severe obstruction, difficulty in feeding and breathing, unable to gain weight then use flexible bronchoscopy to r/o other associated airway anomalies
  - *Management*
    - Laryngomalacia is usually benign and self-limiting and improves as the child reaches age 1–2 years
    - Careful observation and growth monitoring for most patients
    - Surgical correction or supraglottoplasty may be considered in severe cases
- *Vocal cord abnormalities*
  - The second most common cause of stridor in infants
  - Unilateral vocal cord paralysis can be congenital or secondary to birth or surgical trauma, such as cardiothoracic surgery.
  - Patients with a unilateral vocal cord paralysis present with a weak cry and biphasic stridor that is louder when awake and improves when lying with the affected side down.
  - Bilateral vocal cord paralysis (BVCP) is a more serious entity and usually present with high-pitched biphasic stridor that may progress to severe respiratory distress.
  - Bilateral vocal cord paralysis can be associated with CNS abnormalities, such as Arnold–Chiari malformation, tumors, or increased intracranial pressure.
  - *Diagnosis:* flexible laryngoscopy, if BVCP get MRI of the head
  - *Management:* pulmonary consultation, if traumatic should improve in 6 months and if has not then unlikely to do so.
  - Bilateral cord paralysis may need tracheostomy
- *Laryngeal webs*
  - Laryngeal webs are caused by an incomplete recanalization of the laryngeal lumen during embryogenesis
  - Weak cry and biphasic stridor
  - Surgery can be curative if significant obstruction occurs
- *Laryngeal hemangiomas*
  - Fifty percent accompanied by cutaneous hemangiomas in the head and neck.
  - Patients usually present with inspiratory or biphasic stridor that may worsen as the hemangioma enlarges.
  - Diagnosis: flexible bronchoscopy or direct exam
  - Treatment: propranolol for months to years by center with expertise (dermatology and pulmonary/ENT)
- *Laryngeal papillomas*
  - Usually secondary to vertical transmission of the human papilloma virus (genital warts) during the birth process.
  - Papillomas are the most common cause of respiratory neoplasm in children
  - HPV 6 and 11 are the most commonly associated with laryngeal disease
  - Sixty percent are born to mother with condyloma accuminata
  - Produce chronic hoarseness in infants
  - Most are solitary and occur in larynx
  - Thirty percent in other areas of respiratory tract
  - *Treatment*
    - Surgical removal is repeatedly required (mean 4× annually)
    - Other therapies, laser, antivirals under evaluation
- *Vocal nodules*
  - They are the most common cause of chronic hoarseness in children
  - Caused by voice abuse or misuse, can be exacerbated by GER
  - Voice rest, therapy or behavioral therapy may be effective
  - Usually resolves by early teen
  - Surgery is rarely required

- *Subglottic stenosis (SGS)*
  - Inspiratory or biphasic stridor
  - Could be congenital subglottic stenosis (rare and usually associated with other genetic syndromes and conditions) or acquired due to airway instrumentation or prolonged intubation (more common)
- *Tracheomalacia*
  - *Background*
    - Expiratory wheezing secondary to airway cartilage floppiness, and airway narrowing/collapse during expiration
    - Can be associated with esophageal atresia or tracheoesophageal fistula
  - *Causes*
    - Congenital
    - Associated with high ventilator pressure during mechanical ventilation in premature infants
  - *Clinical presentation*
    - Expiratory wheezing
    - Honking cough
    - Apnea, cyanosis and hypoxia in severe cases "death spells"
    - Supine position and crying make it worse
    - Prone position makes it better

Cough

Background
- Cough receptors in airway mucosa, most common cause is asthma, also resides in pharynx, paranasal sinus, stomach, and external auditory canal
- Source of cough may need to be sought beyond the lung
- Family history of atopy, allergic rhinitis, asthma or malabsorption

Types of cough and the associations
- Staccato or paroxysmal: pertussis, cystic fibrosis (CF), FB, chlamydia, mycoplasma
- Followed by whoop is pertussis
- All day but never during sleep: psychogenic or habit
- Barking, brassy: croup, psychogenic, tracheomalacia, tracheitis, epiglottitis, and laryngeal involvement
- Abrupt onset: Foreign body aspiration and pulmonary embolism
- Follows exercise: exercise-induced asthma
- Accompanies eating or drinking: aspiration, GERD, tracheoesophageal fistula
- Throat clearing: postnasal drip and habit
- Productive: infection and bronchiectasis
- *Night cough: sinusi*tis and asthma
- Seasonal: asthma and allergic rhinitis
- Immunosuppressed: bacterial pneumonia, PCP, TB, mycobacterium avium intracellulare, and cytomegalovirus
- Failure to thrive: CF
- Dyspnea: hypoxia and hypercarbia
- Animal exposure: *Chlamydia psittaci* (birds), *Yersinia pestis* (rodents), *Francisella tularensis* (rabbits), Q-fever (sheep, cattle), hantavirus (rodents), and histoplasmosis (pigeon)
- Geographic: Histoplasma (Mississippi, Missouri, Ohio River Valley), Coccidioidomycosis (Southwest), and Blastomycosis (North and Midwest)
- Work days only, clearing in off days: occupational
- Any child with *cough > 6 weeks* should be tested for CF

Sputum
- *Very purulent;* bronchiectasis
- *Eosinophilia; asthma*

Combinations of cough
- *Cough–Anemia; hemosiderosis*
- *Cough-Trial of bronchodilator;* diagnostic for asthma if responsive
- *Cough–Ichthyosis*; asthma
- *Cough–Nasal polyp*; CF

Chronic cough > 3 weeks
- Screen: sweat test for CF, spirometry for asthma, complete blood count (CBC) with diff
- Management: based on etiology, use consultants for complicated diagnoses

Clubbing of Digits or Hypertrophic Pulmonary Osteodystrophy

Causes
- The most common cause is cyanotic heart disease
- Most common pulmonary cause is CF, and bronchiectasis
- Biliary cirrhosis
- Infective endocarditis
- Normal variant as familial trait

Diagnosis
- Obliteration of the angle between the proximal nail and soft tissue of the digit
- In normal, person will have diamond-shaped space when placing the distal phalangeal joints in mirror-like fashion

Hemoptysis

Background
- Hemoptysis is coughing blood (hematemesis is vomiting blood)

Differential diagnosis of hemoptysis
- Upper airway (nasopharyngeal bleeding), e.g., epistaxis or nosebleed which is very common
- Gastrointestinal bleeding
- Bronchitis
- Bronchiectasis
- Airway trauma
- Foreign body
- Lung abscess
- Pneumonia, e.g., TB
- Mycetoma or fungal ball
- Idiopathic pulmonary hemosiderosis
- Arteriovenous malformation
- Pulmonary embolism
- Pulmonary endometriosis in female adolescents
- Goodpasture syndrome (GS)
- Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)
- Wegener granulomatosis (WG)
- Churg–Strauss syndrome (CSS)
- Polyarteritis Nodosa

Management
- Examination of the nose and throat (The most common cause of hemoptysis and/or hematemesis in children is epistaxis).
- Rule out infectious causes.
- It is important to obtain a urinalysis and kidney function tests to rule out renal involvement.
- Refer to pulmonologist or Otolaryngology (ENT) depending on the cause.

Croup

Background
- Most common cause is parainfluenza viral infection
- Causes subglottic narrowing
- Common between 3 months and 3 years of age
- Spasmodic croup is similar but without viral prodrome or other identifiable cause

Clinical presentation
- Upper respiratory tract infection (URI) with or without low-grade fever
- Croup can be associated with fever 39–40 °C
- Barking cough
- Brassy cough
- Inspiratory stridor
- Retraction, hypoxia, and respiratory distress in severe cases
- Child may prefer to sit or be held upright

Diagnosis
- It is a clinical diagnosis, and radiograph is not necessary in typical cases.
- Steeple sign on frontal CXR common though occasionally absent.
- Steeple sign can present in normal person as normal variant.
- Mild: no stridor at rest, Moderate: stridor at rest, no agitation, and Severe: persistent stridor, agitation possibly lethargy.

Management
- Reassurance, observation, and adequate hydration always required.
- Dexamethasone, 0.6 mg/kg oral steroid is very beneficial in mild croup (decreasing edema and need for hospitalization).
- Oxygen and racemic epinephrine (1/1000 5 ml or 0.5 ml of 2.25 %) in moderate to severe cases.
- Racemic epinephrine does not cause rebound worsening of obstruction; however, patient may worsen when drug effect subsides thus a 2-h close observation following dosing is important.
- Racemic epinephrine should be used cautiously in patients with left ventricular outlet obstruction.
- Helium–oxygen (Heliox) may be effective in children with severe croup.
- Admit for severe distress, hypoxia, and inability to feed/drink, requiring two or more nebulized racemic epinephrine treatments.
- Consult pediatric pulmonary/ENT if prolonged course (multiple days).
- Endotracheal intubation should not be delayed until patient becomes restless and cyanotic.
- Use endotracheal tube less 0.5–1 mm smaller in size.
- Intubation more likely for bacterial tracheitis and epiglottitis and rare in croup, if intubation is required consider measles or influenza A.

Bacterial Tracheitis

Background
- The most common cause is *Staphylococcus aureus*, , also *Moraxella catarrhalis*, and *Streptococcus bacteria*

- Mean age is 4 years (range 4 weeks to 13 years, typically 2 years)

Clinical presentation
- Brassy and barking cough, similar to croup but the patient has high fever and looks very toxic, with respiratory distress and stridor.
- Patient may lie flat and does not have drooling or dysphagia associated with epiglottitis.
- Rapid progression and purulent secretion to obstruct airway may mandate early endotracheal intubation.
- Failure to respond to racemic epinephrine or corticosteroids.

Management
- Intubation especially younger patients; 50–60% do not need intubation.
- High fever, purulent airway secretions, absence of finding in epiglottitis.
- X-ray is not needed, but may show the classic finding of pseudomembrane detachment in the trachea.
- Humidification and careful suctioning of the ET Tube are important.
- Antistaphylococcal treatment, e.g., nafcillin or vancomycin.
- Prognosis is excellent.
- Complications can include toxic shock, septic shock, pulmonary edema, ARDS, and subglottic stenosis.

Common Cold

General considerations
- Change in color or consistency in nasal secretions is common during the course of illness does not indicate sinusitis.
- Presence of polymorphonuclear leukocytes in nasal secretions does not indicate bacterial superinfection.
- Bacterial culture is indicated only if Group A streptococcus, Bordetella pertussis, or nasal diphtheria is suspected.
- Codeine, dextromethorphan hydrobromide, has no effect on cough from cold.
- Guaifenesin is not an antitussive agent.
- First-generation antihistamine reduces rhinorrhea by 25–30%, via its anticholinergic effect; therefore, using second-generation antihistamine is not helpful.

Conditions that mimic the common cold
- Allergic rhinitis—prominent itching and sneezing, and nasal eosinophils (Nasal smear may be useful if allergic rhinitis is suspected)
- Nasal foreign body—unilateral foul-smelling secretions, and bloody nasal secretions
- Sinusitis—presence of fever, headache, facial pain, periorbital edema, persistence of rhinorrhea > 14 days
- Streptococcosis—nasal discharge that excoriates the nares
- Pertussis—viral prodrome with prolonged persistent staccato cough
- Congenital syphilis—persistent rhinorrhea with onset in the first 3 months of life

Acute Bronchiolitis

Background
- Viral bronchiolitis is the most common lower respiratory tract infection in infants and children who are 2 years of age and younger.
- Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) responsible for more than 50% of acute bronchiolitis.
- Other causes: human metapneumovirus, parainfluenza virus, adenovirus, influenza, rhinovirus, and mycoplasma.

Risk factors for persistent wheezing include:
- Maternal asthma
- Maternal smoking
- Persistent rhinitis
- Eczema at < 1 year of age

Clinical presentation
- Nasal congestion, rhinorrhea, and cough.
- Tachypnea or elevated respiratory rate is the earliest and most sensitive vital sign change.
- Nasal flaring; grunting; and suprasternal, intercostal, and subcostal retractions demonstrate increased respiratory effort.
- Nasal suctioning and repositioning may allow a more accurate assessment of lower respiratory tract involvement.
- Crackles, wheezes, and referred upper airway noise are commonly auscultated sounds.
- Apnea may be prominent than wheezing early in very young infants < 2 months or former premature infants.
- Bronchiolitis can range from mild tachypnea to impending respiratory failure.
- Patients can be expected to have worsening clinical symptoms, with peak symptomatology around day 3–4 of illness "Day of illness".
- "Day of illness" is an important variable in providing anticipatory guidance for outpatient management and in making decisions regarding admission and discharge of patients.

Diagnosis
- Clinical features lead to diagnosis; subsequent evaluation important to determine treatment.
- Initial step is an evaluation of respiratory rate and oxygen saturation.
- CXR is warranted for any infants with respiratory distress.
- Common radiological findings include hyperinflation, areas of atelectasis, and infiltrates.
- Because of the risk of serious bacterial infection (SBI) among infants 30 days of age or younger, they should receive conservative management for fever, including full evaluation for SBI and administration of empiric antibiotics.
- Recognition that infants older than 30 days who have clinical bronchiolitis are at a lower risk for SBIs may allow for decreased invasive testing and observation without administering antibiotics to patients who have classic presentations.
- Hyperinflation and atelectasis are common in acute bronchiolitis.

Management
- Respiratory rate, work of breathing, and hypoxia are the most clinically significant parameters in determining illness severity and should be assessed routinely in all patients who have bronchiolitis.
- Mainstay of treatment is supportive, oxygen if hypoxia, hydration, frequent nasal suctioning, position to elevate chest 30°.
- Oxygen should be discontinued once pulse oximetry saturations rise to between 90 and 92% for most of the time and the patient is demonstrating overall clinical improvement, as evidenced by adequate feeding and improved work of breathing.
- Infants with respiratory distress and desaturation or dehydration should be hospitalized.
- The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) does not recommend the use of bronchodilators or systemic steroids in the routine treatment of bronchiolitis.
- Those with recurrent wheezing may respond to bronchodilator therapy.
- Corticosteroid medications, inhaled or administered systemically, should not be used in the treatment of bronchiolitis.
- If bronchodilator makes the wheezing worse discontinue and consider pulmonary consultation for tracheo or bronchomalacia.
- Sweat chloride test for patient with recurrent wheezing and resistant to treatment.
- Ribavirin should not be used routinely in the treatment of bronchiolitis.

Prevention
- Synagis 15 mg/kg IM for prematures and high-risk infants as monthly IM monoclonal antibody injection.
- Hand washing is the best measure to prevent nosocomial infection.

Asthma

Background
- Once asthma has been diagnosed, the physician should determine the degree of severity in the individual patient.
- Severity is determined best at the time of diagnosis, before initiation of therapy.

Four categories of asthma severity
- Intermittent
- Mild persistent
- Moderate persistent
- Severe persistent

Major risk factors
- Parental history of asthma
- Atopic dermatitis
- Sensitization to aeroallergens

Minor risk factors
- Sensitization to foods
- More than 4% eosinophilia
- Wheezing apart from colds

Triggers
- Respiratory infections (most common trigger).
- Allergens, airway irritants (e.g., environmental tobacco smoke and air pollution), exercise.
- Medications (e.g., nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medications and beta blockers).
- Exposure to environmental tobacco smoke.
- Common indoor allergens include house dust mite, cockroach allergen, animal dander, and molds.
- Prick skin testing or blood testing (allergen-specific immunoglobulin E [IgE] concentrations) to detect sensitization to common indoor allergens should be considered for any child experiencing persistent asthma.

Clinical presentation
- *Wheezing*
  - A musical, high-pitched whistling sound produced by airflow turbulence.
  - It is one of the most common symptoms of asthma.

Table 1 Asthma—differential diagnosis

Red flag	Possible diagnosis
Sudden onset of symptoms	Foreign body aspiration
Coughing and choking when eating or drinking	Oropharyngeal dysphagia with aspiration
Poor growth and low BMI	Cystic fibrosis, immunodeficiency
Family history of males infertility	Cystic fibrosis, immotile cilia syndrome
Chronic rhinorrhea, recurrent sinusitis	Cystic fibrosis, immotile cilia syndrome
Acute onset without history of asthma in teenagers	Vocal cord dysfunction
Chronic wet productive cough	Bronchiectasis
Recurrent pneumonia	Immunodeficiency

- *Cough*
  - Usually nonproductive and nonparoxysmal.
  - Coughing may be present with or without wheezing.
- *Cough at night or with exercise*
  - Coughing may be the only symptom of asthma, especially in cases of exercise-induced or nocturnal asthma.
  - Children with nocturnal asthma tend to cough after midnight, during the early hours of morning.
- *Chest tightness*
  - Chest tightness or pain in the chest may be present with or without other symptoms of asthma, especially in exercise-induced or nocturnal asthma.
- *Shortness of breath*
- *Sputum production*
- *Infants and young children suffering a severe episode of asthma may present with:*
  - Breathless during rest
  - Not interested in feeding
  - Sit upright
  - If able to talk using words (not sentences)
  - Usually agitated
- *Physical finding:*
  - Respiratory rate is often greater than 30 breaths/min.
  - Accessory muscles of respiration are usually used.
  - Suprasternal retractions are commonly present.
  - The heart rate is greater than 120 beats/min.
  - Loud biphasic (expiratory and inspiratory) wheezing can be heard.
  - Pulsus paradoxus is often present (20–40 mmHg).
  - Oxyhemoglobin saturation with room air is less than 91%.
- *Findings in status asthmaticus with imminent respiratory arrest include the following:*
  - Paradoxical thoracoabdominal movement occurs.
  - Wheezing may be absent (in patients with the most severe airway obstruction).
  - Severe hypoxemia may manifest as bradycardia.
  - Pulsus Paradoxus may disappear: This finding suggests respiratory muscle fatigue.
  - Child may become worse, drowsy, and confused.
  - Adolescents may not have these symptoms until they are in frank respiratory failure.

Diagnosis

- *Pulmonary function tests*:
  - Spirometry: obstructive pattern with response to bronchodilators. Plethysmography: may have air trapping with increased RV/TLC ratio
- *Exercise challenge*
  - Involves baseline spirometry followed by exercise on a treadmill
  - Bicycle to a heart rate greater than 60% of the predicted maximum, with monitoring of the electrocardiogram and oxyhemoglobin saturation
  - Repeat spirometry documenting drop in airflow rates
- *Radiography*
  - May reveal hyperinflation and increased bronchial markings; radiography may also show evidence of parenchymal disease, atelectasis, pneumonia, congenital anomaly, or a foreign body
- *Allergy testing:*
  - Can identify allergic factors that may significantly contribute to asthma

Exercise-induced asthma

- Shortness of breath along with coughing or wheezing during physical exertion can be a symptom of poorly controlled asthma.
- Some patients experience symptoms associated with bronchoconstriction only with exercise and otherwise have no history consistent with asthma.
- Symptoms typically start within few minutes of initiation of vigorous exercise and subside within 20–30 min, although they can last up to 90 min when left untreated.
- Usually self-limited but rare cases of severe attacks and even death have been reported.
- Depending on the age and cognitive ability of the child it may be difficult to obtain spirometry data and the diagnosis largely based on clinical presentation and response to therapy.
- Differential diagnosis of asthma (Table 1)

Table 2 Severity and initiating treatment: children 0–4 years

Severity category	Days and night with symptoms	Interference with normal activity	Preferred treatment
Intermittent	≤2 days/week (days) 0 night/month (nights)	None	Step1: SABA as needed (PRN)
Mild persistent	3–6 days/week (days) 1–2 nights/month (nights)	Minor limitation	Step 2: Low-dose ICS
Moderate persistent	Daily (days) 3–4 nights/month (nights)	Some limitation	Step 3: Medium-dose ICS and consider short-course OCS
Severe persistent	Throughout (days) >1 night/week (nights)	Extremely limited	Step 3: Medium-dose ICS and consider short-course OCS

OCS oral corticosteroids, *LABA* long-acting beta2 agonist, *SABA* short-acting beta2 agonist, *FEV1* forced expiratory volume in 1 s, *FVC* forced vital capacity, *ICS* inhaled corticosteroid

Table 3 Severity and initiating treatment: children 5–11 years

Severity category	Days and night with symptoms	Pulmonary function	Preferred treatment
Intermittent	≤ 2 days/week (days) ≤ 2 nights/month (nights)	FEV_1: >80% FEV_1/FVC: >85%	Step1: SABA PRN
Mild persistent	3–6 days/week (days) 3–4 nights/month (nights)	FEV_1: >80% FEV_1/FVC: >80%	Step 2: Low-dose ICS
Moderate persistent	Daily (days) >1 night/week (nights)	FEV_1: 60–80% FEV_1/FVC: 75–80%	Step 3: Medium-dose ICS and consider short-course OCS
Severe persistent	Throughout (days) Often (nights)	FEV_1: <60% FEV_1/FVC: <75%	Step 4: Medium-dose ICS + LABA and consider short-course OCS

OCS oral corticosteroids, *LABA* long-acting beta2 agonist, *SABA* short-acting beta2 agonist, *FEV1* forced expiratory volume in 1 s, *FVC* forced vital capacity, *ICS* inhaled corticosteroid

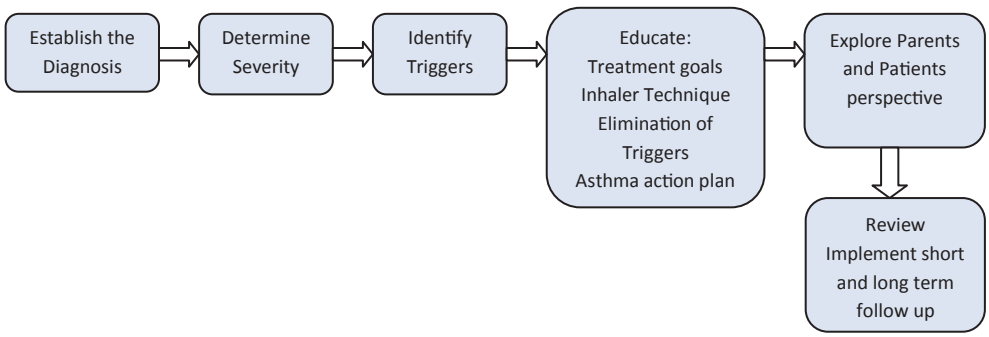


Fig. 2 Initial evaluation of asthma. (Adapted with modification from the National Asthma Education and Prevention Program Asthma care)

Management of exercise-induced asthma

- Warm-up exercise before vigorous exercise.
- Premedication 15 min before exercise with a SABA is typical the first line.
- Addition of controller medication (ICSs or leukotriene) if premedication is not sufficient to alleviate asthma symptoms or if the patients needs it more than once per day.
- Mast cell-stabilizing agents could be considered before exercise in poorly controlled cases.
- LABAs are not recommended.

Management of Asthma (Tables 2–4)

- Assessment and monitoring: in order to assess asthma control and adjust therapy, impairment and risk must be assessed; because asthma varies over time, follow-up every 2–6 weeks is initially necessary (when gaining control of the disease), and then every 1–6 months thereafter.
- Education: self-management education should focus on teaching patients the importance of recognizing their own level of control and signs of progressively worsening asthma symptoms.
- Educational strategies should also focus on environmental control and avoidance strategies, as well as on medication use and adherence (e.g., correct inhaler techniques and use of other devices) (Fig. 2).
- Control of environmental factors and comorbid conditions.
- Long-term control medications depend on severity of asthma.

Table 4 Severity and initiating treatment: children 12 years of age and older

Severity category	Days and night with symptoms	Pulmonary function	Preferred treatment
Intermittent	≤2 days/week (days) ≤2 night/month (nights)	FEV_1: >80% FEV_1/FVC: Normal	Step1: SABA PRN
Mild persistent	3–6 days/week (days) 3–4 nights/month (nights)	FEV_1: >80% FEV_1/FVC: Normal	Step 2: Low-dose ICS
Moderate persistent	Daily (days) 2–6 nights/week (nights)	FEV_1: 60–80% FEV_1/FVC: Reduced 5%	Step 3: Medium-dose ICS + LABA or Medium-dose ICS and consider short-course OCS
Severe persistent	Throughout (days) Often, 7 times/week (nights)	FEV_1: <60% FEV_1/FVC: Reduced >5%	Step 5: High-dose ICS + LABA and consider short-course OCS Step 4: Medium-dose ICS + LABA and consider short-course OCS

OCS oral corticosteroids, *LABA* long-acting beta2 agonist, *SABA* short-acting beta2 agonist, *FEV1* forced expiratory volume in 1 s, *FVC* forced vital capacity, *ICS* inhaled corticosteroid. Tables 2–4 are adapted from the National Asthma Education and Prevention Program. *Expert Panel Report 3: Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma,* 2007.

Asthma Medications

β2-Agonists

- Relieve the constriction by binding to specific receptors on airway smooth muscles cells.
- SABAs such as albuterol have rapid onset of action: within 15 min and relatively short duration of action approximately 3–4 h.
- LABAs effect can last up to 12 h.
- Use of LABAs alone is not recommended and put the patient at risk for sudden and life threatening asthma exacerbation.
- Frequent use of β2-agonists indicates poor asthma control.
- Potential adverse effects
  - Agitation, irritability, tremors.
  - Insomnia, tachycardia, arrhythmia, and agitation.
  - Hypokalemia.
  - Patients with diabetes mellitus are at risk of hypoglycemia.

Inhaled Corticosteroids

- Inhaled corticosteroids are the most commonly prescribed maintenance therapy for asthma.
- They effectively decrease airway inflammation, decrease bronchial hypersensitiveness, relieve asthma symptoms, and improve lung function.
- Slowing growth and adrenal suppression is a risk in the patients who require high-dose ICSs.
- To minimize the risk of adverse effects, eliminate triggers that contribute to airway inflammation.
- Adverse effects
  - Oral thrush
  - Oral deposition and absorption of drug
    - Rinse the mouth after taking the medication.
    - Use metered dose inhaler.

Leukotriene Antagonists

- They block inflammatory pathways that are active in the disease.
- Most commonly used in children younger than 12 years is montelukast.
- It is usually well tolerated.
- Montelukast frequently used as add-on therapy in addition to ICSs.
- Can be beneficial in patients with comorbid allergic rhinitis, recurrent viral-induced asthma exacerbation, and children with exercise-induced asthma.

Prognosis of Asthma

- Children at significant risk of having asthma symptoms later in life
  - Children with early onset asthma <3 years of age:
    - Who had three or more episode of wheezing per year and at least one major criterion (Eczema or parental eczema).
    - Or at least two minor criteria (allergic rhinitis, wheezing unrelated to colds, or blood eosinophil count >4%).

Pneumonia

Definition

- Infection of lung parenchyma

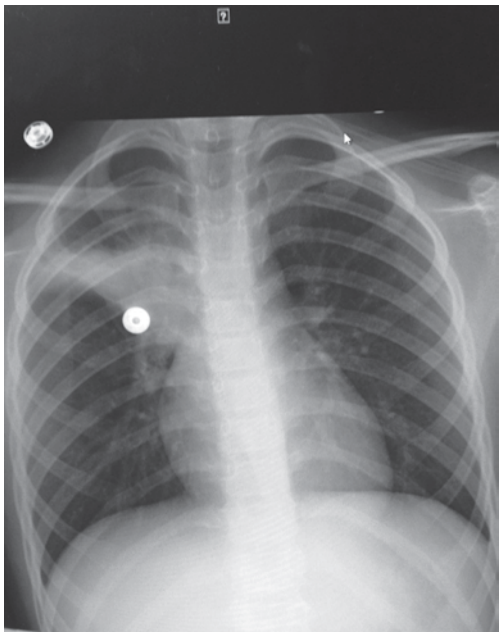


Fig. 3 Nine-year-old female presents with cough and fever. Chest X-ray shows right upper lobe infiltrate

Causes of Pneumonia in Typical Age Groupings:

Three Weeks to Three Months

- *Chlamydia trachomatis*
  - Interstitial infiltrate on chest radiograph
- Respiratory syncytial virus
  - Bronchiolitis or pneumonia
- Parainfluenza
  - Bronchiolitis or pneumonia
- *Streptococcus pneumoniae*
  - Major cause of pneumonia throughout childhood
- *Bordetella pertussis*
  - Tracheobronchitis with severe paroxysm, usually no fever
  - Pneumonia may occur secondary to aspiration

Three Months to Four Years

- RSV, parainfluenza, human metapneumovirus, influenza, and rhinovirus
  - Most toddler pneumonia is viral
- *Streptococcus pneumonia*
  - Major treatable pathogen in this age group
- *Mycoplasma pneumonia*
  - Increased incidence in children approaching school age

Five Years Through Adolescence

- *M. pneumonia*
- *Chlamydophila pneumoniae*
  - Similar clinical presentation to mycoplasma
- *S. pneumoniae*
- *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*

Pneumonia Pathogens by Geographic Tropism

- Histoplasmosis
  - Ohio and Mississippi River Valleys and Caribbean
- Coccidioidomycosis
  - California, Arizona, and New Mexico
- Blastomycosis
  - Ohio, Mississippi River Valleys; Great salt lakes states
- Legionella
  - Infected water worldwide
- Severe acute respiratory syndrome
  - Asia
- Avian influenza
  - Southeast Asia

Pneumonia via Animal Vectors

- Tularemia
  - Rabbits and ticks
- Psittacosis
  - Birds specially parakeets
- Q fever
  - Sheep, cow, and goats

Pneumonia with Associated Exanthems

- Varicella
  - Human-to-human spread via airborne droplets nuclei
- Measles
  - Human-to-human spread via droplet

Clinical presentation

- The hallmark symptoms of pneumonia are fever and cough.
- Most of the children with fever and cough do not have pneumonia.
- Tachypnea, retractions (intercostal, subcostal, suprasternal), wheezing, nasal flaring, and grunting, apnea and abdominal pain should be noted.
- Grunting, in particular, may be a sign of pneumonia as well as of impending respiratory failure in younger patients/infants.
- *Tachypnea* is the most sensitive and specific sign of pneumonia. Know the World Health Organization (WHO) Criteria as follows.
  - >50 breaths/min at 2–12 months of age.
  - >40 breaths/min at 1–5 years
  - >20 breaths/min for those older than 5 years
  - Subtracting 10 if the child is febrile
- Dullness to percussion, crackles, decreased breath sounds, and bronchial breath.

- Absence of fever, tachypnea, increased work of breathing, and auscultatory abnormalities, bacterial pneumonia is unlikely.

Diagnosis
- Typically clinical due to above.
- Rapid influenza test may help to identify the cause of fever and to reduce the subsequent use of antibacterial agents.
- CBC, chemistries, or serology will not help to identify the cause or aid in management.
- Blood culture rarely helpful (10% of the time organism are recovered).
- Erythrocyte sedimentation rate and C-reactive protein determinations may be elevated.
- Chest X-ray (Fig. 3)
  - A chest radiograph will not change clinical management for most children who are being treated as outpatients.
  - Afebrile children normally do not require chest radiography.
  - Image if complicated pneumonia is considered, fever is prolonged and no obvious source of infection.
  - Abdominal pain with normal appendix.
  - CXR always lag the clinical response, no need to repeat CXR to confirm the response to antibiotics, only if deterioration.
- A tuberculin skin test, if there is a risk factor or TB is considered.

Treatment
- Community acquired pneumonia (CAP) and national guideline for antibiotic indication
- High dose of Amoxicillin, 80–90 mg/kg/day, for uncomplicated cases as outpatient
- Augmentin if resistance or oral cefuroxime as outpatient
- School age or older >5 year Azithromycin to cover for mycoplasma
- Indication for hospitalization: suspected sepsis, severe dehydration, toxic appearing, hypoxemia (under 90%), unresponsive to outpatient therapy, inability to drink
  - Administer IV fluids, oxygen, and antibiotics.
  - Consider blood cultures, chemistry profiles, CBC, and chest radiography.
  - If inpatient cefuroxime, ceftriaxone or cefotaxime are the drug of choice.
  - In adolescent levofloxacin, gatifloxacin, moxifloxacin, may be used in atypical pneumonia.
  - If *Staphylococcus* infection is considered add clindamycin or vancomycin.
  - Uncomplicated pneumonia responds to antibiotics within 48–96 h.
  - *Plan if no response or persistent pneumonia; repeat CXR,* consider the following; empyema, bacterial resistance, tuberculosis, non bacterial etiology, foreign body, bronchial obstruction, preexisting disease, CF, pulmonary sequestration, bronchiolitis obliterans, aspiration, and hypersensitivity pneumonitis.

Pleural Effusion

Background
- Normal fluid balance
  - 0.1–0.2 ml/kg of sterile colorless fluid
  - Ninety percent filters from arterial capillaries, reabsorbed at venous capillaries
  - About 10% returned via lymphatic channels

- Effusions
  - >10 ml of fluid in thoracic cavity
  - Due to excessive filtration or defective absorption
  - Transudates: low protein, lactate dehydrogenase (LDH),
  - Exudates:
    - Pleural fluid-to-serum protein ratio is 0.5 or greater,
    - Pleural fluid-to-serum LDH ratio is more than 0.6,
    - Pleural fluid LDH concentration is more than 66% of the upper limit of normal for serum

Clinical presentation
- Should be suspected in any child with worsening pneumonia
- Respiratory distress, tachypnea, pain with pleural inflammation, cough
- Decreased to absent breath sounds, pleural rub if smaller collection of fluid
- Egophony
- Dullness to percussion
- Midline shift

Diagnosis and management
- CXR: opacification of the thorax, blunted costophrenic angle.
- Decubitus views helpful if fluid is free flowing.
- Ultrasound is helpful to determine the presence or absence of loculations.
- CT scan is helpful to define pulmonary and fluid characteristics for complicated effusions/empyemas
- Thoracentesis is helpful to relieve dyspnea for large effusions and determine characteristics of the fluid for treatment of underlying cause.
- Oxygen for hypoxemia.
- Consultation with experts as needed.

- Possible causes: infection, chyle, blood, malignancy, and drug exposures.
- In the neonatal period, chylothorax is the most frequent type of pleural effusion.

Pneumothorax

Causes

- *Primary spontaneous pneumothorax*
  - Occurs without trauma or underlying cause
  - More frequently in tall, thin male, thought to have subpleural bleb
  - Family history is positive in many patients
- *Secondary pneumothorax*
  - Underlying lung disease
  - Trauma
  - Loud music (air pressure)
  - Catamenial pneumothorax (unusual condition associated with menses due to passage of intra abdominal air through a diaphragmatic defect)

Clinical presentation

- The onset is abrupt, and the severity depends on lung collapse.
- In simple pneumothorax, the lung collapses up to 30%.
- In tension pneumothorax, the patient will be hypoxemic dyspneic, and cyanotic.
- PMI shifts due to displacement of intrathoracic organs to opposite side.

Diagnosis

- CXR.
- Expiratory film accentuates the contrast between lung marking and the clear area of pneumothorax.

Treatment

- A small pneumothorax < 5% may resolve spontaneously.
- If > 5% of pneumothorax or collapse, or if pneumothorax is recurrent or under tension, chest tube drainage is necessary.
- Pneumothoraces complicating CF frequently recur and definitive treatment may be justified with the first episode.
- Sclerosing with doxycycline (chemical pleurodesis).
- Video assisted thoracic surgery is preferred therapy for blebectomy, pleural stripping, pleural brushing, and instillation of sclerosing agents over open thoracotomy.
- Extensive pleural adhesion and aggressive pleural stripping may interfere with lung transplant in the future; these options must be discussed with the family.

Aspiration Syndrome

General issues

- Small volume > 0.8 ml/kg *and/or* PH < 2.5 can cause hemorrhagic pneumonitis and atelectasis; large volume can cause pulmonary edema.
- Most clinical changes appear within minutes to 1–2 h after aspiration event, radiographic change/infiltrate within 1–2 days unless large volume.

Management

- Immediate suctioning of airway (do not attempt to neutralize acid).
- Image chest.
- Intubation and mechanical ventilation in severe cases.
- Antibiotics may be used to cover anaerobes if definitive aspiration and usually only if admitted.
- If the CXR is clear and patient is asymptomatic can be observed in the hospital or the office for few hours then home observation.
- *Most dangerous is hydrocarbon:* patient may deteriorate impressively though may be minimally or asymptomatic initially. Prolonged observation (minimum 8 h) in setting able to manage respiratory failure is optimal.
- Gastric emptying is contraindicated in hydrocarbon aspiration.

Foreign Body Aspiration

Background

- Nuts especially peanuts are one 1/3 of cases.
- Round globular FB, e.g., hotdog, grape, nuts, and candies are the most frequent offender to cause complete obstruction. Hotdogs are rarely seen as airway FB, because most of victims asphyxiate on the scene unless treated immediately.
- Age < 3 years of age.

Clinical presentation

- Initial event: violent paroxysms of coughing, choking, gagging, possible airway obstruction if the FB aspirated.
- Asymptomatic interval: FB become lodged, reflexes fatigue, the immediate irritation subsides; this stage is the most dangerous, and account for most of delayed diagnosis, during the second stage (asymptomatic interval) that the physician may minimize the possibility of an FB accident, being reassured by absence of symptoms that no FB is present.
- Positive history must never be ignored.

- Negative history may be misleading.
- Choking or coughing episode accompanied by wheezing are highly suggestive FB in airway
- Physician should question parents about nuts, small toys, or anything similar.
- 58% lodge in the right bronchus.

Diagnosis
- CXR is negative in 10–30% of cases.
- Patients suspected of having airway foreign bodies should undergo chest radiography.
- The lack of radiological findings can never be used to exclude an airway foreign body; most objects are organic and likely to be radiolucent.
- Positive findings on radiography can include hyperinflation, atelectasis, or infiltrate.
- Inspiratory/expiratory or decubitus films may be helpful, although reports of sensitivity and specificity vary.
- Soft-tissue films of the neck can be beneficial for detecting objects in the upper airway.
- Patients with tracheostomy are at a higher risk.

Management
- Treatment of choice prompt removal with rigid bronchoscopy.
- Bronchoscopy can be deferred until proper hydration, emptying the stomach.

Complications
- Retained foreign body is associated with bronchiectasis, hemoptysis and lung abscess.

Pulmonary Abscess

Background
- Cystic area due to necrotic lung tissue at least 2 cm in diameter.
- Primarily due to aspiration or infection.
- Secondarily related to predisposing condition cavitary lesion, dysphagia, developmental delays and poor airway protective reflexes and/or poor airway clearance from neuromuscular weakness.
- Both aerobic and anaerobic are common causes.
- Anaerobic, e.g., *bacteroides, fusobacterium,* and aerobic *Staphylococcus aureus.*

Clinical presentation
- Fever
- Cough
- Sputum production
- Hemoptysis
- Vomiting
- Tachypnea
- Chest pain
- Weight loss

Diagnosis
- CXR; air fluid level and CT scan can provide a better anatomic definition

Management
- Conservative treatment with antimicrobial is recommended in hospital.
- Clindamycin is a good choice until culture and sensitivity is available for immunocompetent hosts, broad spectrum coverage for immunodeficient patients.
- 2–3 weeks IV antibiotics.
- Followed by oral course for 4–6 weeks.
- Prognosis is excellent.

Congenital Pulmonary Malformations

Sequestration
- *Extralobar:* more common in males; 65% in the left lung, covered by pleura, fed by systemic artery and drained via systemic vein, may be associated with diaphragmatic hernia and colonic duplication.
- *Intralobar:* typical in the lower lobe, systemic arterial supply, variable venous drainage, and airway connections.
- Dullness on percussion, decreased breath sounds over the lesion, continuous murmur may be heard on the back, crackles if infected.
- Imaging may detect pulmonary mass effect on fetal ultrasound or following birth.
- CT scan with contrast will confirm the diagnosis.
- Treatment is often surgical removal.
- Retained sequestrations may become malignant.
- Consultations: pulmonology and surgery.

Bronchogenic cyst
- Arise from abnormal budding of the tracheal diverticulum.
- Patient may become symptomatic if the cyst enlarges or becomes infected.
- May be asymptomatic and found accidentally.
- Fever, chest pain, and productive cough are the most common presenting symptoms, dysphagia if causing pressure on the surrounding structures.
- CXR can show the cyst, and CT or MRI to demonstrate the anatomy.

- Treatment is surgical removal.

Vascular ring/sling
- May involve airway and or esophagus
- Variable severity and timing of presentation
- May cause stridor, cough, apnea, and dysphagia
- Imaging chest is helpful, more common with right aortic arch

Congenital pulmonary adenomatoid malformation, lobar emphysema, and diaphragmatic hernia
- Least common
- May be seen on fetal imaging (U/S) and then resolve spontaneously
- May cause severe respiratory distress and require surgery
- Consult pulmonology

Primary Ciliary Dyskinesia (PCD)

Background
- PCD is an autosomal recessive disease with extensive genetic heterogeneity.
- Sixty percent of patients have identifiable mutations documented.
- Abnormal ciliary motion and impaired mucociliary clearance.
- Ultrastructural and functional defects of cilia result in the lack of effective ciliary motility.
- In 50 % of the patients, PCD is associated with partial or complete Situs inversus.
- Male infertility.
- Some patients have asplenia or polysplenia with immune dysfunction.

Clinical presentation
- Hundred percent of children have productive cough, sinusitis, and otitis media.
- Chronic or recurring upper and lower respiratory infection.
- Recurrent otitis media, otorrhea, may begin in neonates.
- Lower lobe bronchiectasis, and frequent wheezing and diagnosed as asthma.

Diagnosis
- *The gold standard* test is documentation of abnormal cilia ultrastructure (absent, abnormal dynein arms, radial spokes, doublet arrangements) on nasal and bronchial biopsies or scraping viewed on electron microscope.
- Specimen should not be obtained during acute respiratory infection.
- CT scan:
  - Involvement of paranasal sinuses.
  - Bronchiectasis.
- Children should be examined several times per year.
- Survival much longer than CF.

Treatment
- ACT, antibiotics for infection documented on culture with sensitivities
- ENT or surgery consult if needed

Bronchiectasis

Background
- Destruction of the airway wall (bronchi and bronchioles).
- Loss of integrity of the muscular and elastic layers of the bronchial wall results in a dilated and an easily collapsible airway.
- Obstructed sections of the bronchial tree.

Causes
- CF is the most common cause of bronchiectasis in the children of the USA.
- Impaired mucociliary clearance (CF and ciliary dyskinesia).
- Infections (especially M Tb, Pseudomonas, adenovirus).
- Immunodeficiency syndromes (humoral and cellular).
- Immune mediated (connective tissues diseases, ABPA, IBD).
- Airway injury (aspiration, inhalation of toxic fumes, hot gases).
- Congenital or connective tissues abnormalities (yellow nail, Marfan, alpha 1 antitrypsin deficiency, airway cartilage deficiency, tracheobronchomegaly, young syndrome).
- Obstructed airways (retained foreign body, intraluminal masses, and extraluminal compression).

Clinical presentation
- Productive cough is the most common symptom of bronchiectasis.
- Dyspnea, rhinosinusitis, and hemoptysis are less common.
- Crackles, wheezing, and rhonchi; digital clubbing may also be present.

Diagnosis
- Pulmonary function testing may show obstruction, restriction, and combinations depending on etiology.
- Chest radiograph may reveal airway dilation, increased pulmonary markings with tram tracking (thickening of the bronchial walls), and areas of atelectasis.

- (High resolution) HRCT scan is the gold standard for diagnosis and reveals detailed anatomy of the bronchial tree.
- Lack of airway tapering with luminal dilation, bronchial wall thickening, honeycombing, and mucus plugging.

Treatment and prognosis
- Establishing the primary cause is of critical importance and is best undertaken with direction from a pediatric pulmonologist.
- Mucus clearance may be enhanced with hypertonic saline nebulization, inhaled mucolytics, and chest physiotherapy.
- Inhaled corticosteroids can reduce airway obstruction.
- Chronic macrolide therapy has also been found to be beneficial as anti-inflammatory.
- Aggressive treatment of pseudomonal and Staphylococcal infections is indicated, but antimicrobial therapy should be targeted to specific pathogens.
- Lobectomy is a last resort in refractory cases without systemic etiology.

Bronchopulmonary Dysplasia

Background
- Recognized since 1960 following invention of positive pressure ventilation for premature infants and their survival.
- "Old BPD" in late preterm infants with aggressive ventilation causing significant cystic disease.
- "New BPD" is a chronic lung disease of extreme prematurity; lung immaturity typically associated with prolonged ventilation.

Pathophysiology
- Volutrauma and barotrauma from positive pressure ventilation
- Premature or immature lung
- Inflammatory response to lung injury
  - Chorioamnionitis and ureaplasma associated with increased incidence of BPD
- Postnatal infection and poor nutrition increase risk
- Severity determined by two factors:
  - Oxygen requirement at 36 weeks postnatal age or home discharge if under 32 weeks at birth
  - Oxygen requirement by 56 days postnatal age or home discharge if over 32 weeks at birth

Clinical presentation
- Increased lung fluid, often need diuretics
- Diffuse inflammation
- Areas of atelectasis and hyperexpansion, retractions, respiratory distress evident on exam
- Simplified lung and pulmonary vessel architecture
- Often require prolonged supplemental oxygen

Management
- Prevent premature deliveries
  - Good prenatal care
  - No smoking
- Manage newborns wisely
  - Give surfactant
  - Ventilate gently, permit hypercapnia
  - Avoid fluid retention and treat if occurs
  - Nourish appropriately
  - Manage oxygenation to preserve function but prevent retinopathy
  - Monitor for complications, PDA, pulmonary hypertension, GERD, etc.

Pulmonary Hemosiderosis

Background
- Repeated episodes of intra-alveolar bleeding that lead to abnormal accumulation of iron as hemosiderin in alveolar macrophages.
- Subsequent development of pulmonary fibrosis and severe anemia.

Causes and associated conditions
- Idiopathic pulmonary alveolar hemosiderosis (IPH)
- Secondary pulmonary hemosiderosis
  - Cardiovascular:
  - Congestive heart failure
  - Pulmonary hypertension
  - Mitral valve stenosis
  - Inflammatory/autoimmune
  - Goodpasture syndrome
  - Rheumatoid arthritis
  - Wegener granulomatosis
  - HSP
  - Allergic
  - Heiner syndrome (cow's milk hypersensitivity)

Clinical presentation
- Iron deficiency.
- Hemoptysis (helpful if occurs).
- Alveolar infiltrate.
- Presence of hemosiderin, it takes 48–72 h for macrophages to convert erythrocyte to hemosiderin
- Widely variable from asymptomatic to shock and sudden death.

- After episode of hemorrhage, the patient will present with wheezing, cough, dyspnea, bronchospasm, and alteration of blood gases.

Diagnosis
- Best guided by consulting pulmonologist
- Recurrent "pneumonia" fever, cough, abnormal chest radiograph
- Hypochromic microcytic anemia
- Elevation of plasma bilirubin
- Infiltrate typically bilateral, and may spare the apices, often with hyperaeration
- Ig E, cow's milk antibody levels, stool specimen for heme
- Urinalysis for nephritis
- ANCA, ANA, Anti-GBM
- Lung biopsy if diffuse alveolar hemorrhage (DAH)

Supportive treatment
- Corticosteroid is the treatment of choice for IPH.
- Highly dependent on the underlying cause.

Sarcoidosis

Background
- Sarcoidosis is a noncaseating granuloma multisystem disease.
- More common in African Americans.

Clinical presentation
- Approximately 5% of cases are asymptomatic and incidentally detected by chest radiography.
- Systemic complaints (fever, anorexia): 45% of cases.
- Dyspnea on exertion, cough, chest pain, and hemoptysis (rare)—occur in 50% of cases.
- Crackles may be audible.
- Anterior or posterior granulomatous uveitis (most frequent).
- Erythema nodosum.

Diagnosis
- *Chest radiography* is bilateral hilar or mediastinal adenopathy
  - Stage 0: normal chest radiographic findings
  - Stage I: bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy
  - Stage II: bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy and infiltrates
  - Stage III: infiltrates alone
  - Stage IV: fibrosis
- *PFTs* may either be normal or show restrictive +/− obstructive mechanics.
- Hypercalcemia (about 10–13% of patients)
- Hypercalciuria (about one third of patients)
- Elevated alkaline phosphatase level
- Elevated angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) levels

Management
- Asymptomatic patients may not require treatment.
- In patients with minimal symptoms, serial reevaluation is prudent.
- Treatment is indicated for patients with significant respiratory symptoms.
- Corticosteroids can produce small improvements in the functional vital capacity and in the radiographic appearance in patients with more severe stage II and III disease.

Cystic Fibrosis

Genetics
- The most common life shortening autosomal recessive disease due to mutation on the long arm of chromosome 7.
- Highest incidence in Caucasians, highly prevalent in Latinos, African Americans and seen rarely in African, Asian, and Native Americans races.
- >1500 CF transmembrane regulator (CFTR protein) polymorphisms are associated with CF.
- The most prevalent mutation is F508 deletion (85% of US population have at least one copy) associated with both pulmonary disease and pancreatic insufficiency.
- Different classes of gene mutation are identified each with different level of CFTR production and function.
- CFTR dysfunction/absence is associated with excessive reabsorption of sodium and deficient chloride secretion. The passive movement of water is decreased and airway secretions are dehydrated with very low surface liquid layer. Cilia become compressed inhibiting ciliary clearance and cough clearance, bacteria thrive; immune function is also abnormal at the airway surface. Repeated and chronic infection leads to airway damage and bronchiectasis in the lung and dysfunction of other organs.
- Four organ systems prominently involved, respiratory, GI, GU, and integumentary (sweat glands).

Clinical presentation
- *Pulmonary:*
  - Cough is the most constant symptom dry at times, frequently productive.
  - Increased anteroposterior diameter of the chest.
  - Hyperresonance, scattered, and localized crackles.
  - Clubbing, cyanosis, acute sinusitis, and nasal obstruction.

  - Rhinorrhea and nasal polyps.
  - As the lung disease progresses; exercise intolerance, shortness of breath, growth failure, cor-pulmonale (rarely), respiratory failure, and death
  - Common pathogens include *Staphylococcus aureus*, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* though multidrug resistant organisms are increasingly common (MRSA, MDR, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*, and *Burkholderia cepacia complex*).
- *Gastrointestinal:*
  - Meconium ileus
  - Fifteen to twenty percent of newborn with CF, the ileum are completely obstructed.
  - Abdominal distension, emesis, failure to pass meconium in the first 24 and 48 h.
  - KUB will show air-fluid level with ground glass material in the central abdomen.
  - Gastrografin enema diagnostic and therapeutic.
  - Hypertonic solution (electrolyte problem).
  - Surgery if medical management fails (to prevent rupture and peritonitis).
  - Pancreatic insufficient patients progress to complete or almost complete disruption of pancreatic acini and replacement with fibrous tissue. Lack of endogenous digestive enzymes causes fat malabsorption.
  - Frequent foul bulky greasy stools, flatus, FTT < 10 %.
  - Vitamin ADEK deficiency
    - Night blindness, decreased bone density, neurologic dysfunction (dementia, peripheral neuropathy), hypoprothrombinemia. and hemolytic anemia
- *Genitourinary:*
  - Sexual development is typically delayed 2–3 years
  - Females have thicker cervical mucus and minimally delayed time to conception.
  - Many females with CF have born healthy children.
  - >95% of males the vas deferens and the seminal vesicles are obliterated or atretic with associated azoospermia.
  - Sexual function is unimpaired.
- *Integumentary:*
  - Excessive loss of salt in sweat predisposes young children to salt depletion episodes.
  - Hypochloremic alkalosis and dehydration, especially in hot environments, can be deadly in infants

Complications

- *Distal intestinal obstruction syndrome (DIOS)*
  - Typical in teens and those with poor enzyme replacement adherence.
  - Fecal material accumulates in the terminal portion of the ileum and the cecum.
  - Routine polyethylene glycol = (Miralax) helpful.
  - Treatment also includes enteral stool softeners, osmotic laxatives, and osmotic enemas.
- *Rectal prolapse*
  - Previously common in infants with untreated CF.
  - Due to a combination of intestinal disease and poor supporting musculature resulting from poor nutrition.
  - Recurrence may be prevented by promoting easy stooling as well as by addressing underlying malnutrition.
  - Evidence of rectal prolapse in otherwise healthy children is an indication for sweat chloride analysis to assess for undiagnosed CF.
- *Nasal polyps*
  - Are most prevalent in the second decade of life
  - Local steroids and nasal decongestant occasionally provide some relief
  - When completely obstruct the airway, rhinorrhea become constant, or widening of the nasal bridge is noticed, and surgical removal is indicated
- *Depression*
  - Common in adults with CF
- *Biliary cirrhosis* 2–3 % of cases
- *IDDM:* CFR DM *(CF related diabetes mellitus)*, 8% by 11–17 years, 18% by 18–24 years, and 30% over 30 years
- Pan cirrhosis rare

Diagnosis

- *Newborn screening:* most newborn identifies the immunoreactive trypsinogen and limited DNA testing on blood spot coupled with confirmatory sweat chloride test.
- *Sweat chloride* abnormal if >40 under 6 months of age, >60 meq/L over 6 months old
  - Pilocarpine iontophoresis to stimulate sweating, collection and chemical analysis of chloride content is the standard approach to diagnosis
  - Positive results should be confirmed and negative results should be repeated if suspicion of diagnosis remain
  - False-positive test can occur when testing performed on skin affected by eczema, or contaminated with cream or lotion
- *Non-CF conditions associated with positive sweat chloride test*
  - Untreated adrenal insufficiency
  - Ectodermal dysplasia
  - Hereditary nephrogenic diabetes insipidus
  - G6PD
  - Hypothyroidism
  - Hypoparathyroidism
  - Mucopolysaccharidoses
  - Fucosidosis
  - Malnutrition with hypoalbuminemia and edema
- It is now known that patients with severe CF exist with normal sweat tests, uncommonly.
- *DNA testing:* this test identifies >90% of cases with two CF mutations.

- *Pancreatic function testing:* fecal elastase preferred method. Three days stool fat measurement.
- *Nasal potential difference testing:* research tool.
- *Newborn screening is not perfect and small numbers of patients are missed annually. Never stop thinking about this diagnosis even in older children and young adults.

Management per national guidelines

- *Center care:* physician, nursing, social services, nutritional services, psychology, genetic counseling
- *Visits:* monthly during first year, alternate months during second year, quarterly minimum thereafter with annual labs
- *Imaging:* alternate year CXR, expect nodular densities, patchy atelectasis, especially upper lobe bronchiectasis, chest CT for complications, KUB and abdominal ultrasound as needed (PRN)
- *Pulmonary function:* quarterly after 5–6 years, expect obstructive process often with modest response to a bronchodilator.
- *Microbiology:* biannual and PRN sputum cultures, expect *S. aureus* or *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* most commonly; MRSA, MDR Pseudomonas and *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* increasing nationally, *Burkholderia cepacia* are rare but stable prevalence.

Management—primary goals

- Maintaining lung function as near to normal as possible by hydrating airway surface layer, liquefying mucus and using one of multiple methods to clear airways of mucus airway clearance techniques (ACTs).
- Preventing infection by strict avoidance of other CF patients and careful isolation measures within clinics and hospitals.
- Treating infection when present with directed antimicrobials.
- Administering nutritional therapy (i.e., enzyme supplements, multivitamin and mineral supplements) to maintain adequate growth.

Managing complications

- Mild acute pulmonary exacerbations of CF can be treated successfully at home with the following measures:
  - Inhaled bronchodilator treatment
  - Increasing the frequency of aerosols (hydration and mucolytics)
  - ACTs, see below
  - Antimicrobials (oral, inhaled)
  - Moderate and severe pulmonary exacerbations are treated with hospital admission and aggressive respiratory treatment, IV antibiotics and anti-inflammatory medications, nutritional supplementation, tube feeding if needed

Treatments for CF may include the following

- Pancreatic enzyme supplements
- Multivitamins (including fat-soluble vitamins)
- Bronchodilators
- Hydrating agents (7% hypertonic saline)
- Mucolytics (DNase)
- Nebulized, inhaled, oral, or intravenous antibiotics
- ACT (chest physical therapy (CPT), oscillating chest compressive vests, positive expiratory pressure (PEP) devices, oscillating PEP, autogenic drainage (AD), active cycle breathing techniques (ACBTs), directed coughing)
- Anti-inflammatory agents (Azithromycin MWF)
- Antacids (to improve pancreatic enzyme function)
- Agents to treat associated conditions or complications (e.g., insulin)
- Agents devised to reverse abnormalities in chloride transport (e.g., ivacaftor)
- Surgical therapy may be required for the treatment of the following respiratory complications:
  - Respiratory—pneumothorax, massive recurrent or persistent hemoptysis, nasal polyps, persistent and chronic sinusitis.
  - Lung transplantation is indicated for the treatment of end-stage lung disease.
  - GI—meconium ileus, intussusception, gastrostomy tube placement for supplemental feeding, rectal prolapse.

Prognosis

- Transition to adult caregivers required at all US nationally accredited centers
  - Programs often formal to educate families and patients for transition.
  - Typical transition over 18 years old, often at 21 years old.
- Median cumulative survival is exceeding 35 years, male survival is somewhat better than females without apparent reason
- Infants born now with CF center care likely to survive beyond 50 years
- Known survivors in their eighties.

Obstructive Sleep Apnea (OSA)

Background

- OSA must be distinguished from primary snoring
  - Primary snoring = no associated obstructive events or gas exchange abnormalities, incidence 12–20%.
  - OSA = obstructive apnea and hypopneas often with arousal and gas exchange abnormalities.
- The prevalence of OSA is 2–4% in healthy children.

- The disorder can occur at any age but is most common in the preschool age group (2–6 years) and adolescents.
- A higher prevalence has been reported in African–American children.

Risk factors and associated conditions
- Adenotonsillar hypertrophy
- Obesity
- Craniofacial abnormalities, specifically midface hypoplasia and micrognathia
- Hypotonia, e.g., Down syndrome
- Neuromuscular disease
- Cerebral palsy.

Clinical presentation
- Loud nightly snoring with observed apnea spells
- Parents may note that the child is a restless sleeper
- Sweats while sleeping
- Sleeps in an abnormal position with the neck extended
- Chronic mouth breathing with chronic nasal congestion
- Morning headaches
- Excessive daytime sleepiness is more common among older children.
- Mood changes
- ADHD-like symptoms involving inattention and easy distractibility, or academic problems due to difficulty concentrating
- Adenoidal facies as well as signs of atopy or nasal congestion such as "allergic shiners,"
- Nasal septal deviation
- Enlarged turbinates
- Redundant soft palate with a long uvula
- Cor pulmonale or systemic hypertension (rare in children)
- Nocturnal enuresis

Management
- All children should be screened for snoring.
- Complex, high-risk patients should be referred to a specialist, e.g., craniofacial disorders, genetic syndromes, and neuromuscular disorders.
- History and physical examination cannot distinguish between primary snoring and OSA.
- Polysomnography is the diagnostic test of choice.
- Adenotonsillectomy is the first line of therapy and curative for about 80 % of children with OSA.
- Noninvasive positive airway pressure is an option for those who are not surgical candidates or who respond poorly to surgery.
- High-risk patients (those with complicated diseases and severe OSA) should be monitored as inpatients postoperatively.
- Patients should be reevaluated postoperatively to determine if additional treatment is required.
- Patients with neuromuscular disease may desaturate in sleep but appear well when awake. Overnight saturation monitoring can be very helpful to recognize issues that require additional support.

ALTE/Sudden Infant Death Syndrome

Background
- ALTE a subjective report of a death like event.
  - GERD most common association for awake ALTE
  - Neurologic from seizure second most common association
  - Respiratory from pertussis and RSV third most common association
  - High index of suspicion of child abuse important
  - Observation, testing, and treatment as supported by history and exam
- SIDS age 2–4 months with most deaths having occurred by 6 months
- National recommendation on SIDS prevention
  - "Back to Sleep" supine position except few conditions
  - Marked decline in SIDS rate following this public policy education
  - Tummy time while awake
  - No smoking pre- or postnatally
- Recognized risk factors:
  - Next born siblings of first born infants dying of any noninfectious natural causes are at significant increased risk of infant death from the same cause
  - ALTE very rarely associated
  - Infant factors: prematurity, low birth weight, co-sleeping, prone sleeping, and overheating
  - Maternal factors: young maternal age, smoking during pregnancy, and late or absent prenatal care
- More than 95 % of SIDS cases are associated with one or more risk factors.
- National recommendation on pacifiers:
  - Use pacifier once breast feeding has been established
  - Offer pacifier at bedtime or nap time
  - No correlation between pacifier use and length of breast feeding

Chest Deformities

Pectus Excavatum (Funnel Chest; Fig. 4)
- *Incidence*
  - >90 % of congenital wall anomalies

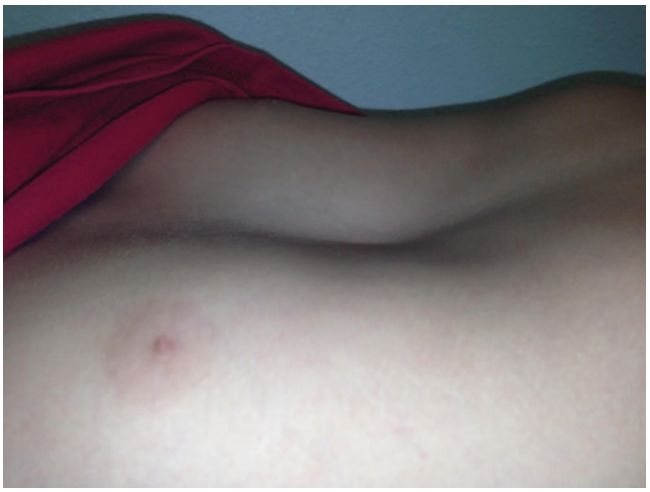


Fig. 4 Pectus Excavatum 12-year-old healthy boy with funnel shaped chest "pectus excavatum"

- 1/400 birth with 9:1 in males
- Can be isolated or associated with connective tissue diseases like Marfan or Ehlers–Danlos syndrome, neuromuscular disease like SMA.

Clinical presentation
- At birth may be not associated with any symptoms
- In severe cases, patient may become symptomatic
  - Decrease exercise tolerance
  - Fatigue
  - Chest pain
  - Palpitations
  - Recurrent chest infections
  - Wheezing
  - Stridor
  - Cough
- Children may experience a significant psychological stress because of cosmetic appearance

Investigation
- CXR; increase AP diameter
- CT for Haller index, if significant, justifies repair
  - HI = lateral internal rib cage dimension/AP internal sternum to vertebrae dimension.
  - Normal value 2.5
  - Repair if over 3.25
- EKG; may show WPW, lateral axis deviations

Treatment
- Based on severity of deformity and physiologic compromise
- If neuromuscular disease worsens due to excessive efforts and retractions, responds to ventilation such as noninvasive positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV)
- Mild: observation and physical therapy to maintain posture
- Corrective surgery if significant physiologic compromise (Nuss procedure)

Pectus Carinatum (pigeon chest)
- *Background*
  - Anterior displacement of midsternum and adjacent costal cartilage
  - It is rare 1/1500 of chest wall deformities
  - Associated with mild to moderate scoliosis, mitral valve prolapse, and coarctation of aorta
- *Clinical presentation*
  - Rarely causes limitations
  - Physical appearance most common complaint
  - Haller index less than two is significant
- *Treatment*
  - Surgery for cosmetic and psychological stress

Suggested Readings

1. AAP. Subcommittee on Diagnosis and Management of Bronchiolitis. Pediatrics. 2006;118(4):1774–93.
2. AAP. Committee on Fetus and Newborn. Apnea, sudden infant death syndrome, and home monitoring. Pediatrics. 2003;111(4):914–7.
3. Alario AJ, McCarthy PL, Markowitz R, et al. Usefulness of chest radiographs in children with acute lower respiratory tract disease. J Pediatr. 1987;111:187–93.
4. Cherry JD. Clinical practice: croup. N Engl Med. 2008;258:384–91.
5. Cotton RT, Reilly JS. Stridor and airway obstruction. In: Bluestone C, Stool S, Kenna M, editors. Pediatric otolaryngology. 3rd ed. Philadelphia:WB Saunders; 1995. p. 1275–86.
6. Dodge JA, Lewis PA. Cystic Fibrosis mortality and survival in the UK: 1947–2003. Eur Respir J. 2007;29(3):522–6.
7. Haddad GG, Green TP. Diagnosis approach to respiratory disorders. In: Kliegman RM, Behrman RE, Jenson HB, Stanson BF, editors. Nelson textbook of pediatrics. 18th ed. Philadelphia:Saunders Elsevier; 2007. p. 1731–2.
8. Haller JA, Kramer SS, Lietman A. Use of CT scans in selection of patients for pectusexcavatum surgery: a preliminary report. J Pediatr Surg. 1987;22:904–6.
9. Hardy KA. Airway Clearance Techniques. AAP section on pediatric pulmonology executive committee. 1st ed. "Blue Book" AAP; 2011. p. 894–912.
10. Holinger LD. Evaluation of stridor and wheezing. In: Holinger LD, Editor. Pediatric laryngology & bronchoesophogology. New York: Lipppincott-Raven; 1997. p. 28–41.
11. Jobe A, Bancalari E. Bronchopulmonary dysplasia. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2001;163:1723–9.
12. Koves T, Rubin S. Long-term complication of congenital esophageal atresia and/or tracheaoesophageal fistula. Chest. 2004;126:915–25.
13. LeGrys VA, Yankaskas JR, Quittell LM, Marshall BC, Mogayzel PJ Jr. Diagnostic sweat testing: the Cystic Fibrosis Foundation guidelines. J Pediatr. 2007;151:85–9.
14. Mayer OH, Allen J. Chest wall and spinal deformities pediatric pulmonology: AAP section on pediatric pulmonology executive committee. 1st ed. "Blue Book" AAP; 2011. p. 310–45.

15. Mettler FA, Huda W, Yoshizumi T, et al. Effective doses in radiology and diagnostic nuclear medicine: a catalog. Radiology. 2008;248:254–63.
16. Mindell JA, Owens JA. A clinical guide to pediatric sleep: diagnosis and management of sleep problems. Philadelphia:Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2003.
17. National Heart, Lung, and blood Institute. National Asthma Education Program Expert Panel Report 3 (EPR-3). Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma. Bethesda: National Institutes of Health; 2007. (NIH Publication No. 08–5846).
18. Nevin MA. Pulmonary hemosiderosis. In: Kliegman RM, Stanton BF, St. Geme JW III, Schor NF, Behrman RE, editors. Nelson textbook of pediatrics. 19th ed. Philadelphia:Saunders Elsevier; 2011. p. 1498–500.
19. Northway WH, Rosen RC, Porter DY. Pulmonary disease following respirator therapy of hyaline-membrane disease. Bronchopulmonary dysplasia. N Engl J Med. 1967;276:357–68.
20. Penugonda M, Simon D, Light M. Primary ciliary dyskinesia and other genetic lung diseases pediatric pulmonology: AAP section on pediatric pulmonology executive committee. 1st ed. "Blue Book" AAP; 2011. p. 745–75.
21. Schechter M, O'Sullivan B. Cystic fibrosis. Pediatric pulmonology: AAP section on pediatric pulmonology executive committee. 1st ed. "Blue Book" AAP; 2011. p. 717–43.
22. Sharma G, Conrad C. Croup, epiglottitis and bacterial tracheitis pediatric pulmonology: AAP section on pediatric pulmonology executive committee. 1st ed. "Blue Book" AAP; 2011. p. 348–63.
23. Sidhu M, Goske MJ, Connolly B, et al. Image gently, step lightly: promoting radiation safety in pediatric interventional radiology. Am J Roentgenol. 2010;195:W299–W301.
24. Stillwell P. Bronchiectasis pediatric Pulmonology: AAP section on pediatric pulmonology executive committee. 1st ed. "Blue Book" AAP; 2011. p. 346–375.
25. Weinberger M. Bronchiolitis. Pediatric pulmonology: AAP section on pediatric pulmonology executive committee. 1st ed. "Blue Book" AAP; 2011. p. 377–90.

Cardiovascular Disorders

Joseph Mahgerefteh and Daphne T. Hsu

Chest Pain

Background

- Chest pain in children is rarely due to cardiac disease.
- The history and physical examination can establish the diagnosis of noncardiac chest pain in the majority of cases.

Cardiac disorders associated with chest pain

- Coronary artery diseases (ischemia or infarction)
  - History of Kawasaki disease (coronary arteritis)
  - History of transposition of great arteries s/p arterial switch
  - Anomalous origin of the coronary arteries
  - Coronary artery fistula
  - Cocaine abuse
  - Coronary calcinosis
  - Takayasu arteritis
- Infections/autoimmune disorders
  - Pericarditis
  - Myocarditis
  - Systemic lupus erythematosus, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis
- Arrhythmias
  - Supraventricular tachycardia
  - Ventricular tachycardia
- Other cardiac abnormalities
  - Aortic stenosis
  - Aortic dissection (collagen vascular disease such as Marfan syndrome)
  - Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
  - Pulmonary hypertension
  - Severe pulmonary stenosis
  - Mitral valve prolapse

Red flags for cardiac chest pain

- Clinical presentation
  - Pain with exertion, syncope, fatigue
  - Shortness of breath with exertion
  - Pain preceded by tachycardia
  - Family history of heritable conditions such as hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
  - Abnormal cardiac exam
    - Tachycardia
    - Narrow pulse pressure
    - Pulsus paradoxus
    - Distant heart sounds
    - Murmur
      - Harsh systolic ejection murmur
      - Pansystolic murmur
      - Continuous murmur
    - Gallop rhythm
  - Pain worse in recumbent position

Musculoskeletal pain

- One of the most common diagnosis in children who have chest discomfort
- Causes
  - Costochondritis
  - Strained chest wall muscles following coughing, exercise, sports participation, or carrying heavy books or backpack
  - Direct trauma causing sternal or rib contusion or rib fracture
- Clinical presentation
  - Chest wall tenderness with palpation
  - History of trauma
  - Pain may be bilateral, sharp, and exaggerated by physical activity or breathing
  - Pain with movement of the torso or upper extremities
  - Pain may persist for several months.

J. Mahgerefteh (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Children's Hospital at Montefiore, 3415 Bainbridge Avenue Bronx, NY 10467, USA
e-mail: jmahgere@montefiore.org

D. T. Hsu
Department of Pediatric Cardiology, Pediatric Heart Center, Department of Pediatrics, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Children's Hospital at Montefiore, 3415 Bainbridge Avenue Bronx, NY 10467, USAe-mail: dhsu@montefiore.org

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_15,

Respiratory conditions causing chest pain
- Asthma
- Pneumonia
- Pulmonary embolism
  - History of oral contraceptive use
- Pneumothorax
  - Marfan syndrome
- Pleural effusion/hemothorax
- Clinical presentation
  - Tachypnea
  - Dyspnea
  - Hypoxia
  - Fever
  - Pleuritic pain
  - Cough
  - Hemoptysis

Psychogenic disorders
- Anxiety
- Stress
- Recent major stressful event
  - Separation from friends
  - Divorce in the family
  - School anxiety/phobia
  - Death in the family

Gastrointestinal disorders
- Recent foreign body ingestion
- Reflux esophagitis
- Clinical presentation
  - Burning, substernal in location
  - Worsened by reclining or eating spicy foods
  - Pain is related to meals

Miscellaneous causes
- Sickle cell disease may lead to vaso-occlusive crises or acute chest syndrome.
- Shingles may result in severe chest pain.

Idiopathic chest pain
- No identifiable cardiac, pulmonary, or musculoskeletal cause
- 20–45 % of cases of pediatric chest pain; no diagnosis can be determined with certainty

Clinical approach to chest pain
- Comprehensive history
  - Characteristics of the pain
    - Frequency, location, quality, and severity of the pain
    - Timing: daily activity, sleep, exercise
  - Associated symptoms: exercise intolerance, fatigue, tachycardia, shortness of breath, dizziness, or syncope
  - Family history for heritable diseases affecting the heart or lungs; for example, sudden death, deafness, seizures, cardiomyopathy, or asthma
  - A prior history of structural or acquired heart disease
  - Prior history of cardiac surgery
  - Medication use
- Physical examination
  - Vital signs
  - Signs of heart failure or congestion
  - Abnormal cardiac findings
  - Chest wall palpation
- Electrocardiogram
- Further testing as indicated by history, physical examination and electrocardiogram: blood tests, echocardiogram, exercise stress testing, pulmonary function testing, 24-h Holter monitor

Syncope

Background
- Syncope is a temporary loss of consciousness that may be due to generalized cerebral hypoperfusion or neurologic disorders.

Clinical presentation
- Temporary loss of consciousness.
- Palpitations, tachycardia, lightheadedness, dizziness, weakness, pallor, nausea, cold sweat, blurred vision, or hearing loss may precede the syncope (prodrome).
- Prompt relief from all symptoms usually occurs after lying down.
- Anoxic seizures may result (rare).

Causes of Syncope
- Vasovagal: impaired response of the autonomic nervous system
- Cardiac structural defects
  - Hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy
  - Aortic stenosis
  - Pulmonary hypertension
  - Coronary artery anomalies
- Cardiac arrhythmias; for example, ventricular tachycardia (torsades de pointes), complete heart block, atrial fibrillation
- Noncardiac mechanisms, such as seizures, hypoglycemia, or psychologic disorders

Vasovagal or neurocardiogenic syncope
- The most common form of syncope in children

- Neurally mediated syncope rarely is associated with sudden death
- Mechanism of vasovagal syncope (hypersensitive autonomic response)
  - Decreased systemic venous return
  - Decreased left ventricular end diastolic volume
  - Increased mechanical contractility results in stimulation of cardiac vagal fibers
  - Bradycardia, vasodilation, and hypotension
- Clinical Presentation
  - Occurs with standing or sitting prodrome: tachycardia, diaphoresis, blurred vision
  - Brief period of unconsciousness
  - Orthostatic hypotension
  - Normal physical examination
- Red flags for cardiac syncope
  - Sudden onset of palpitation, shortness of breath, or chest pain before syncope
  - Syncope during exertion, swimming, or supine
  - Episode brought on by sudden startle
  - Exercise intolerance and fatigue
  - Young age < 10 years (specially less than 6 years)
  - Previous heart disease
  - Family history of cardiomyopathy and channelopathy
  - Abnormal physical examination
  - Bradycardia

Initial evaluation
- Electrocardiography
  - Rhythm
  - Left or right ventricular hypertrophy

Cardiology consultation is indicated
- Syncope with exercise.
- Associated symptoms: chest pain, shortness of breath, preceding tachycardia.
- Abnormal physical examination.
- Abnormal electrocardiogram.

Further evaluation
- 24-h Holter or 30-day event monitoring if history suggests tachyarrhythmia
- Echocardiogram if physical examination or electrocardiogram abnormal

Treatment of vasovagal syncope
- Increase fluid and salt intake
- Fludrocortisone
- Midodrine
- Beta-blockers
- Pacemaker
  - Documented bradycardia unresponsive to medical therapy

Murmur

Background
- A murmur is heard in most children at one or more of their examinations.
- Because most murmurs are innocent (i.e., normal), it is important to differentiate those that are a manifestation of cardiac disease
- In general, history and physical examination permits the caregiver to determine if heart disease is present.

Innocent murmur (Still's murmur)
- Early systolic ejection
- Short duration
- Low intensity (grade 1–2/6)
- Vibrating (or musical) quality
- Located at the left lower sternal border, nonradiating

Peripheral pulmonary artery stenosis of the newborn
- Murmur is related to the acute take-off angle of the branch pulmonary arteries in the newborn.
- A murmur louder in the axilla or back than the anterior chest is highly suggestive of the diagnosis of peripheral pulmonary artery stenosis of the newborn.
- Characteristics.
  - Systolic ejection murmur of low intensity.
  - Heard best at the left upper sternal border and radiates bilaterally to the axillae and back.
  - Split S_2 of normal intensity.
  - The angles remodel overtime with increased pulmonary blood flow.
  - Murmur disappears, usually in 3–6 months.

Venous hum
- The murmur is caused by blood cascading down the jugular vein.
- Typically is louder in diastole as the atrium empties.
- Characteristics
  - Continuous murmur.
  - Heard in the infraclavicular region.
  - Usually right-sided.
  - Best heard sitting or standing.
  - Disappears when the patient lies down.
  - Disappearance when the examiner applies gentle pressure over the jugular vein is diagnostic.

Pathologic murmurs
- Systolic ejection murmurs: crescendo–decrescendo murmur heard best with the diaphragm.
  - Ejection murmurs are generated when blood flows through a stenotic area or if there is relative stenosis from increased flow through a normal area.

  - Aortic stenosis (right upper sternal border).
  - Pulmonary stenosis (left upper sternal border).
  - Atrial septal defect (relative stenosis from increased blood flow through the pulmonary valve).
  - Coarctation of the aorta (left clavicle or back).
- Pansystolic murmurs: murmur of the same intensity throughout systole and heard best with the diaphragm
  - Ventricular septal defect: high pitched, harsh at the left lower sternal border radiating to the back
  - Mitral regurgitation: low pitched, blowing at the left lower sternal border radiating to the left axilla, louder with patient in left lateral decubitus position
  - Tricuspid regurgitation: low pitched, blowing at the left and right lower sternal border
- Diastolic murmurs
  - Early decrescendo murmur heard best with the diaphragm and loudest at the left mid sternal border
    - Aortic insufficiency (high pitched) heard best when patient leaning forward in expiration
    - Pulmonary insufficiency (low pitched)
  - Mid-diastolic rumble heard best with the bell
    - Tricuspid stenosis: right lower sternal border
    - Mitral stenosis: axilla
- Continuous murmur heard best with the diaphragm throughout systole and through S2 to diastole, but not necessarily present throughout diastole, similar to a bruit
  - Patent ductus arteriosus (left clavicular region)
  - Coronary artery fistula (can be heard anywhere in the precordium)
- Heart Sounds
  - S1: heard best at the left lower sternal border
  - S2: heard best at the left mid-upper sternal border, physiologically splitting occurs because the aortic valve closes prior to the pulmonary valve
    - Split S2 normally widens with inspiration
    - Loud S2: anterior aorta
    - Loud, single S2: pulmonary hypertension
    - Fixed split S2: atrial septal defect
    - Paradoxically split S2: aortic stenosis
  - Systolic click
    - Aortic or pulmonary valve stenosis: heard best at the left mid sternal border
    - Mitral valve prolapse: mid-systolic click in axilla
  - S3: heard best with the bell at the left lower sternal border, anterior axillary line in mid diastole
  - S4: heard best with the bell at the left lower sternal border, anterior axillary line immediately prior to S1
  - Rub: irregular, crackling sound not related to heart rate heard best with the diaphragm anywhere in the precordium
- Thrills
  - Felt best with the palm of the hand
  - Aortic Stenosis: suprasternal notch thrill is diagnostic
  - Aortic or pulmonary stenosis: left mid sternal border, thrill indicates increased severity of stenosis
  - Ventricular septal defect: left mid or lower sternal border, thrill indicates small, restrictive ventricular septal defect
- Heave
  - Indicates right or left ventricular hypertrophy

Congestive Heart Failure

Background

- Definition: cardiac output is insufficient to meet the metabolic demands of the body
  - High demand: increased blood volume, increased metabolic rate
  - Decreased cardiac function
- Clinical findings
  - Venous congestion (pulmonary or systemic)
  - Poor perfusion

Causes

- High cardiac output: cardiac function is normal but there is an increased volume load on the heart
  - Left-to-right shunt
    - Ventricular septal defect
    - Atrioventricular canal defect
    - Patent ductus arteriosus
    - Arteriovenous malformations
    - Clinical presentation
      - Start at 1–3 months of life when pulmonary vascular resistance falls to normal.
      - Significant increase in the pulmonary blood flow relative to the systemic blood flow
      - Left atrium and left ventricle dilate
  - Valve insufficiency
    - Tricuspid or pulmonary insufficiency: Increased right ventricular volume load
    - Mitral or aortic insufficiency: increased left ventricular volume load
  - Septic shock (Start with high-output heart failure (HF) and progress to low-output HF)
  - Anemia
  - Thyrotoxicosis
- Low cardiac output
  - Systolic ventricular dysfunction
    - Dilated cardiomyopathy
    - Severe left heart obstruction: neonatal aortic stenosis or coarctation
    - Myocardial infarction
  - Diastolic ventricular dysfunction
    - Restrictive cardiomyopathy
    - Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
    - Constrictive pericarditis
    - Pericardial effusion
    - Fontan circulation

- Dysrhythmias
  - Supraventricular tachycardia
  - Ectopic atrial tachycardia
  - Atrial flutter/fibrillation with rapid ventricular response
- Cyanosis

Clinical presentation

- Infant
  - Failure to thrive
    - Feeding difficulties due to dyspnea
    - Increased fatigability
  - Respiratory distress
- Older children
  - Exercise intolerance
  - Gastrointestinal complaints: abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting
  - Somnolence
  - Anorexia
  - Cough
  - Wheezing
  - Dyspnea
- Physical examination
  - Tachypnea
  - Rales, grunting, retractions
  - Pansystolic mitral regurgitation murmur
  - Gallop rhythm
  - Hepatomegaly
  - Peripheral edema
  - Jugular venous distention

Investigations

- Pulse oximetry
- Chest radiography
  - Cardiac enlargement: left or right atrial enlargement, abnormal arterial size, or position
  - Increased pulmonary vascular markings
- Electrocardiogram
  - Dysrhythmias
  - Ventricular or atrial hypertrophy
  - Myocardial ischemia
  - Specific abnormalities associated with congenital heart disease, coronary artery anomalies
- Echocardiography
  - Identifies structural heart disease
  - Ventricular dysfunction (both systolic and diastolic)
  - Chamber dimensions
  - Valve function
  - Effusions (both pericardial and pleural).
- HF Biomarkers
  - Brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) and NT-proBNP
  - Inflammatory markers: C-reactive protein (CRP), Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)
  - Markers of cardiac ischemia: Troponin

Management

- Prompt treatment of noncardiac causes of HF such as:
  - Anemia
  - Hypo/hyperthyroidism
  - Sepsis/acidosis
  - Infection
- Assessment of fluid status and cardiac output
- Corrections of structural cardiac anomalies
  - Closure of intracardiac shunts
  - Relief of left or right ventricular outflow tract obstruction
  - Relief of valvular regurgitation
  - Treatment of cardiac dysrhythmia
- Medical therapy
  - Fluid overload
    - Diuretics
    - Vasodilators: milrinone and nitroprusside
    - Ultrafiltration
  - Low cardiac output
    - Milrinone
    - Sympathomimetics
    - Digoxin
  - Reverse remodeling
    - Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors
    - Beta blockers
    - Angiotensinogen II receptor antagonist
    - Mineralocorticoid receptor antagonist
  - Mechanical assist device
    - Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation
    - Ventricular assist device: left or biventricular
  - Cardiac transplantation

ECG Interpretation and Cardiac Arrhythmias

(Figs. 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, and 16)

Background

- Although most childhood arrhythmias are benign, prompt and correct diagnosis of a serious rhythm disturbance in a child can be lifesaving.
- The key to ECG interpretation is systematic review.
- History
  - Initiation/termination of tachycardia.
    - Abrupt onset and termination is suggestive of an arrhythmia.
    - Gradual onset and termination is suggestive of normal variation.
  - Symptoms: syncope, dizziness, fatigue, shortness of breath.
  - Onset of arrhythmia: exercise, startle, diving.
  - History of heart disease.
  - Medication history.

  - Family history: sudden death, pacemaker, deafness, seizures.
- Electrocardiogram Interpretation
  - Type of rhythm (p-wave axis, atrioventricular synchrony, premature beats, irregularity)
  - Rate
  - Ventricular axis
  - Cardiac intervals: PR, QRS, and QT corrected
  - Presence of Left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH) or Right ventricular hypertrophy (RVH)
  - Presence of atrial enlargement
  - ST *T*-wave abnormalities
- ECG "pearls"
  - Sinus tachycardia and sinus bradycardia are rarely due to a primary cardiac problem
  - Left superior axis: Ostium primum atrial septal defect (ASD), AV canal defect, Tricuspid atresia
  - Origin left coronary artery from pulmonary artery: Deep Q wave I and aVL and ↓ voltage V3–V5, ± LAD (Left axis deviation) ± LVH
  - Hypertrophic myopathy: LVH "strain," deep Q wave V3–V6, ± short PR, Left atrial enlargement (LAE), Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT), Ventricular tachycardia (VT)
  - Right bundle branch block (RBBB)
    - More common in children particularly after open heart surgery
    - Wide QRS (> 120 ms)
    - RSR' (rabbit ears) in V1, and Wide S wave in V6
  - Left bundle branch block (LBBB)
    - Rare in children
    - Prolonged QRS in duration
    - RSR' notched or slurred in the lateral leads I, aVL and V6
    - SRS' in V1.
    - Half of the patients have normal axis

Sinus Rhythm and Sinus Arrhythmia

Background
- Sinus arrhythmia is a normal finding in healthy children.
- Decrease in SA node firing subsequent to activation of the vagus nerve by exhalation.

Clinical presentation
- Asymptomatic.
- The heart rate varies with respiration.
- ECG shows sinus rhythm with a prolongation of the R–R interval during exhalation.

Premature Atrial Contractions

Background
- Premature atrial contractions (PACs) are very common in asymptomatic pediatric patients and are benign.

Causes
- Idiopathic (most common)
- Caffeinated drinks (coffee, tea, soda).
- Electrolyte imbalances.
- Medication.

Clinical presentation
- Feeling a "skipped beat" or "pause," often followed by a strong beat.

Electrocardiogram (EKG)
- Premature, inverted, or oddly shaped P waves.
- ECG are diagnostic, the patient can be reassured.

Management
- No additional evaluation is necessary.
- If the patient is bothered by PACs, known inciting events should be avoided.
- If there are associated symptoms of dizziness, syncope, chest pain, or shortness of breath, or the electrocardiogram has other abnormalities, referral should be made to a cardiologist.

Atrial Flutter

Background
- Atrial rates of 300–400 beats/min with variable conduction so that the ventricular rate is slower than the atrial rate.
- Atrial flutter is caused by a reentrant circuit confined to the atrium.

Clinical presentation
- Infants may present with congestive heart failure.
- Older children may have palpitations, dizziness, syncope, chest pain, and shortness of breath.
- The major clinical clue is a fixed rapid heartbeat that is usually between 150 and 200 bpm (flutter with 2:1 conduction).
- Prolonged atrial fibrillation or flutter (usually > 24 h) can result in clot development within the left atrium.

Diagnosis
- EKG.
  - Atrial flutter most commonly conducts to the ventricles in a 2:1 fashion with a ventricular rate of 150–200 beats/min.
  - If atrial flutter conducts in a 1:1 fashion, the ventricular rate is > 200 beats/min.
  - Classic inverted "saw-tooth" deflections that are best seen in leads II, III, aVF.

Management
- The patient should be referred for urgent cardiac evaluation and treatment.
- Adenosine will not terminate the atrial flutter, but will slow A–V conduction, lowering the ventricular rate and making it easier to see the atrial flutter waves.
- The most effective treatment is synchronized electrical cardioversion performed after the presence of an atrial thrombus has been ruled out.
  - If the patient is highly unstable, synchronized electrical cardioversion may be performed without ruling out a thrombus.
- Nonemergency antiarrhythmic drugs can be used to control the ventricular rate If a thrombus is present to stabilize the patient, e.g., Diltiazem, or beta-blocker.
- Radiofrequency catheter ablation may cure most common types of atrial flutter.

Atrial Fibrillation (AF)

Background
- AF is uncommon in young children.

Causes
- Hyperthyroidism
- Electrolyte disturbance such as hypomagnesemia
- Cocaine abuse
- Excessive caffeine or nicotine

Clinical presentation
- AF generally is not life-threatening except if the patient has an accessory bypass tract and is at risk for ventricular fibrillation.
- Palpitations.
- Chest pain.
- Syncope.
- Irregularly irregular rhythm.
- Prolonged atrial fibrillation or flutter (usually > 24 h) can result in clot development within the left atrium.

Diagnosis
- EKG.
  - Absent or very low-voltage P waves.
  - Irregular R–R interval confirms the diagnosis.

Management
- Refer to a pediatric cardiologist urgently.
- Adenosine will not terminate the atrial fibrillation, but will slow A–V conduction, lowering the ventricular rate and making it easier to see the atrial waves.
- The most effective treatment is synchronized electrical cardioversion performed after the presence of an atrial thrombus has been ruled out.
  - If the patient is highly unstable, synchronized electrical cardioversion may be performed without ruling out a thrombus.
- Nonemergency anti-arrhythmic drugs can be used to control the ventricular rate If a thrombus is present to stabilize the patient, e.g., Diltiazem or beta-blocker.

Supraventricular Tachycardia (SVT)

Background
- SVT is defined as a rapid tachycardia originating above the bundle of His.
- It occurs in as many as 1 in 250 children but often is misdiagnosed due to the variety of presentations.

Pathogenesis
- Reentrant tachycardia using an accessory pathway (AP)
- Reentrant atrioventricular nodal tachycardia (AVNRT), typically seen in adolescents
- Ectopic atrial focus

Clinical presentation
- Infant
  - Heart rates of 220–270 beats/min
  - Poor feeding, pallor, irritability, and lethargy if prolonged
  - Congestive heart failure with hemodynamic decompensation
- School-aged children
  - Palpitation, heart pounding, "beeping in my chest"
  - Chest pain or fullness
  - Shortness of breath
  - Sweating
  - Exercise intolerance
  - Heart rate: 180–240 beats/min

Diagnosis
- ECG
  - Narrow complex (< 80 ms) tachycardia with a non variable rapid heart rate
  - P waves often are difficult to see but may be seen as sharp deflections within the *T*-waves.

Management
- Stable.
  - Vagal maneuvers; for example, place ice bag to the face for 10–20 s
  - Adenosine (Avoid verapamil in infant < 1 year because of risks of hypotension and shock).
  - Avoid digoxin in WPW (pre-excited baseline ECG).
- Unstable.
  - D/C cardioversion.
- Pediatric cardiology referral.
- Ambulatory ECG monitoring devices (24-h Holter monitors or event recorders) are useful for diagnosing SVT in patients who have sporadic episodes.
- Medical management: beta-blocker, calcium channel blocker, or digoxin (in the absence of an accessory pathway).
- Electrophysiologic study with ablation procedure is the definitive treatment of choice.

Wolff–Parkinson–White (WPW) Syndrome

Background
- A condition in which an aberrant accessory pathway causes pre-excitation of the ventricles.
- Associated conditions: cardiomyopathy, Ebstein anomaly, corrected transposition of the great arteries.
- Presentation is an incidental finding on an ECG or a tachyarrhythmia.

EKG
- Shortened PR interval
- Slurring and slow rise of the initial upstroke of the QRS complex (delta wave)
- Widened QRS complex (total duration > 0.12 s)
- ST segment-*T*-wave changes, generally directed opposite the major delta wave and QRS complex

Treatment
- SVT treatment, as described above
- Asymptomatic WPW
  - Exercise stress test to evaluate the conduction through the pathway
  - If pathway conduction is slow—no treatment
  - If pathway conduction is fast—ablation procedure

Sick Sinus Syndrome (SSS)

Background
- This rhythm is a result of sinus node dysfunction.
- Most often in patients who had prior cardiac (especially extensive atrial) surgery or cardiomyopathy.

Clinical presentation
- Asymptomatic (most common)
- Shortness of breath
- Syncope/seizure

ECG
- Bradycardia that may be sinus pause, junctional or ventricular
- Tachyarrhythmias such as atrial fibrillation or flutter, or supraventricular tachycardia

Management
- Patients suspected of having SSS should be referred to a cardiologist for additional evaluation.

Premature Ventricular Contractions (PVC)

Background
- Ectopic beats originating from the ventricle
- May occur in as many as 25 % of healthy children
- Can be a presenting sign of myocarditis or cardiomyopathy
- Occur more frequently in patients with structural heart disease

Clinical presentation
- Usually asymptomatic
- Chest fullness
- Dizziness
- Feeling that the "heart skips" and then resumes with a strong beat

EKG
- Premature, wide QRS complex not preceded by a *p*-wave and often followed by a compensatory pause
- Frequent, PVCs may occur with every other beat (bigeminy) or every third beat (trigeminy).

Management
- No treatment for PVCs if:
  - Single, uniform in appearance
  - Suppressed or not aggravated by exercise
  - No evidence of underlying heart disease or family history of sudden death

Prolonged Q–T Interval

Background
- Corrected QT (QT_C): $QT_C = QT/\sqrt{RR}$
- QT interval corrected between 340 and 450 ms is normal
- QT interval corrected > 450 ms may be abnormal
- QT_C is may be prolonged in normal neonates < 7 days of age

Causes
- Tricyclic antidepressant overdose
- Hypocalcemia
- Hypomagnesemia
- Hypokalemia
- Starvation with electrolyte abnormalities
- Long QT Syndrome

Clinical presentation
- May cause ventricular tachyarrhythmias (torsade de pointes)
- Syncope
- Cardiac arrest
- Sudden death

Long QT Syndrome (LQTS)

Background
- Predispose patient to ventricular tachycardia (Torsade de pointes).
- Not every patient who has a prolonged QT_C has LQTS.
- An interval of more than 450 ms is suggestive of LQTS and more than 470 ms is considered abnormal.

Clinical presentation
- Family history of unexplained sudden death (50% in symptomatic patients).
- Previously healthy patient reports fainting spells while swimming, startling, or exercising.
- Patients can present with syncope, seizures, palpitations, and cardiac arrest.
- As many as 10% have episodes of sudden cardiac arrest.
- Congenital deafness in the family often is associated with a particularly malignant form of hereditary LQTS (Jervell and Lange–Nielsen syndrome).

EKG
- Prolonged QT_C and abnormal *T*-wave (repolarization)
- Any patient who has symptoms and even a borderline prolonged QT_C should be referred to a pediatric cardiologist

Treatment
- Beta blockers are effective in preventing cardiac events in 70% of patients (LQTS type 1)
- Implantable cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD) is highly effective in preventing sudden cardiac death in high risk patients.
- In patients with LQTS with VT, amiodarone is contraindicated.
- Patients should avoid QT prolonging medications.

Ventricular Tachycardia

Background
- Ventricular tachycardia (VT) in children is defined as a tachycardia of at least three successive ventricular beats.
- Nonsustained if the rhythm lasts <30 s and terminates spontaneously.
- Sustained >30 s, usually requires therapeutic intervention.

Causes
- Causative factors include use of drugs, caffeine, and decongestants
- Electrolyte imbalances
- Underlying cardiac disease
- Prior cardiac surgery
- Cardiomyopathy

Clinical presentation
- Many patients are asymptomatic
- Pallor
- Fatigue
- Chest palpitation
- Evidence of unsuspected congenital or acquired cardiac disease
- Syncope

EKG
- Bizarre, wide QRS complex (>120 ms) tachycardia, which usually has a regular rhythm.
- P waves may or may not be recognizable, depending on the ventricular rate, and *T*-waves typically are opposite in polarization to the QRS.
- The QRS complexes may vary in appearance if the ectopic input is multifocal.

Management
- Any patient identified as having VT should be assessed immediately for hemodynamic instability.
- Once clinically stable, such patients require a cardiac evaluation, including radiography, echocardiography, exercise stress testing, and 24-h Holter monitoring.

Ventricular Fibrillation

Background
- Ventricular fibrillation (VF) is a rare pediatric cardiac emergency caused by uncoordinated activity of the cardiac muscle fibers, often resulting in cardiac arrest.
- The heart tremors rather than contracts and, therefore, pulses are not palpable.

EKG
- Bizarre, random waveform without clearly identifiable P waves or QRS complexes and a roaming baseline

Management
- Any patient suspected of having VF requires advanced cardiac life support intervention because circulation ceased within seconds of onset.
  - Asynchronous cardioversion (Defibrillation).

Atrioventricular Block

Background
- Atrioventricular block (AVB) is a sign of prolonged conduction through the atrioventricular node
  - It can be idiopathic or associated with myocarditis, ASD, Ebstein anomaly, or prior heart surgery

Types of atrioventricular block
- First degree heart block
  - PR interval >95th percentile for age or heart rate (typically > 200 ms)
- Second degree heart block
  - Mobitz I: Wenckebach phenomenon
    - Progressive prolongation of PR interval until there is loss of AV conduction
  - Mobitz II: Normal PR interval but periodically, there is a drop in QRS
    - 2:1 AV block 2 P waves for each QRS
    - 3:1 AV block 3 P waves for each QRS
- Third degree heart block
  - No atrial depolarization is conducted through the AV node
  - P and QRS have independent but regular (Fixed rate)
  - Junctional escape rate is 40–60
  - Ventricular escape rate with wider QRS is 20–40
  - AV node has evidence of conduction

Management of heart block
- First-degree and second-degree Mobitz I: observation.
- Second-degree Mobitz II and complete heart block:
  - Temporary transcutaneous or transvenous pacing is the treatment of choice for an emergency involving a slow heart rate (and for asystole) caused by AV blocks.
  - Transfer to a specialized medical center may be advisable.
  - Atropine administration (0.5–1.0 mg) may improve AV conduction in emergencies first- and second degree heart block.
  - Atropine may worsen conduction if the block is in the His–Purkinje system; for example, complete heart block.
  - Isoproterenol may increase the junctional or ventricular escape rate.
  - Permanent pacemaker may be necessary.

Congenital Heart Defects

Atrial Septal Defect (ASD)

Description
- Clinical presentation is similar regardless of location of defect.
- Most often asymptomatic.

Physical examination
- Systolic ejection murmur, best heard in the left upper sternal border, due to increased flow across the pulmonary valve (relative PS).
- Wide fixed split in the second heart sound in all phases of respiration.
- Mid-diastolic rumble murmur can be heard due to increased flow across the tricuspid valve (relative TS).

Chest radiography
- Varying degree of right atrial and ventricular enlargement
- Increased pulmonary vascular markings

Electrocardiogram
- Right axis deviation
- Right ventricular hypertrophy
- Right atrial enlargement
- Right ventricular conduction delay
- Left superior axis in ostium primum defect

Indications for closure
- Asymptomatic patients with 2:1 or more left to right shunt and evidence of right ventricular volume overload
- Symptomatic patients (rare)
- Elective closure usually performed between 3 and 5 years of life
- Early closure indicated if patient has other hemodynamically significant lesions or heart failure symptoms
- *SBE Prophylaxis* is not recommended except within the first 6 months of transcatheter closure or if there is a residual left to right shunt following closure

Ostium secundum defect
- Incidence: the most common type of ASD
- Anatomy: located in the mid portion of the atrial septum
- Associated syndromes
  - Holt–Oram syndrome
  - Upper limb anomalies (radius)
- Closure can be performed with transcatheter or surgical approach

Ostium primum defect
- Anatomy.
  - Located in the lower portion of the atrial septum adjacent to the atrioventricular valves.
  - May be associated with a cleft mitral valve.
  - If there is an associated inlet ventricular septal defect and common atrioventricular valve, the defect is known as a complete atrioventricular (AV) canal defect or endocardial cushion defect.
- Associated syndrome: Down syndrome.
- Closure is performed surgically and may include closure of the mitral valve cleft.

Sinus venosus defect
- Anatomy.
  - Located at the junction of the pulmonary veins and the posterior–superior wall of the atrium.
  - Often associated with anomalous drainage of the right pulmonary veins to the superior vena cava.
- Closure is performed surgically and usually includes baffling of right pulmonary veins to the left atrium.

Ventricular Septal Defect (VSD)

Description
- Most common cardiac malformation
- If there is a pressure difference between two ventricles (>30 mmHg) the defect is classified as restrictive; if there is the pressure difference between the two ventricles is <30 mmHg the defect is classified as non restrictive.
- Anatomy.
  - Membranous (perimembranous, conoventricular).
  - Conoseptal, supracristal, subpulmonic may be associated with aortic insufficiency.
  - Muscular type is located in the mid portion or the apex and may be single or multiple type (Swiss cheese septum).
  - Inlet (atrioventricular canal defect).

Clinical presentation
- Heart failure develops if there is a large left to right shunt that causes left ventricular volume overload.
- Large VSD can be symptomatic in infancy and cause heart failure if left untreated.
- Physical examination.
  - Loud harsh holosystolic murmur, best heard at the left lower sternal border radiating to the back.
  - Increase S2 or single S2 if pulmonary hypertension present.
  - Left ventricular heave with hyperdynamic precordium.
  - Mid-diastolic rumble in the mitral area due to increased flow across the mitral valve (relative mitral stenosis).
  - Systolic ejection murmur at the left upper sternal border due to increased flow across the pulmonary valve (relative pulmonary stenosis).

Chest radiography
- Minimal cardiomegaly and increase pulmonary vasculature in small defects
- Cardiomegaly with prominence of left atrium and left ventricle in large defects

EKG
- Left ventricular or biventricular hypertrophy
- Left atrial enlargement
- *T*-waves inversions in the left lateral leads
- Ventricular axis left superior in inlet VSD

Course
- Small defects close spontaneously 30–50%.
- Small muscular type is likely to close up to 80% than membranous type which is up to 35%.
- Patients with conoseptal (supracristal, subpulmonic) are at higher risk to develop aortic valve regurgitation.

Treatment
- Diuretics
- Digoxin
- Nutritional supplementation (higher calorie formula, nasogastric feedings)
- Synagis

Indications for closure
- Heart failure symptoms with failure to thrive
- Pulmonary hypertension

Closure is performed surgically
- *SBE Prophylaxis is not recommended,* except within the first 6 months of closure or if there is a residual left to right shunt following closure.

Patent Ductus Arteriosus (PDA)

Description
- PDA persisting >1 week in term infant is very unlikely to close spontaneously or with pharmacological intervention.
- The wall is deficient in both mucoid endothelial layer and muscular layer.
- In preterm infants PDA has normal structure and the patency is a result of hypoxia, and immaturity, early pharmacological or surgical intervention is not required (except if unable to manage HF) and spontaneous closure occurs in most instances.

Clinical presentation
- Small PDA is usually asymptomatic.
- Large PDA will result in heart failure similar to large VSD.
- Physical examination.
  - Continuous machinery murmur in neonate.
  - Continuous (bruit) in older child, heard best along the left clavicle.
  - Wide pulse pressure and bounding peripheral pulse.
  - Left ventricular heave.

Chest radiography
- Prominent pulmonary artery, with increased pulmonary vascular markings
- Cardiomegaly involving left atrium and left ventricle

EKG
- Left ventricular or biventricular hypertrophy
- Left atrial enlargement
- *T*-wave inversions in left lateral leads

Prognosis
- Patient with small PDA may live normal life span with few or no cardiac symptoms
- Infective endocarditis may be seen at any age

Treatment
- Diuretics
- Digoxin
- Nutritional supplementation (higher calorie formula, nasogastric feedings)
- Synagis

Indications for closure
- Heart failure
- Pulmonary hypertension

Closure is performed transcatheter or surgically
- *SBE Prophylaxis not recommended* except within the first 6 months of closure or if there is a residual left to right shunt following closure.

Pulmonary Valve Stenosis (PS)

Description
- Critical pulmonary stenosis of the newborn
  - Inadequate antegrade pulmonary blood flow because of severe stenosis
  - Patent ductus arteriosus supplies pulmonary blood flow
  - Right to left shunt through the atrial septal defect
  - Cyanotic newborn
- Valvar pulmonary stenosis
  - Often asymptomatic

Physical examination
- Harsh systolic ejection murmur in the pulmonic area
- Thrill may be present in severe stenosis
- Valve click can be heard at the left mid sternal border
- S2 may be soft in severe stenosis
- Right ventricular lift present in severe stenosis

Associated syndromes
- Noonan's syndrome
- William's syndrome

Chest X-ray
- Prominent main pulmonary artery
- Diminished pulmonary vascular markings (newborn with critical PS)

EKG
- Right axis deviation
- Right ventricular hypertrophy

Indication for intervention
- Right ventricular hypertrophy
- Estimated gradient > 50 mmHg

Treatment
- Transcatheter balloon dilation of the pulmonary valve
- Surgical valvotomy

Prognosis
- If gradient < 30 mmHg, not likely to progress.
- Pulmonary insufficiency following treatment may require intervention later in life.
- *SBE prophylaxis* is recommended in the following situations:
  - Cyanosis.

Peripheral Pulmonary Stenosis (PPS)

Description
- Single or multiple stenosis anywhere along the major branches of the pulmonary artery

Clinical presentation
- Systolic ejection murmur best heard in the axillae and across the precordium, can be heard on the back as well
- Mild PPS is a normal finding in newborns and resolves spontaneously

Associated syndromes
- Williams syndrome

- Alagille syndrome
- Noonan syndrome

Prognosis
- Newborn PPS resolves spontaneously between 3 and 6 months of life.
- PPS associated with syndrome or presenting later in life may require balloon angioplasty or surgical intervention.
- *SBE prophylaxis: not recommended*

Aortic Stenosis (AS)

Description
- Bicuspid aortic valve
  - One of the most common congenital heart lesions identified in up to 2% of adult with aortic stenosis
  - Usually asymptomatic in childhood
- Types of aortic stenosis.
  - Valvar aortic stenosis: occurs due to fusion of the valve commissures, malformation of the valve leaflets and is more common in patients with a bicuspid or unicuspid aortic valve.
  - Subvalvular stenosis: associated with other congenital heart defects, usually discovered after correction of other anomalies, in childhood may progress rapidly in severity.
  - Supravalvular aortic stenosis is the least common type, associated with Williams syndrome.
- Aortic stenosis can be associated with other left ventricular outflow tract lesions such as coarctation of the aorta, interrupted aortic arch, mitral stenosis.
- Ventricular septal defect is a common association.

Clinical presentation
- Critical aortic stenosis of the newborn
  - Inadequate flow across the aortic valve
  - PDA is needed to maintain blood flow to the body
  - Left ventricular failure can occur
  - Heart failure symptoms
- Valvar aortic stenosis in older child
  - Often asymptomatic
  - Murmur
  - Chest pain
  - Dizziness or syncope with exercise
- Sudden death has been reported in children with aortic stenosis.
- Physical examination
  - Systolic ejection murmur loudest in the aortic area, radiating to the carotids
  - Subaortic stenosis murmur may be loudest at the left mid-sternal border
  - Thrill in the suprasternal notch (valvar aortic stenosis)
  - Valve click at the left mid sternal border
  - Soft S2
  - Left ventricular heave
  - Early diastolic murmur of aortic insufficiency

Chest radiography
- Prominent ascending aorta
- Normal size of the heart or cardiomegaly

EKG
- LVH, and strain
- Inverted *T*-wave in the left precordial leads

Associated syndrome
- Williams syndrome (supravalvar aortic stenosis)
- Turner syndrome (bicuspid aortic valve)

Indications for treatment
- Left ventricular hypertrophy
- Symptoms
- Estimated peak gradient > 60 mmHg by continuous-wave Doppler
- Systolic gradient > 40 mmHg by direct catheter measurement

Treatment
- Balloon valvuloplasty of the aortic valve
- Surgical valvotomy
- Aortic valve replacement (artificial or tissue valve, Ross procedure)

Prognosis
- Aortic stenosis is a progressive disease.
- High rate of reintervention, particularly in neonates with critical aortic stenosis.
- Sudden death is significant in severe obstruction, during or immediately after exercise.
- *SBE prophylaxis: not recommended*

Coarctation of Aorta

Description
- Constriction of aorta of varying degree may occur at any point from the transverse arch to iliac bifurcation.
- 98% instances occur just below the left subclavian artery at the origin of ductus arteriosus (juxta-ductal coarctation).

Clinical presentations
- Neonates (critical coarctation)
  - Flow to the descending aorta is inadequate
  - Rapidly symptomatic as soon as the PDA closes
  - Lower body hypoperfusion
  - Shock/metabolic acidosis
  - Severe heart failure

- Older children.
  - Asymptomatic.
  - Presented with hypertension.
  - Children and adolescents may complain about weakness or pain in legs after exercise.
- Physical examination.
  - Differential blood pressures between the right arm and leg (right arm blood pressure > 10 mmHg higher than the leg).
  - Diminished femoral pulses.
  - Radial–femoral delay is a very important sign.
  - Systolic murmur is usually heard along the left sternal border third and fourth intercostal space, can be heard infra-scapular area and occasionally to the neck.

Chest radiography
- Cardiomegaly and pulmonary congestion in infants with severe coarctation.
- Enlarged left subclavian artery produces a prominent shadow in the left superior mediastinum (E sign).
- Notching of the superior border of the ribs in late adolescent.

EKG
- May be normal in young children.
- Older patient may show left ventricular hypertrophy.

Associated syndromes
- Turner syndrome (the most common lesion associated with Turner syndrome is bicuspid aortic valve).
- PHACE syndrome (face and heart): (posterior fossa anomalies, facial hemangioma, arterial anomalies, cardiac anomalies, aortic coarctation, eye anomalies) may have stroke.

Indications for treatment
- PDA-dependent
- Hypertension
- Left ventricular hypertrophy
- Gradient between arm and leg > 20 mmHg

Treatment
- In neonates with critical coarctation prostaglandin E1 to reopen the PDA
- Surgical excision
- Balloon angioplasty or stent placement

Prognosis
- Rebound hypertension in the immediate postoperative period and late after repair can occur.
- Re-coarctation at site of repair that can be treated with balloon angioplasty, stent or surgery.
- Association with Berry aneurysm and hypertension may cause cerebrovascular accidents.
- *SBE prophylaxis: not recommended*

Tetralogy of Fallot

Description
- Constellation of findings that are the result of abnormal development of the conotruncal area in fetal life
- Tetralogy
  - Multiple levels of right ventricular outflow tract obstruction: infundibular, valvar and supravalvar
  - Ventricular septal defect due to anterior deviation of the conal septum
  - Aortic override of the ventricular septum due to anterior deviation of the conal septum
  - Right ventricular hypertrophy due to the RVOT obstruction

Clinical Presentation
- Cyanosis at birth (severe RVOT obstruction)
- Murmur
- Paroxysmal hypercyanotic attack (Blue or Tet spell)
- Physical examination
  - Harsh systolic ejection murmur in the pulmonic area
  - Systolic ejection murmur may be present in the peripheral pulmonary arteries
  - Continuous murmur of PDA or aorto-pulmonary collaterals (heard best in back)
  - RV heave

Chest radiography
- Boot-shaped heart (Coeur en sabot)
- Decrease pulmonary blood flow
- Absent main pulmonary artery segment
- Right aortic arch

EKG
- Right axis deviation
- Right ventricular hypertrophy

Associated syndrome
- 22q11.2 deletion (DiGeorge Syndrome)

Treatment
- Cyanosis in newborn
  - Prostaglandin E in neonates with severe obstruction
- Hypercyanotic spells
  - Calming behavior (mother, pacifier, quiet room)
  - Knee chest position
  - Squatting if older child
  - Oxygen
  - Fluid resuscitation
  - Morphine
  - Sodium bicarbonate
  - Phenylephrine
  - Esmolol

Surgery
- Surgical correction electively within first year of life
- Aorto-pulmonary shunt (modified BT shunt) in infancy
- Pulmonary valve replacement often necessary in third to fourth decade of life
- *SBE prophylaxis*: is recommended in the following situations:
  - Cyanosis
  - Within the first 6 months of repair
  - Presence of a residual left to right shunt following repair

Ebstein Anomaly

Description
- Malformation of the tricuspid valve characterized by failure of the tricuspid valve apparatus to separate from the right ventricular myocardium
  - Displacement of the tricuspid valve annulus into the right ventricular body and tricuspid insufficiency
  - Atrialization of a portion of the right ventricle
  - Massive dilation of the right atrium
  - Atrial septal defect or patent foramen ovale

Clinical Presentation
- Cyanosis: right to left shunting through the patent foramen ovale because of severe tricuspid insufficiency causes elevated right atrial pressures
- Newborn with severe form may have marked cyanosis and massive cardiomegaly
- Atrial arrhythmias are common because of atrial enlargement and associated WPW
- Sudden can occur from the arrhythmias
- Physical examination
  - Holosystolic murmur in the tricuspid area
  - Widely split S2
  - Multiple systolic clicks
  - Jugular venous distension
  - Enlarged liver
  - Cyanosis

Chest radiography
- Varies from normal to massive box shaped heart (Cardiomegaly caused by enlargement of the right atrium and ventricle)

EKG
- Right atrial enlargement
- Incomplete right bundle branch block
- Unusual late QRS configuration
- Accessory pathways (Wolff–Parkinson White)

Indications for treatment
- Cyanosis limiting activity
- Heart failure
- Arrhythmias

Treatment
- Tricuspid valve repair or replacement
- Neonates: Closure of the tricuspid valve with placement of an aorto-pulmonary shunt and conversion to a single ventricle physiology
- *SBE prophylaxis*: is recommended if:
  - Cyanosis is present
  - If an artificial valve is present

Transposition of Great Arteries

Description
- Aorta arises from right ventricle and pulmonary artery arises from the left ventricle
- Associated VSD in 20 % of cases

Clinical Presentation
- Cyanosis and tachypnea within the first few days of life once the ductus begin to close
  - Preductal saturation (right hand) may be lower than post ductal saturation (foot) if pulmonary hypertension present
- Hypoxemia is severe despite the oxygen therapy
- Physical examination
  - Parasternal heave may be present
  - Single and loud second heart sound with occasional split
  - Murmur is usually absent or soft ejection murmur may noted at mid left sternal border

Chest X-ray (CXR)
- Narrow mediastinum with small heart tipped on side (Egg on a string)
- Normal pulmonary vascular markings
- *EKG* often normal for a newborn with right ventricular hypertrophy and right axis deviation

Treatment
- If transposition is suspected in a newborn start prostaglandin E1
- If cyanosis is severe, balloon atrial septostomy is performed to improve mixing between the left and right sides of the heart
- Arterial switch procedure is the surgical procedure of choice and performed within the first 2 weeks of life
- Atrial switch was performed previously. Survivors have right ventricular failure and/or arrhythmias
- *SBE prophylaxis recommended prior to surgical repair.*

Total Anomalous Pulmonary Venous Return (TAPVR)

Description
- Abnormal connection of the pulmonary veins to structures other than the left atrium
- Types of TAPVR connections
  - Supracardiac 50%
    - Vertical vein to the left SVC
    - Right SVC
  - Coronary sinus or directly to the right atrium 25%
  - Infracardiac: 20%, obstruction of the veins present 90–100% of these cases
  - Mixed 5%

Clinical presentation
- Cyanosis
- Severe obstruction to pulmonary venous
  - Cyanosis and tachypnea may be prominent without murmur if severe obstruction especially in infra-cardiac group
- Mild-to-moderate obstruction.
  - Infants can be severely ill because of pulmonary hypertension.
  - Continuous murmur can be heard in the pulmonic area.
  - Cyanosis is mild.
- No pulmonary venous obstruction
  - No pulmonary hypertension and cyanosis is absent or mild
  - Murmur of pulmonary stenosis

CXR
- Supracardiac veins: large supracardiac shadow (Snowman appearance)
- Obstructed veins: small heart with ground glass appearance to lung markings

EKG
- RVH
- Peaked *T*-waves

Treatment
- Obstructed TAPVR is a surgical emergency because prostaglandin therapy is usually is not effective
- Other forms require surgical correction in infancy
- *SBE prophylaxis not indicated*

Truncus Arteriosus

Description
- Single arterial trunk supplying systemic, pulmonary, and coronary circulation
- Anatomy
  - Common arterial trunk arising from both the right and left ventricle
  - Ventricular septal defect
  - Pulmonary arteries arise from truncus as a main pulmonary artery or as separate right and left pulmonary arteries
  - Truncal valve may have 3–6 leaflets

Clinical presentation
- Cyanosis
- Murmur
- Heart failure
- Physical examination
  - Systolic ejection murmur in the outflow region
  - Wide pulse pressure
  - Hyperdynamic precordium
  - Aortic insufficiency
  - Multiple valve clicks in systole
- *CXR*: Right, left or combined ventricular hypertrophy, prominent shadow of ascending aorta and aortic knob, increase pulmonary vascularity in the first week of life
- *EKG*: often normal

Associated syndrome
- 22q11.2 deletion

Treatment
- Heart failure treatment
- Early surgical correction due to high risk of pulmonary vascular disease in infancy
  - Closure of the VSD
  - Separation of the pulmonary arteries from the truncus with placement of a conduit or patch to connect pulmonary arteries to the right ventricle
- Repaired patients require reintervention for the right ventricular to pulmonary artery connection, pulmonary artery stenosis or truncal valve insufficiency

Hypoplastic Left Heart Syndrome

Description
- Underdevelopment of the left heart structures
  - Severe stenosis or atresia of the aortic and mitral valves
  - Hypoplasia of the left ventricle
  - Hypoplasia of the aortic arch

Clinical presentation
- Cyanosis
- Circulatory shock when the PDA closes
- Heart failure
- Physical examination

- Murmur of tricuspid insufficiency may be present
- Poor peripheral perfusion

CXR
- Cardiomegaly
- Increased pulmonary vascular markings

EKG
- Diminished left sided forces

Treatment
- Prostaglandin E1 to maintain PDA
- Staged palliation (Norwood or hybrid procedure, bidirectional Glenn, Fontan)

Infective Endocarditis (IE)

Background
- The diagnosis can be obvious in the presence of persistently positive blood cultures with a predisposing cardiac lesion.
- Endocarditis in children is often associated with the presence of a central venous catheter and/or an immunocompromised host.

Clinical presentation
- New regurgitant murmur or heart failure.
- Evidence of emboli to the fundi, skin, digits, or conjunctivae.
- Additional organ systems may be affected by emboli, including the kidneys, spleen, and brain.

The Duke criteria
- The clinical criteria require two major, one major and three minor, or five minor criteria.
- Major criteria:
  - Two positive blood cultures at least 12 h apart
  - Positive echocardiography for vegetation or new valvular regurgitation
- Minor criteria include:
  - Predisposition to IE.
  - Fever.
  - Vascular phenomena (arterial emboli, septic pulmonary infarctions, mycotic aneurysm, intracranial hemorrhage, conjunctival hemorrhages, Janeway lesions.
  - Immunologic phenomena such as glomerulonephritis, Osler nodes, Roth spots, and rheumatoid factor.
  - Single positive blood culture or serologic evidence of active infection with an organism consistent with IE.

Antibiotic prophylaxis
- Guidelines limit prophylaxis to cardiac conditions that have the highest risk of poor outcome from IE.
  - Prosthetic heart valves
  - Previous IE
  - Unrepaired cyanotic heart disease that includes palliative shunts and conduits.
  - Completely repaired congenital heart disease with prosthetic material or device during the first 6 months following the procedure.
  - Repaired congenital heart disease with residual defects at the site or next to the site of the prosthetic device.
  - Valvulopathy in a transplanted heart.

Indication for prophylaxis
- All dental procedures that involve manipulation of gingival tissue or the periapical region of teeth, or perforation of the oral *mucosa*.
- Invasive procedure of the respiratory tract that involves incision or biopsy of the respiratory mucosa, such as tonsillectomy or adenoidectomy.
- Surgical procedures on infected tissue of skin or musculoskeletal.

Prophylactic antibiotics
- Ampicillin or first- or second-generation oral cephalosporins are recommended in nonallergic patients.

Treatment
- Antimicrobial therapy for IE should be administered in a dose designed to provide sustained bactericidal serum concentrations throughout the entire dosing interval.
- The minimum inhibitory concentration should be determined for all patients.
- The duration of intravenous antimicrobial therapy is approximately 4–6 weeks.

Acute Pericarditis

Background
- It is an inflammatory condition of the pericardium.
- It is the most common cause of cardiac chest pain in children.
- Pericarditis often is accompanied by myocarditis.

Causes
- Infection
  - Viral infection is the most common cause of pericarditis in children
  - Bacterial infection; for example, staph and TB
- Autoimmune disease
- Rheumatic fever
- Uremia
- Malignancy
- Reaction to a drug
- After cardiac surgery

- Idiopathic (one third of the cases have no identifiable cause)

Clinical presentation
- Patients report a 10–14-day prodrome of respiratory or gastrointestinal illness.
- Fever
- Chest pain
  - Substernal, sharp
  - Worse with inspiration
  - Relieved by sitting upright and leaning forward.
  - Radiates to the scapular ridge due to irritation of the phrenic nerves
- Physical examination
  - Tachycardia
  - Pulsus paradoxus
  - Muffled heart tones
  - Friction rub (pathognomonic finding)
    - Scratchy, high-pitched, to-and-fro sound
    - Loudest when the patient is upright and leaning forward
    - Heard best in the second to fourth intercostal spaces along the left sternal border or the midclavicular line

Diagnosis
- Labs may show elevations of the white blood cell count, erythrocyte sedimentation rate, and C-reactive protein value
- The plasma troponin concentration also may be increased, if myocardial involvement

CXR
- Usually appears normal in patients who have acute pericarditis
- When a significant pericardial effusion is present, the heart may have a triangular shape with a smooth border, known as a "water-bottle heart." (Fig. 1)

EKG
- Diffuse ST segment elevation and PR segment depression
- *If* associated pericardial effusion
  - Low-voltage QRS complex on EKG
  - Amplitude of the QRS complex returns to normal after the pericardial effusion resolves or is drained
- Echocardiography
  - Pericardial effusion
  - Evidence of decreased right ventricular filling (right atrial collapse, right ventricular free wall compression distended systemic veins

Management
- Identifying and treating the underlying cause
- For patients who have idiopathic or viral pericarditis

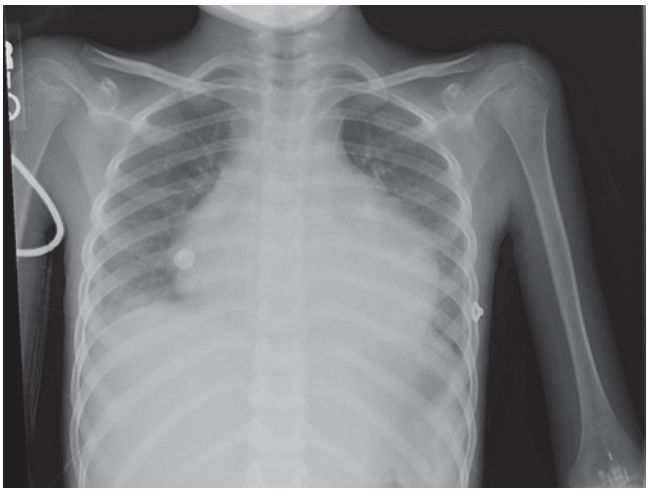


Fig. 1 Eight-year-old boy presented with chest pain, tachycardia, and shortness of breath; *CXR* shows moderate cardiomegaly suggestive of pericardial effusion. Nonspecific increased central interstitial lung markings, presumably viral pneumonitis

  - Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) are the mainstay of therapy
- Symptoms resolve within days for most patients
- Ibuprofen is the preferred first-line agent because it has the lowest incidence of adverse effects
- Pericardiocentesis if there is evidence of tamponade

Complications
- Recurrence (most likely with autoimmune causes)
- Constrictive pericarditis

Constrictive Pericarditis

Background
- Obliteration of pericardial space secondary to inflammation
- Tuberculosis is the most common cause worldwide

Clinical presentation
- Signs and symptoms of right-sided heart failure
- Physical examination
  - Faint friction rub
  - Diastolic knock
  - Jugular venous distention
  - Hepatomegaly

Cardiac Tamponade

Background
- Pericardial effusion rapidly exceeds the pericardial reserve volume.
- Increased intrapericardial pressures and impaired filling.

- The result is decreased cardiac output.

Clinical presentation
- Sudden onset of acute dyspnea
- Distant heart sound
- Pulsus paradoxus
- More than a 10-mmHg drop in systolic blood pressure during inspiration

CXR
- Water-bottle heart

EKG
- Electrical alternans: Cyclic variation in QRS caused by excessive motion of the heart within a fluid-filled pericardial sac
- Decreased voltage

Management
- Requires an emergent pericardiocentesis

Acute Rheumatic Fever (ARF)

Background
- ARF is caused by previous group A streptococcal (GAS) pharyngeal infection,
- It is most common among children aged 5–15 years.

Clinical presentation: (Jones criteria)
- Evidence of recent GAS infection
  - Positive throat culture or rapid strep test
  - Elevated or rising antistreptococcal antibody titer
- Major criteria
  - Arthritis (migratory polyarthritis in 75 % of the cases)
  - Carditis or valvulitis
  - Erythema marginatum
  - Subcutaneous nodules
  - Sydenham chorea
- Minor criteria
  - Fever
  - Arthralgia
  - Elevated acute phase-reactant
  - Prolonged PR interval

Diagnosis
- Evidence of a preceding GAS infection along with the presence of two major manifestations or one major and two minor manifestations.
- Streptococcal antibodies: antistreptolysin O (ASO), antihyaluronidase (AHase), and antideoxyribonuclease B (anti-DNase B) antibodies.

Treatment of ARF
- Aspirin 80–100 mg/kg per day and continued until all symptoms have resolved.
- Carditis is managed with therapies used for heart failure.
- Corticosteroids are used if carditis is severe.
- Eradication of GAS requires the same antibiotic regimens that are used to treat GAS pharyngitis.
- Household contacts should have throat culture and if the cultures are positive for GAS, they should be treated.
- *Prophylactic antibiotics* should be started immediately after the therapeutic antibiotic course is complete:
  - Penicillin V K, sulfadiazine, or macrolides for patients at lower risk of ARF recurrence
  - Benzathine penicillin G intramuscularly every 4 weeks for patients at higher risk of ARF recurrence
  - Prophylaxis should continue for several years, typically until a patient is an adult and recurrence-free for 10 years
  - Longer prophylaxis is indicated if the patient has residual heart disease.

Kawasaki Disease (KD)

Background
- Etiology of Kawasaki Disease remains unknown.
- Many aspects of KD mimic infectious processes, such as toxin-mediated illnesses and viral illnesses.
- Inflammatory cell infiltration into vascular tissue leads to vascular damage, but the stimulus for this inflammatory infiltration has not been identified.

Clinical presentation
- Children who have at least 5 days of fever (3 days in atypical KD) and 4 of 5 of the principal criteria meet the case definition of KD.
- Fewer than four criteria if they have coronary artery involvement
- Fever is the hallmark of KD.
  - Typically above 39 °C, which has abrupt onset and may not remit with antipyretic medications.
  - Fever typically lasts 11–12 days without treatment.
- Bilateral, nonexudative conjunctivitis.
  - Spares the limbus (ie, with clearing around the iris).
  - Anterior uveitis also may occur.
- Oropharyngeal manifestations
  - Diffusely erythematous oropharynx
  - Red-fissured lips
  - Strawberry tongue
- KD rash
  - Appears within 5 days of fever onset
  - Often starts as desquamation in the perineal area
  - Diffuse, erythematous, maculopapular rash

  - Morbilliform rashes, erythema multiforme, and erythroderma also can occur.
- Cervical lymph node enlargement
  - It is the least common criterion found in patients who have KD
  - Usually unilateral
  - Anterior cervical chain
  - Nonfluctuant, and nontender
  - The diameter should be > 1.5 cm
- Peripheral extremity changes:
  - Swelling of the hands and feet
  - Erythema of the palms and soles in the acute phase of the disease
  - Periungual peeling from the fingers and the toes begins 2–3 weeks after the onset of the fever
- Other signs and symptoms
  - Myalgias
  - Arthralgias
  - Arthritis
  - Meningeal inflammation
  - Transient facial palsies
  - Sensorineural hearing loss
  - Abdominal pain
  - Vomiting, diarrhea
  - Acalculous distention of the gallbladder (hydrops)
  - Hepatomegaly

Incomplete KD

- A challenging subset of patients who do not meet the classic criteria of KD
- More common in infants and older children
- American Heart Association (AHA) recommendations:
  - Use of laboratory values and echocardiography in those children who have only a few clinical features of the disease
  - Consultation with a KD expert if needed

Critical to know

- It is recommended that infants younger than age 6 months who have had ≥ 7 days of fever of unclear etiology and elevated inflammatory markers undergo echocardiography.
- Concomitant infections do not preclude the diagnosis of KD.
- Clinicians should not dismiss the diagnosis of KD in children who have symptoms that are attributed commonly to viral illnesses.

Laboratory Studies

- Leukocytosis with a predominance of neutrophils and immature forms
- Normocytic normochromic anemia
- Platelet counts usually are elevated by the end of the first week of illness (450,000/mm^3), and with platelet counts averaging 700,000/mm^3 by the third week, Platelet counts exceeding 1 million/mm^3 are not uncommon
- Inflammatory markers (ESR and CRP) are elevated in nearly all cases of KD
- Transaminases are elevated in approximately 40 % of patients with KD
- Mild hyperbilirubinemia can occur
- Hypoalbuminemia and hyponatremia in severe cases

Echocardiography

- If the diagnosis is clear, treatment for KD should not be withheld while waiting to schedule or obtain the results of echocardiography.
- Echocardiography should be obtained at diagnosis, 1–2 weeks later, and 6 weeks post discharge.
- Children who have persistent or recrudescent fever or who have known CALs (coronary artery lesion) need close follow-up with a pediatric cardiologist.

Treatment

- Once the diagnosis of KD is confirmed, treatment with high-dose IVIG (2 g/kg) and high-dose ASA (80–100 mg/kg per day divided into four doses) should be instituted promptly and continued until patient is afebrile for 48 h. Treatment is administered within the first 7 days of illness, and by day 10 (as defined by the first day of fever) at the latest.
- Treatment with IVIG after day 10 of illness is reserved for those with ongoing fever and evidence of systemic inflammation on laboratory studies.
- Low-dose ASA is administered until the 6 week visit and then is discontinued if the echocardiographic findings are normal.
- To avoid infusion reactions, premedication with standard dosing of diphenhydramine should be considered strongly.
- IVIG should be administered slowly, over 8–12 h, to avoid hemodynamic instability.
- IVIG can be associated with low-grade fevers within the first 48 h of its administration.
- Hemolytic reactions to IVIG are well described.
- Therapies used in IVIG resistance include corticosteroids or infliximab, (a tumor necrosis factor inhibitor).
- High-dose ASA is continued until patients are afebrile for 24–48 h
- Measles and varicella-containing vaccinations are contraindicated for 11 months after administration of IVIG.

Prognosis

- Incidence of coronary artery involvement in treated children has fallen to less than 5 %, and only 1 % of children develop giant aneurysms.

Myocarditis

Definition
- Inflammation of myocardium

Causes
- Viral infection is most common

Clinical presentation
- Fever
- Hypothermia
- Lethargy
- Respiratory distress
- Chest pain
- Tachycardia (sinus)
- Heart failure
- Shock

Chest X-ray
- Pulmonary edema
- Cardiomegaly may or may not be present

EKG
- Low voltage
- ST *T*-waves abnormalities
- Ischemic changes

Echocardiogram
- Decreased ejection fraction
- Ventricular dilation may or may not be present
- Pericardial effusion

Laboratory
- Elevated CPK, LDH
- Elevated troponin
- CRP or ESR may be elevated
- Cardiac MRI may show early enhancement (inflammation)
- Definitive diagnostic test is myocardial biopsy with PCR, although biopsy can be negative because of the patchy nature of myocarditis

Management
- Supportive treatment
- Evidence for use of immune globulin or corticosteroids is lacking
- Evidence for immune globulin or corticosteroids is lacking
- ECMO or ventricular assist device support
- Heart transplant for refractory heart failure

Cardiomyopathies

Dilated Cardiomyopathy

Description
- Disease of the myocardium characterized by ventricular dilation and decreased ejection fraction

Causes
- Familial with different genetic inheritance
- Cardiotoxic drugs; for example, doxorubicin
- Neuromuscular diseases
- Metabolic/nutritional
- Autoimmune disease
- Severe anemia
- Thyrotoxicosis
- Idiopathic
- Tachyarrhythmia (supraventricular tachycardia, ectopic atrial tachycardia)

Clinical presentation
- Heart failure
- Physical examination
  - Murmur of mitral insufficiency
  - S3
  - Hepatomegaly
  - Jugular venous distention
  - Tachypnea and rales

Chest radiography
- Cardiomegaly
- Pulmonary edema

EKG
- Right and left ventricular hypertrophy
- Atrial enlargement
- Non specific T-wave changes

Echocardiography
- Dilation of all the chambers and poor contractility

Treatment
- Treatment of congestive heart failure
- Treatment of the cause
- Heart transplant for unresponsive cases

Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy

Description
- Disease of the myocardium characterized by increase ventricular wall thickness and mass with normal or hyperdynamic ventricular function

Causes
- Genetic disorder
  - Familial hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy is autosomal dominant in 50 % of the cases
- Idiopathic
- Metabolic

Clinical presentation
- Sudden death (the most devastating presentation)
- Dyspnea (the most common presenting symptoms in adults)
- Syncope or presyncope
- Angina
- Palpitation
- Dizziness
- Physical examination
  - Double apical impulse
  - S4 is commonly heard
  - Systolic ejection crescendo–decrescendo murmur (best heard at the apex and left sternal border)
    - Valsalva maneuver or standing increase the murmur (due to decrease in the preload)
    - Murmur decrease with hand grip (due to increase in the afterload) or Squatting (due to increase in the preload)
  - Murmur of mitral insufficiency

CXR
- Mild cardiac enlargement
- Left ventricular and left atrial hypertrophy

EKG
- Left ventricular hypertrophy
- Inverted *T*-waves in left leads
- Nonspecific *T*-wave abnormality

Echocardiography
- Shows the pattern of hypertrophy
- Shows the flow gradient across the left and right ventricular outflow tracts
- Diastolic dysfunction

Management
- In symptomatic patient Beta-blocker or calcium channel blocker decreases the outflow obstruction and improve the symptoms
- Implantable defibrillator if
  - Aborted cardiac arrest
  - History of ventricular tachycardia
  - Family history of sudden cardiac death
  - Massive hypertrophy (A left ventricular (LV) wall thickness $\geq$30 mm)
- Myomectomy
- Heart Transplant

Restrictive Cardiomyopathy

Description
- Disease of the myocardium characterized by elevated diastolic filling pressures, dilated right and left atrium and normal ventricular size and function

Causes
- Idiopathic
- Sarcoidosis
- Mucopolysaccharidoses
- Radiation
- Malignancy

Clinical presentation
- Heart failure
- Pulmonary hypertension
- Atrial arrhythmias
- Thromboembolism

CXR
- Mild to moderate atrial enlargement

EKG
- Biatrial enlargement
- Nonspecific *T*-wave abnormalities

Echocardiography
- Atrial enlargement
- Normal left and right ventricular size and function

Management
- Treatment of heart failure and arrhythmia
- Heart transplantation

Dyslipidemia

Background
- Dyslipidemia refers to a pathologic imbalance in the levels of low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol, HDL cholesterol, and triglycerides
- It is recognized as a risk factor for adult CVD
- Elevated cholesterol levels continue to have elevated cholesterol into adulthood
- Treating childhood dyslipidemia may help prevent or reduce the risk of adult CVD and reduce the atherosclerotic burden later in life.

ECG Interpretation and Cardiac Arrhythmias Review Cases: (Figs. 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, and 16)

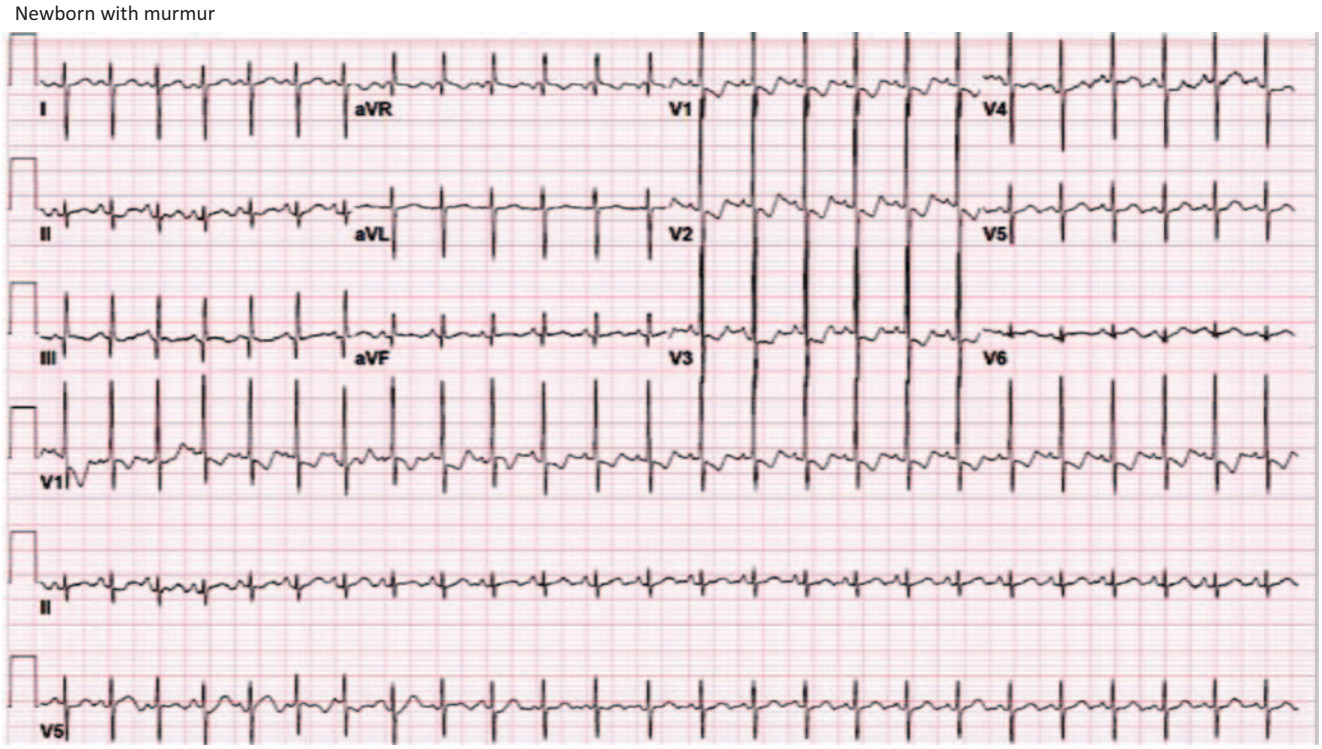


Fig. 2 Newborn with murmur. (Dx: Normal ECG)

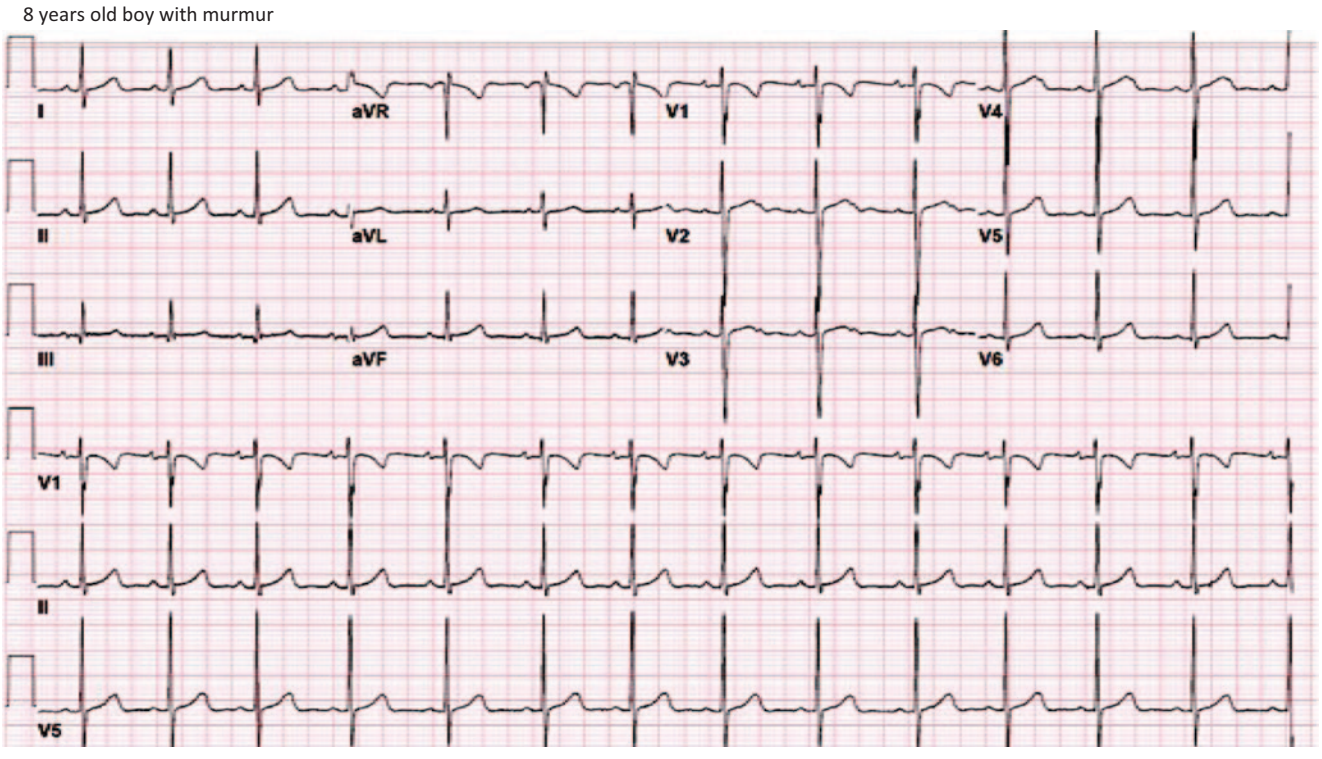
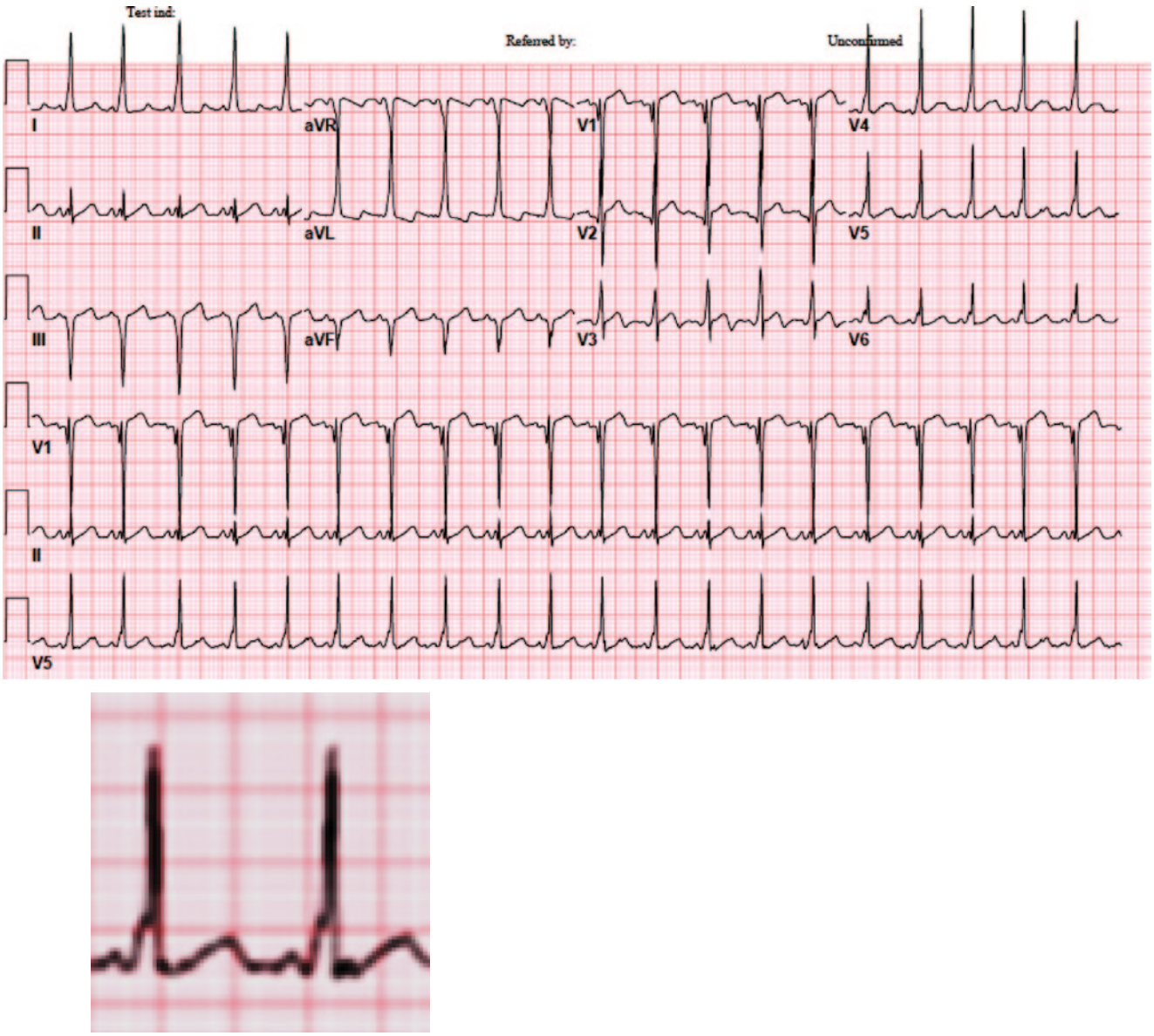


Fig. 3 Eight-year-old boy with murmur. (Dx: Normal ECG)

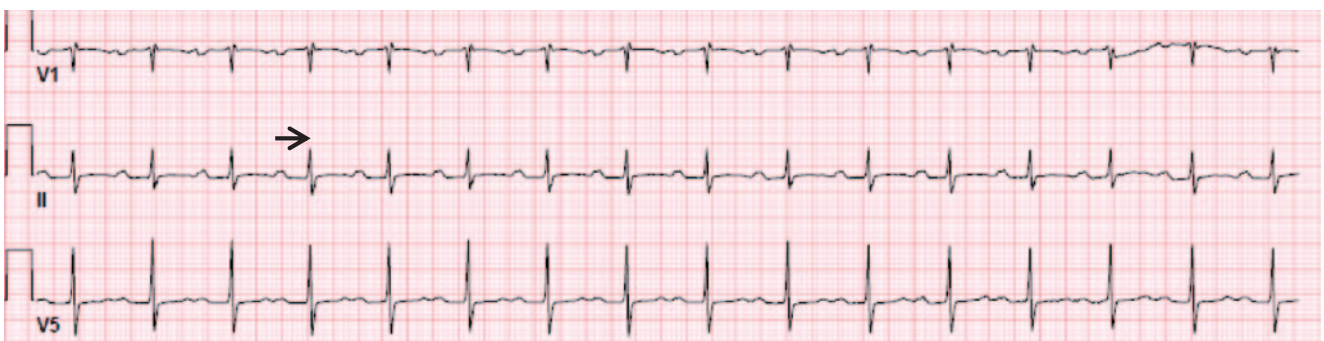
8 years old boy with palpitation



Dx: WPW (short PR with delta wave)

Fig. 4 Eight-year-old boy with palpitation. (Dx: WPW (short PR with delta wave))

14 years old asymptomatic with cardiac murmur



Dx: First degree AV block (PR = 230ms)

Fig. 5 Fourteen-years-old asymptomatic child with cardiac murmur. (Dx: First degree AV block (PR = 230 ms))

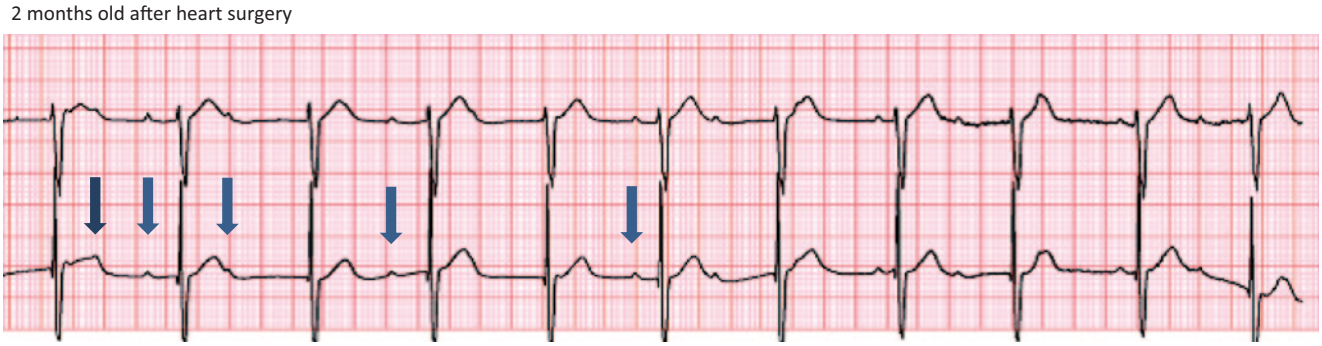


Fig. 6 Two-month-old child after heart surgery. (Dx: Complete heart block (Bradycardia with AV dissociation))

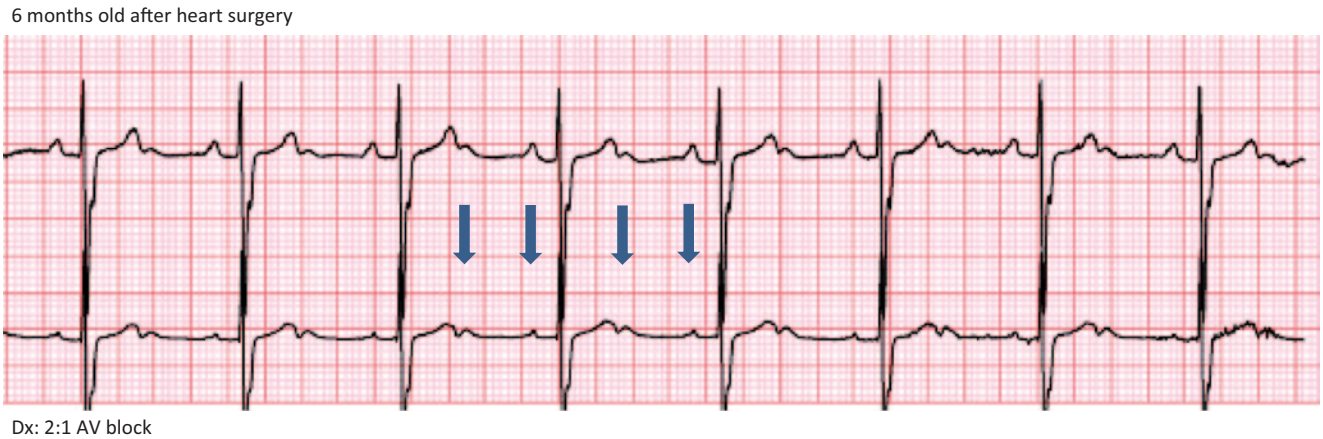


Fig. 7 Six-month-old child after heart surgery. (Dx: 2:1 AV block)

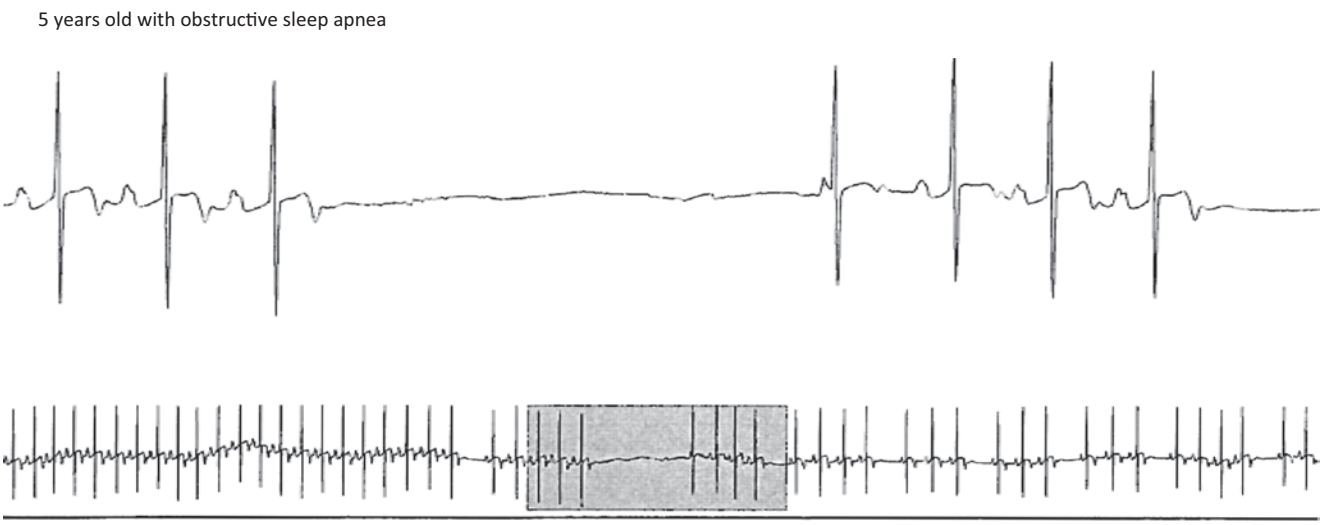


Fig. 8 Five-year-old with obstructive sleep apnea. (Dx: Sinus pause followed by junctional escape beat and sinus rhythm)

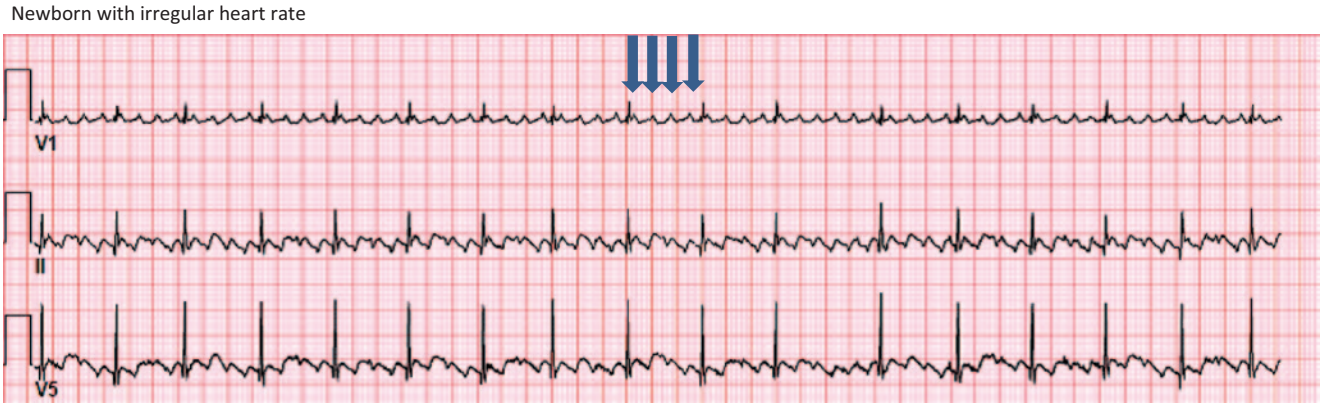


Fig. 9 Newborn with irregular heart rate. (Dx: Atrial flutter with 4 to 1 conduction)

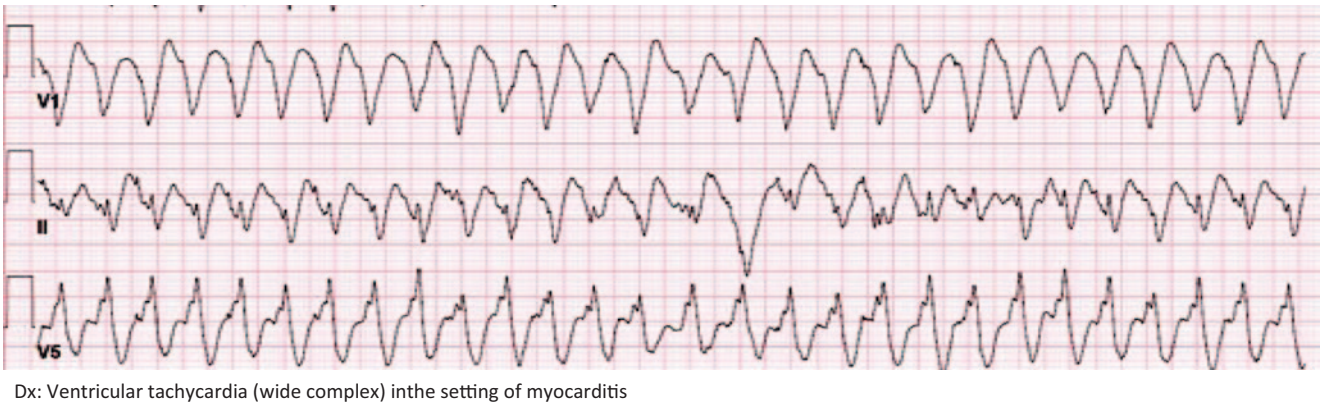


Fig. 10 Six-year-old child presented with difficulty breathing. (Dx: Ventricular tachycardia (wide complex) in the setting of myocarditis)

Screening target group

- Birth to 2 years: No lipid screening.
- For age 2–8 years: Obtain fasting lipid profile (FLP) only if FHx (+) for early CVD, parent with dyslipidemia, any other RFs (+), or high-risk condition.
- For age 9–21 years: Obtain universal lipid screen between age 9–11 and 17–21 years, with nonfasting non-HDL-C (for age 9–19 years < 145; for age 20–21 < 190) or FLP and manage per lipid algorithms as needed

Recommendations	For age < 10 years	For age 10–19 years	Age 20–21
Target TGs	TGs < 100, LDL-C < 130	TGs < 130, LDL C < 130	TGs < 150, LDL-C < 160
Manage as per algorithm	TG ≥ 100 < 500, LDL-C ≥ 130 ≤ 250	TG ≥ 130 < 500 LDL-C ≥ 130 ≤ 250	High levels—manage as per adult treatment panel (ATP III algorithm)
Consult lipid specialist	TGs > 500, LDL-C > 250	TGs > 500, LDL-C > 250	

- Risk stratification and management of children with conditions predisposing to accelerated atherosclerosis and early CVD
  - Step 1: Risk stratification by disease process
  - Step 2: Access CV risk factors (≥2 RFs move to High risk)
  - Step 3: Risk specific cutoff points and treatment goals
  - Step 4: Lifestyle change
  - Step 5: Drug therapy

	Step 1	Step 2	Step 3	Step 4
High risk	1. DM I and 2 2. CKD/ end stage renal disease/ post kidney transplant 3. Post-heart transplant 4. Kawasaki disease with current coronary artery aneurysms	*CV risk factors* 1. Family history of early CVD (♂ ≤55 y*ears*; ♀ ≤65y*ears*) 2. Fasting lipid profile 3. Smoking history 4. BP (3 separate occasions) for age/sex/ht (percentile) 5. Height, weight, BMI 6. Diet, physical activity/ exercise history	*High-risk cutoffs* 1. BMI ≤85th percentile 2. BP < 90th percentile for age, sex and ht percentile 3. LDL-C < 120, TG < 90 Non HDL-C < 120 4.FG < 100, HBA1c < 7%	Intensive life style management, CHILD 1, Activity Rx, Wt. loss as needed + condition specific management
Moderate risk	1. Kawasaki Disease with regressed coronary aneurysms 2. Chronic inflammatory disease 3. HIV 4. Nephrotic syndrome		*Moderate-risk cutoffs* 1. BMI <90th percentile 2. BP ≤95th percentile for age, sex and ht percentile 3. LDL-C < 130, TG < 130 Non-HDL-C < 140 4. FG < 100, HBA1c < 7%	Intensive lifestyle management, CHILD 1, Activity Rx, Wt. loss as needed

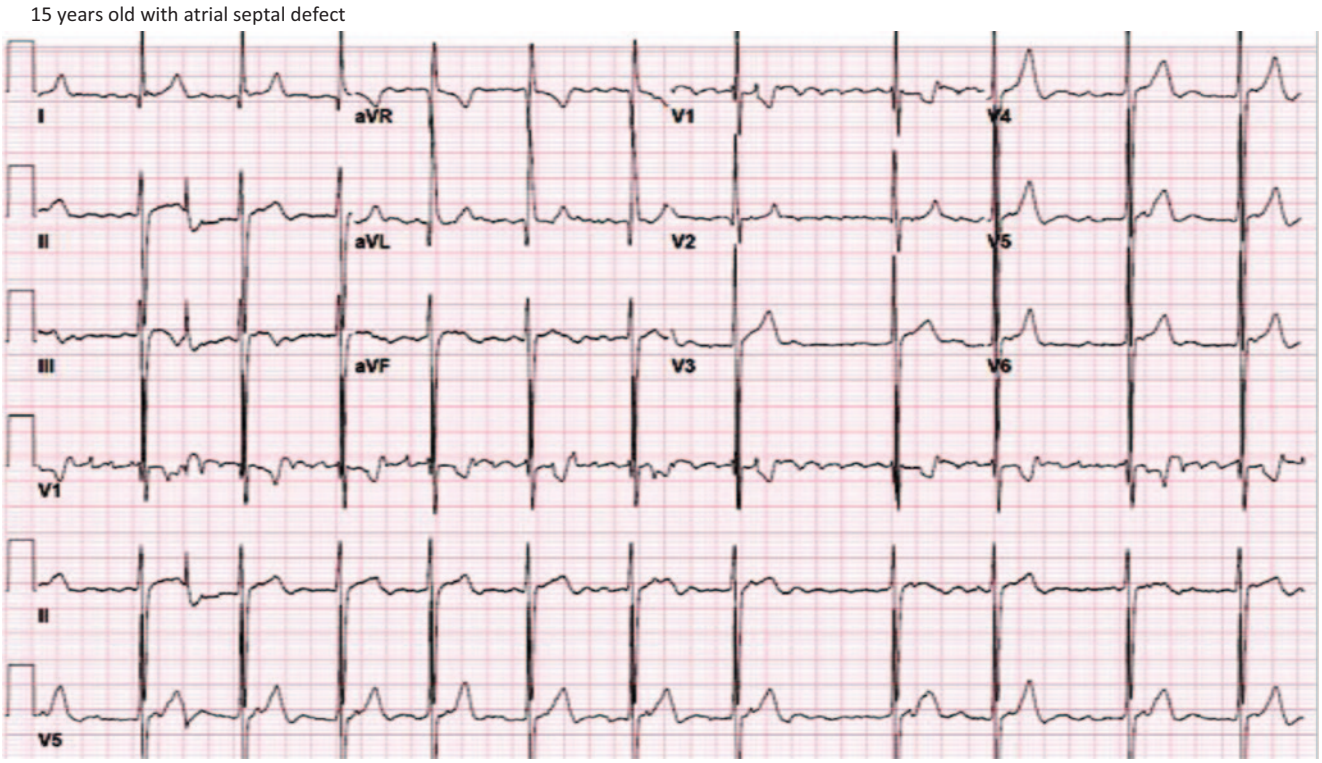


Fig. 11 Fifteen-year-old with atrial septal defect. (Dx: Atrial fibrillation (irregularly irregular with no clear P wave))

Management

- Drug Treatment
  - LDL > 190 mg/dL if no risk factor despite the diet therapy
  - LDL > 160 mg/dL with positive family history or one high-risk factor or two moderate-risk factors
  - LDL > 130 mg/dL with two high-risk factors, one high- and two moderate-risk factors or clinical cardiovascular disease
- Statins
  - The recommended initial medication therapy for dyslipidemia in children and adolescents
  - Adverse effects of statins
    - Hepatic transaminase levels elevation
    - Creatine kinase elevation and rarely episodes of rhabdomyolysis

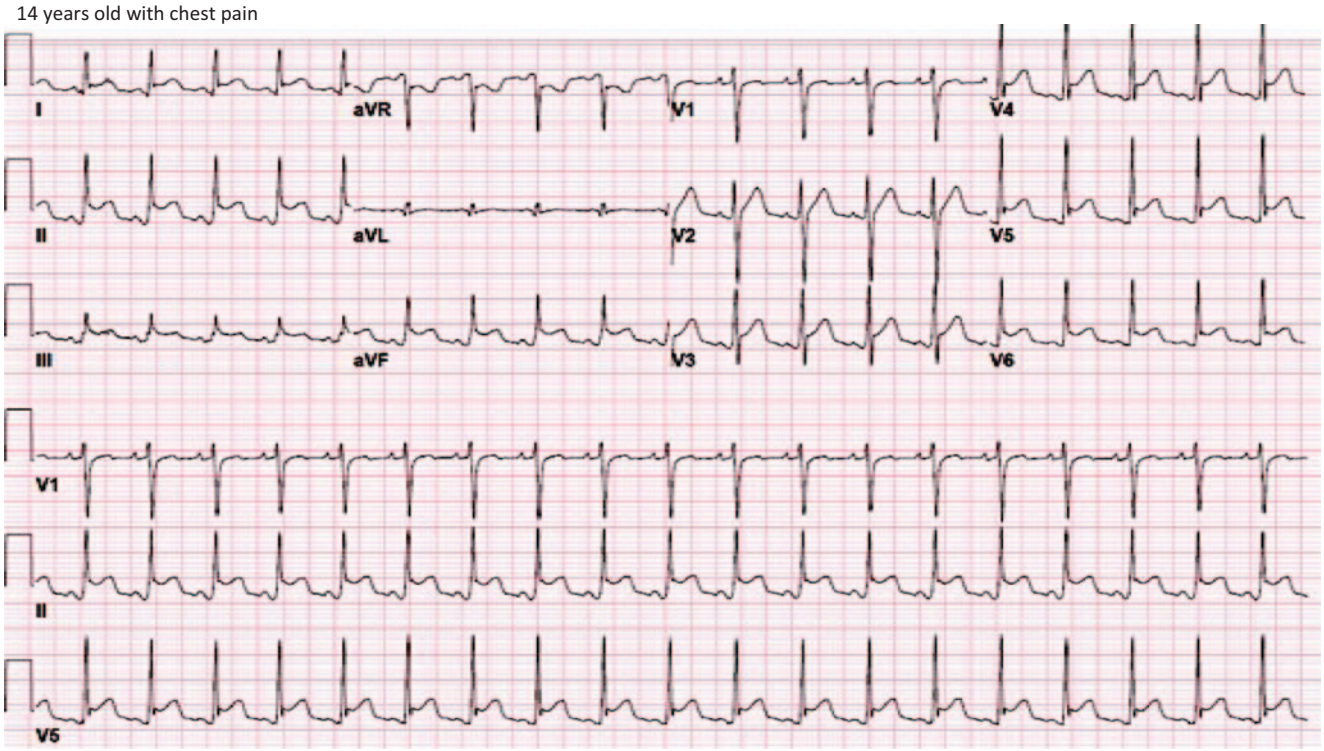


Fig. 12 Fourteen-year-old child with chest pain. (Dx: Diffuse ST elevation, perimyocarditis)

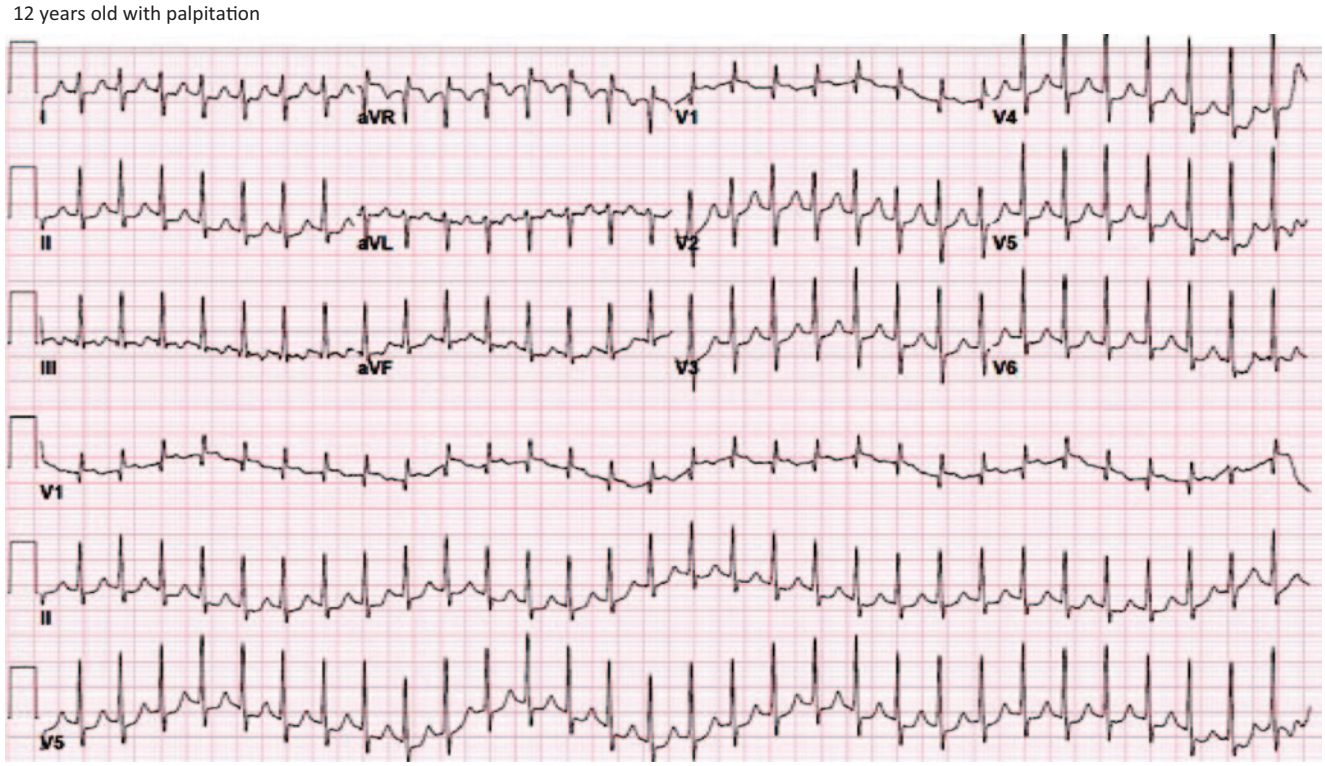
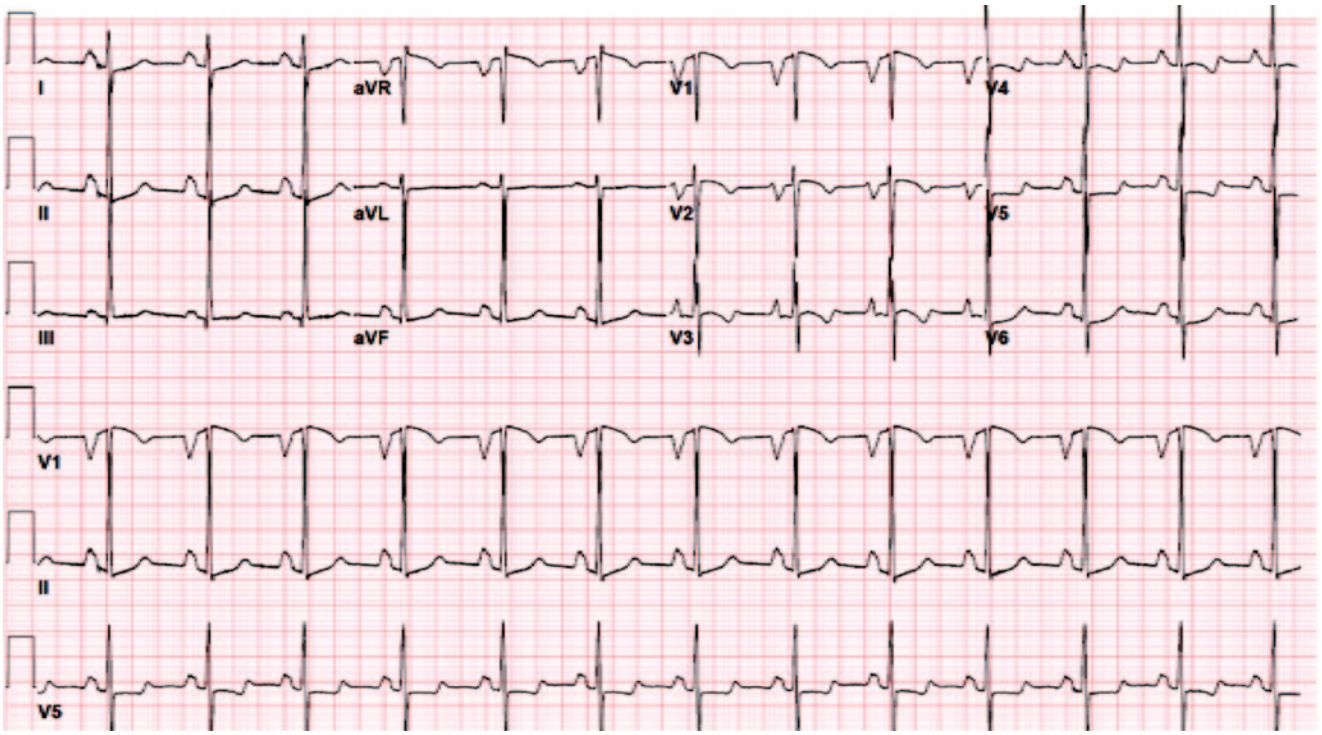


Fig. 13 Twelve-year-old child with palpitation. (Dx: Supraventricular tachycardia (Narrow complex tachycardia regular))

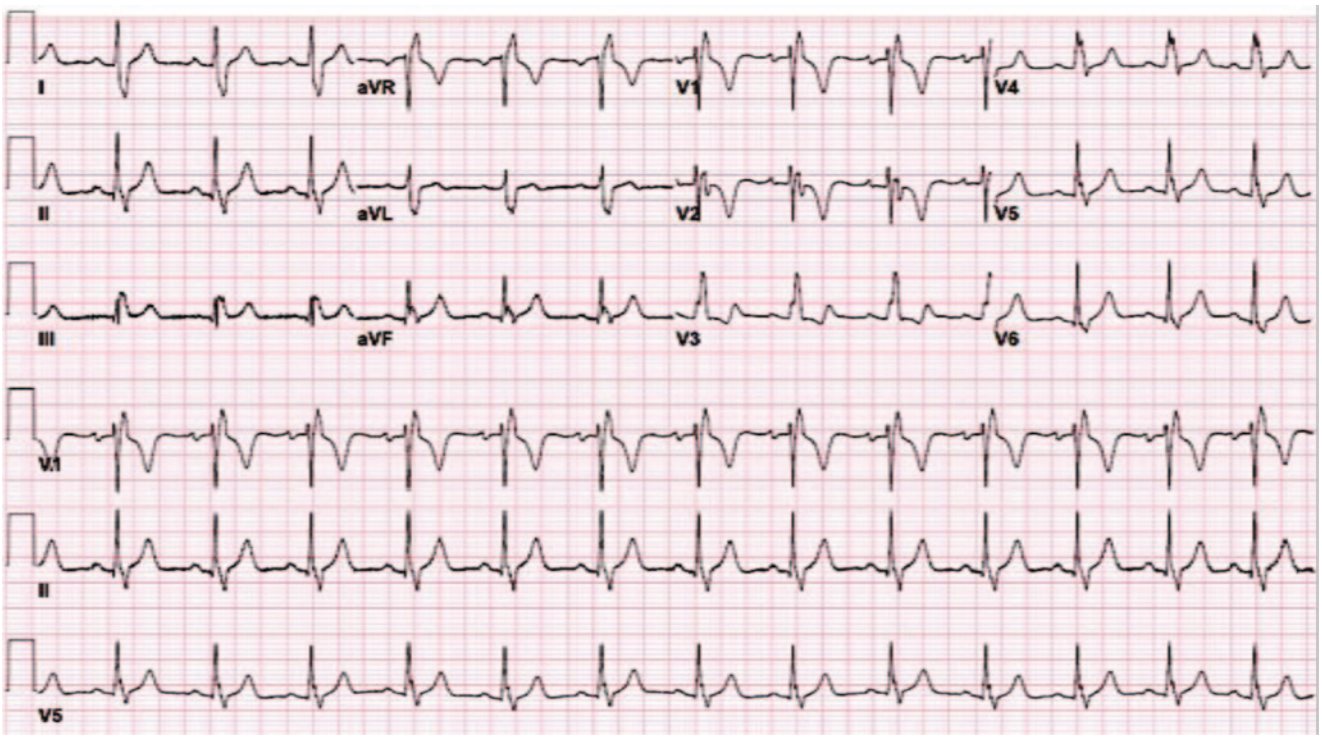
12 years old with exercise intolerance



Dx: Biatrial enlargement, possible LVH (restrictive cardiomyopathy)

Fig. 14 Twelve-year-old child with exercise intolerance. (Dx: Biatrial enlargement, possible LVH (restrictive cardiomyopathy))

16 years old with Tetralogy of Fallot repaired in infancy



Dx: Normal sinus rhythm with right bundle branch block

Fig. 15 Sixteen-year-old patient with Tetralogy of Fallot repaired in infancy. (Dx: Normal sinus rhythm with right bundle branch block)

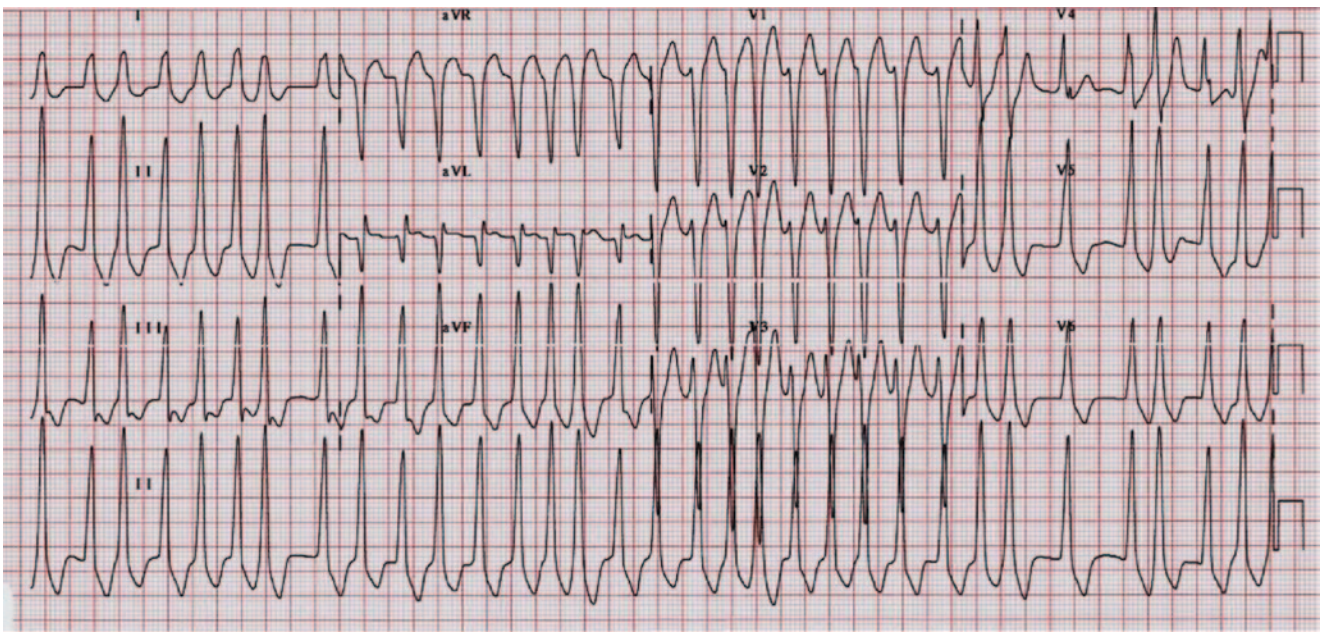


Fig. 16 Fourteen-year-old patient with palpitation and dizziness. (Dx: Rapidly conducted atrial fibrillation in the setting of WPW (Irregularly irregular wide complex) AV nodal blocker agents (beta-blockers, digoxin, Ca channel blockers, adenosine, Amiodarone) are contraindicated. Treatment is cardioversion (unstable) or Procainamide (stable))

Suggested Readings

1. Menashe V. Heart murmurs. Pediatr Rev. 2007;28:e19–22.
2. Frank JE, Jacobe KM. Evaluation and management of heart murmurs in children. Am Fam Physician. 2011;84(7):793–800.
3. Blake J. A teen with chest pain. Pediatr Clin N Am. 2014;61:17–28.
4. Pilcher TA, Saarel EV. Teenage fainter (dizziness, syncope, postural orthostatic tachycardia syndrome). Pediatr Clin N Am. 2014;61:29–43.
5. Hsu DT, Pearson GD. Heart failure in children: part I: history, etiology, and pathophysiology. Circ Heart Fail. 2009;2:63.
6. Hsu DT, Pearson GD. Heart failure in children: part II: diagnosis, treatment, and future directions. Circ Heart Fail. 2009;2:490.
7. Policy Statement. Pediatric sudden cardiac arrest; section on cardiology and cardiac surgery. Pediatrics. 2012;129:4 e1094-e1102; published ahead of print March 26, 2012, doi:10.1542/peds.2012-0144.
8. Durani Y, Giordano K, Goudie BW. Myocarditis and pericarditis in children. Pediatr Clin N Am. 2010;57:1281–303.
9. Abdurrahman L, Bockoven JR, Pickoff AS, Ralston MA, MD, Ross JE. Pediatric cardiology update: office-based practice of pediatric cardiology for the primary care provider. Curr Probl Pediatr Adolesc Health Care. 2003;33:318–47.
10. Burke RJ, Chang C. Diagnostic criteria of acute rheumatic fever. Autoimmun Rev. 2014;13(4/5):503–507. (Epub 2014 Jan 11. Review).
11. Newburger JW, Takahashi M, Gerber MA, et al. Diagnosis, treatment, and long-term management of Kawasaki disease: a statement for health professionals from the Committee on Rheumatic Fever, Endocarditis and Kawasaki Disease, Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, American Heart Association. Circulation. 2004;110:2747.
12. Expert Panel on Integrated Guidelines for Cardiovascular Health and Risk Reduction in Children and Adolescents. Expert Panel on Integrated Guidelines for Cardiovascular Health and Risk Reduction in Children and Adolescents: summary report. Pediatrics. 2011;128(suppl 5):S213–56.

Blood and Neoplastic Disorders

Staci Bryson and Arlynn F. Mulne

Abbreviations

DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
LCH	Langerhans cell histiocytosis
MCV	mean cell volume
TIBC	total iron binding capacity
RBCs	red blood cells
WBCS	white blood cells
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
RA	rheumatoid arthritis
IL	interleukin
TNF	tumor necrosis factor
PCR	polymerase chain reaction
PNH	paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria
SS	homozygous sickle cell genes
SC	heterozygous sickle cell and C genes
CXR	chest x-ray
ACS	acute chest syndrome
PK	pyruvate kinase
EBV	Epstein-Barr virus
SDS	
GCSF	granulocyte colony stimulating factor
HSM	hepatosplenomegaly
MDS	myelodysplastic syndrome
AML	acute myelogenous leukemia
ASD	atrial septal defect
VSD	ventricular septal defect
PDA	patent ductus arteriosus
TOF	tetralogy of Fallot
CoA	coarctation of the aorta
ITP	idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura
HUS	hemolytic uremic syndrome
MPV	mean platelet volume
IVIg	intravenous immunoglobulin
DDAVP	desmopressin
VWD	von Willebrand disease
PTT	partial thromboplastin time
GI	gastrointestinal
CMP	complete metabolic panel
ESR	erythrocyte sedimentation rate
CBC	complete blood count
JPA	juvenile pilocytic astrocytoma
CNS	central nervous system
US	ultrasound
KUB	kidney, ureter, and bladder x-ray
U/A	urinalysis

S. Bryson (✉)
Department of Pathology, Texas Tech University Health Science Center, Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, El Paso Children's Hospital, 7748 Dianjou Drive, Unit A, El Paso, TX 79912, USA
e-mail: staci.bryson@ttuhsc.edu

A. F. Mulne
Department of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, Texas Tech University Health Science Center, Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, El Paso Children's Hospital, 4845 Alameda Avenue, 7th Floor, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: lynne.mulne@ttuhsc.edu

Blood Disorders

Blood disorders generally fall into four categories:

- Red cell disorders
  - Anemia
  - Erythrocytosis
- White cell disorders
  - Neutropenia
  - Abnormal white cells
- Platelet disorders
  - Thrombocytopenia
  - Abnormal platelets
- Coagulation disorders

Red Cell Disorders

Anemia

- Incidence of anemia in childhood (Fig. 1)
  - Iron deficiency anemia (IDA), 60–70 %

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_16,

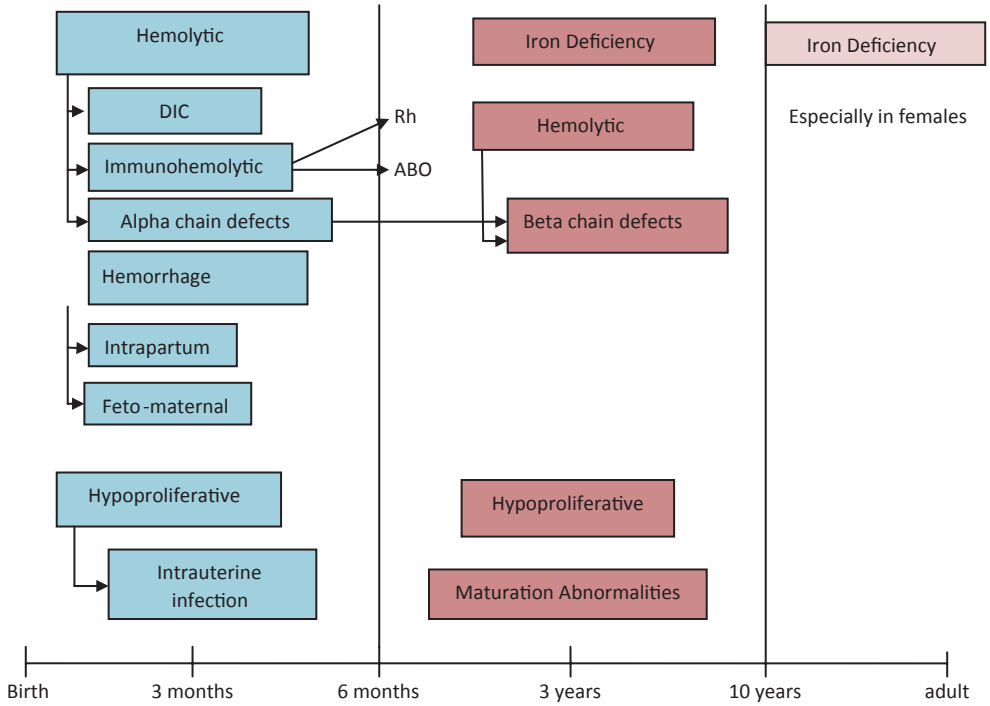


Fig. 1 Prevalence of anemia in different age groups

- Hemolytic anemia, 15–20%
- Hypoproliferative anemia, 10%
- Maturation abnormalities, 7–8%

Anemia in the Newborn (Fig. 2)

Hemolysis

Congenital

- Hemoglobinopathies
  - Chain defects more common
- Red cell membrane defects
  - Hereditary spherocytosis
  - Hereditary elliptocytosis
  - Hereditary stomatocytosis
- Red cell enzyme defects
  - G6PD
  - PK

Acquired

- Nonimmune
  - Vitamin E deficiency
    - Hemolytic anemia
    - Edema
    - Thrombocytosis
  - Infantile pyknocytosis
- Immune
  - ABO
  - RH
- Infections
  - DIC
  - Bacterial
  - Viral

Blood loss

- Prenatal
  - Fetomaternal
  - Twin–twin transfusion
- Placental
- Umbilical
- Postnatal
  - Plasma factor deficiencies
  - Platelets—deficiency or dysfunction
  - Abnormal platelet function

Decreased red cell production

- Pure red cell aplasia
- Anemia of prematurity
  - Early
  - Late
  - Iatrogenic
- Infection
- Infiltration
  - Congenital leukemia
  - Neuroblastoma
  - LCH
  - Osteopetrosis

Approach to Diagnosis of Anemia in Older Child

- Inadequate RBCs/hemoglobin (Hgb)
- Size of red cells (MCV) (Fig. 3)

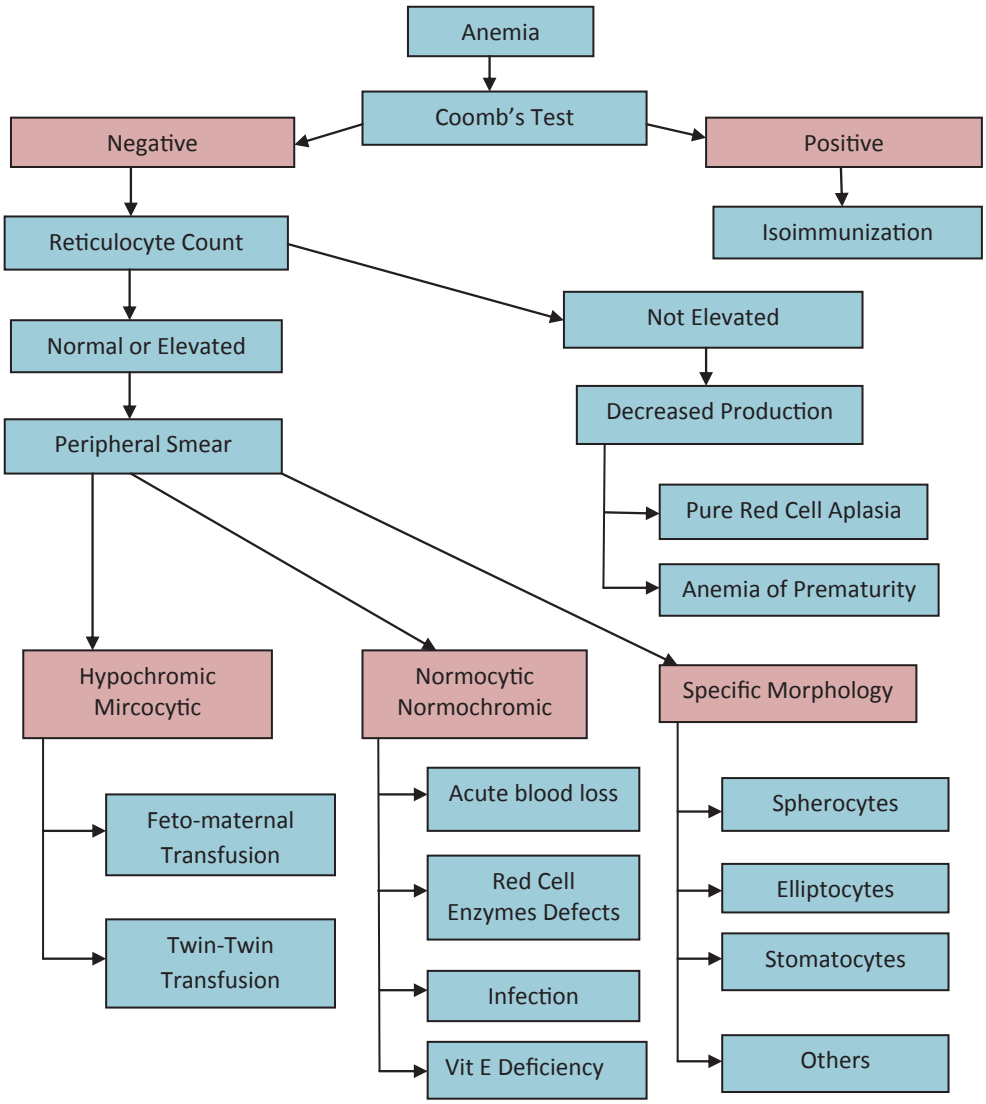


Fig. 2 An approach to the diagnosis of anemia in the newborn infant

  - Microcytic (MCV < 70 + age) (Fig. 4)
  - Normocytic (MCV > 70 + age and < 100)
  - Macrocytic (MCV > 100)
- Reticulocyte count

Microcytic Anemia

Iron Deficiency Anemia (IDA)

- Most common hematologic disease in infancy and childhood

Etiology

- Nutritional
  - Low birth weight
  - Rapid growth
  - Consumption of large amount of cow's milk (> 32 oz whole cow's milk/day)
- Impaired absorption
  - Primary iron deficiency
  - Malabsorption syndrome
- Blood loss
  - Gastrointestinal
  - Primary iron deficiency
  - Cow's milk allergy or exudative enteropathy
  - Lesions: Meckel's, vascular malformations
  - Parasites: hookworms
  - Genitourinary
  - Menstrual
  - Hemoglobinuria
  - Hemosiderinuria
  - Pulmonary
  - Goodpasture's syndrome
  - Pulmonary hemosiderosis

Clinical Presentation

- *Pallor*
- *Pagophagia:* desire to eat unusual substance as ice, dirt, etc.
- *If Hgb level falls < 5 g/dL*

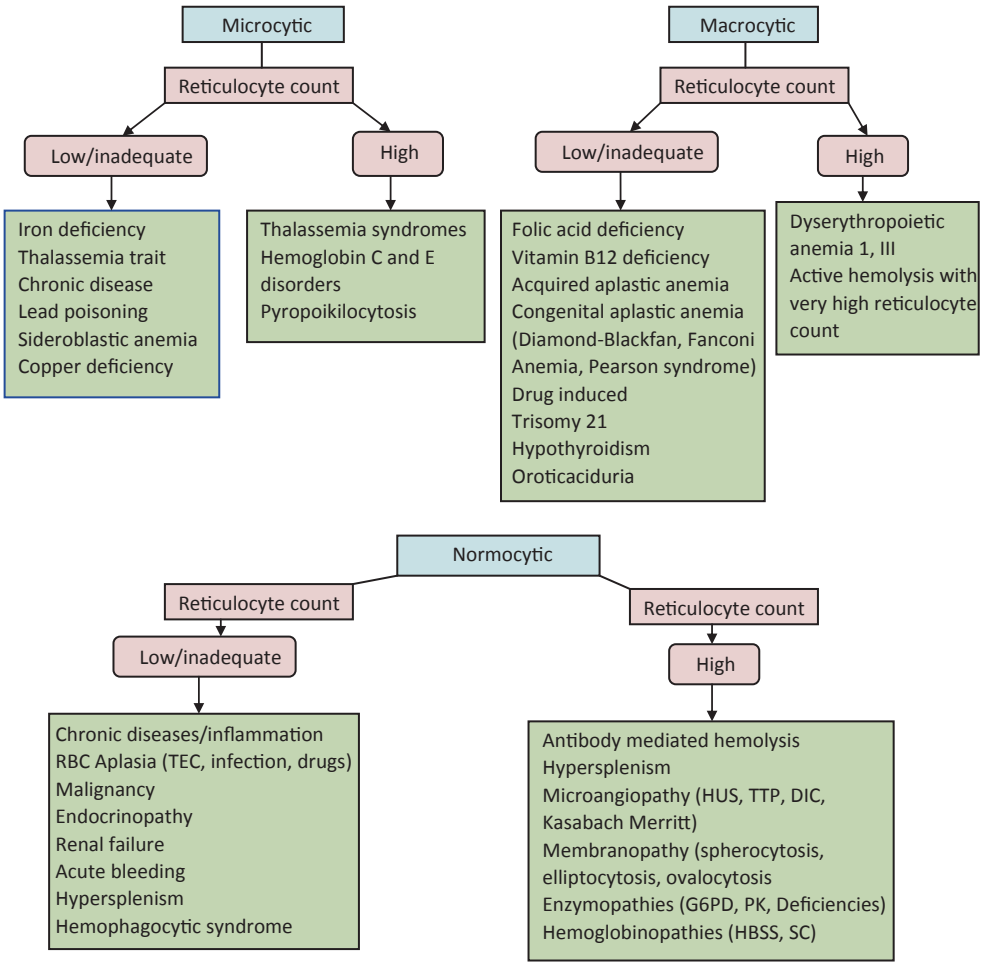


Fig. 3 Approach to anemia in older children based on MCV

- Irritability
- Anorexia
- Tachycardia
- Systolic murmur

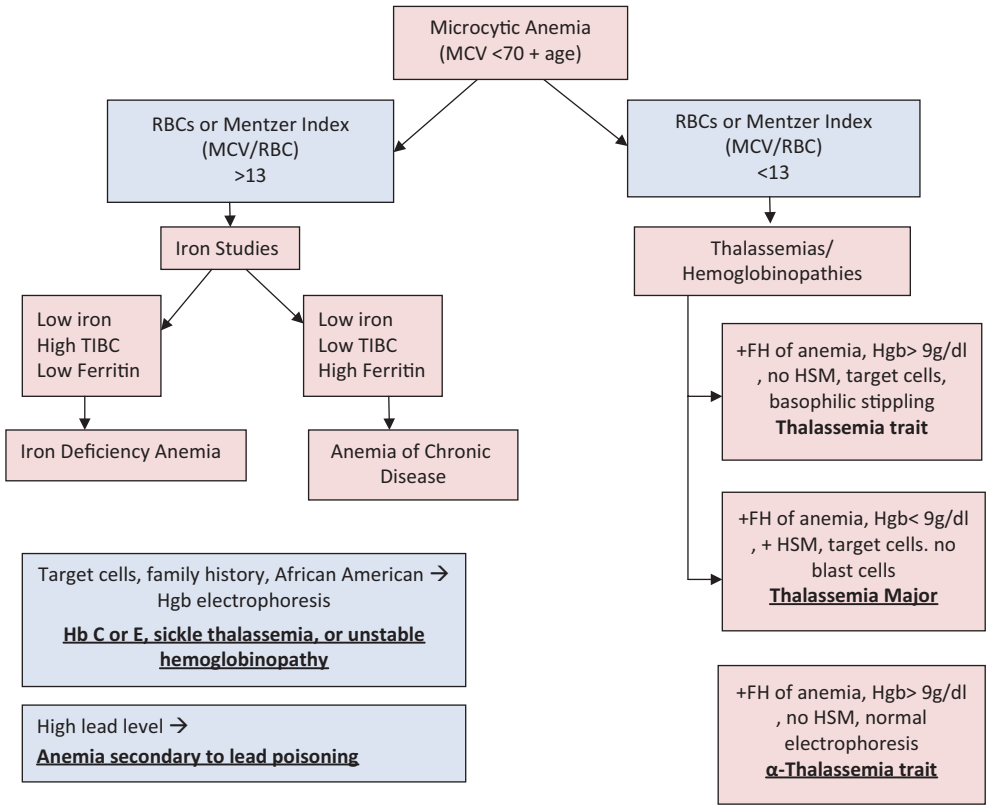
Laboratory

- Low serum ferritin (depleted iron stores)
- Low serum iron—may fluctuate
- Increased TIBC (serum transferrin)
- RBCs become more microcytic, hypochromic, and increased poikilocytosis as disease progresses (Fig. 5)
- Increased RBC distribution width (RDW)
- Normal WBCs
- Thrombocytosis; occasionally marked (600,000–1 million/mm3)
- Low reticulocyte count
- Mentzer index > 13 (MCV/RBCs)

Treatment

- Response to iron therapy is diagnostic and therapeutic.
- Oral administration of ferrous salts at dose of 4–6 mg/kg of elemental iron in three divided doses.
  - Very inexpensive.
  - Downsides; taste, Gl irritability, and constipation (more water and fiber can solve this problem).
- Rapid correction of anemia with transfusion may precipitate heart failure.
- In severely anemic children (<4 gm/dl) transfusions can be administered at a very slow rate (2–3 ml/kg).
- If there is evidence of heart failure present, a modified exchange transfusion using fresh PRBCs can be considered.
- Changes after treatment with iron.
  - Within 12–24 h: irritability decreases, increased appetite.
  - 36–48 h: initial bone marrow response with erythroid hyperplasia.
  - 48–72 h: reticulocytosis, peaking at 5–7 days.
  - 1–3 months: repletion of stores.
- Hgb may increase by 0.5 g/dl/day.
- Iron therapy should be continued for at least 2 months after the Hgb normalizes to replenish iron stores.
- Limit *cow's* milk to less than 500 cc/day.

Fig. 4 Microcytic anemia



Anemia of Chronic Disease

Associations

- Chronic systemic diseases
- Chronic inflammatory process, e.g., SLE, RA
- Chronic pyogenic infection

Etiology

- Release of inflammatory cytokines: IL-6,IL-1,TNF
- Hepcidin released from the liver decreases intestinal iron absorption, also block release of iron from the macrophages

Laboratory

- Hgb concentration usually 6–9 g/dL
- Normal-to-low MCV
- Often normochromic anemia with progression to hypochromia
- Low serum iron
- Normal-to-low TIBC
- Elevated serum ferritin

Treatment

- Treatment of the cause
- Recombinant EPO may increase the Hgb level and improve well-being in patients with cancer

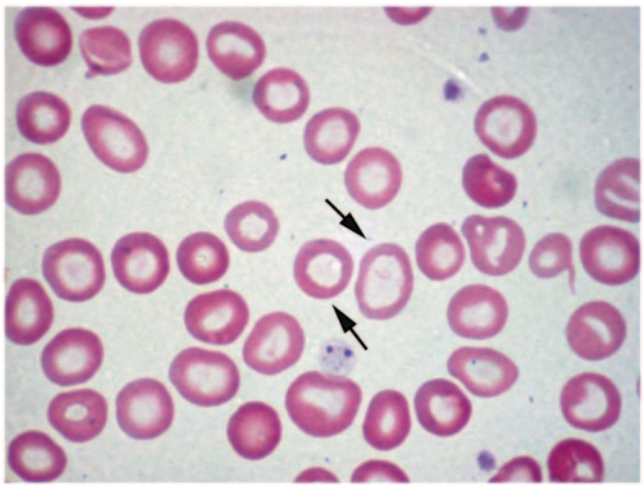


Fig. 5 Peripheral blood smear example of hypochromic/microcytic anemia. Notice the variability in the sizes of red blood cells. The *arrows* point to hypochromic erythrocytes with large central hollow. (Courtesy of Dr. Nawar Hakim)

Lead Poisoning

- High serum lead level
- Markedly elevated free erythrocyte protoporphyrin
- Basophilic stippling of RBCs
- Ringed sideroblasts in bone marrow

Thalassemias

Alpha Thalassemia

- Healthy individuals have 4 alpha globin genes, 2 on each chromosome 16
- Alpha globin production is reduced to absent
- Seen more frequently in those of southeast Asian and African ancestry
- Diagnosis: clinically or with alpha globin chain analysis
- Excess beta chains lead to beta 4 chains (Hemoglobin H, HbH)
- Excess gamma chains lead to gamma 4 chains (Hemoglobin Barts, Hb Barts)

Alpha Thalassemia Syndromes

Silent trait
- Deletion or dysfunction of one gene
- Asymptomatic
- 1–2 % Hb Barts on neonatal electrophoresis
- Normal Hgb electrophoresis

Alpha thalassemia trait
- Deletion or dysfunction of two genes
- Mild hypochromic microcytic anemia
- 3–10 % Hb Barts on neonatal electrophoresis
- Laboratory
  - Mentzer Index < 13
  - Hgb > 9 g/dl
  - Normal Hgb electrophoresis
  - Often misdiagnosed as IDA

Hemoglobin H disease
- Deletion of three genes
- Mild-to-moderate hypochromic microcytic anemia
- Splenomegaly
- Jaundice
- Cholelithiasis (pigment stones)
- Anemia exaggerated by infection, pregnancy, exposure to oxidizing drugs
- > 25 % Hgb Barts on neonatal electrophoresis

Alpha thalassemia major
- Deletion of four genes
- Fetal hydrops-fatal disease
- Predominant Hb Barts

Beta Thalassemia

- Healthy individuals have 2 beta globin genes, 1 on each chromosome 11
- Beta globin production is reduced to absent
- Multiple possible genetic mutations or deletions
- More clinical overlap
- Seen more frequently in those of Mediterranean, southeast Asian ancestry
- Also seen in African Americans but generally have a milder course
- Relative alpha chain excess leads to shortened red cell survival and variable splenic sequestration
- Diagnosed by hemoglobin electrophoresis or beta globin chain analysis
- Cannot be diagnosed by electrophoresis in the neonate
- Iron, folate, and B12 must be repleted to have an accurate hemoglobin electrophoresis

Beta Thalassemia Syndromes

- Beta thalassemia minor—silent or near silent trait (heterozygous β0 or β+)
  - Asymptomatic
  - Smear can be normal
  - Occasional microcytosis, hypochromia, target cells, basophilic stippling
  - Often normal indices or decreased MCV
  - Normal to slightly elevated HgbA2 on electrophoresis

Thalassemia intermedia
- More symptomatic than thalassemia trait
- Refers to a clinical phenotype with diverse genetic explanations
- Laboratory
  - Microcytosis, hypochromia, target cells, and basophilic stippling on smear
  - Mentzer Index < 13
  - Hgb usually between 7 and 10 g/dl
  - Elevated HgbA2 and HgbF on electrophoresis

Thalassemia major (Cooley's anemia)
- Variable reduction of beta globin gene production
- Homozygous or double heterozygous forms (β0, β+ variants)
- Excess alpha globin chains result in increased destruction of RBCs and ineffective erythropoiesis
- Shortened red cell life span and splenic trapping
- Clinical presentation
  - General
    - Dependent on amount of HgbF
    - Severe anemia with increased iron absorption and subsequent toxicity
    - Pallor, jaundice, fatigue
    - Hepatosplenomegaly

  - Skeletal
    - Typical facial features with maxillary hyperplasia, flat nasal bridge, frontal bossing
    - Pathological bone fractures
  - Endocrine dysfunction
    - Hypothyroidism
    - Hypoparathyroidism
    - Diabetes mellitus
  - Cardiovascular
    - Congestive heart failure
    - Cardiac arrhythmias
- Laboratory
  - Severe anemia
  - Few reticulocytes <8% compared to degree of anemia
  - Microcytosis with no normal appearing RBCs on the smear
  - Numerous nucleated RBCs
  - Target cells
  - Mentzer index(MCV/RBCs) is <9
  - Indirect (unconjugated) bilirubin is elevated
- Treatment
  - Chronic transfusion therapy
  - Before chronic transfusion is initiated diagnosis of beta thalassemia must be confirmed first
  - Deferoxamine for iron chelation
  - Newer chelating agent, deferasirox (Exjade, Novartis), is oral and more tolerable but long term data still being accumulated

Other Hemoglobinopathies

- Hemoglobin E
- Hemoglobin Lepore
- Hemoglobin Koln

Rare Disorders

- Sideroblastic anemia
  - May be microcytic
  - Ineffective erythropoiesis caused by iron deposition in erythroblasts
  - Mild-to-moderate hemolysis
  - Ringed sideroblasts in bone marrow
- Protein calorie malnutrition-microcytosis without IDA
- Metabolic abnormalities of iron absorption and metabolism

Macrocytic Anemia (MCV > 100 in Child Older than 2)

Folic Acid Deficiency

Etiology
- Nutritional
  - Sources—leaves; vegetable; fruits; animal organs, for example, liver and kidneys
  - Body stores for folic acid is limited 2–3 months on folate-free diet
- Inadequate intake—during pregnancy, growth in children, and hemolytic anemia
- Goat milk consumption
- Decreased folic acid absorption—removal of ileum or IBD
- Anticonvulsant medication, for example, phenytoin, primidone
- Congenital dihydrofolate reductase deficiency
- Drug-induced abnormal metabolism—Methotrexate

Clinical presentation
- Megaloblastic anemia
- Irritability
- Inadequate weight gain
- Chronic diarrhea
- Hemorrhage from thrombocytopenia in severe cases

Laboratory
- Macrocytic anemia (MCV> 100; Fig. 6)
- Megaloblastic changes including hypersegmented neutrophils (> 5 lobes)
- Elevated LDH
- Hypercellular bone marrow

Treatment
- Rule out B12 deficiency before starting folic acid therapy
- Folic acid 0.5–1 mg/day IV or oral
- Hematologic response can occur within 72 h (diagnostic test as well)
- Treatment continued for only 3–4 weeks
- Maintenance dose is 0.2 mg daily

Vitamin B12 Deficiency

- Vitamin B12 stores last for 3–5 years
- Sources—animal products

Etiology
- Inadequate B12 intake (strict vegan)
- Exclusively breast fed and maternal vegan diet
- Removal of terminal ileum

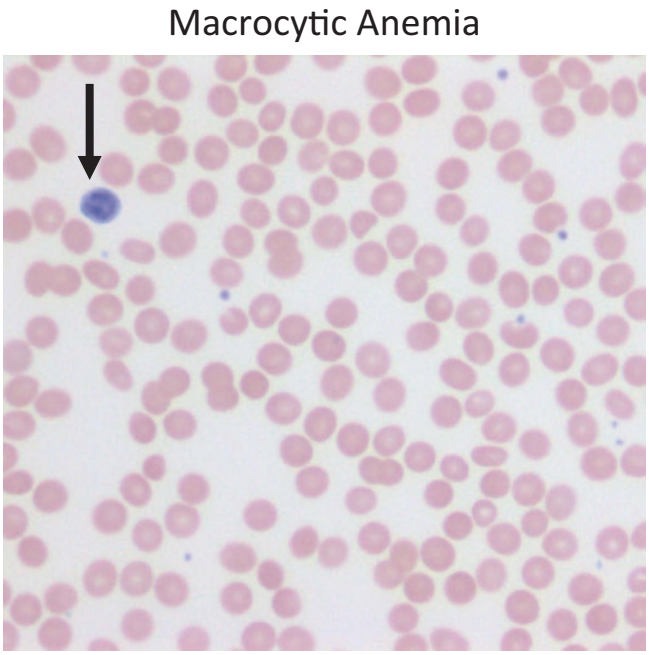


Fig. 6 Red cells are usually approximately the size of a small lymphocyte nucleus (*arrow*). In this case the red cells are slightly larger than the lymphocyte nucleus on average. Macrocytic anemia is most often a result of folate or vitamin B12 deficiency

- Inflammatory bowel disease
- Fish tapeworm (Diphylobothrium latum)
- Absence of Vitamin B12 transport protein and stomach intrinsic factor (IF)

Clinical presentation
- Weakness
- Fatigue
- Failure to thrive
- Irritability
- Pallor
- Glossitis
- Vomiting
- Diarrhea
- Icterus
- Neurologic symptoms
  - Paresthesias
  - Developmental regression
  - Neuropsychiatric changes

Laboratory
- Macrocytic anemia (MCV > 100; see Fig. 6)
- Megaloblastic changes including hypersegmented neutrophils (> 5 lobes)
- Elevated LDH
- Normal iron and folic acid levels
- Increased methylmalonic acid in urine
- Increased homocysteine
- Low reticulocyte count for degree of anemia
- Antiparietal cell antibody positive in pernicious anemia
  - Less than 10 % of cases present under age 40
- Classic Schilling test is no longer regarded as the diagnostic test

Treatment
- Parenteral administration of Vitamin B12 1 mg daily
  - With neurologic involvement continue for minimum of 2 weeks
- Reticulocytosis in 2–4 days unless concurrent inflammatory disease
- Maintenance of monthly IM Vitamin B12

Pearson Marrow–Pancreas Syndrome

- Variant of sideroblastic anemia

Clinical presentation
- Macrocytic anemia in neonatal period
- Elevated level of alpha fetoprotein
- Neutropenia
- Thrombocytopenia
- Failure to thrive
- *Pancreatic fibrosis*
- Insulin dependent diabetes mellitus
- Exocrine pancreatic deficiency
- Muscle and neurologic impairment

Laboratory
- Bone marrow
  - Ringed sideroblast
  - Vacuolated erythroblast and myeloblast
- Often confused with Diamond–Blackfan anemia and transient erythroblastopenia of childhood

Diamond–Blackfan Anemia (Congenital Hypoplastic Anemia)

- Primary defect in the erythroid progenitors

Clinical presentation
- Profound anemia manifested by 2–6 months of age
- More than 50 % have congenital anomalies
  - Short stature
  - Craniofacial dysmorphism (snub nose, wide-set eyes, thick upper lip)
  - *Triphalangeal thumbs*
  - Bifid, subluxed, absent, or supernumerary thumbs

Laboratory
- Macrocytic RBCs with no hypersegmentation of neutrophils
- Normal B12 and folate
- Increased adenosine deaminase activity in most patients
- Decreased RBCs precursor in bone marrow

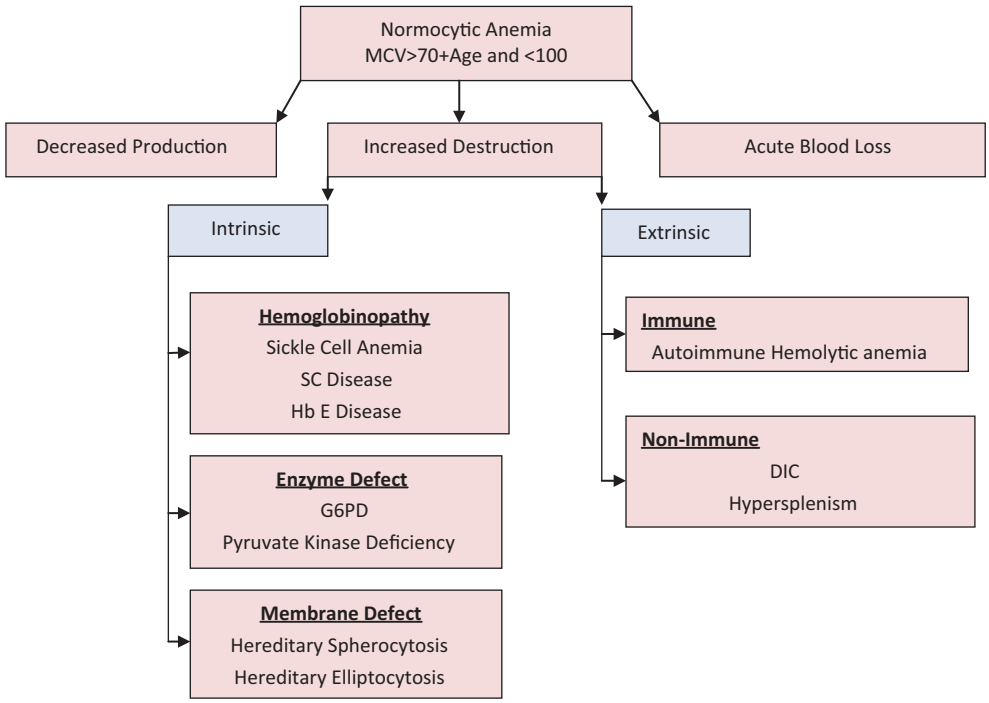


Fig. 7 Approach to normocytic anemia

- Elevated serum iron
- Normal bone marrow chromosomal studies
- Normal to low reticulocyte count
- Negative PCR for Parvovirus B19

Treatment
- Steroids
- Iron chelating agents (if transfusion dependent)
- Stem cell transplantation for non respondents to corticosteroids, and after several years of RBC transfusions

Prognosis
- Median survival >40 years

Normocytic Anemia (MCV > 70 + Age and < 100 in Child Older Than 2; Fig. 7)

Transient Erythroblastopenia Childhood

Background
- Most common acquired red cell aplasia in childhood
- More common than Diamond–Blackfan anemia (congenital hypoplastic anemia)

Etiology
- Transient suppression of RBC production
- Often noted after a viral infection
- No evidence of Parvovirus B19

Clinical presentation
- Age—3 months to 3 years of age, most>12 months
- More common in males

Laboratory
- MCV normal for age
- Hemoglobin can be as low as 2.2 g/dl
- Reticulocytes decreased
- Bone marrow biopsy rarely needed but erythroid suppression seen
- Normal adenosine deaminase (ADA)

Treatment
- Reassurance
- Recover within 2–3 months
- Occasionally transfusion is necessary

Hereditary Spherocytosis

Background
- Autosomal-dominant inheritance
  - Less frequently can be autosomal recessive
- 25% of patients have no family history
- Most common molecular defects are in spectrin or ankyrin, major components of the RBC cytoskeleton

Clinical presentation
- May be asymptomatic into adulthood
- Anemia

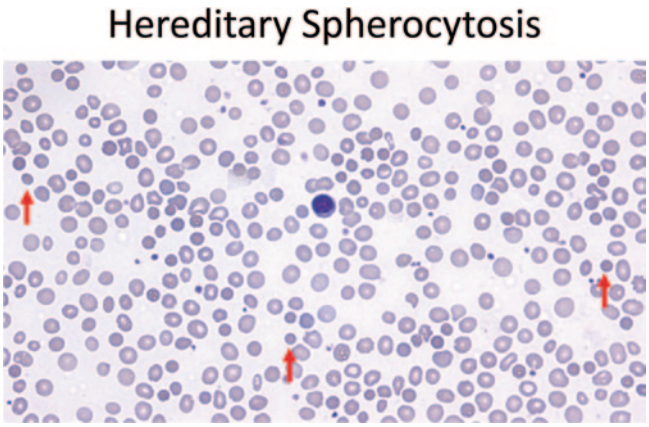


Fig. 8 Red cells should be similar in size to the small lymphocyte nucleus (*center*). In hereditary spherocytosis the red cells are small and hyperchromatic, lacking central pallor (40×). *Red arrows* point out a few of the examples in this field

- Hyperbilirubinemia sufficient to require exchange transfusion in newborn period
- Pallor
- Jaundice
- Fatigue
- Exercise intolerance
- Splenomegaly
- Pigment gallstones may form as early as 4–5 years of age
- Susceptible to aplastic crisis as a result of parvovirus B19 infections
  - Erythroid marrow failure may result rapidly in profound anemia HCT < 10 %, high cardiac output failure, hypoxia, cardiovascular collapse, and death; platelet may also fall

Laboratory
- Reticulocytosis
- Indirect hyperbilirubinemia
- High LDH
- Low haptoglobin
- Normal MCV
- Elevated MCHC
- High percentage of spherocytes on smear (Fig. 8)
  - Can be confirmed with osmotic fragility test or flow cytometry

Treatment
- Folic acid 1 mg po daily to prevent deficiency and the resultant decrease in erythropoiesis
- Splenectomy indications:
  - Hgb < 10 g/dl
  - Reticulocytosis
  - Aplastic crisis
  - Poor growth
  - Cardiomegaly
- Some do not recommend splenectomy in patients with hemoglobin > 10 g/dl and reticulocytes < 10 %
- Vaccination for encapsulated organism Haemophilus influenza, meningococcus, pneumococcus should be given before splenectomy, then prophylactic penicillin V 125 mg BID < 5 years and 250 BID for > 5 years
- Partial splenectomy is useful in children < 5 years

Hereditary Elliptocytosis

- Less common than hereditary spherocytosis (HS)

Clinical presentation
- Presentation same as in HS

Laboratory
- Red blood cells shows various degree of elongation, may be rod shaped
  - Other abnormal shapes may be present microcytosis, spherocytes, poikilocytosis

Treatment
- No treatment necessary unless hemolysis present
- Otherwise same as in HS

Paroxysmal Nocturnal Hemoglobinuria

Background
- Most often caused by an acquired (rather than inherited) intrinsic defect in the cell membrane
- Deficient membrane associated protein include decay-accelerating factor, C8-binding protein

Clinical presentation
- Nocturnal and morning hemoglobinuria
- Thrombosis and thromboembolic phenomena is a very serious complication
- Aplastic anemia may precede the episodes of PNH

Laboratory
- Red blood cells shows various degree of elongation; may be rod shaped
- Evidence of hemolysis—elevated LDH, elevated bilirubin, low haptoglobin
- Negative direct antiglobulin test
- Flow cytometry for CD55 and CD59
- Positive results on acidified serum hemolysis Ham test, or sucrose lysis test (historical)
- Markedly decreased acetylcholinesterase activity and decay accelerating factor is found

Treatment
- Acute
  - Transfusion to suppress production of PNH cells

  - Glucocorticoids 2 mg/kg/24 h (controversial)
- Chronic
  - Eculizumab prevents complement binding and decreases hemolysis
  - Warfarin to prevent thrombotic complications
  - May need supplemental iron to offset losses from hemoglobinuria

Sickle Cell Disease (SCD)

Background
- Hemoglobin S is the result of a mutation resulting in a substitution of valine for glutamic acid at sixth position in beta globin chain
- Autosomal recessive inheritance

Clinical presentation
- Usually diagnosed on neonatal screen
- Manifestations of clinical symptoms can be as early as 6 months of age
- Crises
  - Splenic sequestration
  - Pain crisis
  - Aplastic crisis
  - Parvovirus B19 frequent cause of aplastic crises
- Infections
  - Bacterial sepsis is the greatest cause of morbidity and mortality
  - Bacterial infection by encapsulated organisms is the most common at all ages
- Functional asplenia as early as 6 months, by age 5 in most children

Laboratory
- Anemia
- Sickle cells on smear (Fig. 9)
- Positive sickle prep
- Hemoglobin electrophoresis—SS, SC, SD

Management
- Fever
  - Medical emergency due to high risk of severe bacterial infection and high fatality
  - Parenteral IV third generation cephalosporin (Cefotaxime)
  - Penicillin VK oral prophylaxis until 5 years of age
  - 125 mg PO BID until 3 years
  - 250 mg PO BID until 5 years
  - Continue past 2 years of age if history of infection with encapsulated organism
  - Osteomyelitis—frequently staph or salmonella

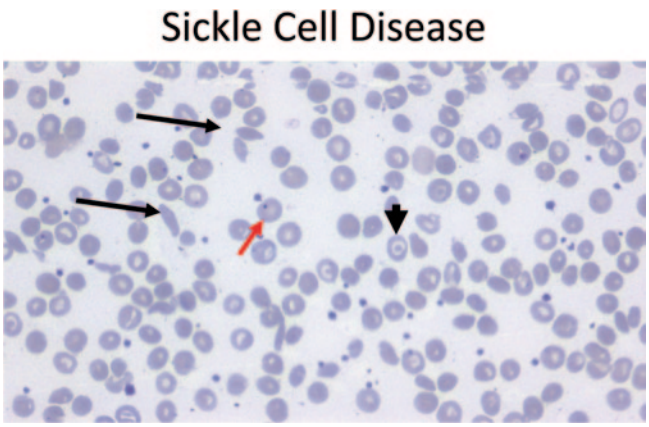


Fig. 9 Peripheral smear (40×) from a patient with sickle cell disease showing sickle cells (*black arrows*), target cells (*arrowhead*), and a Howell–Joley body (*red arrow*)

Pain crisis
- Hydroxyurea
  - Increases level of hemoglobin F and total hemoglobin
  - Decreases the pain crises by 50%
  - Side effect is myelosuppression, but reversible
  - If begun in infancy may preserve the splenic function, improve the growth, and decrease ACS
  - Initial dose is 15–20 mg/kg increase gradually by 2.5–5 mg/kg up to max of 35 mg/kg/day
  - Monitor for toxicity

Aplastic crisis
- RBC lifespan is between 10 and 20 days in patient with SCD
- Cessation of RBC production for 10–14 days can lead to profound anemia
- Clinical presentation
  - Pallor
  - Fatigue
  - Decreased activity
  - Poor feeding
  - Altered mentation
- Laboratory
  - Severe anemia
  - Reticulocytopenia
  - Occasional thrombocytopenia
- Management
  - Transfusion support as needed until reticulocyte recovery has occurred.
- Dactylitis (hand–foot disease)
  - Often the first manifestation of pain in children
  - Occurs in 50% of children by 2 years of age
  - Unilateral can be confused with osteomyelitis
  - Treatment
    - Pain medications (e.g.,acetaminophen with codeine)

Splenic sequestration
- Etiology unknown
- 30 % of children with sickle cell anemia have episodes of significant sequestration
- Clinical presentation
  - Increase in size of spleen
  - Evidence of hypovolemia
  - Decline in hemoglobin of at least 2 g/dl from the base line
- Treatment
  - Maintenance of hemodynamic stability
  - Isotonic fluid
  - Blood transfusion
- Prognosis
  - Repeat sequestration is very common
  - Parents should be taught how to palpate the spleen

Vaso-occlusive crisis
- Disruption of blood flow in microvasculature by sickle cells
- Risk factors exposure to cold, hypoxia, and acidosis
- Clinical presentation
  - Pain which can affect any part of the body
  - Pain most often in chest, back, abdomen, and extremities
- Management
  - Pain medications
  - Acetaminophen up to IV morphine depending on the severity
  - IV hydration does not relieve the pain
  - Blood transfusion does not prevent or relieve the pain
  - Concern about opioids dependency must not be a reason not treat a child with pain

Priapism
- Penile erection lasts > 30 min
  - Pain medication
  - Sitz bath
- Penile erection lasts > 4 h
  - May result in sexual dysfunction
  - Aspiration of blood from corpora cavernosa
  - Followed by irrigation with diluted epinephrine will cause immediate relief

Neurological complications
- 11–20 % will have either overt or silent stroke
  - Overt stroke means presence of focal neurological deficit > 24 h and or cerebral infarct by T2-weighted MRI
  - Silent stroke means absence of focal neurological lesions > 24 h with cerebral infarct on T2-weighted MRI
- Clinical presentation
  - Headache
  - Seizures
  - Cerebral venous thrombosis
  - Reversible posterior leukoencephalopathy syndrome (RPLS)
- Treatment
  - Oxygen to maintain saturation > 96 %
  - Transfusion within 1 h to increase Hgb level to max of 11 g/dL
  - CT to exclude cerebral hemorrhage
- Primary prevention of stroke
  - TCD (transcranial Doppler) to measure blood velocity
  - If blood velocity is > 200 cm/s prophylactic transfusion is indicated to decrease the Hgb S to < 30 %
  - Can start as early as 2–3 years of age
- Secondary prevention
  - Transfusion therapy after initial stroke
  - Maintain the Hgb S < 30 %
  - Complications:
- 20 % have second stroke in the first year after first stroke
- Iron overload (200 mg of iron/unit RBCs):
  - Iron-chelating agents
  - Phlebotomy
  - Erythrocytapheresis (expensive and complicated)

Acute chest syndrome
- Clinical presentation
  - Fever
  - Respiratory distress
  - Chest pain
  - New radiodensity on CXR
  - All patients with fever should have CXR even in absence of respiratory symptoms
- Treatment
  - Oxygen
  - Simple exchange transfusion indications:
    - Decreasing oxygen saturation
    - Increasing work of breathing
    - Rapid change in respiratory effort
  - Most common episode preceding ACS is pain crisis treated with opioids, especially morphine
  - Overlap between pneumonia and ACS requires use of macrolide and third-generation cephalosporin
  - Most common organism in ACS: *S. pneumoniae,* Mycop*lasma*, *Chlamydia pneumoniae*
- Pulmonary hypertension
  - PH is a major risk of death in adult with sickle cell anemia

Renal disease
- Gross hematuria
- Papillary necrosis
- Nephritic syndrome

- Renal infarcts
- Pyelonephritis
- Renal medullary necrosis
- Treatment
  - ACE inhibitors beneficial for patients with proteinuria

General considerations
- High risk of academic failure, poor high school graduation rate
- 1/3 of children have cerebral infarcts
- Other complication of sickle cell anemia
  - Delayed puberty
  - Vascular necrosis of femoral head
  - Retinopathy
  - Surgical procedures—complications include pain and ACS post operatively
  - Blood transfusion before surgery to keep the hemoglobin approximately 10 g/dl

Methemoglobinemia (congenital or acquired)
- Decrease ability to release o2 to tissues
- Methemoglobin of 15 % associated with visible cyanosis
- Methemoglobin of 70 % is lethal
- Methemoglobin colors the blood brown
- Exposure to 100 % oxygen will change the color
- Triggers
  - Rotavirus infection
  - Gastroenteritis
  - Water high nitrites
  - Aniline teeth gel
- Treatment: methylene blue

Pyruvate Kinase Deficiency

Background
- Active enzyme in Embden–Meyerhof pathway
- Deficiency leads to defective red cell glycolysis and decrease ATP production
- Red cells are rigid and deformed, metabolically and physically vulnerable with decreased red cell survival

Clinical presentation
- Varies from severe neonatal hemolytic anemia to mild well compensated hemolysis
- Severe jaundice and anemia and can occur during neonatal period
- Splenomegaly
- Aplastic crisis with parvovirus B19 infection

Laboratory
- Reduced RBC PK enzyme level
- Elevated reticulocyte count
- Smear with polychromatophilia, macrocytosis, ovalocytes, acanthocytes, or pyknocytes

Treatment
- Exchange transfusion may be indicated for hyperbilirubinemia in newborn
- Blood transfusion as necessary
- Folic acid supplementation
- Splenectomy should be performed if frequent transfusion after age 5–6 years

Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase

Pathophysiology
- First enzyme in the pentose phosphate pathway of glucose metabolism
  - Activity falls rapidly as red cell ages
  - Decreased glucose metabolism with impaired elimination of oxidants and subsequent loss of red cell membrane integrity
- Severity of hemolysis depends on the quantity and type of G6PD deficiency and nature of hemolytic agent (usually an oxidation mediator) (Table 1)

Genetics
- X-linked recessive
- Variable intermediate expression shown by heterozygous females

Table 1 WHO classification of G6PD deficiency

Class	Level of deficiency	Enzyme activity	Prevalence
I	Severe	< 10 % enzyme activity; chronic non-spherocytic hemolytic anemia in the presence of normal erythrocyte function	Uncommon; occurs across all population
II	Severe	< 10 % enzyme activity with intermittent hemolysis	Varies; more common in Asian and Mediterranean populations
III	Moderate	10–60 % enzyme activity Hemolysis with stressor only	10 % of black males in USA
IV	Mild to none	60–150 % enzyme activity No clinic sequelae	Rare
V	None	> 150 % enzyme activity No clinic sequelae	Rare

- More common in African American and Mediterranean ancestry

Clinical presentation: episodes of hemolysis produced by:
- Drugs
  - Antioxidant drugs include:
    - Aspirin
    - Sulfonamides
    - Antimalarials
  - Usually 24–48 h after exposure
  - Hemoglobin usually normal between episodes
  - Occasionally need additional stress of infection or neonatal state
- Fava beans
  - Acute life-threatening, often leading to acute renal failure
  - Associated with Mediterranean and Canton varieties
  - Blood transfusions usually required
- Infection
- Neonatal jaundice
  - Associated with Mediterranean and Canton varieties
  - Occasional exposure to naphthalene, aniline dyes, marking ink, or other drug
  - Infants may present with pallor, jaundice, dark urine
  - Jaundice may be hepatic in origin
  - Often no known exposure to drugs
- Chronic nonspherocytic hemolytic anemia
  - Mainly in northern Europeans
  - Reticulocytosis
  - Increased autohemolysis with only partial correction by glucose
  - Slight jaundice
  - Mild splenomegaly

Laboratory
- Anemia
- Heinz bodies seen in unstained red blood cells due to hemoglobin precipitation
- Diagnosis demonstrated by reduced G6PD activity in RBCs should be few weeks after the hemolytic episode

Treatment
- Avoidance of agents
- Transfusion as needed
- Folic acid supplementation
- Chronic nonspherocytic hemolytic anemia
  - Consider chronic transfusion to keep Hgb at approximately 8 g/dl
  - Iron chelation as needed
- Splenectomy
  - Severe chronic anemia
  - Hypersplenism
  - Splenomegaly with physical impediment

Other Enzyme Deficiencies
- Hexokinase deficiency
- Glucose phosphate isomerase deficiency
- Aldolase deficiency
- Diphosphoglycerate deficiency
- Adenosine triphosphate deficiency
- Enloase deficiency
- Phosphofructokinase deficiency
  - Myopathy
  - Associated with type VII glycogen storage disease
  - Common in Ashkenazi Jews
- Triosephosphate isomerase deficiency
  - Cardiac anomalies
  - Recurrent infections
  - Progressive neuromuscular disease with generalized spasticity
- Phosphoglycercate kinase deficiency
  - First ATP generating enzyme
  - Sex-linked recessive
  - Intellectual disability (ID)
  - Seizures
  - Behavioral disorders

Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia

Etiology
- Antibodies against antigens on RBCs surface
- IgG against Rh complex is the most common in children
- IgM cold antibodies usually associated with infections, for example, *Mycoplasma* and *EBV*

Clinical presentation
- Pallor
- Jaundice
- Pyrexia
- Hemoglobinuria
- Splenomegaly

Laboratory
- Profound anemia
- Reticulocytosis
- Positive direct antiglobulin (Coombs) test
- Polychromasia
- Spherocytosis
- High cold agglutinin titre

Treatment
- Supportive treatment for mild cases
- Corticosteroids for IgG mediated disease
- Blood transfusion (blood unit with the least reaction by Coomb's technique)
- IVIg
- Splenectomy in persistent cases

Prognosis of acute form
- Response to glucocorticoids
- Low mortality rate
- Full recovery

Hemolytic Anemia Secondary to Extracellular Factors

- Mechanical injury
  - HUS
  - Kasabach-Merrit syndrome: hemangioma and thrombocytopenia
- Thermal injury
- Renal disease
- Liver disease
  - Change in cholesterol to phosphlipid level which affects the membrane of RBC
- Toxins and venom
  - *Streptococcus, haemophilus influenzae, staphylococcus and clostridium* infection
  - Cobras, rattlesnakes, have phospholipids in their venom—cause spherocytic hemolysis

Erythrocytosis

Definition
- RBCs 25 % > upper normal value

Clinical presentation
- Hypertension, headache, shortness breath, neurologic symptoms, thrombocytosis may cause hemorrhage and thrombosis

Primary (polycythemia vera)
- Major criteria
  - Increased red cell mass
  - Arterial oxygen saturation > 92 %
  - Palpable spleen
- Minor criteria
  - Platelet count > 400,000
  - Leukocytosis > 12,000
  - Increased leukocyte alkaline phosphatase
  - Increased vitamin B12 > 900 pg/ml, binding capacity > 2200 pg/ml

Secondary
- Increase HCT > 65 %
- Clinical presentation
  - Hyperviscosity, headache, hypertension
- Etiology
  - Familial
    - Hemoglobinopathy
  - Hypoxia
    - Altitude
    - Cardiac disease
    - Lung disease
    - Central hypoventilation
  - Hormonal
    - Adrenal
    - Anabolic
  - Renal
    - Tumor/cysts
    - Renal artery stenosis
    - Hydronephrosis
  - Liver
    - Dysfunction
    - Hepatoma
  - Metabolic
    - 2,3 diphosphoglycerate deficiency
  - Neonatal
    - Normal intrauterine environment
    - Twin-Twin transfusion
    - Diabetic mother
    - IUGR
    - Trisomies
    - Congenital adrenal hyperplasia
    - Thyrotoxicosis

Treatment
- Periodic phlebotomy for hematocrit > 65–70 % or hemoglobin > 23 g/dl

Fanconi Anemia

Genetics
- Autosomal recessive

Clinical presentation
- Skin abnormalities in 65 % of cases
  - Hyperpigmentation of the trunk and intertriginous areas, café-au-lait spots, vitiligo
- Short stature—60 %
- Upper limb anomalies—50 %
  - *Abs*ent thumbs
  - Triphalangeal thumbs
  - Congenital hip dysplasia
- Male genitalia—40 %
  - Underdeveloped penis
  - Undescended testes
  - Hypogonadism
- Female genitalia
  - Malformation of vagina, uterus
- Facial anomalies

  - Microcephaly, small eyes, epicanthal folds, abnormal shape ears, or absent ears
- Intellectual disability (ID)—10%
- Kidney abnormalities
  - Horseshoe kidney, absent, or duplicate kidney

Laboratory
- Macrocytic anemia
- Variable progression to full-blown pancytopenia due to aplasia

Complications
- Acute leukemia
- Carcinoma of head and neck, and upper esophagus

Shwachman–Diamond Syndrome

- Rarest form of pancytopenia

Genetics
- Autosomal recessive

Clinical presentation
- Failure to thrive
- Exocrine pancreatic insufficiency—50%
  - Fat malabsorption—absence of steatorrhea does not exclude SDS
- Skeletal abnormalities
  - Short stature—Metaphyseal chondrodysplasia
  - Abnormal digits—syndactyly, clinodactyly, or supernumerary metatarsals
- Abnormal facies
  - Bifid uvula, short, or cleft palate
  - Dental dysplasia
  - Hypertelorism
  - Microcephaly
- Retinitis pigmentosa
- Recurrent bacterial infections

Laboratory
- Abnormal pancreatic enzymes and steatorrhea
- Neutropenia
- Bone marrow showing myeloid hypoplasia
- Pancytopenia—60%

Diagnosis
- Mutation analysis for SBDS is definitive in 90%

Complications—increase with age, usually after 10 years of age
- Aplastic anemia
- Myelodysplastic syndrome
- Acute myelogenous leukemia

Treatment
- Androgen with low-dose prednisone

White Cell Disorders

Neutropenia

Acute
- Viral infection
  - Epstein–Barr virus
  - Respiratory syncytial virus
  - Influenza A and B
  - Hepatitis
  - Human herpesvirus 6 (HHV 6) infections
- Bacterial infection
- Hypersplenism
- Drug-induced—recovery after medication cessation
  - Antimicrobials—sulfonamides, penicillin
  - Antirheumatics—gold, phenylbutazone, penicillamine
  - Anticonvulsants—phenothiazine
  - Analgesic and anti-inflammatory—ibuprofen

Chronic
- Cyclic neutropenia
  - Clinical presentation
    - Approximately 21-day cycles with changing neutrophil counts with neutropenia spanning 3–6 days
    - Nadir may be in severe range
    - Fever and oral ulceration often during nadir
    - Gingivitis, pharyngitis, skin infections during nadir
    - Occasionally more serious infections—pneumonia, necrotizing enterocolitis with peritonitis, and Escherichia coli or Clostridium sepsis.
    - Count may be recovering when brought to medical attention
  - Laboratory
    - Counts 2–3/week for 6 weeks
  - Treatment
    - Prophylactic GCSF during nadir in some cases
    - Immediate attention with fevers
- Chronic benign neutropenia
  - No specific abnormality found
  - No serious infections
  - No treatment necessary except attention for fevers

Congenital
- Kostmann syndrome (severe congenital neutropenia)
  - Autosomal recessive
  - Clinical presentation

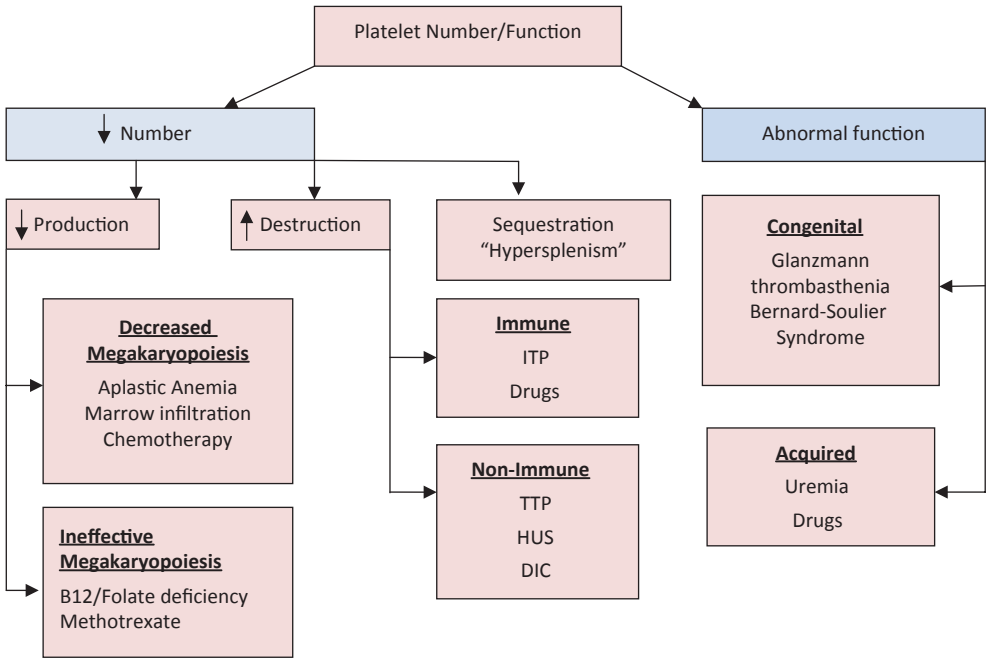


Fig. 10 Approach to platelet disorders

- Mouth ulcers
- Gingivitis
- Otitis media
- Cellulitis
- Respiratory infections
- Skin infections and abscesses—most common
- Pneumonia and deep tissue abscesses—often life threatening
- Mild HSM
- Progress to MDS/AML

– Treatment
- GCSF
- Stem cell transplant for MDS/AML

- Cartilage hair hypoplasia
- Chédiak–Higashi syndrome
- Fanconi anemia

Immune
- Autoimmune neutropenia
- Neonatal alloimmune neutropenia
- Dysgammaglobulinemia
- Hyper IgM syndrome
- HIV
- PNH

Nutritional
- B12 and folic acid deficiency—ineffective erythropoiesis with neutropenia

Bone marrow infiltration
- Malignancy
- MDS
- Lymphoproliferative disorders

Platelet Disorders (Fig. 10)

Thrombocytopenia

Decreased Production

Amegakaryocytic Thrombocytopenia

Genetics
- Autosomal recessive

Clinical presentation
- Rash, bruising, or bleeding at birth
- Most common anomalies:
  – Neurologic—cerebellar and cerebral atrophy are frequent
  – Cardiac findings—ASD, VSD, PDA, TOF, CoA
- Other anomalies
  – Abnormal hips, feet, kidney, eye, and palate malformation

Diagnosis
- Initially absent megakaryocytes then pancytopenia
- If beyond neonatal periods, bone marrow aspirate, and biopsy will confirm the diagnosis

Thrombocytopenia Absent Radius Syndrome (TARS)

Clinical presentation
- Thrombocytopenia
- Absent radius

- Congenital heart disease—TOF, ASD, VSD
- Others
  - Eosinophilia
  - Leukemoid reaction
  - Intellectual disability (ID)

Increased Destruction

- Normal to increased megakaryocytes in bone marrow
- Platelet destruction
  - Immune
    - ITP
    - Drugs
  - Non-Immune
    - TTP
    - HUS
    - DIC
    - Infection
    - Cardiac

Idiopathic Thrombocytopenic Purpura (ITP)

Etiology
- Antiplatelet antibody
- Often a few weeks after infection

Clinical presentation
- Petechiae, ecchymoses, epistaxis
- Variable symptoms, but usually healthy appearing child

Laboratory
- Thrombocytopenia
- Normal to increased size of platelets (MPV)
- Normal RBCs and WBCs

Treatment
- Observation
- IVIg
- Steroids
- WinRho
- Platelet transfusion is contraindicated unless life threatening bleeding is present
- Splenectomy if >4 years of age with severe ITP longer than 1 year
- Neonatal immune thrombocytopenias
  - Autoimmune
  - Alloimmune
  - Erythroblastosis fetalis
- Secondary
  - Viral
  - Bacterial
  - Drug induced
  - Posttransfusion purpura
  - SLE
  - Hyperthyroidism
  - Lymphoproliferative disorders

Hemolytic uremic syndrome

Background
- Non-immune
- Microangiopathic hemolytic anemia
- *E. coli* O157:H7 is a very common cause
- *Shigella dysenteriae* type I is a another cause

Clinical presentation
- Usually children between 4 months and 2 years
- Infection with gastrointestinal symptoms—vomiting and often bloody diarrhea
- Development of oliguria, hypertension, renal failure

Laboratory
- Thrombocytopenia
- Microangiopathic hemolytic anemia
- Helmet cells, schistocytes, burr cells, spherocytes
- Elevated BUN and creatinine
- Reduced large multimers of von Willebrand factor (VWF)
- Decreased immunoglobulins in some patients
- Decreased prostaglandin 12 (PG12) in some patients

Treatment
- Aggressive management of renal failure
- Correction of anemia with transfusion
- Avoid platelet transfusion if possible

Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura (TTP)

Background
- Nonimmune
- Microangiopathic hemolytic anemia

Etiology
- Idiopathic
  - Acute
    - Autoantibody, ADAMTS13 IgG inhibitor
  - Chronic
    - ADAMTS13 mutation
    - Mutation of HF gene
  - Sporadic
    - Gene mutations may be less severe
- Secondary
  - Autoimmune disease
  - Malignancy

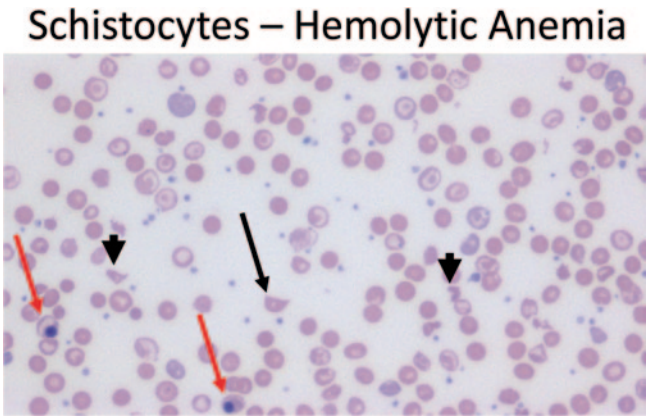


Fig. 11 Peripheral smear (40×) from a patient with hemolytic anemia showing a schistocyte (*arrow*) as well as fragmented cells (*arrowheads*). Note the presence of nucleated red cells (*red arrows*)

- Infection
- Drugs
- Stem cell transplantation
- Bacterial endocarditis

Clinical presentation

- Fever
- Headache
- Malaise
- Abdominal/chest pain
- Arthralgia/myalgia
- Nausea/vomiting
- Pallor
- Purpura
- Jaundice
- Fluctuating neurologic signs and symptoms
- Progressive renal failure

Laboratory

- Thrombocytopenia
- DIC
- Blood smear with polychromasia, basophilic stippling, schistocytes, microspherocytes, and nucleated RBCs (Fig. 11)
- Elevated VWF antigen
- Reduced haptoglobin
- Hemoglobinuria and hemosiderinuria
- Increased unconjugated bilirubin
- Increased LDH
- Widespread hyaline microthrombi in the microvasculature in biopsy specimens
- Other disorders with consumption thrombocytopenia
  - DIC
  - Virus associated hemophagocytic syndrome
  - Hemangioma (Kasabach–Merritt syndrome)
  - Cyanotic heart disease

Abnormal Platelets

Wiskott–Aldrich Syndrome

- Thrombocytopenia
- Tiny platelet
- Eczema
- Recurrent infection

Bernard–Soulier Syndrome

- Absence or deficiency of VWF receptors on the platelet membrane
- Markedly prolonged bleeding time

Glanzmann's Thrombasthenia

- Severe platelet dysfunction that yield prolonged bleeding time
- Normal platelet count
- Aggregation studies show abnormal or absent aggregation
- Prolonged bleeding time

Coagulation Disorders

Hemophilia

- X-linked recessive
  - Factor VIII (hemophilia A)—85%
  - Factor IX (hemophilia B)—10–15%
- Bleeding may start from birth or even fetus

Clinical presentation

- Easy bruising
- Intramuscular (deep) hematomas—localized pain and swelling
- Hemarthroses
  - Hallmark of hemophilia
  - Ankle most common
  - Knee and elbow increasing frequency with age

Laboratory

- PTT is usually 2–3 times upper limit of normal
- PT, bleeding time, platelet count normal
- Specific assay for factor VIII or IX will confirm the diagnosis

Classifications

- Severe hemophilia < 1%

- Moderate hemophilia 1–5 %
- Mild hemophilia > 5 %

Treatment
- Factor replacement
  - Mild to moderate bleeding—raise factor to 35–50 %
  - Severe or life threatening hemorrhage—raise level to 100 %
- Lifelong prophylaxis usually started with first joint hemorrhage
- DDAVP may be sufficient in mild forms of hemophilia
- Avoidance of high risk behavior

Complications
- Severe hemorrhage
- Arthropathy

Von Willebrand Disease

Etiology
- VWF is a carrier protein for factor VIII
- VWF stored in platelets and endothelial cell
- VWF adheres to exposed the subendothelial matrix after vascular damage causing platelets to adhere via glycoprotein IB receptors on the VWF

Clinical presentation
- VWD usually have symptoms of mucocutaneous hemorrhage
- Excessive bruising, epistaxis, menorrhagia, post-operative bleeding (e.g., tonsillectomy, wisdom teeth extraction)
- Females more commonly diagnosed than males secondary to menorrhagia
  - Any menstruating female with iron deficiency, should have a detailed history of bruising and other bleeding symptoms
  - Stress doubles or triples level of VWF

Laboratory
- No single assay to rule out or diagnose VWF
  - Bleeding time or PFA
  - PTT—often prolonged but frequently normal in type 1 VWD
  - VWF antigen
  - VWF Ristocetin cofactor activity
  - Plasma factor VIII activity
  - VWF multimers
  - Platelet count

Treatment
- Based on subtype and trial of DDAVP
  - Type 1 usually treated with DDAVP
  - DDAVP 0.3 microgram/kg increases the level of VWF and factor VIII 3–5 fold
  - Type 2B and 3 primarily treated with FVIII:VWF concentrates
  - Platelet type treated with platelet transfusions

Disseminated Intravenous Coagulopathy

Etiology
- Widespread intravascular consumption of platelets and plasma clotting factors and deposition of fibrin

Clinical presentation
- Bleeding (e.g., from venipuncture sites)
- Petechiae, ecchymoses
- Clot formation
- Associated conditions
  - Tissue injury
    - Trauma, especially cranial
    - Burns
    - Venom
    - Malignancy
    - Obstetric emergencies
  - Endothelial cell injury or abnormal vascular surfaces
    - Infection/sepsis
    - Immune complexes
    - Eclampsia
    - Oral contraceptives
    - Giant hemangioma
    - Respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)
    - Malignancy
  - Platelet, leukocyte, or red cell injury
    - Incompatible blood transfusion
    - Infection
    - Allograft rejection
    - Hemolytic syndromes
    - Drug hypersensitivity
    - Malignancy

Laboratory
- Prolonged PT and PTT
- Decreased fibrinogen
- Decreased platelets
- Increased fibrin degradation products and D-dimers
- Presence of helmet cells, schistocytes
- Increased PF4 (platelet factor 4)
- Increased FPA (fibrinopeptide A)
- Decreased factor V, VIII, XIII

Table 2 Prevalence of leukemia

Type	Prevalence (%)
Acute lymphoblastic	*75–80*
• Pre B cell	*80*
• Mature B cell (Burkitt)	*1–2*
• T cell	*15–20*
Acute myeloblastic	*20%*
Acute undifferentiated	*< 0.5%*
Acute mixed lineage	
Chronic Myeloid • Philadelphia chromosome positive • Juvenile myelomonocytic	*3%*

Treatment
- Treatment of underlying disorder
- Replacement therapy of components as indicated

Neoplastic Disorders

Acute Leukemia

Epidemiology (Table 2)
- *25–30% of all childhood cancer*
- Peak age 2–5 years

Clinical presentation
- Anorexia
- Fatigue
- Fever
- Bone and joint pain (especially lower extremities)
- Pallor
- Petechiae, ecchymoses, epistaxis
- Extramedullary spread
  - Lymphadenopathy
  - Hepatosplenomegaly
  - Cough, orthopnea
  - CNS disease—5%—cranial nerve palsies
  - Testicular involvement—20%—testicular enlargement
  - Ovarian involvement—30%
  - Skin lesions
  - Gingival hypertrophy

Laboratory
- Cytopenias
  - Thrombocytopenia—90%
  - Anemia—80%
  - Neutropenia
  - 95% have two cytopenias
  - 4% have only one cytopenia
  - 1% have a normal CBC
- 50% with elevated WBC
  - Usually see blasts if WBC > 5000

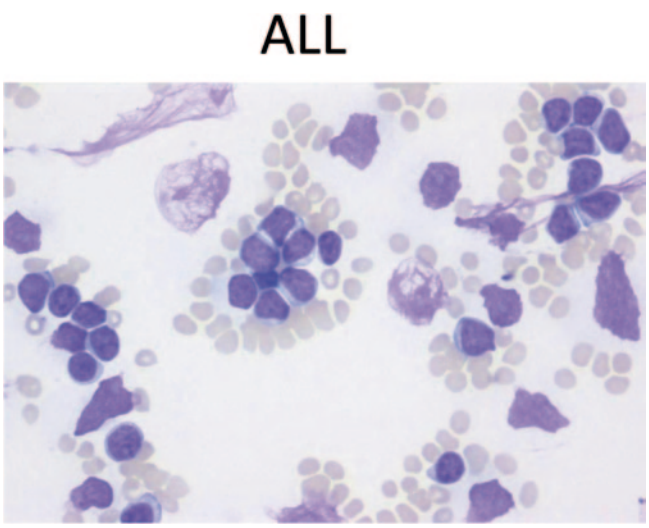


Fig. 12 Peripheral blood showing leukocytosis with a population of large mononuclear cells with high nuclear-cytoplasmic ratio, scant *blue* cytoplasm, and fine chromatin with occasional nucleoli. These are features of lymphoblasts. Note scattered smudge cells, another feature often seen in peripheral smears with leukemia

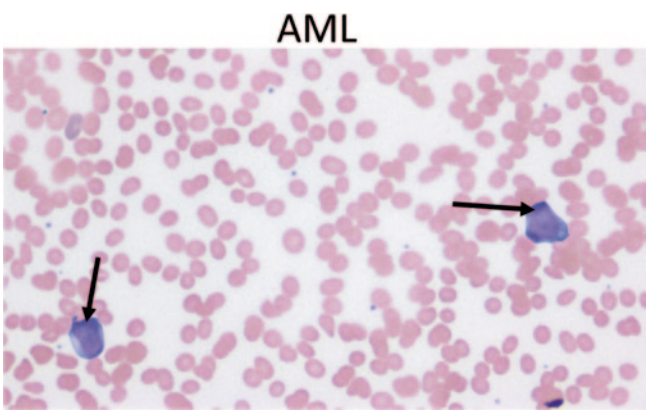


Fig. 13 Peripheral blood showing two myeloblasts with a high ratio of nucleus to cytoplasm, finely dispersed chromatin and one or more large nucleoli (*arrows*). Acute myeloid leukemia represents only 20% of childhood leukemia

- Flow cytometry diagnosis

Peripheral blood
- ALL: Peripheral blood usually shows leukocytosis with a population of large mononuclear cells (Fig. 12)
- AML: Peripheral blood usually shows myeloblasts with a high ratio of nucleus to cytoplasm (Fig. 13)

Treatment
- Per local or national protocols

Associated syndromes/risk factors
- ALL
  - Down's syndrome.

    - Acute leukemia is 34 times more common in children with Down's syndrome.
    - 20–30% will develop leukemia by age 3 years.
    - Ratio of ALL and AML is the same as the general population.
    - AML has a better outcomes in children with Down's syndrome.
    - 10% of neonates with Down's syndrome may develop a transient leukemia or myelodysplastic syndrome.
      - Characterized by a high leukocyte count, blast cells, anemia, thrombocytopenia and hepatosplenomegaly.
      - Resolve within days to weeks from initial presentation.
  - Ataxia-telangiectasia.
  - Bloom's syndrome.
    - Immunodeficiency, progeria, growth retardation.
    - Chromosome fragility/breakage.
    - Predisposition to cancer.
  - Fanconi anemia.
    - Pancytopenia, radial bone abnormalities, kidney, skin, or GI abnormalities.
    - Chromosome fragility/breakage.
- AML
  - Ionizing radiation
  - Organic solvents
  - Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria
  - Down's syndrome
  - Fanconi anemia
  - Bloom's syndrome
  - Kostmann syndrome
    - Severe congenital neutropenia
    - High mortality rate—70%
  - Shwachman–Diamond syndrome
    - Congenital neutropenia
    - Metaphyseal chondrodysplasia
    - Exocrine pancreatic deficiency
  - Diamond–Blackfan syndrome
    - Congenital pure red cell aplasia
    - Increased erythrocyte adenosine deaminase
    - Short stature
    - Developmental delay
    - Thumb malformations
    - Craniofacial anomalies
    - Urogenital anomalies
    - Increased MCV on CBC
  - Neurofibromatosis
    - Bone marrow failure
    - Predisposition to cancers, especially AML and neuroblastoma
- Chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML)
  - 99% characterized by specific translocation known as the Philadelphia chromosome t(9;22)

Lymphadenopathy

Causes of lymphadenopathy according to location

- Cervical
  - Oropharyngeal infections, for example, EBV
  - Mycobacterial lymphadenitis
  - Cat scratch disease
  - Kawasaki disease
- Supraclavicular
  - Right side—Malignancy or infection in the mediastinum
  - Left side—Malignancy or infection from the abdomen
  - Lymphoma
  - Tuberculosis
- Hilar
  - Tuberculosis
  - Histoplasmosis
  - Leukemia
  - Lymphoma
  - Sarcoidosis
- Axillary
  - Cat scratch disease
  - Arm or chest infection
  - Leukemia
  - Lymphoma
- Abdominal
  - Malignancy
  - Mesenteric adenitis

Clinical approach to lymphadenopathy

- History
  - Associated other systemic symptoms
- Age
  - Lymph node enlargement in children less than 5 years most likely infectious
  - Histiocytosis can cause lymphadenopathy in children < 3 years
  - Large lymph node in neonate most likely related to congenital infection
  - Likelihood of malignant lymphoma increases in adolescents
- Location
  - Supraclavicular lymphadenopathy is always abnormal and the chances of malignancy are high
- Size
  - Size of the enlarged lymph node aids in determining the need for further evaluation
  - Axillary and cervical > 1 cm
  - Inguinal > 1.5 cm
  - Epitrochlear > 0.5 cm
  - Anywhere > 2 cm
- Characteristics
  - Usually develops over weeks or months.
  - Nontender, discrete, firm, rubbery, often immobile

Biopsy criteria
- Size
  - >2 cm
  - Increasing over 2 weeks
  - No decrease in size after 4 weeks
- Location
  - Supraclavicular
- Consistency
  - Hard
  - Matted
  - Rubbery
- Associated features
  - Abnormal CXR
  - Fever
  - Weight loss
  - Hepatosplenomegaly

Hodgkin Lymphoma

Hodgkin disease (HD)
- Rare in children < 10 years
- 15% of cancers in persons between 15 and 19 years
- Bimodal peaks of incidence from 15–35 years of age and at 55 years of age
- Infectious agents may be involved
  - EBV
  - HHV6
  - CMV
- Reed–Sternberg cell is the hallmark of HD (Fig. 14)

Clinical presentation
- Painless lymphadenopathy
- Airway obstruction
- Pleural dysfunction
- Pericardial dysfunction
- Hepatocellular dysfunction
- Bone marrow infiltration
- Systemic symptoms (B symptoms)
  - Fever > 39 C
  - Weight loss > 10% of body weight
  - Night sweats

Diagnosis
- CXR
- CT abdomen and pelvis
- PET scan
- CBC, CMP, ESR, ferritin

Treatment
- Chemotherapy and radiotherapy are very effective
- Chemotherapy regimens

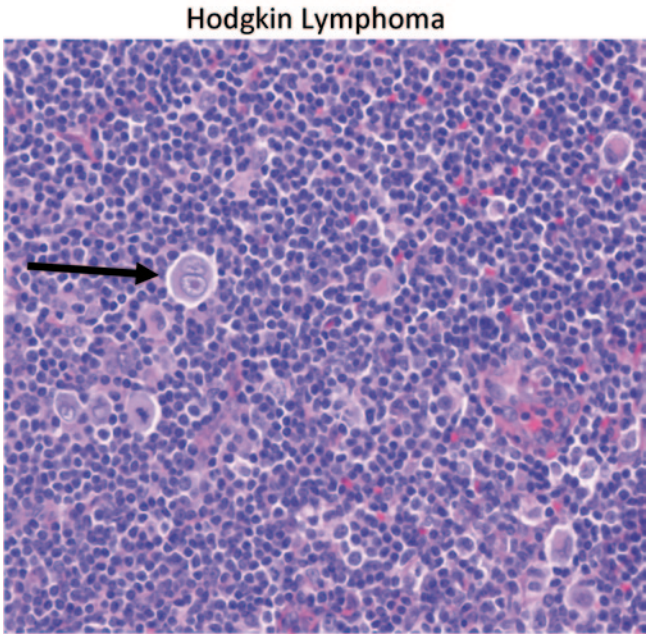


Fig. 14 Hodgkin's lymphoma presents as a localized or regional lymphadenopathy. The characteristic cell in Hodgkin's is the Reed–Sternberg cell (*arrow*)

  - COPP (cyclophosphamide, vincristine, procarbazine, and prednisone)
  - ABVD (Doxorubicin (adriamycin) bleomycin, vinblastine, and dacarbazine)

Prognosis
- Early stage disease have event free survival 85–90%, overall survival at 5 years of 95%
- Poor prognostic features
  - Bulky tumor
  - Advanced stage at diagnosis
  - B symptoms
- Patient who relapse > 12 months after chemotherapy alone or combined modality have good retrieval response

Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma

- 60% of all lymphomas in children
- Burkitt lymphoma is the most common
- Most children have de novo disease (no underlying condition)
- Related diseases
  - Severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID)
  - Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome
  - Ataxia telangiectasia
  - Bloom's syndrome
  - HIV
  - EBV

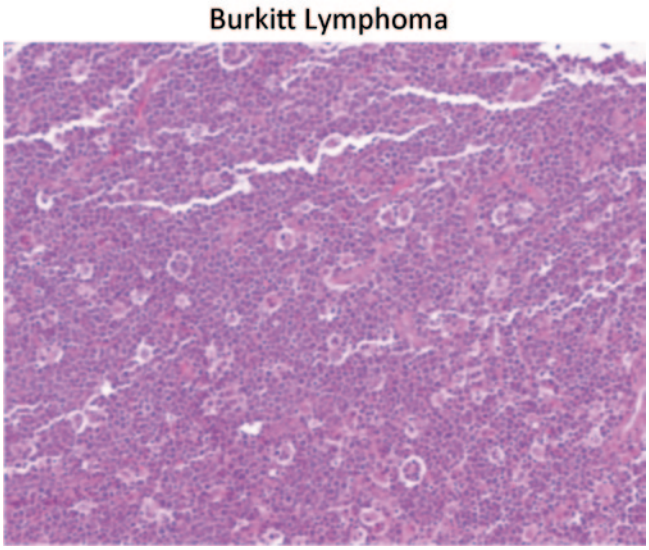


Fig. 15 Classic "starry sky" appearance of Burkitt lymphoma. The stars are actually macrophages that are phagocytosing apoptotic Burkitt cells. This example presented as a colonic mass with intussusception

Clinical presentation
- Rapidly growing tumors with symptoms based on size and location
- Burkitt lymphoma of abdomen (sporadic type) more common in the USA
- Burkitt lymphoma of head and neck (endemic type) more common in Africa
- Superior vena cava (SVC) syndrome—chest involvement
- Intestinal obstruction—abdominal mass
- Paraplegia with spinal cord involvement
- Tumor lysis syndrome
  - Hyperkalemia, hyperuricemia, hyperphosphatemia, hypocalcemia

Diagnosis
- CXR
- CT abdomen and pelvis
- CBC, CMP, Mg, Phos, Uric Acid, LDH
- EBV

Biopsy
- Classic "starry sky" appearance of Burkitt lymphoma (Fig. 15)

Treatment
- Chemotherapy

Prognosis
- Excellent in most of children
- 90–100 % survival rate with localized disease

Brain Tumors

Epidemiology
- Almost 20 % of all pediatric cancers
- Peak age 0–4 years
- Most common cancer mortality in children
  - 25 % of all deaths from cancer

Clinical presentation
- Based on location, size, growth rate and age
- Increased intracranial pressure
  - Headache
  - Vomiting (often mornings)
  - Mental changes, irritability
  - Visual disturbances
    - Diplopia
    - Papilledema
    - Parinaud's
  - Gait disturbances
- Failure to thrive
- Cranial nerve abnormalities
- Focal neurologic deficits
- Seizures

Pathologic diagnosis
- Based on cell of origin
- Can occur at multiple locations in the CNS
  - Infratentorial—60 %
  - Supratentorial—40 %
- Common in children
  - Astrocytoma (Fig. 17)
    - 40 % of all CNS tumors
    - Juvenile pilocytic astrocytoma—most common subtype in children
    - Classic site for JPA is cerebellum, but can occur anywhere in CNS
  - Treatment
    - Surgery—primary treatment
    - Chemotherapy
    - Radiation therapy
  - Medulloblastoma (Fig. 16)
    - 20 % of all brain tumors (second most common)
    - 90 % of embryonal tumors
    - Arises in cerebellum and fourth ventricle
    - May metastasize down spinal cord and rarely outside CNS
    - Similar cell type to primitive neuroectodermal tumor (PNET)
    - Treatment
      - Surgery—prognosis based on extent of resection
      - Chemotherapy
      - Radiation therapy

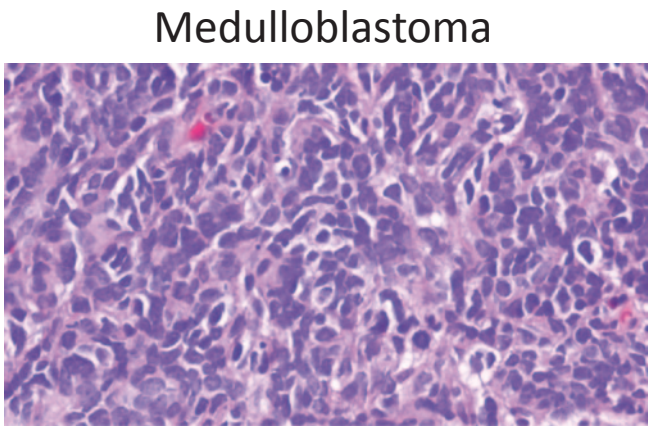


Fig. 16 Medulloblastoma (40x) is a so-called "small round blue" cell tumor of childhood. Medulloblastoma is a posterior fossa tumor and the second most common brain tumor of childhood

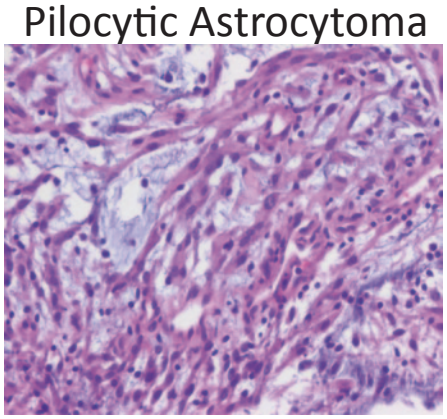


Fig. 17 Pilocytic astrocytoma is composed of bipolar cells with frequent microcystic spaces. Juvenile pilocytic astrocytoma is the most common childhood primary brain tumor

  - Ependymoma
    - Derived from the ependymal lining of the ventricles
    - 70% occur in the posterior fossa
  - Pineal tumors
    - Germ cell tumors
      - Germinoma
      - Yolk sac tumor
      - Mixed germ cell tumor
    - Pineoblastoma
    - PNET
  - Craniopharyngioma
    - 7–10% of childhood brain tumors
      - Suprasellar location
    - Solid and cystic components
    - Associated with panhypopituitarism and visual loss
      - Tumor related
      - Treatment related
- Syndromes associated with brain tumors
  - *Neurofibromatosis type 1:* optic glioma, astrocytoma, neurofibroma, malignant nerve sheath tumor

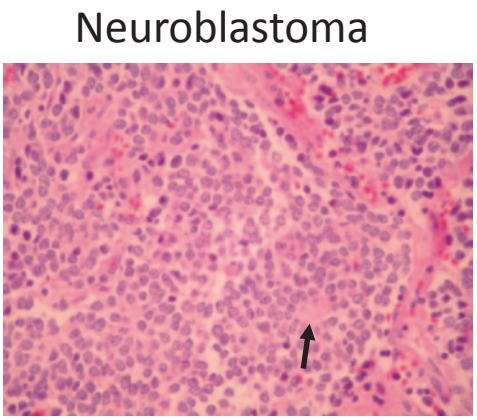


Fig. 18 Neuroblastoma is one of the small round blue cell tumors of childhood. A majority are at least poorly differentiated with the presence of some neuropil (black arrow) often in association with Homer-Wright rosettes (10x)

  - *NF type 2:* vestibular schwannomas, meningiomas, spinal cord ependymoma, spinal cord astrocytoma
  - *Von Hippel–Lindau*: Hemangioblastoma, angiomatosis, pheochromocytoma, renal cell carcinoma, pancreatic cyst
  - *Li–Fraumeni:* astrocytoma
  - *Cowden syndrome:* multiple hamartomas including the brain; dysplastic gangliocytoma of the cerebellum
  - *Turcot syndrome:* medulloblastoma and colon polyps

Neuroblastoma (Fig. 18)

Epidemiology
- Third most common pediatric cancer
- 8% of childhood malignancy
- Most commonly diagnosed neoplasm in infants (28–39% of neonatal malignancies)
- Mean age is 2 years

Clinical presentation
- Fever, failure to thrive
- Paraneoplastic symptoms
  - Secretory diarrhea
  - Increased sweating
  - Hypertension
  - Opsoclonus, myoclonus (dancing eyes and dancing feet)
- Most cases arise in abdomen
  - Abdominal pain
  - Distended abdomen, mass
- Thoracic tumors
  - Occasional Horner's syndrome
- Spinal tumors
  - Paraplegias

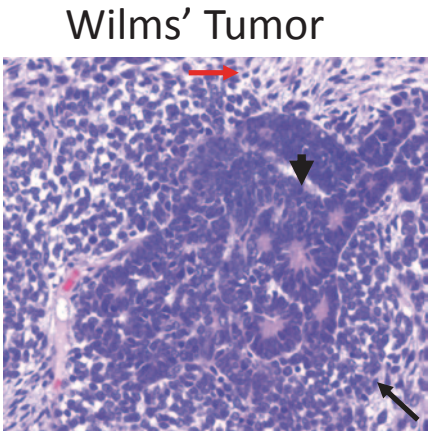


Fig. 19 Wilms' Tumor is a triphasic tumor composed of blastemal (black arrow), epithelial (arrowhead) and mesenchymal components (red arrow). Most are diagnosed before 6 years of age

- Metastatic disease
  - Bone pain (bone mets)
  - Cytopenias (bone marrow infiltrate)
  - Orbital proptosis and ecchymosis-"raccoon eyes" (retro-orbital soft tissue infiltrate)
  - Bluish subcutaneous nodules (skin infiltrate)

Diagnosis
- CT/MRI scans often show calcifications
- Tumor markers
  - Urine homovanillic acid (HVA), vanillylmandelic acid (VMA)
- *Poor prognostic factors on pathology*
  - N-myc proto-oncogene (MYCN) amplification
  - DNA hyperdiploidy (if less than 1 year of age)

Treatment
- Chemotherapy
- Radiation therapy
- Stem cell transplant
- New vaccines/antibodies
- Retinoic acid

Associated syndromes/risk factors
- Hirschsprung's disease
- Pheochromocytoma in family
- Fetal hydantoin syndrome
- Fetal alcohol syndrome
- Nesidioblastosis

Wilms Tumor (Fig. 19)

- *WT-1* gene located on 11p13

Epidemiology
- Peak incidence 2–5 years of age
- 8 cases/million children < 15 years

Clinical presentation
- Abdominal mass often noted first by parents
- Abdominal pain, vomiting, hematuria in 12–25 %
- Hypertension
- Anomalies and syndromes associated with Wilms tumor
  - Beckwith-Wiedemann (organomegaly, macroglossia, omphalocele, hemihypertrophy)
  - WAGR (aniridia, genitourinary abnormalities, intellectual disability (ID), del 11p13)
  - Denys-Drash (early onset renal failure with renal mesangial sclerosis, male pseudohermaphroditism)

Diagnosis
- US, KUB, CT, and/or MRI
- U/A

Treatment
- Surgery, chemotherapy, and radiotherapy
- Poor prognostic factor
  - Large tumor > 500 g
  - Advanced stage (III or IV)
  - Unfavorable histologic type

Rhabdomyosarcoma

Epidemiology
- Most common soft tissue sarcoma
- 3.5 % of childhood tumors
- Increased frequency with neurofibromatosis
- Peak incidence 1–5 years
- 10 % occur in the first year of life
- 70 % appear within first decade

Clinical presentation
- Anatomic distribution
  - Head and neck—40 %
  - GU—20 %
  - Trunk—10 %
  - Retroperitoneal and others

Specific histologic types
- *Embry*onal: 60 %, intermediate prognosis
- Alveolar type: 15 %, most in trunk and extremeties, poor prognosis (Fig. 20)
- Botryoid type: 6 %, "bunch of grapes", most in vagina, uterus, bladder, nasopharynx, and middle ear, good prognosis
- Pleo*morphic form:* 1 %, adult type

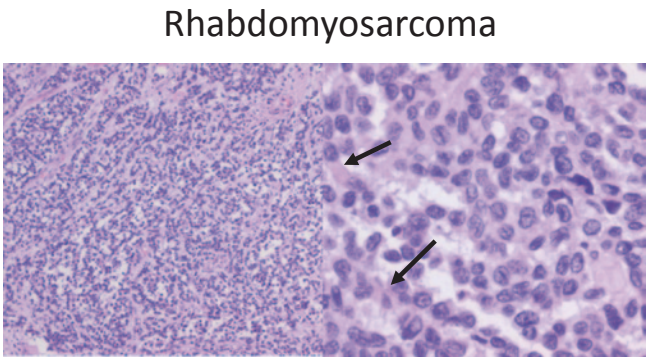


Fig. 20 At low power (10x) alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma has a vaguely alveolar growth pattern with neoplastic cells lining thin fibrous septae. At higher power pink cytoplasmic material is evident (arrows) showing early myogenic differentiation

Osteosarcoma

Epidemiology
- Most common primary malignant bone tumor in children
- Most present in second decade
- More common in males

Clinical presentation
- Local pain, swelling, often history of injury
- Associated syndromes/risk factors
  - Retinoblastoma, Li–Fraumeni syndrome, Paget disease, radiotherapy

Diagnosis
- Pathologic findings (Fig. 21)
  - Spindle to epithelioid cells producing osteoid (bone forming)
- Radiologic findings
  - Scelerotic destruction (sunburst)
  - Lytic lesion less common

Differential diagnosis
- Ewing sarcoma
- Osteomyelitis

Metastasis
- Lung and bone

Treatment
- Chemotherapy
- Surgical resection
  - Amputation
  - Prosthesis

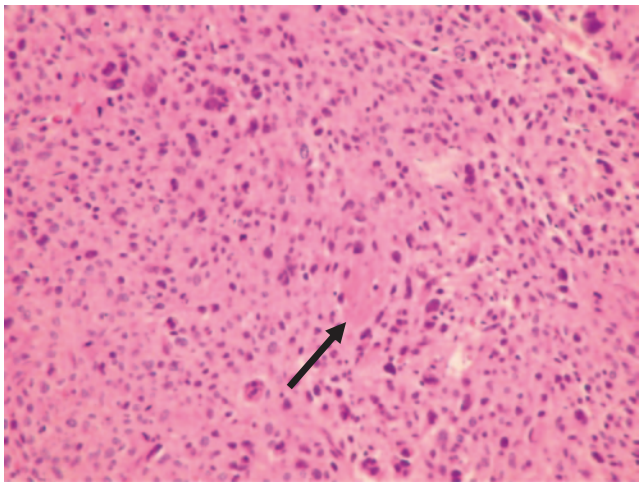


Fig. 21 Osteosarcoma is composed of a pleomorphic cell population of ovoid and frankly bizarre cells with focal osteoid formation (black arrow)

Ewing Sarcoma

Epidemiology
- Second decade
- More common in males

Clinical presentation
- Local pain, swelling, fever
- Location
  - Diaphysis of long bone, flat bones

Diagnosis
- Pathology
  - Undifferentiated small round cell tumor
- Radiologic findings
  - Primarily lytic lesions (onion ring appearance)

Treatment
- Chemotherapy
- Radiation therapy
- +/− surgery

Prognosis
- Localized—60 % survival
- Metastatic—20–30 % survival

Osteoid Osteoma

- Small benign bone tumor

Epidemiology
- Occurs in patients from 2–50 years of age
- Male are more common than females

Clinical presentation
- Gradually increasing pain
  - Often worse at night and relieved by aspirin
- Lower extremity lesion may develop limp, atrophy, or weakness
- Palpation and range of motion may not alter the discomfort
- Vertebral lesions may cause scoliosis
- Most common in proximal tibia and femur, can involve any bone

Diagnosis
- Radiologic findings
  - Round, oval metaphyseal or diaphyseal lucency surrounded by sclerotic bone
  - Central lucency or nidus shows intense uptake of bone scan
  - 25% only visualized by CT
  - Not seen on MRI

Treatment
- Removal of the lesion and ablation of nidus
- Treat pain with aspirin

Retinoblastoma

Epidemiology
- Arises following mutation of both Rb genes at 13q14
- Hereditary form associated with germline inactivating mutation of one copy of RB1 gene
  - Need "second hit", somatic mutation to second RB1 gene to develop tumor
  - 80–90% with germline mutation get a second hit and develop retinoblastoma
- Sporadic cases involve 2 somatic mutations to RB1 gene
- 60% sporadic, 40% familial
- 30% bilateral
  - 90% of familial tumors are bilateral
- May be present congenitally
- Most present between 6 months and 2 years of age

Clinical presentation
- Leukocoria—white pupillary reflex
- Strabismus—usually the initial presenting complaint
- Orbital inflammation, proptosis, hyphema, irregular pupils with advanced disease
- Pain if secondary glaucoma develops

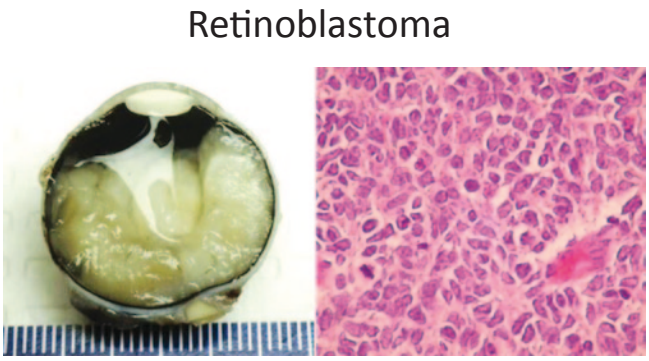


Fig. 22 Left – Gross photo showing the white tumor mass filling two-thirds of the posterior chamber of the eye. Right – Retinoblastoma is another "small round blue" cell tumor of childhood

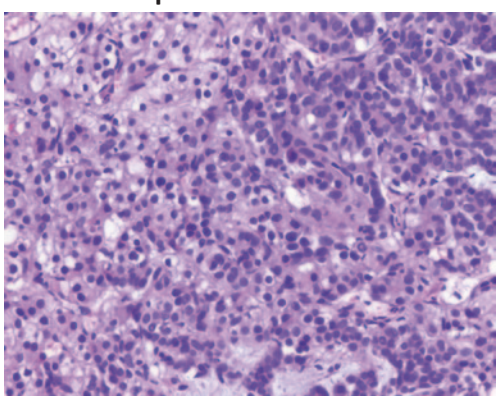


Fig. 23 Hepatoblastoma is composed of epithelial components – fetal, embryonal, or a mixture of the two – and occasionally mesenchymal components. The image here is of fetal epithelial type hepatoblastoma with a classic "light and dark" appearance

Diagnosis
- Exam by ophthalmologist under anesthesia
- CT or MRI
- Metastatic workup for larger lesions

Treatment
- Chemotherapy
- Focal laser photocoagulation
- Radiation therapy in severe cases
- Enucleation of unresponsive cases, especially if loss of vision (Fig. 22)

Prognosis
- 95% cure rate in US

Hepatoblastoma (Fig. 23)

Epidemiology
- Children <3 years
- Can be congenital

- 90 % occur by age of 5 years, 70 % by age of 2 years
- Male predominance
- Prevalence of 1 per 120,000 (1 per 1 million children under age 15 years)
- Associated syndromes/risk factors
  - Familial adenomatous polyposis (APC gene mutation)
  - Glycogen storage disease
  - Beckwith–Wiedemann syndrome
  - Li–Fraumeni syndrome
  - Low birth weight infants
  - Wilms tumor

Clinical presentation
- Large asymptomatic mass
- Right lobe more common
- Weight loss, anorexia, vomiting, or abdominal pain

Diagnosis
- US, KUB, CT, and/or MRI
- Bilirubin and liver enzymes are usually normal
- Alpha-fetoprotein is elevated in all hepatoblastomas
- Anemia and thrombocytosis are common
- Hepatitis B and C serologies {usually negative}

Treatment
- Chemotherapy
- Tumor resection
- As much as 85 % of liver can be resected
- Hepatic regeneration noted within 3–4 months of surgery

Suggested Readings

1. Boxer LA. Neutrophil abnormalities. Pediatr Rev. 2003;24:52–62.
2. Donadieu J, Fenneteau O, Beaupain B, Mahlaoui N, Chantelot CB. Congenital neutropenia: diagnosis, molecular bases and patient management. Orphanet J Rare Dis. 2011;6:26.
3. Gaston MH, Verter JI, Woods G, et al. Prophylaxis with oral penicillin in children with sickle cell anemia. A randomized trial. N Engl J Med. 1986;314:1593–9.
4. Knight PJ, Mulne AF, Vassy LE. When is lymph node biopsy indicated in children with enlarged peripheral nodes? Pediatrics. 1982;69:391–6.
5. Rogers ZR. Priapism in sickle cell disease. Hematol Oncol Clin N Am. 2005;19:917–28.

Renal Disorders

Beatrice Goilav and Abhijeet Pal

Normal Renal Function

- Glomerular filtration increases progressively from day 1 after birth and continues to increase with growth until the second year of life.
- If corrected for surface area, the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) reaches adult values of 120 cc/min/1.73 m^2 by 2 years of age.

Creatinine level
- Serum creatinine may be elevated in the first 10 days of life reflecting the maternal creatinine
- Infant: 0.2–0.4 mg/dL
- Child: 0.3–0.7 mg/dL
- Adolescent: 0.5–1.0 mg/dL
- Adult male: 0.9–1.3 mg/dL, for adult males, higher values correspond to the higher muscle mass compared to females
- Adult female: 0.6–1.1 mg/dL

Proteinuria

Definition
- Dipstick 1+ or 30 mg/dL is considered proteinuria

Dipstick
- Negative
- Trace means 10–20 mg/dl
- 1+ means 30 mg/dl
- 2+ means 100 mg/dl
- 3+ means 300 mg/dl
- 4+ means 1000–1500 mg/dl

Consider false positive
- Too concentrated urine e.g., SG > 1.015 and protein < 2+
- Consider false negative if SG < 1.005 and protein negative

Diagnosis
- First morning sample immediately in the morning (important to instruct child to empty the bladder before going to sleep the night before the test in the morning).
- Divide urine protein/creatinine ratio (UPr/UCr), if ≤ 0.2 is normal in child > 2 years of age.
- If dipstick > 1+ or UPr/UCr > 0.2 on repeat urine morning sample, patient should be referred to nephrologist for evaluation of a renal disease.
- Dipstick of 3+ or greater suggests nephrotic range proteinuria
- On 24-hour urine collections protein < 4 mg/m^2/h is normal, nephrotic range proteinuria is greater than 40 mg/m^2/h

Orthostatic proteinuria
- Significant proteinuria in upright position and resolved in supine position
- Presence of proteinuria with urine protein/creatinine ratio greater than 0.2 on random urine specimen but less than 0.2 on first morning specimen
- Benign condition, no further workup or treatment necessary

Transient proteinuria
- Dipstick is > 1+ with a subsequent negative test
- Common causes: exercise, fever, intercurrent illness, and stress

B. Goilav (✉) · A. Pal
Department of Pediatric Nephrology, Children's Hospital at Montefiore, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, 111 East 210th Street, Bronx, NY 10467, USA
e-mail: bgoilav@montefiore.org

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_17,

Persistent proteinuria
- Persistent proteinuria is the signal indicator of renal disease
- Positive first void morning specimen >1+ protein on dipstick or protein/creatinine ratio > 0.2—repeat with 2-week interval and rule out intercurrent illnesses

Nephrotic Syndrome

Definition
- Proteinuria
- Hypoalbuminemia
- Edema
- Hypercholesterolemia

Background
- More common in males during childhood, equal gender distribution among adolescents.
- Caused in 85% by minimal change disease in children, but in adolescents, it is most commonly due to focal segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS).
- Minimal change disease refers to the pathological picture in which the glomerulus looks normal on light microscopy, but on electron microscopy, there is effacement of the podocyte foot processes
- Common between 2 and 6 years of age
- In adolescents, nephrotic range proteinuria in the absence of hypoalbuminemia may be due to FSGS

Clinical presentation
- Periorbital and facial edema in the morning, lower extremity edema later in the day
- Slow progression—facial edema may be attributed to allergies at the beginning, causing some delay in initial diagnosis
- Over time, edema becomes generalized, accompanied by ascites and pleural effusions
- Abdominal pain and diarrhea are common, hypertension (HTN) and hematuria are uncommon
- HTN at presentation should raise the suspicion of an underlying nephritis with nephrotic range proteinuria or of FSGS

Diagnosis
- Urinalysis reveals 4+ proteinuria
- Microscopic hematuria in 20% of cases
- Spot urine protein/creatinine ratio >2
- Urinary protein exceeds >40 mg/m^2/h
- Serum creatinine value is usually normal
- Diminished renal perfusion due to decreased effective blood volume
- Serum albumin <2.5 g/dl
- Serum cholesterol and triglycerides are elevated
- C3 and C4 are normal and serologies related to infections or autoimmune diseases are negative
- Renal biopsy is not indicated unless <1 year or >10 years, or any case, which is not responsive to steroids, i.e. the urine does not become protein-free within 6 weeks of treatment with high-dose steroids.

Treatment
- Treating underlying cause:
  - First episode: Prednisone 60 mg/m^2/day divided in two doses for 6 consecutive weeks, followed by 6 weeks of alternate day therapy with 40 mg/m^2/day
  - Relapse: Prednisone 60 mg/m^2/day divided in two doses until patient's urine is negative for protein on 3 consecutive days, followed by 4 weeks of alternate day therapy with 40 mg/m^2/day
  - Purified protein derivative (PPD) before starting steroid therapy
  - If patient has multiple relapses a year, displays signs of steroid toxicity, or shows steroid dependence, a second-line agent is to be considered (steroid-sparing agent)
    - In younger children, oral cyclophosphamide with 2 mg/kg/day for 3 months should be the second-line agent of choice
    - In older children and adolescents, calcineurin inhibitors can be beneficial, but relapses occur with discontinuation
    - Mycophenolate mofetil has been used in uncontrolled trials, showing steroid-sparing effect, but dosing guidelines not evidence based
  - The use of steroid-sparing agents in steroid-resistant nephrotic syndrome can be considered, but there is no evidence suggesting significant improvement
- Supportive treatment:
  - Sodium restriction as long as patient has nephrotic-range proteinuria
  - Water restriction if hyponatremia
  - Diuretics
  - If fluid restriction and parenteral diuretic are not effective, start IV 25% albumin 1 g/kg/dose (max. dose 50 g) q 8–12 h followed by furosemide 1–2 mg/kg/dose—monitor electrolytes
  - If patient is steroid resistant, antiproteinuric agents, such as angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEI) or angiotensin receptor blockers should be added to the therapy

Complications
- Children with nephrotic syndrome are immunocompromised from the disease per se, because they lose IgG and important complement cofactors in the urine. Infections are the most common complication, and among those, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (due to *Streptococcus*

pneumoniae, *Escherichia coli*, and group B *Streptococci*) needs to be suspected in a child who has nephrotic syndrome and abdominal pain , and this an indication for admission even in the absence of fever. Ascitic fluid should be aspirated by a pediatric surgeon.
- All children with a diagnosis of nephrotic syndrome must receive polyvalent pneumococcal vaccine if not previously immunized, once they are in remission.
- Varicella vaccine must be given for varicella negative children.
- Thromboembolic events occur in 2–5% of cases due to urinary loss of antithrombin III, protein C and S.

Prognosis
- Children between the ages of 1 and 8 years are usually steroid responsive, defined as complete resolution of proteinuria within 4 weeks of daily high-dose steroids.
- 80–90% of patients will respond to steroid therapy within 2 weeks.
- If proteinuria continues after 6 weeks of therapy, a renal biopsy should be considered, because the child then, by definition, has steroid-resistant nephrotic syndrome, even if there is some reduction in proteinuria.
- Patients who relapse as soon as steroids are discontinued or tapered, are considered steroid dependent.
- Only 30% of children with nephrotic syndrome have only one episode, relapses are common and usually occur 2–3 times per year—any intercurrent illness can trigger a relapse.
- Minimal change disease resolves in >80% (child outgrows the disease), but children who presented at a younger age or who have frequent relapses may continue relapsing into adulthood.
- Steroid-sensitive nephrotic syndrome can become steroid resistant, at which point a renal biopsy is indicated
- 30% of cases of FSGS respond to steroids initially.
- FSGS can progress to end stage renal disease (ESRD) and can recur in kidney transplants, particularly, if patient presented at young age and progressed rapidly to ESRD—exact causes of recurrence are not known (possible "circulating factor").
- FSGS may be due to genetic mutations in genes related to podocyte architecture, in which case there is no recurrence after kidney transplantation.

Hematuria

Definition
- Presence of five or more RBCs per high-power (400x) field in three consecutive fresh, centrifuged specimens obtained over the span of several weeks
- Microscopic hematuria = urine grossly appears normal, gross hematuria = blood visible to the naked eye
- Confirmation of hematuria is critical, i.e., presence of red blood cells in urine sediment

Causes of false positive urine dipstick for hematuria
- Myoglobinuria or hemoglobinuria, negative for RBCs on microscopic evaluation

Causes of discolored urine with negative urine dipstick and urine microscopic examination
- Medications e.g., sulfonamides, nitrofurantoin, and salicylates
- Food coloring, beets, and blackberries
- In newborns, a red or pink discoloration in the diaper can be seen when urate crystals precipitate from the urine

Clinical approach to a child with gross hematuria
- Confirm the diagnosis by microscopy
- Do urine culture

Glomerular hematuria
- Discolored urine (tea-, or cola colored), RBC casts, and dysmorphic RBC morphology
- Causes
  - Postinfectious glomerulonephritis—2 weeks after infection
  - Lupus nephritis (LN)—malar rash, joint pain, anemia
  - Alport disease—young men with sensorineural hearing loss and ocular abnormalities
  - IgA nephropathy—gross hematuria with upper respiratory tract infections or acute gastroenteritis (stimulation of IgA production)
  - Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis (MPGN)—intermittent gross hematuria, persistent C3 hypocomplementemia (also triggered by infections)
  - Henoch-Schonlein purpura
  - Hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS)—dark urine, hypertension, oliguria, pallor, anemia, history of schistocytes on peripheral smear, thrombocytopenia, and history of bloody diarrhea
- Laboratory
  - Complete blood count (CBC), comprehensive metabolic panel (CMP), serum protein, cholesterol, C3, C4, antistreptolysin O (ASO), Anti-DNase B, ANA, Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies, throat culture, and urine protein to creatinine ratio
  - Hepatitis and HIV serologies

Non-Glomerular hematuria
- Renal tubular epithelial or WBC cast
- Normal RBC morphology
- Presence of clots—urine may be brown due to clot in bladder
- May be accompanied by dysuria
- Causes

  - Pyelonephritis
  - Cystitis
  - Interstitial nephritis
  - Hemoglobinopathy, such as sickle cell anemia (trait)
  - Nephrocalcinosis
  - Kidney stones
  - Hypercalciuria, caused by:
    - Idiopathic hypercalciuria
    - Caused by conditions resulting in hypercalcemia
    - Hyperparathyroidism
    - Vitamin D intoxications
    - Immobilization
    - Sarcoidosis
    - Cushing syndrome
    - Corticosteroid therapy
    - William's syndrome
    - Bartter syndrome
    - Dent's disease (X-linked recessive condition of proximal tubule, characterized by tubular proteinuria, hypercalciuria, and chronic kidney disease)
  - Tumor
  - Polycystic kidney disease (autosomal recessive—in infancy, in utero; autosomal dominant—adults in ~5th decade)
  - Trauma
  - Meatal stenosis
  - Coagulopathy
  - Renal vein thrombosis (RVT)
- Diagnostic work-up for extraglomerular causes:
  - Urine culture
  - Urine Ca/Cr ratio (normal is ≤0.2 in adults and children >8 y.o., but may be higher in younger children and infants)
  - Renal/bladder ultrasound looking for debris or stone
  - If crystalluria, urolithiasis, or nephrocalcinosis: 24-h urine for Ca, creatinine, uric acid, oxalate, cysteine, and citrate levels

Hypertension [5]

Definition

- Pediatric HTN is sustained elevation of either the systolic or diastolic blood pressure (BP) at or above the 95th percentile of BP for a child's age, gender, and height percentile.
- Elevated blood pressure has to be confirmed on three different occasions in the outpatient setting.
- There is no definition for the diagnosis of HTN in the inpatient setting, therefore, one should refrain from making this diagnosis while the patient is acutely ill.

Proper technique when measuring BP

- Correct cuff size to a child's bare arm
  - Bladder width that is at least 40% of the child's midarm circumference
  - Bladder length that encircles 80–100% of the midarm circumference
  - After the child has been sitting for 5 min with both feet on the ground
  - All BP elevations must be confirmed by manual auscultation

Causes of HTN (list is not all-inclusive)

- Primary is less common in pediatric population, but on the rise due to increase in prevalence of obesity and metabolic syndrome among adolescents
- Secondary causes become more common in the younger patients and should always be ruled out, even if the patient is obese
- Cardiac
  - Coarctation of the aorta—BP discrepancy between arms, leg BP equal or lower than arm BP
- Renal
  - autosomal recessive polycystic kidney disease in newborn or autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease in older children and adolescents
  - Congenital renovascular abnormalities
  - Reflux nephropathy
  - Obstructive uropathy
  - Glomerulonephritides
  - HUS
  - Urinary tract infections
    - Chronic pyelonephritis
    - Renal cortical scars
  - Nephrotoxic medications
- Pulmonary
  - Pulmonary HTN
    - Bronchopulmonary dysplasia
    - Obstructive sleep apnea
- Neurological
  - Increased intracranial pressure
    - Hemorrhage
    - Tumor
  - Pain
- Neoplastic
  - Wilm's tumor
  - Neuroblastoma
- Endocrine
  - Congenital adrenal hyperplasia
  - Hyperaldosteronism
  - Hyperthyroidism
- Prematurity and low birthweight
  - Renal artery stenosis

  - Renal vein thrombosis
  - Multiple intrarenal thrombi after removal of umbilical artery line
- Over-the-counter medications
  - Decongestants/cold preparations
  - Herbal medications/supplements
- Other medications
  - Corticosteroids
  - Calcineurin inhibitors (cyclosporine, tacrolimus)
  - Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medications
  - Caffeine
  - Oral contraceptive pills
  - Abrupt discontinuation of long-acting antihypertensive medications
  - β-Adrenergic agonists/theophylline
  - Erythropoietin
  - Stimulants for treatment of attention deficit disorder
- Syndromes:
  - Williams syndrome
    - Supravalvular aortic stenosis
    - Midaortic syndrome
    - Renal artery stenosis
    - Renal anomalies
  - Neurofibromatosis
    - Renal artery stenosis

Clinical approach to the child with HTN

- All children diagnosed with HTN should undergo an evaluation to investigate for secondary causes of HTN
- Initial evaluation
  - Focused history and physical examination
  - Urinalysis
    - Hematuria, proteinuria, or pyuria
  - BUN/creatinine
  - CBC
    - Anemia secondary to renal disease or chronic condition
  - Electrolytes
    - Hyper- or hyponatremia
    - Hyper- or hypokalemia
    - Hypercalcemia
  - Evaluation for metabolic syndrome:
    - Lipid profile
    - Fasting blood glucose
  - Pregnancy test
    - Preeclampsia
  - Renal and bladder ultrasound with doppler
    - Renal masses e.g., Wilm's tumor
    - Renal scars
    - Severe hydronephrosis due to ureteropelvic junction obstruction with impaired renal blood flow
    - Doppler measures resistive indices of blood flow to the kidneys
      - Any abnormality, specially together with size discrepancy between the kidneys, should prompt further imaging studies, e.g., Magnetic resonance angiogram (MRA) or angiogram
  - Echocardiography
    - Structural heart disease e.g., coarctation of aorta
    - Left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH) secondary to prolonged hypertension
- Treatment
  - If secondary HTN, treat underlying condition
  - If primary HTN:
  - Lifestyle modification
    - Weight loss if overweight
    - Moderate-to-vigorous aerobic exercise
    - Increase intake of fresh vegetables, fruits, and low-fat dairy foods
    - Reduce carbohydrate, fat, and processed sugar intake
    - Limit or avoid sugar-sweetened, caffeinated beverages
    - Salt restriction
    - Smoking cessation, if applicable
  - Indication for antihypertensive medications
    - If symptomatic HTN, treat immediately (hypertensive emergency = evidence of end-organ damage—seizure, neurological deficits, MI, acute kidney injury (AKI); hypertensive urgency = patient displays symptoms associated with potential organ damage—headache, blurry vision, chest pain, palpitations, and dizziness)
    - Patients who have not experienced normalization of their BP with the above interventions after 2 months
    - LVH can develop within 2 months of uncontrolled HTN
    - Hypertensive retinopathy
    - Diabetes mellitus
  - The pharmacologic agents:
    - Calcium channel blocker
    - ACE inhibitors (first choice in diabetics, in patients with LVH, and patients with known chronic, proteinuric kidney disease)
    - Angiotensin receptor blockers
    - β-blockers (not for patients with known asthma or diabetes mellitus)
    - Diuretics
    - The lowest dose should be started, titrating to effect until the maximum recommended dose is achieved or until the patient experiences adverse effects

Glomerular Abnormalities Presenting with Predominantly Nephritic Syndrome

Acute Postinfectious Glomerulonephritis

Etiology
- Most commonly caused by nephritogenic toxins of group A beta *hemolytic streptococci*—usually presenting as streptococcal pharyngitis in cold weather and skin pyoderma in warm weather
- It may also follow *S. pneumoniae*, gram negative bacteria, bacterial endocarditis, or viral infections, specially influenza

Clinical presentation
- Most common in children between 5 and 15 years of age
- 1–2 weeks after streptococcal pharyngitis or 3–6 weeks after streptococcal pyoderma
- Nephritic presentation, various degree of edema, HTN and oliguria
- Encephalopathy and heart failure may develop
- Acute phase resolves in 6–8 weeks
- Proteinuria and HTN should normalize within 4–6 weeks after onset
- Microscopic hematuria may persist for up to 2 years, and the patient needs to be followed until its resolution

Diagnosis
- UA: dysmorphic RBCs, RBC casts, proteinuria, polymorphonuclear leukocytes
- Mild normochromic anemia
- Low C3 ± normal C4, low C3 should return to normal within 6–8 weeks
- Confirmation of diagnosis with positive throat culture
- Positive ASO titer if related to streptococcal pharyngitis, but anti-deoxyribonuclease (DNase) B level positive if related to skin nephritogenic strains (impetigo)
- Indication for renal biopsy: rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis (RPGN), C3 level not normalizing beyond 8 weeks after the acute illness, or persistent microscopic hematuria beyond 2 years' duration

Management
- Early systemic antibiotics do not eliminate the risk of glomerulonephritis, but family members should be cultured and treated if positive
- 10-day course of antibiotics is recommended to limit the spread of nephritogenic strains
- Salt restriction
- Diuretics
- Calcium channel blockers and ACE inhibitors for the treatment of HTN

Prognosis
- 95 % recover completely

IgA Nephropathy (Berger's Disease)

Background
- The most common chronic glomerular disease worldwide
- Peak incidence between 10 and 30 years of age and more common in Asians and Caucasians

Clinical presentation
- Recurrent episodes of gross hematuria, usually associated with concurrent URI or acute gastroenteritis
- DD: Post-infectious glomerulonephritis usually occurs 1–2 weeks after infection
- May also present as persistent microscopic hematuria
- Proteinuria is usually less than 1000 mg/24 h
- Rare: nephritic/nephrotic manifestation, facial edema, mild to moderate HTN, elevated creatinine, and blood urea nitrogen level (azotemia)
- Negative serologies for viral infections or autoimmune diseases, including normal complement levels
- Serum IgA level has no diagnostic value
- Diagnosis made by renal biopsy—indications for biopsy: persistent proteinuria or microscopic hematuria, elevated serum creatinine
- Most children do not have progressive kidney disease until adulthood, 15–20 years after onset of the disease
- Long-term follow up is very important

Poor prognostic factors
- Persistent HTN
- Abnormal renal function
- Persistent nephrotic-range proteinuria
- Worst prognosis—renal biopsy shows diffused mesangial proliferation, extensive glomerular crescent formation (proliferation of bowman's capsule epithelium), glomerulosclerosis, tubulointerstitial changes, such as atrophy and fibrosis

Treatment
- Blood pressure control
- Alternate day of corticosteroids, if patient presents with overt nephritic syndrome with nephrotic-range proteinuria
- ACE inhibitors are effective in reducing proteinuria, combination of ACE inhibitors and angiotensin receptor blockers (caution: need to check renal function frequently due to synergistic reduction in GFR)
- Fish oil contains anti-inflammatory Omega 3, and was thought to protect from progression, but not evidence based

- Tonsillectomy not proven to reduce frequency of hematuria and renal disease progression

Alport Syndrome

Background
- 85% is X-linked recessive—young men, mutation in COL4A5 gene.
- In the past, carriers of the genetic mutation (i.e., the mothers of the male patients) were believed to maintain normal renal function throughout life, but now there is evidence that they also progress to ESRD. Hence, carriers should be followed by a nephrologist as well.

Clinical presentation
- Single or recurrent gross hematuria may occur with URI (mostly in toddlers, young children), but most commonly persistent microscopic hematuria (more than 2 years' duration)
- Progressive proteinuria is common >1 g/24 h in the second decade of life
- Extrarenal manifestations in X-linked recessive form
- Sensorineural hearing loss begins with high frequency range deficit
- Ocular abnormalities: 30–40% of patients, anterior lenticonus (extrusion of the central portion of the lens into the anterior chamber)

Pathogenesis
- Defect in collagen type IV which is present in kidney, ear, and ocular lens
- Most commonly X-linked, but autosomal recessive (mutation in COL4A3 or 4 gene) and dominant (mutation in COL4A3 or 4 gene) forms described as well—female gender does not exclude diagnosis of Alport's

Diagnosis
- Careful family history
- Screening of first degree female relatives (carriers)
- Audiogram, ophthalmologic examination (critical)
- Absence of glomerular basement membrane staining for alpha 3 and 4 of type IV collagen in male hemizygotes
- Abnormal GBM architecture (basket weaving)

Treatment and prognosis
- Risk of progression to ESRD is highest in males affected by X-linked mode of inheritance, and occurs in 75% before 30 years
- Treatment is supportive and consists of control of proteinuria
- Patients do well after kidney transplantation, but may develop anti-GBM disease (antibodies directed against normal GBM in transplanted kidney) in ~15% of cases

Nail–Patella Syndrome

Background
- Autosomal dominant
- Localized to chromosome 9, LMX1B gene

Clinical presentation
- Hypoplasia or absence of patella
- Dystrophic nails
- Dysplasia of elbows and presence of iliac horns
- Renal involvement in 30–40%
  - Microscopic hematuria
  - Mild proteinuria

Diagnosis
- Renal biopsy reveals normal light microscopy and immunofluorescence staining, but on electron microscopy, GBM looks "moth-eaten"

Treatment
- No specific therapy
- 10% of cases progress to ESRD

Membranoproliferative Glomerulonephritis (MPGN)

Background
- There are three types, with type 1 being the most common form
- Presence of crescents on biopsy is associated with poor prognosis

Clinical presentation
- May present with asymptomatic proteinuria and hematuria, nephrotic syndrome, or an acute nephritic picture with gross hematuria
- Recurrent gross hematuria with intercurrent illness
- Renal function may be normal or diminished
- HTN is common
- C3 level is persistently decreased in 75% of cases (at the time of presentation, consider DD: post-infectious GN)

Diagnosis
- Biopsy
- Presentation
- Generalized increase in mesangial cells and matrix, capillary walls appear thickened, containing regions of duplication and splitting (train tracks)
- Complement abnormalities (low C3)

Prognosis and treatment
- 2 years of alternate-day steroids followed by repeat biopsy
- ACE inhibition to control proteinuria

- Some patients recover completely, 50% progress to ESRD
- C3 level never normalizes

Poor prognostic factor
- Type II histology (see Dense Deposit Disease below)

Dense Deposit Disease (MPGN Type II)

Background
- Very rare
- Poorly understood pathogenesis
- More aggressive disease than other types of MPGN
- Possible abnormality in complement counter-regulatory system (lack of inactivation of complement system) due to genetic defect, consumption, or inactivating antibodies

Clinical presentation
- Median age: 10 years old
- Clinically indistinguishable from other types of MPGN
- 50% present with nephrotic syndrome at onset
- 30% have HTN at presentation

Diagnosis
- Biopsy
- Generalized increase in mesangial cells and matrix, capillary walls appear thickened containing regions of duplication and splitting (train tracks)
- Complement abnormalities (low C3)

Prognosis and treatment
- Poor prognosis
- No proven therapy, therefore only supportive care
- If genetic defect in complement system, plasmapheresis or plasma infusion
- Progression to ESRD in 10 years
- Recurrence of disease in kidney transplant

Lupus Nephritis (LN)

Classification
- WHO classification groups LN into 6 classes:
- I—minimal disease
- II—mild mesangial expansion
- III—focal proliferation
- IV—diffused proliferation
- V—membranous
- VI—fibrosis
- Class IV considered most aggressive requiring most intense treatment

Clinical presentation
- Typically adolescent female with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)
  - 20% of SLE begins in childhood and up to 60% of children with SLE have LN
  - LN more aggressive in children
- Renal disease may precede serologies and extrarenal manifestations of SLE
- Hematuria
- Proteinuria
- Reduced renal function (azotemia)
- HTN
- Extrarenal manifestations: anemia, arthritis, malar rash, serositis, cerebritis, abnormal clotting/bleeding

Diagnosis
- Serologies: Positive ANA, anti-dsDNA antibodies
- Low C3 and C4
- Autoantibodies against multiple self-antigens (ribonucleoproteins)
- Definitive diagnosis on renal biopsy—also needed to guide therapy

Treatment
- Immunosuppression—be aggressive, if biopsy shows class IV LN: pulse methylprednisolone and cyclophosphamide or mycophenolate mofetil
- Management of extrarenal manifestations
- Sun screen to protect from UV-induced disease flare

Prognosis
- Presence of anemia, azotemia, and HTN at presentation are considered bad prognostic factor
- A patient can change LN class, so it is not unusual for patients requiring multiple biopsies throughout the course of the disease—immunosuppression may have to be adjusted according to change in LN class

Henoch–Schonlein Purpura (HSP)

Background
- Small-vessel vasculitis (capillaries, arterioles, venules) characterized by palpable purpura (buttocks, abdomen, lower extremities), arthritis or arthralgia, diffuse abdominal pain, and hematuria (glomerulonephritis with IgA deposition)

Clinical presentation
- Peak incidence between 4 and 5 years of age
- Symptoms appear 1–3 weeks after URI
- Hematuria is seen in 20–30% of cases
- Patients may rarely present with acute nephritic syndrome

- Urinary abnormalities at presentation are common, resolve within 4 weeks in 70–80 %
- Renal involvement is common

Prognosis and treatment
- The risk of progression to ESRD in 10 years is ~2–3 %
- Microscopic hematuria alone carries best prognosis
- Nephrotic syndrome, AKI at presentation, or extensive glomerular crescent formation on renal biopsy are greatest risk factors for progression
- There are no data suggesting that steroids, cytotoxic agents, or anticoagulants alter the course of HSP once renal involvement is present
- Uncontrolled studies suggest a potential benefit of high-dose steroids combined with cyclophosphamide in patients with crescent glomerulonephritis—may slow progression to ESRD

Anti-Glomerular Basement Disease and Good Pasture Syndrome

Background
- Antibody against specific epitopes of class IV collagen in glomerular/alveolar basement membrane
- Isolated renal disease = anti-GBM disease
  Pulmonary involvement = Goodpasture syndrome

Clinical presentation
- Rare in childhood
- Hemoptysis associated with pulmonary hemorrhage can be life threatening
- Acute nephritic syndrome with hematuria, proteinuria, and HTN
- Progressive renal dysfunction occurs within days to weeks

Diagnosis
- Serum antibodies to GBM confirm the diagnosis
- On kidney biopsy, linear deposition of IgG and C3 along the glomerular basement membrane, crescent formation possible
- Serum C3 is normal

Prognosis and treatment
- Recovery of renal function improved with steroids, cyclophosphamide, and plasmapheresis

Familial Thin Basement Membrane Nephropathy

Background
- Isolated, nonprogressive hematuria with thinning of the glomerular basement membrane
- Autosomal dominant
- DD—Alport syndrome, glomerular basement membrane has irregular structure

Clinical presentation
- Persistent microscopic hematuria
- RBC casts
- History may reveal other family member with same condition
- No family history of renal failure
- Proteinuria in up to 30 % of adults

Diagnosis
- Biopsy reveals thin basement membrane on electron microscopy, light microscopy looks normal
- Urinalysis and microscopy on affected first-degree family members

Treatment and prognosis
- No long-term complications, but if significant proteinuria, may require ACE inhibitor

Glomerular Abnormalities Presenting with Predominantly Nephrotic Syndrome

Congenital Nephrotic Syndrome

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Genetic mutation in nephrin gene (NPHS1), nephrin is a protein that is part of the slit diaphragm
- Also called "Finnish Type" due to increased frequency in Finnish population (1:8200 live births)

Clinical presentation
- Nephrotic syndrome presenting between birth and 3 months of age
- Edema may appear as late as several weeks after birth, but urine shows nephrotic-range proteinuria at birth
- > 80 % born premature
- Placenta enlarged—> 25 % of the baby's birth weight
- Enlarged kidneys
- No extrarenal malformations
- Severe intractable edema

Diagnosis
- Commercially available genetic testing offers definite diagnosis
- Differential diagnosis: TORCH and HIV infections can cause secondary nephrotic syndrome and need to be ruled out first

Complications, prognosis and treatment
- Iron and vitamin D deficiency due to loss of binding proteins (total iron saturation may be falsely resulted as > 100 % because transferrin is lost in urine)
- Hypothyroidism (significant and requires early treatment) due to loss of thyroid-binding globulin
- Frequent infections due to loss of IgG
- Clots due to loss of antithrombin III
- Symptomatic treatment requires daily substitution of albumin (needs permanent IV placement early)
- Only bilateral nephrectomy is "curative" and patient has then to be placed on peritoneal dialysis

Infantile Nephrotic Syndrome

Background
- Group of nephrotic syndromes
- 66 % have underlying genetic mutation without extrarenal manifestations

Clinical presentation
- Steroid-resistant nephrotic syndrome presenting between 4 and 12 months of age
- Nephrotic syndrome may present alone or as part of a syndrome

Diagnosis
- Genetic testing offers definitive diagnosis
- Most common genes affected: PLCE1 (phospholipase C, epsilon 1), CD2AP, ACTN4 (α-actinin 4), and TRPC6 (transient receptor potential cation channel 6)
- Pierson syndrome is caused by LAMB2 mutations and presents with ocular abnormalities (buphthalmos, microcoria)
- WAGR syndrome is caused by Pax6 mutation (important gene during development) and results in Wilm's tumor, aniridia, genitourinary abnormalities, and intellectual disability (ID)
- Biopsy may be nonspecific and shows diffuse mesangial sclerosis

Prognosis and treatment
- Progression to end-stage kidney disease at varying speed
- No recurrence of disease in kidney transplant

Frasier Syndrome

Background
- Autosomal dominant, but mostly sporadic

Clinical presentation
- Male pseudohermaphroditism with normal female external genitalia, but streak gonads
- 46, XY
- Onset of proteinuria at age 2–6 years
- Steroid-resistant nephrotic syndrome

Diagnosis
- Renal biopsy shows FSGS

Prognosis and treatment
- Increased susceptibility to gonadoblastomas, which requires removal of gonadal streaks
- No increased risk for Wilm's tumor
- Slow progression to end-stage kidney disease in adolescence or early childhood
- No recurrence of disease in kidney transplant

Denys–Drash Syndrome

Background
- Mutation in *Wilm's tumor 1* gene (WT1)

Clinical presentation
- Male pseudohermaphroditism with ambiguous external genitalia
- There are three possible clinical/karyotype presentations:
  - 46, XY with nephrotic syndrome, male pseudohermaphroditism with ambiguous external genitalia, and Wilm's tumor
  - 46, XY with nephrotic syndrome and ambiguous external genitalia and/or internal genitalia
  - 46, XX with nephrotic syndrome and Wilm's tumor
- Onset of proteinuria as early as at birth
- Steroid-resistant nephrotic syndrome

Diagnosis
- Renal biopsy shows diffused mesangial sclerosis

Prognosis and treatment
- Increased susceptibility to Wilm's tumors
- Rapid progression to end-stage kidney disease by age < 4 years old (may even occur in newborn period)
- No recurrence of disease in kidney transplant

Membranous Nephropathy (MN)

Background
- Most common cause of nephrotic syndrome in adults

Etiology
- Can be a separate idiopathic renal disease or associated with SLE (WHO class V LN), drugs (penicillamine, gold), toxins, or infections (hepatitis B, malaria, syphilis)

Clinical presentation
- Generalized edema due to nephrotic range proteinuria
- 80 % have concurrent microscopic hematuria
- Very rare in children—only 5 % of nephrotic syndrome in childhood is due to MN
- Presence of HTN at presentation is a bad prognostic factor

Diagnosis
- Renal biopsy—degree of sclerosis also allows prediction of prognosis
- C3 is normal unless it is secondary to SLE
- Diffuse thickening of glomerular basement membrane (due to IgG and C3 deposition) without proliferative changes

Treatment
- Salt restriction and diuretics
- ACE inhibition reduces proteinuria
- If patient is nephrotic, treat with steroids. If no response, escalate to cyclophosphamide and continue with tacrolimus or cyclosporine. May recur after cessation of therapy

Prognosis
- 25 % of children progress to end-stage renal disease

Tubular Abnormalities

Idiopathic Hypercalciuria [3]

Etiology
- May be inherited as an autosomal dominant disorder
- May be caused by conditions resulting in hypercalcemia
- Hyperparathyroidism
- Vitamin D intoxication
- Immobilization
- Loop diuretics
- Sarcoidosis
- Cushing syndrome
- Corticosteroid therapy
- William's syndrome
- Bartter syndrome
- Dent's disease (X-linked nephrolithiasis)

Clinical presentations
- Recurrent (+/- painful) gross hematuria
- Microscopic hematuria
- Diffuse abdominal pain

Diagnosis
- 24-h urine collection to measure urinary calcium concentration (has to be > 4 mg/kg/day)
- Spot urine calcium to creatinine ratio > 0.2 suggests hypercalciuria in a child > 8 years old
- Normal ratio may be as high as 0.8 in infants < 7 months

Treatment
- If untreated, 15 % develop nephrolithiasis
- Hydrochlorothiazide 1–2 mg/kg/24 h as single morning dose, with dose titration until the 24 h urinary calcium concentration is < 4 mg/kg/day and clinical manifestations resolves
- Sodium restriction—leads to decreased sodium excretion and increased reabsorption of calcium from the urine (lowers calcium concentration in urine)

Renal Tubular Acidosis (RTA)

Background
- Net acid excretion = amount of acid eliminated by the kidneys
- Components of acid elimination are:
  - bicarbonate reclamation
  - ammonium excretion
  - titratable acid excretion

Diagnosis
- Normal anion gap metabolic acidosis
- Anion gap Na− (Cl+ HCO3) if < 12 means absence of an anion gap
- > 20 means no RTA
- Urine pH distinguishes proximal from distal types
- pH < 5.5 in presence of acidosis suggests proximal RTA
- pH > 6.0 in presence of acidosis suggests distal RTA
- Classically, patients present with FTT and repeated episodes of vomiting and dehydration
- Patients are ill appearing, if they look well, yet have acidosis, they don't have RTA!
- Work-up

1. Determine anion gap
2. Measure urinary anion gap: $(U_{Na} + U_K) – U_{Cl}$, which is an indirect measurement of ammonium and determines ability of kidneys to respond to metabolic acidosis
   - Approach is based on fact that unmeasured cations and anions are constant and that ammonium would be the primary cation other than sodium or potassium that would be excreted with chloride

3. Normal urine AG: zero or positive; with metabolic acidosis: urine AG is negative (−20–−50); with RTA: impaired ammonium (excretion with chloride) results in $Na^+ + K^+ > Cl^-$, so urine AG becomes zero or positive
   - Careful: patients with diarrhea may have a non-AG metabolic acidosis due to GI losses of bicarbonate (pancreatic fluid is bicarbonate-rich), but have a negative urine AG
- Approach to patient with hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis:
  1. Measure urinary AG
  2. If UAG negative—acidosis due to GI losses of bicarbonate
  3. If UAG positive—acidosis due to renal bicarbonate loss or impaired urinary acidification

Proximal RTA type II
- Threshold of bicarbonate reabsorption in the kidney is the main determinant of the serum bicarbonate concentration
- Hallmark of type II RTA = lowered threshold for reabsorption of bicarbonate—threshold is usually 14–18 mEq/L and correlates with serum levels seen in these patients
- Patients require large amounts of bicarbonate (>6 mEq/kg/day)
- Treatment with bicarbonate will increase urinary pH due to increased excretion
- Distal acid secretion is intact, hence urine pH can decrease to <5
- Normal calcium excretion, no nephrocalcinosis
- Clinical symptoms:
  - Polyuria
  - Polydipsia
  - Growth failure
- Seen in the following conditions (some examples):
  - Idiopathic Fanconi syndrome
  - Cystinosis
  - Acute tubular necrosis (ATN)

Distal RTA Type I
- Hallmark = inability to lower urine pH maximally in the face of moderate to severe systemic acidosis
- Urine pH is always >6.0
- Primary function of distal nephron is acid–base homeostasis, which is to excrete acid generated from dietary intake
- In the growing child, excretion of 1–3 mmol of acid per kg per day is needed
- Most pathophysiological consequences of distal RTA are due to accumulation of acid—even if proximal tubule normally reabsorbs bicarbonate, acid continues to accumulate resulting in increased base deficit
- Once bicarbonate buffers in the extracellular fluid are depleted, bones serve as buffer (hydroxyapatite is dissolved and hydroxyl ions serve to neutralize acid)
- Results in negative calcium balance and hypercalciuria with nephrocalcinosis and/or nephrolithiasis
- Clinically distinct forms:
  - Congenital distal RTA:
    - Autosomal dominant
    - Autosomal recessive with hearing loss
    - Autosomal recessive without hearing loss
  - Acquired distal RTA:
    - Immunologic destruction of α-intercalated cells (Sjögren's syndrome, SLE, Grave's disease, medications [Amphotericin B, Lithium, Melphalan, Foscarnet])

Type IV RTA
- Classic etiology: deficiency of or resistance to effects of aldosterone on renal tubular cells
  - Term applied to all forms of hyperkalemic RTA, regardless of serum aldosterone concentration
  - Aldosterone has direct effect on α-intercalated cells to promote proton secretion
  - Acidosis in type IV RTA is not as severe as in other forms, but main problem is hyperkalemia
  - Hyperkalemia can be life threatening
- Most common inherited form of aldosterone deficiency is CAH
- Aldosterone resistance is either caused by defects in mineralocorticoid receptor or the epithelial sodium channel (ENaC)—both result in type IV RTA
- Acquired forms of type IV RTA:
  - most common: obstruction of urinary tract (mechanisms not clear)

Nephrogenic Diabetes Insipidus (NDI)

Background
- Definition: insensitivity of the distal nephron to the antidiuretic effects of the neurohypophyseal hormone, arginine vasopressin

Etiology
- Primary form presents with three different inheritance patterns:
  - 90% X-linked recessive—Vasopressin-2 receptor mutation
  - Autosomal recessive—Aquaporin 2 mutation
  - Autosomal dominant—Aquaporin 2 mutation
- Secondary form can be seen due to nephrotoxic drugs, chronic pyelonephritis, obstructive uropathy, sickle cell trait, etc.

Clinical presentation
- Normal birth weight, no polyhydramnios
- Urine concentrating defect present at birth, but breast-fed infants thrive because breast milk has low renal osmolar load, decreasing risk of dehydration—diagnosis delayed
- Constipation is a common symptom
- Failure to thrive (FTT) if remains unrecognized later, but bone age not delayed
- May develop intellectual disability (ID) if untreated due to CNS calcifications after hemorrhage or necrosis
- Many NDI patients are characterized as hyperactive, distractible with short attention span, and restless

Diagnosis
- History of inability to toilet train, frequent daytime accidents due to polyuria
- Constant thirst—children will rather just drink than eat
- First morning urine specific gravity is < 1.015 (specimen obtained when child wakes up in the morning)
- Hypernatremia with polyuria
- Vasopressin test: Vasopressin given intranasally and urine collected before and thereafter—urine osmolality remains < 200 mOsm/L
- Plasma ADH levels normal or high
- Renal and bladder ultrasound shows a large bladder with a trabeculated wall, hydroureters, and hydronephrosis
- Voiding studies show large capacity hypotonic bladder dysfunction

Treatment
- Low solute diet—restrict sodium and protein
- Thiazide diuretics (less salt delivered to distal nephron results in less water loss)
- Indomethacin (decreases GFR, hence less sodium and water enter nephron and can be lost)

Bartter Syndrome

- Genetic defect (multiple gene mutations can result in the same clinical picture of Bartter syndrome) Clinical presentation
  - History of polyhydramnios
  - Dysmorphic feature
  - Hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis
  - Hypercalciuria
  - High level of renin, aldosterone, and prostaglandin E
  - Normal or low blood pressure
  - Low serum Mg
  - High level of urine Cl

Treatment
- Prevention of dehydration
- Correction of hypokalemia
- K supplements
- Indomethacin can be effective by inhibiting prostaglandin E

Acute Interstitial Nephritis (AIN)

Background
- Tubulo-interstitial compartment makes up 80% of the renal parenchyma
- AIN is a cause of acute kidney injury (AKI) in childhood in up to 7%

Clinical presentation
- Nonspecific clinical presentation
- Fatigue due to anemia (erythropoietin is produced in interstitium)
- Usually unexpected finding of elevated serum BUN and creatinine
- 30–40% non oliguric AKI
- Rarely systemic symptoms of allergic reaction (rash, joint pain), eosinophilia

Diagnosis
- History of medications
  - Most commonly antibiotics, among which penicillins are most common
  - Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
  - Any other medications
- Infections
- Autoimmune diseases (SLE, TINU = Tubulo-interstitial nephritis with anterior uveitis)
- Urine eosinophils pathognomonic, but absence does not exclude AIN
- Urinalysis usually quite bland, low specific gravity due to concentrating defect (damage to tubulo-interstitium)
- Biopsy usually not indicated due to clinical constellation making other diagnoses unlikely

Prognosis and treatment
- Generally, self-resolving, monophasic illness (i.e., once serum creatinine plateaus, it should come down later, if not, then look for other causes of AKI
- Most patients have mild, vague symptoms, but if patient feels ill, or if serum creatinine rises significantly over 6 g/dL, give short course of high-dose steroids (2 mg/kg, max. 60 mg/d, 5 days, then taper; or methylprednisolone 1 g daily for 3 days)
- Rarely, chronic interstitial nephritis occurs due to chronic drug use or chronic obstructive uropathy; progresses to end-stage kidney disease

Cystinosis

Background
- First treatable lysosomal storage disease

Etiology
- Autosomal recessive mutation in CTNS gene, which encodes cystinosin = protein that is responsible for transporting cystine out of lysosomes.
- Formation of cystine crystals within lysosomes due to the failure to transport cysteine out of the lysosomes
- Cystine = 2 molecules of cysteine joined by a disulfide bond
- Accumulation of cystine crystals in lysosomes seen in electron microscopy

Clinical presentation
- Microscopic hematuria
- Hypothyroidism
- Photophobia in young children should raise suspicion—caused by crystal deposition in cornea (detectable as early as 16 months)
- Low–normal IQ
- Fanconi syndrome (proximal tubular defect) with metabolic acidosis, phosphaturia, proteinuria, and glucosuria
- Craving salt (due to proximal tubular loss of sodium)

Diagnosis
- Multiple organs involved: cornea, conjunctiva, liver, spleen, kidneys, intestines, rectal mucosa, pancreas, testes, lymph nodes, bone marrow, macrophages, thyroid, skeletal muscle, and choroid plexus
- Renal biopsy scan shows crystals in tubular cells—birefringent hexagonal or rectangular crystals, but clinical suspicion required first, because tissue has to be processed in a special way to preserve the crystals
- Genetic testing offers definitive diagnosis

Treatment
- Oral cysteamine treatment—difficult to maintain compliance, because medication has to be taken four times a day that smells like rotten eggs and tastes terrible! New formulation somewhat improved due to decreased frequency of administration
- Replacement of renal losses
- Thyroxine
- Recombinant human growth hormone administration
- Dialysis, kidney transplantation

Prognosis
- Without treatment, average age of death is 28.5 years; patients are short, thin, blind, unable to move, progressively lose vision, ability to speak, and develop dementia
- With treatment, normal life is expected , but may still develop end stage renal disease (ESRD) and require transplant—no recurrence of disease in transplanted kidney

Sickle Cell Nephropathy

Background
- Consequences related to sickling and anemia = "renal sickle cell crisis"

Clinical presentation
- Hematuria and renal papillary necrosis
  - Painless gross hematuria
  - More frequent with sickle cell trait
  - Occurs due to low oxygen tension in renal papilla causing local sickling and thrombosis within vasa recta of papilla leading to progressive destruction of papilla and secondary deposition of calcium—echogenic papillae on renal ultrasound
- Proteinuria with sickle cell glomerulopathy

Diagnosis
- Renal ultrasound
- History of sickle cell disease or trait
- Urinary concentrating defect = low urine specific gravity in setting of dehydration

Treatment
- Supportive
- ACE inhibitors in case of proteinuria

Prognosis
- Secondary to chronic anemia, patients with sickle cell disease may develop FSGS with progression to end-stage kidney disease

Cystic Kidney Diseases

Autosomal Recessive Polycystic Kidney Disease (ARPKD)

- Infantile polycystic disease
- Mutation in *PKHD1* gene encoding fibrocystin/polyductin

Incidence
- 1:10,000–1:40,000

Clinical presentation
- Bilateral flank mass during neonatal period or early infancy

- May be associated with oligohydramnios, pulmonary hypoplasia, respiratory distress, and spontaneous pneumothorax in neonatal period
- Potter facies and other components of oligohydramnios complex, low set ears, micrognathia, flattened nose, limb-position defects, and growth deficiency
- HTN is usually noted within the first few weeks of life
- Urine output (UOP) is usually not diminished
- Transient hyponatremia often with AKI
- Renal function is usually impaired but may initially be normal in 20–30%
- Ascending cholangitis
- Hypersplenism related to portal HTN
- Progressive liver dysfunction

Diagnosis
- Renal ultrasound
- Hyperechogenic kidneys with poor corticomedullary differentiation
- Genetic testing
- Signs of hepatic fibrosis and/or portal hypertension

Treatment
- Supportive

Prognosis
- 30% of patients die in the neonatal period from pulmonary hypoplasia
- If patient survives neonatal period, excellent prognosis, but will require kidney +/− liver transplant
- ESRD is seen in > 50%
- Dialysis and transplant become the standard of therapy

Autosomal Dominant Polycystic Kidney Disease (ADPKD)

- 85% of patients have *PKD1* gene encoding polycystin-1
- 10–15% of patients have *PKD2* gene encoding polycystin-2
- While autosomal dominant mode of inheritance is the most common, spontaneous mutations are relatively frequent

Incidence
- 1:500—most common genetic disease!

Clinical presentation
- ADPKD presents most commonly in adult life, but cysts can already be seen in utero (no impact on disease progression)
- Gross hematuria, bilateral flank masses, HTN, and UTI
- ADPKD is a systemic disease, affects many organs, eg., liver, pancreas, spleen, and ovaries, intracranial aneurysm appears in clusters within certain families
- Mitral valve prolapsed in 12% of cases

Diagnosis
- US; multiple bilateral macrocysts
- Absence of family history does not preclude this diagnosis
- Neonatal ADPKD and ARPKD may be indistinguishable

Treatment
- Supportive
- Only aggressive blood pressure control has been proven to slow down disease progression

Prognosis
- Progression to ESRD in fifth to sixth decade
- Variability of disease within families with the same mutation (poor genotype–phenotype correlation)
- Women with *PKD2* mutation have most favorable outcome, but still progress

Nephronophthisis (NPH)

Background
- Most common type is Juvenile nephronophthisis Type 1 (25%, mutation in *NPHP1* gene)

Clinical presentation
- Polyuria
- Polydipsia
- Anemia due to erythropoietin deficiency (out of proportion to degree of kidney failure)
- FTT
- Extrarenal features (Joubert syndrome)
  - Ocular motor apraxia (inability to perform the horizontal eye movement)
  - Retinitis pigmentosa
  - Coloboma of the eye
  - Cerebellar vermis aplasia with broad-based gait

Diagnosis
- Renal ultrasound shows loss of cortico-medullary differentiation
- Renal biopsy shows cystic dilation of medullary collecting tubules

Prognosis
- ESRD occurs on average by age 13

Laurence–Moon–Bardet–Biedl Syndrome

Background
- Autosomal recessive

Clinical presentation
- Obesity
- Retinitis pigmentosa
- Hypogonadism
- Polydactyly
- Mental deficiency
- Cystic dysplasia of the kidneys

Treatment
- Supportive

Prognosis
- Progression to ESRD in late adolescence/early adulthood requiring dialysis/kidney transplantation

Multicystic Dysplastic Kidney Disease

Background
- Not the same as polycystic kidney disease
- This is not a monogenic disorder

Clinical presentation
- Unilateral abdominal mass of the newborn
- Bilateral multicystic dysplasia results in fetal demise
- Effectively, the patient has only one functioning kidney

Diagnosis
- Usually diagnosed on prenatal ultrasound
- Need to do voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG) to rule out contralateral vesico-ureteral reflux, which is commonly encountered (30–50%)
- Expectation is that the dysplastic kidney involutes over time
- Stable size is acceptable, but if dysplastic kidney grows, referral to urology for nephrectomy is indicated as dysplastic kidney contains immature cells, which may undergo malignant transformation

Treatment
- Serial renal ultrasounds to ensure involution or stable size of dysplastic kidney
- Parental reassurance that solitary-functioning kidney is compatible with life

Prognosis
- Favorable, normal life expectancy
- Patient needs to avoid contact sports to prevent injury to solitary kidney from trauma

Acute Kidney Injury (AKI) [1, 2]

Definition
- Sudden decline in renal function
- Increase in blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and serum creatinine values
- +/- Hyperkalemia
- +/- Metabolic acidosis
- +/– HTN

Pre renal AKI
- Definition
  - *Hypoperfusion of the kidneys*
- Causes (most common)
  - Hypovolemia due to gastrointestinal (GI) diseases
  - Congenital heart disease
  - Sepsis
- Diagnosis
  - Clinical history should reveal causes of volume depletion, such as:
  - Dehydration due to vomiting or gastroenteritis
  - Hemorrhage
  - Cardiac failure, or third-space fluid losses
- Laboratory findings:
  - Decreased urine output
  - Normal urinary sediments
  - Increased urine osmolality (>400.0 mOsm in the older child and>350.0 mOsm in the neonate)
  - Low urinary sodium (<10.0 mEq/L [10.0 mmol/L])
  - Low fractional excretion of sodium (<1% in the older child and<2.5% in the newborn)
  - Increased BUN-to-creatinine ratio
  - Renal ultrasonography and renal scan findings should be normal

Renal or intrinsic renal failure
- Definition:
  - Parenchymal injury due to vascular spasm, intravascular coagulation, and microvascular injury
- The most common causes:
  - ATN e.g., rhabdomyolysis secondary to dehydration
  - Interstitial nephritis
  - Hemolytic-Uremic syndrome e.g., history of diarrhea
  - Glomerulonephritis e.g., prosthetic valve causing endocarditis, streptococcal pharyngitis
  - Nephrotoxic drugs e.g., cystic fibrosis patient receiving aminoglycosides
- Diagnosis
  - Clinical history may reveal:
  - Dehydration
  - Hypoxic-ischemic events
  - Toxic ingestion, NSAID or other nephrotoxic medication use

  - Signs and symptoms of sepsis, gross hematuria, or trauma
  - Decreased urine output can be described as oliguria (< 0.5 mL/kg per hour in a child or < 1 mL/kg per hour in an infant) or as anuria (no urine output)
- Laboratory finding
  - Red blood cell casts, granular casts, and red blood cells—findings seen in glomerulonephritis
  - Studies should include streptococcal antibodies, hepatitis B and C panels, and complement studies
  - Streptococcal antibodies, including the antistreptolysin O titer, anti-DNAse B titer, and group A antibody to Streptococcus pyogenes titer, should be obtained
  - A low complement C3 value may indicate an underlying diagnosis of SLE, membranoproliferative or poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis
  - For a patient with a high suspicion of glomerulonephritis, a biopsy may be warranted if the patient has, in addition to gross hematuria and proteinuria, rapidly rising BUN and creatinine serum values (= rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis, RPGN)
  - Low urine osmolality (< 350.0 mOsm)
  - Large muddy brown granular casts
  - High urinary fractional excretion of sodium (> 2% in the older child and > 2.5–3% in the newborn); renal scans can be helpful in diagnosis because they can demonstrate whether the renal cortex is perfused or if there is cortical necrosis with little chance of a return of the renal function back to baseline, as well as the differential function between the left and the right kidney (e.g., one kidney has lost all of its function and the other is compensating).
  - If necessary, a renal biopsy is the next step in determining the cause of intrinsic renal failure
- General indicators for renal biopsy include:
  - Rapidly increasing serum creatinine concentration
  - To establish a diagnosis of acute versus chronic glomerulonephritis
  - Positive serology for systemic diseases such as MPGN or SLE, and azotemia with urinary findings of hematuria or proteinuria
  - To demonstrate an active lesion in which immunosuppressive medications, such as steroids, may help to reverse the disease process and recover renal function

Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome (HUS)

Etiology

- Typical HUS = diarrhea-associated HUS
  - Shiga like toxins producing E. Coli 0157:H7 (causative agent in 80% or more in developing countries)
  - S. pne*umoniae*
- Atypical HUS = (genetic) abnormality of complement-regulatory pathways
  - Any organism can trigger the disease
  - Usually in younger patients
- Age
  - More common in children 2–5 years of age

Clinical presentation for typical HUS

- Onset is preceded by AGE or pneumonia
- Fever
- Vomiting
- Abdominal pain
- Watery diarrhea then becomes bloody
- Dehydration
- Edema
- Petechiae
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Hypertension, Pallor, lethargy

Clinical presentation for atypical HUS

- Patient may be < 6 months
- No GI symptoms
- Insidious onset with lethargy, pallor, and feeding difficulties
- Severe HTN
- Possible family history

Diagnosis

- Triad consisting of:
  - Microangiopathic hemolytic anemia
  - Thrombocytopenia
  - AKI
- Peripheral smear: Schistocytes, burr cells, or helmet cells
- Hemoglobin level in the 5–9 g/dl range
- Leukocytosis may exceed 30,000 (associated with worse prognosis for renal recovery)
- Thrombocytopenia in 90% of cases
- Elevated BUN/creatinine with oligoanuria
- Microscopic hematuria and proteinuria
- Prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT) are usually normal

Treatment

- Supportive
- Meticulous attention to fluids and electrolytes, control of HTN, and early dialysis
- Antibiotics are contraindicated for treatment of diarrhea if E. coli 0157 is suspected
- Atypical HUS is caused by a defect in the complement-regulatory system and requires blockade of the complement system with an antibody that binds to C5 (Eculizumab), thereby inhibiting its activation

Prognosis
- Disease is monophasic; once patient recovers, no relapse should occur in typical HUS. Any deviation from this clinical course is suggestive of atypical HUS and plasmapheresis should be initiated immediately pending genetic testing
- Patients recovering from typical HUS require long-term follow-up because of complications such as HTN and chronic kidney disease
- Patients with atypical HUS and confirmed genetic defect in counterregulatory complement system require treatment with an inhibitor of the C5 component, which is most likely, lifelong. This treatment leads to inability of the patient to clear infections with encapsulated organisms, hence prior vaccination is imperative.

Acute Tubular Necrosis (ATN)

Background
- Hypoperfusion of kidneys leading to reversible damage of proximal tubule

Etiology
- Hemorrhage
- Severe volume depletion
- Sepsis with decreased effective blood volume (third-spacing)

Diagnosis
- Oligoanuria
- Elevated serum creatinine and BUN, muddy brown casts in urine

Treatment
- Normal saline for volume replacement

Management of renal failure
- Maintaining renal perfusion
- Fluid and electrolyte balance
- Blood pressure control
- Adequate nutrition
- Adjust medications to decreased GFR
- Initiate renal replacement therapy (early dialysis)

Nocturnal Enuresis [4]

Background
- 90–95 % of children are nearly completely continent during the day and 80–85 % are continent during the night after the age of 6 years for girls 8 years for boys
- More common in boys (60 %)
- Family history in 50 %
- If one parent was enuretic, 44 % chance of enuresis in the child and 77 % if both parents were enuretic; age at resolution in parents can guide expectation of resolution in child

Clinical presentation
- Careful history
- Fluid intake at night
- Diabetes mellitus and insipidus (urinalysis on the first morning urine sample is helpful—if specific gravity is < 1.015, it is suspicious for DI; presence of glucose requires work-up for DM)

Treatment
- Reassurance of parents
- Exclude any type of voiding dysfunction during the daytime, as this may be the cause of the nocturnal enuresis (prolonged withholding of urine).
- Fluid restriction in the evening is moderately successful
- Acute treatment should be avoided before the age of six
- Motivational therapy
- Conditioning therapy (vibratory alarm) curative in 30–60 %
- Desmopressin
  - Well tolerated and has very few reported adverse effects
  - Severe hyponatremia associated with seizures and deaths has been reported and occurs only due to water intake after drug is taken at night

Renal Vein Thrombosis (RVT)

Etiology
- Neonatal asphyxia, dehydration, shock or sepsis, congenital hypercoagulable states, infant born to a mother with diabetes mellitus

Clinical presentation
- Sudden onset of gross hematuria and unilateral or bilateral flank masses
- Also, patient may present with microscopic hematuria, flank pain, HTN, or oliguria
- Bilateral RVT results in AKI

Diagnosis
- Hematuria, flank masses in a patient with predisposing clinical factors
- Ultrasound shows marked enlargement, and Doppler US will confirm diagnosis

Treatment

- Supportive, hydration

Dehydration and Maintenance Fluid Calculations

Maintenance Fluid Requirements

- Holliday–Segar method for maintenance fluid and calorie calculation:
- First, 10 kg—100 cal/kg/24 h
- Next, 10–20 kg—50 cal/kg/24 h
- For every kg above 20 kg—20 cal/kg/24 h
- For every 100 calories metabolized in 24 h, an average healthy child will require 100–120 ml of H_2O, 2–4 mEq of Na^+, and 2–3 mEq of K^+

Classification of Dehydration by Severity

- Calculate fluid deficit (L) as pre-illness wt. (kg) − postillness wt. (kg)
- Dehydration % = [(pre-illness wt.−postillness wt.)/pre-illness wt.] × 100
- Mild dehydration = 5 % in infants and 3 % in children > 1 year
- Moderate = 10 % in infants and 6 % in children > 1 year
- Severe = 15 % in infants and 9 % in children > 1 year
- Serum sodium also affects the skin turgor:
- Hypernatremia causes doughy consistency of the skin

Calculating Replacement in Various Types of Dehydration

- There is a difference in the type and rate of fluid correction based on the electrolyte abnormalities (mainly sodium abnormalities)
- Patient with hemodynamic instability characterized by severe dehydration, for e.g., increased capillary refill time and low blood pressure, will need initial fluid bolus with isotonic solutions, such as normal saline
- General principle is to replace the deficit and ongoing losses and continue to provide maintenance fluid requirement
- Subtract the initial fluid boluses received previously from the solute and electrolyte deficit calculations
- Deficit calculations and fluid therapy in *isonatremic dehydration*:
- With this type of dehydration, there is loss of both fluid (fluid deficit) and electrolyte (solute deficit) in a proportional manner
- Solute deficit: amount of total electrolytes lost
- In illness < 3 days, 80 % of the losses are from extracellular compartment (ECF) and 20 % from intracellular fluid compartment (ICF)
- In illness > 3 days, there is more intracellular dehydration, hence 60 % of the losses are from the ECF compartment and 40 % from ICF compartment
- Solute Na + deficit (mEq) = fluid deficit (L) × proportion from ECF based on the duration of illness (0.8 or 0.6) × 140 mEq/L (extracellular sodium concentration)
- Solute K + deficit = Fluid deficit (L) × proportion from ICF based on duration of illness (0.2 or 0.4) × 160 mEq/L (intracellular potassium concentration)

Assessment of dehydration based on clinical signs

	Mild	Moderate	Severe
Skin turgor	Normal	Tenting	None
Skin (touch)	Normal	Dry	Clammy
Buccal mucosa/ lips	Dry	Dry	Parched/ cracked
Eyes	Normal	Deep set	Sunken
Tears	Present	Reduced	None
Fontanelle	Flat	Soft	Sunken
CNS	Consolable	Irritable	Lethargic/ obtunded
Pulse rate	Normal	Slightly increased	Increased
Pulse quality	Normal	Weak	Feeble/ impalpable
Capillary refill	Normal	~2 s	>3 s
Urine output	Normal to decreased	Decreased	Anuric

- Replace half of the deficit of fluid and electrolyte over 8 h and remaining over 16 h
- Remember to both supplement with maintenance fluid and electrolyte requirement and replace ongoing losses.

Hyponatremic dehydration

- Think hyponatremic dehydration in a dehydrated child who was given "tea" or "water" by the grandmother
- The calculation of K+ deficit is the same as above
- In this case, the hyponatremia is caused by a Na+deficit in addition to solute Na+deficit
- This excess Na+ deficit = (140 − current serum Na+ (mEq/l)) × 0.6 × total body weight (kg)
- The calculation of the rate of replacement of the deficit is similar to isonatremic dehydration. Replace half of the deficit of fluid and electrolyte over 8 h and remaining over 16 h. Supplement with maintenance fluid and electrolyte requirement and replace ongoing losses
- The goal of the therapy is not to increase the Na + level by more than 10–20 mEq/L in 24 hours

Hypernatremic dehydration

- Think hypernatremic dehydration in infants being fed improperly mixed formula. They may be irritable, lethargic, with doughy skin and a high-pitched cry, eventually having seizures
- The ECF volume relatively well maintained, as the hypernatremia drives free water from ICF to ECF, hence hemodynamic disturbances take longer to develop
- CNS signs are first to develop due to intracellular dehydration of neurons
  The shrinkage in the brain volume can cause tearing of the bridging vessels and intracranial hemorrhage
- The fluid deficit in a patient with hypernatremia is composed of two parts:
  – Free water deficit: the additional free water that the patient needs to correct his hypernatremia
  – Solute water deficit: the remaining fluid deficit which is lost from ECF and ICF with corresponding electrolyte deficits
- Free water deficit = {(Serum $Na^+ - 140)/140\} \times 0.6 \times$ weight (kg)
- Solute water deficit, SFD (L) = Total water deficit − Free water deficit
- Solute Na + deficit = Solute fluid deficit (L) × proportion from ECF × 140 mEq/L
- Solute K + deficit = Solute Fluid deficit (L) × proportion from ICF × 160 mEq/L
- Free water deficit is replaced slowly over 48 h
- The solute water deficit and the solute deficits are replaced in the same manner, half of the deficit of fluid and electrolytes over 8 h and remaining half over 16 h
- Consider replacing free water deficit even more slowly for severe hypernatremia
- Goal is to avoid a rapid drop of the serum Na^+, which is a risk factor for central pontine demyelination and manifests as seizures.

Suggested Readings

1. Andreoli SP. Acute renal failure. Curr Opin Pediatr. 2002;14:183–8.
2. Goldstein SL. Pediatric acute kidney injury: it's time for real progress. Pediatr Nephrol. 2006;21:891–5.
3. Bushinsky DA, Coe FS, Moe OW. Nephrolithiasis. In: Brenner BK, editor. Brenner & Rector's the kidney. 8th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2008. pp. 1299–1349.
4. Cooper CS, Nepple KG, Hellerstein S. Voiding dysfunction. eMedicine specialties, pediatrics: surgery, urology. 2008. http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/1016198-overview.
5. National High Blood Pressure Education Program Working Group on High Blood Pressure in Children and Adolescents. The fourth report on the diagnosis, evaluation, and treatment of high blood pressure in children and adolescents. Pediatrics. 2004;114:555–76.

Urologic Disorders

Osama Naga

Urinary Tract Infection (UTI)

Background
- Most UTIs are bacterial infections of the mucosal surface of the urinary tract.
- The infection may occur anywhere from the urethra to the renal parenchyma.
- A temperature greater than 38.5 °C may help to differentiate acute pyelonephritis from lower tract UTIs.
- The most common organism causing UTI in children is *Escherichia coli*, accounting for up to 70 % of infections.
- Other bacterial pathogens include *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (nonenteric Gram-negative), *Enterococcus faecalis, Klebsiella pneumoniae, group B Streptococcus* (predominantly in neonates)
- Most UTIs in sexually active females are caused by *E coli* or *S saprophyticus.*

Risk factors
- Constipation is a high risk factor for recurrent UTI
- Uncircumcised male infants
- Lack of breast feeding in the first 6–8 postnatal months
- Dysfunctional voiding pattern
- Indwelling or intermittent catheterization

Clinical presentation
- Fever
  - May be the only presenting symptom without a clear source of infection
  - Temperature elevations greater than 39.0 °C are indicative of upper urinary tract infection.
- First 3 months after birth
  - Fever, hypothermia, vomiting, diarrhea, jaundice, difficulty feeding, malodorous urine, irritability, hematuria, or failure to thrive
- In infants from 3 to 24 months of age
  - Cloudy or malodorous urine, frequency, or hematuria.
- Preschool (2–6 years of age)
  - Abdominal pain, suprapubic pain, costovertebral angle pain, dysuria, urgency, or secondary enuresis in a previously toilet-trained child

Asymptomatic bacteriuria
- Urine culture with significant bacterial colony count in an asymptomatic patient

Complicated bacteriuria (**Table** 1)
- Urine culture with significant bacterial colony count and associated urologic abnormalities (hydroureter, hydronephrosis, and vesicoureteral reflux)

Ultrasonography
- Renal ultrasonography is the safest and fastest method for detecting congenital renal and urinary tract anomalies as well as hydronephrosis that may be associated with UTI and vesicoureteral reflux (VUR).

Voiding cystourethrography (VCUG)
- Fluoroscopic VCUG is the gold standard for diagnosing VUR.
- VCUG should be obtained as soon as the infected urine has become sterile or when the child has completed the full course of antibiotic therapy.

Renal scan
- Dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA) scintigraphy currently is the accepted gold standard for diagnosing acute pyelonephritis and renal scarring.
- DMSA scintigraphy ideally should be performed 6 months after acute infection to allow resolution of acute reversible lesions.

O. Naga (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Science Center—Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_18,

Table 1 General criteria to diagnose a urinary tract infection

Method of urine collection	Interpretation
Suprapubic aspiration	Any growth of Gram-negative bacilli or > 1000 colony forming units/mL of Gram-positive cocci
Urethral catheterization	Greater than 1000 colony forming units/mL for circumcised males and all females, > 100,000 colony forming units/mL for uncircumcised males (if 10,000–100,000 colony forming units/mL, consider repeat sample)
Midstream clean catch	> 100,000 colony forming units/mL. These values pertain to pure, one-pathogen colony growth and should be interpreted based on the child's symptom complex

Management
- Uncomplicated UTI: Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX) twice a day for 3–7 day
- Acute pyelonephritis 10 days oral regimen if > 3 months and if able to drink

Recurrent UTI consider prophylaxis:
- TMP-SMZ: 2 mg/kg as a single daily dose or 5 mg/kg twice a week
  Nitrofurantoin: 1–2 mg/kg as a single daily dose

Vesicoureteral Reflux (VUR)

Background
- VUR, or the retrograde flow of urine from the bladder into the ureter
- It is an anatomic and functional disorder that can result in substantial morbidity, both from acute infection and from the sequelae of reflux nephropathy

Clinical presentation
- Children with VUR may present with hydronephrosis and/or UTI
- Hydronephrosis is often prenatally identified using ultrasonography
- Infants can manifest as failure to thrive, with or without fever; other features include vomiting, diarrhea, anorexia, and lethargy
- Older children may report voiding symptoms or abdominal pain
- Pyelonephritis in young children is more likely to manifest as vague abdominal discomfort rather than as the classic flank pain and tenderness observed in adults
- Presence of fever and urine infection is highly suggestive of pyelonephritis

Diagnosis
- Diagnosis of UTI depends on obtaining accurate urine culture findings
- No laboratory tests can reliably distinguish cystitis from pyelonephritis
- Serum chemistries are used to assess for baseline renal function
- A complete blood count (CBC) report can assist in tracking the response to treatment
- Urinalysis helps determine if proteinuria is present, which possibly indicates renal impairment

Indication for imaging study
- Imaging after the first UTI is indicated in all children younger than 5 years, children of any age with febrile UTI, and boys of any age with UTI
- Children with prenatally identified hydronephrosis should be evaluated postnatally, preferred after 3 days of life

Voiding cystourethrography (VCUG)
- VCUG is the criterion standard in diagnosis of VUR, providing precise anatomic detail and allows grading of the reflux
- The International Classification System for VUR is as follows (Fig. 1):
  - Grade I—Reflux into non dilated ureter
  - Grade II—Reflux into renal pelvis and calyces without dilation
  - Grade III—Reflux with mild to moderate dilation and minimal blunting of fornices (Fig. 2)
  - Grade IV—Reflux with moderate ureteral tortuosity and dilation of pelvis and calyces
  - Grade V—Reflux with gross dilation of ureter, pelvis, and calyces, loss of papillary impressions, and ureteral tortuosity
- VCUG should be performed after the child has fully recovered from the UTI
  - Some children demonstrate reflux only during an episodes of cystitis (RNC)

Radionuclide cystography
- Lower radiation doses than with VCUG
- Grade I reflux is poorly detected by this study
- DMSA renal scan, to assess for evidence of kidney involvement, kidney scarring

Management
- General principles of management in children with known VUR are as follows:
  - Spontaneous resolution of VUR is common in young children but is less common as puberty approaches
  - Severe reflux is unlikely to spontaneously resolve
  - Sterile reflux, in general, does not result in reflux nephropathy

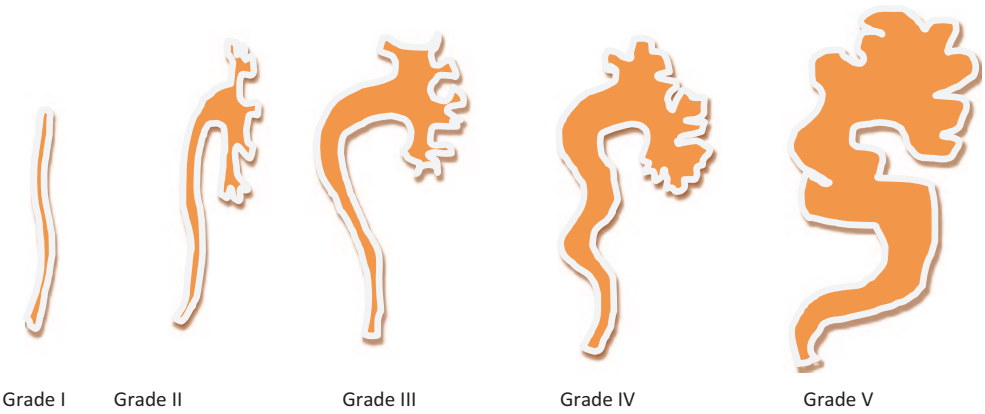


Fig. 1 Grades of vesicoureteral reflux (VUR)

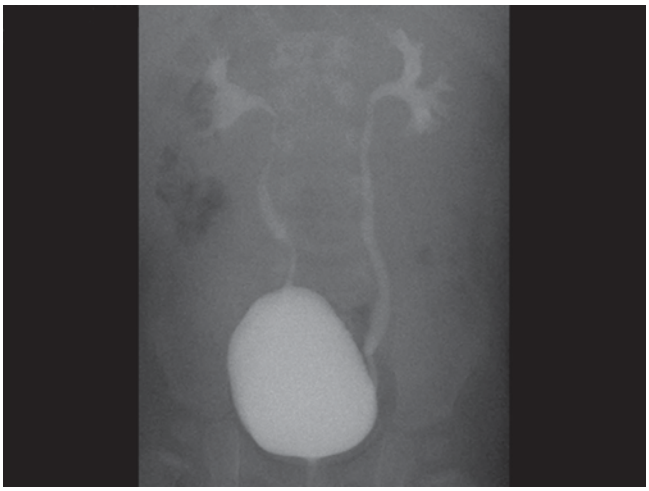


Fig. 2 VUR grade III: Reflux with mild to moderate dilation and minimal blunting of fornices

  - Long-term antibiotic prophylaxis in children is safe
  - Surgery to correct vesicoureteral reflux is highly successful in experienced hands

Antibiotic prophylaxis

- Started once a child has completed treatment of the initial UTI
- Discontinued if no VUR is seen on imaging studies
- If VUR is present, prophylactic antibiotics are continued until the VUR resolves or is surgically corrected, or the child grows old enough that prophylaxis is deemed no longer necessary

Antibiotic prophylaxis are used as follows

- The typical dose is one fourth of the therapeutic dose.
- Antibiotics are usually administered as suspensions once daily, typically in the evening to maximize overnight drug levels in the bladder.
- In neonates with antenatally diagnosed hydronephrosis and in infants younger than 8 weeks who have been treated for UTI, the agent of choice is amoxicillin.
- For older children, the most common antibiotics used are TMP-SMX, nitrofurantoin, and penicillin's
- Follow with imaging studies every 12–18 months.
- Constipation is extremely common and may be much more important etiologic factors than the reflux itself.
- Anticholinergic medication, in conjunction with timed voiding, may improve symptoms of dysfunctional voiding and reduce the risk of infection in select patients.

Accepted indications for surgical treatment include the following

- Breakthrough febrile UTIs despite adequate antibiotic prophylaxis
- Severe reflux (grade V or bilateral grade IV) that is unlikely to spontaneously resolve, especially if renal scarring is present
- Mild or moderate reflux in females that persists as the patient approaches puberty, despite several years of observation
- Poor compliance with medications or surveillance programs

  Poor renal growth or function or appearance of new scars

Ureteropelvic Junction Obstruction

Definition

- Ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) obstruction is defined as an obstruction of the flow of urine from the renal pelvis to the proximal ureter
- Ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) obstruction is the most common obstructive lesion.

Clinical presentation

- Maternal ultrasonography (US) may reveal fetal hydronephrosis
- Palpable renal mass in newborn infants
- Abdominal flank pain
- Febrile UTI
- Hematuria after minimal trauma
- 60% is on left side, 10% is bilateral

Diagnosis
- Renal US
- VCUG should be obtained in boys to rule out urethral obstruction

Management
- US after birth
- If grade I or II hydronephrosis and the renal parenchyma appears normal, usually it is appropriate to follow with US until the hydronephrosis disappear, the child should receive antibiotic prophylaxis ampicillin if <2 months and TMP-SMX if >2 months.
- If Hydronephrosis is grade III or IV, spontaneous resolution is less likely, especially, if the renal pelvis diameter is >2 cm.
- Surgical intervention to treat an obstructed UPJ is warranted, especially upon deterioration of renal function.

Ureterocele

Background
- Ureterocele is a cyst out-pouching of the distal ureter into the urinary bladder.
- Ureteroceles may be asymptomatic, present with a wide range of clinical signs and symptoms, from recurrent cystitis to bladder outlet obstruction, or renal failure.

Clinical presentation
- UTI
- Urosepsis
- Obstructive voiding symptoms
- Urinary retention
- Failure to thrive
- Hematuria
- Cyclic abdominal pain
- Ureteral calculus
- Symptomatic ureteroceles with hydronephrosis may manifest with abdominal tenderness to palpation, and abdominal mass

Diagnosis
- Renal and bladder ultrasonography is the first-line imaging study for evaluating the upper and lower urinary tract in children.
- VCUG is essential to evaluate the lower urinary tract for a ureterocele, urethral diverticulum, posterior urethral valve (PUV), ectopic ureter, and vesicoureteral reflux.

Management
- Observation alone is rarely a good option in symptomatic ureteroceles.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis starts in newborns with prenatal diagnosis of ureterocele.
- Indication for surgery depends on the site of the ureterocele, the clinical situation, associated renal anomalies, and the size of the ureterocele.

Posterior Urethral Valve

Background
- The most common cause of severe obstructive uropathy
- Affect 1:8000
- Posterior urethral dilatation, bladder muscle hypertrophy, hydronephrosis, renal dysplasia, and renal failure will depend on the severity of obstruction
- Prenatal diagnosis of PUV specially in second trimester carries a poorer prognosis than PUV diagnosed after birth

Clinical presentation
- PUV is suspected in boys if there is a distended bladder and weak stream of urine
- If unrecognized during neonatal period, may present later with failure to thrive (FTT), uremia, and sepsis
- If less sever, may present with UTI or diurnal urinary incontinence even after 6 years of age

Diagnosis
- Established with VCUG
- Small polyethylene feeding tube No 5 is inserted to the bladder
- Foley catheter is contraindicated as it can causes spasm and severe urethral obstruction

Treatment
- Transurethral ablation of the valve leaflets by endoscope

Female Urethral Prolapse

Background
- Urethral prolapse is a circular protrusion of the distal urethra through the external meatus. It is a rarely diagnosed condition that occurs most commonly in prepubertal black females and postmenopausal white women

Causes
- Congenital defects
- Secondary to birth trauma
- Risk factors for urethral prolapse in children include increased intra-abdominal pressure as a result of chronic coughing or constipation.

Clinical presentation
- Vaginal bleeding associated with urethral mass is the most common presentation.

Management
- Treatment of urethral prolapse ranges from conservative therapy (eg, applications of antibiotic ointments, estrogen creams, sitz baths, herbal remedies, oral antibiotics) to various surgical techniques

Prune-Belly Syndrome (Eagle–Barrett Syndrome)

- Deficient abdominal muscles
- Undescended testes
- Urinary tract abnormalities
- Massive dilatation of ureters and upper tracts
- Very large bladder with a patent urachus or urachal diverticulum
- Oligohydramnios and pulmonary hypoplasia
- Various degree of renal dysplasia

Urinary Incontinence

Background
- Most children will have control of micturition by age 4–5 years

Causes
- UTI
- Constipation
- Encopresis
- Child abuse
- Psychosocial stressor
- Back or sacral anomalies and underlying spinal cord malformation
- Meatal stenosis
- Hypospadias
- Tight phimosis
- Labial adhesions
- Female epispadias
- Interlabial masses
- Ureterocele
- Ectopic ureter

Clinical presentation
- Ectopic ureter: continuous urinary leakage
- Sensory defect: voiding without prior awareness
- Bounding up and down: detrusor instability
- Stress incontinence: occur when coughing or sneezing

Diagnosis
- Depending on history and physical examination
- UA and urine culture
- Renal ultrasound
- MRI on the back if spinal cord or vertebral malformation is suspected

Treatment
- Oxybutynin for sensory defect or detrusor instability and time voiding
- Surgical correction of ectopic ureter
  Treatment of the underlying cause

Bladder Exstrophy

- Bladder exstrophy usually range from simple epispadias (in boys) to complete exstrophy of the cloaca involving exposure of the entire hindgut and the bladder.
- Male to female ratio is 2:1
- Bladder should be covered with plastic wrap to keep bladder mucosa moist
- Application of gauze or petroleum gauze should be avoided as significant inflammation will result
- Consult pediatric urologist

Hypospadias

Background
- The most common congenital anomaly of the penis
- The meatus can be anywhere along the ventral shaft or even onto the scrotum or perineum.
- The more proximal the opening, the more likely the ventral shortening and development of Chordae

Management
- Circumcision is contraindicated
  Consult urologist for surgical correction

Phimosis

Background
- Phimosis occurs when foreskin cannot be retracted
- 90% of uncircumcised male prepuce becomes retractable by age 3 years

Treatment
- Application of corticosteroid cream to foreskin TID for 1 month is effective in 70% of cases.
- If there is ballooning, or phimosis persist after 10 years of age, circumcision is recommended

Paraphimosis

Description
- Paraphimosis is entrapment of a phimotic prepuce proximal to coronal margin
- Foreskin retracted past the coronal sulcus becomes edematous and cannot be pulled back over the glans

Treatment
- Reduction is emergent and may require sedation and anaesthesia
- Apply lubricant on the glans and foreskin then push the phimotic ring past the coronal sulcus

Posthitis

Definition
- Inflammation and cellulitis of prepuce, if it progress to glans called balanitis

Treatment
- Topical steroids, and topical or oral antibiotics
- Circumcision may be the best option, especially if recurrent

Circumcision

Background
- Some suggested that circumcision likely originated in Egypt some 15,000 years ago and that its practice later spread throughout the world during prehistoric human migrations.

American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP)
- "Existing scientific evidence demonstrates potential benefits of newborn male circumcision; however, these data are not sufficient to recommend routine neonatal circumcision".
- As a consequence, parents should be appropriately counseled so that they can make an informed choice and decide whether a circumcision is in the best interest of their child.

Indication of circumcision
- Many families choose to have their male infants circumcised for cultural, religious, or hygienic reasons, only a few accepted medical indications are recognized:
- Phimosis
- Paraphimosis
- Balanitis
- Posthitis

Anatomic contraindication
- Hypospadias
- Chordee
- Penile torsion
- Webbed penis
- Buried penis
- Urethral hypoplasia
- Epispadias
- Ambiguous genitalia (including bilateral cryptorchidism or micropenis)

Medical contraindications to neonatal circumcision
- Any current illness or medical condition that requires monitoring
- Age less than 12–24 h
- Known bleeding diathesis (e.g., hemophilia or thrombocytopenia)
- Disorders of the skin or connective tissue that would impair normal healing

Instruments usually used for circumcision
- Gomco clamp
- Plastibell device
- Mogen clamp

Complications:
- Bleeding
- Infection
- Meatal stenosis

Parents education
- Instruct parents concerning the occurrence of physiologic childhood phimosis, which can last into the school-age years.
- Stress the danger of forcibly retracting the foreskin for hygienic purposes.
- The adhesions found between the inner prepuce and the glans naturally lyse.
- The AAP does not recommend routine neonatal circumcision; however, if circumcision is performed, the AAP recommends the use of procedural analgesia.

Micropenis

Definition
- Stretched penile length from pubis to the tip of the penis <2.5 cm

Causes
- Deficiency of gonadotropin secretion during the last two trimester

Table 2 Differentiation between acute epididymitis and testicular torsion

Testicular torsion	Epididymitis
Inadequate fixation of testis within the scrotum	*E. coli* in young children, gonococcus, or *Chlamydia* after puberty are the most common cause
Sudden onset (hours)	Gradual onset (days)
Usually nausea and vomiting	Usually no nausea and vomiting
No dysuria, no frequency, no fever	May have fever, dysuria, frequency, and urethral discharge
No pyuria	Urinalysis usually reveal pyuria
Absent cremasteric reflex	Normal cremasteric reflex
Scrotum is swollen and testis is exquisitely tender, and often difficult to examine	Tenderness and induration occurring first in the epididymal tail and then spreading
High-lying horizontal testis	Normal position testis
Absent or decreased blood flow in the affected testicle on US	Increased blood flow occurs with epididymitis on US
Immediate surgical exploration	Antibiotics (differentiation from torsion in children can be difficult and surgical exploration is usually required in children)

- Testosterone insensitivity
- Kallmann syndrome
- Prader–Willi syndrome
- Panhypopituitarism

Treatment
- Testosterone may be beneficial in selected cases

Testicular Torsion

Background
- Testicular or spermatic cord torsion is an emergency
- It occurs 1/4000 males between the ages 3 and 20 years
- Most occurs in tunica vaginalis

Clinical presentation (Table 2)
- Acute onset of pain
- Nausea and vomiting
- Scrotal edema and redness
- Loss of cremasteric reflex
- High-lying horizontal testis

Diagnosis
- It is a clinical diagnosis
- Color-flow Doppler ultrasound; decrease blood flow on the affected side

Management
- Insist on rapid, *in person*, consultation by the urologist in suspected cases.
- Never delay the surgical consultation for US; testicular torsion is a clinical diagnosis.
- Immediate exploration, detorsion, and contralateral testicular fixation are required.
- Contralateral testis is at future risk.
- Manual detorsion may be attempted if pain duration <4–6 h
- In 65% of the cases torted testis rotates inward (e.g., the left testis is rotated clockwise)

Prognosis
- Testes can be lost if the surgery delayed as little as 4 h, and by 24 h infarction is almost universal

Neonatal Testicular Torsion

Background
- It is extravaginal torsion
- Torsion of entire spermatic cord and testis

Clinical presentation
- Usually painless swelling
- Discolored hemiscrotum

Management
- Testicular salvage is rarely successful
- Contralateral testis should be fixed as precautionary measure

Testicular Appendage Torsion

Background
- Torsion of testicular appendix
- It is remnant of mesonephric tubule

Clinical presentation
- Acute scrotal pain (the most common cause of scrotal pain between age 3 and 13 years)
- Pain is less severe than testicular torsion

- Palpable tender nodule on the top portion of the testicle with blue discoloration (Blue dot sign)
- Vertical orientation of the testes is preserved
- The cremasteric reflex is usually intact

Diagnosis
- Doppler ultrasound can differentiate between torsion of appendix and testis.
- Testicular appendage torsion appears as a lesion of low echogenicity with a central hypoechogenic area

Treatment
- Usually resolve spontaneously

Cryptorchidism

Background
- Cryptorchidism is the most common genital problem of newborn males
- Occurs in 1/3 of premature boys and in 3–4 % newborn males

Clinical presentation
- Undescended testis can be intraabdominal or in the inguinal canal
- Retractile testis can be pulled down to the bottom of the scrotum
- All retractile testis eventually will end up in the scrotum

Treatment
- Can be fixed between 1 and 2 years of age
- Most urologist prefer orchiopexy
- Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) in series injection will result in 30–40 % success

Prognosis
- Undescended testis have increased risk of cancer even after surgical correction

Varicoceles

Definition
- Abnormal dilatation and tortuosity of the testicular vein and pampiniform plexus of spermatic cord
- Occurs almost exclusively in the left side

Clinical presentation
- Most patients are asymptomatic
- Larger varicocele may feel like a bag of worms.
- Testicular size must be checked for any asymmetry
- Can cause infertility in severe cases

Management
- Surgery, if any signs of reduced testicular growth or infertility

Hydroceles

Background
- Hydrocele is due to failure of fusion and obliteration of the processus vaginalis
- Non-communicating hydroceles usually resolve before the first birth day

Management
- Observation
  The following factors indicate hydrocele repair:
  - Failure to resolve by age 2 years
  - Continued discomfort
  - Enlargement or waxing and waning in volume
  - Unsightly appearance
  - Secondary infection (very rare)

Kidney Stones

Background
- Urolithiasis is an uncommon disease in children, but recent studies have demonstrated an increasing incidence in the pediatric population.

Types of kidney stones
- Calcium oxalate 45–65 %
- Calcium phosphate 14–30 %
- Struvite 13 %
- Cystine 5 %
- Uric acid 4 %
- Mixed or miscellaneous 4 %

Causes
- The most common is idiopathic hypercalciuria
- Hyperoxaluria, hypocitraturia, hyperuricosuria, and cystinuria
- Struvite stones:
  - Grow quickly and form a large staghorn calculus with the bacteria becoming trapped in the stone
- Proteus is the most common urease-forming bacterial species
- Recurrent urinary tract infections are the greatest risk for developing struvite stones

Clinical presentation
- Pain usually colicky
- Dysuria and frequency

- Passage of blood, stones, or gravel
- Look for signs of renal or other metabolic diseases such as spina bifida, RTA, Dent disease, or Lesch-Nyhan syndrome
- Family history
- Dietary history

Diagnosis
- Urinalysis and urine culture
- Urine pH (<6 for uric acid stones, >7 for calcium phosphate stones, and >8 for struvite stones)
- Complete metabolic panel
- Phosphorus level
- Uric acid
- Urine calcium (Ca) and creatinine

Imaging
- Renal ultrasonography (it is recommended for all new patients)
- Computerized tomography (CT) scan without radiographic contrast media using a spiral technique

Management
- The greatest risk factors for calcium kidney stone formation are low fluid and high sodium intake
- Decrease the risk of Ca oxalate by limiting intake to a modest amount of high-oxalate foods such as leafy vegetables, nuts, chocolates, star fruits
- Recommended dietary allowance (RDA) should be encouraged
- No added salt diet
- No more than a moderate amount of animal protein consumption
- Avoidance of excess vitamin C
- Thiazide diuretic if hypercalciuria and does not respond to a restricted sodium diet
- Antibiotic for infection-related (struvite)

Surgical treatment
- Most stones smaller than 5 mm pass spontaneously in children and do not require any surgical intervention.
- Stones that are larger than 5 mm may require nephrolithotomy or lithotripsy or endoscopies.

Urethral Injuries

Background
- Trauma to the male urethra must be efficiently diagnosed and effectively treated to prevent serious long term sequelae.
- The etiology of a urethral injury can be classified as blunt or penetrating.
- Iatrogenic injuries to the urethra occur when difficult urethral catheterization leads to mucosal injury with subsequent scarring and stricture formation.
- Diagnosis of urethral injuries requires a reasonably high index of suspicion

Clinical presentation
- Hematuria or inability to void
- Decreased stream
- Blood at the meatus may be seen

Diagnosis
- The diagnosis of urethral trauma is made by retrograde urethrography

Management
- Consult pediatric urologist
- Bladder drainage must be established; the easiest and fastest method is placement of a suprapubic catheter followed by delayed evaluation and reconstruction.
- Surgical repair depends on the severity of injuries.

Suggested Readings

1. Bomalaski MD, Anema JG, Coplen DE, Koo HP, Rozanski T, Bloom DA. Delayed presentation of posterior urethral valves: a not so benign condition. *J Urol*. 1999;162(6):2130–2.
2. Hutson J. Undescended testis, torsion, and varicocele. In: Grosfeld JL, O'Neill JA, Coran AG, Fonkalsrud EW, editors. Pediatric surgery. Philadelphia: Mosby Elsevier; 2006. p. 1193–214.
3. Bani Hani O, Prelog K, Smith GH. A method to assess posterior urethral valve ablation. J Urol. 2006;176(1):303–5.
4. Johnson CE, Corey HE, Elder JS. Urinary tract infections in childhood. Consens Pediatr. 2003;1:1–28.
5. Bushinsky DA, Coe FS, Moe OW. Nephrolithiasis. In: Brenner BK, editor. Brenner & Rector's the kidney. 8th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2008. p. 1299–349.
6. Academy of Pediatrics. Committee on quality improvement. Subcommittee on UTI. Practice parameter: the diagnosis, treatment, and evaluation of the initial urinary tract infection in febrile infants and young children. *Pediatrics*. 1999;103(4):843–52.
7. Weiss R, Duckett J, Spitzer A. Results of a randomized clinical trial of medical versus surgical management of infants and children with grades III and IV primary vesicoureteral reflux (United States). The International Reflux Study in Children. *J Urol.* 1992;148(5):1667–73.
8. Lannon CM, Bailey AGB, Fleischman AR. Circumcision policy statement. American Academy of Pediatrics. Task force on circumcision. *Pediatrics*. 1999;103:686–93.

Endocrine Disorders

Kuk-Wha Lee, Amr Morsi and Osama Naga

Growth

Approach to the Child with Worrisome Growth

Growth rate

- Birth length increases by 50% at 1 year (approximately 25 cm or 10 in/year).
- At 1–2 years of age children grow 12.5 cm or 5 in./year (approximately half the growth rate of the first year of life).
- By 2 years of age children are approximately ½ of their final adult height.
- After 2–3 years of age, height increases by approximately 6.25 cm or 2.5 in./year.
- Careful attention to growth rate (not only the height), facilitates early detection of a growth-slowing disorder.

What is the relationship between the linear growth rate and weight gain?

- Poor nutrition and excess caloric intake can influence linear growth.
- If a weight deceleration precedes and is greater than the height deficit, the child needs a gastrointestinal (GI) consultation (Fig. 1).
- Excess weight gain associated with a decline in growth rate is not nutritional and requires endocrine consultation.

K.-W. Lee (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Division of Endocrinology,
Mattel Children's Hospital at UCLA, 10833 Le Conte Avenue,
MDCC 22-315, Los Angeles, CA 90095, USA
e-mail: kukwhalee@mednet.ucla.edu

A. Morsi
Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Science Center—Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, 4800 Alberta Avenue,
El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: amr.morsi@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga
Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Science Center—Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, 4800 Alberta Avenue,
El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

Family history of pubertal onset and age of adult height attainment and bone age

- Height and pubertal onset in parents can be helpful in assessing the likelihood that similar growth pattern in the child represent a normal variation.

Mid-parental target height (MPTH)

- Calculated as an average ± 2 SD (1 SD = 2 in.).

Mid-parental height for boys

- (Paternal height + (Maternal height + 13 cm or 5 in.)/2).

Mid-parental height for girls

- (Maternal height + (Paternal height − 13 cm or 5 in.)/2).

Constitutional Delay of Growth and Puberty (CDGP)

Background

- The most common cause of short stature and pubertal delay.
- Typically have retarded linear growth within the first 3 years of life.
- Most children resume a normal growth velocity by the age of 2–3 years.
- During childhood, these individuals grow along or parallel to the lower percentiles of the growth curve.
- Children with CDGP are often referred to as "late bloomers" with onset of puberty also being later than peers.

Diagnosis

- Family history of growth and pubertal delay is common (in 50% of cases).
- Delayed bone age.
- Linear growth is 2 SD deviation below the mean for age in the first 3 years of life (Fig. 2).
- Pubertal growth spurt is delayed and the growth rate continues to decline after their classmate have begun to accelerate.
- IGF-1 tends to be low for chronological age but normal for bone age.
- GH and thyroid studies are usually normal.

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_19,

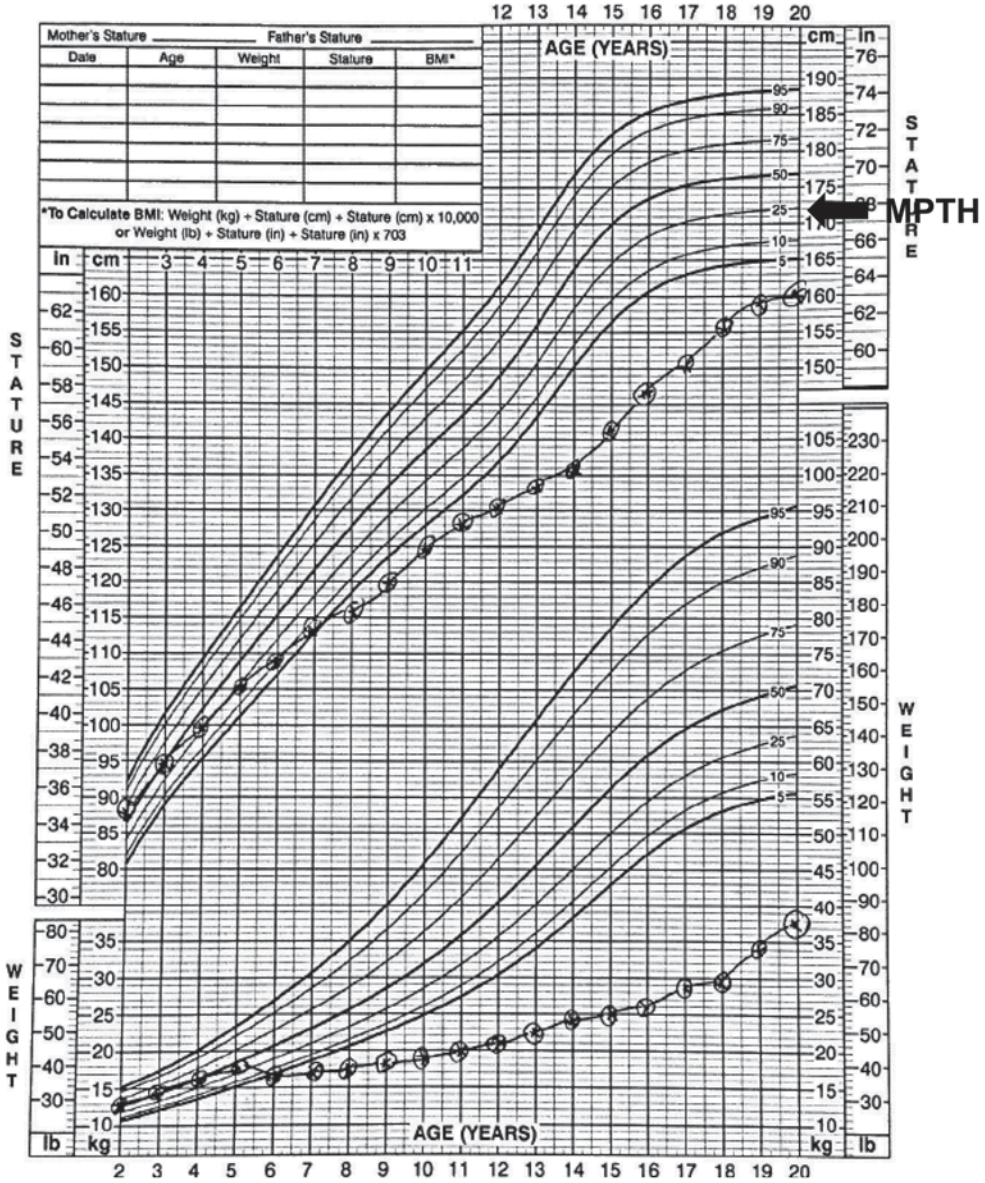


Fig. 1 Growth curve of a child with failure to thrive secondary to malabsorption. Weight is affected before height

Management

- Medical care in constitutional growth delay (CGD) is aimed at obtaining several careful growth measurements at frequent intervals, often every 6 months.
- These measurements are used to calculate linear height velocities and establish a trajectory on the growth curve.
- Medical treatment of this variation of normal growth is not necessary but may be initiated in adolescents experiencing psychosocial distress.
- Boys with more than 2 years of pubertal delay may benefit from a short course of testosterone therapy after age of 14 years.

Familial/Genetic Short Stature

Background

- Height below fifth percentile.
- Growth velocity, i.e., parallel to but below the normal growth curve (Fig. 3).

Diagnosis

- Bone age is congruent with the child's chronological age.
- The time of pubertal onset is normal.
- Height percentile tracks that predicted by parental genetics.

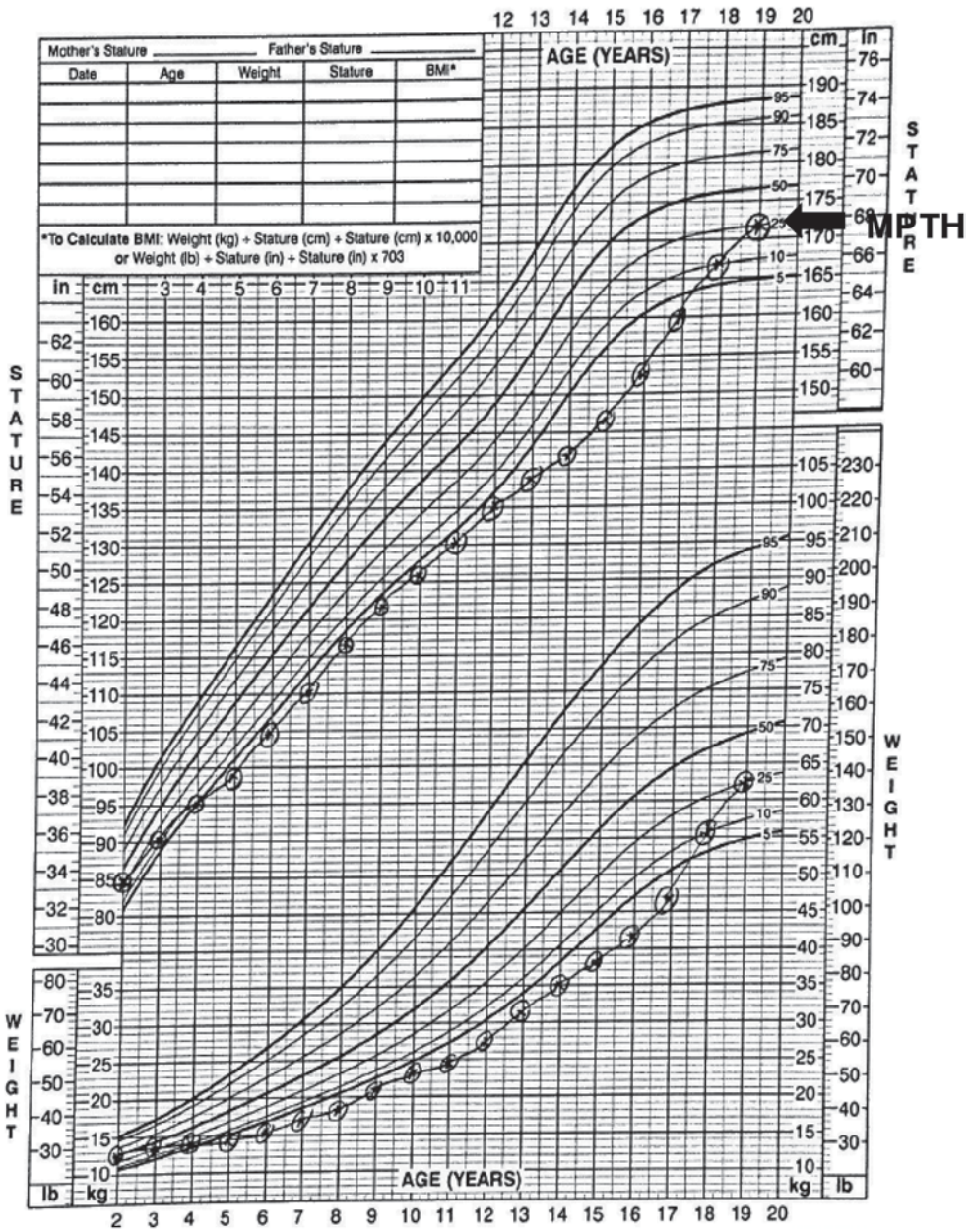


Fig. 2 Short stature secondary to constitutional delay. Growth is noted along or parallel to the lower percentiles of the growth curve and pubertal initiation is also delayed. Catchup growth is noted from age of 16–17 years and at 19 years of age the boy reached his mid-paternal target height (MPTH) "late bloomer"

Psychosocial Dwarfism

Background

- Emotional deprivation can cause short stature and growth failure.
- A good history may reveal a disturbed child–family relationship.

Diagnosis

- Diagnosis of exclusion.

Other Causes of Short Stature

- Intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR) or small for gestational age
- Chronic disease
- Turner syndrome
- Down syndrome
- Noonan syndrome
- Osteochondrodysplasia (achondroplasia and hypochondroplasia)
- Prader-Willi syndrome
- Growth hormone deficiency (GHD) and other endocrinopathies (e.g., hypothyroidism)

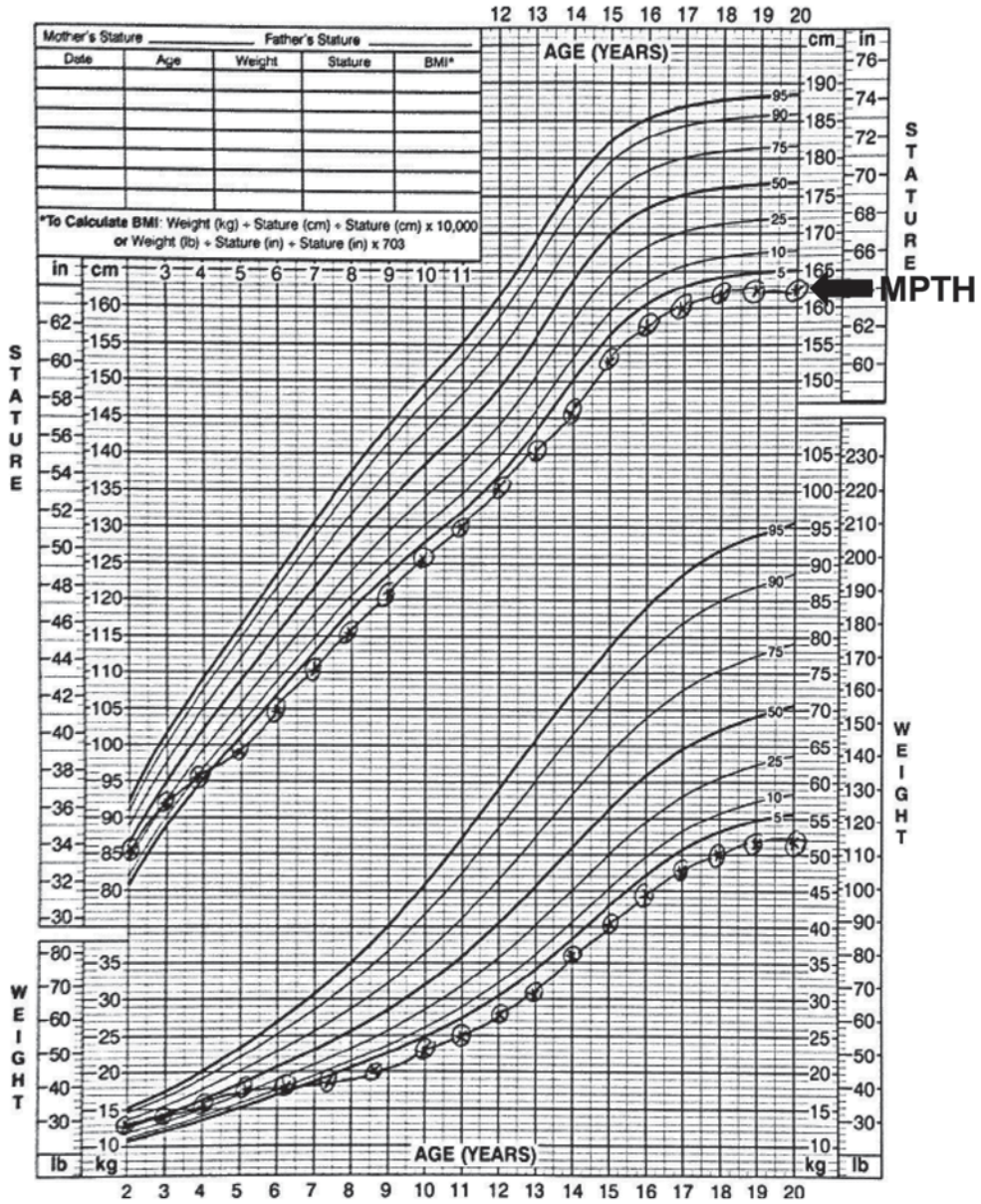


Fig. 3 Familial short stature. Growth rate is parallel to the lower percentiles of the growth curve and final adult height is corresponds to MPTH

Pituitary Gland

Introduction

- The pituitary gland, located at the base of the brain, is composed of anterior (i.e., adenohypophysis) and posterior (i.e., neurohypophysis) regions.
- Origin of the adenohypophysis is from Rathke's pouch as an invagination of the oral ectoderm.

The major biologically active hormones released into systemic circulation include the following

- Growth hormone (GH)
- Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)
- Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)
- Luteinizing hormone (LH)
- Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)
- Prolactin (PRL)
- Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)

Growth hormone (GH)

- Background
  - GH is 191-amino acid (191-AA) single chain polypeptide. The GH gene is called GH1 and is located on chromosome 17.
- Biologic effect of GH
  - Linear growth
  - Bone thickness growth
  - Soft tissue growth
  - Protein synthesis
  - Fatty acid release from adipose tissue
  - Insulin resistance
- Insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1)

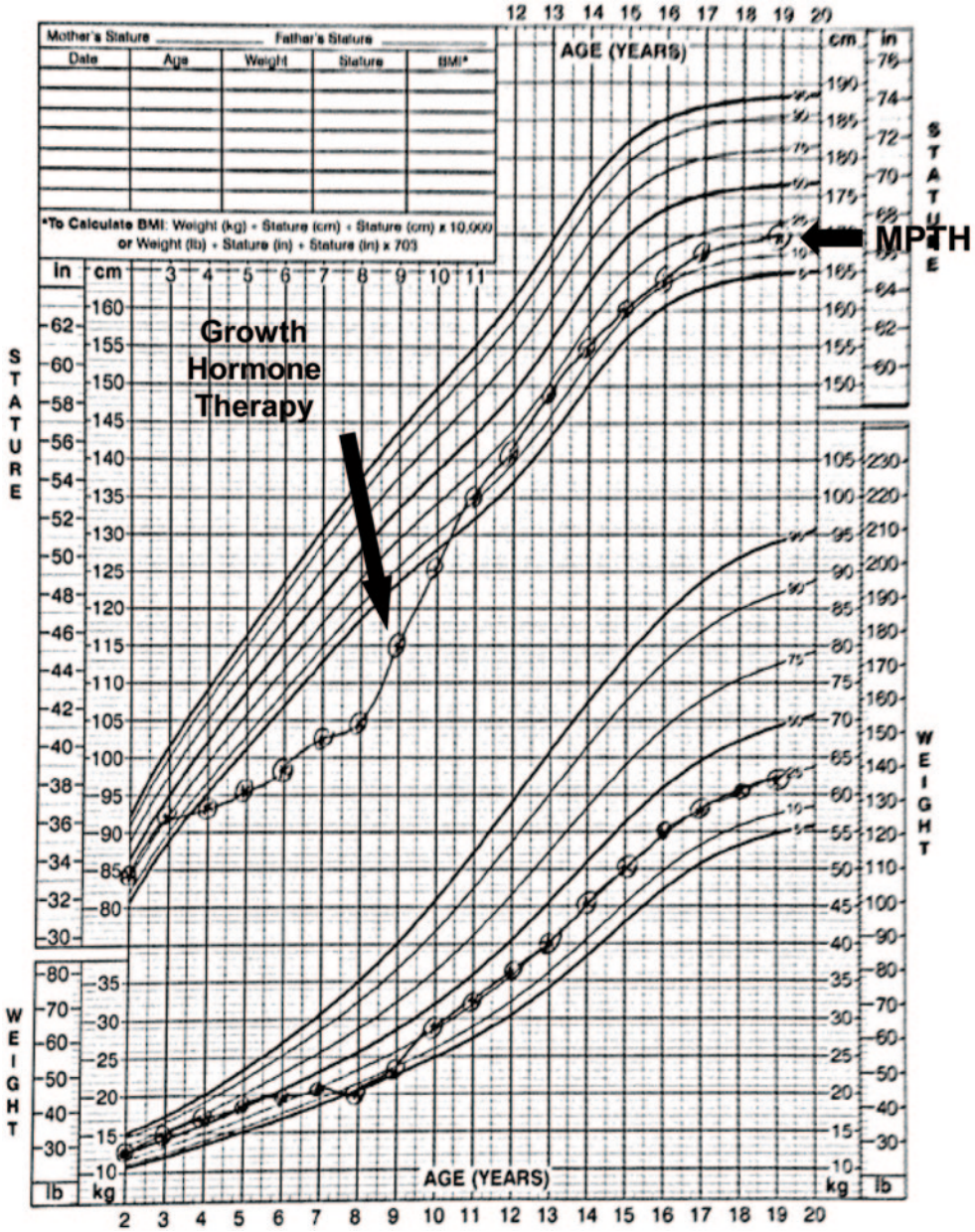


Fig. 4 Short stature secondary to growth hormone deficiency (GHD). Height deceleration is noted after 3 years of age and weight is affected at 7 years of age. Growth hormone (GH) therapy initiated at 9 years of age with marked improvement in auxology

  - IGF-1 *is both* synthesized in the liver, and formed locally in bones and muscles of children.
  - Gene located on chromosome 12.
  - Circulating IGF-1 is directly related to GH activity and nutritional status.

GH therapy

- Background (Fig. 4)
  - In children with classic GHD, treatment should be started as soon as possible to ensure the greatest effect on final adult height.
  - Higher doses during puberty can be considered.
  - Maximal response is usually during the first year.
- Criteria for discontinuing GH treatment
  - Decision by the patient/parent to discontinue.
  - Growth rate less than 2 cm/year.
  - Bone age of 14 years in girls and 16 years in boys.
- Adverse effects of GH
  - Pseudotumor cerebri
  - Slipped capital femoral epiphysis
  - Gynecomastia
  - Worsening scoliosis
  - Insulin resistance

Congenital Hypopituitarism

Background

- Hypopituitarism generally means GHD; but can mean other combinations of pituitary hormone deficiency also.

Conditions associated with GHD:
- Hall–Pallister syndrome
  - Absence of pituitary gland
  - Hypothalamic hamartoblastoma
  - Post-axial polydactyly
  - Nail dysplasia
  - Bifid epiglottis
  - Imperforate anus
  - Anomalies of heart, lungs, and kidneys
- Septo-optic dysplasia
  - Absence of optic chiasm, optic nerve hypoplasia or both
  - Agenesis of the septum pellucidum, and schizencephaly
- Midfacial anomalies
  - E.g., Solitary maxillary central incisors, cleft lip/palate
- Micropenis/microphallus

Clinical presentation
- Neonate:
- *Hypoglycemia* usually severe and persistent, with or without seizure
- *Micropenis/microphallus* (diagnostic clue in boys; < 2 cm stretched in term infant)
- Apnea
- Cyanosis
- Prolonged neonatal jaundice
- Most neonates with hypopituitarism have normal length and weight at birth
- Older infants and children
  - Growth failure is the most common presentation
  - Delayed tooth eruption
  - Central diabetes insipidus may develop or become clinically obvious as they become older

Diagnosis
- Height or length > 3 SD below the mean, failure to thrive
- Slow growth velocity (< 5 cm/year)
- Delayed skeletal age
- Low IGF-1 and low insulin-like growth factor binding protein-3 (IGFBP-3)
- *Provocative tests*: Administration of insulin, arginine, clonidine, or glucagon rapidly increases the level of GH in normal children.
  - GH < 10 ng/ml in two provocative tests with different agents is the usual diagnostic criteria.
- Other pituitary hormones must be tested, e.g., TSH, ACTH, gonadotropins (age-dependent).
- Clinical history (polydipsia, cold water craving).

Treatment
- Appropriate hormone replacement

Neonatal Hypoglycemia

Background
- Hypoglycemia is the most common metabolic problem in neonates.
- Plasma glucose less than 30 mg/dL in the first 24 h and less than 70 mg/dL thereafter in newborn. (Point-of-care (POC) glucose measurements not diagnostic, needs confirmation with serum level).
- Plasma glucose value of less than 50 mg/dL in children.

Causes
- Transient hypoglycemia
  - Prematurity (low glycogen stores), infant of diabetic mother, SGA, perinatal stress, and sepsis
- Inborn errors of metabolism, e.g., carnitine-acylcarnitine translocase deficiency
- Glycogen storage disorders
- Gluconeogenesis disorders
- Fatty acid oxidation disorders
- Disorders of hormonal regulation of glucose metabolism:
  - GHD or hypopituitarism.
  - Isolated cortisol deficiency (congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH).
  - Congenital hyperinsulinism (genetic defect) is the most common permanent cause in the first 3 months of life.
- Genetic diseases, e.g., Beckwith–Wiedemann syndrome

Diagnosis
- Micropenis is a red flag for possible GHD.
- *Critical sample* should be taken during hypoglycemia (usually if the cause is unknown and persistent cases):
  - Glucose
  - CO2 (chemistry panel)
  - Insulin, C-peptide
  - Ammonia, lactate
  - Growth hormone
  - Cortisol
  - Free fatty acids
  - Beta-hydroxybutyrate and acetoacetate (serum ketones)
  - Acylcarnitine profile, total and free carnitine
  - Save serum tube
  - Urine ketones, urine organic acids
- Hypopituitarism or adrenal failure
  - Ketonemia and ketonuria
  - Low GH or low cortisol
  - Appropriately suppressed insulin
- Glycogen storage disease
  - Ketonemia and ketonuria
  - Normal response of GH and cortisol to hypoglycemia
  - Appropriately suppressed insulin
- Fatty acid oxidation defect or carnitine deficiency
  - No ketonemia and no ketonuria

  - No acidosis
  - Appropriately suppressed insulin
- Hyperinsulinism or insulinoma in older children
  - No ketonemia, no ketonuria
  - Usually induced by fasting
  - Inappropriately elevated insulin concentration (in presence of hypoglycemia)
  - May respond to diazoxide
  - Consider MEN 1 syndrome

Craniopharyngioma

Background
- It is the most common pituitary tumor: benign histology and malignant behavior
- Persistence of remnants of the original connection between Rathke's pouch and the oral cavity
- Peak incidence in children aged 5–10 years
- More common in males

Clinical presentation
- Headache
  - Most common presentation (55–86%)
  - Hydrocephalus
- Visual disturbance (37–68%)
  - Decline of visual acuity
  - Constriction of visual fields, bitemporal hemianopsia
  - Papilledema
  - Horizontal double vision
- Endocrine dysfunction (66–90%), e.g.:
  - Hypothyroidism (e.g., weight gain, fatigue, cold intolerance, and constipation)
  - Diabetes insipidus
  - Growth failure and delayed puberty

Diagnosis (MRI findinging figure)
- Contrast computed tomography (CT) scanning
- Contrast magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)
- Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA)
- Complete endocrinologic and neuro-ophthalmologic evaluation with formal visual field documentation
- Neuropsychological assessment

Management
- Surgical removal
- Postsurgical follow-up should be planned in 1–2 weeks for all patients
- Appropriate hormone replacement

Diabetes Insipidus (DI)

Background
- DI is defined as the passage of large volumes of dilute urine (< 300 mOsm/kg).
- *Central DI* (neurogenic, pituitary, or neurohypophyseal) characterized by decreased secretion of antidiuretic hormone (ADH; also referred to as arginine vasopressin [AVP]).
- *Nephrogenic DI*, characterized by decreased ability to concentrate urine because of resistance to ADH action in the kidney.

Cause of central DI
- Trauma or surgery to the region of the pituitary and hypothalamus are common causes
- Neoplasm
- Infiltration (histiocytosis X)
- Infection
- Autoimmune
- Congenital

Cause of nephrogenic DI
- Congenital X-linked NDI or autosomal dominant NDI
- Electrolyte disturbances (hypercalcemia, hypomagnesemia, and hypokalemia)
- Drugs, e.g., lithium, demeclocycline, cisplatin, amphotericin B, loop diuretics
- Ureteral obstruction, chronic renal failure, polycystic kidney disease, Sjogren syndrome, and sickle cell anemia
- Psychogenic

Clinical presentation
- Polyuria
- Irritability
- Failure to thrive
- Intermittent fever

Diagnosis
- Serum osmolality > 300 mOSm/kg
- Urine osmolality < 300 mOSm/kg
- Hypernatremia
- Urine specific gravity of 1.005 or less and a urinary osmolality less than 200 mOsm/kg are the hallmarks of DI.
- Polyuria and elevated plasma osmolality despite a relatively high basal level of ADH suggests nephrogenic DI.
- Water deprivation test and response to DDAVP can differentiate between central and nephrogenic DI.
- If serum osmolality < 270 mOSm/kg and urine osmolality > 600 mOSm/kg this will rule out DI.
- Suspect primary polydipsia when large volumes of very dilute urine occur with plasma osmolality in the low–normal range.

Treatment of central DI
- DDAVP (desmopressin)
- Complication is water intoxication, patient should have water breakthrough every day to prevent water intoxication.
- Under most circumstances water intake should be limited to 1 L/m2/24 h during antidiuresis.
- *Important*: Water should always be made available to the child with DI and intact thirst mechanism.
- *Important*: Some patients may *not* have intact thirst mechanism. They need to be put on a daily fluid (free water) goal.
- *Infants can also be treated with thiazides and low solute formulas*.

Treatment of nephrogenic DI
- Thiazide diuretics
- May be combined with amiloride and indomethacin

Syndrome of Inappropriate ADH Secretion (SIADH)

Background
- Hyponatremia and hypo-osmolality resulting from inappropriate, continued secretion or action of the hormone despite normal or increased plasma volume, which results in impaired water excretion

Causes
- CNS pathology
  - Infection, e.g., tumor, thrombosis, neurosurgery, hydrocephalus, meningitis, pneumonia, hypoxia and brain abscess.
  - Head trauma.
- Pulmonary disease
  - Pneumonia, asthma, positive pressure ventilation, TB, cystic fibrosis
- Neoplastic, e.g., lymphoma and leukemia
- Hypothyroidism
- Excessive treatment of central DI
- Carbamazepine/oxcarbazepine, cyclophosphamide, phenothiazines, fluoxetine, vincristine, and cisplatin—important drugs that cause SIADH
- Anorexia
- Schizophrenia

Clinical presentation
- Hypervolemic state.
- Depending on the magnitude and rate of development, hyponatremia may or may not cause symptoms.
- Anorexia, nausea, and malaise are early symptoms when the serum Na+ level is less than 125 mEq/L.
- Headache, muscle cramps, irritability, drowsiness, confusion, weakness, seizures, and coma can occur with further decrease in the serum Na.

Diagnosis
- Hyponatremia (i.e., serum Na+ < 135 mmol/L) with concomitant hypo-osmolality (serum osmolality < 280 mOsm/kg) and high urine osmolality is the hallmark of SIADH

Management
- Depending on the severity of hyponatremia and chronicity of condition.
- Correcting hyponatremia too rapidly may result in central pontine myelinolysis (CPM) with permanent neurologic deficits.
- Fluid restriction in mild cases.
- Administration of 3% hypertonic saline should be only used in severe and emergent cases.
- The objective is to raise serum Na+ levels by 0.5–1 mEq/h and not more than 10–12 mEq in the first 24 h, to bring the Na+ value to a maximum level of 125−130 mEq/L.

Cerebral Salt Wasting

Background
- Hypersecretion of atrial natriuretic peptides

Causes
- Head trauma, hydrocephalus, neurosurgery, cranial irradiation, hypothalamic/pituitary neoplasms, cerebral vascular accident, and brain death

Presentation
- Excessive salt wasting
- Very high urinary Na
- Hyponatremia

Diagnosis
- Hypovolemic state (SIADH is euvolemic/hypervolemic)
- High urine output (SIADH is the opposite)
- Normal or high uric acid
- High atrial natriuretic peptide

Treatment
- Hydration
- Treatment of underlying cause
- If hyponatremia occurred in< 12 h rapid correction is required if serum Na < 120 mEq/L
- Serum Na should be raised only enough to make patient stable, 0.5 mEq/h (12 mEq/L/24 h)

Hyperpituitarism

Gigantism and acromegaly
- Hypersecretion of growth hormone before ossification of the epiphysis causes gigantism and after epiphyseal closure causes acromegaly.
- Prolactinoma

Prolactinoma

Background

- Prolactin-secreting tumor is the most common cause in adolescents
- Based on its size, a prolactinoma can be classified as a microprolactinoma (< 10 mm diameter) or a macroprolactinoma (> 10 mm diameter)

Clinical presentation

- Headache
- Amenorrhea
- Galactorrhea
- Visual disturbance if tumor affect the optic chiasm, e.g., bitemporal hemianopsia or total vision loss in severe cases.

Diagnosis

- Elevated serum PRL (prolactin)
- TSH and pregnancy test must be performed
- MRI: A serum PRL value of 200 ng/mL or greater in the presence of a macroadenoma (> 10 mm) is virtually diagnostic of prolactinoma.

Treatment

- *Bromocriptine*
- *Cabergoline*. Better tolerated than bromocriptine.
- Sexual maturity rating (SMR) in boys (Table 1)
- Sexual maturity rating (SMR) in girls (Table 2)

Sexual Maturity Ratings (SMRs)

Sexual development in boys (Fig. 5 and Table 1)

- Thinning of scrotum
- Increase pigmentation of scrotum
- Enlargement of testis > 3 ml or 2.5 cm
- Pubic hair
- Height acceleration occurs late at SMR 4–5 (typically age 13–14)

Sexual development in girls (Fig. 6 and Table 2)

- Breast buds
- Pubic hair
- Height acceleration peak during SMR 2–3 (typically 11–12 years)
- Menarche takes usually 2–2½ years after breast development but can take to 6 years

General considerations

- Positive relation between degree of obesity and early puberty has been reported (African American and Hispanic populations especially).
- Delayed puberty is common in gymnasts and marathon runners (lack critical adiposity).

Table 1

SMR stages	Pubic hair	Genitalia
Stage 1	Prepubertal	Prepubertal
Stage 2	Sparse, lightly pigmented at the base of the penis	Scrotum and penis enlarge slightly
Stage 3	Begin to curl, extend laterally	Testes and scrotum continue to grow
Stage 4	Coarse, curly, adult type but less in quantity	Large and darker scrotum, penis becomes large and increased in width, glans penis develops
Stage 5	Adult distribution and extends to medial thigh	Adult size scrotum and penis

SMR sexual maturity rating

Table 2

SMR stages	Pubic hair	Breasts
Stage 1	Prepubertal: no pubic hair present, fine hair may be noted	Prepubertal: juvenile breast with small flat areola and elevated papilla
Stage 2	Sparse, lightly pigmented	Small mound and areolar diameter increases
Stage 3	Increased in amount and become darker, starting to curl	Breast and areola are larger, no separation of breast contour is noted
Stage 4	Abundant, coarse, curly but less than adult	Areola and papilla form secondary mound, separation from contour is noted
Stage 5	Adult feminine triangle, extends to medial thigh	Mature, more projection of papilla, areola become part of general breast contour

SMR sexual maturity rating

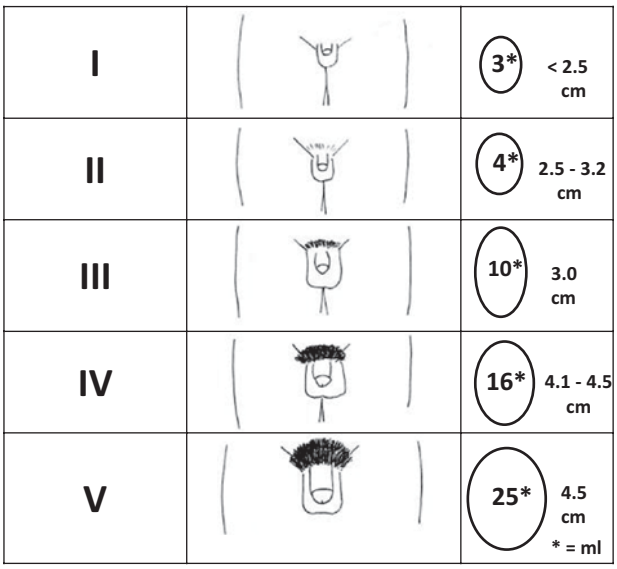


Fig. 5 Sexual maturity rating (SMR) in boys

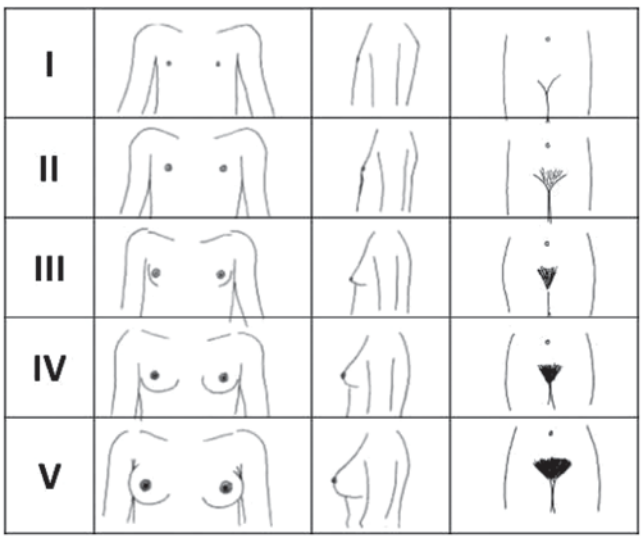


Fig. 6 SMR in girls

Precocious Puberty

Background

- Early puberty (breasts buds) are often present in girls (particularly black girls) aged 6–8 years. 8 years is typically cutoff for diagnosis however. Rarely pathologic in girls.
- For boys, onset of puberty before age 9 years is considered precocious. Often pathologic in boys.

CNS causes (central)

- Tumors (e.g., astrocytoma, gliomas, germ cell tumors secreting human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG))
- Hypothalamic hamartomas
- Acquired CNS injury caused by inflammation, surgery, trauma, radiation therapy, or abscess
- Congenital anomalies (e.g., hydrocephalus, arachnoid cysts, suprasellar cysts)

Other causes

- Adrenal tumor, CAH
- Familial male gonadotropin-independent precocious puberty
- Drugs, e.g., exposure to testosterone or estrogen

Clinical presentation

- Precocious puberty in girls < 6–8 years (consider ethnicity).
  - Breast enlargement, which may initially be unilateral.
  - Pubic and axillary hair may appear before.
  - Growth spurt and bone age advancement.
- Precocious puberty in boys < 9 years
  - Testicular enlargement, a subtle finding that often goes unnoticed by patients and parents.
  - Growth of the penis and scrotum.
  - Accelerated linear growth and bone age advancement.

Diagnosis

- Measurement of serum testosterone is useful in boys with suspected precocious puberty.
- Dehydroepiandrosterone-sulfate (DHEA-S) is usually elevated in boys and girls with premature pubarche.
- *Definitive diagnosis* of central precocious puberty may be confirmed by measuring LH (by ultrasensitive assay) levels 60 min after stimulation with a gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) analog.
- *Bone age* is a quick and helpful means to estimate the likelihood of precocious puberty and its speed of progression.
- *MRI may be indicated* to look for a tumor or a hamartoma after hormonal studies indicate a diagnosis of central precocious puberty.

Management

- Surgical resection of tumor and irradiation
- GnRH analog

McCune–Albright Syndrome (MAS)

Background

- Polyostotic fibrous dysplasia (PFD)
- Café-au-lait skin pigmentation
- Gonadotropin-independent precocious puberty

Clinical presentation
- Precocious puberty
  - Breast development
  - Vaginal bleeding (may occur before breast development)
  - Genital maturation (with or without pubic hair growth)
  - Increased height velocity
  - Macroorchidism
- Café-au-lait pigmentation
  - Segmental distribution
  - Frequently predominating on one side of the body without crossing the midline
- Polyostotic fibrous dysplasia (PFD)
  - Multiple pathologic fractures
  - Gait anomalies
  - Visible bony deformities (including abnormal bone growth of the skull), bone pain, and joint stiffness with pain
- Hyperthyroidism

Diagnosis
- Gonadotropin (i.e., LH and FSH) and gonadotropin levels stimulated by GnRH are *below* normal limits.
- Elevated T4 and suppressed TSH levels are consistent with hyperthyroidism
- Plain radiography can show multiple patchy areas of bony lysis

Management
- No specific treatment for MASs
- Treatment of precocious puberty
  - Aromatase inhibitors
  - GnRH analogues (as adjuncts to aromatase inhibitors)

Premature Adrenarche

Background
- Benign, self-limited
- Onset before age 6 years

Clinical presentation
- Early pubic hair and axillary hair development
- Increased sebaceous activity
- Adult-type body odor
- No sexual development (breast buds in girls; testicular enlargement in boys)
- Normal growth pattern

Diagnosis
- Bone age approximates chronological age or mildly advanced
- Other imaging studies are normal
- Slight increase in DHEA-S level
- Other adrenal steroid hormones are normal
- Normal sex hormones
- No CAH
- Consistent with prepubertal pattern

Management
- Reassurance

Premature Thelarche

Background
- Premature thelarche refers to isolated breast development that occurs in the first 2 years of life.
- Possible underlying cause must be investigated if it occurs after 3 years of age.

Diagnosis
- Normal bone age
- Normal genitals
- Breast tissue may persist for 3–5 years and does not progress
- All labs are normal for age

Management
- Benign condition and self-limited
- Thelarche after the first 3 years of life must be investigated

Premature Menarche

Background
- Premature menarche by itself is very rare

Differential diagnosis
- Foreign bodies
- Vulvovaginitis
- Sexual abuse

Clinical presentation
- Most girls with isolated premature menarche have only 1–3 episodes of bleeding then puberty occurs at normal time

Diagnosis
- Gonadotropin levels are normal
- Estrogen may be elevated
- Ovarian cyst may be noted

Thyroid Gland

Introduction

Location
- The thyroid gland is found in the neck, below the thyroid cartilage (which forms the laryngeal prominence or "Adam's apple").

Function
- It produces thyroid hormones, the principal ones being triiodothyronine (T3) and thyroxine (sometimes referred to as tetraiodothyronine (T4)).
- These hormones regulate the growth and rate of function of many other systems in the body.
- T3 and T4 are synthesized from iodine and tyrosine. The thyroid also produces calcitonin, which plays a role in calcium homeostasis.
- Hormonal output from the thyroid is regulated by TSH produced by the anterior pituitary, which itself is regulated by thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) produced by the hypothalamus

Congenital Hypothyroidism

Background
- Thyroid dysgenesis (aplasia, hypoplasia, or an ectopic) is the most common cause of congenital hypothyroidism
- Most common form of thyroid dysgenesis is ectopic thyroid
- Occasionally associated with thyroglossal cyst

Clinical presentation
- Most infants are asymptomatic at birth because of transplacental passage of maternal T4
- Length and weight are normal at birth but head may be larger at birth
- Prolongation of physiologic jaundice
- Poor feeding, especially sluggishness
- Somnolence and choking spells during feeding may be the first sign in the first month
- Respiratory difficulties due to large protruded tongue, apneic episodes, noisy breathing, nasal obstruction
- Cold, mottled, and dry skin
- Constipation that usually do not respond to treatment
- Umbilical hernia
- Large anterior fontanelle
- Associated congenital anomalies; cardiac is the most common
- Hypotonia

Laboratory
- High TSH and low T4
- Low to normal total T4 and TSH within reference range indicates thyroid binding globulin (TBG) deficiency (normal free T4)
- If maternal antibody-mediated hypothyroidism is suspected, maternal and neonatal anti-thyroid antibodies may confirm the diagnosis
- Thyroid ultrasound
- Thyroid scanning (many clinicians treat without imaging studies)

Treatment
- Levothyroxine given orally is the treatment of choice.
- 10–15 μg/kg/day initial dose.
- No liquid preparations of levothyroxine should be given to neonates or infants. These preparations are very difficult to keep in suspension, and the delivery of drug is inconsistent.
- No treatment is required for TBG deficiency.

Prognosis
- Early diagnosis and treatment of congenital hypothyroidism prevents severe intellectual disability (ID) and other neurologic complications.

Hashimoto, Lymphocytic Thyroiditis (Autoimmune Thyroiditis)

Background
- Hashimoto thyroiditis is part of the spectrum of autoimmune thyroid diseases (AITDs) and is characterized by the destruction of thyroid cells by various cell- and antibody-mediated immune processes.
- It is the most common cause of hypothyroidism in the USA in individuals older than 6 years.
- Girls > boys 2–3 times.
- Familial clusters of lymphocytic thyroiditis are common.

Clinical presentation (Fig. 7)
- Goiter and growth retardation (most common)
- Fatigue
- Constipation
- Dry skin
- Weight gain
- *Depression*, *dementia*, *and other psychiatric disturbances*
- Decreased school performance
- Cold intolerance
- Hair loss
- Menstrual irregularities
- Galactorrhea
- Other manifestation depending on the severity of hypothyroidism and other factors, e.g., age. (Myxedema)
  - Puffy face and periorbital edema typical of hypothyroid facies
  - Cold, dry skin, which may be rough and scaly
  - Peripheral edema of hands and feet, typically nonpitting
  - Thickened and brittle nails (may appear ridged)
  - Bradycardia
  - Elevated blood pressure (typically diastolic hypertension)
  - Diminished deep tendon reflexes and the classic prolonged relaxation phase

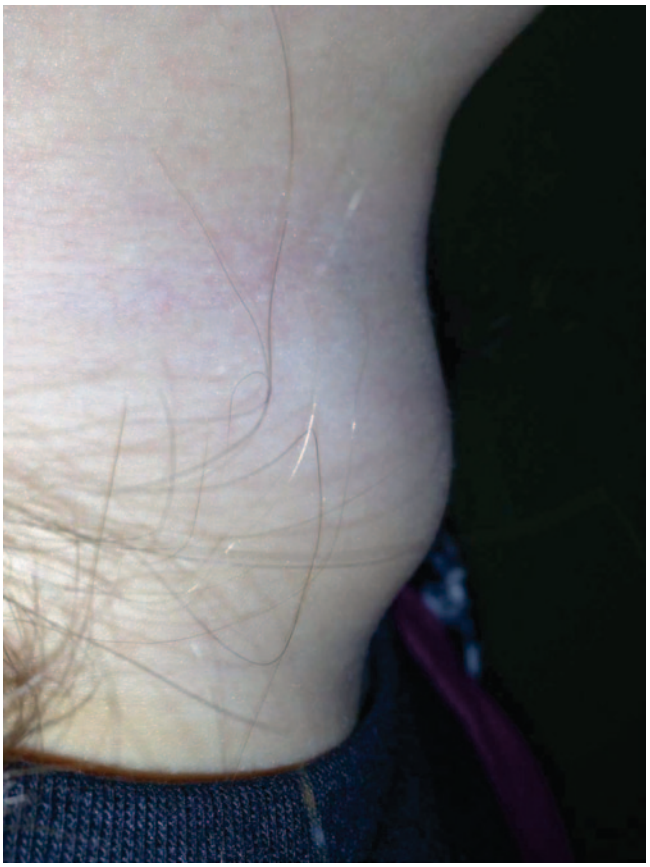


Fig. 7 Four-year-old female with thyroid enlargement, fatigue, and daytime somnolence. TSH > 150 MIU/L and free T4 < 0.4 NG/DL. Anti-TPO antibodies were very high

  - Macroglossia
  - Slow speech
  - Ataxia
- In most cases the thyroid is diffusely large, firm, and nontender
- In 30% the gland is lobular and may seem to be nodular

Diagnosis

- Thyroid function test is usually normal
- Elevated TSH and presence of thyroid autoantibodies, *anti-TPO* (anti-thyroid peroxidase) and *anti-TG* (anti-thyroglobulin) antibodies are the best markers of progression to overt hypothyroidism; however, degree of elevation does not predict severity of disease.

Management

- If there is evidence of hypothyroidism; levothyroxine can be given.
- Fine-needle aspiration of any dominant or suspicious thyroid nodules to exclude malignancy or the presence of a thyroid lymphoma in fast-growing goiters.

Subacute (de Quervain's) Thyroiditis

Background

- Subacute thyroiditis is a self-limited disease of thyroid gland
- It usually occurring after upper respiratory tract infection

Clinical presentation

- Fever
- Thyroid gland tenderness and pain

Laboratory

- Initially hyperthyroidism (elevated T4 and T3)
- Followed by more prolonged period of hypothyroidism

Management

- NSAID for pain
- Prednisone in severe cases

Prognosis

- Almost all patients recover without no thyroid problem

Graves Disease

Background

- Graves disease is the most common cause of hyperthyroidism in pediatric patients.
- It is an immune-mediated disorder that results from the production of thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulins (TSI) by stimulated B lymphocytes.
- These immunoglobulins bind to the TSH receptor to mimic the action of TSH and stimulate thyroid growth and thyroid hormone overproduction

Clinical presentation

- Weakness
- Enlarged thyroid which may cause dysphagia if very large
- Weight loss or muscle wasting
- Behavioral changes
- Diarrhea
- Palpitations
- Sleeplessness
- Heat intolerance
- Pruritus
- Exophthalmos usually mild and more common in adults
- Upper eye lid retraction
- Infrequent blinking (stellwag sign)

Laboratory

- Elevated free T4 and T3
- Suppressed TSH

- Sometime free T3 is more elevated than T4
- Anti-thyroid antibodies (TPO) are often present
- Thyrotropin receptor-stimulating immunoglobulin (TSI) confirms the diagnosis and its absence means remission.
- To differentiate between Graves disease and exogenous thyroid hormone administration, all labs are the same except *thyroglobulin* will be low in exogenous thyroid hormone and *high* in Graves disease.

Treatment
- *Methimazole* is the most common antithyroid drug used in USA
- *Propylthiouracil* (PTU) is the drug of choice in pregnant women with Graves disease
  - Sides effects of antithyroid hormone
    - *Transient urticarial rash* (the most common side effect)
    - Agranulocytosis (more common in elderly)
    - PTU associated with more cases of liver injuries
- Radioactive iodine
  - Permanent hypothyroidism almost inevitable
  - Might worsen the ophthalmopathy
  - May carry a small risk of malignancy in children
  - Pregnancy must deferred 6–12 months and mother cannot breast feed
- *Beta-blockers* to blunt the toxic effect of the circulating T4 and T3.

Treatment follow up
- Monitor the patient at 6-week to 3-month intervals with TFTs (Thyroid function test) (TSH, total T4/free T4 levels), LFTs (Liver function test), and CBC.
- Assess other potential adverse effects of the agent by history.

Neonatal Thyrotoxicosis

Background
- Due to transplacental transmission of TSH receptor immunoglobulin from the mother to the fetus.

Clinical presentation
- Irritability
- Flushing
- Tachycardia
- Hypertension
- Thyroid enlargement
- Exophthalmos

Diagnosis
- High T4 and T3
- Low TSH
- *Positive TSI* (Thyrotropin receptor-stimulating immunoglobulin)

Treatment
- Mild cases: Symptomatic treatment with a beta-blocker (e.g., propranolol) may be tried.
- More severe cases: antithyroid medications are necessary.
- In very severe cases, iodides in the form of Lugol iodine solution or saturated solution of potassium iodide (SSKI) are used.

Prognosis
- Usually resolve in 3–12 weeks

Solitary Thyroid Nodules

Background
- Thyroid nodules are much more likely to be malignant in children than they are in adults.

Diagnosis
- Child's history, including familial history and radiation exposure
- Thyroid function is usually normal
- Ultrasonography—To determine whether the nodule is cystic, solid, or mixed
- *Fine-needle aspiration/biopsy (FNAB)* is used for definitive diagnosis (study of choice)
- FNAB is not necessary or recommended in the case of toxic nodules

Management
- All solitary nodule including cold or nontoxic nodules must be biopsied.
- After initial diagnosis and investigation of the thyroid nodule, medical and/or surgical therapy is decided.
- Presumed benign nodule, especially in an adolescent, may simply be observed.
- Close observation and follow-up care is essential.

Summary
- Palpable thyroid nodule, more than or equal 1 cm on imaging, *next step*:
- Thyroid US guided fine needle aspiration.

Thyroid Cancer

Background
- Prior radiation therapy to the neck increases the risk of thyroid cancer
- More than 95% of thyroid cancers are of thyroid cell (well-differentiated) origin
- Papillary (subtype) carcinoma is the most common
- High rate of regional and distant metastasis
- Multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN) type 2 is autosomal dominant

Types of thyroid cancers
- Follicular cell origin
  - Papillary cell carcinoma
  - Follicular cell carcinoma
- Medullary thyroid cancer
  - MEN type 2:
  - MEN-2A (medullary thyroid cancer, hyperparathyroidism, and pheochromocytoma)
  - MEN-2B (medullary thyroid cancer, pheochromocytoma and mucosal neuroma)

Clinical presentation
- Most childhood thyroid nodules are asymptomatic and are detected by parents or by physicians during routine examination as a neck mass.

Diagnosis
- Biopsy will confirm the diagnosis
- Calcitonin level is elevated in medullary thyroid cancer
- Abnormal biochemical labs, e.g., elevated calcium level (hyperparathyroidism) due to associated conditions in medullary thyroid cancers (MEN type 2)

Management
- TSH suppressive therapy in children with papillary or follicular type thyroid cancer
- Surgery
- Radiotherapy
- Surveillance

Thyroid Storm

Background
- Thyrotoxic crisis is an acute, life-threatening, hypermetabolic state induced by excessive release of thyroid hormones in individual with thyrotoxicosis

Clinical presentation
- Fever (may be the only presenting symptom)
- Profuse sweating
- Poor feeding and weight loss
- Respiratory distress
- Fatigue (more common in older adolescents)
- Nausea and vomiting
- Diarrhea
- Abdominal pain
- Jaundice
- Anxiety (more common in older adolescents)
- Altered behavior
- Seizures, coma

Diagnosis
- Elevated triiodothyronine (T3), thyroxine (T4) levels
- Suppressed TSH levels

Management
- Patients with thyroid storm should be treated in an ICU setting
- Correct electrolyte abnormalities
- Propranolol to minimize sympathomimetic symptoms
- Treat cardiac arrhythmia, if necessary
- Aggressively control hyperthermia by applying ice packs and cooling blankets and by administering acetaminophen
- Consider methimazole and consult Pediatric Endocrinology.
- Consider iodine compounds (Lugol iodine or potassium iodide) orally or via a nasogastric tube to block the release of thyroid hormone (at least 1 h after starting antithyroid drug therapy)
- Consider glucocorticoids to decrease peripheral conversion of T4–T3

Hypocalcemia

Background
- Hypocalcemia is defined as a total serum calcium concentration of less than 8.5 mg/dL in children, less than 8 mg/dL in term neonates, and less than 7 mg/dL in preterm neonates.

Causes
- Early neonatal hypocalcemia (48–72 h of birth)
  - Prematurity
  - Birth asphyxia
  - Diabetes mellitus in the mother (magnesium depletion in mothers with diabetes mellitus)
  - Intrauterine growth retardation (IUGR)
- Late neonatal hypocalcemia (3–7 days after birth)
  - Exogenous phosphate load; this is most commonly seen in developing countries (phosphate rich formula or cow's milk)
  - Gentamicin use
  - Magnesium deficiency
  - Transient hypoparathyroidism of newborn
  - Hypoparathyroidism due to other causes
- Infants and children
  - Hypoparathyroidism
  - Vitamin D deficiency
  - Acquired or inherited disorders of vitamin D metabolism
  - Resistance to action of vitamin D
  - Liver diseases
  - Renal failure
  - Malabsorption
  - Pseudohypocalcemia due hypoalbuminemia

Clinical presentation
- Newborn period
  - Possibly no symptoms
  - Lethargy
  - Poor feeding
  - Vomiting
  - Abdominal distension

- Children possible presentation
  - Seizures
  - Twitching
  - Cramping
  - Laryngospasm, a rare initial manifestation
  - Tetany and signs of nerve irritability, such as the Chvostek sign, carpopedal spasm, the Trousseau sign, and stridor

Diagnosis

- Total and ionized serum calcium levels
  - A decrease in total calcium can be associated with low serum albumin concentration and abnormal pH.
- Serum magnesium levels
  - Serum magnesium levels may be low in patients with hypocalcemia, which may not respond to calcium therapy if hypomagnesemia is not corrected.
  - Severe hypomagnesemia (0.46 mmol/L) causes hypocalcemia by impairing the secretion of and inducing resistance to parathyroid hormone (PTH).
- Serum electrolyte and glucose levels
  - Low bicarbonate levels and acidosis may be associated with Fanconi syndrome and renal tubular acidosis.
- Phosphorus levels
  - Phosphate levels are increased in cases of exogenous intake
  - High phosphate may indicate
    - Endogenous phosphate loading
    - Renal failure
    - Hypoparathyroidism
  - Low phosphate may indicate
    - Phosphate levels are low in cases of vitamin D abnormalities and rickets.
- PTH levels
  - Hormone studies are indicated if hypocalcemia persists in the presence of normal magnesium and normal or elevated phosphate levels.
  - *Low PTH (or inappropriately normal) levels* suggest:
    - Hypoparathyroidism; serum calcium rises in response to PTH challenge.
  - *High PTH levels* suggest:
    - Vitamin D abnormalities
    - Pseudohypoparathyroidism (PHP)
    - Calcium levels do not rise in response to PTH challenge.
- 25-hydroxyvitamin D and 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D
- Urine calcium, magnesium, phosphorus, and creatinine levels
  - These values should be assessed in patients with suspected renal tubular defects and renal failure. Urine should also be evaluated for pH, glucose, and protein.
- *Urine calcium-to-creatinine ratio* of more than 0.3 on a spot sample in presence of hypocalcemia suggests inappropriate excretion.
- *Serum alkaline phosphatase levels* (generally elevated in patients with rickets)

Management

- Treatment of the underlying cause
- Treatment of asymptomatic patients with hypocalcemia remains controversial.
- Hypocalcemia should be treated promptly in any symptomatic neonate or older child because of the condition's serious implications for neuronal and cardiac function
- IV infusion with calcium containing solutions can cause severe tissue necrosis
- Parenteral calcium as calcium gluconate (10–20 mg of elemental calcium/kg intravenously slowly over 5–10 min, usually given as 1–2 mL/kg of 10% calcium gluconate).
- Recommended doses of elemental calcium are 30–75 mg/kg/day in three divided doses. In addition to calcium supplements, calcitriol may be necessary in doses of 20–100 ng/kg per day in 2–3 divided doses until calcium levels normalize.

Hypoparathyroidism

Background

- Hypoparathyroidism is a condition of PTH deficiency

Causes

- Iatrogenic (most common cause), e.g., secondary thyroidectomy with accidental removal of parathyroid glands
- Congenital causes, e.g., DiGeorge syndrome
- Autoimmune polyendocrinopathy-candidiasis-ectodermal dystrophy (APS 1)
- Metal overload, e.g., Wilson disease or hemochromatosis
- Maternal hypercalcemia in unborn infant may cause suppression of PTH in neonate

Clinical presentation

- Paresthesias (involving fingertips, toes, perioral area)
- Hyperirritability
- Fatigue
- Anxiety
- Mood swings and/or personality disturbances
- Seizures (especially in patients with epilepsy)
- Hoarseness (due to laryngospasm)
- Wheezing and dyspnea (due to bronchospasm)
- Muscle cramps, diaphoresis, and biliary colic
- Hypomagnesemia, hypokalemia, and alkalosis (e.g., hyperventilation), which worsen signs and symptoms of hypocalcemia
- *Hypocalcemia* may be demonstrated at the bedside by eliciting the following signs:

  - *Chvostek sign*: Facial twitching, especially around the mouth, is induced by gently tapping the ipsilateral facial nerve as it courses just anterior to the ear.
  - *Trousseau sign*: Carpal spasm is induced by inflating a blood pressure cuff around the arm to a pressure 20 mmHg above obliteration of the radial pulse for 3–5 min.

Diagnosis
- Primary hypoparathyroidism
  - *Low* (*or inappropriately normal*) PTH and *low* calcium level.
- Pseudohypoparathyroidism
  - *High* PTH (due to resistance and PTH receptor mutation) *low* calcium
- Secondary hypoparathyroidism
  - *Low* PTH and *high* calcium level
- Calcium
  - Hypoalbuminemia causes a drop in total calcium concentration, but the ionized fraction may be within the reference range.
  - Alkalosis may trigger symptoms of hypocalcemia.
- Serum magnesium:
  - Hypomagnesemia may cause PTH deficiency and subsequent hypocalcemia.
  - Exclude it in any patient with primary hypoparathyroidism.
- Serum phosphorus:
  - PTH is a phosphaturic hormone. In its absence, phosphorus levels in the blood rise
- *25-hydroxyvitamin D* to exclude vitamin D deficiency as a cause of hypocalcemia.

Management
- Correct the hypocalcemia by administering calcium and vitamin D (calcitriol).

Pseudohypoparathyroidism (PHP; Albright Hereditary Osteodystrophy (AHO))

Background

- PHP is a heterogeneous group of disorders characterized by hypocalcemia, hyperphosphatemia, increased serum concentration of PTH, and insensitivity to the biologic activity of PTH.

Genetic defect
- PHP IA
  - Account for majority of patients.
  - It is a resistance to PTH.
  - Genetic defect of the alpha subunit of stimulatory guanine nucleotide-binding protein. This factor is required for PTH bound to cell surface receptors to activate cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP).
  - It is inherited as autosomal dominant trait.
- PHP IB
  - Affected patients have normal level of G protein activity and a normal phenotype appearance.
  - These patients have tissue specific resistance to PTH but not other hormones.

PHP II
  - Rare
  - Normal phenotype appearance (no AHO)

Clinical presentation
- Hypocalcemia can present in infancy
- Tetany
- Albright hereditary osteodystrophy (AHO; PHP type 1A) characterized by:
  - Short stature
  - Stocky habitus
  - Round face
  - Brachymetacarpals (particularly the fourth and fifth digits)
  - Dimpling over the knuckles of a clenched fist due to short metacarpals
  - Brachymetatarsals
  - Intellectual disability (ID)
  - SQ calcifications

Diagnosis
- *High* serum PTH and *low* serum Ca and *high* phosphate and skeletal defect is a classic finding in Albright hereditary osteodystrophy.
- *High* serum PTH and *low* serum Ca, is either *PHP* or secondary *hyper*parathyroidism.
- Skeletal defect, normal PTH, normal Ca, normal phosphate is pseudopseudohypoparathyroidism.

Management
- All patients with severe symptomatic hypocalcemia should be initially treated with intravenous calcium.
- Administration of oral calcium and 1 alpha hydroxylated vitamin D metabolites, such as calcitriol, remains the mainstay of treatment.

Familial Hypocalciuric Hypercalcemia (Familial Benign Hypercalcemia)

Background
- Autosomal dominant condition of benign hypercalcemia
- Asymptomatic
- Usually discovered incidentally on routine labs

Diagnosis
- Hypercalcemia with calcium level > 10.2 mg/dL
- Urine calcium to creatinine ratio < 0.01 and urine calcium < 200 mg/day.
- Normal PTH and normal phosphate

Treatment
- No treatment

Hyperparathyroidism

Background
- Hyperparathyroidism is rare in children.
- *Primary hyperparathyroidism* is caused by a single adenoma and is the most common cause.
- Familial cases can occur either as part of the MEN syndromes (MEN 1 or MEN 2A)
- *Secondary hyperparathyroidism* can occur with chronic renal failure, cholestatic liver disease or iatrogenic, e.g., lithium

Clinical presentation
- Commonly present without symptoms
- Hypercalcemia
- Muscular weakness
- Bone pain
- Abdominal pain
- Acute pancreatitis
- Nephrolithiasis

Diagnosis
- Serum calcium usually > 12 mg/dL.
- Low serum phosphorus < 3 mg/dL.
- High PTH
- Normal calcitonin level

Management
- For primary hyperparathyroidism, subtotal or total parathyroidectomy is the most common choice for adults or children
- Calcitriol may help in cases with chronic renal failure,
- Treatment of acute severe hypercalcemia: Ca > 14 mg/dL.
  - IV hydration
  - Loop diuretics (e.g., furosemide) after hydration
  - Hemodialysis in severe cases

Rickets

Vitamin D Deficiency Rickets

Background
- Rickets is a disease of growing bone that is unique to children and adolescents.
- It is caused by a failure of osteoid to calcify in a growing person. Failure of osteoid to calcify in adults is called osteomalacia
- Vitamin D deficiency rickets occurs when the metabolites of vitamin D are deficient.
- Less commonly, a dietary deficiency of calcium or phosphorus may also produce rickets.

Vitamin D metabolism
- Cholecalciferol (i.e., vitamin D-3) is formed in the skin from 5-dihydrotachysterol.
- *First hydroxylation step occurs in the liver* (position 25)
  - Produces calcidiol (25-hydroxycholecalciferol)
  - 25-hydroxycholecalciferol is the best indicator of overall vitamin D status and commonly tested.
- *Second hydroxylation step occurs in the kidney* (position 1)
  - Calcitriol (1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol) is active metabolite
  - *Calcitriol* acts at three known sites to tightly regulate calcium metabolism:
    - Promotes absorption of calcium and phosphorus from the intestine
    - Increases reabsorption of phosphate in the kidney
    - Acts on bone to release calcium and phosphate.
  - Calcitriol may also directly facilitate calcification
- Calcitriol
  - Increase calcium and phosphorus in extracellular fluid.
  - Increases calcification of osteoid, primarily at the metaphyseal growing ends of bones.
- Parathyroid hormone
  - PTH facilitates the 1-hydroxylation step in vitamin D metabolism in the kidney.
  - In the vitamin D deficiency state, hypocalcemia develops, which stimulates excess secretion of PTH
  - In turn, renal phosphorus loss is enhanced, further reducing deposition of calcium in the bone.
  - Excess PTH also produces changes in the bone similar to those occurring in hyperparathyroidism
  - Early in the course of rickets, the calcium concentration in the serum decreases. After the parathyroid response, the calcium concentration usually returns to the reference range, though phosphorus levels remain low.
- Alkaline phosphatase
  - Produced by overactive osteoblast cells
  - Usually very high levels in growing children

Causes of rickets
- Nutritional deficiency still the most common causes of rickets worldwide
- Prolonged and exclusive breast feeding without vitamin D supplementation with minimal sunlight exposure.
- Intestinal malabsorption of fat
- Liver or kidney disease

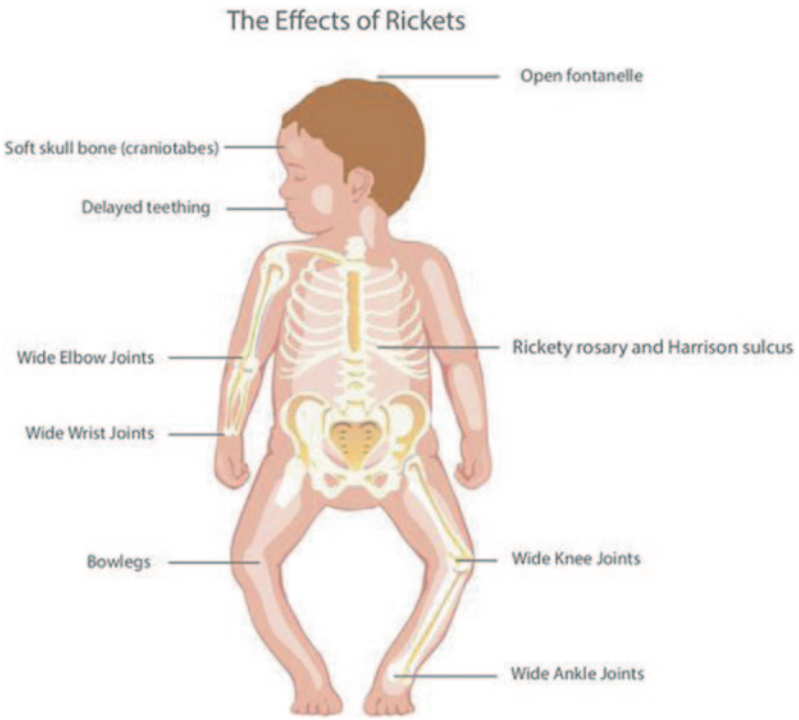


Fig. 8 Skeletal manifestation of rickets

- Anticonvulsant drugs (e.g., phenobarbital, phenytoin)
  - Accelerate metabolism of calcidiol
- Vegan diets, specially lactovegans
- Genetic defects.

Clinical presentation (Fig. 8)

- At very young ages, vitamin D deficiency is more likely to present as *hypocalcemia* than rickets
- Muscular hypotonia
- *Craniotabes* (areas of thinning and softening of bones of the skull)
- Frontal bossing and delays the closure of the anterior fontanelle
- *Bowlegs* and knock-knees on weight limbs
- *Rachitic rosary* along the costochondral junctions
- *Harrison groove* due weakened ribs pulled by muscles also produce flaring over the diaphragm
- *Kyphoscoliosis* in older children
- Knobby deformity of long bone, which is visualized on radiography as cupping and flaring of the metaphyses.
- *Marfan sign*; palpation of the tibial malleolus gives the impression of a double epiphysis
- Greenstick fracture

Diagnosis (Table 3)

- *Low to normal* calcium
- *Low* phosphorus
- *High* alkaline phosphatase
- *High* PTH
- *Low* 25-hydroxyvitamin D
- *Low to high* 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D
- *Normal* HCO3

Radiography (Fig. 9)

- Anterior view of the knee is the best site to study also the wrist and ankle
- Widening and cupping of the metaphyses
- Fraying of metaphysis
- Epiphyseal plate is widened and irregular
- Osteopenia

Management

- Indication for treatment
  - Vitamin D therapy is necessary for infants and children who manifest clinical features of hypocalcemia as a result of vitamin D deficiency or rickets and when vitamin D levels are in the deficient range.
- Vitamin D and calcium replacement
  - Vitamin D given in daily doses of 1000–10,000 IU (depending on the age of the child) can be used for a 2- to 3-month period to normalize 25(OH)-D levels and replenish stores.
  - Vitamin D dose generally 1000 IU/day for infants < 1 month old, 1000–5000 IU/day for infants 1–12 months old, and > 5000 IU/day for children > 12 months old

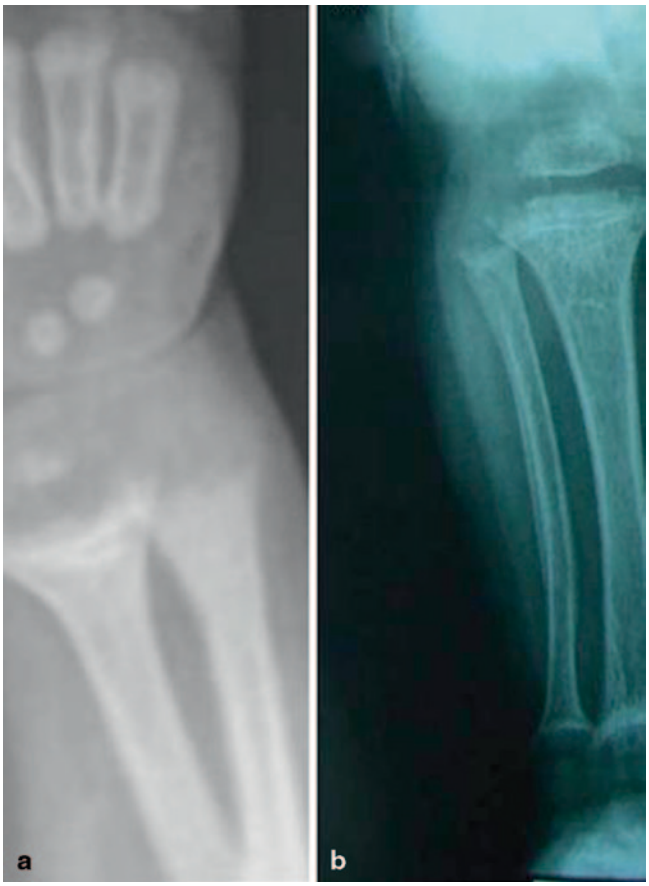


Fig. 9 Radiographs of rickets. Radiographs of the wrist (*a*) and leg (*b*) of a 3-year-old boy with nutritional rickets showing the cupping, fraying, and widening of the physis

  - With therapy, radiologic evidence of healing is observed in 2–4 weeks, after which the dose of vitamin D can be reduced to 400 IU/day.
  - Lack of compliance is an important cause of lack of response, and an option after the first month of life is to administer high doses of vitamin D in a single administration as "stoss therapy," instead of smaller doses over a longer period, followed by maintenance dosing.
  - High-dose vitamin D may need to be intermittently repeated (usually every 3 months) if poor compliance persists with maintenance dosing.
- Calcium replacement
  - Hypocalcemia should be treated with calcium supplements
  - Parenteral calcium as calcium gluconate becomes necessary in case of manifest tetany or convulsions.
  - Calcium levels should then be maintained with oral calcium supplements. Even for children who are not frankly hypocalcemic
  - Calcium supplements are important for avoiding subsequent hypocalcemia from a decrease in bone demineralization and an increase in bone mineralization as PTH levels normalize ("hungry-bone" syndrome), particularly with stoss therapy.
  - Recommended doses of elemental calcium are 30–75 mg/kg per day in three divided doses.
  - Calcitriol may be necessary in doses of 20–100 ng/kg per day in 2–3 divided doses until calcium levels normalize.
- Monitoring therapy
  - It is important to obtain calcium, phosphorus, and ALP levels 1 month after initiating therapy.
  - With stoss therapy, a biochemical response occurs in 1 or 2 weeks, the first sign of which is an increase in phosphate.
  - It is important to remember that ALP levels may actually increase in the short term as bone formation rates increase
  - Complete radiologic healing may take months, but changes are evident in 1 week.
  - In 3 months, it is important to obtain calcium, phosphorus, magnesium, ALP, 25(OH)D, and PTH levels, and one may consider obtaining a urine sample to determine the calcium/creatinine ratio.
  - A radiograph should also be repeated at 3 months.
  - 25(OH)D levels should be monitored yearly.
- When to refer
  - If radiographic evidence of some healing is not observed with vitamin D and calcium replacement in 3 months.
  - Considerations should include malabsorption, liver disease, or a lack of compliance with replacement therapy.
  - *Important to remember*: Normal levels of ALP and 25 (OH) D, very low or very high levels of 1,25 (OH)-D, and high serum urea nitrogen and creatinine levels are red flags for considering other causes of rickets (e.g., inherited forms of hypophosphatemic rickets, and vitamin D receptor mutations).
- *Orthopedic referral* if severe deformities have occurred.

Prevention of vitamin D deficiency

- Supplementation with 400 IU of vitamin D should be initiated within days of birth for all breastfed infants, and for non breastfed infants and children who do not ingest at least 1 L of vitamin D-fortified milk daily.
- Premature infants, dark-skinned infants and children, and children who reside at higher latitudes (particularly above 40°) may require larger amounts of vitamin D supplementation, especially in the winter months, and consideration should be given to supplementing with up to 800 IU of vitamin D per day. A high index of suspicion for vitamin D deficiency should be maintained for these infants and children.
- Appropriate sunlight exposure.

Table 3 Types of rickets, differential diagnosis, and common laboratory findings

Disorder	Defect	Ca	Ph	PTH	25-(OH)D	Calcitriol	ALK PHOS	Treatment
Vitamin D deficiency	Decreased Vit D	N, L	L	H	L	N, L,H	H	Vit D
VDDR type 1 1-αhydroxylase mutation	25-(OH)D can't be converted to calcitriol	N, L	L	H	N	Very L	H	Calcitriol
VDDR type 2 (abnormal receptor)	End organ resistance to Vit D	N, L	L	H	N	Very H	H	Ca
Chronic renal failure	Decrease activity of α 1 hydroxylase in the kidney	N, L	H	Very H	N	L	H	Ca and phosphate binders
Hypoparathyroidism	Low PTH	L	H	L	N	N	N	Ca and vitamin D
X-linked hypophosphatemic rickets (Vitamin D resistant) PHEX mutation	Proximal tubular defect, phosphorus wasted in the urine	N, L	L	N, H	N	N, slightly L	H	Phosphate and calcitriol
Pseudohypoparathyroidism (Gsα mutation)	PTH resistance	L	H	H	N	N	N	Ca and vitamin D
Fanconi syndrome	RTA	N	L	N	N	Slightly L or H	H	Phosphate, calcitriol or 1a-hydroxyvitamin D3

Ca calcium, *Ph* phosphorus, *PTH* parathyroid hormone, *VDDR* vitamin D-dependent rickets, *N* normal, *H* high, *L* low, *RTA* renal tubular acidosis, *25-OHD* 25-hydroxyvitamin D

Hypophosphatemic Rickets (X-linked Hypophosphatemic Rickets)

Background

- X-linked hypophosphatemic rickets is X-linked dominant disorder
- Affects both males and females

Clinical presentation

- Failure to thrive
- Hypotonia
- Reluctance to bear weight when beginning to stand or walk.
- Delayed dentition

Diagnosis (Table 3)

- Normal calcium level
- Low phosphorus
  - Concentration reference range for infants (5.0–7.5 mg/dL) is high compared with that for adults (2.7–4.5 mg/dL), e.g., 3 mg/dL is considered low in young children.
  - Hypophosphatemia can easily be missed in a baby.
- *Very high alkaline phosphatase* (significantly high).
- Normal HCO3
  - HCO3 is low in Fanconi syndrome or Oculocerebrorenal dystrophy (Lowe syndrome), i.e., non-anion gap metabolic acidosis
- Radiography
  - Same as vitamin D deficiency rickets

Management

- Calcitriol and phosphorus

Congenital Adrenal Hyperplasia (CAH)

Background

- The term CAH encompasses a group of autosomal recessive disorders, each of which involves a deficiency of an enzyme involved in the synthesis of cortisol, aldosterone, or both.

Causes

- The most common form of CAH is due to mutations or deletions of CYP21A, resulting in *21-hydroxylase deficiency*
- 17-hydroxylase deficiency
- 11-beta-hydroxylase deficiency
- 3-beta-hydroxysteroid deficiency

Clinical presentation in females

- Severe form of CAH
  - Ambiguous genitalia at birth due to excess adrenal androgen production in utero.
- *Mild forms* of 21-hydroxylase deficiency (simple virilizing adrenal hyperplasia)
  - Usually females are identified later in childhood
  - Precocious pubic hair
  - Clitoromegaly
  - Accelerated growth and skeletal maturation due to excess postnatal exposure to adrenal androgens may occur.
- *Milder deficiencies* of 21-hydroxylase or 3-beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase activity (nonclassic adrenal hyperplasia).
  - May present in adolescence or adulthood
  - Oligomenorrhea
  - Hirsutism and/or infertility

  - This is termed nonclassic adrenal hyperplasia
- Females with 17-hydroxylase deficiency
  - Phenotypically female.
  - Do not develop breasts or menstruate in adolescence because of inadequate estradiol.
  - May present with hypertension.

Clinical presentation in males
- 21-hydroxylase deficiency
  - Γενerally not identified in the neonatal period because the genitalia are normal.
- *Severe form of 21-hydroxylase deficiency* in males, (classic salt-wasting adrenal hyperplasia)
  - Usually results in salt wasting at age 1–4 weeks
  - Failure to thrive
  - Recurrent vomiting
  - Dehydration
  - Hypotension
  - Hyponatremia
  - Hyperkalemia
  - Shock
- *Mild form of 21-hydroxylase deficiency* (simple virilizing adrenal hyperplasia).
  - May present later in childhood
  - Early development of pubic hair
  - Phallic enlargement
  - Accelerated linear growth and advancement of skeletal maturation
- In male infants CAH may be misdiagnosed as pyloric stenosis
- Hypertension: associated with two forms
  - 11-hydroxylase deficiency
  - 17-hydroxylase deficiency

Diagnosis
- High serum concentration of 17-hydroxyprogesterone (usually > 1000 ng/dL)
- Salt-wasting forms:
  - Low serum aldosterone concentrations
  - Hyponatremia
  - Hyperkalemia
  - Elevated plasma renin activity (PRA)
- *Hypertensive forms* of adrenal hyperplasia (i.e., 11-beta-hydroxylase deficiency and 17-alpha-hydroxylase deficiency)
  - Suppressed plasma renin activity(PRA)
  - Hypokalemia
- Karyotype
  - It is essential in the evaluation of an infant with ambiguous genitalia to establish the patient's chromosomal sex.

Management
- Stabilization of patient with IV fluids if presenting in shock or dehydration
- IV dextrose if hypoglycemic
- IV hydrocortisone (50–100 mg/m2 or 1–2 mg/kg initial dose if signs of adrenal insufficiency, e.g., hypotension).
- Followed by 50–100 mg/m2/day IV divided every 6 h.
- Long-term treatment
  - Hydrocortisone oral
  - Fludrocortisone (0.05–0.2 mg/d PO) to patients with mineralocorticoid deficiency.
  - Oral NaCl (2–5 g/day) to infants with salt wasting form

Remember
- 11-hydroxylase deficiency
  - Non salt-wasting, *Hypertension* is the most presenting symptom, virilization, can have very large clitoris mistaken for penis
- 17-hydroxylase deficiency
  - Same like 11-hydroxylase deficiency with *hypertension* but no sex hormone or virilization in females, very rare!
- 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase deficiency
  - Can be confused with 21-OH, and 11-B with late-onset, and salt-wasting forms

Cushing Syndrome

Background
- Cushing syndrome is caused by prolonged exposure to elevated levels of either endogenous glucocorticoids or exogenous glucocorticoids.
- Endogenous glucocorticoid overproduction or hypercortisolism that is independent of ACTH is usually due to a primary adrenocortical neoplasm (usually an adenoma but rarely a carcinoma)
- Cushing syndrome in infants is most often due to functioning adrenocortical tumor.
- ACTH dependent cause bilateral adrenal hyperplasia, it is usually secondary to pituitary tumor or ectopic ACTH secreting tumor (rare in children)

Clinical presentation
- Excessive weight gain especially in the face (moon facies), supraclavicular region, upper back (buffalo hump), and torso
- Failure to grow or short stature
- Hypertension
- Purple stretch marks, easy bruising, and other signs of skin thinning.
- Proximal muscle weakness
- Depression, cognitive dysfunction, and emotional lability may develop
- Hypertension
- Diabetes mellitus or glucose intolerance
- Decreased bone density and fractures

Diagnosis
- Most common cause of Cushing syndrome in infant or very young is adrenal neoplasm
- Elevated white blood cell count greater than 11,000/mm3
- Hyperglycemia
- Hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis
- Elevated urinary free cortisol (UFC) higher than 3–4 times the upper limit of normal is highly suggestive of Cushing syndrome
- Dexamethasone suppression test if the diagnosis is unclear
- Abdominal CT scan is recommended if a primary adrenal problem is suspected
- Brain MRI if pituitary tumor is suspected

Management
- Depends on lesion and location
- Unilateral adrenalectomy for benign adrenal tumor.
- Transsphenoidal pituitary microsurgery is the treatment of choice for pituitary adenoma

Remember
- Children with obesity are usually tall
- Children with Cushing syndrome (and other endocrine causes of short stature) are obese and short

Hyperaldosteronism

Background
- Rare in children
- Primary hyperaldosteronism usually due to adrenal tumor
- Secondary hyperaldosteronism, e.g., nephritic syndrome, CHF, and liver cirrhosis

Clinical presentation
- Hypertension
- Headache
- Hypokalemia related symptoms, e.g., constipation, and weakness

Diagnosis
- Primary hyperaldosteronism
  - Elevated aldosterone level
  - Low renin level
  - Hypertension
  - Hypokalemia
- Secondary hyperaldosteronism
  - Plasma renin is elevated.

Management
- Surgical removal of adenoma
- Prednisone for glucocorticoid-suppressible hyperaldosteronism

Addison Disease

Background
- Addison disease is adrenocortical insufficiency due to the destruction or dysfunction of the entire adrenal cortex
- Idiopathic autoimmune Addison disease tends to be more common in females and children.

Associated autoimmune diseases
- Diabetes type 1
- Celiac disease, Hashimoto thyroiditis
- Graves disease
- Vitiligo
- Alopecia areata, totalis and universalis
- Premature ovarian or testicular failure
- Pernicious anemia
- Autoimmune polyglandular syndrome (APS) type 2

Other causes
- TB, sarcoidosis, histoplasmosis, blastomycosis, and cryptococcosis could involve the adrenal glands

Acute Addison disease
- Causes
  - Bilateral adrenal hemorrhage, e.g., meningococcemia
  - Failure to increase steroids in patient with adrenal insufficiency in time of stress, e.g., surgery

Clinical presentation
- Hyperpigmentation
  - It is caused by the stimulant effect of excess adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) on the melanocytes to produce melanin
- Vitiligo
- Hypotension
- Myalgias and flaccid muscle paralysis may occur due to hyperkalemia
- Acute adrenal crisis
  - Nausea, vomiting, and vascular collapse
  - Shock and may appear cyanotic and confused.
  - Acute abdomen.
  - Hyperpyrexia, with temperatures reaching 105 °F or higher
  - In acute adrenal hemorrhage, the patient, usually is in an acute care setting, deteriorates with sudden collapse, abdominal or flank pain, and nausea with or without hyperpyrexia.

Diagnosis
- Rapid ACTH stimulation test (Cortrosyn, cosyntropin, or synacthen)
- Low cortisol with elevated ACTH suggestive
- Hyponatremia
- Hyperkalemia
- Mild non-anion-gap metabolic acidosis due to the loss of the sodium-retaining and potassium and hydrogen ion-secreting action of aldosterone.

Management of adrenal crisis
- In stress situations, the normal adrenal gland output of cortisol is approximately 100 mg/m2 of BSA in 24 h
- IV access should be established urgently
- Infusion of isotonic NaCl to restore volume deficit and correct hypotension
- IV bolus of hydrocortisone and then 100 mg/m2/day divided tid-qid until resolution of crisis then consult endocrinology to discontinue or taper.

Pheochromocytoma

Background
- Pheochromocytoma is a rare catecholamine-secreting tumor that arises from chromaffin cells of the sympathetic nervous system (adrenal medulla and sympathetic chain)

Clinical presentation
- Headache is the most frequent symptom in children (75 %), followed by sweating in two thirds of patients and nausea and vomiting in half of patients
- Hypertension
- Diaphoresis
- Palpitation with or without tachycardia
- Pallor
- Nausea with or without vomiting
- Tremor
- Weakness or exhaustion
- Nervousness or anxiety
- Epigastric pain
- Chest pain
- Dyspnea
- Flushing or warmth
- Numbness or paresthesia
- Blurred vision
- Chest pain

Diagnosis
- High blood pressure or recurrent hot flushes that are indicative of blood pressure peaks
- An adrenal mass
- Family history of MEN type 2 (MEN 2) or von Hippel-Lindau disease
- Measurement of urinary catecholamines and their metabolites in a 24-h specimen:
  - Homovanillic acid (HVA)
  - Vanillylmandelic acid (VMA)
  - Epinephrine
  - Norepinephrine
- Abdominal ultrasound may detect large adrenal tumor
- CT scan of adrenal gland

Management
- Treatment of pheochromocytoma is with surgical removal and pretreatment with alpha-blockade.
- During a hypertensive crisis, immediately institute alpha-blockade with phenoxybenzamine.
- Nitroprusside also should be used for uncontrolled hypertension

Primary Hypogonadism

Causes
- Primary hypogonadism in males or vanishing testis syndrome
- Developmental anomalies associated with the genital system (e.g., hypospadias, micropenis, and cryptorchidism)
- Mumps orchitis, trauma, radiation exposure of the head or testes, and chemotherapy can cause testicular failure
- Spironolactone, cyproterone, marijuana, heroin, and methadone can inhibit the synthesis of testosterone
- Klinefelter syndrome

Clinical presentation
- In infants boys abnormally small testis
- Failure to develop secondary sexual characteristics
- Eunuchoid body habitus

Diagnosis
- Elevated FSH and LH

Klinefelter Syndrome (See Genetics Chapter for More Details)

Background
- Most common major sexual differentiation abnormality
- 47,XXY Karyotype
- Abnormalities of nondisjunction during meiosis

Clinical presentation
- Male breast cancer
- Mild intellectual disability (ID)
- Small penis
- Testes are small and firm (usually < 2 cm or 2 ml)
- Azoospermia
- Gynecomastia
- Decreased facial hair but the pubic hair is abundant

Diagnosis
- Karyotype
- Elevated FSH and LH
- Low level inhibin B
- Increase estradiol to testosterone ratio

Management
- Testosterone replacement after age 11 years (IM, or transdermal)
  - Testosterone 25–50 mg IM every 3–4 weeks
  - Increase the dose by 50 mg q 6–9 months
  - Goal: 200–250 mg every 3–4 weeks
- Breast cancer surveillance

Gynecomastia

Background
- Gynecomastia is a benign enlargement of the male breast (usually bilateral but sometimes unilateral) resulting from a proliferation of the glandular component of the breast.
- Presence of a rubbery or firm mass extending concentrically from the nipples.
- Gynecomastia should be differentiated from pseudogynecomastia (lipomastia), which is characterized by fat deposition without glandular proliferation.
- Common in adolescence

Causes
- Estrogen–androgen imbalance
- Pubertal (physiologic gynecomastia)
- Estrogen–androgen imbalance
- Klinefelter syndrome
- Testicular tumor
- Ectopic production of HCG, e.g., germ cell tumor
- Chronic liver disease
- Hyperthyroidism
- Adrenal tumor
- Familial gynecomastia
- Prolactinoma

Approach and considerations
- Asymptomatic and pubertal gynecomastia do not require further tests and should be reevaluated in 6 months
- Red flags:
  - Breast size greater than 5 cm (macromastia)
  - A lump that is tender, of recent onset, progressive, or of unknown duration
  - Signs of malignancy (e.g., hard or fixed lymph nodes or positive lymph node findings)
- Further investigation if abnormal underlying cause is considered

Treatment
- Generally no treatment is required for physiologic gynecomastia
- Pubertal gynecomastia resolves spontaneously within several weeks to 3 years in approximately 90 % of patients

Turner Syndrome (See Genetic Chapter for More Details)

Background
- More than 95 % of adult women with Turner syndrome are short and infertile
- 45,X chromosome

Clinical presentation
- Short stature
- Ovarian failure
- Heart murmur
  - Bicuspid aortic valve (most common heart defect)
  - Coarctation of aorta
- Hypertension
- Lymphedema at birth
- Webbed neck
- Madelung deformity
- Hypothyroidism

Diagnosis
- Karyotype: Diagnosis is confirmed by the presence of a 45,X cell line or a cell line with deletion of the short arm of the X chromosome (Xp deletion), also mosaic forms
- The buccal smear for Barr bodies is obsolete
- Y-chromosomal material should be investigated for possibility of mixed 45,X/46,XY mosaicism may have mixed gonadal dysgenesis and are at a high risk for gonadoblastoma
- LH and FSH rise to menopausal level after age of 10 years
- TSH and thyroid study must be followed due to high risk of hypothyroidism

Management
- Growth hormone to improve final height
- Estrogen replacement therapy is usually required
- Estrogen is usually started at age 12–15 years after height optimized
- Treatment can be started with continuous low-dose estrogens at 12 years
- These can be cycled in a 3-weeks on, 1-week off regimen, and after 6–18 months; progestin can be added later

Polycystic Ovary Disease

Background
- Women with polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS) have abnormalities in the metabolism of androgens and estrogen and in the control of androgen production.
- PCOS can result from abnormal function of the hypothalamic-pituitary-ovarian (HPO) axis

Clinical presentation
- Menstrual dysfunction due to anovulation
- Hirsutism
- Infertility
- Obesity
- Metabolic syndrome
- Diabetes
- Obstructive sleep apnea
- Virilizing signs
- Acanthosis nigricans
- Hypertension

Diagnosis
- FSH levels are within the reference range or low.
- LH levels are elevated for Tanner stage, sex, and age.
- The LH-to-FSH ratio is usually greater than 2–3.
- Elevated testosterone (or free testosterone) level
- Recommended tests:
  - TSH and free thyroxine
  - Serum prolactin level
  - Serum hCG level
  - Glucose level
  - Insulin level
  - Lipid panel
  - 17 OH progesterone level (to exclude late onset CAH)
  - Karyotype usually excludes mosaic Turner as a cause of primary amenorrhea
- Ovarian ultrasonography
- Enlarged ovaries and cysts: may or may not be present

Management
- Diet and exercise, are considered first-line treatment for women with PCOS
- Oral contraceptive to induce regular menses
- Metformin for insulin resistance

Denys-Drash Syndrome

Background
- Occurs in 46, XY individual
- Complete mullerian ducts usually found in these patients

Clinical presentation
- Nephropathy
- Renal failure usually by 3 years of age
- Ambiguous genitalia
- Wilms tumor

Swyer Syndrome (XY Pure Gonadal Dysgenesis)

Background
- Most patient have mutation in SRY gene
- Y chromosome is cytogenetically normal
- The gonads are undifferentiated streaks

Clinical presentation
- Complete female phenotype at birth
- Presence of vagina and fallopian tubes
- At puberty no breast development and no menstruation

Prognosis
- Development of gonadoblastoma is the highest risk

Management
- Gonads must be removed as soon as the diagnosis is made

5-Alpha-Reductase Deficiency

Background
- Autosomal recessive
- Due to defect in androgen action on external genitalia
- This cause ambiguity of external genitalia
- Peripheral action of testosterone is normal

Clinical presentation
- Newborn with small penis, bifid scrotum, urogenital sinus, and a blind vaginal pouch
- Testes are in inguinal canal
- Most infants are raised as female and change to male at the time of puberty (surprise!)
- At puberty
  - Virilization occurs
  - Male hair distribution
  - Enlargement of penis and scrotum
  - Sperm formation
- Normal adult height

Androgen Insensitivity Syndrome (AIS)

Background
- It is X-linked disorder
- It is due to defect in androgen receptor gene
- All infants are 46, XY
- All infants have testes and normal testosterone levels

Clinical presentation
- Infant is phenotypically female at birth
- Most infants raised as female and identify with female gender
- External genitalia are female and the vagina ends in a blind pouch
- No uterus
- Fallopian tubes may or may not be present
- Testes are usually intra-abdominal

- At puberty breast develop normally
- No menses
- Sexual hair does not appear
- Normal male adult height
- Testosterone may be normal or high

Diabetes Mellitus

Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus

Background
- Type 1 diabetes is a chronic illness characterized by the body's inability to produce insulin due to the autoimmune destruction of the beta cells in the pancreas.
- Most pediatric patients with diabetes have type 1 and a lifetime dependence on exogenous insulin

Clinical presentation
- Hyperglycemia
- Glycosuria
- Polydipsia
- Unexplained weight loss
- Nonspecific malaise
- Symptoms of ketoacidosis
- Associated conditions: patients with type 1 DM may develop
  - Hypothyroidism
  - Celiac disease

Diagnosis
- *Diagnostic criteria* by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) include the following:
  - A fasting plasma glucose (FPG) level ≥126 mg/dL (7.0 mmol/L), *or*
  - A 2-h plasma glucose level ≥200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) during a 75-g oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT), *or*
  - A random plasma glucose ≥200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) in a patient with classic symptoms of hyperglycemia or hyperglycemic crisis
  - HgbA1C ≥6.5%
- Glycated hemoglobin
  - Measurement of HbA1c levels is the best method for medium- to long-term diabetic control monitoring.
  - New target for HgbA1C in children is <7.5%.
  - Benefits of tight glycemic control include not only continued reductions in the rates of microvascular complications but also significant differences in cardiovascular events and overall mortality.
- *Positive autoimmune markers* (glutamic acid decarboxylase [GAD], insulin islet cell, and Zn transporter antibodies)
- Blood glucose tests
  - Using capillary blood samples, reagent sticks, and blood glucose meters are the usual methods for monitoring day-to-day diabetes control.

Management
- Insulin therapy
  - All children with type 1 diabetes mellitus require insulin therapy.
  - Most require two or more injections of insulin daily, with doses adjusted on the basis of self-monitoring of blood glucose levels.
  - Insulin replacement is accomplished by giving basal insulin and a preprandial (premeal) insulin.
  - The basal insulin is either long-acting (glargine or detemir) or intermediate-acting (NPH). The preprandial insulin is either rapid-acting (lispro, aspart, or glulisine) or short-acting (regular).
- Diet and activity
  - The aim of dietary management is to balance the child's food intake with insulin dose and activity and to keep blood glucose concentrations as close as possible to reference ranges, avoiding extremes of hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia.
  - *Carbohydrates*—Should provide 50–55% of daily energy intake; no more than 10% of carbohydrates should be from sucrose or other refined carbohydrates
  - *Fat*—Should provide 30–35% of daily energy intake
  - *Protein*—Should provide 10–15% of daily energy intake
- Exercise
  - Exercise is an important aspect of diabetes management.
  - It has real benefits for a child with diabetes.
  - Patients should be encouraged to exercise regularly.

Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus

Background
- Type 2 diabetes mellitus characterized by:
  - Hyperglycemia
  - Insulin resistance
  - Family history of type 2 diabetes in first- or second-degree relative
- Obesity strongly associated with type 2 in children and adolescents

Clinical presentation
- Slow and insidious onset
- Signs of insulin resistance, e.g., Acanthosis nigricans
- Strong family history of type 2 diabetes: Familial lifestyle risk factors leading to obesity may be present, family history of cardiovascular disease or metabolic syndrome
- Polycystic ovary syndrome
- Hypertension
- Retinopathy

Diagnosis
- Testing for type 2 diabetes should be considered when a patient is overweight and has any two of the following:

  - Family history of type 2 diabetes in first- or second-degree relative
  - Signs of insulin resistance or conditions associated with insulin resistance (e.g., acanthosis nigricans, hypertension, dyslipidemia, PCOS)
- A random plasma glucose concentration of 200 mg/dL or greater in association with polyuria, polydipsia, or unexplained weight loss
- FPG value of 126 mg/dL or greater or a 2-h plasma glucose value of 200 mg/dL or greater during an OGTT is also diagnostic of diabetes
- HbA1c levels > 6.5 %
- *Other laboratory results* that usually suggest type 2 diabetes are as follows:
  - Elevated fasting C-peptide level.
  - Elevated fasting insulin level.
  - Absence of autoimmune markers (see type 1 DM section)

Management
- Diabetes education and lifestyle changes (diet, exercise, and weight control)
- Pharmacologic therapy with *metformin* (drug of choice)
- Insulin is usually required in cases not controlled by pharmacologic agents alone.
- Lipid-lowering agents and blood pressure medications to achieve cardioprotection, if necessary
- Improvement of glycemia (HbA1c) levels (< 7 %)., dyslipidemia (LDL level < 100 mg/dL, triglyceride < 150 mg/dL, HDL level > 35 mg/Dl), and hypertension (blood pressure < 95th percentile for age, sex, and height)
- Weight management

Follow up
- Microalbuminuria and fasting lipid profile (annually)
- Dilated eye examination (annually)
- Blood pressure evaluation and careful neurologic examination (at each clinic visit)

Diabetes Ketoacidosis

Background
- Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) is a severe insulin deficiency state causes metabolic acidosis and dehydration
- DKA is the most common cause of death in children who have type 1 diabetes.
- Cerebral edema is responsible for majority of deaths related to DKA in children
- Significant neurologic morbidity persists in many survivor of cerebral edema

Precipitating factors that could lead to the onset of DKA
- Infection
- Insulin omission
- Insulin pump failure
- Failure to match insulin dosing to metabolic requirements during illness or stress

Diagnosis
- Blood glucose level greater than 200 mg/dL
- Presence of serum/urine ketones
- Venous pH < 7.30 or a bicarbonate level less than 15 mmol/L.

The severity of DKA can be classified according to the severity of the acidosis
- Mild
  - Venous pH 7.21–7.30
  - Bicarbonate (mmol/L) 11–15
- Moderate
  - Venous pH 7.11–7.20
  - Bicarbonate (mmol/L) 6–10
- Severe
  - Venous pH < 7.10
  - Bicarbonate (mmol/L) < 5

Management
- Hydration is the most important first step.
  - Intravenous fluid replacement is begun as soon as the diagnosis of DKA is established.
  - Initial fluid resuscitation begins with 10 mL/kg of isotonic fluid, either 0.9 % saline or lactated Ringer solution, administered over 1 h.
  - After the initial fluid resuscitation, the remainder of the fluid deficit is replaced evenly over 48 h (most patient are 6 % dehydrated)
  - Maintenance fluid requirements are added to this deficit replacement to provide the total fluid requirements, which rarely exceed 1.5 times the usual daily fluid requirement.
  - The 0.9 % saline with added 30–40 mEq/L of potassium is continued as the hydration fluid until the blood glucose value declines to less than 300 mg/dL.
  - Replacement fluid should be changed to D5 0.45 % with added potassium when glucose value declines to less than 300 mg/dL.
  - If the blood glucose concentration declines below 150 mg/dL (8.3 mmol/L), the dextrose content may need to be increased to 10 % or even 12.5 %.

Insulin
- Time of insulin initiation is controversial
- Insulin is administered as a continuous intravenous infusion of regular insulin at a rate of 0.05–0.1 units/kg/h
- Bolus of insulin should not be given at the start of therapy
- If intravenous administration of insulin is not possible, short- or rapid-acting insulin injected intramuscularly or subcutaneously every 1 or 2 h can be effective.

Resolution of the acidosis in DKA
- Acidosis (pH > 7.3)
- Bicarbonate > 15 mEq/L.
- IV insulin therapy should continue as long as the patient still acidotic
- Decrease IV insulin rate if persistent hypoglycemia despite maximum dextrose administration.
- Subcutaneous insulin must be started before discontinuation of IV insulin when acidosis is resolved.

Monitoring
- Vital signs
- Mental status and a neurologic evaluation.
- Serum glucose, electrolytes including serum phosphorus (including blood urea nitrogen and creatinine), and pH and urine ketones should be measured at presentation.
- Serum glucose and pH should be measured hourly.
- Serum electrolytes and urine ketones assessed every 2–3 h
- If phosphate is administered, serum calcium concentrations must be monitored.

Outpatient Management of Sick Days in Patient With DM

Management steps
- Check blood glucose level every 3–4 h until feeling well
- Give a correction factor dose with rapid-acting insulin every 3–4 h based upon the blood glucose check (even if not eating)
- Check urine ketone concentrations every 3–4 h
- Encourage fluid intake. Ideally give 1 oz. (30 mL) per year of age per hour in small, frequent sips—If glucose level is ≥ 200 mg/dL, sugar-free fluids should be given—If glucose level is < 200 mg/dL, sugar-containing fluids should be included
- Anti-nausea medicine may be used.

Factors warranting medical evaluation
- Persistent vomiting (e.g., vomiting more than twice after starting sick day rules) with moderate to large urine ketone levels (or blood ketone levels greater than 1.5 mmol/L)
- Inappropriately rapid breathing
- Altered mental status
- Inability to perform sick day rules

Maturity-Onset Diabetes of Youth (MODY)

Background
- Onset between 9 and 25 years of age
- It is autosomal dominant
- Genetic defect in insulin secretion

Type of MODY
- MODY 1–MODY 6

Diagnosis
- Diagnosis has be made at least in one individual before age of 25 years
- Genetic testing are readily available

Treatment
- MODY 4–6 are treated with insulin
- MODY 1 and MODY 3 are treated with sulfonylureas
- MODY 2 is treated with diet and exercise but may require insulin during illness or pregnancy

Obesity

Background
- The most commonly used measure is body mass index (BMI)
- BMI is defined as kilograms (Kg) of body weight per height in square meter (m^2)
- Overweight: BMI between 85th and 94th percentile
- Obesity: BMI at or above 95th percentile

Causes
- Idiopathic or familial obesity
  - It is poorly understood
  - Most common cause of childhood obesity
- Hormonal e.g.,
  - Hypothyroidism
  - Growth hormone deficiency (GHD)
  - Hypogonadism
  - Cushing syndrome
  - Polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS)
- Syndromic e.g.,
  - Down syndrome
    - Hypotonia
  - Prader-willi syndrome
    - Hypotonia, hypogonadism, hyperphagia, small hands and feet
  - Albright hereditary osteodystrophy
    - Short stature and skeletal defect
  - Bardet-Biedl syndrome
    - Retinal dystrophy, renal abnormalities, MR
  - Fragile X syndrome
    - Macroorchidism and large ears
- Genetic e.g.,
  - Melanocortin 4 receptor deficiency (MC4R)
  - Congenital Leptin deficiency
  - Leptin receptor defect

Definition of pediatric metabolic syndrome (International Diabetes Federation Criteria)

- *Central obesity* (required feature) > 90th percentile for age, gender, and ethnicity with waist circumference ≥ 94 cm in men or ≥ 80 cm in women
- Plus at least two of the following four clinical risk factors:
  - BP ≥ 130 mmHg systolic or ≥ 85 mmHg diastolic or drug treatment for hypertension;
  - HDL < 40 mg/dL in men or < 50 mg/dL in women or treatment for lipid abnormalities;
  - Triglyceride level ≥ 150 mg/dL
  - FPG level ≥ 100 mg/dL or previously diagnosed type 2 DM.

Obesity related conditions

- Depression, and isolation is the most common complication of obesity in children and adolescents
- Liver
  - Fatty liver infiltration (NASH) 25–83 %
  - Cholelithiasis (50 % are obese)
- Pulmonary
  - Obstructive sleep apnea
  - Metabolic alkalosis and respiratory acidosis
  - Hypoventilation
  - Pulmonary hypertension
  - Right sided heart failure
  - Obesity hypoventilation syndrome
  - Asthma
  - Renal
- Nocturnal enuresis
  - Related to obstructive sleep apnea and excess secretion of atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP)
- Cardiovascular
  - Hypertension (60 % are obese)
  - Systolic blood pressure > 95 % for age, sex, and height
  - Dyslipidemia
  - HDL < 40 mg/dL
  - LDL > 130 mg/dL
  - Triglyceride > 150 mg/dL
  - Total cholesterol > 200 mg/dL
- Musculoskeletal complications
  - Slipped capital femoral epiphysis (30–50 % are obese)
  - Blount disease or tibia vara (70 % are obese)
  - Severe leg bowing of tibia, knee pain and limp
  - Osteoporosis
  - Back pain
  - Joint pain
  - Skin
- Acanthosis nigricans (Fig. 10)
  - It is not a criteria of metabolic syndrome diagnosis.

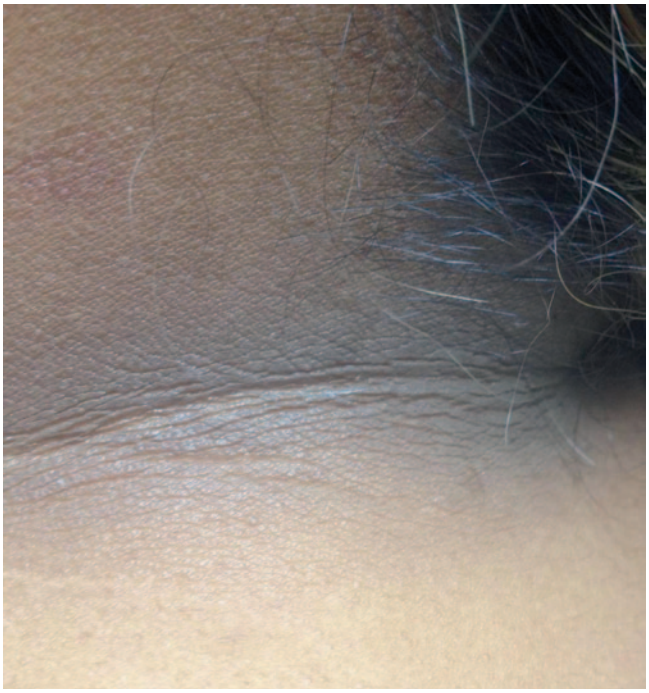


Fig. 10 Seventeen years old female with obesity and metabolic syndrome. Weight is 180 Ibs, height is 60 in., BMI 35th percentile, blood pressure is 140/90 mmHg. She has poorly defined, velvety hyperpigmentation of the skin around the neck

  - High concentration of insulin in obese patient may exert potent proliferative effects via high-affinity binding to IGF-1 which stimulate epidermal keratinocyte and dermal fibroblast proliferation.

Management

- Multidisciplinary approach
- Weight reduction
- Diet and exercise
- Management of obesity related conditions
- Treatment of the cause if applicable

Suggested Readings

1. Colao A, Di Sarno A, Sarnacchiaro F, et al. Prolactinomas resistant to standard dopamine agonists respond to chronic cabergoline treatment. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1997;82:876–83
2. Selva KA, Harper A, Downs A, Blasco PA, Lafranchi SH. Neurodevelopmental outcomes in congenital hypothyroidism: comparison of initial T4 dose and time to reach target T4 and TSH. J Pediatr. 2005;147:775–80.
3. Baloch ZW, LiVolsi VA. Fine-needle aspiration of the thyroid: today and tomorrow. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2008;22:929–39.
4. Read CH Jr, Tansey MJ, Menda Y. A 36-year retrospective analysis of the efficacy and safety of radioactive iodine in treating young Graves' patients. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2004;89:4229–33.
5. Burch HB, Wartofsky L. Life-threatening thyrotoxicosis. Thyroid storm. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am. 1993;22:263–77.

6. Flack MR, Oldfield EH, Cutler GB Jr, et al. Urine free cortisol in the high-dose dexamethasone suppression test for the differential diagnosis of the Cushing syndrome. Ann Intern Med. 1992;116:211–7.
7. Zmora E, Gorodischer R, Bar-Ziv J. Multiple nutritional deficiencies in infants from a strict vegetarian community. Am J Dis Child. 1979;133:141–4.
8. Shah BR, Finberg L. Single-day therapy for nutritional vitamin D-deficiency rickets: a preferred method. J Pediatr. 1994;125:487–90.
9. Cooke DW, Plotnick L. Type 1 diabetes mellitus in pediatrics. Pediatr Rev. 2008;29:374–85.
10. Hochberg Z, Bereket A, Davenport M, et al. Consensus development for the supplementation of vitamin D in childhood and adolescence. Horm Res. 2002;58:39–51.

Pediatric Neurology

Ivet Hartonian, Rujuta R. Bhatt and Jason T. Lerner

Abbreviations

CNS	Central nervous system
EEG	Electroencephalogram
IVIg	Intravenous immunoglobulin
SE	Status epilepticus
IV	Intravenous
ICP	Intracranial pressure
M	Male
F	Female
NSAIDS	Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
CSF	Cerebral spinal fluid
MRI	Magnetic resonance imaging
CT	Computed tomography
HC	Head circumference
VP	Ventriculoperitoneal
TORCH	Toxoplasmosis, other, rubella, cytomegalovirus, herpes
MRA	Magnetic resonance angiography
AVM	Arteriovenous malformation
MRV	Magnetic resonance venography
EMG	Electromyogram
ECHO	Echocardiogram
ECG	Electrocardiogram
CXR	Chest X-ray
CPK	Creatine phosphokinase
ADHD	Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder
OCD	Obsessive compulsive disorder
GERD	Gastroesophageal reflux disease
AChE	Acetylcholinesterase
AChR	Acetylcholine receptor
ICU	Intensive care unit
HTN	Hypertension
BP	Blood pressure
CN	Cranial nerve
URI	Upper respiratory infection
EBV	Epstein–Barr virus
ARF	Acute rheumatic fever
CHF	Congestive heart failure
PCKD	Polycystic kidney disease

I. Hartonian (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, White Memorial Pediatric Medical Group, 1700 Cesar E. Chavez Ave, Suite 3000, Los Angeles, CA 90033, USA
e-mail: ihartonian@wmpmg.com

R. R. Bhatt · J. T. Lerner
Department of Pediatric Neurology, Mattel Children's Hospital at UCLA, 10833 Le Conte, 22-474 MDCC, Los Angeles, CA 90095, USA
e-mail: RBhatt@mednet.ucla.edu

J. T. Lerner
e-mail: jlerner@mednet.ucla.edu

Seizures and Epilepsy

Classification of Seizure Types

- Simple partial seizures
  - No impairment of consciousness
  - Can have motor, sensory, or autonomic features
  - Can evolve to a complex partial seizure
- Complex partial seizures
  - Impairment of consciousness
- Both simple and complex partial seizures can secondarily generalize
- Generalized seizures
  - Absence (Petit mal)
  - Myoclonic
  - Clonic
  - Tonic
  - Tonic–Clonic (Grand mal)
  - Atonic

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_20,

Febrile Seizures

- Effects 2–5 % of children
- Most common childhood seizure type (6 months to 5 years)
- Simple febrile seizure
  - Brief generalized seizure
  - Less than 15 min
  - Does not recur within 24 h
  - Febrile illness not involving the CNS
- Complex febrile seizure
  - Can have focal features
  - Prolonged (> 15 min)
  - Recur within 24 h of febrile illness
- Evaluation
  - Depends on clinical presentation
  - Ask about vaccination history
  - Consider meningitis/encephalitis if child is very sick, there are mental status changes, meningeal signs or focal exam
  - Lumbar puncture if meningitis or encephalitis is suspected
  - Blood work for evaluation of the febrile illness, not the seizure
  - EEG not necessary for simple febrile seizure
  - Neuroimaging is also not routinely needed for simple febrile seizure

Management
- Supportive
- Treatment of underlying febrile illness

Prognosis
- Approximately 1/3 of patients will have recurrence after experiencing first febrile seizure
- Approximately 2–10 % will likely be diagnosed with epilepsy after experiencing a febrile seizure

Neonatal Seizures

Background
- Incidence of neonatal seizures in term infants is 1–3.5 per 1000 births in the USA
- The incidence is much higher in preterm infants

Causes
- Hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy
- Intracranial hemorrhage (intraventricular, subdural, subarachnoid)
- Ischemic stroke
- Infections (meningitis)
- Hypoglycemia
- Hypo- or hypernatremia
- Hypocalcemia
- Hypomagnesemia
- Related to underlying inborn error of metabolism
- Certain genetic disorders

Clinical presentation
- Often the clinical presentation is not obvious
- Subtle tonic or clonic movements of one limb
- Automatisms also possible (lip smacking)

Diagnosis
- Laboratory evaluation to look for metabolic abnormalities, hypoglycemia, or infection
- EEG
- Neuroimaging to look for underlying structural abnormality
- Jitteriness can sometimes be associated with hypoglycemia

Treatment
- Try to treat the underlying etiology such as electrolyte abnormality or hypoglycemia
- Phenobarbital

Prognosis
- The consequence of neonatal seizures is in part dependent on the underlying etiology, response to treatment, and gestational age
- There is higher mortality rate
- Depending on etiology, there can also be increased risk of developing motor and cognitive delays
- "Fifth day fits" is a subset of benign familial neonatal convulsions with seizures occurring on the fifth or sixth day of life; self-limited

Infantile Spasms

Background
- Typical age of onset is between 4 and 7 months
- Typically involve rapid flexion of the trunk, neck and extremities, followed by a tonic phase
- Often occur in clusters and in between the spasms, the child may cry
- More common after an arousal including after a nap
- West syndrome: triad of infantile spasms, hypsarrhythmia on EEG, and developmental regression

EEG—Hypsarrhythmia
- Triad of: high amplitude, disorganized background, multifocal discharges

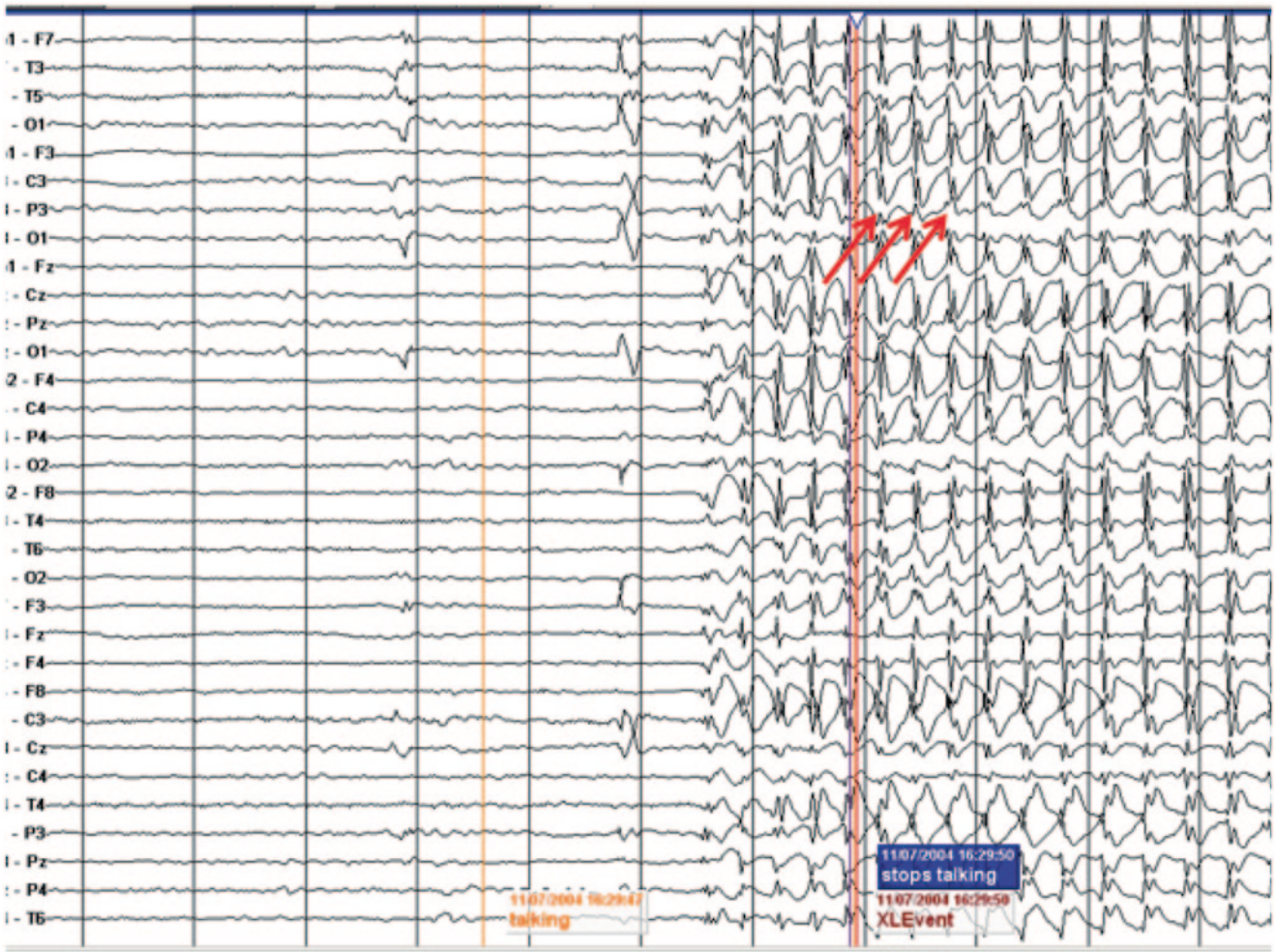


Fig. 1 Generalized 3 Hz spike-wave discharges seen in childhood absence epilepsy

Treatment
- Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)
- Vigabatrin if the spasms are symptomatic in a patient with tuberous sclerosis complex

Prognosis
- If not treated early or effectively → increased risk of developmental delay and intellectual disability

Childhood Absence Epilepsy

Background
- Typical onset between 4 and 8 years of age
- Staring and behavioral arrest
- Can have eye blinking or eye flutter
- Usually will last a few seconds with rapid return to baseline
- Typically occur daily, multiple times per day
- During brief episodes there is memory lapse → academic decline
- Often can be provoked with 2–3 min of hyperventilation

EEG
- 3 Hz generalized spike-wave discharges (Fig. 1)

Treatment
- Ethosuximide

Prognosis
- A majority will become seizure free during adolescence

Benign Epilepsy with Centrotemporal Spikes (BECTS)

Background
- Also known as benign rolandic epilepsy (BRE)
- Typical onset between 3 and 10 years of age

- Simple focal motor seizures (mostly involving the face but can spread to arm and leg, and can also secondarily generalize)
- Can also have sensory features (parasthesias) involving the corner of the mouth, cheek, or tongue
- There can be increased salivation and speech arrest
- Majority of seizure events are nocturnal
- Patients typically have normal neurocognitive development

EEG
- Focal discharges in the centrotemporal region (rolandic region) with activation during sleep over a normal background

Treatment
- Approximately 1/4 of patients will have only one seizure
- Low seizure frequency
- Because seizures are typically nocturnal and infrequent, there is no absolute indication to treat
- If treatment is considered, first-line is carbamazepine

Prognosis
- Spontaneously remits in a few years

Juvenile Myoclonic Epilepsy

Background
- Typical onset between 12 and 18 years of age
- Often present with generalized tonic–clonic seizure
- Risk factors include sleep deprivation (sleep over), stress, alcohol use
- Will often report jerking movements of the upper extremities in the mornings

EEG
- Generalized polyspike-and-wave discharges at 4–6 Hz

Treatment
- Valproic acid

Prognosis
- Life-long risk of seizures

Lennox–Gastaut Syndrome

Background
- Often have multiple seizure types (tonic, tonic–clonic, myoclonic, atypical absence, atonic "drop seizures")
- Seizures are often frequent and difficult to treat
- Begins in childhood

EEG
- Diffuse slow spike-and-wave discharges at 1.5–2.5 Hz (Fig. 2)

Treatment
- Usually requires multiple medications
- Consider ketogenic diet
- Surgical options
- Consider corpus callosotomy in patients with refractory drop seizures
- Vagal nerve stimulator placement

Prognosis
- Refractory epilepsy
- Intellectual disability

Landau–Kleffner Syndrome

Background
- Onset between 3 and 7 years of age
- Acquired aphasia after development of normal language skills
- 25% of patients do not have clinical seizures

EEG
- Spikes, sharps, and spike-and-wave discharges typically seen over bilateral temporal areas
- Presence of electrical status epilepticus during slow-wave sleep (ESES)
- Continuous spike-wave discharges during 85% of slow wave sleep

Treatment
- Anticonvulsants
- Corticosteroids
- Benzodiazepines

Prognosis
- Often clinical seizures have good response to medications
- Language recovery is variable

Rasmussen's Encephalitis

- Progressive encephalopathy, often leading to refractory partial seizures, cognitive decline, and hemiparesis
- Imaging shows eventual atrophy in the affected cerebral hemisphere
- Neuropathology possibly related to perivascular lymphocytic infiltrates (no clear explanation why it is unilateral)
- Anti-glutamate receptor antibodies have been found in patients, suggesting an autoimmune process

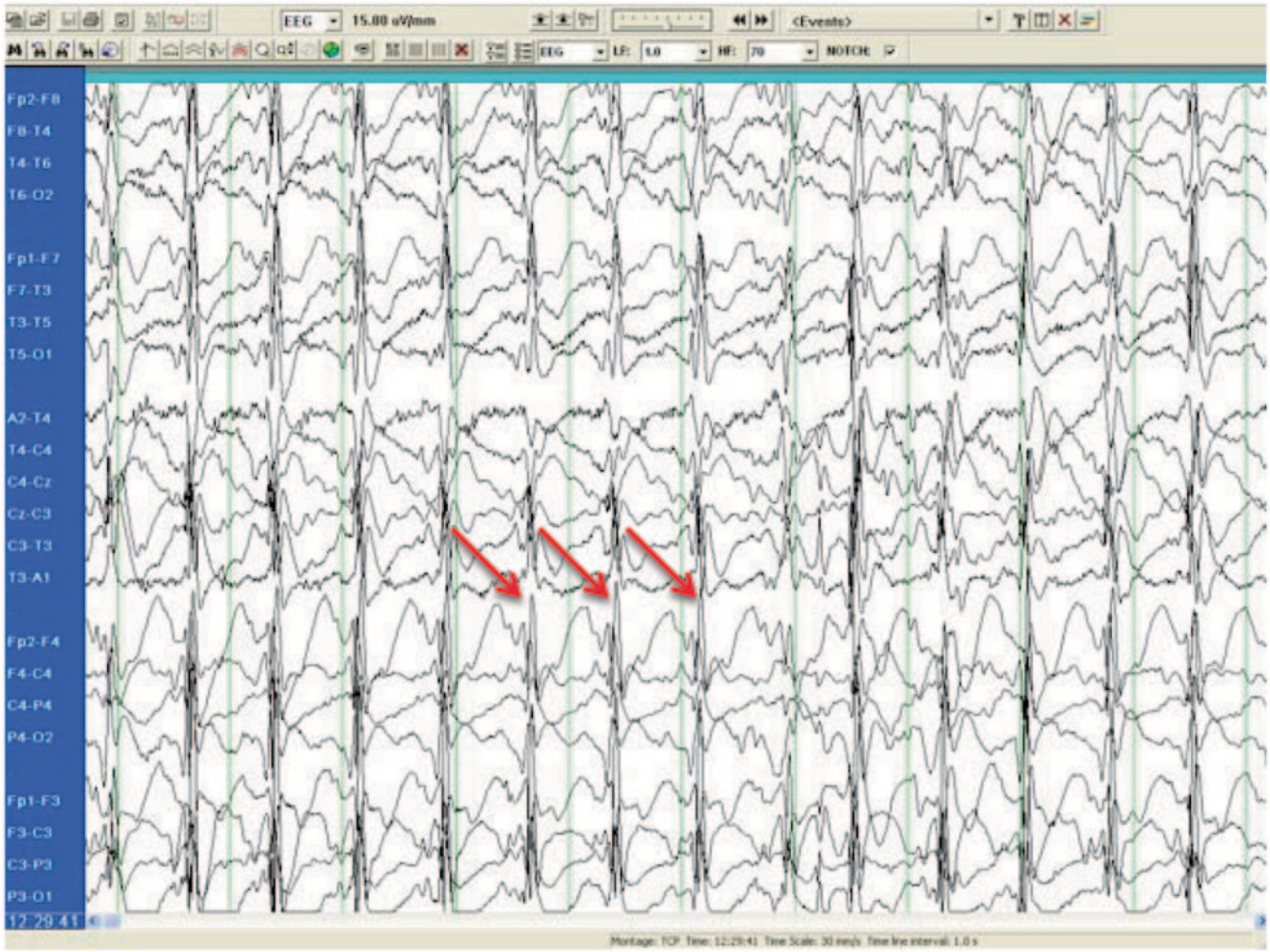


Fig. 2 Generalized 1 Hz slow spike-wave seen in Lennox–Gastaut syndrome

- Medical treatment includes high-dose steroids and IVIg (only a temporary solution as the process is progressive)
- Definitive treatment is functional hemispherectomy (disconnecting the affected cerebral hemisphere)
- Varying degrees of focal deficits are to be expected after hemispherectomy (hemiparesis, speech difficulties)

Status Epilepticus

Background

- Status epilepticus (SE) is defined as repeated seizures without regaining consciousness between attacks or prolonged seizure for at least 30 min.
- Although SE is seen throughout the lifespan, it tends to be more common in children under 1 year of age and adults older than 60 years.
- The etiology of SE is dependent on age group; 50 % of SE in children occurs with febrile illness; SE in this setting has a 5 % mortality rate.

Clinical presentation

- SE can occur with multiple seizure types
- Generalized tonic–clonic (primary or secondary generalization)
- Myoclonic (often seen following anoxic brain injury)
- Tonic (primarily in children, especially those with Lennox–Gastaut syndrome)
- Clonic (primarily in children)
- Epilepsia partialis continua (in cases of Rasmussen's encephalitis)
- Absence

Management

- Assess airway, give oxygen
- Obtain IV access
- Send blood (complete metabolic panel, complete blood count, consider toxicology screen, and antiepileptic drug levels)
- Check finger-stick glucose
- Start IV fluids
- In adults, give thiamine before giving glucose if there is hypoglycemia

- Give IV Lorazepam 0.05–0.1 mg/kg. Can repeat dose if seizures persist. Consider rectal diazepam if there is no IV access
- If seizures persist after benzodiazepine administration, then load with fosphenytoin 20 mg/kg
- Make sure patient is on cardiac monitor
- If seizures persist, patient will likely need intubation
- Consider loading with phenobarbital
- Consider midazolam drip (continuous infusion)
- Consider pentobarbital drip
- Admit patient to intensive care unit
- Urgent EEG or if possible continuous EEG monitoring
- Additional evaluations once patient is stable can include lumbar puncture if patient is febrile or infection is suspected as well as neuroimaging

Complications from SE
- Neurologic: neuronal damage, elevated ICP, cerebral edema
- Respiratory: hypoxia, aspiration, hypercapnia
- Cardiovascular: tachycardia, cardiac arrhythmia
- Renal: acute renal insufficiency, myoglobinuria, or rhabdomyolysis
- Autonomic: hyperthermia
- Metabolic: lactic acidosis, electrolyte disturbances

Prognosis
- Early mortality from SE in children is 3%
- Longer duration of SE is associated with worse outcome
- Etiology of SE is also related to prognosis

Epilepsy Mimics

Breath Holding Spells

- Typical age of onset is between 6 and 18 months
- Cyanotic breath holding episodes often triggered by emotional stimuli (anger, frustration); the breath holding occurs in expiration
- Pallid breath holding episodes often provoked by sudden fear (after injury, surprise)
- With both spells, there can be loss of consciousness followed by limpness and movements that can look similar to tonic posturing or myoclonic jerks
- By age 4, about half of the children will no longer have episodes

Sandifer's Syndrome

- Involves tonic neck extension and dystonic posturing of trunk
- Commonly associated with gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)
- The posturing is believed to be related to the discomfort from reflux
- Infants typically have normal neurologic exam and clinical history reveals a relationship between feeding and the posturing

Syncope

- Definition: brief loss of consciousness as well as postural tone secondary to a transient decrease in cerebral perfusion with rapid recovery back to baseline.
- Most common etiology of syncope is neurocardiogenic (vasovagal).
- Cardiovascular-mediated syncope includes arrhythmias (supraventricular tachycardia) and cardiac structural problems (aortic stenosis).
- If patient has recurrent syncope, family history of syncope or sudden unexplained death, then cardiology referral is indicated.

Night Terrors

- Non-rapid eye movement disorder
- A type of parasomnia
- Most commonly occur in first third of night
- Clinically can see facial flushing and agitation
- Child will have amnesia for the event
- Night terrors can occur throughout first decade of life and usually will spontaneously remit

Movement Disorders

- The movements associated with various movement disorders can be perceived as epileptic in nature
- Examples include tic disorder, sleep myoclonus, paroxysmal dyskinesia

Headache

Epidemiology
- Prevalence of headache in children up to the age of 20 years is approximately 58%.
- F:M ratio of 1.5:1 in this same age group.
- Migraines in this population are seen 7.7–7.9% in females and 6% in males.
- In young children, boys have more migraines but this reverses at puberty.
- Younger children often have more atypical symptoms.

Neurocutaneous Disorders (Table 1)

Table 1 Neurocutaneous disorders

	Genetics	Diagnosis/Findings	Common associations	Increased risk	Treatment
Neurofibromatosis Type 1	AD, Chromosome 17, most common with incidence of 1 in 3000. Onset in childhood	Made by *two* or more of the following: Six or more café au lait spots (5 mm prepubertal and 15 mm in pubertal children (hallmark of NF1) Axillary or inguinal freckling Two or more iris Lisch Nodules Two or more neurofibromas or one plexiform neurofibroma Distinctive bony lesion (sphenoid dysplasia, thinning of long bone of cortex Optic Glioma First degree relative with NF1	Learning Disabilities, Migraines, Seizures, Skeletal abnormalities: Scoliosis, Short stature	Pilocytic astrocytoma, meningioma, Leukemia	Genetic counseling, early detection of malignancies and prevention of future complications
Neurofibromatosis Type 2	AD, Chromosome 22, incidence of 1 in 40,000 Onset in adolescence	Made by *one* of the following present: Bilateral vestibular (CN VIII) schwannomas. First degree relative with NF2 *and* Unilateral vestibular schwannoma *OR* any two of the following: meningioma, schwannoma, neurofibroma, glioma, subcapsular cataracts	Hearing loss, Tinnitus, gait abnormalities	Multiple Inherited Schwannoma, Meningioma, Ependymoma	Genetic counseling, annual hearing screen, early detection of malignancies
Tuberous Sclerosis Complex	AD, Chromosome 9 or 16, incidence 1 in 6000 live births, 50% may be spontaneous mutations	Major features: Ash leaf spots (Fig. 3a), shagreen patch, periungual fibromas, facial angiofibromas (Fig. 3b), cardiac rhabdomyoma, renal and pulmonary angiomyolipomas, cortical tubers, subependymal giant cell astrocytomas (SEGA) Minor features: Dental pits, rectal polyps, bone cysts, "confetti" skin lesions, white matter radial migration lines, gingival fibromas, non-renal hamartomas, multiple renal cysts	Seizures (most common presenting symptom), intellectual disability (ID), infantile spasms	Rhabdomyomas found in 50% of cases may spontaneously regress or may lead to CHF, angiomyolipomas can lead to spontaneous pneumothorax, PCKD, intellectual disability (ID) when presenting with severe seizures	Seizure control, ECHO, and BP check/Renal US, neuroimaging every 1–3 years
Sturge Weber	Spontaneous mutation with incidence of 1 in 50,000	Facial Port Wine Stain in V1 or V2 distribution, seizures, ipsilateral cerebral leptomeningeal angioma which calcifies over time (tram-track/railroad calcifications on CT)	Intellectual disability (ID), seizures, Contralateral hemiparesis and hemianopia	Glaucoma, seizures, hemiparesis, hemiatrophy	Seizure control -may require hemispherectomy, annual eye screening

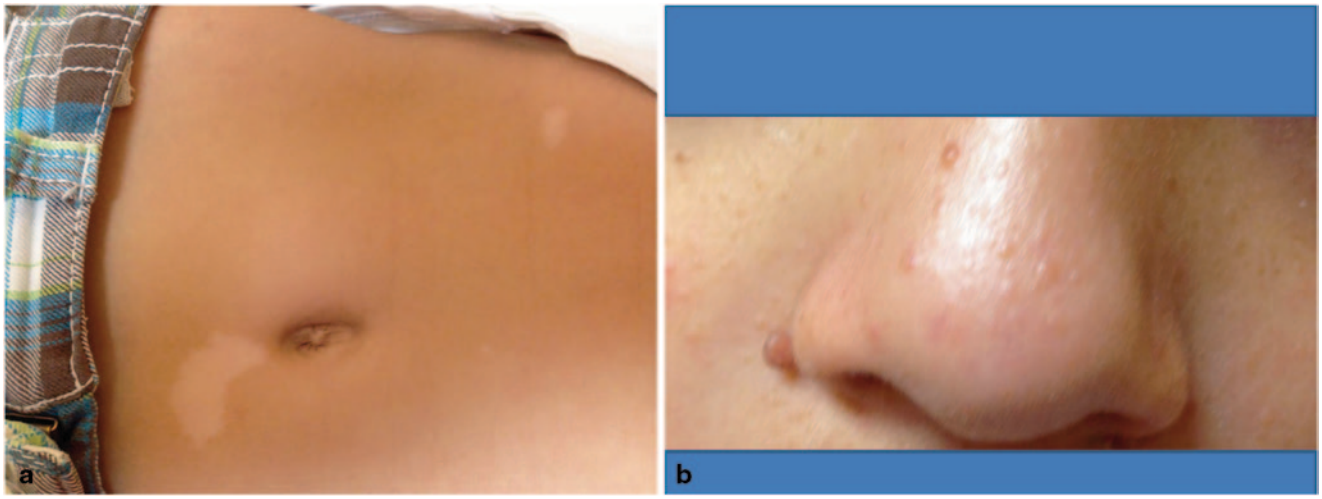


Fig. 3 **a** Typical ash leaf macules: Hypomelanotic macules round and oval in shape and vary in size from a few mm to as much as few cm in length. **b** Facial angiofibromas (adenoma sebaceum): multiple papular lesions varies in size clustered on and around the nose and cheeks

Types of headaches
- Migraine headache
- Tension headache
- Chronic nonprogressive headache
- Chronic progressive headache

Migraine Headache

Clinical presentation
- Acute intermittent headache
- Duration of pain can be 30–60 min but up to 72 h
- Bilateral or unilateral (frontal/temporal) location
- Typically has a pulsating quality
- Nausea and/or vomiting
- Photophobia and/or phonophobia
- Vertigo
- May have associated aura
- Child will typically seek a quiet and dark place to rest
- Sleep can often relieve the pain
- Periodic syndromes in children such as cyclic vomiting (recurrent bouts of vomiting) or benign paroxysmal vertigo (recurrent episodes of dizziness) often become typical migraines as child gets older

Features of aura
- Fully reversible visual symptoms
- Flickering lights, spots, lines, and even loss of vision
- Fully reversible sensory symptoms—pins and needles or numbness
- Fully reversible dysphasic speech disturbance
- Aura symptoms develop over ≥5 min
- Each symptom typically lasts ≥5 min and ≤60 min
- Headache typically develops during the aura or follows aura within 60 min

Tension Headache

- Milder headache
- Less disabling than migraine headaches
- Usually there is no nausea or vomiting
- Can have either photophobia or phonophobia but usually do not have both
- Pain often described as “band-like”
- Often responsive to over-the-counter analgesics

Chronic Nonprogressive Headache

- Also called new daily persistent headache
- Definition: headache present for ≥ 4 months for ≥ 15 days/month
- Common in adolescents
- Usually there is a normal neurologic exam
- Often there are psychosocial factors involved

Treatment
- Multidisciplinary approach is best
- Pharmacologic interventions (preventative treatment such as amitriptyline)
- Lifestyle modifications (adequate sleep, moderate exercise, regular meals)
- Biobehavioral strategies (relaxation exercises)
- Psychiatric and/or psychological interventions

Chronic Progressive Headache

- Gradual increase in frequency of headache
- Gradual increase in severity of headache
- Think increasing intracranial pressure
- Differential diagnosis includes: brain tumor, hydrocephalus, chronic meningitis, brain abscess, subdural hematoma, idiopathic intracranial hypertension (pseudotumor cerebri)

Headache "Red Flags"

Clinical presentation
- Sudden severe headache
- Occipital headache
- Early morning headache
- Pain that awakens the child from sleep
- Worsening of pain with changes in position
- Increasing frequency and intensity of headache

Physical exam
- Change in mental status
- Cranial nerve palsies
- Visual field defects
- Papilledema
- Abnormal pupillary responses
- Focal neurologic deficits
- Ataxia, gait disturbance

Diagnosis of Primary Headache Syndromes

- Clinical history
- Imaging
  - Low yield imaging in an isolated headache unaccompanied by other neurological findings
  - CT only indicated in acute cases such as high suspicion for subarachnoid hemorrhage
  - MRI indicated for chronic progressive headache, even in absence of focal neurologic symptoms
  - Typically no indication for EEG or skull films
  - No routine blood work
  - Ask about family history of headaches
  - Impact on school (days missed, drop in grades)
  - Ask about anxiety, depression, other psychiatric comorbidities
  - Ask about extracurricular activities

Treatment of Primary Headache Syndromes

General ideas
- Lifestyle modifications (regular meals, consistent sleep, exercise, hydration)
- Methods to cope with stress
- Treat pain early
- Set realistic goals

Acute treatment
- Acetaminophen
- Ibuprofen and other NSAIDs
- Triptans (only rizatriptan and almotriptan are FDA approved for pediatrics)
- Consider promotility agents as gastroparesis can delay medication absorption (prochlorperazine, metoclopramide)

Chronic treatment
- Try to use medications that will address comorbidities
- Amitriptyline for patients with sleep problems
- Topiramate for obese patients
- Avoid propranolol in patients with asthma

Alternative therapies
- Behavioral therapies (biofeedback)
- Acupuncture
- Natural supplements (magnesium, riboflavin, butterbur)

Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension

Background
- Also called pseudotumor cerebri
- Important diagnosis to consider in the differential in a patient with chronic daily headache
- Incidence of 3.5–19 per 100,000
- Majority of patients are female

Clinical features
- Often will have diffuse pounding headache
- Can also complain of neck stiffness and transient visual disturbances
- Key features of exam include papilledema and visual field testing to evaluate for an enlarged blind spot
- Neuroimaging is often normal
- Diagnostic approach includes basic CSF evaluation plus obtaining opening pressure during lumbar puncture (pressure will exceed 200 mm H_2O)
- Lumbar puncture will also often help with headache symptoms by relieving the pressure

Treatment
- Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors such as acetazolamide
- Ophthalmological follow-up if visual symptoms are prominent
- If necessary, optic nerve sheath fenestration can be performed

Malformations of the Brain

Arnold–Chiari Malformation Type I

Definition
- Herniation of the cerebellar tonsils through the foramen magnum into the cervical canal can be associated with syringomyelia but is not associated with hydrocephalus.

Symptoms
- Generally asymptomatic in early childhood. During adolescence or adult life can cause recurrent headaches, urinary frequency, neck pain, and progressive lower extremity spasticity.

Treatment
- Asymptomatic patients can be monitored clinically and with MRI to evaluate progress as needed. Symptomatic patients can undergo surgery as necessary.

Arnold–Chiari Malformation Type II

Definition
- Most common type. Cerebellar tonsillar and lower medullary herniation through the foramen magnum into the upper cervical canal. Associated with progressive hydrocephalus due to obstruction of outflow of CSF through the posterior fossa and lumbosacral meningomyelocele.

Symptoms
- Some can present in infancy with dysphagia, stridor, apnea, and weak cry. Can also present later with gait abnormalities and incoordination.

Treatment
- Clinical observation and serial MRIs to evaluate for any progression. Surgical decompression as necessary.

Lissencephaly

Definition
- Smooth brain without sulci. (Agyria refers to portions of the brain lacking gyri; Pachygyria refers to the presence of broad gyri and shallow sulci).
- Caused by incomplete or failure of neuronal migration resulting in lack of development of gyri and sulci.
- Type 1 is associated with facial dysmorphism and sometimes with deletion of chromosome 17.
- Type 2 is associated with hydrocephaly and dysgenesis of the cerebellum.

Symptoms/Exam
- Microcephaly, results in neurologic impairment.

Diagnosis/Treatment
- CT or MRI of brain, supportive care.

Polymicrogyria

Definition
- Presence of large number of small gyral convolutions separated by shallow sulci. Usually an acquired defect.

Clinical presentation
- Depends on location, extent, and severity. Seizures are common sequelae.

Diagnosis/Treatment
- CT or MRI of the brain.
- Treatment is with supportive care and treatment of seizures.

Agenesis of Corpus Callosum

Definition
- Complete or partial depending on the stage of development at which growth was arrested.
- Isolated, incidental finding in some patients.
- When accompanied by other malformations can result in severe seizures and intellectual disability.
- Chromosomal mutations (8, 9, 13, 18), inborn errors of metabolism (nonketotic hyperglycinemia, neonatal adrenoleukodystrophy, pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency), and teratogens (maternal alcohol and cocaine use).

Symptoms/Exam
- Intellectual disability, seizures, hypo- or hypertelorism.
- Aicardi syndrome: a combination of agenesis of corpus callosum, chorioretinal lacunae, and infantile spasms.
- Recurrent hypothermia (Shapiro syndrome).
- Development can be normal if it is the only neurologic manifestation.

Diagnosis/Treatment
- MRI brain, supportive care and treatment of neurologic sequelae.

Dandy–Walker Malformation

Definition
- Cystic expansion of the fourth ventricle in the posterior fossa. Majority of cases have hydrocephalus.
- Malformation is also often associated with agenesis of corpus callosum and agenesis or hypoplasia of cerebellar vermis.

Symptoms/Diagnosis
- Wide range of neurodevelopmental outcomes. Can see rapid increase in HC and prominent occiput due to hydrocephalus, cerebellar ataxia, delayed motor and cognitive development. Can also be associated with orofacial deformities, and congenital abnormalities of the cerebrovascular, gastrointestinal, and genitourinary systems.
- MRI of the brain shows cystic structure in posterior fossa.

Treatment
- VP shunt for hydrocephalus, treatment of neurologic sequelae.

Disorders of Head Growth

Microcephaly

Definition
- Head circumference > 2 standard deviations below the mean for age and gender

Etiology
- Primary—genetic syndromes, chromosomal abnormalities (trisomy 13, 18, 21)
- Secondary (Acquired)
  - Intrauterine infection—TORCH
  - Postnatal infections—meningitis, encephalitis
  - Hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy
  - Stroke
  - Traumatic brain injury
  - Malnutrition

Diagnosis
- Ask about family history
- Obtain TORCH titers
- Consider karyotype
- Neuroimaging

Treatment
- Genetic counseling
- Monitor for developmental delays (refer for appropriate interventions such as physical, occupational, and speech therapy)

Macrocephaly

Definition
- Head circumference >2 standard deviations above the mean for age and gender; megalencephaly (large brain)

Etiology
- Familial
- Sporadic
- Associated with neurofibromatosis, tuberous sclerosis, or achondroplasia
- Certain metabolic disorders (Alexander's disease, Canavan disease, Sotos syndrome)

Diagnosis
- Ask about family history
- Check for evidence of increased intracranial pressure (ICP)
- If concern for elevated ICP → neuroimaging

Treatment
- Treat underlying etiology
- Monitor development and refer to appropriate services if indicated

Hydrocephalus

Definition
- Disturbance of formation, flow, or absorption of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) that leads to an increase in volume within the cerebral ventricles and an elevation in ICP

Ventricular system (CSF Flow)
- Unilateral flow
- CSF is mostly made in choroid plexus within ventricles (total volume produced is about 400–500 mL/day)
- CSF flows from lateral ventricles → foramina of Monro → third ventricle → cerebral aqueduct → fourth ventricle → foramina of Lushka and foramen of Magendie → cisterna magna → reabsorbed in the arachnoid granulations

Obstructive (noncommunicating) hydrocephalus
- CSF is obstructed within the ventricular system or in its outlets to the arachnoid granulations
- Most common etiology is congenital aqueductal stenosis
- Other causes include posterior fossa tumors, Arnold–Chiari Type II malformations, Dandy–Walker syndrome

Nonobstructive (communicating) hydrocephalus
- Flow within ventricular system is intact but the cisterns and arachnoid villi cannot absorb CSF
- Typically related to accumulation of blood or infectious material
- Causes include subarachnoid hemorrhage, intraventricular hemorrhage (premature infants), meningitis

Clinical features
- Signs and symptoms of increased ICP
- Altered mental status, irritability
- In infants: full fontanel, rapid head growth, poor feeding, downward deviation of eyes (sunset sign)
- Vomiting
- Headache
- Increased tone or reflexes

Diagnosis
- Consider head ultrasound in infants (through the anterior fontanel)
- Head CT or MRI

Treatment
- If possible, treat underlying etiology
- Medical treatment with acetazolamide
- Definitive treatment is surgical with placement of ventriculoperitoneal shunt

Craniosynostosis

Definition
- Premature fusion of one or more sutures → abnormal skull shape
- Incidence is about 3.4 per 10,000 births
- Most common is closure of sagittal suture (50–60%)

Etiology
- Typically sporadic
- Secondary causes
  - Certain metabolic disorders (hyperthyroidism)
  - Storage disease (mucopolysaccharidosis)
  - Genetic disorders (Crouzon's, Apert's and Pfeiffer's syndromes)
  - Hematological disorders (thalassemia)
  - Brain malformations (holoprosencephaly, microcephaly)
  - Teratogen exposure (Valproic acid)

Diagnosis
- Palpation of skull
- Skull films
- Head CT if considering surgery

Treatment
- Surgery in moderate–severe cases to restore normal skull/facial growth and development
- Surgical intervention is mandatory if there is increased ICP

Vascular Anomalies

Stroke

Background
- Incidence is about 2–3 per 100,000 children annually
- About 1 in 4000 live births in infants

Causes
- Ischemic stroke includes congenital heart disease, coagulation disorder, infections (meningitis), sickle cell disease, vasculopathies, arterial dissection
- Hemorrhagic stroke includes congenital vascular anomalies (AVMs), brain tumors, head trauma, thrombocytopenia

Clinical presentation
- Acute onset of hemiparesis
- Seizures
- Severe headache with focal neurologic symptoms most commonly present in hemorrhagic stroke
- Additional signs and symptoms include irritability, lethargy, behavioral changes

Diagnosis
- Neuroimaging
  - CT is good in cases of hemorrhagic stroke (acute blood)
  - MRI/MRA better for evaluation of ischemic stroke
  - Conventional angiography is gold standard if noninvasive evaluation is inconclusive
  - Consider echocardiogram and hypercoagulable evaluation

Treatment
- Treat the underlying etiology
- Aspirin is the main antiplatelet agent used in children
- Neurosurgical intervention may be needed in cases of hemorrhagic stroke

Prognosis
- Mortality rates are higher with hemorrhagic stroke compared to ischemic stroke but long-term comorbidities are less common with hemorrhagic stroke
- There is low recurrence rate after neonatal stroke

Arteriovenous Malformations (AVMs)

- Result from failure of normal capillary bed development between cerebral arteries and veins
- Most are sporadic and isolated

- Tend to cause supratentorial intracranial hemorrhages
- Patients can present with sudden headache, seizures, and focal neurologic deficits if an AVM bleeds
- CT will show acute blood
- Conventional angiography will provide more detailed assessment of the AVM
- Surgical treatment often required given high recurrence rate

Vein of Galen Malformation

- Arteriovenous shunt between cerebral arteries and the vein of Galen
- Typically presents in neonatal period with high-output congestive heart failure
- There can also be progressive macrocephaly from hydrocephalus due to increasing venous pressure
- Diagnose with neuroimaging
- Treatment includes management of heart failure and embolization

Cerebral Venous Thrombosis

Background
- Incidence of about 1 in 100,000 children annually
- Highest risk is in neonatal period

Causes
- Infection, especially involving head and neck (sinusitis, mastoiditis, meningitis)
- Dehydration
- Perinatal events
- Prothrombotic disorders
- Head trauma
- Malignancy
- Cardiac disease
- Chronic systemic disease

Clinical presentation
- Diffuse neurologic deficits but can also have focal deficits
- Seizures
- Headache
- Lethargy
- Nausea/vomiting
- Signs of increased ICP

Diagnosis
- Need venous imaging
- Imaging goal should be to assess blood flow and filling defects within the venous system
- MRI/MRV is often the modality of choice in children because of lack of radiation exposure

Treatment
- Anticoagulation
- Treat underlying etiology

Epidural Hemorrhage

- Bleeding between the dura and calvarium
- In adults and children, typically results from arterial bleeding (middle meningeal artery) associated with temporal skull fracture
- In children, can also occur from venous bleeding and is not always associated with skull fracture
- A higher percentage also occurs in posterior fossa from occipital skull fracture resulting in venous bleeding with delayed symptoms
- On CT, appears as convex lens-shaped hyperdensity
- Does not cross suture lines
- Adverse effects are secondary to rapid enlargement of hematoma
- Surgical removal of hematoma required to prevent further injury
- If managed in a timely manner, recovery in children is often good

Subdural Hemorrhage

- Bleeding beneath the dura mater
- Often results from tearing of bridging veins following head trauma (accidental or nonaccidental)
- Most common intracranial birth injury
- On CT, appears as crescent-shaped hyperdensity
- Can cross suture lines
- There can be associated focal cerebral edema which can cause midline shift and lead to herniation
- Patients typically present with progressive focal neurologic deficits
- More aggressive management is needed if there is extensive edema and concern for elevated ICP
- Likely need surgical removal of hematoma

Subarachnoid Hemorrhage

- Common occurrence after traumatic brain injury
- Also common neonatal injury resulting from tearing of veins that cross the subarachnoid space
- In infants, symptoms include irritability, lethargy, poor feeding and seizures

- In older children, symptoms include headache, nausea/vomiting, neck stiffness, seizures, and altered mental status
- Blood in the subarachnoid space is irritating and can cause vasospasms resulting in infarction
- CT will show the hyperdense acute blood in sulci and fissures
- No intervention needed as it will spontaneously resolve unless there is development of hydrocephalus

Spinal Cord Disease

Tethered Cord

- Occurs when the distal part of the spinal cord is thickened and anchored in the spinal canal
- As the child grows, the distal part of the spinal cord is stretched and can become ischemic

Clinical features
- Cutaneous lesion in lower back (tuft of hair, dimple, hemangioma, lipoma)
- Lower extremity weakness, spasticity, or numbness
- Scoliosis
- Low back pain

Diagnosis
- Lumbosacral MRI

Treatment
- Transection of filum terminale

Prognosis
- Neurologic deficits are often irreversible

Spina Bifida Occulta

- Mildest form of spina bifida
- Spinal film will show incomplete closure of some vertebrae
- May see midline sacral tuft of hair or dimple on exam
- No neurological symptoms
- Often there is no need for intervention

Meningocele

- Protrusion of meninges from the back
- Does not contain nervous tissue
- Typically will not have neurological symptoms
- Treatment is surgical closure of the back

Myelomeningocele

- More severe form of spina bifida
- Broad-based defect in back with protruding sac containing meninges and spinal cord
- Neurological deficits are based on level of spinal cord involved
- Significant number of patients will develop hydrocephalus over time (more common when the lesion is in the thoracolumbar area)
- Treatment involves closure of the back as well as supportive care including placement of ventriculoperitoneal shunt if hydrocephalus develops

Transverse Myelitis

Definition
- Inflammation of the spinal cord, typically involving ≤ 3 vertebral segments. Includes both motor and sensory abnormalities.

Causes
- Postinfectious or postvaccination
- Viral myelitis
- Autoimmune vasculitis
- Spinal cord trauma

Clinical features
- Acute/subacute onset
- Thoracic cord most often involved
- Weakness and often flaccid paralysis and areflexia initially followed by spasticity and hyperreflexia
- Paresthesias common in the legs
- Sensory level
- Bowel and bladder dysfunction
- Back pain around the involved spinal segments

Diagnosis
- Spinal MRI (assess the extent of lesion)
- If lumbar puncture performed, CSF typically shows lymphocytic pleocytosis; protein may be elevated or normal; glucose is typically normal

Treatment
- Corticosteroids
- Supportive therapy

Disorders of the Neuromuscular Junction

Myasthenia Gravis

- Neonatal
  - Maternal anti-AChR antibody transferred transplacentally
  - Ptosis, feeble cry, poor suck during first few days
  - Usually resolves within 3–5 weeks
- Congenital
  - Familial, not transferred via mother
  - No antibodies, multiple subtypes
  - Can be presynaptic (packaging, release) or postsynaptic (slow-channel syndrome, etc.)
- Juvenile
  - Females > males
  - Onset > 10 years
  - Clinical symptoms include generalized weakness, fatigability of muscles, ptosis, ophthalmoplegia
  - Diagnosis can be made by edrophonium test, ice pack test, EMG (electromyography), NCS (nerve conduction study) is normal, antibodies in serum
  - Treatment can involve prednisone, anti-AChE drugs, thymectomy in severe cases, IVIg, immunosuppression

Botulism

- Toxin from *Clostridium botulinum* (anaerobe).
- Two most common sources of ingestion of spores are from honey and soil.
- Gradual onset of hypotonia, constipation, poor suck and swallow, feeble cry, sluggish pupils.

Diagnosis
- Isolation of toxin from stool, EMG-shows fibrillation potentials and decremental response on repetitive nerve stimulation.

Treatment
- Botulism immune globulin (BIG), supportive care. Many patients go on to respiratory paralysis and intubation.

Primary Muscle Disease (Myopathies)

Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy

Genetics
- X-linked recessive disorder (only affects males) resulting in an absence of dystrophin. A total of 30% of cases are spontaneous mutations. Incidence is 1 in 3500 male births.

Symptoms/Exam
- Normal newborn, develops waddling, poor head control, difficulty standing or climbing (Gower's Sign), hypertrophic calves (pseudohypertrophy), generally unable to walk after 12 years of age, death in 75% by the age of 20—dilated cardiomyopathy.

Diagnosis
- CPK elevated even prior to muscle weakness. Muscle biopsy is diagnostic. Genetic testing for dystrophin gene. EMG shows characteristic myopathic features. ECHO/EKG/CXR to evaluate cardiac function.

Treatment
- Supportive care and physical therapy. Corticosteroids are sometimes recommended to delay wheelchair use.

Becker's Muscular Dystrophy

Genetics
- Defect is at same locus as duchenne muscular dystrophy, but patients have later onset and milder course

Symptoms/Exam
- Symptom onset later than duchenne patients, but also present with pseudohypertrophy of calves and wasting of thigh muscles. Patients ambulatory until late adolescence and early adulthood. Becker's patients can also present with cardiomyopathy

Diagnosis
- CPK elevated, muscle biopsy is diagnostic. Genetic testing for dystrophin gene. ECHO/EKG/CXR to evaluate cardiac function

Treatment
- Supportive care, physical therapy

Congenital Myotonic Dystrophy

Genetics
- Autosomal Dominant. CTG trinucleotide repeat expansion of chromosome 19. Inheritance is generally from mother and symptoms become more severe with each successive generation (genetic anticipation).

Symptoms/Exam
- Hypotonia in the newborn "floppy infant," hollowing of temporal bones, tenting of upper lip, feeding issues, respiratory distress due to intercostal and diaphragmatic weakness, arthrogryposis, and some patients have cataracts.

Diagnosis
- DNA testing for CTG repeats, CPK not useful

Treatment
- Supportive care, physical therapy

Neuropathies

Acute Inflammatory Demyelinating Polyneuropathy (Guillain–Barre Syndrome, GBS)

- Post infectious polyneuropathy that results in paresthesias and *ascending symmetric peripheral neuropathy*. Early calf pain is also common. Occurs in healthy individuals, days to weeks after an antecedent illness
- Miller Fisher Variant presents with facial weakness, ophthalmoplegia, ataxia, and areflexia

Causes
- Strongest association with bacteria *Campylobacter jejuni*, also associated with *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*
- Autoimmune conditions, surgery, and vaccinations

Clinical presentation
- Weakness
  - Refusal to walk, walking on a wide base, or difficulty with running or climbing stairs.
  - Usually begins distally in the legs and ascends
  - Symmetric diminished or absent reflexes early in the course
  - Cranial nerve abnormalities are frequent; facial nerve is the most commonly affected cranial nerve, and the weakness often is bilateral
  - Paresthesias
  - Autonomic instability: arrhythmia, orthostatic hypotension, HTN, bladder dysfunction
  - Acute illness usually peaks in severity 2 weeks after onset and recovery may take weeks to months

Diagnosis
- Primarily on basis of clinical appearance. CSF shows elevated protein without an elevated cell count (albuminocytologic dissociation), EMG can take weeks to show positive findings and first abnormality is the F wave, nerve conduction studies are slow with evidence of conduction block

Treatment
- IVIg and plasmapheresis-treatment should begin as soon as clinical diagnosis is determined
- Supportive care and hospitalization until patient is stabilized and ICU care if there are symptoms of bulbar palsy, vital capacity is compromised, and/or autonomic instability

Course and prognosis
- Prognosis for childhood GBS generally is excellent
- Full recovery within 6–12 months, with the majority of those who do not recover fully having only mild disabilities

Hereditary Motor Sensory Neuropathy (Charcot–Marie–Tooth Disease)

- Most common inherited peripheral neuropathy. Group of disorders characterized by defective peripheral nerve myelination. Deep tendon reflexes are markedly diminished or absent, vibration sense and proprioception are significantly decreased. Pain and temperature sense intact

Diagnosis
  - Genetic testing, electromyography/nerve conduction study
- HMSN I: Charcot–Marie–Tooth type 1
  - *Autosomal Dominant*: Demyelinating condition. Asymptomatic until late childhood or adolescence. Palpable enlargement of nerves
- HMSN II: Charcot–Marie–Tooth type 2
  - *Autosomal dominant or recessive*: axonal condition. Onset in childhood and associated with severe wasting of calf muscles with pes cavus and wasting of dorsal interossei of hands, foot drop, ankle-foot orthosis to help with the foot drop.
- HMSN III: Dejerine–Sottas
  - *Autosomal dominant or recessive:* Onset early in infancy; delayed milestones. Peripheral nerves thicken due to myelin loss followed by remyelination in layers. Cross-section looks like onion bulb
- HMSN IV: Refsum Disease
  - *Autosomal recessive:* peroxisomal disorder. Problem of phytanic acid storage. Retinitis pigmentosa, hearing loss

Spinal Muscular Atrophy (SMA)

- Autosomal recessive condition affecting the anterior horn cell. Characterized by three different types ranging in severity. SMA Type 1 (Werdnig–Hoffman), SMA Type 2 (no eponym), SMA Type 3 (Kugelberg–Welander)

Clinical presentation
- Severe hypotonia, SMA Type 1 presents prior to 6 months of age
- Frog leg position
- Difficulty feeding
- Tongue fasciculations, atrophy with progression of disease
- No sphincter loss, sensory loss, or cognitive loss

Diagnosis
- Gene mutation screening

Management
- Respiratory, nutritional, orthopedic support

Familial Dysautonomia (Riley–Day Syndrome)

- Inherited neuropathy affecting sensory and autonomic nerves
- Symptoms
  - Insensitivity to pain, temperature dysregulation, difficulty feeding, BP instability, vomiting, sweating spells

Bell's Palsy

- Idiopathic facial nerve (CN VII) paralysis. Can occur after viral URI. Usually unilateral and self-limiting

Disorders of Movement

Ataxia

Definition
- "…disturbance in the smooth performance of voluntary motor acts" [20]

Differential diagnosis (broad spectrum)
- Infectious or postinfectious
- Posterior fossa tumors
- Neuroblastoma (opsoclonus myoclonus syndrome)
- Acute hemorrhage
- Toxic (i.e., alcohol, benzodiazepines)
- Congenital (i.e., progressive hydrocephalus, Chiari malformation, Dandy–Walker syndrome)
- Genetic and/or degenerative (i.e., ataxia telangiectasia, Friedreich ataxia, spinocerebellar ataxia)

Acute Cerebellar Ataxia

- Relatively common in children, often in second decade of life
- Most commonly associated with viral illness (varicella, EBV…)
- Thought to be due to molecular mimicry

Clinical features
- Rapid onset of ataxia, over hours to days
- Typically manifests as a gait disturbance
- Can also see ataxia when reaching for objects or dysarthria
- Mild CSF pleocytosis
- MRI may show enhancement

Prognosis
- Usually self-limiting
- May take several weeks or months for complete resolution of symptoms

Ataxia Telangiectasia

- Autosomal recessive
- Frequency of approximately 1 per 40,000 births
- Causative gene—ataxia telangiectasia mutated (ATM) gene located on chromosome 11

Clinical features
- Symptom onset by 2–3 years old
- Impairment in coordinated muscle movements involving gait, trunk, and limbs
- Progressive symptoms lead to loss of ambulation in childhood
- Movement disorder precedes the oculocutaneous telangiectasias
- Jerking eye movements and oculomotor apraxia are common
- Immunologic deficiencies—increase in sinopulmonary infections
- Cerebellar degeneration
- Increased sensitivity to radiation
- Increased risk of lymphoreticular neoplasms (leukemia, lymphoma)

Diagnosis
- Elevated levels of serum alpha-fetoprotein
- Decreased serum immunoglobulins (IgA, IgG, and IgE)

Prognosis
- Often wheelchair bound by 10 years of age
- Median survival is about 25 years

Friedreich Ataxia

- Autosomal recessive
- 98% of patients are homozygous for a GAA trinucleotide repeat expansion in intron 1 of frataxin gene (FXN)

Clinical features
- Onset of symptoms typically during early adolescence
- Progressive trunk and limb ataxia
- Muscle weakness
- Dysarthria
- Loss of deep tendon reflexes
- Upgoing plantar responses
- Sensory neuropathy (loss of vibration sense and proprioception)
- Scoliosis is common
- Cardiomyopathy
- Diabetes mellitus (seen in up to 30% of patients)

Diagnosis and management
- Specific genetic testing
- Typically wheelchair bound within ten years of symptom onset
- Supportive care with symptomatic treatment (i.e., cardiomyopathy, diabetes mellitus, scoliosis)

Tics

Definition
- Intermittent, sudden, discrete, repetitive, nonrhythmic movements or vocalizations. Tics typically occur multiple times per day. With typical tics, the anatomic location can change over time, as can the frequency, type and severity of the tics

Types
- Motor: involve skeletal muscle (simple or complex)
- Vocal: involve the diaphragm or laryngeal–pharyngeal muscles (simple or complex)
- Simple motor tics: involve a single muscle or localized group (eye blinks, facial grimacing, shoulder or head jerks)
- Simple vocal tics: throat clearing, sniffing, coughing, or grunting
- Complex motor tics (often prolonged and can appear purposeful): head shaking, trunk flexion, finger tapping, jumping
- Complex vocal tics: involve uttering words or phrases; coprolalia (uttering swear words) or echolalia (repeating the words or phrases of others)

Epidemiology
- Approximately 20% prevalence in the population
- Tends to be familial; M > F
- Typically appears in first decade of life with median age of onset being 6–7
- There is usually significant improvement by late teens or early adulthood
- Most common presenting tic is eye blinking

Clinical features
- Tics are often preceded by an urge or sensation, sometimes manifested as nonspecific anxiety
- Performing the tic relieves the urge or anxiety
- Tics can often be suppressed for short periods of time
- Tics can be exacerbated by environmental stimuli, stress, and poor sleep
- Tics typically do not occur in sleep
- Comorbid behavioral symptoms: ADHD, OCD, anxiety disorders, mood disorders, sleep disorders, conduct and oppositional behavior

Cause
- Exact pathophysiology not completely understood
- Likely involves the basal ganglia
- Most common is transient tic disorder (tics for at least 4 weeks that resolve before 1 year)
- For primary tic disorder—diagnosis is based on history plus normal neurologic exam aside from tics

Treatment
- Reassurance
- Anticipatory guidance and education
- Often no medications needed
- If sufficient morbidity—typical first line agents are alpha-2-agonists (clonidine or guanfacine)
- Behavioral therapies
- Treatment of comorbidities such as ADHD, OCD, anxiety, or mood disorders

Tourette Syndrome

Diagnostic indications
- Presence of both motor and vocal tics
- Duration of tics > 12 months
- No tic-free interval > 3 month's duration
- Age of onset < 21 years
- Tourette syndrome is one entity in a spectrum of disorders
- Coprolalia occurs in possibly < 10% of patients.

Table 2 Etiology and risk factors for cerebral palsy. Adapted from Swaiman et al. [20]

Perinatal Brain Injury	***Toxins***
Hypoxia, ischemia	In utero alcohol exposure
Asphyxia	Methyl mercury
Neonatal stroke (ischemic perinatal infarction, sinovenous thrombosis)	Congenital infections (TORCH)
Prematurity	***Postnatal***
Periventricular leukomalacia Intraventricular hemorrhage	Neonatal meningitis Bilirubin toxicity (kernicterus)
Developmental Abnormalities	***Other***
Congenital brain malformations Genetic disorders-Metabolic disorders	Male gender Multiple gestation
Prenatal	–
Maternal chorioamnionitis Intrauterine growth restriction Prothrombotic abnormalities Infertility	–

- M:F ratio of 3:1
- Associated behavioral problems: ADHD, OCD, anxiety, depression, episodic outburst (rage), learning disabilities, sleep disorders

Treatment—symptomatic
- Nonpharmacologic—variety of behavioral treatments
- Pharmacologic: (1) For milder tics—alpha-adrenergics (clonidine, guanfacine); (2) For more severe tics—typical and atypical neuroleptics
- Surgical—Deep brain stimulation

Sydenham's Chorea

Definition of chorea
- Frequent, brief, purposeless movements that flow from one body part to another that are chaotic and unpredictable
- Sydenham chorea is one of the major Jones criteria for diagnosis of acute rheumatic fever (ARF)
- Seen in 10–40 % of children with ARF
- Most common between ages 5 and 15 years
- Typically the chorea begins several weeks to months after a group A beta-hemolytic streptococcal infection
- There is gradual progression with behavioral changes (impulsivity, aggression, OCD behaviors) along with emotional lability

Diagnosis
- Clinical history and laboratory data; 25 % of patients serologically negative

Treatment
- Studies have failed to confirm benefits of treatment with IVIg, corticosteroids or plasma exchange for the presumed autoimmune process

Developmental Disorders

Cerebral Palsy (Table 2)

Definition
- A group of disorders that involve the development of movement and posture leading to limitations in activity, attributable to nonprogressive disturbances that occurred in the developing fetus or infant brain
- Incidence of cerebral palsy is approximately 2.5 per 1000 births.
- Key aspects
  - Cerebral palsy is a disorder of motor function
  - The clinical manifestations of the disorder may change over time, but the causative lesion is static
  - The lesion occurs in the brain sometime during the brain's developmental period

General manifestations of cerebral palsy
- Delayed motor milestones
- Abnormal muscle tone
- Hyperreflexia
- Hand preference before age of one: A *red flag* for possible hemiplegia
- Growth disturbances: especially failure to thrive
- Persistence of developmental reflexes
- Presence of pathological reflexes
- Failure to develop maturational reflexes such as the parachute response
- Clinical manifestations may change with maturation
- No evidence of disease progression or developmental regression

Diagnosis of cerebral palsy
- History and physical examination (including thorough neurologic exam)
- Review pregnancy and delivery records

- Neuroimaging (preferably MRI)
- Ophthalmologic and auditory evaluation
- Speech and language evaluation
- Metabolic and genetic testing should not be done routinely unless there is an atypical clinical presentation and nonspecific neuroimaging
- Electroencephalogram (EEG) if concern for seizures

Management/complications of cerebral palsy
- Family-centered care
- Multidisciplinary approach
- Symptomatic treatment of seizures
- Symptomatic treatment of spasticity (oral baclofen, baclofen pump, botulinum toxin, diazepam)
- Orthopedic management of contractures, including surgery
- Use of orthotics
- Therapies to improve functional gains and slow the progression of contractures (physical and occupational therapy)
- Learning and cognitive evaluations (speech therapy, IEP (individualized educational plan) in school, special education)
- Growth and nutrition including monitoring of swallowing and gastroesophageal reflux
- Respiratory monitoring for obstructive sleep apnea, risk of chronic aspiration, development of restrictive lung disease secondary to scoliosis
- Management of sleep problems
- Dental care—increased risk of malocclusion, dental caries, and gingivitis

Types of cerebral palsy
- Spastic
  - Hemiplegia
  - Diplegia
  - Quadriplegia
- Dyskinetic
  - Choreoathetoid
  - Dystonic
- Hypotonic
- Mixed

Spastic Hemiplegia

Causes
- Most common cause is perinatal stroke
- More commonly involving the left hemisphere (affecting right side of body)
- Represents approximately 30 % of all cases of cerebral palsy

Clinical presentation
- Early hand preference
- Difficulty using the affected hand—trouble with pincer grasp
- Growth arrest of abnormal side—more prominent in distal arm and leg
- Facial involvement is rare
- Circumduction gait with toe walking
- Signs of upper motor neuron involvement on affected side—hyperreflexia, ankle clonus, and extensor plantar response
- Seizures

Spastic Diplegia

Causes
- Most commonly seen in preterm infants
- Bilateral leg involvement and commonly may have some degree of arm impairment

Clinical presentation
- May have asymmetric impairment
- Scissoring of legs when held in vertical position
- Toe-walking in older children
- Spasticity of hip muscles may lead to femur subluxation
- Signs of upper motor neuron involvement in the legs—hyperreflexia, ankle clonus, and extensor plantar responses

Spastic Quadriplegia

Causes
- White matter damage (periventricular leukomalacia)
- Abnormal brain development
- Intracranial hemorrhage
- Hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy or asphyxia
- Kernicterus
- Perinatal CNS infections

Clinical presentation
- Generalized increase in muscle tone
- Legs involved more than the arms
- Decreased limb movements
- Difficulties in swallowing—predisposing to aspiration pneumonia
- Spasticity
- Signs of upper motor neuron involvement—hyperreflexia in upper and lower extremities, ankle clonus and extensor plantar responses
- Spasticity of hip muscles may lead to femur subluxation

Table 3 Primitive Reflexes

Reflex	Response	Age at disappearance
Sucking	Sucking response when something touches the roof of the mouth	3–4 months
Rooting	Turning the head towards the cheek being stroked	3–4 months
Stepping	Stepping movements when soles of feet touch a flat surface	6–8 weeks
Palmar grasp	Finger flexion	6 months
Plantar grasp	Toe flexion	15 months
Asymmetric tonic neck (Fencer posture)	Extension of extremities on side of head turn and flexion of extremities on the opposite side	3–4 months
Moro	Abduction of upper extremities followed by flexion	4–6 months
Parachute	Extension of arms as infant is projected toward the floor	Appears ≈8–9 months; permanent

- Flexion contractures of elbows and wrists
- Visual and hearing impairment more common in spastic quadriplegic children
- Learning and intellectual disabilities also more common
- Seizures

Dyskinetic Cerebral Palsy

Causes
- Presence of extrapyramidal signs; choreoathetoid or dystonic
- Problems with posture and involuntary movements
- Usually caused by damage or malformation of basal ganglia or cerebellum
- Often associated with hypoxic-ischemic brain injury or kernicterus

Clinical Presentation
- Choreoathetoid
  - Large-amplitude, involuntary movements
  - Athetosis usually involves the distal limbs
  - Chorea may involve the face, limbs, and possibly the trunk
  - Difficulty with speech
  - Upper motor neuron involvement
  - Seizure and intellectual disability can also be present
- Dystonic
  - Trunk muscles and proximal limbs more involved
  - Uncommon form of cerebral palsy

Rett Syndrome

- X-linked
- Mutation in *MECP2* gene
- Affects approximately 1 in 10,000 live female births
- Males with the mutation typically die before or soon after birth

Clinical Features
- Neurologic regression starting between 1.5 and 3 years of age with loss of acquired hand skills and spoken language
- Can also have autistic features with social withdrawal, decreased eye contact, and decreased response to visual and auditory stimuli
- Extreme irritability and anxiety
- After regression, there is stabilization of skills
- Severe intellectual disability (although with the severe communication impairment, accurate assessment is difficult)
- Movement abnormalities—repetitive hand stereotypies, gait (ataxia and apraxia), dystonia, axial hypotonia (initially), increased tone with rigidity (later)
- Seizures are common
- Acquired microcephaly
- GI abnormalities (GERD, constipation)
- Scoliosis
- Sleep disorders
- Bruxism

Diagnostics
- Specific genetic testing
- Abnormal EEG
- MRI initially normal but later will show generalized atrophy of the cerebral hemispheres

Treatment
- No curative treatment available
- Symptomatic treatments only (i.e., anticonvulsants for seizures, reflux medications for GERD)
- Primitive reflexes (Table 3)

Suggested Readings

1. Armangue T, Petit-Pedrol M, Dalmau J. Autoimmune encephalitis in children. J Child Neurol. 2012;27(11):1460–9.
2. Beslow LA, Jordan LC. Pediatric stroke: the importance of cerebral arteriopathy and vascular malformations. Childs Nerv Syst. 2010;26(10):1263–73.

3. Chadehumbe MA, Greydanus DE, Feucht C, Patel DR. Psychopharmacology of tic disorders in children and adolescents. Pediatr Clin N Am. 2011;58(1):259–72.
4. Delatycki MB, Corben LA. Clinical feature of Friedreich ataxia. J Child Neurol. 2012;27(9):1133–7.
5. Dodge NN. Cerebral palsy: medical aspects. Pediatr Clin N Am. 2008;55(5):1189–207.
6. Guerrini R, Pellacani S. Benign childhood focal epilepsies. Epilepsia. 2012;53(Suppl 4):9–18.
7. Jacobs H, Gladstein J. Pediatric headache: a clinical review. Headache. 2012;52(2):333–9.
8. Katz DM, Berger-Sweeney JE, Eubanks JH, Justice MJ, Neul JL, Pozzo-Miller L, et al. Preclinical research in Rett syndrome: setting the foundation for translational success. Dis Models Mech. 2012;5(6):733–45.
9. Knoch J, Kamenisch Y, Kubisch C, Berneburg M. Rare hereditary diseases with defects in DNA-repair. Eur J Dermatol. 2012;22(4):443–55.
10. Lerner JT, Matsumoto JH, Wu JY. Infantile spasms. In Sirven J, Stern J, editors. In atlas of video-EEG monitoring. New York: McGraw Hill; 2010. p. 329–40.
11. Matsumoto JH, Lerner JT. First steps to epilepsy syndrome diagnosis. In: Auvin S, Sankar R, editors. In acute seizures in children in the emergency setting. Montrouge: John Libbey Eurotext; 2013. p. 175–85.
12. Menkes JH, editor. Textbook of child neurology. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott; 2005.
13. Nussinovitch M, Prais D, Volovitz B, Shapiro R, Amir J. Post-infectious acute cerebellar ataxia in children. Clin Pediatr. 2003;42(7):581–4.
14. Roser T, Bonfert M, Ebinger F, Blankenburg M, Ertl-Wagner B. Primary versus secondary headache in children: a frequent diagnostic challenge in clinical routine. Neuropediatrics. 2013;44(1):34–9.
15. Sarnat HB. Disorders of segmentation of the neural tube: Chiari malformations. Handb Clin Neurol. 2008;87:89–103.
16. Schlaggar BL, Mink JW. Movement disorders in children. Pediatr Rev. 2003;24(2):39–51.
17. Singer HS, Mink JW, Gilbert DL, Jankovic J. Movement disorders in children. 1st ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2010.
18. Solmaz I, Izci Y, Albayrak B, Cetinalp E, Kural C, Sengul G, et al. Tethered cord syndrome in childhood: special emphasis on the surgical technique and review of the literature with our experience. Turk Neurosurg. 2011;21(4):516–21.
19. Subcommittee on Febrile Seizures. Clinical practice guidelines—febrile seizures: guideline for the neurodiagnostic evaluation of the child with a simple febrile seizure. Pediatrics. 2011;127(2):389–94.
20. Swaiman KF, Ashwal S, Ferriero DM, Schor NF, editors. Swaiman's pediatric neurology. 5th ed. Rio de Janeiro: Elsevier; 2012.
21. Waterhouse E. Status epilepticus. Continuum Lifelong Learn Neurol. 2010;16(3):199–227.
22. Williams VC, Lucas J, Babcock MA, Gutmann DH, Korf B, Maria BL. Neurofibromatosis Type 1 revisited. Pediatrics. 2009;124–33.
23. Wirrell E, Nickels KC. Pediatric epilepsy syndromes. Continuum Lifelong Learn Neurol. 2010;16(3):57–85.

Eye Disorders

Violeta Radenovich and Osama Naga

Ophthalmia Neonatorum

- Conjunctivitis occurring in the first month of life

Ophthalmia Neonatorum due to N. Gonorrhoeae

Clinical presentation
- Hyperacute conjunctivitis with hyper purulent discharge in the first 3–5 days of life

Diagnosis
- Culture and gram stain of eye discharge will reveal Gram-negative intracellular diplococci *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*
- Sepsis workup and evaluation for disseminated systemic infections is critical
- Infants should be tested also for HIV, *Chlamydia*, and syphilis

Treatment of gonococcal conjunctivitis
- Parenteral ceftriaxone 25–50 mg/kg, not to exceed 125 mg must be given immediately
- Delay in treatment can cause corneal perforation and permanent vision loss
- Frequent lavage of the fornices with normal saline is recommended
- Topical antibiotics may be indicated if there is corneal involvement

Prophylaxis
- Erythromycin topical ointment is effective prophylaxis after birth

Ophthalmia Neonatorum due to Chlamydia

Background
- Onset occurs around 1 week of age
- Associated with infantile pneumonitis

Clinical presentation
- Minimal-to-moderate mucopurulent discharge
- Eyelid edema
- Papillary conjunctivitis
- Pseudomembrane formation in tarsal conjunctiva

Diagnosis
- Culture of conjunctival scrapings, direct fluorescent antibody test, and enzyme immunoassays are also available

Management
- Oral erythromycin base or ethylsuccinate for a minimum of 14 days
- No effective prophylaxis is currently available

Acute Bacterial Conjunctivitis

Background
- Acute bacterial non gonococcal conjunctivitis is usually benign and self-limited

V. Radenovich (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 1250 East Cliff Drive, Suite 4D, El Paso, TX 79902, USA
e-mail: Drvioleta@childreneyecenter.com
e-mail:cecfrontoffice@gmail.com

O. Naga
Pediatric Department, Paul L Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, Tex 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_21,

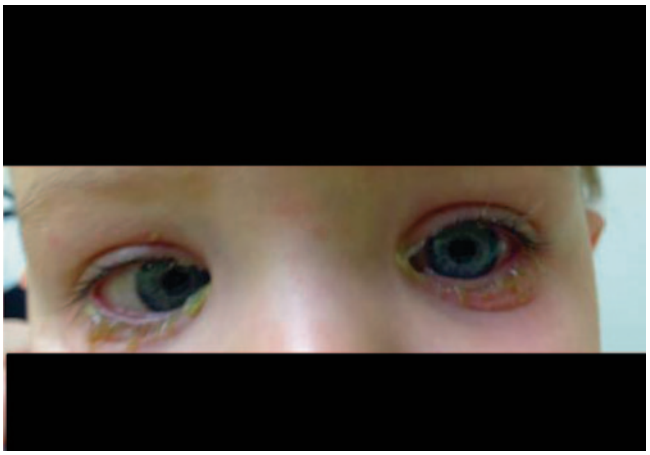


Fig. 1 Thirteen-month-old child presents with fever, bilateral eye discharge, and ear infection

Bacterial causes
- *Staphylococcus aureus*, *S. epidermidis*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Moraxella catarrhalis*, and *Pseudomonas* are common causes
- School-aged children: *S. pneumoniae Haemophilus,* and *Moraxella*

Clinical presentation
- Mild hyperemia
- Scant purulent discharge (Fig. 1)
- May have significant conjunctival injection with moderate purulent discharge

Management
- Empiric topical antibiotic agents (e.g., sulfacetamide, trimethoprim polymyxin B, tobramycin, erythromycin ointment, fluoroquinolones, azithromycin) to shorten the duration and reduce the amount of contagion of the disease
- Fourth generation fluoroquinolones (moxifloxacin, gatifloxacin, besifloxacin) have more rapid effectiveness and simplified dosing regimen, but are considerable more expensive

Parinaud Oculoglandular Syndrome

Background
- Most frequently by *Bartonella henselae* (cat-scratch disease)
- Many other causes, e.g., *C. trachomatis, Francisella tularensis,* and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*

Clinical presentation
- Unilateral granulomatous conjunctivitis
- Swollen ipsilateral preauricular lymph node
- Submandibular lymphadenopathy

Management
- Treatment of the cause

Acute Hemorrhagic Conjunctivitis

Causes
- Coxsackievirus A24
- Enterovirus 70.

Clinical presentation
- Highly contagious disease
- Large subconjunctival hemorrhage
- Patients also may present with fever and headache

Management
- *Treatment* is supportive, and complications are rare

Pharyngoconjunctival Fever

Background
- Highly infectious illness affect the eye and pharynx
- Adenovirus types 3, 4, 5, and 7 (the most common cause)
- Often affects young children
- It may lead to community outbreak

Clinical presentation
- Fever
- Pharyngitis
- Follicular conjunctivitis
- Regional lymphoid hyperplasia with tender, enlarged preauricular adenopathy
- It may cause punctate lesions in the epithelium of the cornea that warrant an ophthalmologic referral

Treatment
- Supportive care
- The conjunctivitis is self-limited, usually lasting no more than 10 days

Herpes Simplex Virus Conjunctivitis

Causes
- Herpes simplex virus (HSV) type 1 or 2.
- Most cases of primary eye involvement are caused by HSV-1 and are associated with gingivostomatitis or recurrent orolabial infection (cold sores).
- HSV-2 is associated with genital infection and is the more common cause of neonatal eye infections.

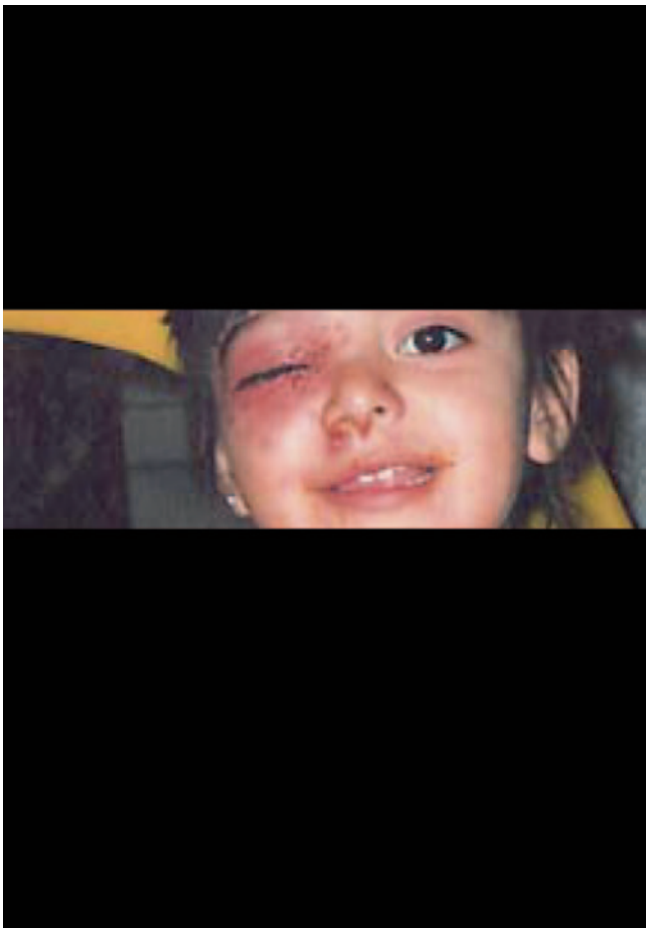


Fig. 2 Herpes simplex infection of the right eye multiple vesicles in the eyelids, nose and around the mouth, mild swelling, and inflammation

Clinical presentation
- Concurrent herpetic skin vesicular eruption, usually somewhere on the face (Fig. 2)
- Unilateral follicular conjunctivitis
- Palpable preauricular lymph node
- Ocular infection can affect the eyelids, conjunctiva, or cornea
- Corneal epithelial dendrites

Diagnosis
- Based on the clinical findings.
- In atypical cases, culture, ELISA, or polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing can be used to confirm the diagnosis.

Treatment
- If HSV conjunctivitis or corneal involvement is suspected, immediate referral to an ophthalmologist is recommended.
- Oral antivirals (e.g., acyclovir).
- Topical antiviral therapy (e.g., trifluridine 1 % drops, ganciclovir ophthalmic gel).
- Remember: the use of steroids alone in herpetic infections is contraindicated.

Parasitic Conjunctivitis

Background
- Pediculosis may cause a follicular conjunctivitis in adults with pubic lice.

Clinical presentation
- Intense itching of the eyelids.
- Conjunctival and lid margin injection.
- *Know that* pubic lice (*Pthirus pubis*) and nits in the cilia (eyelashes) in children is due to sexual abuse unless otherwise is proved.

Management
- Referral to an ophthalmologist is indicated for the management.
- Ophthalmic ointment (e.g., erythromycin) to smother the lice.
- Pediculicide lotions and shampoos also should be applied.

Atopic (Seasonal) Allergic Conjunctivitis

Background
- IgE-mediated immediate hypersensitivity reaction.
- Dust, molds, spores, pollens, and animal dander are common triggers.

Clinical presentation
- Itching
- Conjunctival chemosis, which manifests as pale edema; eyelid edema
- Watery or mucoid discharge
- Giant papillae assume a flat top appearance, which often is described as “cobblestone papillae” (Fig. 3)

Treatment
- Should be based on severity of symptoms.
- Cold compresses.
- Artificial tears.
- Topical antihistamines.
- Mast cell stabilizers.
- Topical nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents.
- Selective use of topical corticosteroids for severe cases treated by an ophthalmologist.
- Allergic rhinitis and asthma often are present as well and must be treated accordingly.

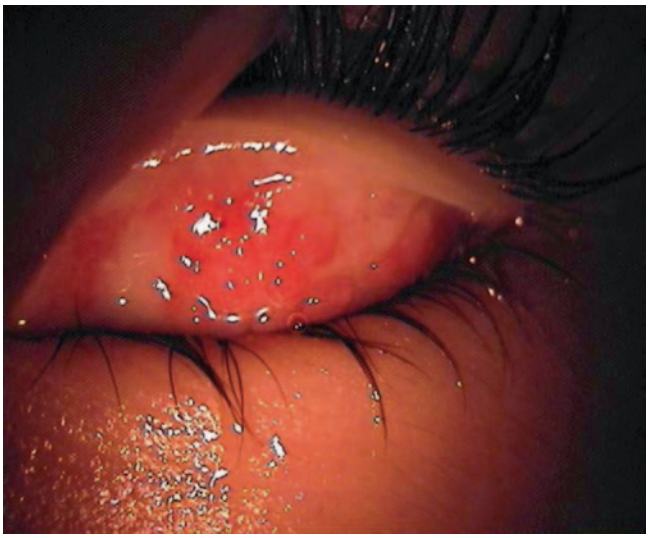


Fig. 3 Vernal conjunctivitis, multiple giant papillae in the superior tarsus

Anterior Uveitis

Background
- Uveitis usually associated with systemic diseases, e.g.
  - Juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA)
  - Sarcoidosis
  - Kawasaki
  - Reiter syndrome
  - Herpes
  - Syphilis
  - Lyme disease
  - Idiopathic
  - Trauma

Clinical presentation
- Conjunctival injection.
- Pain.
- Tearing.
- Photophobia.
- Decreased vision.
- Many patients are asymptomatic initially and the involved eye is often with and without obvious inflammation, the disease may be advanced at diagnosis.
- Ophthalmological screening for uveitis in children with JIA has resulted in an improved prognosis for this disorder.

Management
- Refer to ophthalmologist.
- Topical steroids.
- Cycloplegic agents.
- Treat the underlying cause.

Preseptal Cellulitis

Background
- Infection of periorbital soft tissues *anterior* to the orbital septum
- Usually result from extension of external ocular infection such as:
  - Hordeolum (stye)
  - Dacryocystitis/dacryoadenitis
  - Rhinosinusitis
  - Dental abscess
  - Insect bite
  - Post Traumatic puncture, laceration, or abrasion of the eyelid skin. Direct penetrating injury to the orbit; and hematogenous seeding
  - Severe conjunctivitis
  - Skin infections: impetigo or herpes zoster

Causes
- *Staphylococcus* and *streptococcus* have become the two most common pathogens responsible for pediatric orbital cellulitis 75 %

Clinical presentation
- Erythema
- Swelling with no limitation of eye movement

Diagnosis
- Clinical
- No imaging study is necessary

Management
- The choice of the antibiotic depending on the source of infection, e.g.:
  - *Dental abscess*; cover for anaerobes, e.g., clindamycin or amoxicillin-clavulanate
  - *Insect bite or stye* cover for *staph,* e.g., First-generation cephalosporin
  - *Sinusitis* cover for *S. Pneumoniae* e.g., high-dose amoxicillin-clavulanate, oral second- or third-generation cephalosporins

Orbital Cellulitis

Background
- Infection of orbital soft tissue posterior to orbital septum.
- The most common association is ethmoid sinusitis.

Clinical presentation
- Orbital pain
- Severe swelling
- Chemosis

- Proptosis
- Ophthalmoplegia: limited ocular movement
- Decreased visual acuity
- Fever

Diagnosis
- *CT scan with intravenous* (IV) *contrast* is the most important diagnostic test.

Management
- IV Antibiotic therapy should have empiric coverage against *staphylococcal* and *streptococcal* species.
- Vancomycin or clindamycin (MRSA) plus a second or third-generation cephalosporin is a reasonable initial regimen.
- Orbital cellulitis requires antibiotic therapy for a total of 10–14 days.
- Mucormycosis can occur in patients with diabetic ketoacidosis or severe immunosuppression.
- The treatment should include debridement of necrotic and infected tissue plus amphotericin B.
- Consult ophthalmologist and otorhinolaryngologist.

Complications
- *Cavernous sinus thrombosis* is the most serious complication.
- *Loss of vision* and meningismus or meningitis may be late complications.

Hordeolum (Stye) and Chalazion

Hordeolum
- It is an acute focal infection (usually *staphylococcal*) involving the glands of Zeis or the hair follicle

Chalazion
- Granulomatous inflammation of the meibomian glands that results from the obstruction of the gland duct and is usually in the midportion of the tarsus or eyelid away from the lid border

Clinical Presentation
- Hordeolum
  - Local, tender, erythematous swelling on the eyelid margin (Fig. 4)
- Chalazion
  - Firm, tender, or nontender swelling of the eyelid (Fig. 5)
  - Eye discomfort, if large or internal
  - May cause refractive errors

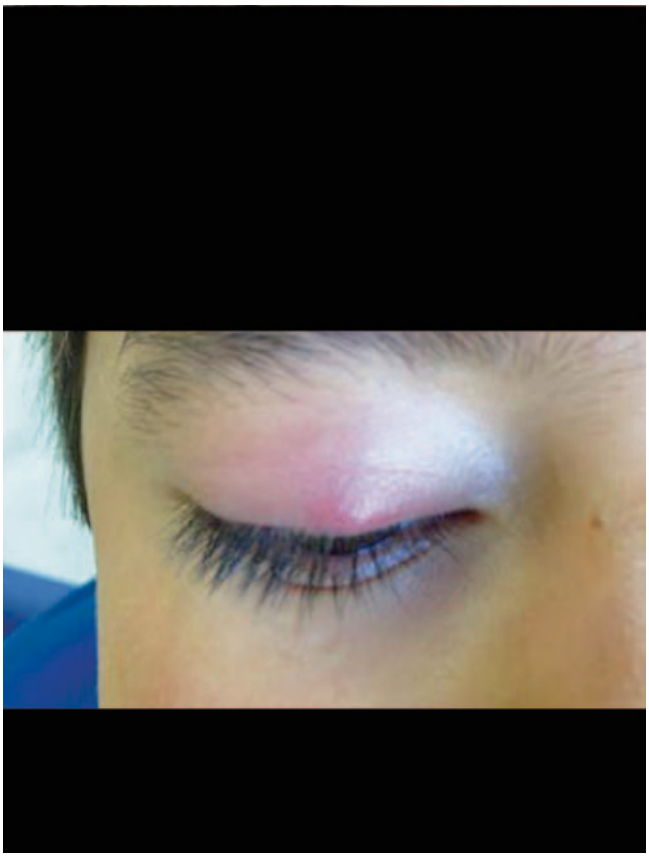


Fig. 4 A 5 year old with tender erythematous subcutaneous nodule present near the eyelid margin

Management is the same for hordeolum and chalazion
- Warm compresses.
- Topical antibiotics (eye drops or ophthalmic ointment).
- Oral antibiotic, if complicated by preseptal cellulitis.
- If patient does not respond to conservative therapy consult with an ophthalmologist.
- Incision and drainage is indicated if the hordeolum is large, or if it is refractory to medical therapy and is done by the ophthalmologist.

Nasolacrimal Duct Obstruction (Congenital Dacryostenosis)

Background
- Tearing and mucoid or mucopurulent discharge
- Normal conjunctiva, but they may develop acute inflammation
- Digital pressure results in retrograde discharge of mucopurulent materials
- Congenital glaucoma must be ruled out by history and physical examination

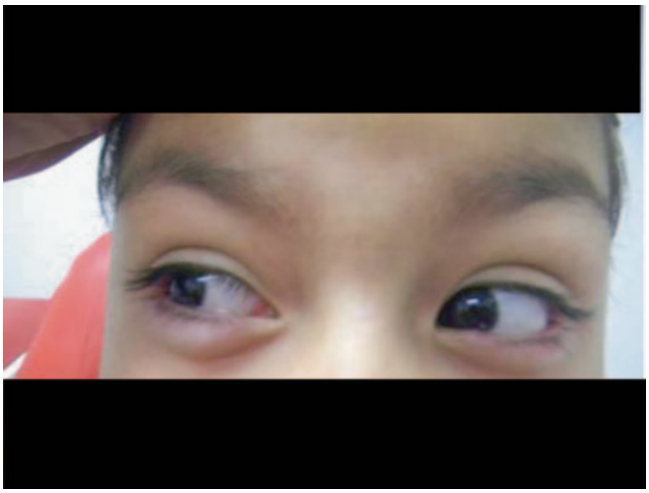


Fig. 5 Chalazion in the right lower eyelid

Management
- Digital massage of the lacrimal sac.
- Topical antibiotics if conjunctivitis, e.g., erythema and exudates.
- Duct probing in persistent cases.
- Most cases are gone by 1 year of age.
- Early probing reduces the duration of bothersome symptoms and the potential of chronic infections.

When to refer
- If persists beyod 9 months
- If develops dacryocystitis

Congenital Ptosis

Background
- Congenital droopy eyelid from birth
- Isolated abnormality of levator muscle in one or both eyelids

Clinical presentation
- Droopy eyelid since birth (Fig. 6).
- The child compensates by lifting the chin or the eye brow.
- Often associated with strabismus and anisometropia.
- Amblyopia may occur.

Management
- Ophthalmology evaluation is important.
- Surgical correction if causing occlusion amblyopia.

Acquired Ptosis

Causes
- Horner syndrome; ptosis, miosis, anhidrosis
- Myasthenia gravis

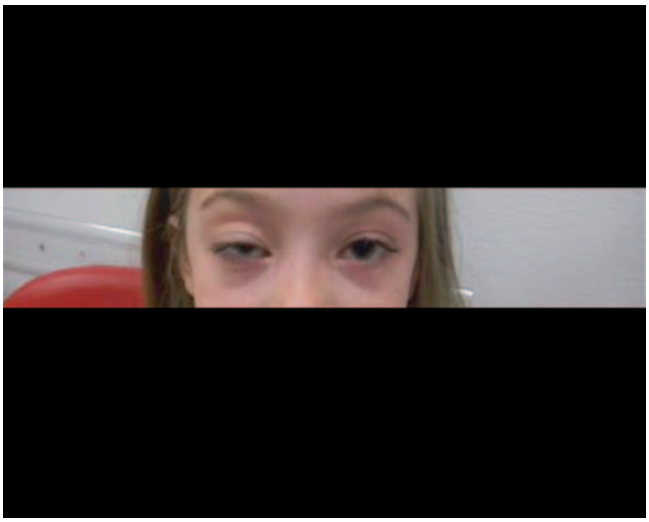


Fig. 6 Congenital ptosis of the right eye or drooping eyelid covering part of the pupil

- Kearns-Sayre syndrome (progressive external ophthalmoplegia, pigmentary retinopathy, and cardiac conduction abnormalities)
- Orbital tumor
- Third cranial nerve palsy

Management
- Any child with ptosis requires full ophthalmologic and neurologic examination

Congenital Glaucoma

Definition
- Elevated intraocular pressure

Clinical presentation
- Corneal cloudiness.
- Increased corneal diameter.
- Conjunctival injection (late finding).
- Excessive tearing, photophobia, and blepharospasm (eye squeezing) should alert you to the development of glaucoma.

Management
- Referral to ophthalmologist

Conditions associated with glaucoma
- Sturge–Weber syndrome
- Intraocular hemorrhage
- Inflammation or tumor
- Aniridia
- Lowe syndrome
- Aphakia
- Marfan Syndrome

- Homocystinuria
- Steroid treatment

Congenital Cataract

Background
- Cataracts may occur at any age

Causes
- Approximately 50% of congenital cataracts are idiopathic
- Hereditary: autosomal dominant are always bilateral. X-linked and autosomal recessive can also occur
- Prematurity is a common cause and may resolve spontaneously
- *Rubella* is the most common infectious cause of congenital cataracts (TORCH)
- Metabolic diseases must be considered, for example, galactosemia and diabetes
- Teratogens, such as alcohol and corticosteroids, may also cause congenital cataracts

Clinical presentation (Fig. 7)
- Absent red reflex
- Any irregularity or asymmetry of the pupils
- Dark spots in the red reflex
- White reflex

Management
- *Immediate referral* to a pediatric ophthalmologist.
- Optimally, surgical intervention for congenital cataracts should occur within 6 weeks.

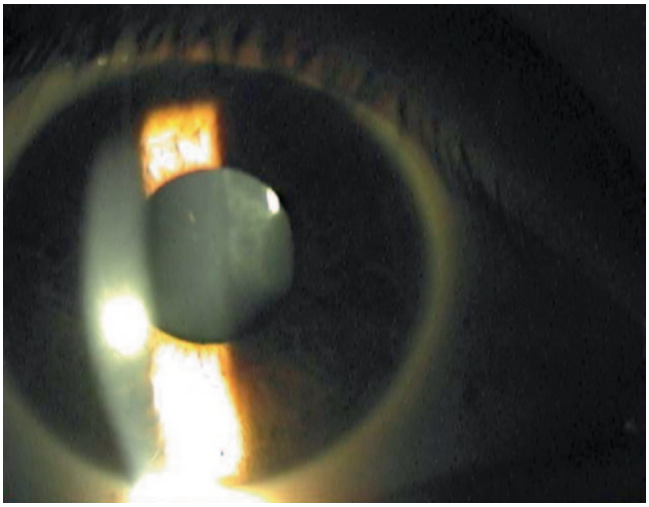


Fig. 7 Posterior subcapsular cataract

Retinoblastoma (RB)

Background
- RB is the most common malignant intraocular tumor in childhood.
- Usually present before age of 5 years.
- One of the most common causes of leukocoria in childhood—47%.
- RB gene *RB1* passed as autosomal dominant trait.
- Risk of recurrence is lower in unilateral than bilateral cases of RB.

Clinical presentation
- Leukocoria and strabismus are the most common presenting finding.
- Average age at the time of diagnosis is 2 years in unilateral cases and 1 year in bilateral cases.

Diagnosis
- MRI and ultrasound are the best diagnostic testing.

Management
- All children with a new leukocoria should be referred to an ophthalmologist.
- Primary systemic chemotherapy (chemoreduction) followed by local therapy (laser photocoagulation, cryotherapy, thermotherapy, or plaque radiotherapy), or even enucleation depending of the stage of the disease (Fig. 8a and b).

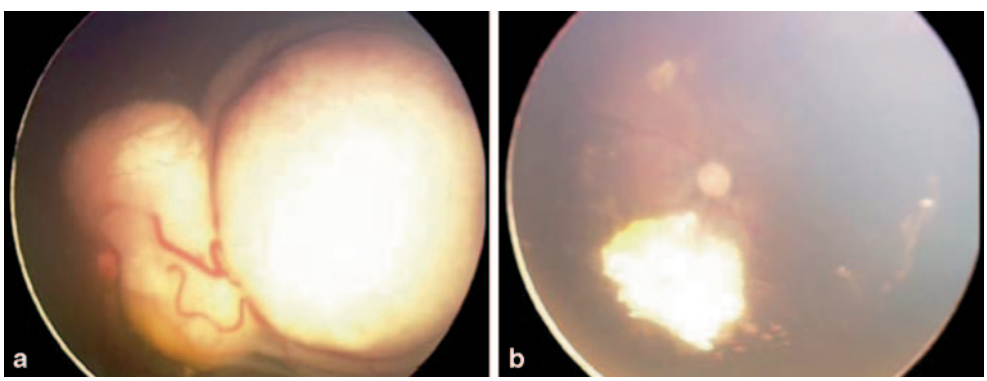


Fig. 8 **a** Retina photo showing large retinoblastoma covering part of the optic nerve. **b** Retinoblastoma after systemic chemotherapy and laser therapy

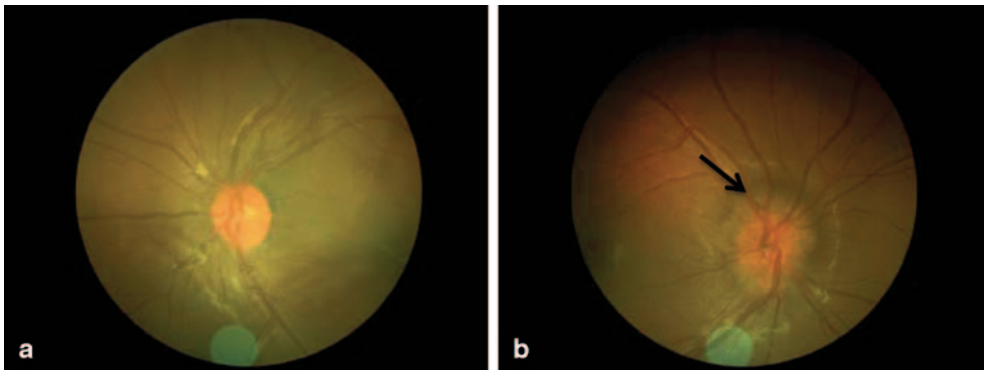


Fig. 9 **a** Normal optic disc with sharp margins and pink rim. **b** Fundus photograph showing papilledema in the right eye, peripheral elevation of nerve and blurred disc margins (*arrow*)

- Intra-arterial chemotherapy is a new modality of treatment in certain cases.
- Immediate referral to an ophthalmologist and oncologist.

Papilledema

Background
- Papilledema is a swelling of optic disc secondary to increased intracranial pressure.

Causes
- Hydrocephalus, mass lesion, meningitis, or pseudotumor cerebri.

Clinical presentation
- Oculomotor nerve palsy.
- Esotropia and double vision may result from cranial nerve VI paralysis.
- Transient visual obscurations.
- Blurred margins of optic disc (Fig. 9b), (Fig. 9a) showing normal optic disc with sharp margin for comparison.
- Nausea, vomiting, and headaches.

Management
- Head CT must be performed.
- If CT is negative lumbar puncture (LP) should be performed for possibility of pseudotumor cerebri.

Optic Neuritis

Background
- Optic neuritis implies an inflammatory process involving the optic nerve.
- Most cases of optic neuritis in children are due to an immune-mediated process.

Causes
- Presents often after systemic infections, such as measles, mumps, chickenpox, and viral illnesses.
- It can also be associated with immunizations, bee stings.
- It can occur as an isolated neurologic deficit or as component of more generalized neurologic disease, such as acute disseminated encephalomyelitis, neuromyelitis optica, or multiple sclerosis.

Clinical presentation
- Bilateral vision loss
- Painful eye movements
- Disc edema

Management
- Intravenous steroids should be considered if vision loss is bilateral in order to hasten visual recovery.

Retinopathy of Prematurity (ROP)

Background
- Vasoproliferative disease of the retina.
- ROP is a disease of the retina in a premature infant due to neovascularization: fragile vessels that break, bleed, and form scar tissue causing retinal detachment and blindness.
- It was first described in preterm infants.
- A total of 13 millions of babies are born premature worldwide, 1 in 10.
- 50,000 babies go blind due to ROP.

Causes
- *First epidemic*
  - 1940s and 1950s
  - *Primary cause: oxygen unmonitored*
  - Few small (750–1000 g) infants survived (<8%)
- *Second epidemic*
  - 1970s to present
  - Oxygen closely monitored
  - *Primary cause: many small (500–1000 g) infants survived (>80%)*
- *Third epidemic*
  - 2000s to present.

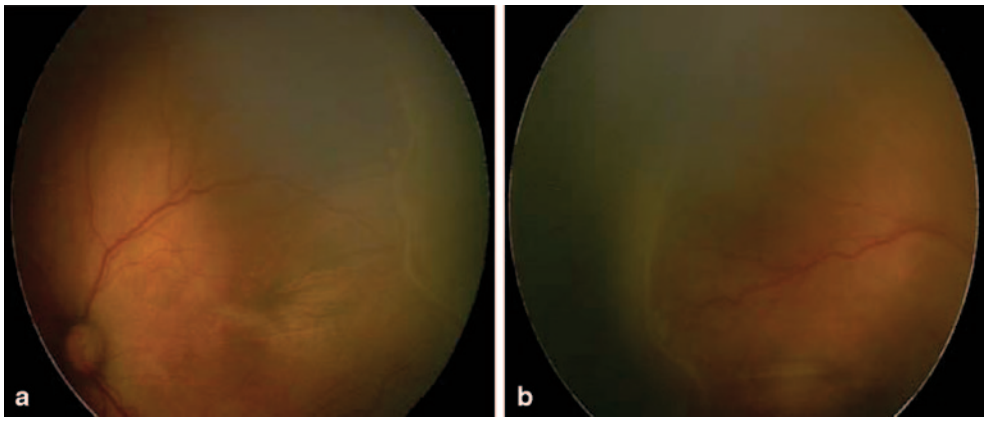


Fig. 10 **a** Retinopathy of prematurity, retina photo showing stage 2 ROP or ridge. **b** Retinopathy of prematurity, retina photo showing popcorn disease, small extravascular fibroproliferation or early stage 3, posterior to the ridge

- *Primary cause: oxygen unmonitored*
- *Many infants (750–2000 g infants) survived (> 90%)*
- ROP is a multifactorial
- Smallest, most immature, and sickest baby in NICU are at the highest risk

Risk factors
- Low birth weight
- Low gestational age
- Hypoxia
- Hyperoxia
- Oxygen fluctuations
- Blood transfusions
- Intraventricular hemorrhage
- Bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD)
- Sepsis
- Necrotizing enterocolitis (NEC)
- Infant of a diabetic mother

Complication of ROP
- Mild/transient to severe proliferative neovascularization with scarring, retinal detachment, and blindness (Fig. 10 and Fig. 11)

Initial retinal screening
- Premature infants less than 30 weeks gestation
- Less 1500 g
- Older infants that required significant amount of oxygen at birth
- Examination at 4 weeks postnatal age or 31 weeks adjusted age (whichever is later)

Current management
- Prevention: adequate oxygen and nutrition
- Adequate screening program

Treatment programs
- Cryotherapy
- Laser surgery
- Anti-VEGF (vascular endothelial growth factor) therapy

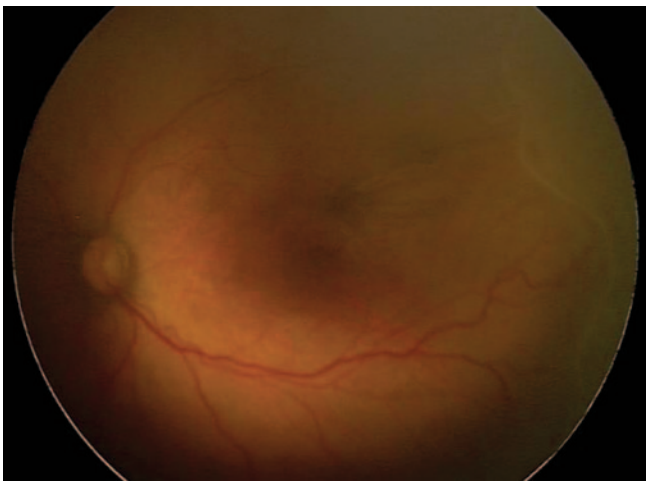


Fig. 11 Retina photo showing sectorial plus, mild dilatation, and tortuosity of retina vessels

- Scleral buckling surgery
- Lens sparing vitrectomy surgery

Early treatment
- Laser ablation to peripheral avascular retina to prevent retinal detachment by pediatric ophthalmologist or retina specialist.
- A new treatment with Anti-VEGF has been reported in the literature with very good outcomes especially in the smaller and sicker babies with Zone I ROP.
- Blindness due to ROP can be prevented with adequate nutrition and oxygenation and timely treatment.

Orbital Fracture

Background
- Blunt trauma to the face or directly to eye

Clinical presentation
- Periorbital ecchymosis
- Eye/face pain

- Limitation of upward gaze
- May have decreased ipsilateral cheek or upper lip sensation
- Epistaxis

Diagnosis
- Thin-cut-coronal CT of the orbit is the best imaging study
- Associated globe injury 10–50%

Management
- Must be evaluated by ophthalmologist

Corneal Abrasion

Clinical presentation
- Eye tearing.
- Foreign body sensation.
- Discomfort with blinking, sharp pain, and photophobia.
- In infants, corneal abrasions have been presented as initially unexplained, inconsolable crying.
- A child may be continually rubbing an eye, which is watery and red.

Diagnosis
- Topical fluorescein, which is available in paper strips
- May apply topical anesthetic in solution to facilitate the eye exam
- Fluorescein is also available in topical eye drops in combination with an anesthetics
- The area of abrasion will fluoresce under a cobalt blue filter light

Management
- Topical eye antibiotic ointment, for example, erythromycin, bacitracin ophthalmic should be applied every 4 h to prevent infection

Important to know
- Corneal abrasions heal rapidly, often within 24 h for smaller injuries.
- Patients who wear contact lenses or have a history of ocular herpes should be referred urgently to an ophthalmologist for consultation.
- The usual recommendation is to avoid contact lenses until the injured eye has felt normal for at least 1 week.
- Patients with large or central abrasions should be referred to an ophthalmologist.
- The use of patching is rarely necessary but may be used for comfort.

Eye Foreign Body

Clinical presentation
- Sudden onset of eye pain after exposure to flying debris or winds
- Associated with intraocular foreign body in 18–41% of the cases

Diagnosis
- History and physical exam
- Topical anesthetic will facilitate the exam
- Fluorescein test
- Evert the upper eyelid at exam. Foreign bodies (FBs) tend to hide under the upper eyelid
- *Orbital CT scan,* if intraocular foreign body is suspected

Management
- *Best initial management* is eye irrigation or gentle swabbing
- Refer to ophthalmology if FB cannot be removed or has caused large corneal abrasion, and patients with an intraocular FB

Hyphema

Background
- Hyphema is a blood in the anterior chamber after blunt trauma

Clinical presentation
- Blurring of vision to complete loss of vision
- Photophobia
- Eye pain are common finding

Management
- Bed rest with elevation of the head of the bed and eye shield on the affected eye
- Emergent ophthalmology consultation

Complications
- Corneal staining
- Increased IOP which can cause glaucoma and optic nerve damage in untreated cases
- Cataract

Strabismus

Background
- Strabismus is a misalignment of the eye or deviation; it may be congenital or acquired.

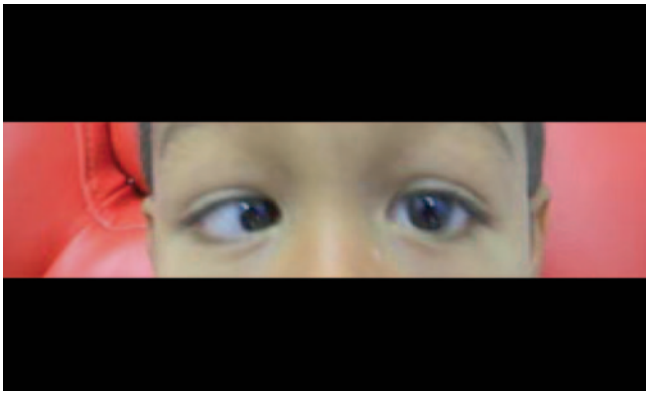


Fig. 12 External photo showing right eye esotropia or crossing

Fig. 13 External photo showing right eye exotropia, outward deviation

- *Esotropia* is an inward deviation (Fig. 12).
- *Exotropia* is an outward deviation (Fig. 13).
- *Hypertropia* is an upward deviation.
- *Hypotropia* is a downward deviation.

Congenital esotropia
- Onset within first 6 months of age
- Associated with large angle strabismus
- Amblyopia 50% of patients
- Bad depth perception
- Treatment: early surgery within first 12 months.

Intermittent exotropia
- Most commonly occurring between age 2 and 8 years.
- Patient may squint one eye.
- Treatment is to prescribe spectacles and some may require strabismus surgery.

Diagnosis
- Visual acuity test, cover test, light reflex test.
- Corneal light reflex (HIRSHBERG) is the best initial testing.
- The best test to differentiate heterophoria from heterotropia is cover/uncover test.

Remember
- Occasional eye deviation in newborn can be observed, if persists beyond 4 months should be referred to pediatric ophthalmologist
- Refer to pediatric ophthalmologist all patients with strabismus

Critical to know
- New onset strabismus can be a manifestation of eye or brain tumor, and should be investigated immediately
- Amblyopia is a common complication in untreated cases.
- *Strabismus is treated by the ophthalmologist* with glasses, patching, or surgery.

Amblyopia

Background
- It is a unilateral or bilateral reduction of best corrected visual acuity that cannot be attributed directly to the effect of any structural abnormality of the eye or the posterior visual pathways.
- It is a consequence of diminished visual input into the visual cortex, which leads to impairment of neuro ophthalmologic pathways.

Causes
- Strabismus (the most common cause)
- Anisometropia (unequal refractive errors) or high refractive errors
- Stimulus deprivation: cataracts, corneal opacities, vitreous hemorrhage, lid hemangiomas

Diagnosis
- Vision screening

Management
- Patients who failed vision screening need to be referred to ophthalmologist.

Ophthalmology treatment
- Eliminate any obstacle to vision such as cataracts.
- Correct any refractive errors.
- Patching or occlusion therapy.
- Amblyopia should be detected early.
- Vision screenings in children under five are very important.
- Occlusion therapy is more effective under the age of 6, but still can be done in older children.

- Studies in older children with amblyopia have shown that treatment can be still beneficial beyond the first decade of life.
- Compliance can be a problem with older children.

Nystagmus

Background
- Nystagmus is involuntary rhythmic eye movement.
- May signify important eye or central system pathology.
- Can be hereditary.
- Any internal eye problem can cause sensory nystagmus, for example, cataract, optic atrophy or aniridia, corneal opacities, retinal dystrophies, optic nerve hypoplasia, etc.

Clinical presentation
- *Congenital motor nystagmus* usually before 2 months
  - Horizontal, jerky oscillations, bilateral.
  - Visual function can be normal.
  - It is not associated with other central nervous system abnormalities.
  - Null point often presents with head position.
  - Surgery is indicated to correct the head turn.

Congenital sensory nystagmus
- Horizontal nystagmus, sometimes pendular
- Begins in the first 3 months of life
- Associated with ocular abnormalities that may affect visual development: bilateral cataracts, glaucoma, corneal opacities, aniridia, retinal dystrophy, optic nerve hypoplasia, foveal hypoplasia

Acquired nystagmus
- Brain imaging is necessary to rule out any intracranial lesions

Spasmus nutans
- Bilateral nystagmus, horizontal, vertical, or rotary
- Abnormal head movement (nodding or bobbing) or torticollis
- Spasmus nutans rarely starts before 4 months of age
- MRI to rule out chiasmal or suprachiasmatic tumors (glioma)

Management
- Children with nystagmus need to be referred to pediatric ophthalmologist.

Suggested Readings

1. Harrison JR, English MG. Chlamydia trachomatis infant pneumonitis. N Engl J Med. 1978;298:702–8.
2. Rapoza PA, Chandler JW. Neonatal conjunctivitis: diagnosis and treatment. In: Focal points 1988: clinical modules for ophthalmologists. San Francisco: American Academy of Ophthalmology; 1:1, 1988. pp. 5–6
3. American Academy of Pediatrics Policy Statement. Diagnosis and management of acute otitis media. Pediatrics. 2004;113:1451–65.
4. American Academy of Ophthalmology Pediatric Ophthalmology/Strabismus Panel. Preferred practice pattern guidelines: pediatric eye evaluations. San Francisco: American Academy of Ophthalmology; 2007. pp. 1–39.
5. Ehlers JP, Shah CP. Corneal abrasion. In: Ehlers JP, Shah CP, editors. The Wills eye manual: office and emergency room diagnosis and treatment of eye disease. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott; 2008. pp. 15–6.

Ear, Nose, and Throat Disorders

Josée Paradis and Anna H. Messner

Ears

Preauricular Pits/Sinus (PPS)

- Small indentations located anterior to the helix and superior to the tragus
- Can occur unilaterally (~50%) or bilaterally (~50%)
- Prevalence ranges between 1 and 10% depending on ethnicity
- Can occur in isolation with no increased risk of hearing impairment or renal issues
- Can be associated with hearing impairment and organ malformations (i.e., kidney)
  - e.g., Branchio-oto-renal (BOR) syndrome:
    - Most common inherited syndrome causing hearing loss (autosomal dominant)
    - Clinical presentation: preauricular pits, sensorineural hearing loss, branchial cysts, renal anomalies
- PPS do not require surgical excision unless they are frequently draining or infected
- Wang et al. [14] suggest that a renal ultrasound be performed in children with ear anomalies accompanied by any of the following:
  - Other known organ malformation
  - Family history of deafness and auricular and/or renal malformation
  - Maternal history of gestational diabetes mellitus

Otitis Externa

Definition

- Inflammation of the external auditory canal (EAC) due to bacterial (most commonly *P. aeruginosa)*, or fungal infections

Clinical presentation

- Pain and tenderness with tragal pressure/pulling pinna, pruritic, erythematous and edematous EAC, debris in EAC, malodorous otorrhea

Treatment

- Pain control and anti-inflammatories
- Topical ear drops (ensured *pseudomonas* coverage)
- Keep ears dry with water precautions and/or with ear dryer
- Ears drops of solution made of 50:50 white vinegar and rubbing alcohol can provide prophylaxis (if NO tympanic membrane perforation)
- Indications for ENT referral
  - Significant debris in EAC—will require debridement
  - If unable to visualize tympanic membrane due to canal edema—patient will require a temporary ear wick

Foreign Body in the External Ear

- Beads, insects, toys, popcorn, beans, and button batteries are common ear foreign bodies (FB)
- Most foreign bodies do not require emergent removal
- Emergent removal for button batteries
- Indication for referral to ENT
  - FB wedged in canal and cannot be grasped
  - Trauma/bleeding in ear canal
  - Failed attempt at removal

A. H. Messner (✉)
Department of Otolaryngology/Head & Neck Surgery, Stanford University Medical Center and the Lucile Salter Packard Children's Hospital, 801 Welch Road, Second Floor, Stanford, CA 94305-5739, USA
e-mail: amessner@ohns.stanford.edu

J. Paradis
Department of Otolaryngology, Head & Neck surgery, London Health Science Center, University of Western Ontario 800 Commissioners Rd E, London, Ontario, Canada, N6A 5W9

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_22,

Hematoma of the Ear Pinna

- Commonly due to trauma
- Can cause avascular necrosis and permanent damage to the underlying cartilage
- Management
  - Urgent aspiration of hematoma to prevent pinna deformity (i.e., Wrestler's ear or cauliflower ear)
  - Pressure dressing applied after evacuation
  - Close follow-up to monitor for reaccumulation

Acute Otitis Media (AOM)

Background

- Signs of an acute infection associated with middle effusion and inflammation (bulging tympanic membrane)
- 80% of children have at least one AOM before 1 year of age; 90% of children have at least two AOM by the age of 3

Risk factors

- Age (6–18 months), positive family history of otitis media, day care attendance, lack of breastfeeding, exposure to tobacco smoke, pacifier use, race/ethnicity (native Americans and Eskimos are at higher risk) [11]

Common pathogen

- Bacterial: *Streptococcus pneumoniae,* nontypeable *Haemophilus influenzae, Moraxella catarrhalis, and S pyogenes (group A Streptococcus)* are the most common causes
- Viral: RSV, picornavirus, coronavirus, influenza, adenovirus

Clinical presentation

- Fever, irritability, apathy, anorexia, vomiting, diarrhea, otalgia, otorrhea, hearing loss
- Frequent night time awakening

Diagnosis

- Pneumatic otoscopy showing decreased tympanic membrane mobility remains the best method for diagnosing the presence of middle ear fluid

Management

- 2013 American Academy of Pediatrics Guidelines [8]
  - Immediate antibiotic treatment for:
    - Children < 6 months of age
    - Children with moderate –severe otalgia
    - Otalgia lasting longer than 48 h
    - Temperature > 39 °C (102.2 °F)
    - Bilateral AOM and less than 24 months of age
  - Immediate antibiotic treatment or observation with pain control
    - 6–24 months of age with unilateral non severe AOM
    - >24 months of age with unilateral or bilateral non-severe AOM

Antimicrobial therapy

- First line: Amoxicillin (90 mg/kg/day divided twice a day) × 10 days
- Second line: amoxicillin-clavulanate
  - Children who failed first line therapy
  - Children with increased risk of beta-lactam resistance
  - Beta-lactam use within past 30 days
  - Concomitant purulent conjunctivitis (likely *H. influenza*)
  - Recurrent AOM unresponsive to amoxicillin
- For patient with hypersensitivity to penicillin
  - Macrolides
  - Cefdinir, cefuroxime, ceftriaxone

Complications of AOM include

- Intratemporal: conductive hearing loss, tympanic membrane perforation, ossicular erosion, labyrinthitis, facial nerve paralysis, mastoiditis, subperiosteal abscess, petrous apicitis, sigmoid sinus thrombosis
- Intracranial: meningitis, epidural/subdural/parenchymal abscess, cavernous sinus thrombosis, otitic hydrocephalus

Suggested follow-up

- <2 years of age: 8–12 weeks after diagnosis/treatment of AOM
- <2 years of age with language or developmental delay: 8–12 weeks after diagnosis/treatment of AOM
- >2 years of age with no comorbidities/language/development delay: next routine visit

Otitis Media with Effusion (OME)

Definition: Middle ear effusion without signs of acute infection

Etiology

- After AOM (typically)
  - In presence of eustachian tube dysfunction in the absence of AOM
- Estimated up to 90% of OME will resolve spontaneously within 3 months
- 30–40% of patients will have recurrent episodes of OME
- Most common cause of pediatric hearing loss

Investigations

- Hearing evaluation
  - Children with OME >3 months

  - Children at risk for speech, language, and learning delay
- Speech language evaluation
  - In children at risk for speech, language, and learning delay

Treatment
- Observation "watchful waiting"
  - In children with OME with low risk of speech, language, learning delay with speech awareness thresholds showing hearing loss less than 20 dBs
  - Monitor every 3–6 months to ensure resolution of effusion
- Myringotomy and tympanostomy tube insertion
  - Refer to Section G for criteria
- Complication of Tympanostomy Tubes
- Refer to Section G for complications

Chronic Suppurative Otitis Media (CSOM)

Definition
- Otorrhea (>6 weeks or recurrent) from a middle ear and/or mastoid infection in the presence of a tympanic membrane perforation (or ventilation tube)

Common pathogen
- Mixed infections
  - Gram-negative bacilli (*pseudomonas, Klebsiella, proteus*, *E.coli*)
  - *Staphylococcus aureus*
  - Anaerobes

Clinical presentation
- Otorrhea, TM perforation, inflamed middle ear mucosa, conductive hearing loss

Treatment
1. Keep the ear clean and dry
   - Water precautions (avoid getting water in ear)
   - Refer to Otolaryngology if debridement required
2. Topical antimicrobial/corticosteroids (must cover *pseudomonas and MRSA*)
3. If failed topical antibiotics, consider systemic antibiotics (broad spectrum covering *pseudomonas and MRSA*)

Acute Mastoiditis (AM)

Background
- Suppurative infection of the middle ear that spreads to mastoid cavity resulting in osteitis of the mastoid bone
- May become purulent and lead to bony breakdown within the mastoid bone (acute coalescent mastoiditis)

Common presentation
- Erythema, tenderness, and edema over the mastoid bone (postauricular region)
- Protuberant ear
- Fever, adenopathy, otitis media

Imaging
- CT temporal bones (look for bony breakdown within mastoid suggestive of coalescence)

Treatment
- Immediate Otolaryngology consultation
- Systemic antibiotics (usually intravenous antibiotics required)
- Possible myringotomy (tympanocentesis/culture) and ventilation tubes (use topical antimicrobial if tube is present)
- Cortical mastoidectomy for coalescent mastoiditis

Cholesteatoma

Definition
- Squamous epithelium in the middle ear and mastoid cavities (misnomer as no cholesterol)
- Risk of leading to recurrent infections, as well as bone and soft tissue erosion

Types
- Congenital
  - Presents as a white mass, most often in the anterior–superior middle ear space with an intact tympanic membrane
- Acquired
  - Squamous epithelium enters middle ear via retraction pocket (invagination), migration through tympanic membrane perforation or iatrogenic implantation

Clinical presentation
- Conductive hearing loss
- Persistent otorrhea
- Tympanic membrane retraction pocket filled with squamous epithelial debris/crusts
- Possible whitish mass behind the TM (not always seen)

Complications
- Erosion/destruction of ossicular chain, chronic otitis media, labyrinthine fistula, intracranial complications, facial nerve paralysis

Treatment
- Otolaryngology consultation is mandatory
- Requires surgery (tympanomastoidectomy, possible ossicular chain reconstruction)
- Long-term follow-up required by Otolaryngology

Labrynthitis

Types
- Extremely rare in children
- Bacterial or viral invasion into cochlear labyrinth associated with permanent hearing loss, vestibular dysfunction, meningitis

Clinical presentation
- Vertigo, hearing loss, tinnitus, possible middle ear infection

Diagnosis
- Clinical presentation
- Obtain an urgent audiogram (sensorineural hearing loss)

Treatment
- Treat underlying infectious process
  - Bacterial: systemic antibiotics;
  - +/− myringotomy/ventilation tube if acute otitis media present

Vertigo

Definition
- Illusion of rotational, linear, or tilting movement (i.e., "spinning," "turning") of the patient or their surroundings

Types of vertigo
- Central/systemic
  - Vascular (i.e., migraines), medications/toxins, neurologic disorders (i.e., seizures), metabolic disorders (i.e., thyroid disease, diabetes)
- Peripheral (related to the ear)
  - Benign paroxysmal positional vertigo (BPPV); Vestibular neuritis due to viral infections; perilymph fistula; trauma to vestibular system; Ménière disease; cerebellopontine angle tumors

Physical exam
- Vital signs
- Head and neck: complete exam, inspect middle ear/TM, pneumatic otoscopy
- Neurologic: complete cranial nerve exam, extraocular movements/nystagmus, coordination (finger-to-nose testing), gait, tandem gait, Romberg's test, gross vision testing
- Special test: Dix–Hallpike maneuver (assesses BPPV)
- Audiometric evaluation

Treatment
- Varies based on etiology of vertigo
- Refer to Otolaryngologist if suspicious of peripheral cause of vertigo

Benign Paroxysmal Positional Vertigo (BPPV)

Definition
- Most common peripheral vestibular disorder; typically self-limiting; can be recurrent

Causes
- Spontaneous, posttraumatic, postviral
- Canalithiasis: loose floating debris in semicircular canals stimulates cupula (vestibular system)

Clinical presentation
- Brief recurrent episodes of vertigo lasting seconds to minutes, triggered by positional head movement (i.e., turning head to one side, rolling in bed to same side, looking up)

Diagnosis
- Clinical history, physical exam
- Positive Dix-Hallpike
  - To test right ear:
  - Patient sits upright with head turned 45° toward the right
  - Patient then lays flat with head extended ~30°—still looking to right
  - Observe eyes for nystagmus
  - Onset delayed ~3 s
  - Rotational
  - Self-limiting (~20 sec.)
  - Associated with subjective sensation of spinning

Treatment
- Usually self-limiting
- Refer to Otolaryngologist for Particle Repositioning Maneuver

Meniere Disease

Background
- Rare in children, but the prevalence ranges from 1.5–4% among children diagnosed with vertigo

Clinical presentation (Triad)
1. Episodic vertigo (minutes to hours)
2. Episodic fluctuating sensorineural (typically unilateral)
3. Tinnitus +/− aural fullness in affected ear

Diagnosis
- Clinical
- Obtain an audiogram at time when patient reports hearing loss

Management
- Refer to an Otolaryngologist if suspicious of Meniere's disease

Congenital Hearing Loss

- Loss of hearing present at or after birth

50% environmental	Cytomegalovirus (CMV)	
	Neonatal icterus	
	Meningitis	
	Rubella	
	Prematurity	
	Ototoxicity	
	Other infections	
50% genetic	30% syndromic	Autosomal recessive: Usher syndrome Pendred syndrome Jervell Lange–Nielsen syndrome Autosomal Dominant: Waardenburg syndrome Stickler syndrome Branchio-oto-renal syndrome Treacher–Collins syndrome
	70% nonsyndromic	Connexin mutations most common

[5]

Genetic Syndromic Hearing Loss

- More than 500 Syndromes are associated with hearing loss, most common are listed below:

Autosomal dominant
- *Waardenburg syndrome*: SNHL, hypertelorism, pigmentary abnormalities
- *Stickler syndrome*: SNHL, ocular abnormalities (myopia, retinal detachment), Marfanoid habitus, Pierre Robin Sequence
- *Branchio-Oto-Renal syndrome*: mixed hearing loss (sensorineural and conductive hearing loss), pinna deformities, preauricular or neck pits/fistulas/tags, kidney abnormalities
- *Treacher-Collins syndrome*: (mandibulofacial dysostosis): CHL (malformed ossicles), aural atresia/stenosis, zygomatic/mandibular hypoplasia
- *Others:* neurofibromatosis type II, Apert syndrome (acrocephalosyndactyly), Crouzon syndrome (craniofacial dysostosis)

Autosomal recessive
- *Usher syndrome*
  - Leading cause of deafness and blindness
  - SNHL, blindness (retinitis pigmentosa), vestibular dysfunction
- *Pendred syndrome*: SNHL, Goiter, enlarged vestibular aqueducts
- *Jervell Lange–Nielsen syndrome*: SNHL, cardiac defects (prolonged QT), syncope, sudden death

X-linked
- *Alport syndrome*: X-linked; hearing loss, progressive nephritis, occasional ocular lesions

Genetic Nonsyndromic Hearing Loss

Connexin mutations
- Most common cause of hereditary nonsyndromic hearing loss
- Connexin 26 mutations (GJB2 gene) accounts for ~80%

Universal Newborn Hearing Screening

- Implemented across all states in the USA and provinces in Canada
- Tests hearing with otoacoustic emission (OAE) screening or with an automated auditory brainstem response (ABR) shortly after birth (usually before neonate leaves the hospital)
- Any infant who fails the initial screen should be referred to an audiologist for a full evaluation no later than 4 months of age
- For all children in whom hearing loss is established by full audiologic evaluation, intervention must begin as soon as possible and no later than 6 months of age

Pediatric Audiometric Testing

Evoked Otoacoustic Emission (OAE)

- OAE detects the sound coming from the cochlea in response to clicks or tones
- OAE affected by external or middle ear debris (high false positive rate)
- Used for all ages
- No infant cooperation is required

Auditory Brainstem Response (ABR)

- ABR measures the electroencephalographic waveform response from the vestibulocochlear nerve to higher central nervous system auditory centers
- ABR minimally affected by external or middle ear debris
- Can be used at any age
- Patient must be asleep, or very still—may require sedation
- Often used to confirm abnormal OAE results

Testing Methods

Behavioral Observation Audiometry (BOA)

- Birth—6 months of age
- Sound presented via speakers. Skilled examiner observes for patient response (i.e., startle or head turning towards sound)
- Grossly assessed auditory thresholds of "better" ear (tests both ears at same time)

Visual Response Audiometry (VRA)

- 6 months—3 years of age
- Toddler encouraged to look for auditory stimulus (i.e., lights, toys, motion for reinforcement)
- Each ear may be tested individually; potential to provide complete audiogram

Play Audiometry

- 3–5 years of age
- Child performs tasks in response to auditory stimulus (e.g., pick up a block and place in the bucket when you hear the beep)
- Each ear tested individually; frequency specific

Conventional Audiometry

- 4–6 years of age and older
- Child instructed to push a button or raise hand when a tone is heard
- Complete audiogram; ear specific; frequency specific

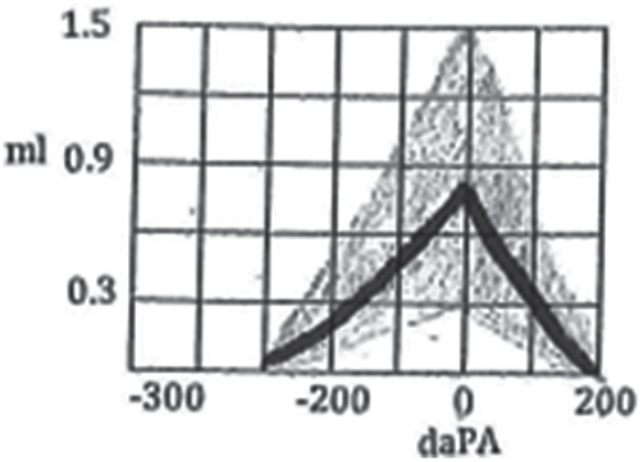
Hearing Loss Classification

- Classified by hearing threshold levels (may vary slightly based on sources)

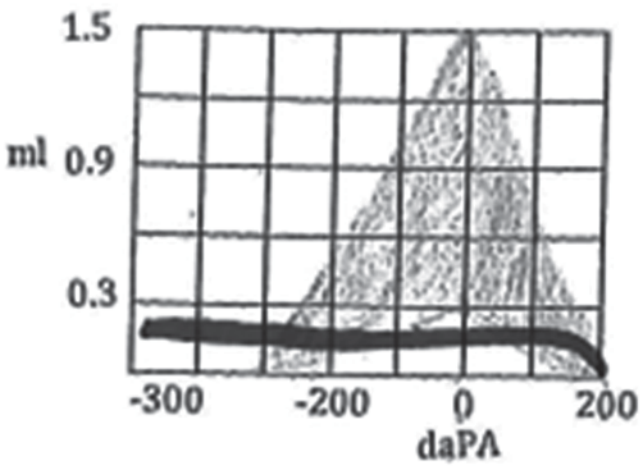
  Normal: <91 dB
  Mild: 20–40 dB
  Moderate: 41–55 dB
  Moderate–severe: 56–70 dB
  Severe: 71–90 dB
  Profound: 91 dB

Tympanometry

- Age: all ages except newborn
- Detects the mobility of TM and external auditory canal volumes
- Normal canal volumes ranges between 0.2 and 1.5 ml
  - Type A
    - Normal peak between −150 and +50 dekapascals

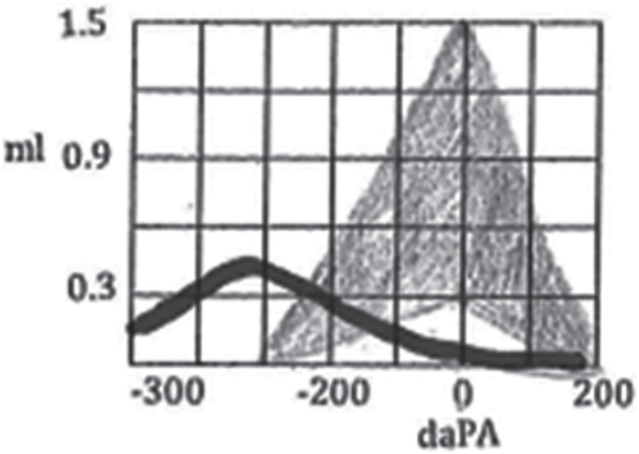


  - Type B
    - Flat, no peak



- Suggestive of:
  - Middle ear effusion (normal to low volumes)
  - Tympanic membrane perforation (high-canal volumes)
  - Patent ventilation tube (high-canal volumes)

– Type C
  - Peak negatively shifted (< −150)
  - Suggestive of a retracted tympanic membrane or Eustachian tube dysfunction



Patterns of Hearing Loss

Interpreting an Audiogram Y-axis = hearing level in decibels (dBs) or the "loudness" of sound
X-axis = frequency of sound presented measured in Hertz (low pitch to high pitch)
"x": Responses from left air conduction line
">": Responses from left bone conduction
ABG: difference between air conduction and bone conduction lines

Three Main Types of Hearing Loss

1. Conductive hearing loss (CHL)
   – Normal bone conduction threshold with abnormal air conduction thresholds
   – Presence of an air-bone gap (ABG)
   – Indicative of a middle ear issue, for example, abnormalities with the tympanic membrane, ossicles, or middle ear space (i.e., effusion; Fig. 1)
2. Sensorineural hearing loss (SNHL)
   – When the air conduction is the same as the bone conduction with both showing abnormal hearing thresholds, this is suggestive of an inner ear issue resulting in sensorineural hearing loss (e.g., damage to cochlear, neural pathways, etc.)
   – No air–bone gap (Fig. 2)

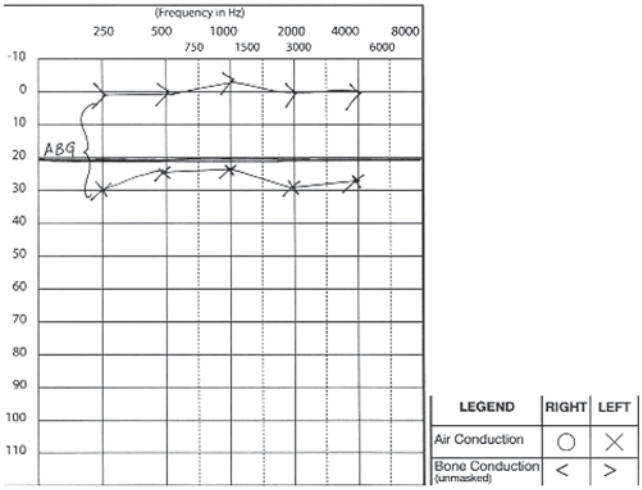


Fig. 1 Mild conductive hearing loss

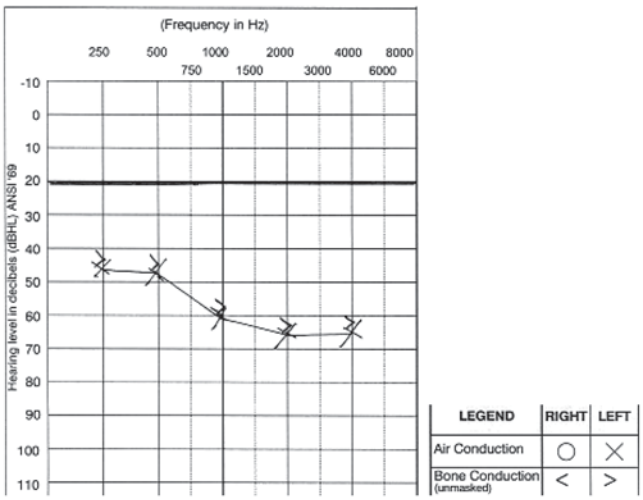


Fig. 2 Moderate to moderate–severe sensorineural hearing loss

3. Mixed hearing loss (CHL + SNHL)
   – Presence of conductive hearing loss and sensorineural hearing loss at same time (Fig. 3)

Common Clinical Scenarios

- Tympanic membrane perforation (Fig. 4)
  – Audiometric findings
    - ABG
    - Flat tympanogram
    - High-canal volumes
    - Mild conductive hearing loss
- Middle ear effusion (Fig. 5)
  – Audiometric findings
    - ABG
    - Flat tympanogram
    - Low or normal canal volumes
    - Mild conductive hearing loss

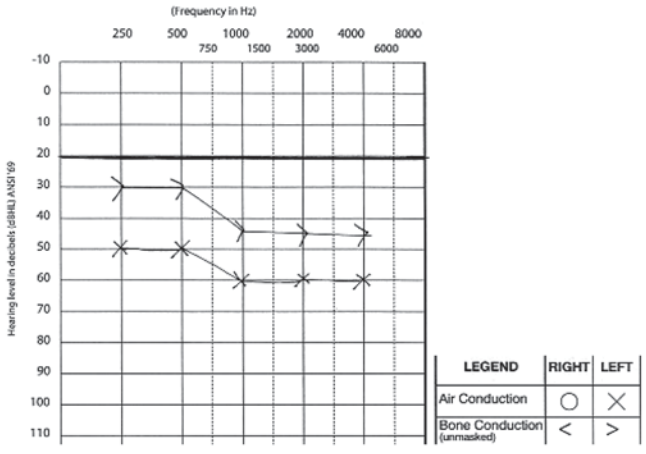


Fig. 3 Mild to moderate sensorineural hearing loss with ~20 dBs conductive hearing loss

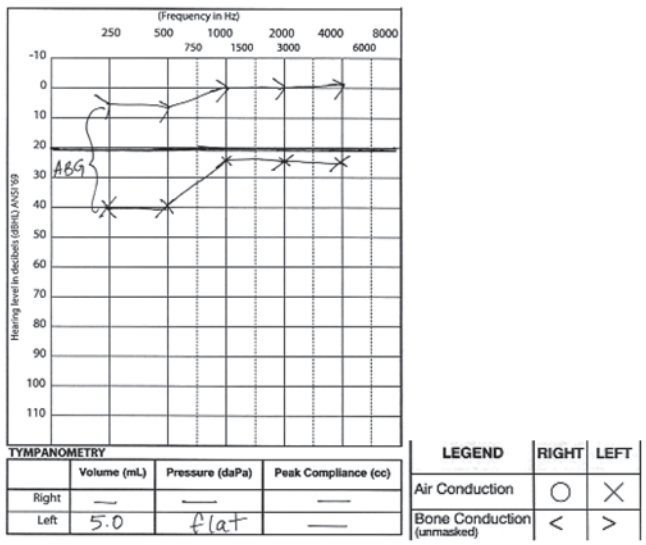


Fig. 4 Tympanic membrane perforation

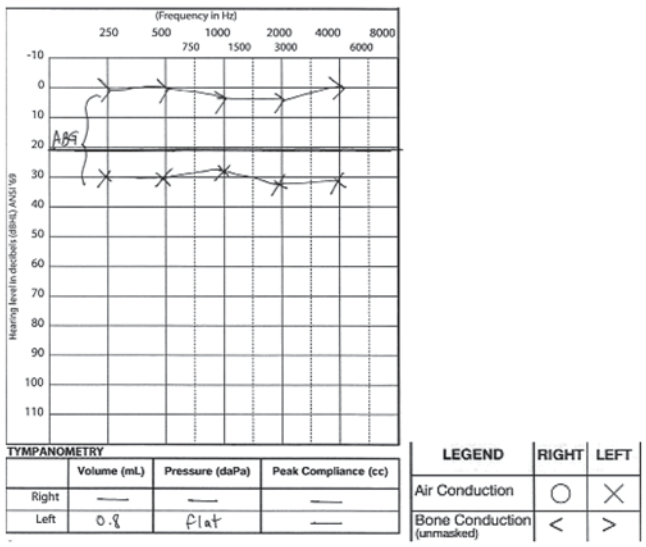


Fig. 5 Audiogram of middle ear effusion

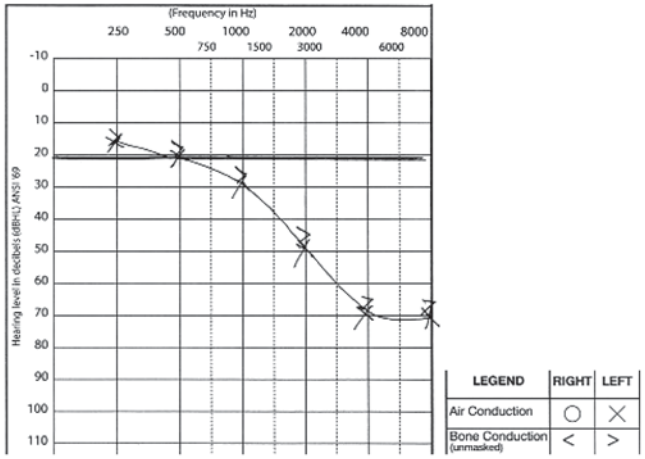


Fig. 6 Audiogram of ototoxicity

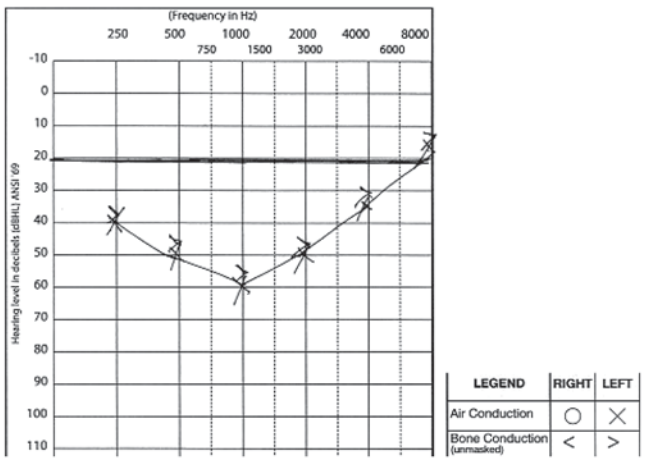


Fig. 7 Audiogram of hereditary hearing loss

- Ototoxicity (Fig. 6)
  - Ototoxic medications cause hearing loss by damaging the hair cells within the cochlea resulting in sensorineural hearing loss, primarily in the high frequencies
  - Most commonly caused by cisplatin/carboplatin
  - Audiometric findings
    - High-frequency sensorineural hearing loss (moderate to moderate-severe)
    - No ABG
    - Normal tympanogram and volumes (typically)
- Hereditary hearing loss (Fig. 7)
  - Cookie bite (U-shape) pattern of sensorineural hearing loss
  - No ABG, normal tympanogram, normal canal volumes

Clues to Hearing Loss in a Child Visit

- Speech delay
- Social and behavioral challenges

- A child asking people to repeat themselves, not hearing instructions
- Listening to loud television or music

Sound Amplification Devices

- Early identification and intervention is required to maximize hearing and speech development, as well as achieving developmental milestones
- Refer to an Otolaryngologist when an abnormal hearing screen is identified
- Hearing interventions are dependent on type of hearing and severity of hearing loss

Hearing Aids

- Non-implantable external hearing device that amplifies frequency specific sounds
- Used for unilateral or bilateral CHL, SNHL, and mixed hearing losses
- Wide variety available depending on hearing needs and preferences
- Fitting and programming process is complex and completed by an audiologist

Bone-Anchored Hearing Aid (Osseointegrated Auditory Implant)

- Titanium implant surgically placed in mastoid bone behind the ear
- Sound processor is placed externally on the implant and conducts sounds via bone contact and vibration
- Primarily used in patients with unilateral or bilateral CHL with congenital ear malformation (i.e., atresia, canal stenosis)

Cochlear Implants

- Generally, it converts sound to electrical signal which stimulates cochlear nerve
- External component captures sounds and converts to electrical signal
- Internal component delivery frequency specific electrical signal to cochlear nerve
- Multiple cochlear implant devices are available depending on hearing loss pattern and patient preferences
- Cochlear implant criteria is very specific and includes a multidisciplinary teams (i.e., otolaryngologist, speech pathologist, audiologist, social worker, psychologist, etc.)
- In general, indicated for children with pre- or postlingual severe to profound bilateral high frequency SNHL
- Fitting and programming is a complex process performed by a specialized cochlear implant audiologist and requires multiple audiology visits

Nose and Nasopharynx

Choanal Atresia

Background
- Congenital obstruction of the choana (posterior nasal aperture—connects nasal cavity to nasopharynx)
- It may be membranous, bony, or mixed (CT scan of the head can help identify type of atresia)
- Unilateral or bilateral 2:1 ratio
- Can be associated with syndromes (e.g., CHARGE)

Clinical presentation
- Bilateral
  - Severe respiratory distress at birth; cyclical cyanosis—pink with crying, cyanotic when not crying
  - Requires immediate oral airway or intubation; refer to Otolaryngology once airway is secured for surgical repair in first few days of life
- Unilateral
  - Identified at birth due to inability to pass 6Fr catheter, or later in childhood with unilateral symptoms of rhinorrhea and decreased nasal patency
  - Surgical repair typically around 4 years of age

Epistaxis

Background
- In children, 90% of epistaxis occurs from anterior septum (Kiesselbach's plexus)
- Posterior epistaxis is rare in children
- Most common causes are: trauma (i.e., nose picking), mucosal irritation and drying, foreign body, and medications (e.g., nasal steroids)

Other causes
- Tumors, e.g., juvenile nasopharyngeal angiofibroma (JNA) (occurs in pubescent males)
- Vascular malformation: Osler–Weber–Rendu syndrome (+ family history)
- Bleeding diathesis: von Willebrand disease, leukemia, or liver disease

Management
- Usually self-limiting with application of constant pressure for 5 min by squeezing sides of the nose shut
- Discourage nose-picking/rubbing
- Avoid mucosal dryness—humidifier in bedroom; apply small amount of nasal lubricant to anterior septum
- If severe, will need IV access, formal nasal packing, +/− airway management, +/− hemodynamic resuscitation
- Refer to an Otolaryngologist if suspicious for FB, tumor, recurrent epistaxis, or severe epistaxis

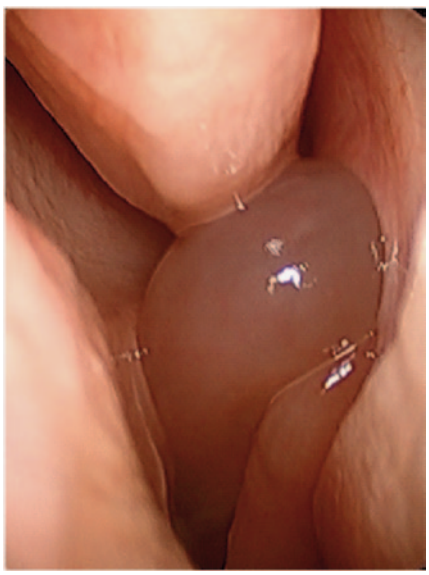
Allergic Rhinitis

- 1/3 of patient with allergic rhinitis have asthma
- Common allergens: pollens, animals (cats, dogs), dust mites, molds, etc

History
- Timing of symptoms: seasonal versus perennial
- Food hypersensitivities, comorbidities (e.g., asthma), fatigue

Symptoms
- Nose: sneezing, itching, congestion, clear rhinorrhea
- Eyes: itchy red watery eyes
- Ears: aural fullness (effusion)
- Face: frontal or periorbital headaches
- Larynx: scratchy throat, cough

Physical examination
- Eyes: dark skin under eyes ("allergic shiners"), periorbital puffiness
- Ears: effusions
- Mouth: mouth breather ("adenoid facies")
- Lungs: wheeze (associated with asthma or reactive airways)
- Nose: clear rhinorrhea, congested nasal mucosa and turbinates, transverse crease on nasal dorsum (suggestive of "allergic salute" from chronic nose rubbing), nasal polyps (rare in children)
  - if nasal polyps identified, consider testing for cystic fibrosis)



← Nasal Polyp

Diagnosis
- Skin allergy testing (e.g., scratch test, prick test, intradermal test)
- In vitro allergy testing indicated when unclear skin test results, risk of anaphylaxis, or presence of a skin disorder (i.e., dermatographia)
  - Radioallergosorbent test (RAST)
  - Enzyme-linked Immunosorbent Assay (ELISA)

Management
- Allergen avoidance
- Intranasal treatments
  - Nasal saline irrigations
  - Nasal corticosteroids (takes up to 3 weeks for maximal benefit)—first line [3]
  - Most effective maintenance therapy for allergic rhinitis
  - Nasal decongestant
  - Approved for patients 6 years of age or older
  - Limit use to 3–5 days to prevent rebound congestion
  - Use only if associated with respiratory distress due to nasal obstruction
- Cromolyn sodium nasal sprays—less effective than nasal steroid
- Antihistamine nasal spray

Systemic therapies
- Oral antihistamines
  - First generation oral antihistamines, for example, diphenhydramine (Benadryl), chlorpheniramine, and hydroxyzine are not recommended in children [12]
  - Second generation oral antihistamines (i.e., loratadine, cetirizine) have been approved for patients over 6 months of age
- Oral decongestants (not recommended in children)
- Oral antileukotrienes

Common Cold

- Self-limiting viral infection of the upper respiratory tract
- Typically, symptoms peak 2–3 days after onset then improve; the associated cough may linger up to 3 weeks

Epidemiology
- Most common in children 6 years of age or younger who on average experience six to eight colds annually
- Adolescents develop 4–5 per year
- Risk factors
  - Lack of previous exposure
  - Explores their environment with concomitant poor hygiene
  - Day care

- Seasonality
  - Cold season occurs between fall and spring
  - Early fall: rhinovirus increase
  - Late fall: parainfluenza viruses increase
  - Winter: RSV and coronavirus
  - Spring/summer: decrease in rhinovirus and enterovirus
- An effective vaccine for the common cold is unlikely

Signs and Symptoms
- Varying degrees of: sneezing, nasal congestion, rhinorrhea, sore throat, cough, low grade fever, headache, and malaise

Virology
- Rhinoviruses
  - Most common
  - Highest in early fall (September) and early spring (March/April)
- Parainfluenza viruses
  - Highest in late fall (October/November)
  - Manifest as croup in younger children and common cold in older children
- Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV)
  - Highest in winter months
  - Causes bronchiolitis in infants and young children
- Influenza viruses
  - Highest in winter months (along with RSV)
  - May manifest as febrile respiratory illness involving the lower respiratory tract, fatigue, muscle aches
- Adenoviruses
  - Present, but to a lesser degree during the fall/winter months
  - May manifests as pharyngoconjunctival fever, injected palpebral conjunctivae, Watery eye discharge, erythema of the oropharynx, fever
- Enteroviruses
  - Present during summer months

Treatment
- Colds self-limiting and treatment is supportive in nature
- Antibiotics have no role in the absence of a bacterial infection

Nasal Trauma

Background
- Nasal fractures are most common facial fracture in children (followed by mandible)
- Most commonly secondary to falls, sporting collisions, motor vehicle accidents

Presentation
- External nasal deformity, nasal obstruction, epistaxis, anosmia, septal deviation, edema, bruising

Assessment
- PALS, r/o injuries to: c-spine, CNS, chest, orbit/vision problems, midface stability, malocclusion, presence of telecanthus, cerebrospinal fluid leak, etc
- Nasal X-rays not useful
- Must evaluate for septal hematoma/abscess
  - Clinical presentation
  - Boggy asymmetrical swelling of the nasal septum not responsive to topical vasoconstriction
  - Management of nasal hematoma
  - Requires urgent drainage by an Otolaryngologist +/− bolster dressing to prevent nasal cartilage necrosis

Management
- If cosmetic deformity +/− functional issues (e.g., decreased nasal patency) refer to Otolaryngology for reduction of nasal fracture
  - Reduction of fracture is performed within 7–10 days of trauma

Sinuses

Acute Rhinosinusitis

Definitions
- Sinusitis: mucosal inflammation of paranasal sinuses typically caused by viral illness
- Acute bacterial rhinosinusitis (ABRS): sinusitis secondary to bacterial infection
- Acute: <90 days

Risk factors
- Upper respiratory tract infection
- Day care
- Allergic rhinitis
- Anatomic anomalies (e.g., septal deviation)

Presentation
- Congestion, purulent rhinorrhea, tenderness over sinuses

Clinical feature	Viral rhinosinusitis	Bacterial rhinosinusitis
Fever	Absent or occurs early (first 24 h)—low grade, resolves 2 days	Present, > 39 C (102 °F) × 3 days, may develop or recur days 6–7 of illness
Nasal discharge	Peaks days 3–6, then improves	Fails to improve or worsens
Cough	Peaks days 3–6, then improves	Fails to improve or worsens
Ill-appearance	Absent	If severe, or complicated
Severe headache	Absent	If severe, or complicated
Clinical course	Peaks days 3–6, then improves	> 10 days, without improvement

- Virology/microbiology
  - Viruses: rhinovirus, parainfluenza, influenza, adenovirus
  - Bacteria: *s. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae*, *Moraxella catarrhalis*
  - Risk for antimicrobial resistance [4]
    - Age < 2 years, daycare antibiotics in past month, hospitalization within 5 days

Treatment
- Over the counter cold medications or decongestants (either systemic or intranasal) are not recommended for children under under twelve years of age
- Supportive therapies: hydration, saline nasal rinses, acetaminophen/ibuprofen

Treatment of ABRS [13]
- Saline nasal rinses
- Antibiotics
  - First line: amoxicillin/clavulanic acid 45 mg/kg divided BID × 10–14 days
  - If at risk of resistance (see above)—90 mg/kg divided BID × 10–14 days
  - Third generation cephalosporins if penicillin hypersensitivity
- Surgery
  - No role in ABRS, unless evidence of complication (i.e., orbital or intracranial)
- Monitor for complications
  - Orbital
  - Preseptal cellulitis, orbital cellulitis, subperiosteal abscess, orbital abscess, cavernous sinus thrombosis
  - Intracranial
  - Meningitis, epidural abscess, subdural abscess, parenchymal abscess, etc
  - Osteomyelitis (typically of frontal bones)

Imaging
- CT scan of the sinuses is only indicated if:
  - Suspicious for sinusitis complications (e.g., orbital or intracranial)
  - Failure of antibiotic treatment × 48 h
  - Immunocompromised patient
- Findings: Opacification of sinuses, mucosal thickening, air-fluid levels
  - Note: These findings are also present with the common cold

Chronic Sinusitis

Definition
- Persistence of symptoms > 12 weeks
- Symptoms include: nasal congestion, facial pressure, nasal obstruction, rhinorrhea/postnasal drip, altered sense of smell

Risk factors
- Young age (developing immune system), URI, ciliary dysfunction, allergic rhinitis, GERD, immune deficiency, cystic fibrosis

Microbiology
- Aerobes: *S. pneumoniae*, *M. catarrhalis*, *H. influenzae*, *S. aureus*, *pseudomonas*
- Anaerobes: *peptococcus, peptostreptococcus, bacteroides*

Diagnosis
- Clinical diagnosis (imaging not required for diagnosis)
- Plan X-ray films are generally not helpful
- CT scan indicated when:
  - Failed medical management and surgical intervention is being considered

Treatment
- Medical management
  - Saline nasal rinses
  - Antibiotics: amoxicillin-clavulanic acid × 3–4 weeks
  - Topical nasal steroids
  - Consider treatment of GERD if suspicious
- Surgical
  - Only considered if failure of long-term medical management
  - Adenoidectomy is first line of surgery
  - If persistent symptoms following adenoidectomy and continues to fail medical management, may consider functional endoscopic sinus surgery (maxillary antrostomy and ethmoidectomy)
- Ancillary tests
  - If failed medical management consider allergy testing if suspicious for allergies
  - If negative, consider workup for primary immunodeficiency disorder if suspicious

Frontal Sinus Trauma

- Rare in children as frontal sinuses begin forming around 5–6 years of age
- Associated with high impact injury—must rule out c-spine injuries and intracranial injury
- May present with: forehead lacerations or swelling, palpable frontal defect, pain, epistaxis, cerebrospinal fluid leak
- CT scan optimal for identifying fractures; MRI considered in addition to assess intracranial involvement
- Consult Otolaryngology if presence of frontal sinus fracture for further management
- Conservative or surgical depending on fracture pattern
- Consult Neurosurgery if suspicious for intracranial involvement

Throat

Pharyngitis

Etiology
- Infectious (most common), allergy, GERD [6]
- Viral (most common)
  - Rhinovirus, coronavirus, adenovirus, HSV, EBV, coxsackievirus
  - Usually associated with symptoms of cough, sneezing, rhinorrhea, low grade fever
- Bacterial (*streptococci, pneumococci, H. influenzae*)
  - *Group A b-hemolytic streptococcus* (GABHS)—most common bacterial cause
  - Usually associated with symptoms of high-grade fever, tonsillar/palatal petechiae, exudative tonsils, tender lymphadenopathy. Rarely seen with cough or rhinorrhea
  - GABHS pharyngitis should be treated to reduce risk of rheumatic fever, and scarlet fever
  - Other bacterial causes: syphilis, pertussis, gonorrhea, diphtheria

Symptoms
- Sore throat, pain with swallowing, ear pain (referred), malaise, fever, oropharyngeal erythema, cervical lymphadenopathy pharyngeal

Diagnosis
- Based on history and physical exam
- Throat cultures
- GABHS rapid antigen test
- Monospot test (EBV)

Treatment
- Ensure airway safety
- Supportive
  - Hydration, humidity, analgesia
- Antibiotics if bacterial infection suspected (confirm with cultures)

Peritonsillar Abscess

Definition
- Peritonsillar space defined
  - Space between the palatine tonsil, superior constrictors, tonsillar pillars

Etiology
- More common in adolescent
- Spread of infection from tonsil
- Pathogens: Aerobes (*S. pyogenes*, *S. aureus*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, and *Neisseria* species) and anaerobes

Clinical presentation
- Sore throat, painful swallowing, uvular deviation to contralateral side (medialization), trismus, asymmetrical swelling on soft palate, "hot potato" voice, fevers, referred otalgia
- Symptoms are typically present for at least 3 days before abscess is formed

Diagnosis
- History and physical examination
- CT for atypical cases or if concerns for retropharyngeal/parapharyngeal space involvement

Management
- Surgical incision and drainage
- Antibiotic therapy (penicillin or clindamycin)
- Two or more PTA may require a tonsillectomy (bilateral) in the future once infection resolves
- "Quinsy tonsillectomy"—tonsillectomy at time of infection may be considered in younger children

Retropharyngeal Abscess

Definition
- Space between pharyngeal constrictors and alar fascia (skull base to mediastinum)

Etiology
- Infection most common in children
- Spread of infection from tonsils, sinuses, and/or nasopharynx

- Polymicrobial flora (most common: *staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus species, and anaerobes*)

Clinical presentation
- Fevers, "hot potato voice," painful swallowing, drooling, decreased neck range of motion (typically limited neck extension), possible airway compromise/stridor if severe

Diagnosis
- Lateral neck radiograph: abnormally increased thickness of the prevertebral soft tissue (greater than half thickness of the adjacent vertebral body)
- CT scan with contrast useful for localization, extension, phlegmon or abscess

Treatment
- Airway management if required and/or ongoing airway monitoring
- Hydration and analgesia
- Antibiotics (may consider third generation cephalosporin, clindamycin, or ampicillin/sulbactam for first line)
- Surgical drainage indicated when failed medical management, well-defined rim-enhancing abscess, systemically ill, and/or airway compromise

Retropharyngeal abscess	Peritonsillar abscess
<6 years old	Adolescent
Fever, throat pain, neck stiffness	Fever, throat pain, trismus
Purulence of retropharyngeal lymph node	Purulence of tonsillar fossa
May need imaging studies	Usually diagnosed clinically

Mouth and Oropharynx

Aphthous Ulcers

- Aphthous ulcers are the most common oral ulcer
- Etiology: idiopathic (most common), others causes include immune disorders, infections, hormonal cause, stress, trauma, nutrition
- Painful white ulcers on keratinized gingival surrounded by erythematous border
- Types
  - Minor: most common, <1 cm in diameter, painful, burning/tingling prodrome
  - Major: more painful, 1–3 cm in diameter, 1–10 ulcers at one time, scarring potential
  - Herpetiform: multiple small ulcers (1–3 mm in diameter)
- Sutton's disease: recurrent aphthous ulcers (major type)

Treatment
- Observation (self-limiting course)
- May also consider: analgesia, anti-inflammatories, antibiotics if superinfected, antivirals

Herpangina

- Pathogen: Coxsackie A virus
- Symptoms
  - High-grade fevers, rapid onset of symptoms, fatigue, decrease appetite, possible rash
  - Must have—small (1–2 mm) vesicular or ulcerative lesions surrounded by erythematous halos located on tonsillar pillars, palate, or buccal mucosa
- Diagnosis by clinical history and physical exam

Treatment
- Observation (self-limiting around 5–6 days), oral hygiene, hydration, and analgesics

Hand-Foot-Mouth Disease (HFMD)

- Most common cause is Coxsackievirus A16
- Clinical presentation
  - Low grade fever
  - Vesicles in the anterior and posterior oropharynx and may progress to ulceration
  - Maculopapular, vesicular, or pustular rash on the hand, feet, buttocks and groin
  - Most cases are mild and resolve in 3–5 days

Gingivostomatitis

- Pathogen: HSV-1 (primary infection or reactivation)
  - Primary most common in seronegative children
- Clinical presentation: small painful ulcerative vesicles with erythematous base and gray cover; difficulty swallowing, fever, malaise, cervical lymphadenopathy
- Resolution occurs in 1–2 weeks
- Reactivation is not associated with systemic symptoms
- Diagnosis: history and physical exam; viral cultures, DNA hybridization
- Treatment: supportive, oral acyclovir for infections, consider acyclovir for prophylaxis if immunocompromised

Ankyloglossia

- Abnormally short frenulum limiting effective tongue mobility

- In infants, if severe, may present with suckling difficulties, painful latch (if breastfeeding)
- In older children, may result in speech articulation issues, social mechanical issues (i.e., difficulty licking an ice cream cone, keeping teeth clean, playing wind instruments, "French" kissing)
- Surgical intervention indicated for problematic symptoms

Mucocele

- Painless, bluish submucosal lesion appearing on the lower lip
- Typically, secondary to trauma (i.e., biting lower lip)
- Can slowly grow in size
- Treatment: observation if not bothersome; surgical excision

Parotitis

Etiology
- Salivary stasis, obstruction, retrograde bacterial migration, idiopathic
- Bacteria: *S. aureus* (most common), *streptococcus viridans*, *H. influenzae*, *S. pyogenes*, *E. coli*
- Viruses: HIV, mumps, influenza, coxsackie
- Recurrent parotitis of childhood
  - Unknown etiology
  - Episodes occur every 1–3 months
  - May alternate sides
  - Typically resolves spontaneously
  - No antibiotic therapy needed unless presence of systemic symptoms

Symptoms
- Tender, red, warm parotid gland
- Purulence at Stensen's duct with "milking" of gland

Diagnosis
- History and physical exam
- Cultures of purulent discharge to help guide antibiotic therapy

Treatment
- Conservative: rehydration, warm compresses, parotid massage, sialogogues
- Antibiotics (based on cultures)
- If no improvement with above treatment, consider parotid imaging (CT or US)

Cleft Lip and Palate

Epidemiology
- Second most common malformation (after clubfoot)
- Cleft lip and palate: 1/1000 births
- Cleft palate: 1/2000 births
- Cleft lips (+/− cleft palate) and isolated cleft palate occur in distinct genetic lines
- Higher prevalence in Asians and Native Americans
- Cleft lip: males > females
- Isolated cleft palate: females > males

Risk factors
- Teratogens (ethanol, thalidomide)
- Maternal diabetes
- Amniotic band syndrome

Genetic evaluation
- 8% of isolated cleft palates are associated with a syndrome
- Over 200 syndromes associated with CL/CLP, most common include:
  - Sticklers: CP, retinal detachment, cataracts
  - Treacher Collins Syndrome: CP, midface hypoplasia, eyelid colobomas, ossicular abnormalities
  - Apert syndrome: CP, acrocephaly, fused digits, stapes fixation

Feeding difficulties
- Infants experience difficulty with "seal"—often requires specialized nipple (i.e., Mead–Johnson cross-cut; McGovern's nipples)
- Often requires feeding in more upright position with frequent rests and burping

Otologic disease
- Increased risk of developing eustachian tube dysfunction resulting in OME with CP/CLP
- Often requires myringotomy/ventilation tubes

Timing of surgical intervention
- A cleft lip generally is surgically repaired between the ages of 10 and 12 weeks
- "Rule of tens"—10 pounds, 10 weeks old, and hemoglobin of 10.0 g/dL (100.0 g/L)
- A cleft palate usually is repaired between 9 and 12 months of age

Follow for
- Difficulty in feeding and growth
- Recurrent ear infections/possible hearing loss

- Dysfunctional speech and communication (i.e., velopharyngeal dysfunction)
- Dental problems
- Social struggles because of the child's appearance

Robin Sequence (RS)

- Sequence defined as: micrognathia, cleft palate, and glossoptosis
- Occurs in isolation, or with associated syndrome (i.e., trisomy 18 or Stickler syndrome)
- Infants with RS are at high risk to develop respiratory distress and potentially have "difficult airways" given anatomy. These infants require close airway monitoring in the postnatal period
- Management of respiratory distress in RS
  - Prone positioning
  - Place suture at tip of tongue and pull tongue forward
  - Intubate if needed. If unable to intubate, place a laryngeal mask airway (LMA)
  - If patient fails extubation, patient may require:
    - Mandibular distraction
    - Tracheostomy

Delayed Dental Eruption

- Normal range for dental eruption is between 8 and 18 months
- Delayed dental eruption is considered when teeth fail to erupt within 12 months of "normal range"
- Possible etiologies include: hypothyroidism, hypopituitarism, ectodermal dysplasia, rickets

Odontogenic Infection

Etiology
- Caries are typically primary cause of odontogenic infections
- Polymicrobial
  - *Streptococcus mutans* (most common cause of initial caries infection)
  - Alpha-hemolytic streptococci
  - Anaerobes (*peptostreptococcus*, *bacteroides*, *fusobacterium*)

Clinical presentation
- Localized pain, edema, erythema, purulence
- Sensitivity to temperatures and palpation, loose tooth
- Orofacial swelling
  - Swelling below jaw (mandibular abscess)
  - Periorbital swelling (maxillary abscess)

Imaging
- Evaluate airway compromise, gas-producing organisms, presence of abscess, extent of involvement
- Panorex
- CT scan

Treatment
- Remove source of infection (i.e., tooth)
- Analgesia
- Antibiotics
- I & D if abscess present

Early Childhood Caries

Definition
- Caries affecting the primary dentition especially in the first 3 years of life

Caries formation
- Chronic infectious disease
- Pathogenesis: tooth-adherent bacteria (most commonly *streptococci mutans*) metabolizes sugars to produce acid that leads to demineralization of the tooth structure

Risk factors
- Bottle propping (affects predominantly central incisors)
- Low-income households
- Excessive consumption of sugar
- Genetic factors

Prevention
- A dental visit within the first 6 months of first tooth eruption and no later than one year of age
- Tooth brushing is suggested twice daily with an age appropriate size of fluoridated toothpaste (discourage swallowing toothpaste to prevent fluorosis)
- Avoid high frequency consumption of high sugar liquids/solid foods
- Recommend weaning from bottle between 12 and 18 months and transitioning to a cup

Fluoride supplementation
- Dental fluorosis occurs during the development of the tooth (critical ages between 0 and 6 years of age, with most important being between 15 and 30 months) [7]
- Be aware that access to fluoridated water may be limited in some areas in the USA
- Optimal water fluoridation is 0.7 ppm of fluoride
- If limited access to fluoridated water, supplementation may be considered, especially for patients between 15 and 30 months of age

Dental Trauma and Avulsions

Primary tooth avulsion
- Refer to the dentist for follow-up to rule out any associated problems
- Avoid reimplantation of primary avulsed tooth
- Permanent tooth avulsion (it is a true dental emergency) [1]
  - Reimplantation of tooth
    - If reimplanted within 5 min—tooth survival rate is 85–97%
    - If reimplanted after 1 h of injury—tooth is unlikely to survive
  - Instructions for avulsed permanent tooth:
    - Gently wash the avulsed tooth with no rubbing or brushing
    - Re-implant the tooth into the socket as soon as possible
    - If not possible, preserve the tooth in saliva, milk, or normal saline
    - Goal: to maintain viability of the periodontal ligament fibers
    - Child should be transported to a dentist office or nearest emergency room

Neck

Cervical Lymphadenitis

Pathogens
- Viral: EBV (most common viral), CMV, HSV, adenovirus, enterovirus, roseola, rubella, HIV
- Bacterial: Group A Strep (most common), *Staph aureus*

Clinical presentation
- Fevers (typically low grade for viral), malaise, tender and mobile cervical nodes (Fig. 8)

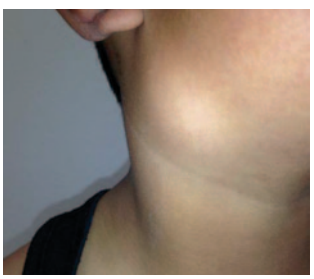


Fig. 8 9-year-old boy presented with high fever 104 °F, malaise, and tender large bacterial cervical lymphadenopathy

Diagnosis
- History and physical examination
- Possible aspiration for culture and sensitivity

Complications:
- Cellulitis, abscess, internal jugular vein thrombosis, mediastinitis, sepsis

Treatment
- Viral: supportive
- Bacterial
  - Antibiotics
  - Incision and drainage if abscess formation

Infectious Mononucleosis

- Caused by Epstein–Barr virus (EBV)

Clinical presentation
- Fever, pharyngitis, and lymphadenopathy
- Symmetric cervical adenopathy (posterior triangle nodes most commonly)
- Axillary and inguinal nodes also may be involved.
- Fatigue, malaise, splenomegaly

Diagnostic tests
- Monospot test ("heterophile antibody")
  - High false negative rate if obtained early on in illness or in children under 4 years of age
- Elevated immunoglobulin M titer to viral capsid antigen (IgM-VCA), indicate acute infection

Cat-Scratch Disease

Pathogen: *Bartonella henselae*

Clinical presentation
- Present ~2 weeks after cat scratch or bite (usually from a kitten)
- Papular lesion at primary scratch site associated with cervical lymphadenopathy (tender initially, then becomes painless)—may ulcerate and form fistula
- Fever (often mild), malaise
- Diagnosis: serology (IgG henselae titers), culture (Warthin–Starry stain), PCR, histopathology

Treatment
- Supportive (typically self-limiting)
- Antibiotic therapy in immunocompromised patients
- Surgical aspiration for culture, but avoid formal incision and drainage to prevent fistula/sinus formation

Atypical Mycobacteria

- Pathogen: *mycobacterium avium complex*, *M. scrofulaceum*, *M. kansasii*
- Risk factors: young children, immunocompromised

Clinical presentation
- Asymptomatic
- Unilateral cervical lymphadenopathy, preauricular adenopathy, commonly located on face over body of mandible
- Adhesive to overlying skin and overlying skin is erythematous in advanced disease

Diagnosis
- Acid-fast stain, culture (requires 2–4 weeks for results)

Treatment
- Watchful waiting (typically takes months to resolve)
- Excision or incision and curettage (avoid incision and drainage)

Other Causes Lymphadenitis

- Tuberculosis: in children, less common than atypical mycobacterium
- Kawasaki disease (mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome)
  - Acute vasculitis affecting multiple organs in children
  - Diagnosis
    - Must have 5 of the following:
    - Fever > 5 days (high)—absolute criteria
    - Erythematous rash
    - Conjunctival injection
    - Oropharyngeal changes
    - Peripheral extremity changes (induration or desquamation)
    - Cervical lymphadenopathy
    - Echocardiogram
    - High risk of developing coronary aneurysm or myocardial infarction

Kikuchi
- Rare disease of unknown etiology
- Presentation: young women, cervical and generalized lymphadenopathy, fever, night sweats, rash, weight loss, nausea and vomiting
- Diagnosis: lymph node biopsy—histiocytic necrotizing lymphadenitis
- Treatment
  - No effective treatment, typically resolves within 1 to 4 months
  - Symptom control with steroids
  - Follow up is necessary as patient with Kikuchi are at higher risk of developing systemic lupus

Tularemia
- Pathogen: *Francisella tularensis*
- Transmission: contact with infected animal (i.e., rabbit or hamster)
- Presentation: febrile illness, ulceroglandular syndrome (painful regional lymphadenopathy and an ulcerated skin lesion)
- Treatment: streptomycin

Castleman's disease
- Lymphoproliferative disorder localized to a single node (unicentric) or systemically (multicentric)
- Unicentric
  - Typically asymptomatic—presents with an enlarged lymph node (20% in neck)
  - CT scan shows a well-circumscribed mass
  - Pathology demonstrates nodal expansion
  - Surgical removal is curative 90% of the time
- Multicentric
  - 50% are associated with Kaposi sarcoma-associated herpes virus and/or human herpesvirus type 8
  - No standard treatment. May include: antivirals, chemotherapy, corticosteroids, monoclonal antibodies
  - Refer to Oncology

Lymphoma

- Most common pediatric malignancy of the head and neck
- Lymphoproliferative disorder
- Hodgkin's and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma may present with cervical lymphadenopathy

Clinical presentation
- Nodal masses—may present with cervical nodes
- Hodgkin: contiguous lymph nodes
- Non-Hodgkin lymphoma: may present with extranodal involvement (i.e., enlarged tonsil, base of tongue, enlarged thyroid, etc.)
- Constitutional symptoms: fevers, night sweats, weight loss

Diagnosis
- History and physical examination
- Evaluation of all nodal sites
- Open biopsy (rather than fine needle biopsy)—fresh tissue is required for immunochemistry

Management
- If positive for lymphoma, refer to oncology

Thyroglossal Cyst

Definition
- Failed obliteration of thyroglossal duct

Clinical presentation
- Midline neck mass (often cystic)—inferior to hyoid bone and superior to thyroid
- Elevates with tongue protrusion (pathognomonic)

Complications
- May become infected
- Rare malignant potential

Treatment
- Treat infection with antibiotics (avoid incision and drainage)
- Surgical removal when not infected (Sistrunk procedure)

Branchial Cleft Cyst

- Alterations of the branchial apparatus resulting in cysts, sinuses, or fistula

Presentation
- Unilateral (most commonly)
- Anterior neck mass (typically anterior to SCM muscle), sinus, or fistula
- May become infected with drainage (associated with URI)

Treatment
- Treat infection with antibiotics (avoid incision and drainage)
- Complete surgical excision of cyst, sinus, and fistula tract once infection resolves

Lymphatic Malformation

- Also known as cystic hygroma and lymphangioma (outdated terms)
- Etiology: abnormal lymphatic development

Presentation
- May occur anywhere in body
- Soft, painless, multiloculated, compressible mass that transilluminates
  - In cervical region, posterior triangle is most common
- Present at birth or shortly thereafter
- Associated symptoms related to mass compression of nearby structures

Imaging: MRI preferred

Management
- Observation if small and no associated complications
- Sclerosing agents
- Surgical excision

Acute Laryngitis

Etiology
- Infectious (most commonly viral, may have secondary bacterial infection)
- Fungal infection (immunocompromised child)
- Vocal strain (secondary to screaming/yelling)

Management
- Generally self-limiting
- Optimize hydration
- Humidification
- Salt-water gargles
- Treat with antibiotics or antifungals if bacterial or fungal infection suspected

Chronic Laryngitis/Hoarseness

- Definition: symptoms of hoarseness, dysphonia, and/or vocal fatigue for > 3 months
- Associated symptoms: chronic cough, frequent throat clearing

Etiology
- Typically noninfectious causes (most common vocal fold "screamers" nodules)
- Environmental irritants
- Environmental allergies
- Postnasal drip
- Medications (e.g., inhaled steroids)
- Gastroesophageal reflux disease
- Rarely, chronic systemic disease (e.g., amyloid, Wegner's, etc.) or malignancy

Diagnosis
- ENT referral for flexible laryngoscopy

Management
- Treat underlying cause

Vocal Fold Paralysis

Background
- One of the most common laryngeal abnormalities in childhood
- Unilateral or bilateral paralysis of the vocal fold
- Congenital or acquired

Etiology
- Iatrogenic (most common): cardiothoracic surgery, tracheoesophageal fistula repair, thyroidectomy)
- Idiopathic
- Viral
- Autoimmune
- Neurologic (e.g., Arnold–Chiari malformation, posterior fossa tumor)
- Pulmonary lesion

Diagnosis
- Refer to ENT for flexible laryngoscope which will assess for vocal fold mobility, mucosal lesions, and laryngeal masses

Workup of vocal fold paralysis
- Observation (if known iatrogenic cause)
- CXR
- Modified barium swallow (to assess for aspiration)
- MRI head
- CT neck and chest

Treatment
- Observation
  - Monitor for signs of aspiration or respiratory distress
  - Monitor for signs for recovery
- Surgery
  - Tracheostomy
  - Vocal fold surgery
  - Hypoglossal to recurrent laryngeal nerve reanastomosis

Surgical Interventions

Indication for Tonsillectomy (+/– Adenoidectomy) [2, 9]

Absolute indications
- Moderate to severe obstructive sleep apnea
- Suspicions of tonsillar malignancy

Relative indications
- Mild obstructive sleep apnea
- Recurrent tonsillitis—must meet criteria
  - Frequency
    - Seven or more episodes in 1 year, or
    - Five or more episodes per year for 2 years, or
    - Three or more episodes per year for 3 years
- Associated with one or more of the following:
  - Temperature > 38.3
  - Cervical lymphadenopathy
  - Tonsillar exudate
  - Positive test for GABHS
- Chronic tonsillitis unresponsive to antimicrobial therapy
- Severe halitosis
- Peritonsillar abscess (greater than one episode)
- PFAPA syndrome (periodic fever, aphthous ulcers, pharyngitis, cervical adenitis)

Indication for Adenoidectomy Alone

- Moderate to severe nasal obstruction with persistent symptoms
- Refractory chronic sinusitis
- Recurrent acute otitis media or otitis media with effusion in a child who had prior tympanostomy tubes which have now extruded (e.g., repeat surgery when indicated would consist of adenoidectomy plus myringotomy ± insertion of ventilation tube)

Postsurgical Complications of Adenotonsillectomy

- Anesthesia related
- Pain: Moderate to severe lasting 7–14 days, requiring analgesia
- Hemorrhage:
  - Bimodal timing
  - < 24 h postoperative: ~<2%
  - 5–7 days postoperative (sloughing of eschar): ~3%
- Dehydration secondary to decrease oral intake
- Halitosis (expected)
- Immediate postoperative airway obstruction (due to anesthesia, analgesia, or sleep apnea)
- Persistence of obstructive sleep apnea
- Velopharyngeal insufficiency (VPI)
  - New onset or worsening of existing VPI
  - High-risk patients: cleft palate, submucous cleft palate, impaired baseline palatal movement (e.g., neurogenic), very large adenoid pad, velocardiofacial syndrome

Indication for Myringotomy and Tympanostomy Tubes for Acute Otitis Media (AOM) and Otitis Media with Effusion (OME) [10]

- Bilateral myringotomy and tympanostomy tubes are indicated when in a patient with:
  - Bilateral OME for 3 months or more and documented hearing difficulties
  - Unilateral or bilateral OME for 3 months and symptoms likely related to OME, for example, vestibular symptoms, poor school performance, behavioral difficulties, ear discomfort, and decreased quality of life
  - Recurrent AOM and unilateral or bilateral middle ear effusion at time of assessment
  - In at risk children, with unilateral or bilateral OME that is unlikely to resolve quickly as reflected by a type B tympanogram (flat) or persistent effusion for 3 months or longer

Complications of Tympanostomy Tubes

- Anesthesia related
- Tube otorrhea (most common)
- Blockage of tube
- Granulation tissue formation
- Displacement of tube in middle ear
- Tympanic membrane changes: myringosclerosis, atrophy, atelectasis, retraction pocket
- Persistent tympanic membrane perforation (may required surgical repair)

Suggested Readings

1. Andersson L, Andreasen JO, Day P, Heithersay G, Trope M, Diangelis AJ, Kenny DJ, Sigurdsson A, Bourguignon C, Flores MT, Hicks ML, Lenzi AR, Malmgren B, Moule AJ, Tsukiboshi M. International Association of Dental Traumatology guidelines for the management of traumatic dental injuries: Avulsion of permanent teeth. Dental Traumatol. 2012;28(2):88.
2. Baugh RF, Archer SM, Mitchell RB, Rosenfeld RM, Amin R, Burns JJ, Darrow DH, Giordano T, Litman RS, Li KK, Mannix ME, Schwartz RH, Setzen G, Wald ER, Wall E, Sandberg G, Patel MM. Clinical practice guideline: tonsillectomy in children. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 2011;144(1 Suppl):S1
3. Berger WE, Kaiser H, Gawchik SM, Tillinghast J, Woodworth TH, Dupclay L, Georges GC. Triamcinolone acetonide aqueous nasal spray and fluticasone propionate are equally effective for relief of nasal symptoms in patients with seasonal allergic rhinitis. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 2003;129(1):16.
4. Chow AW, Benninger MS, Brook I, Brozek JL, Goldstein EJ, Hicks LA, Pankey GA, Seleznick M, Volturo G, Wald ER. IDSA clinical practice guideline for acute bacterial rhinosinusitis in children and adults. Clin Infect Dis. 2012;54(8):e72.
5. Genetic Evaluation of Congenital Hearing loss expert panel. Genetic evaluation guidelines for the etiologic diagnosis of congenital hearing loss. Genet Med. 2002;4(3):162–171.
6. Gerber MA. Diagnosis and treatment of pharyngitis in children. Pediatr Clin N Am. 2005;52:729–747
7. Hong L, Levy SM, Broffitt B, Warren JJ, Kanellis MJ, Wefel JS, Dawson DV. Timing of fluoride intake in relation to development of fluorosis on maxillary central incisors. Community Dent Oral Epidemiol. 2006;34(4):299
8. Lieberthal AS, Carroll AE, Chonmaitree T, Ganiats TG, Hoberman A, Jackson MA, Joffe MD, Miller DT, Rosenfeld R, Sevilla XD, Schwartz RH, Thomas PA, Tunkel E. The diagnosis and management of acute otitis media. Pediatrics. 2013;131(3):e964–998.
9. Ramos SD, Mukerji S, Pine HS Tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy. Pediatr Clin North Am. 2013 Aug;60(4):793–807. Epub 2013 Jul 3.
10. Rosenfeld RM, Schwartz SR, Pynnonen MA, Tunkel DE, Hussey HM, Fichera JS, Grimes AM, Hackell JM, Harrison MF, Haskell H, Haynes DS, Kim TW, Lafreniere DC, LeBlanc K, Mackey WL, Netterville JL, Pipan ME, Raol NP, Schellhase KG. Clinical practice guideline: Tympanostomy tubes in children. Otolaryngology Head Neck Surg. 2013. 149(1 Suppl):S1–S35
11. Uhari M, Mantysaari K, Niemela M. A meta-analytic review of the risk factors for acute otitis media. Clin Infect Dis. 1996; 22(6):1079.
12. Vuurman EF, van Veggel LM, Uiterwijk MM, Leutner D, O'Hanlon JF. Seasonal allergic rhinitis and antihistamine effects on children's learning. Ann Allergy. 1993;71(2):121.
13. Wald ER, Applegate KE, Bordley C, Darrow DH, Glode MP, Marcy SM, Nelson CE, Rosenfeld RM, Shaikh N, Smith MJ, Williams PV, Weinberg ST. Clinical practice guideline for the diagnosis and management of acute bacterial sinusitis in children aged 1 to 18 years. Pediatrics. 2013;132(1):e262–280.
14. Wang RY, Earl DL, Ruder R, Graham JM. Syndromic ear anomalies and renal ultrasounds. Pediatrics. 2001;108(2):E32.

Skin Disorders

Sitratullah Olawunmi Kukoyi-Maiyegun

Skin Disorders in Neonates

Erythema Toxicum

Background
- Cause is unknown
- Occurs in 50 % of infants
- Benign self limited condition
- Usually begin 24–48 h after birth
- Lesion may appear as late as 10 days

Clinical presentation
- Discrete erythematous blotchy macules or patches, each with a central papule, vesicle, or pustule.
- May cluster and form erythematous plaque
- Rashes are filled with *eosinophils*.
- The process lasts a week or less

Management
- Reassurance

Similar presenting rash
- Incontinentia pigmenti appears in females as vesicles in the first 2 weeks after birth, and goes through stages. See below for more details.

Transient Neonatal Pustular Melanosis

Background
- The cause is unknown.
- Benign condition usually resolves in several days.

Clinical presentation
- Vesicles, superficial pustules, and pigmented macules on the skin and is present at birth.
- Surrounding desquamation and hyperpigmentation
- The vesicles and pustules rupture easily and resolve within 48 h.
- The brown macules may persist for several months.
- The rashes are filled with *polymorphonuclear leukocytes***.**
- A Gram stain will show no organisms in pustular melanosis but Gram-positive cocci in clusters in *Staphylococcal* pustules.

Management
- Reassurance (Table 1).

Intertrigo

Cause
- Rubbing of moist skin surface results in erosion.
- May become secondarily infected with *Candida* species.

Clinical presentation
- Erythematous and superficial erosion located in the skin fold

Management
- Apply adsorbent powder.
- Severe cases may apply low potency topical corticosteroid.
- Anti-fungal if *Candida* infection or antibiotics if Streptococcal infection suspected

Miliaria

- Disorder of the eccrine sweat glands

S. O. Kukoyi-Maiyegun (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Science Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: Sitratullah.maiyegun@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_23,

Table 1 Common forms of diaper rash

Diaper rash	Irritant dermatitis	Candidiasis	Seborrheic dermatitis
Cause	Moisture, friction, enzymes in stool	*Candida* species	Unknown; may present inflammatory response to *Malassezia furfur*
Clinical presentation	Erythematous patches that involve convex areas and inguinal folds often spared	Erythematous patches that involve in the convex areas and inguinal creases Satellite papules and pustules Scaling at the margins of involved area (Fig. 1)	Salmon-pink patches with greasy scale that involve the convex areas and inguinal creases Involvement of scalp, face, retroauricular creases, and other areas may be affected
Management	Frequent diaper change High absorbable diapers Topical barrier creams or ointment with every diaper change	Topical antifungal cream	Topical antifungal cream, or topical low-potency corticosteroids Scalp: oil massage and brushing, or anti-seborrhea shampoo

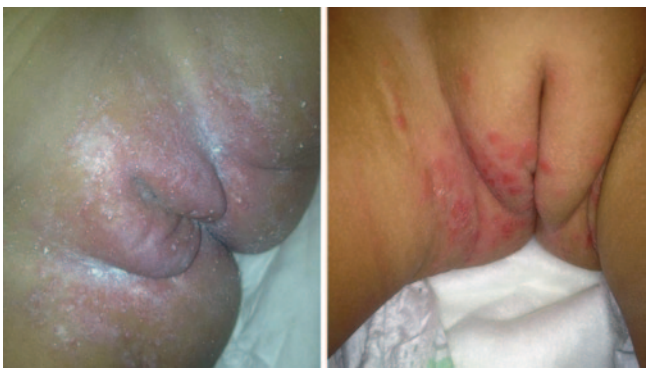


Fig. 1 A 3-month-old girl with candida diaper rash

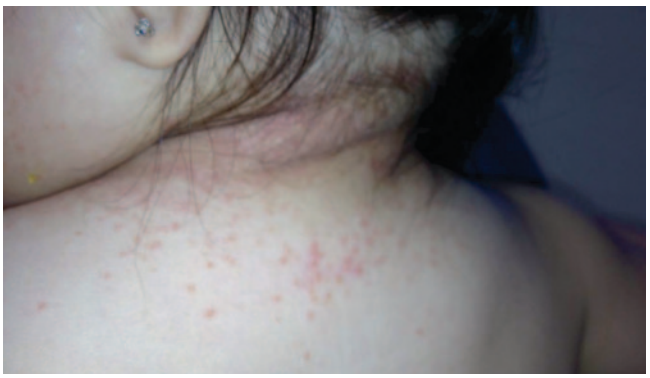


Fig. 2 A 3–months-old girl with Miliaria rubra on the neck and back

- *Miliaria rubra*: Erythematous papules located on the forehead; upper trunk, flexural areas, for example, neck folds, or under clothing (Fig. 2)
- *Miliaria crystallina*: Fragile, noninflamed, small vesicles filled with clear fluid
- *Miliaria pustulosa*: Pustules with surrounding erythematous that are located on the forehead, upper trunk, and flexural areas for example, neck fold.

Management

- Avoid overheated environment, overdressing the infant, or applying thick emollients.
- Provide cool bath, or sponge bath and air-conditioned environment

Nevus Sebaceous (of Jadassohn)

Background

- Hamartoma of sebaceous and apocrine glands, and epidermal elements
- Rarely associated with neurologic, ocular, or skeletal abnormalities

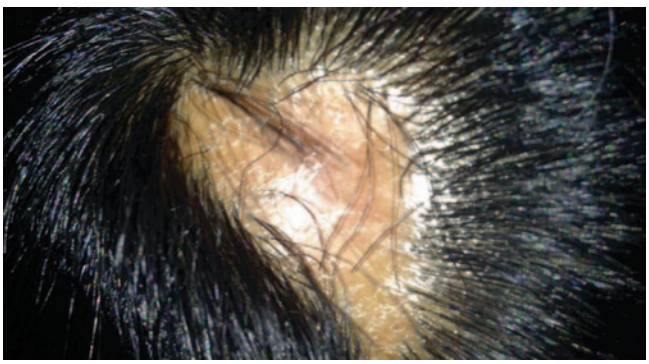


Fig. 3 A 3-year-old boy with sebaceous nevus of Jadassohn. He is neurologically normal

Clinical presentation

- Usually appears at birth as a solitary, yellow, yellow brown, orange, or pink, well-circumscribed, round, or oval plaque, having a velvety or verrucous texture.
- Typically located on the scalp (Fig. 3)

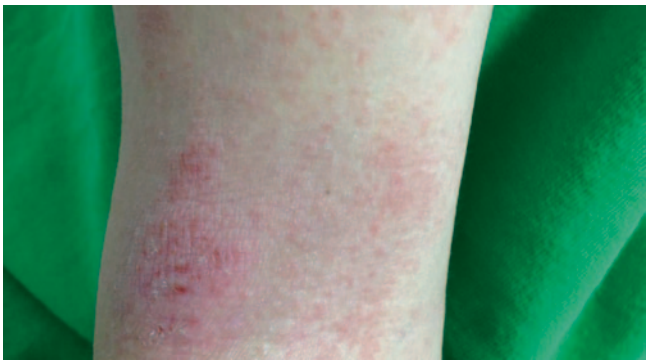


Fig. 4 A 14-year-old boy with eczematous rash in the cubital fossa

Management
- No treatment is required during infancy or childhood.
- Some advise elective excision after puberty because of the risk of developing adnexal tumor or basal cell carcinoma.

Prognosis
- There is a small chance of malignant transformation.

Dermatitis

Atopic Dermatitis

Background
- It is a chronic inflammatory, relapsing, noncontagious, and pruritic skin disorder.
- The cause is unknown.
- Children who have one component of atopy syndrome (allergic rhinitis, asthma, atopic dermatitis) have a threefold greater risk of developing a second component.
- Body distribution of the rash depends on the child's age.
- Children with atopic dermatitis are prone to recurrent skin infections, especially with *Staphylococcus aureus*, herpes simplex virus (HSV), and *Molluscum contagiosum*.

Exacerbating factors that increase itching and scratching include
- Exposure to heat sunlight, chemicals, and sweat retention
- Cold weather and low humidity may cause skin to become dry.
- Wool or synthetic materials, fragrances, harsh soaps or detergents, and some fabric softeners may also cause exacerbations
- Exacerbations of eczema disrupt the skin's protective barrier and defects in cytokine production and T-cell function.

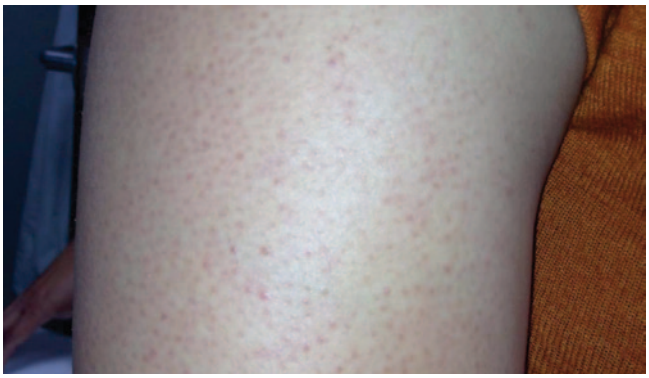


Fig. 5 A 12-year-old boy with asthma and Keratosis pilaris on the right upper arm

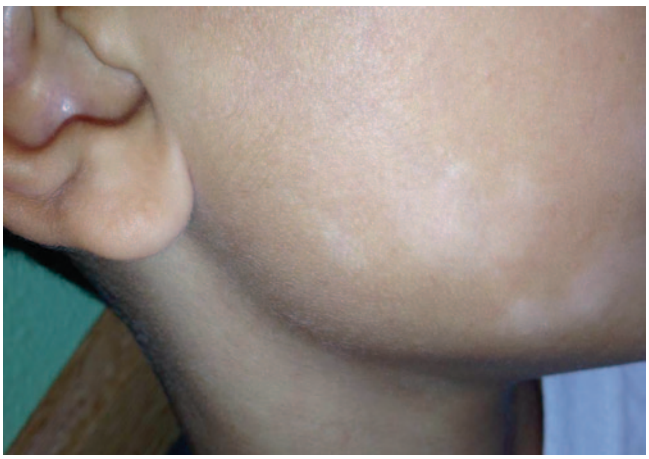


Fig. 6 A 6-year-old boy with Pityriasis alba the face shows different sizes, and poorly defined areas of hypopigmentations

General presentation
- Pruritus with resultant scratching that leads to excoriations and lichenification.
- Infants and toddlers: involvement of the face, trunk, and extensor extremities
- Childhood: flexural areas, such as the antecubital (Fig. 4) and popliteal fossa
- Adolescents: flexural distribution but often develop lesions in hands, face, and neck

Keratosis pilaris
- Papules centered around the follicles that have a central core of keratin debris, and at times surrounding erythema
- Lesions usually located on the upper outer arms, face, and thighs (Fig. 5)

Pityriasis alba
- Small, poorly defined areas of hypopigmentation located on the face or elsewhere (Fig. 6)

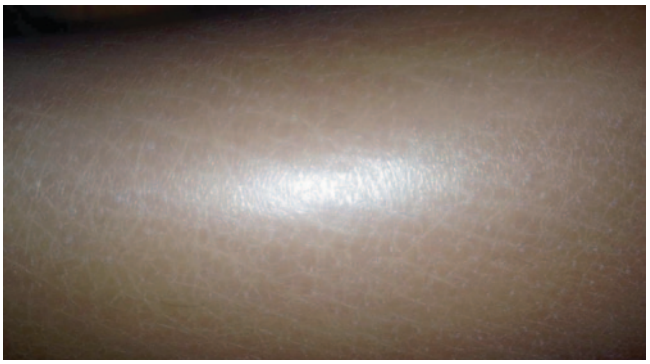


Fig. 7 A 7-year-old boy with ichthyosis vulgaris, the skin is dry with polygonal scales

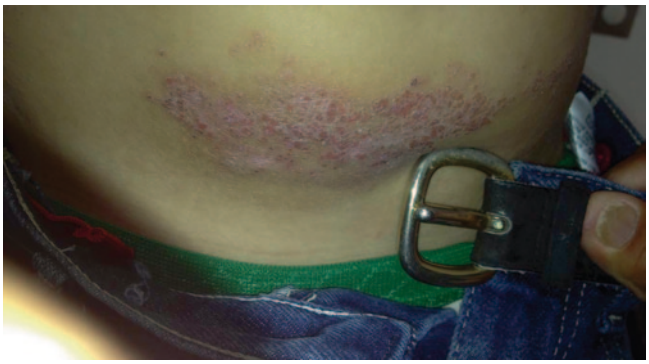


Fig. 9 A 10-year-old boy with nickel contact dermatitis

Ichthyosis vulgaris

- Polygonal scales, most commonly involving the lower extremities (Fig. 7)

Dyshidrotic eczema

- Recurrent or chronic vesicular rash that primarily affects the palms, lateral fingers, and soles.

Management

- Keratolytic agents (lactic acid, citric acid) are effective therapies in the management of ichthyosis vulgaris.
- The use of emollients is a cornerstone of therapy. Ointments based are preferred.
- Corticosteroids twice daily as needed. Ointments are preferred.
- Antibiotics as needed for secondary bacterial infections.
- Allergen elimination when appropriate, should be undertaken.

Nummular Eczema

- It is unrelated to other types of eczema
- Coin-shaped scaling or crusted plaques that may be hyper pigmented (Fig. 8a, 8b).
- The plaques are relatively discrete, boggy, vesicular, severely pruritic, and exudative; when chronic, they often become thickened and lichenified.
- Differentiated from Tinea corporis by lack of a raised, sharply circumscribed border; the lack of fungal organism in KOH preparation.

Allergic Contact Dermatitis

Background

- Delayed hypersensitivity reaction
- Mechanical or chemical irritation of the skin, or allergic contact dermatitis, involving antigen introduction and recruitment of previously sensitized lymphocytes to the skin.

Rhus dermatitis (poison ivy)

- Poison ivy is due to production of urushiol within the sap of the plant that causes itching and irritation, and painful rash often shows up in lines or streaks.
- Often vesiculobullous, and may be distinguished by linear streaks of vesicles where the plant leaves brushes against the skin
- Fluid from ruptured vesicular or bullous lesions do not spread eruption
- Management

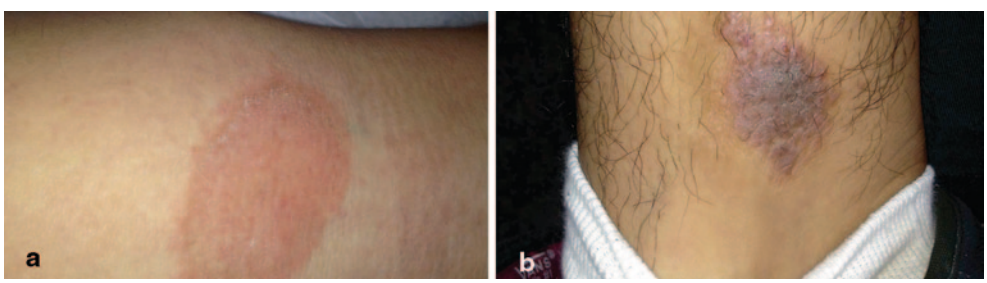


Fig. 8 **a** A 5-year-old girl with nummular eczema on the back of her left thigh. **b** A 17-year-old boy with nummular eczema on the distal left leg

- Immediate washing with soap and water with poison ivy contact
- Antihistamine
- Topical or systemic steroids.

Nickel dermatitis
- Usually develops from contact with jewelry or metal closures (Fig. 9)

Perioral irritant contact dermatitis
- From licking lips

Juvenile plantar dermatosis
- Often seen in atopic children.
- Erythema, dryness, scaling, lichenification, and cracking localized to the plantar surface and usually give glazed appearance of plantar surface on weight bearing areas of toes and feet; sparing the interdigital web space.

Management
- Reduce friction, lubricate the dry skin, cover the cracks, and topical steroids for flares.
- Immediate application of emollients after removal of shoe or socks

Seborrheic Dermatitis

Background
- The cause is unknown; may present inflammatory response to *Malassezia furfur*
- It particularly affects the sebaceous gland-rich areas of skin in neonates and adolescent

Clinical presentation
- Scaly, flaky, itchy, and red skin.
- Salmon-pink patches with greasy scale that involve the convex areas and inguinal creases in diaper area
- Involvement of scalp, face, retro-auricular creases, and other areas may be affected
- Seborrhea capitis (cradle cap) is common in babies (Fig. 10)
- It particularly affects the sebaceous gland-rich areas of skin in neonates and adolescent.

Management
- Baby oil, shampoo, selenium sulphide, ketoconazole shampoo, and steroid.

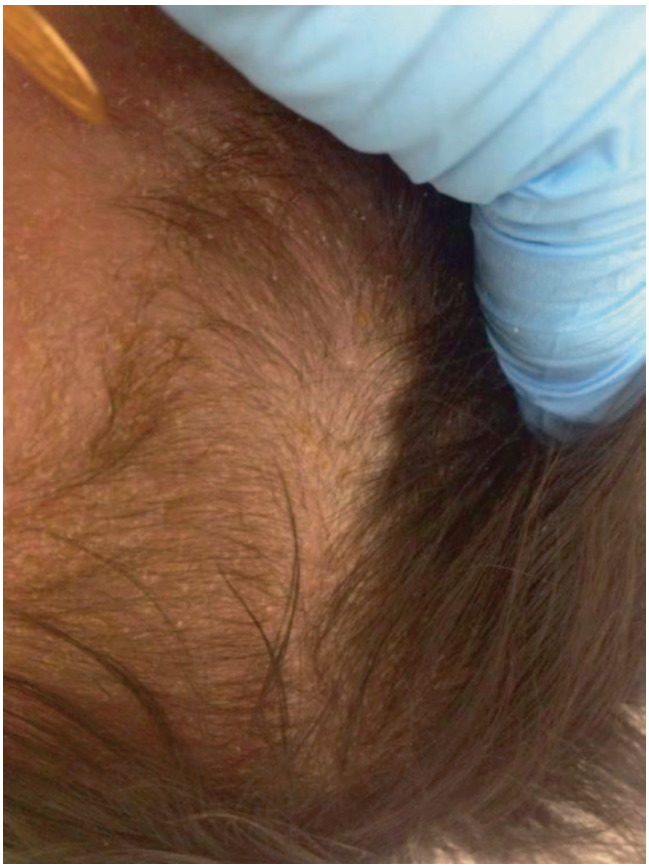


Fig. 10 A 2-month-old baby with seborrheic capitis

Acne

Acne Vulgaris

Background
- Results from a complex of interaction between hormonal changes and their effect on the pilosebaceous apparatus
- Increased density of *Propionibacterium acnes*, a normal resident flora plays role in pathogenesis

Factors exacerbate acne
- Hormonal dysregulation as occurs with polycystic ovarian syndrome and cushing syndrome may cause more severe acne.
- Anabolic steroids, corticosteroids, and certain contraceptive.
- Comedogenic cosmetics and other skin products

Types of acne
- Obstructive (comedonal) (open and closed)
- Inflammatory/Mixed (mild, moderate and severe)

Clinical presentation
- Open comedones (blackheads) (Fig. 11)

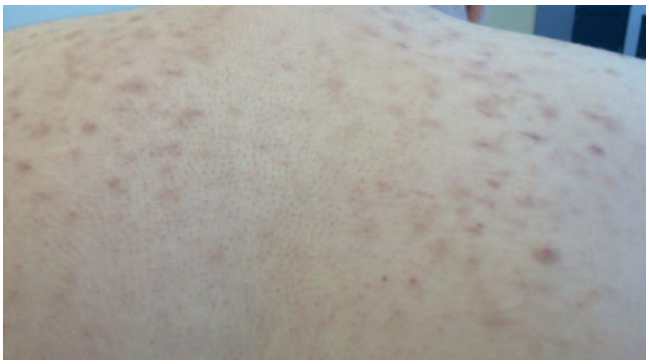


Fig. 11 Acne vulgaris on back of a 15-year-old boy

- Closed comedones (whiteheads) white papules without surrounding erythema
- Mild, moderate, and severe inflammatory acne vary from 1–2 mm micropapules to nodules larger than 5 mm (nodular cysts)
- Can be associated with postinflammatory discoloration, with red, violaceous, or grey-brown hyperpigmentation.

Differential diagnosis
- Adenoma sebaceum (facial angiofibromas) may be mistaken for acne vulgaris.

Management
- Topical retinoids should be a part of the initial management of acne vulgaris.
- Benzoyl peroxide, antibiotics (topical and systemic), salicylic acid, hormones, oral retinoids, depending on the severity and response to medications.

Fungal and Yeast Infections

Thrush

Background
- Common condition among young infants
- Antibiotic therapy may be a predisposing factor
- Recurrent or persistent thrush should raise the concern about immunocompromised, for example, HIV or other immunodeficiency

Clinical presentation
- White plaques overlying an erythematous base that involve buccal mucosa and tongue
- Irritability and poor feeding may be a presenting symptom in infants

Management
- Oral nystatin or fluconazole
- White patches easily removed with a tongue depressor or gauze is a retained food or formula and may be mistaken for oral thrush

Tinea Capitis

Background
- *Trichophyton tonsurans* is responsible for more than 90 % of US infections
- For unknown reason African American children are disproportionately affected
- Presence of alopecia or scaling and occipital lymphadenopathy are highly suggestive of Tinea capitis

Clinical presentation
- Alopecia (Fig. 12a)
  - One or more round oval patches of partial to complete alopecia with associated scaling
  - *T. tonsurans* cause hair to break leaving black dot hair
- Seborrheic
  - Mimic seborrheic dermatitis, that is, dandruff with patchy or diffuse whitish to gray scale
  - Alopecia may be subtle
- Inflammatory or kerion (Fig. 12b)
  - Severely painful inflammatory reaction with deep suppurative boggy lesion on the scalp

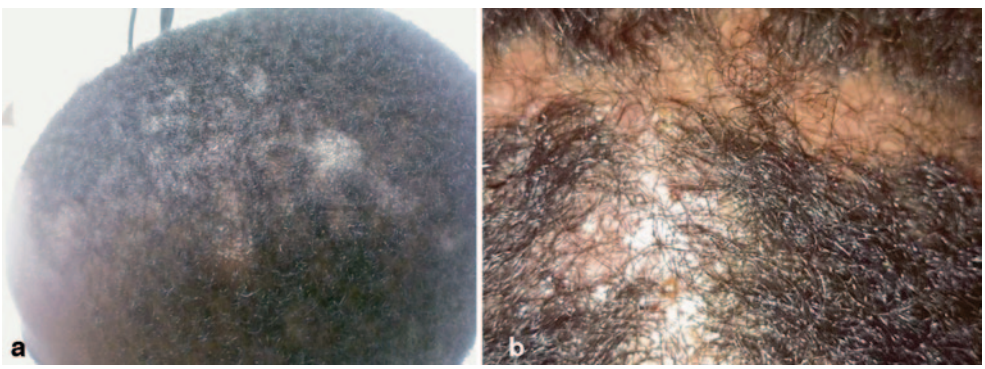


Fig. 12 **a** 6 years-old with Tinea capitis, the scalp shows multiple round and oval patches of partial to complete alopecia associated with scaling and dark stubs visible in the follicular orifices. **b** 7 years-old with kerion, the scalp shows areas of alopecia with deep suppurative boggy lesions

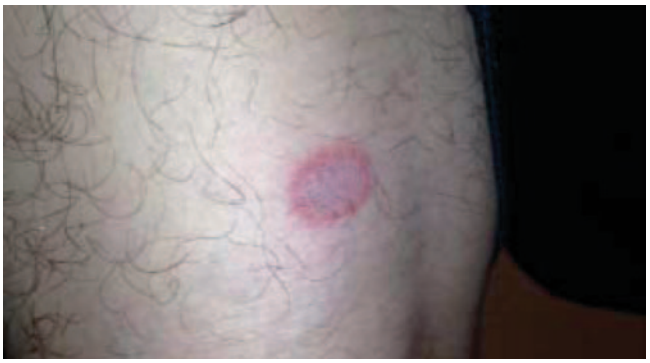


Fig. 13 Ring-like lesion with central clearing on the back (Tinea corporis)

  - It represents an inflammatory reaction to the fungi and occurs fairly late in the course.

Management
- Griseofulvin is the drug of choice
- Griseofulvin therapy is safe and does not require routine laboratory studies to monitor its toxicity if used for less than 6 weeks.
- A 1 or 2.5 % selenium sulfide shampoo, ketoconazole 2 % can be used twice weekly to kill surface organism and reduce the shedding of spores and spread of infection.
- Incision and drainage of a kerion is not indicated
- Oral prednisone may be used for 1 week in severe inflammatory tinea capitis (kerion)
- Follow up in 1 month after the beginning of therapy

Tinea Corporis

Background
- Caused by dermatophytes (*Trichophyton*, *Microsporum*, and *Epidermophyton*)
- *Trichophyton rubrum* is the most common infectious agent in the world.

Clinical presentation
- Tinea corporis is a ring like lesion with raised, active erythematous, and scaly border with or without central clearing (Fig. 13).
- Lesions are variably pruritic, may be a single or multiple

Management
- Topical antifungal agents are effective.
- Topical treatment should be applied generously on the affected areas and in addition 2 inches on the healthy skin surrounding the lesion twice daily until lesions disappear, and should be continued for one more additional week.
- Systemic therapy may be prescribed for extensive Tinea corporis, immunocompromised patients, who are otherwise refractory to topical therapy

Tinea Cruris

Background
- Caused by *Trichophyton mentagrophytes, or Epidermophyton floccosum*
- Prevalent in warm humid conditions
- More common in men and is rare before puberty

Clinical presentation
- Erythematous patch on inner thigh and inguinal creases
- Borders of lesions are elevated and exhibit scales
- Scrotum spared
- May be intensely pruritic; and scratching leads to erosion, inflammation, and lichenification

Management
- Topical antifungal to be used until the eruption disappeared
- Avoid tight-fitting cloth, dry after bathing
- May use absorbent powder, for example, Tinactin

Tinea Pedis

Cause
- Dermatophytes such as *Trichophyton, Epidermophyton, and Microsporum*

Clinical presentation
- Interdigital
  - Pruritic erythema, fissuring, scaling, maceration, in inter-digital space
- Vesicular
  - Vesicles, bullae, erosions appear on the instep of foot
- Moccasin
  - Erythema, and scaling involves much or all of the plantar surface and sides of the feet

Management
- Topical antifungals to be applied until the eruption clears
- Severe or persistent cases may require oral griseofulvin or other agents
- Keep feet dry and wear well-ventilated shoes or sandals
- Recommendation of regular use of absorbent powders in recurrent cases, for example Tinactin

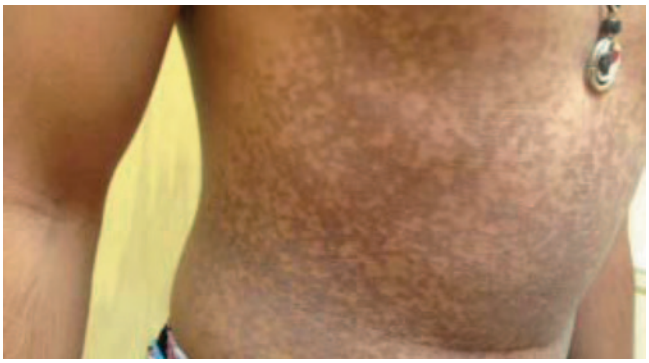


Fig. 14 A 15-year-old boy with Tinea vesicolor. Note the pigmentation of the torso

Tinea Versicolor

Background
- Caused by *Pityrosporum ovale* , for example, *Malassezia furfur* which invade stratum corneum
- Occurs in adolescents and adults, it occurs rarely in children

Clinical presentation
- Small hypopigmented or hyperpigmented round or oval macules located on the trunk (Fig. 14), proximal extremities, and neck
- Individual lesions may coalesce into large patches
- Sun exposure may accentuates the appearance of the disorder in fair-complexioned individuals

Diagnosis
- Diagnosis is usually made clinically.
- In uncertain cases KOH preparation will reveal short hyphae and spores (spaghetti and meatballs).

Management
- Positive KOH preparation for hyphae and yeast forms of the fungus (spaghetti and meatballs).
- Topical antifungal for example, 2.5% selenium sulfide lotion or 1% ketoconazole shampoo
- Oral antifungal should be prescribed for persistent or recurrent infections or for patient who cannot use topical therapy.
- Normalization of pigmentation may take months

Onychomycosis

Background
- Dermatophytes such as *Trichophyton, Epidermophyton, and Microsporum*
- *Toe nails are affected more than finger nails*
- Common in adolescents and adults

Clinical presentation
- Subungual onychomycosis: thickening of the nail with yellow discoloration
- One or multiple nails may be involved
- Superficial white onychomycosis: white discoloration with fine powdery scales

Management
- Oral therapy is generally required
- Terbinafine 250 mg daily for 3 months
- Itraconazole 200 mg daily for 12 weeks
- Topical therapy may be used for superficial white onychomycosis
- Recurrence are common

Infestations

Scabies

Background
- It is caused by an infestation of the skin by the human scabies mite *Sarcoptes scabiei*.
- The microscopic scabies mite burrows into the upper layer of the skin where it lives and lays its eggs.
- It is spread by direct, prolonged, skin-to-skin contact.

Clinical presentation
- Pruritus (often more intense at night)
- Common locations: wrists, ankles, ankles, axillae, waist, groin, palms, and soles
- Scalp involvement may be seen in infants
- Papules, burrows (white-gray thread like lines), and vesiculopustules are common (Fig. 15a and b)

Management
- All contacts and family members of a child with scabies will require treatment even if they have no obvious rash.
- 5% permethrin cream for the patient and all of his/her family members and close contacts.
- Two courses of treatment, 1 week apart
- Lindane (neurotoxic) for failed treatment or cannot tolerate other medications
- Oral ivermectin for crusted scabies and failed treatment.
- Thorough cleansing of all dirty clothing, towels, bedding, and car seat covers

Head Lice

Background
- Infestation of the human head with *Pediculus humanus-capitis*
- Transmission via head-to-head contact

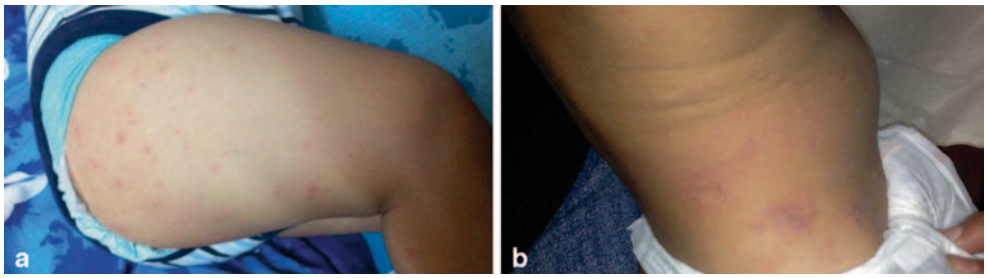


Fig. 15 **a** A 6-months-old girl with itchy papular rash on the thigh. Two siblings and mom have similar rash. **b**. A 6-months-old girl with itchy papular rash on the trunk. Two siblings and mom have similar rash

- Commoner in other races than African American due to differences in hair texture.

Clinical presentation
- Eggs or nits and adult louse on the hair shaft.
- Regional lymphadenopathy (cervical, suboccipital) is common

Management
- Permethrin 1% is first-line.
- Malathion lotion is a highly effective second-line option

Papulosquamous Diseases

Psoriasis

Background
- Papulosquamous (elevated lesions with scale) condition with tendency to persist or recur for years
- Likely results from a genetic predisposition

Clinical presentation
- The lesions are well-defined papules and plaques that are pink to deep red and white silvery "micaceous" scales
- Removal of scale produces bleeding point (Auspitz sign)
- Commonly located on scalp, elbows, knees, umbilicus, and gluteal cleft
- Lesions appear in areas of trauma (Koebner phenomenon)
- Nail pitting or thickening

Management
- Topical steroids (first line of treatment)
- Photochemotherapy (Ultraviolet B therapy or ultraviolet A therapy (combined with psoralen is known as PUVA)) may be used in patients with severe disease and who are resistant to topical therapy
- Systemic therapy, for example, methotrexate may be used in severe cases where the patient is resistant to topical therapy.

Pityriasis Rosea

Background
- A self-limited condition believed to have a viral etiology and other unproven etiologies.
- Seasonal incidence and clustering of cases suggest an infectious agent
- Some evidence support a role for human herpesvirus 7

Clinical presentation (Fig. 16)
- Numerous oval, raised, macular, or scaly lesions are seen on the trunk with their long axes oriented along lines of cleavage with Christmas tree distribution.
- New lesions appear for 2–3 weeks

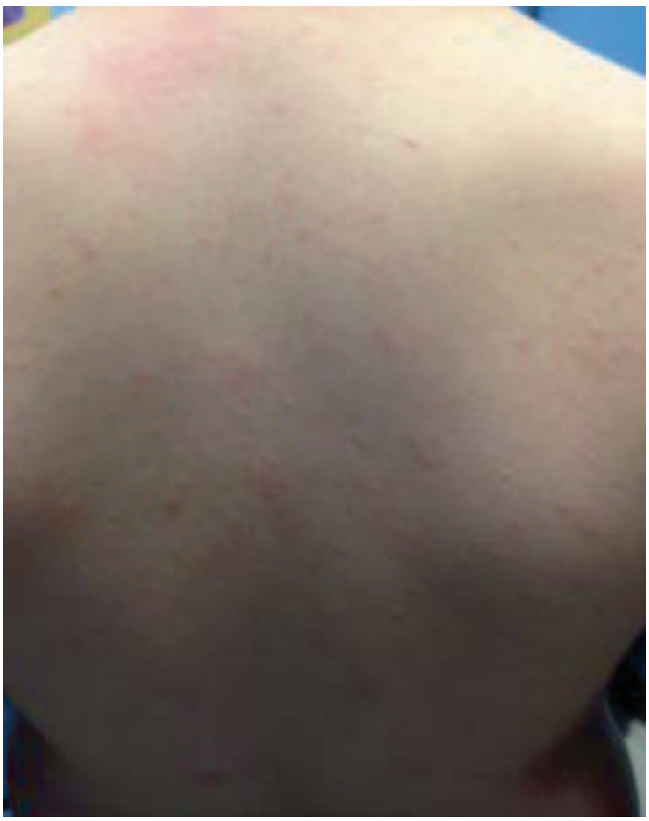


Fig. 16 A 12-year-old boy with numerous oval, raised, macular, and scaly lesions seen on the trunk (Pityriasis rosea). Their long axes oriented along lines of cleavage with Christmas tree distribution

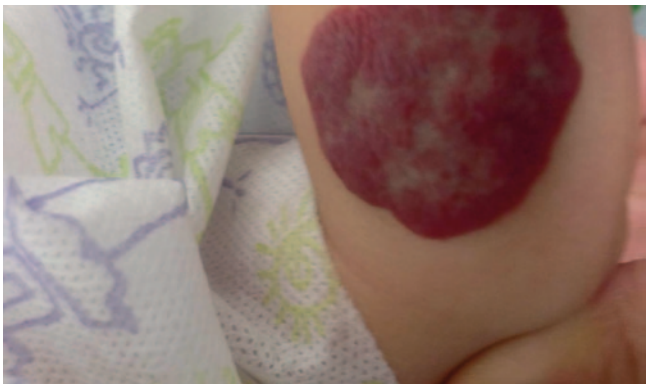


Fig. 17 A capillary/strawberry hemangioma on the back of a 7-months-old boy

- Eruption resolves typically in 4–8 weeks

Management
- Reassurance is the first line.
- Emollients containing methanol or phenol may be used if pruritus
- Differential diagnosis is secondary syphilis and this necessitates an accurate sexual history in any adolescent.

Vascular Lesions

Infantile Hemangioma

Background
- Most common benign tumor in infancy.
- Typically become evident around 1–2 weeks of age, with growth phase for the first year, followed by phase plateau and spontaneous involution
- 30% involutes by 3 years, 90% or more by 10 years

Superficial hemangioma
- Bright red, dome-shaped papules, plaques, and tumor (Fig. 17)
- Rubbery, may compress to palpation

Deep hemangioma
- Blue purple subcutaneous nodules and tumor

Multiple hemangioma
- Abdominal ultrasound is the most useful screening in young children with more than five lesions

Beard hemangioma
- May present with biphasic stridor, hoarseness
- Direct laryngoscopy is indicated if airway hemangioma suspected.

PHACES syndrome
- Clinical finding: posterior fossa defects, hemangioma, arterial anomalies, *c*ardiac anomalies/aortic coarctation, *e*ye abnormalities, *s*ternal clefting/supraumbilical abdominal raphe.

Lumbosacral hemangioma
- May be associated with occult spinal dysraphism or spinal cord defect
- MRI imaging is useful for screening

Management
- Reassurance
- Treatments required when interfering with vision, breathing, or to prevent life or function threatening complications and minimizes psychosocial distress
- Topical antibiotic if ulceration, systemic antibiotic if secondary bacterial infection
- Beta-blocker (propranolol) reduces severe hemangiomas in infants.
- Topically applied beta-blocker timolol for small facial hemangiomas that do not justify systemic treatment interferon or vincristine.
- Surgical removal for structural changes or inadequate or failed early medical intervention.
- Pulsed dye laser therapy, mainly useful for ulcerated lesions or early superficial hemangioma

Kasabach–Merritt Phenomenon
- Vascular tumor associated with thrombocytopenia, hemolytic anemia, and coagulopathy

Vascular Malformation

- Anomalous of blood vessels without endothelial proliferation

Capillary Malformation

- Salmon patch
  - Known as nevus simplex, stork bite, or angel kiss
  - Dull pink macules and patches (Fig. 18)
  - Usually fades by 2 years but may become prominent with crying, or straining
- Port Wine Stain (PWSs)
  - It is also called nevus flammeus and is caused by a capillary malformation in the skin.
  - It persists throughout life and grows in proportion to general growth.
  - It is common on upper forehead, nape of neck, and upper trunk.

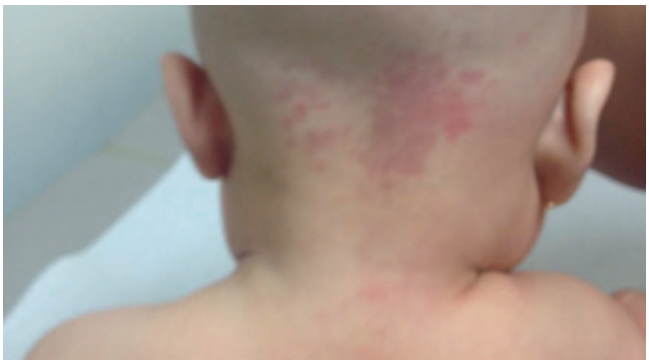


Fig. 18 A salmon patch on a 4-month-old boy

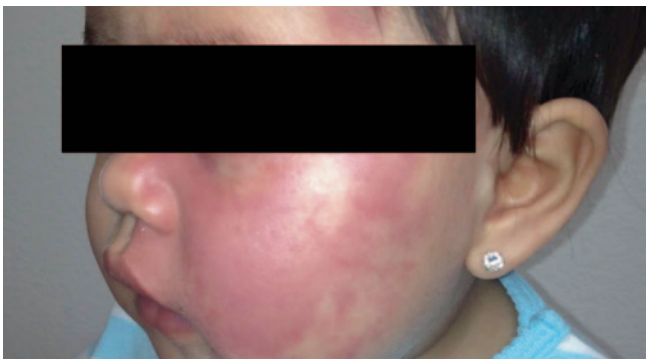


Fig. 19 A 9-months-old girl with Sturge–Weber syndrome with glaucoma and seizure

- Stains are usually flat and pink initially, but color may deepen to a dark red or purplish color as the child grows.
- PWSs occur commonly and usually are *not* associated with underlying disorders.
- A few infants who have PWSs in the distribution of the first branch of the trigeminal nerve may have associated Sturge–Weber syndrome (lepto-meningeal-angiomatosis). (Fig. 19)

Management

- PWSs can be treated effectively with pulsed dye laser and it offers effective cosmetic palliation.
- Laser treatment may result in complete resolution or significant lightening of the lesion, and the degree of effectiveness is related to the location of the lesion.

Arteriovenous Malformation

- Rare vascular malformation with arterial and venous components and arteriovenous shunting
- May present with red patch simulating PWS, pulsating mass with thrill or occasionally with necrosis and ulceration
- Occasional association with cardiac compromise

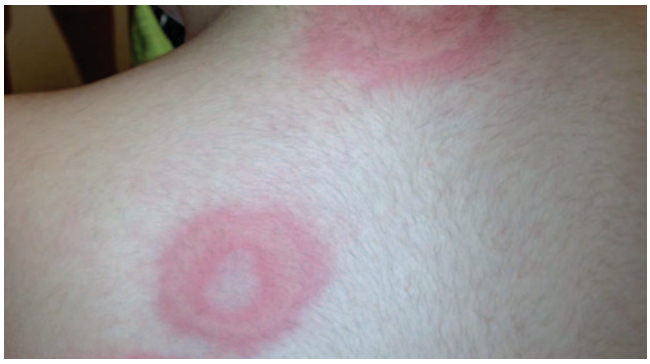


Fig. 20 A-14-year old boy with target lesion in Erythema multiforme minor

Vascular Reaction

Papular Urticaria

- Recurrent itchy papular, vesicular, or urticarial rash secondary in reaction to insect bites, mostly on the lower extremities.

Management

- Mild topical steroids and systemic antihistamines
- Rarely short-term systemic corticosteroid
- If secondary impetigo occurs, topical or systemic antibiotics may be prescribed.
- Use of insect repellents while the patient is outside and the use of flea and tick control on indoor pets

Erythema Multiforme (EM)

- Severity of Erythema multiforme ranges from targetoid lesions to Stevens–Johnson syndrome (SJS).
- Erythema multiforme (EM) (<2 mucous membrane involvement) (Fig. 20)
- EM major (Table 2)
  - SJS < 10 % epidermal loss
  - SJS/TEN overlap: 10–30 %
  - Toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN): > 30 % (Fig. 21).

Papular Urticaria

Background

- Recurrent itchy papular, vesicular, or urticarial rash secondary in reaction to insect bites, mostly on the lower extremities.

Table 2 Difference between Erythema multiforme (EM), Steven–Johnson syndrome (SJS), and toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN)

Types	Erythema multiforme (EM)	Steven–Johnson syndrome (SJS)	Toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN)
Causes	Medications, infection, e.g., herpes virus	Medication, e.g., sulfonamide, antiepileptics, infection, e.g., EBV or Mycoplasma	Medications, e.g., antiepileptics
Pattern of skin lesion	Typical targets, raised atypical targets, on palms, soles, and legs	No typical targets, flat atypical targets, blisters and erosions	No typical targets, flat atypical targets, diffuse generalized detachment of epidermis
Mucous membrane involvement	Minimal mucous membrane involvement not more than one	Severe mucosal erosions at ≥site, e.g., eye, mouth, esophagus	Severe mucosal erosion
Body surface area with epidermal detachment (%)	Less than 10	Less than 10	More than 30
Management	Supportive	Hospitalization in burn or PICU care if there are extensive erosions IVIG	Admission to intensive care or burn unit is imperative Removal of offending drug Fluid and electrolyte maintenance IVIG should be considered
Systemic steroids	Controversial	Controversial	Contraindicated
Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG)		May benefit	IVIG should be considered

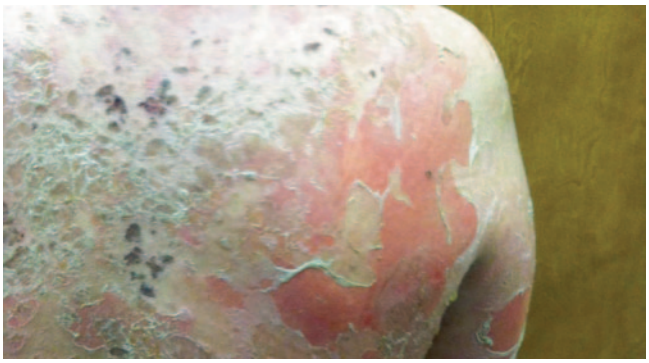


Fig. 21 Toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN): more than 30% epidermal loss (Fig. 14)

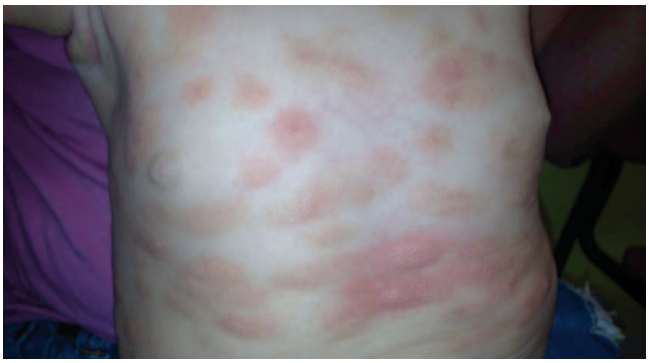


Fig. 22 13-months-old girl with mastocytosis

Management

- Mild topical steroids and systemic antihistamines
- Rarely short-term systemic corticosteroid
- If secondary impetigo occurs, topical or systemic antibiotics may be prescribed
- Use of insect repellents while the patient is outside and the use of flea and tick control on indoor pets.

Urticaria Pigmentosa

- Characterized by excess amount of mast cells in the skin.
- Red or brown spots are often seen on the skin, typically around the chest (Fig. 22) and forehead.
- These mast cells, when irritated (e.g., by rubbing the skin or heat exposure), produce too much histamine.
- Darier's sign is elicited after firm stroking of the skin, a wheal-and-flare (urticarial) appears as a result of histamine release. This is diagnostic for mastocytosis

Localized Bacterial Skin Infections

Impetigo (Pyoderma)

- Primarily caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*, and sometimes by *Streptococcus pyogenes*.
- Bullous and nonbullous impetigo (*Staphylococcus aureus*): nonbullous form (*Streptococcus pyogenes*).
- Appears as honey-colored scabs formed from dried serum (Fig. 23)

Management

- Topical anti-Staphylococcal antibiotic, if extensive systemic PO or IV antibiotics.

Streptococcal Cellulitis

- An acute inflammation of the skin and subcutaneous tissues.
- Local pain, tenderness, swelling, and erythema that progresses rapidly and may involve large areas of skin.

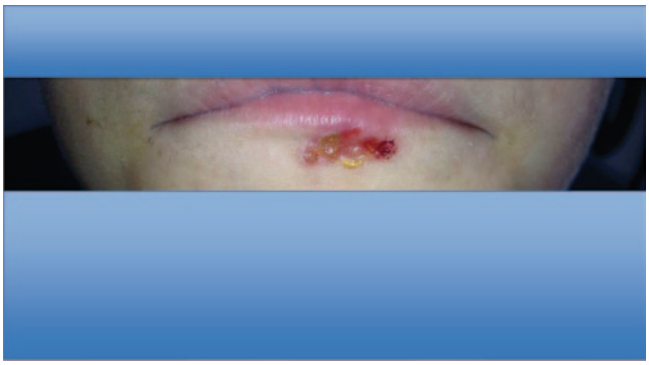


Fig. 23 A 9-year-old boy with honey crust impetigo below the lower lip

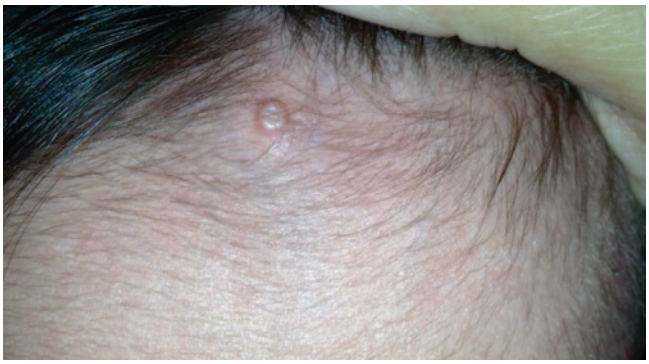


Fig. 24 A 4-month-old boy with *Molluscum* contagiosum on the forehead. Sibling has similar lesion on a finger. Note the umbilication of the lesion

- Systemic manifestations include fever, chills, malaise, lymphangitis, and bacteremia.
- Erysipelas is a superficial cutaneous process that has prominent lymphatic involvement.

Management
- Hospitalization
- Systemic antibiotics against *Staphylococcus aureus*, and sometimes by *Streptococcus pyogenes*.

Necrotizing Fasciitis

- Infection of the deeper subcutaneous tissues and fascia characterized by extensive and rapidly spreading necrosis and gangrene of the skin and underlying tissue.
- Several bacteria can cause necrotizing fasciitis (*Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Clostridium perfringens*, *Bacteroides fragilis*, *Aeromonas hydrophila*)
- Patients are usually ill and have a high temperature and toxic appearance.

Management
- Hospitalization
- Prescribing broad spectrum systemic antibiotics.

Localized Viral Infections

Molluscum contagiosum

- Caused by DNA poxvirus called the *Molluscum contagiosum* virus (MCV).
- Flesh-colored, dome-shaped, and pearly in appearance with central depression. (Fig. 24)

Management
- Reassurance and if cosmetically or psychologically distressing, then mechanical removal.

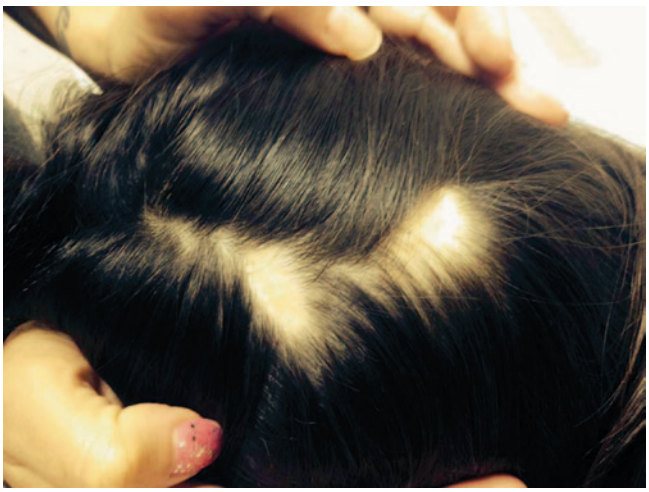


Fig. 25 4-years-old boy with alopecia areata; hair loss with small bald patches, with smooth and unscarred underlying skin

Condyloma Acuminatum (Ano-Genital Warts)

- Epidermal manifestation of several serotypes of human papilloma virus (HPV).
- Double-stranded HPV papovavirus.
- Genital condylomata acuminata are at an increased risk for anogenital cancers.

Management
- Cryotherapy, electro-desiccation, curettage, surgical excision, carbon dioxide laser treatment.

Hair Disorders

Alopecia Areata

- Hair loss with small bald patches with smooth and unscarred underlying skin (Fig. 25).

- T-cell–mediated autoimmune disorder in genetically predisposed individuals.
- Localized, total is with loss of 100 % of scalp hair, universal is with loss of 100 % of body hair.

Management
- Reassurance and steroid (topical and systemic).

Trichotillomania

- Characterized by the presence of hair shafts of different lengths in the area of alopecia.
- This is self-induced hair loss that results from the continuous pulling or plucking of the hair.

Management
- Counseling or psychiatric help may be required.

Telogen Effluvium

- Hair loss secondary to a significant stressful event including severe weight loss, major illnesses, surgery and traumatic psychological event.
- Stress triggers more hairs into the telogen phase, causing diffuse hair loss that peaks approximately 3–4 months after the stressful event.

Management
- Reassurance

Anagen Effluvium

- Loss of growing (anagen) hair.
- It results from alkylating, antimitotic, or cytotoxic agents 10–14 days after the insult.

Management
- Reassurance

Disorders of Hyperpigmentation

Acanthosis Nigricans

- Usually present as velvety hyperpigmentation on the skin.
- Locations include posterior and lateral folds of the neck, the armpits, groin, and forehead. (Fig. 26)
- It is associated with insulin resistance; hereditary, endocrine, and excessive weight gain.
- It could be malignant in paraneoplastic syndrome.

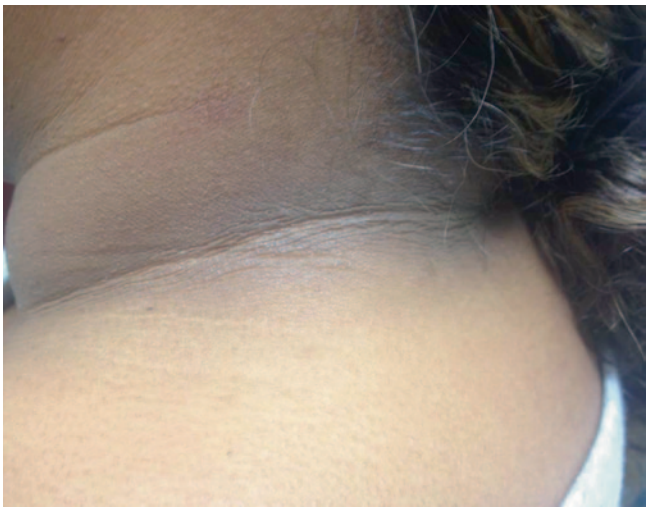


Fig. 26 Acanthosis nigricans in a teenager with type 2 diabetes

Management
- Reassurance and encourage healthy lifestyle.

Malignant Melanoma

Background
- Sun exposure
  - Sun damage to the skin is additive and leads to aging of the skin as well as an increased incidence of skin cancers.
- Early warning signs of malignant melanoma include
  - Asymmetry or irregularity in the shape of a new or preexisting mole.
  - Borders with unusual changes.
  - Color changes, including darkening or lightening in a nonuniform distribution within moles.
  - Diameter greater than 6 mm in an acquired mole require further evaluation.

Management
- Sunscreen
- Early detection and prompt referral

Miscellaneous

Granuloma Annulare

- The etiology is unknown, but delayed-type hypersensitivity reaction and cell-mediated immune response are thought to play a role.
- It is usually self-limited.
- Presents with thickened indurated ring like lesion without changes such as scales, crusts, vesicles, or pustules, granuloma annulare (Fig. 27).

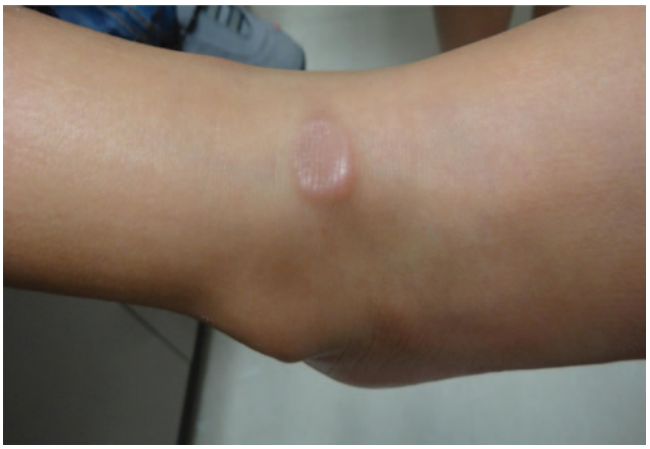


Fig. 27 A 4 year old boy with granuloma annulare and not responsive to several weeks of topical antifungal cream

Management
- Reassurance

Acrodermatitis Enteropathica

- An autosomal recessive disorder affecting the uptake of zinc, characterized by periorificial and acrodermatitis, alopecia (loss of hair), and diarrhea.
- Manifestation of zinc deficiency.

Management
- Zinc supplement
- Supportive management of dermatitis

Incontinentia Pigmenti

Background
- X-linked dominant disorders that is lethal in males
- Due to mutation in the nuclear factor-kB essential modulator (NEMO) gene

Clinical presentation
- Stage 1
  - Often present at birth with vesicles on erythematous bases distributed in linear arrangement on limbs or in a whorled pattern on the trunk (Blaschko lines)
- Stage 2
  - Wart like papules
- Stage 3
  - Linear and swirled hyperpigmentation
  - May persist for years
- Stage 4
  - Hypopigmented atrophic streaks

Associated problems
- Alopecia, dystrophic nails, pegged teeth, ocular abnormalities, seizure, developmental delay

Management
- Topical antibiotic in vesicular stage, keratolytics for wart stage
- Ophthalmology, genetic, and dental consults

Miscellaneous
- A host of organisms may live on the skin, but the most common organisms comprising the indigenous flora are *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus pyogenes* (group A beta-hemolytic Streptococcus), *S. epidermidis*, other coagulase-negative *Staphylococci*, *Propionibacterium acnes*, and *Candida albicans*.
- The ability of the organism to cause an infection is influenced by the patient's age, immunologic status, and the circumstances surrounding the injury.
- The systemic manifestations of group A streptococcal infection include toxic shock syndrome (TSS), pneumonia, septic arthritis and osteomyelitis, and meningitis.
- The most serious sequelae of streptococcal skin infection are necrotizing fasciitis, TSS, and post streptococcal acute glomerulonephritis.

Suggested Readings

1. Krowchuk DP, Mancini AJ. Tinea versicolor. Pediatric dermatology a quick reference guide. 2nd Ed. Elk Grove Village: American Academy of Pediatrics; 2011.
2. Johr RH, Schachner LA. Neonatal dermatologic challenges. Pediatr Rev. 1997;18:86–94.
3. Morelli JG. The skin: diseases of the neonate. In: Kliegman RM, Stanton BF, St. Geme JW III, Schor NF, Behrman RE, editors. Nelson textbook of pediatrics. 19th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier; 2011a. p. 2218–20.
4. Morelli JG. The skin: disorders of the hair. In: Kliegman RM, Stanton BF, St. Geme JW III, Schor NF, Behrman RE, editors. Nelson textbook of pediatrics. 19th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier; 2011b. pp. 2289–93.
5. Maverakis E, Fung MA, Lynch PJ, et al. Acrodermatitis enteropathica and an overview of zinc metabolism. J Am Acad Dermatol. 2007; 56:116–124.
6. Browning JC. An update on Pityriasis rosea and other similar childhood exanthems. Curr Opin Pediatr. 2009; 21:481–5.
7. Crespo-Erchiga V, Florencio VD. Malassezia yeasts and Pityriasis versicolor. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2006;19:139–47.

Orthopedics Disorders and Sport Injuries

Amr Abdelgawad and Marwa Abdou

Developmental Dysplasia of the Hip (DDH)

Background

- Ranges from complete dislocation of the hip joint to dysplasia of the acetabulum (shallow acetabulum).
- More in: female, first borne, family history, breech presentation.

Diagnosis

- In neonatal period: screening all newborns by Barlow's or Ortolani's test.
- Hip ultrasound (before 4 months of age) or Plain radiographs (after 4–6 months) will show the dislocation (Figs. 1 and 2).
- Females with breech presentation or positive family history should be screened using imaging study in addition to the physical exam.
- Toddlers and children: limping (unilateral cases) or waddling gait (bilateral cases); limb length discrepancy (dislocated side shorted); limited abduction.

Treatment

- Orthopedic referral (Pavlik harness for children less than 6 months; closed reduction and casting for children 6–18 months; open reduction for children older than 18 months)

Legg–Calve–Perthes Disease

Background

- Avascular necrosis of the head of the femur in a growing child.
- Self-limiting disease.

Diagnosis

- More in boy between 4 and 8 years.
- Hip pain and limping.
- Hip radiographs: will show the collapse and increase density of the femoral head (Fig. 3).

Treatment

- Orthopedic referral.
- Depending on the age and degree of affection of the femoral head, the treatment can be either symptomatic (mostly in children less than 6 years, avoid sports and non steroidal anti inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) for pain) or surgery (pelvic or femoral osteotomy).

Slipped Capital Femoral Epiphysis (SCFE)

Background

- Displacement of the proximal femoral metaphysis in relation to the capital (proximal) femoral epiphysis (Fig. 4).
- Most cases are idiopathic, some cases are related to endocrinopathies (hypothyroidism or hypopituitarism) or renal osteodystrophy.
- Can be stable (patient is able to bear weight on the affected side) or unstable lesion (patient is not able to bear weight on the affected side with or without crutches).
- Can lead to avascular necrosis of the femoral head due to stretching of the vessels supplying the femoral head by the displacement.

Diagnosis

- More in obese black boys between 12 and 14 years old.

A. Abdelgawad (✉)
Department of Orthopaedic Surgery & Rehabilitation, Texas Tech University Health Science Center—EP, 4801 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: Amr.abdelgawad@ttuhsc.edu

M. Abdou
Department of Pediatrics, El Paso Children's Hospital, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: marwaali@doctor.com

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_24,

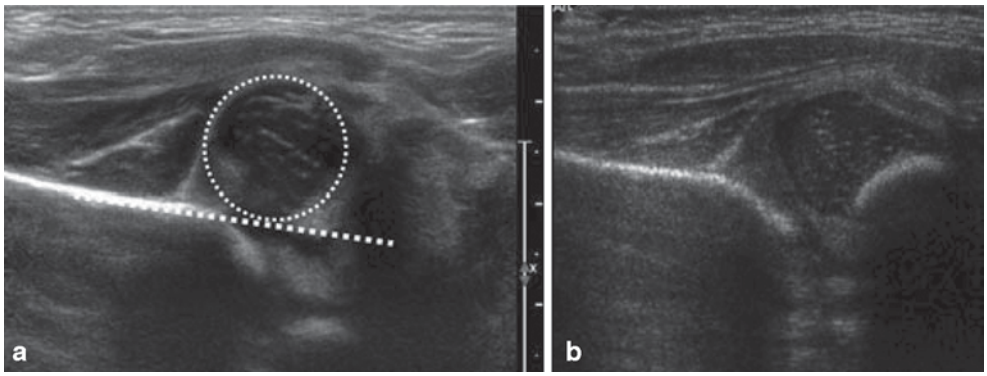


Fig. 1 Dynamic ultrasound. Assessment of the hip position by ultrasound during various positions. **a** To the left with hip adduction, the femoral head (*dotted circle*) lies outside a line along the pelvic bone (*dotted line*). **b** With hip abduction, partial reduction occurs

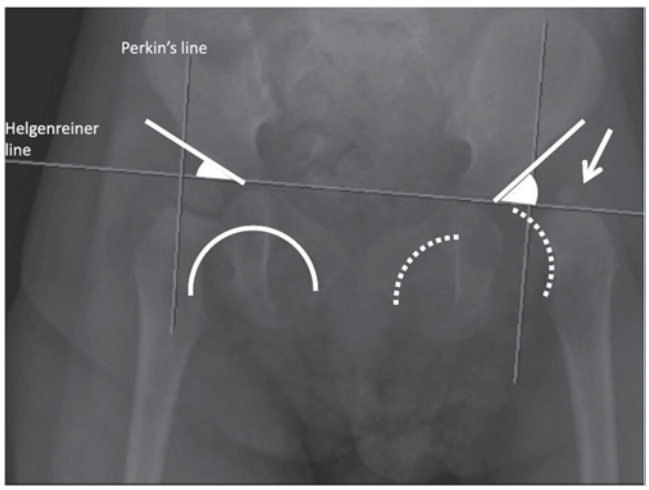


Fig. 2 Anteroposterior pelvis radiographs of 14-month-old girl with left hip DDH. The radiograph shows the ossific center on the left side (*arrow*) smaller than the right side and lying in the *upper lateral quadrant* of the crossing two lines (Hilgenreiner and Perkins; the normal right side lies in the *lower medial quadrant*). The Shenton's line (*curved line* across the obturator foramen and lower border of the neck) is intact on the right side (*continuous curved line*) and broken in the left side (*curved dotted line*). The dislocated side shows increased acetabular index (the angle between the Hilgenreiner line and line from the triradiate to the lateral part of the acetabulum)

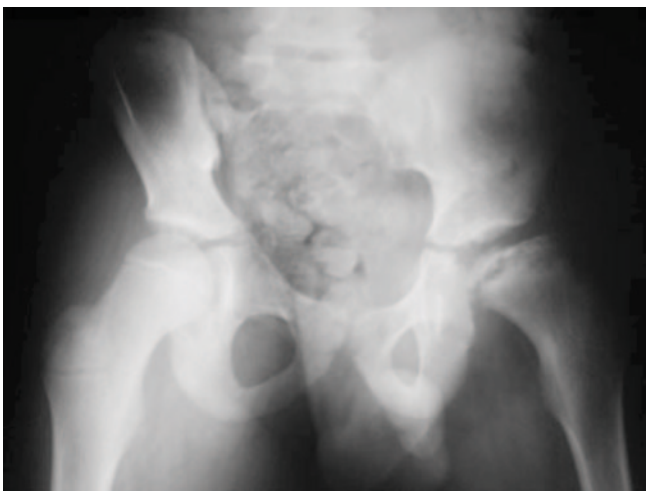


Fig. 3 An 8-year-old boy with 1 year history of Perthes disease in the left hip. Radiograph shows collapse of the left hip epiphysis (compare *right* and *left* side)

- Hip or knee pain (referred pain); limping.
- Hip radiographs will show the displacement (Fig. 5).

Treatment

- Admission to the hospital and urgent orthopedic consult.

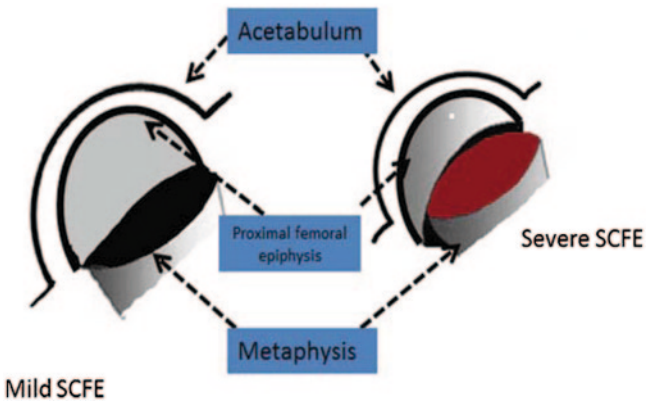


Fig. 4 The pathology of SCFE. The proximal humeral epiphysis is contained in the acetabulum and does not move, while the slippage occurs when the metaphysis starts to move in relation to the epiphysis

Transient Synovitis

Background

- Nonspecific inflammation of the joint (may be related to viral infection or trauma).

Diagnosis (transient synovitis of the hip joint)

- Broad spectrum of clinical presentation from mild hip pain and limping to inability to bear weight of the affected side with complete rigidity.

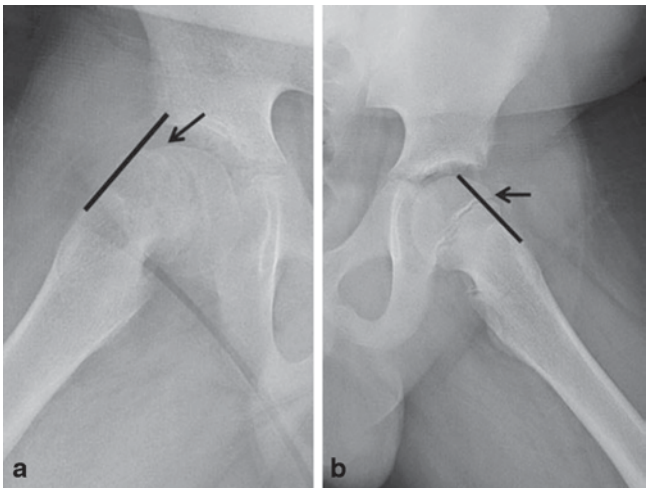


Fig. 5 A 13-year-old boy with right hip and knee pain of 2 weeks duration. Radiographs taken for both hips AP and lateral views. Lateral radiograph of the both hips are presented in this figure. Klein's line (the *black line*) is drawn along the anterior femoral neck and normally (left side) should intersect part of the epiphysis of the proximal femur (an *arrow* is pointing to the anterior edge of the epiphysis). On the right side (*SCFE*) the Klein's line does not intersect any part of the epiphysis

- Markers of infection: normal to mildly elevated.

Treatment
- NSAIDs, rest

Septic Arthritis

Background
- Bacterial inflammation of the synovium of the joint.
- Most common organism is staph aureus. In newborns, Group B *streptococcus* is a common organism. In sexually active adolescent, gonococcus is the most common organism.
- Most commonly affected joints: hip, shoulder, and knee.

Diagnosis
- General signs of infection (fever, chills).
- Swelling (effusion), rigidity of the joint, tenderness, inability to bear weight with lower extremity joints.
- Elevated markers of infection (WBCs, ESR, CRP).
- Joint aspiration (arthrocentesis) for gram stain, culture, and cell count (cell count > 50,000/mL is indication for septic arthritis).

Treatment
- Septic arthritis is an *urgent surgical condition*. Urgent orthopedic consult is needed. Irrigation and debridement need to be performed to remove the toxic substances from the joint.

How to differentiate between transient synovitis and septic arthritis of the hip joint? (Table 1)

Modified Kocher Criteria
- History of fever > 38.5.
- Inability to bear weight on the affected limb.
- ESR > 40 mm/h.
- WBC > 12,000 cells/mL.
- C-reactive protein level of more than 20 mg/L:
  - The more criteria the child has, the more likely is the diagnosis of septic arthritis.
  - Ultrasound guided aspiration of the hip joint fluid with cell count, gram stain, and culture will confirm or exclude the diagnosis (cell count > 50,000/mL is indication for septic arthritis).

Acute Hematogenous Osteomyelitis

Background
- Acute infections of the bone and the bone marrow.
- Commonly affects the metaphysis of long bones.
- *Staphylococcus aureus* is the most common organism. Group B strep and *Escherichia coli* are common in neonates. Pseudomonas is common in osteomyelitis after puncture wound through tennis shoes.

Diagnosis
- General signs of infection (fever, chills).
- Swelling, tenderness and redness over the affected bone.
- Nearby joint is mildly swollen, however, movement of the joint is largely preserved.

Table 1 Difference between septic arthritis and transient synovitis

	Septic arthritis	Transient synovitis
Fever	Usually present	Normal or mild elevation
ESR, CRP, WBCs	Usually elevated	Normal or mild elevation
Inability to walk	Common	Rare
Aspiration	Positive for gram stain +/− culture Cell count > 50,000/ml	Negative Cell count < 50,000/ml
Blood culture	May be positive	Negative

Pediatric orthopedics a handbook for primary care physicians; Table 6.1. Abdelagwad, Amr, Naga, Osama 2013

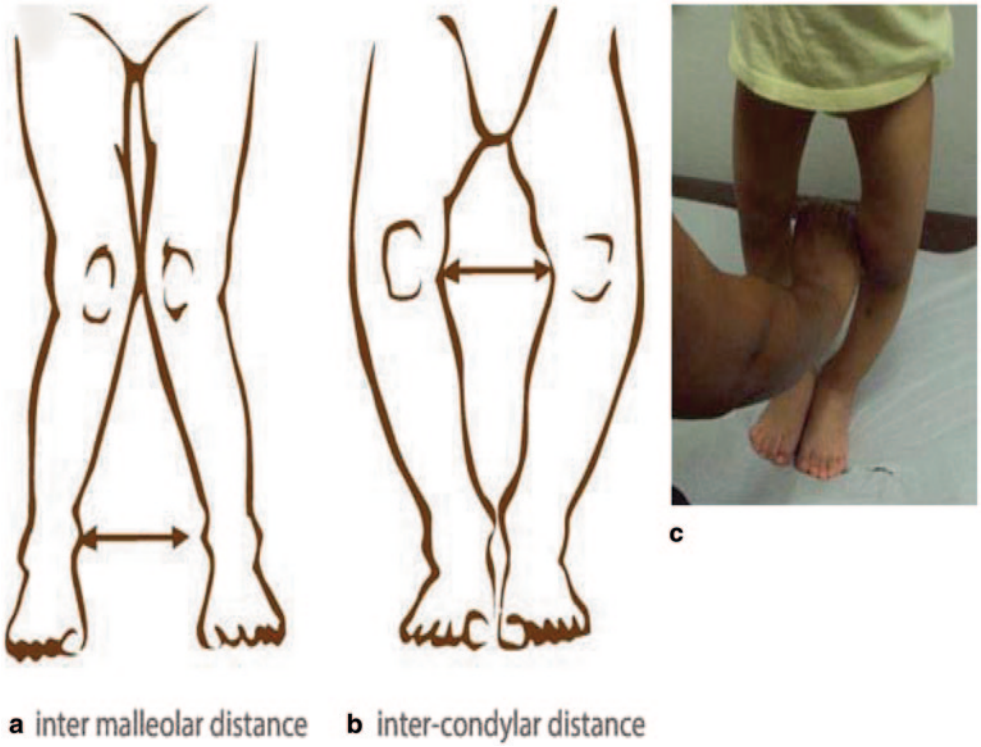


Fig. 6 **a** Intermalleolar distance. This distance is increased in cases of genu valgum. **b** Intercondylar distance: this increases in cases of genu varum **c** A 3-year-old boy with genu varum and intercondylar distance of more than hand breadth

- Elevated markers of infection (WBCs, ESR, CRP).
- Radiographs are normal in the first 10–14 days, then it will show periosteal reaction.
- Bone scan: the affected area will appear "hot" in the scan, becomes positive early in the disease process.
- MRI: very sensitive, positive early in the disease. Can show development of sub-periosteal abscess.

Treatment

- Osteomyelitis is a medical condition. The primary treatment is administration of antibiotics (proper antibiotic in an adequate dose for adequate period of time).
- Indication for surgical debridement (orthopedic consultation):
  - No improvement after 36 h of antibiotic administration.
  - Development of sub-periosteal abscess.
  - Extension to nearby joint.

Genu Varum

Background

- Lower limb deformity in which the lower legs are pointing toward the midline (bow legged; Fig. 6).
- Common causes of genu varum in children include:
  - Physiological development up to the age of 2 years:
    - The normal alignment of children is genu varum until the age of 2 years then alignment changes to valgus which reach maximum around the age of 3 years.
    - The normal adult alignment (7° of valgus) is usually reached by the age 8 years.
  - Blount disease (see later)
  - Rickets
  - Achondroplasia

Diagnosis

- Increase intercondylar distance (distance between the two medial femoral condyles; Fig. 6).
- Radiographs will identify the underlying pathology.

Treatment

- Physiological cases: no treatment needed, condition will improve by the age of 3 years.

Genu Valgum

Background

- Lower limb deformity in which the lower legs are pointing away from the midline (knock knees; Fig. 7).
- Common causes of genu valgum in children include:
  - Physiologic genu valgum (around the age of 3 years)
  - Rickets and renal osteodystrophy
  - Posttraumatic physeal arrest
  - Proximal tibial fractures

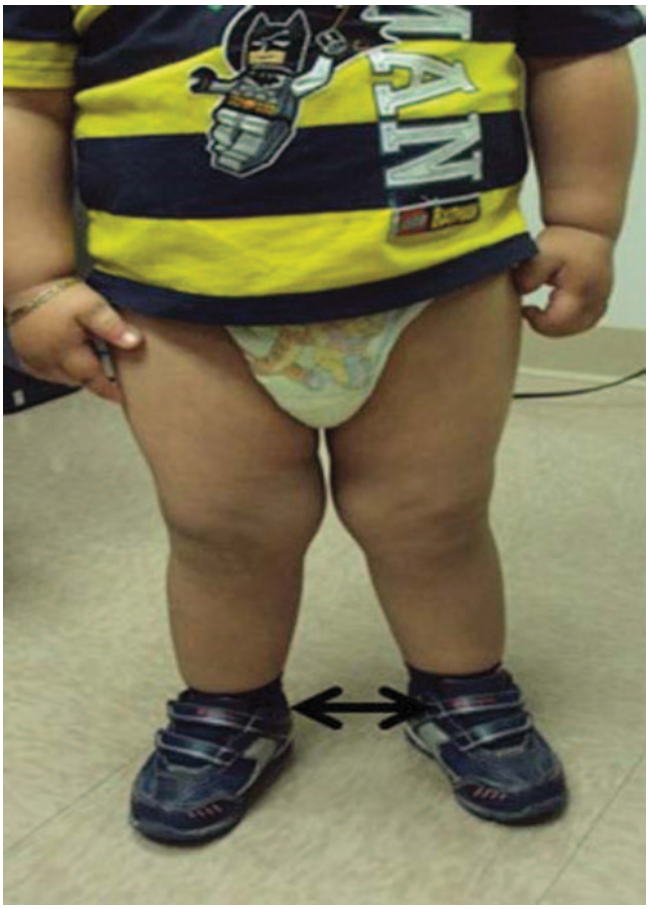


Fig. 7 Physiological genu valgum. A 30-month-old boy with physiological genu valgum. Notice the increased angle between the leg and the thigh and the increased intermalleolar distance (*double headed arrow*)

Diagnosis
- Increase intermalleolar distance (distance between the two medial malleoli; Fig. 6).
- Radiographs will identify the underlying pathology.

Treatment
- Physiological cases: no treatment needed, condition will improve by the age of 8 years.

Blount's Disease (Tibia Vara)
- It is a developmental deformity resulting from abnormal endochondral ossification of the medial aspect of the proximal tibial physis leading to varus deformity and internal rotation of tibia.
- More common in black obese children.
- Due to affection of the medial aspect of the proximal tibial growth plate
- Types:
  - Infantile type:
    - Starts around the age of 3 years.

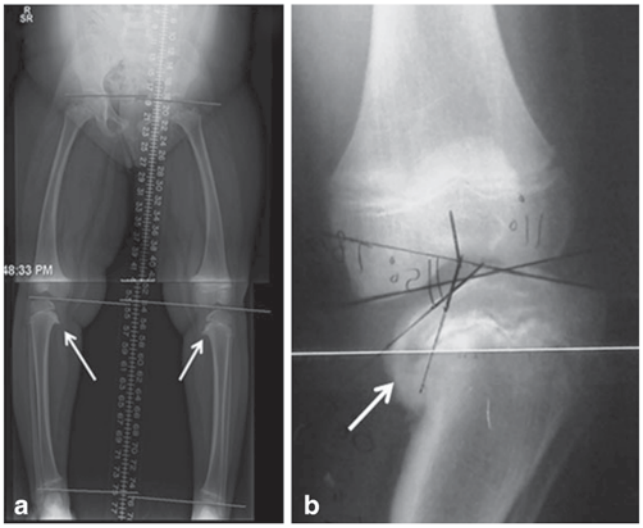


Fig. 8 Radiological changes in Blount's disease. **a** Long radiographs (scanogram) of a 3-year-old girl showing the proximal tibial metaphyseal beaking (*arrow*). **b** A 4-year-old boy with depression of the medial tibial plateau and fusion of the growth plate on the medial side (*arrow*). Note the difference between the medial and lateral sides of the tibial growth plate

    - Infantile type of Blount's disease is more progressive than the adolescent type due to greater growth potential.
    - Radiographs will show the varus deformity with medial proximal tibial growth plate abnormalities (Fig. 8).
    - Treatment is by knee brace to correct varus before the age of 3 years. If no improvement or if the patient is older than 3 years old, orthopedic referral for surgical treatment.
  - Adolescent type.
    - Occurs in adolescents (especially obese boys; Fig. 9).
    - Treatment is by orthopedic referral for orthopedic intervention.

Osgood–Schlatter Disease

Background
- Inflammation of the insertion of the patellar tendon in the tibial tubercle (tibial tubercle apophysitis).
- More common in adolescent boys active in sports.

Diagnosis
- Anterior knee pain.
- Tenderness and swelling over the tibial tubercle (Fig. 10a).
- Radiograph: Enlargement with possible fragmentation of the tibial tubercle (tibial apophysis; Fig. 10b).

Treatment
- Decrease activity

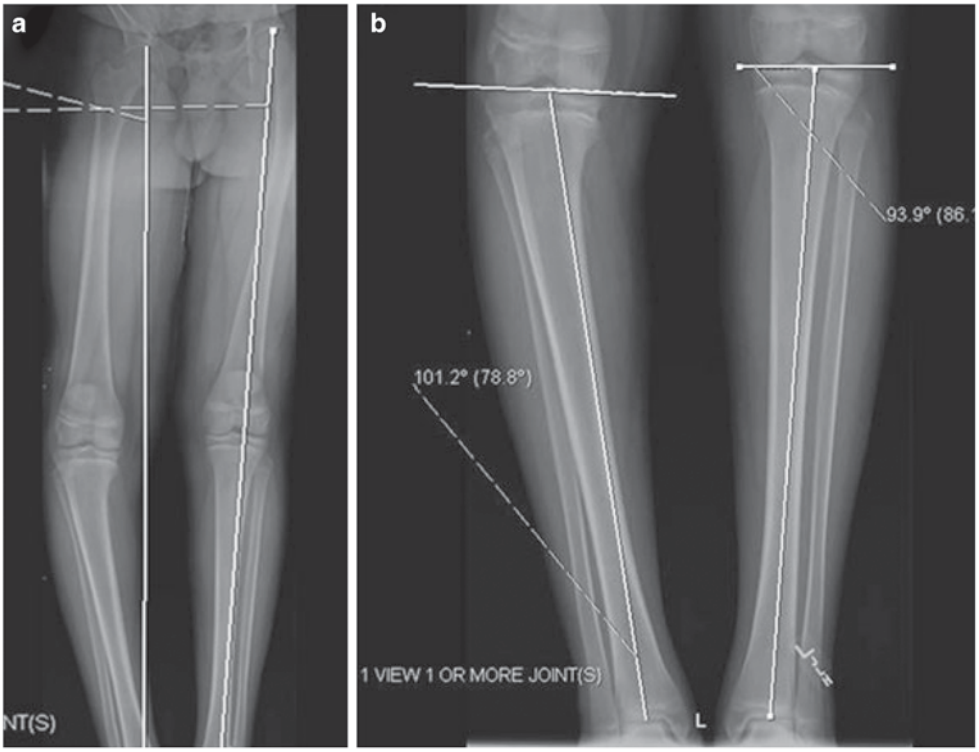


Fig. 9 Radiographic changes of adolescent tibia vara. A 15-year-old black male presented with unilateral adolescent tibia vara on the right side. **a** Scanogram shows varus alignment on the right side with the mechanical axis medial to the joint. **b** Radiographs of the leg shows varus deformity of the proximal tibia

- NSAIDs
- If no improvement: physical therapy referral

Osteochondritis Dissecans

Background

- Affection of an area of bone close to the articular cartilage that becomes avascular and ultimately separates from the underlying bone.
- The etiology is unknown but may be related to repetitive trauma or familiar.
- Most common site is the knee, but can also occur in the ankle and elbow.
- More common in adolescents.

Diagnosis (Osteochondritis Dissecans of the Knee)

- Vague knee pain, more with activity.
- Mild recurrent effusion.
- Loss of extension or flexion if the lesion becomes loose in the knee blocking the movement.
- Radiographs: A radiolucent area may be seen surrounding the lesion. In advanced cases, the affected lesion may be fragmented and detached (Fig. 11).

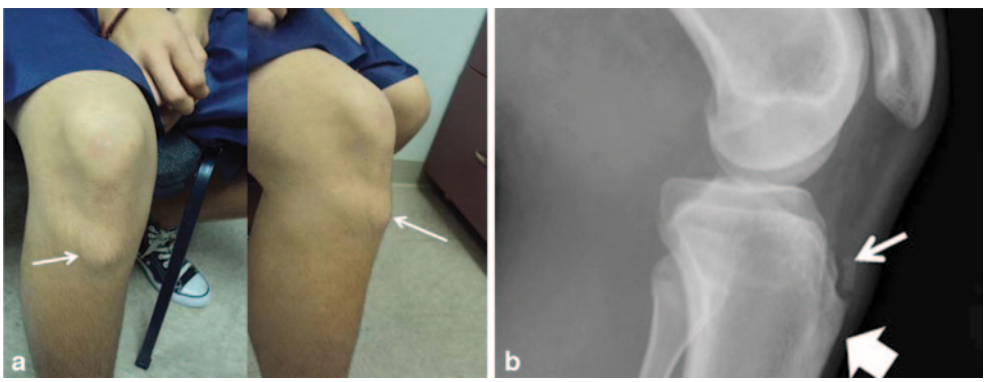


Fig. 10 **a** Osgood–Schlatter disease (**a** and **b**) A 14-year-old boy soccer player with right knee pain. Examination shows anterior knee swelling over the tibial tubercle (*arrow*). Radiological signs of Osgood Schlatter. Radiographs of a patient with Osgood–Schlatter disease. *Wide arrow* points to the enlarged tibial tubercle. *Small arrow* points to the small fragment of calcification and fragmentation within the patellar ligament

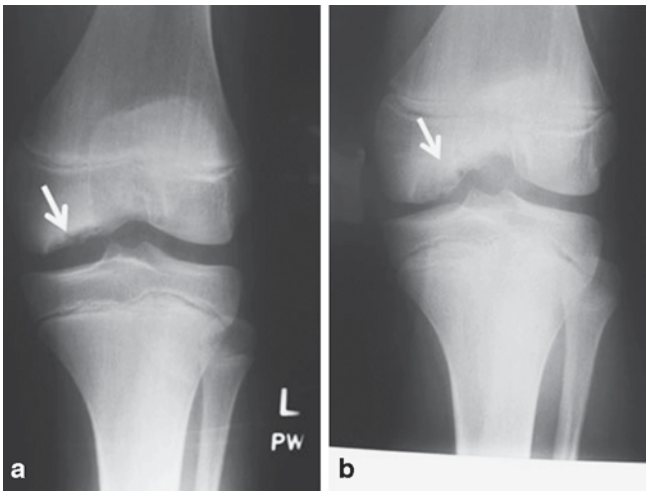


Fig. 11 Osteochondritis dissecans. Radiographs of left knee (**a** anteroposterior, **b** Notch view) showing osteochondral defect on the medial femoral condyle

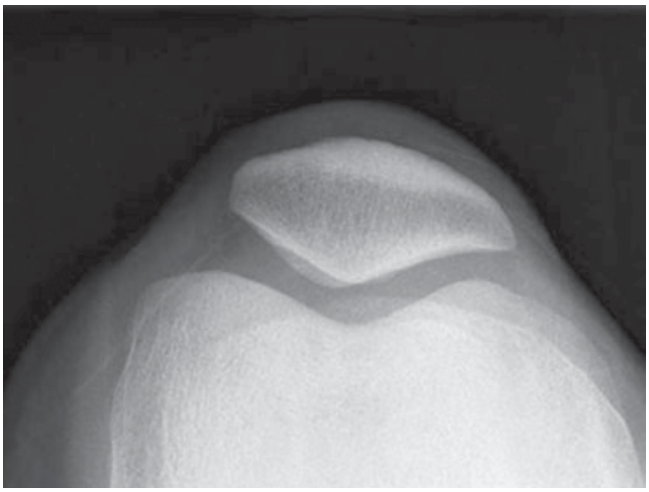


Fig. 12 Sunrise view. This view shows the position of the patella in the trochlear groove

Treatment

- Orthopedic referral. Most cases (especially in young children) will heal spontaneously without surgery.

Recurrent Patellar Dislocation/Subluxation

Background

- Patients will complain of history of *repeated dislocation* events (the patella will lie on the lateral side of the knee and has to be reduced back by the patient himself or someone else) or subluxation events (the patient feels that the patella is unstable and tilting toward the side, but no full dislocation).
- Common in adolescent females.
- Usually associated with knee pain.
- Predisposing factors for recurrent dislocation and subluxation:
  - Dysplastic trochlear groove
  - Patella alta (high riding patella)
  - Increase Q angle (angle between pull of quadriceps muscle and patellar tendon)
  - Genu valgum
  - Increased femoral anteversion
  - External tibial torsion

Diagnosis

- General examination for signs of increased laxity (e.g., elbow hyperextension).
- Parapatellar tenderness.
- Mild effusion.
- Specific test for patellar stability:
  - Positive J sign: with repeated flexion and extension of the knee, patella will deviate laterally at the end of extension.
  - Apprehension sign: Extension of the knee with laterally directed pressure on the patella, will give positive result (quadriceps contraction or apprehension look on the face).
- Radiographs: The sunrise view will show the lateral tilt of the patella (Fig. 12).
- CT and MRI can better delineate the tilt of the patella and trochlear hypoplasia.

Treatment

- After first dislocation: knee immobilizer for 1–2 weeks followed by physical therapy.
- Recurrent dislocation/subluxation: Therapy referral for isometric quadriceps-strengthening exercise.
- Orthopedic referral: Surgery is indicated if conservative treatment fails.

Popliteal Cyst (Baker's Cyst)

Background

- It is a cystic mass filled with gelatinous material that develops in the popliteal fossa. It is more common in boys (Fig. 13).

Diagnosis

- Painless cystic swelling in the back of the knee.
- It can disappear spontaneously within 6–24 months from its presentation.

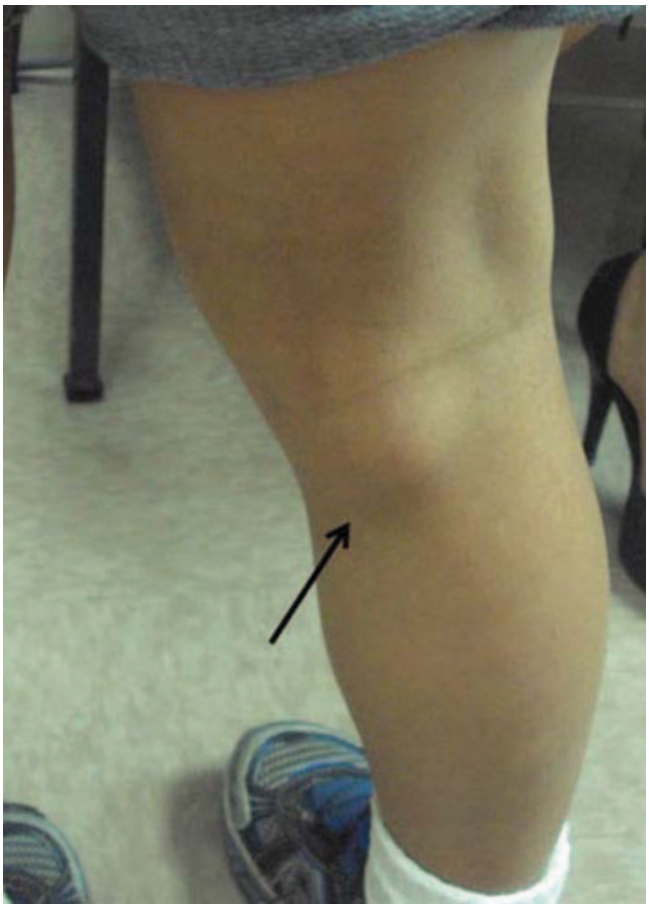


Fig. 13 Popliteal cyst (Baker's Cyst). A 6-year-old boy brought with his family because of nonpainful swelling on the back of the right the knee. The *arrow* shows the Baker's cyst on medial side of the back of the knee

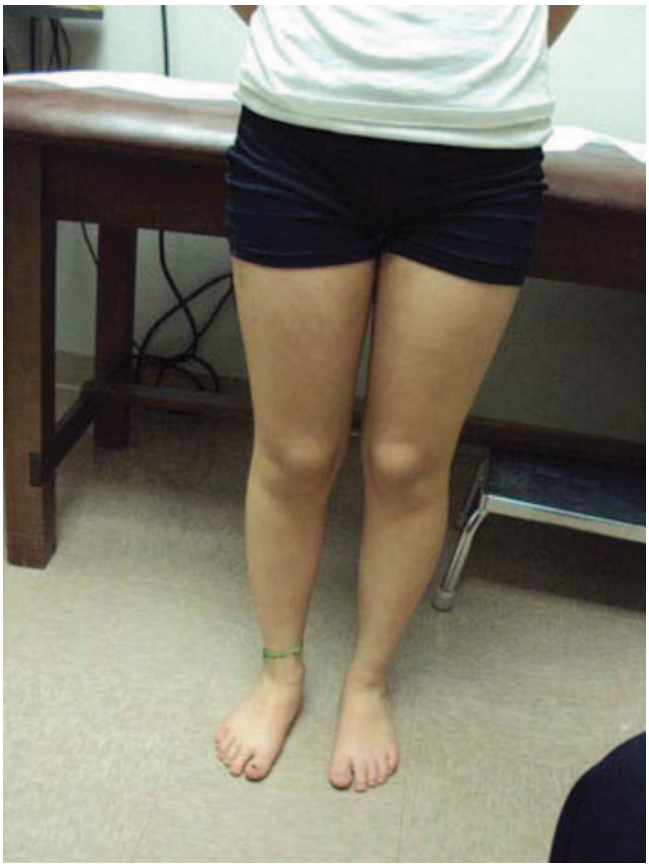


Fig. 14 Miserable malalignment syndrome. A 15-year-old girl with 2 years of history of knee pain. Patient had excess femoral anteversion as manifested by her patellas pointing inward. Despite the inward position of the patella, her foot is still pointing forward due to her external tibial torsion

Treatment

- A prolonged period of observation is recommended before considering surgical excision.
- If swelling persists for more than 12 months or atypical findings (tender or firm), orthopedic referral for excision.

Patellofemoral Pain Syndrome

Background

- Knee pain due to increased loads of the patellofemoral joint.
- Common condition among adolescent females, it has other names in the literature (Chondromalacia patella (misnomer as the patellar cartilage is intact), Patellar overload syndrome).

Diagnosis

- Anterior knee pain that increases with activity.
- Usually associated with *miserable malalignment syndrome* (increase the stress between patella and trochlea):
  - It consists of the following three elements (Fig. 14):
    - Increased femoral anteversion.
    - External tibial torsion.
    - Pes planus (flat foot).
- May also be associated with recurrent patellar subluxation (see before).

Treatment

- Ice, rest, NSAID, knee brace
- Physical therapy: for quadriceps strengthening and hamstring stretching

Intoeing

Three Main Causes of Intoeing

- Excess femoral anteversion
- Internal tibial torsion
- Metatarsus adductus

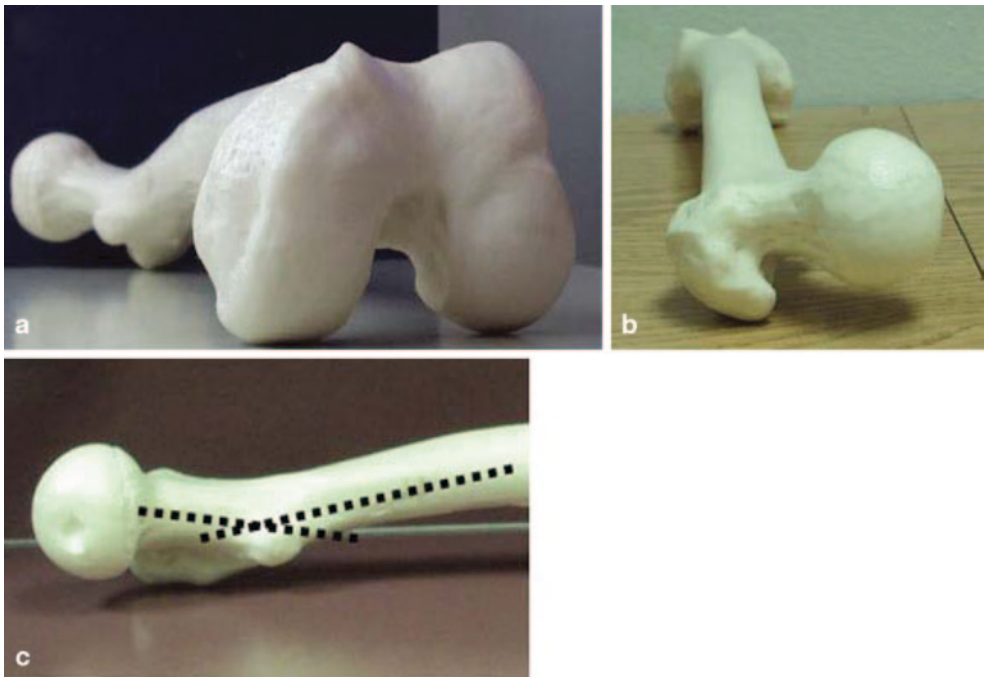


Fig. 15 Femoral anteversion. **a** The angle between the femoral shaft and the femoral neck in the sagittal planes. **b** and **c** Notice when the femur rests on the flat surface, the femoral head is elevated on that surface by the anteversion of the neck

Femoral Anteversion

Background

- Femoral anteversion is the angle between the neck of the femur and the shaft in the sagittal plane (Fig. 15).
- This angle is about 40° at birth and decreases when the child starts walking. It reaches the adult normal value (about 17°) by the age of 8 years.
- Diseases which affect the child's ability to walk (e.g., cerebral palsy), the child continues to have increased angle of femoral anteversion.
- Commonest cause of intoeing between the ages of 3 and 8 years.

Diagnosis

- Hip internal rotation exceeds hip external rotation (Fig. 16)

Treatment

- No treatment is required as the condition usually resolves spontaneously around the age of 8 years.
- Bracing and orthotics do not change the natural history of the condition.

Internal Tibial Torsion

Background

- Inward rotation of the shaft of the tibia. It is considered normal finding in newborn due to intrauterine position.
- The most common cause of intoeing. Usually seen in infants around the age of 2–3 years.

Diagnosis

- With the child lying prone flexing his knee, the foot will be pointing inward in relation to his thigh (thigh foot angle).

Treatment

- No treatment is required. Usually resolves spontaneously over the first few years of life.

Metatarsus Adductus

Background

- Adduction and inward position of the forefoot (Fig. 17).
- It may be related to intrauterine position and may be associated with other conditions related to uterine malposition (e.g., Hip dysplasia).

Diagnosis

- The foot has a curved lateral border rather than being straight.
- Differentiated from clubfoot by absence of ankle equinus (plantar flexion) and hindfoot varus (inward position of the heel).

Treatment

- Most of the infants with metatarsus adductus will improve without interference.
- If the condition persists beyond 6 months of age and the deformity is rigid, orthopedic referral for either serial casting or bracing. Surgery is rarely indicated.

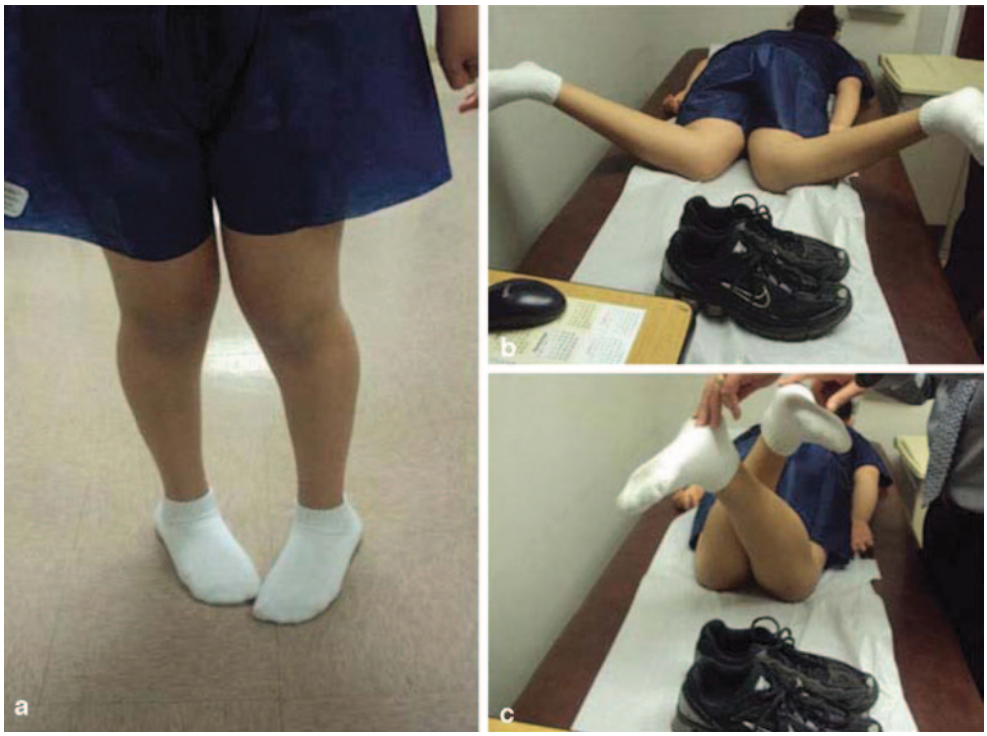


Fig. 16 A 12-year-old girl with severe intoeing (notice the inward position of both patellae (**a**). Examination shows increase hip internal rotation (**b**) compared to external rotation (**c**)

Clubfoot (Talipes Equinovarus)

Background

- Complex rigid deformity of the ankle and the foot.
- Unknown etiology: Muscular, neurogenic, genetic, and connective tissue theories have been proposed.
- Affects about 1 in 1000 live births. More common in boys (2:1), 50 % of the cases are bilateral.
- Types:
  - *Idiopathic:* No other congenital condition can be found. Most common type.
  - *Postural:* due to the posture of the newborn in the uterus. The deformity can be corrected easily by the examiner. Not considered real clubfoot.
  - *Syndromic*: Some congenital conditions are associated with clubfoot as arthrogryposis and diastrophic dwarfism.
  - *Neuromuscular conditions:* in myelomeningocele and cerebral palsy.

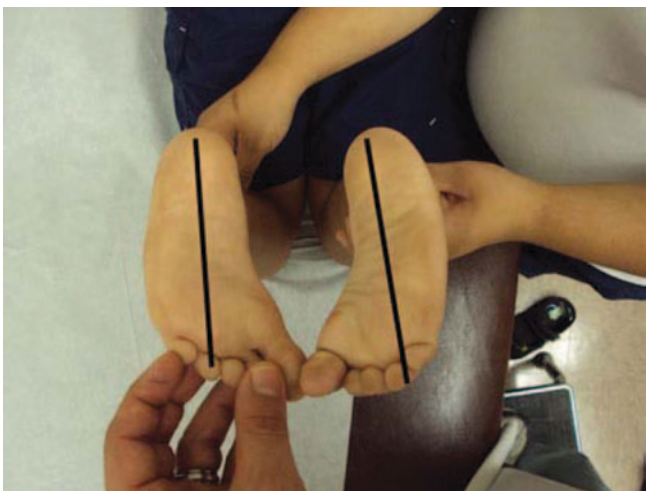


Fig. 17 Metatarsus adductus. Four year old with moderate metatarsus adductus on the *left* side and severe on the *right* side (patient is prone with flexed knee). Notice the curved lateral border of the foot

Diagnosis

- Rigid deformity (cannot be corrected by the examiner).
- Clubfoot has three main deformities (Fig. 18)
  - *Ankle and foot equines* (plantar flexion of the ankle and the foot)
  - *Hindfoot varus* (inward deviation of the heel)
  - *Forefoot adduction* (inward position of the forefoot in relation to the hindfoot)
- Other components of the deformity include cavus of the foot (high-arched foot) and internal tibial torsion of the leg.
- *No* radiographs are needed.

Treatment

- Orthopedic referral: Two treatment options are currently utilized:
  - *Serial casting:* weekly change of cast
  - *Physical therapy* and stretching.

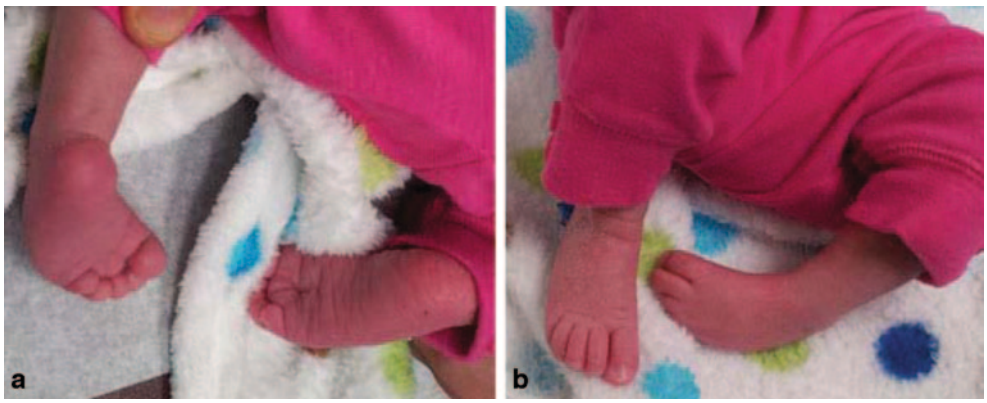


Fig. 18 Clubfoot. A 2-week-old girl with left clubfoot. Notice the deformity of the left foot (equinus, varus, forefoot adduction and cavus). On the *left* (**a**), notice the hindfoot varus. On the *right* (**b**), notice the forefoot adduction and equinus

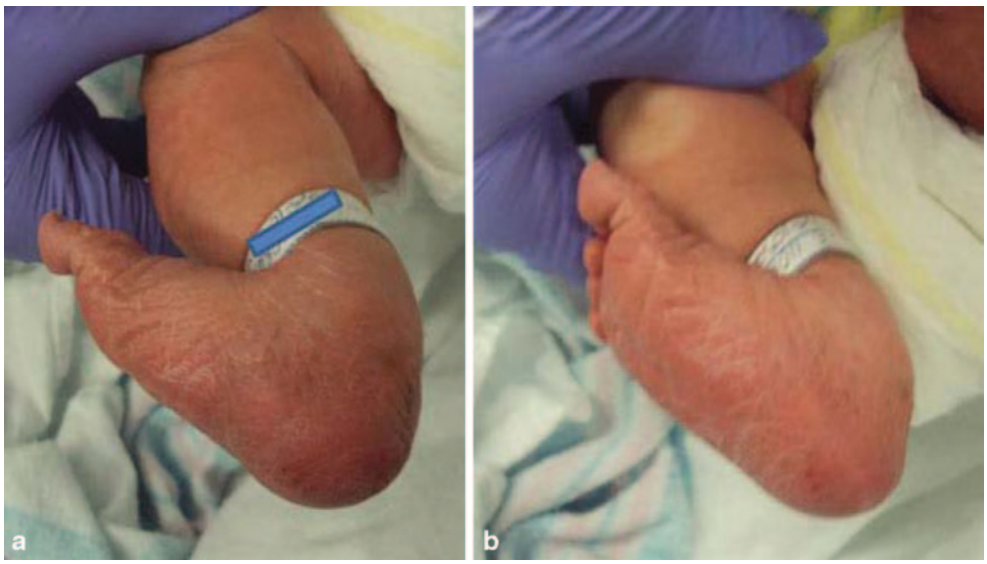


Fig. 19 Calcaneo-valgus foot. **a, b** Newborn baby with right foot deformity. The foot is in valgus and dorsiflexion (calcaneus position). No treatment required as the condition is self-limiting

- After correction of the foot deformity, a brace (corrective shoes with a bar in-between the shoes to turn the feet outward) should be used for 2–3 years to prevent the recurrence

Calcaneovalgus Foot

Background

- A condition in the newborn in which the foot is in excessive dorsiflexion and valgus (Fig. 19). It is related to intrauterine position.

Diagnosis

- The foot is in excess dorsiflexion and valgus to the degree that the dorsum of the foot is touching the front of the tibia.

Treatment

- Most cases do not require treatment as they will improve with growth.

Cavus Foot

Background

- High-arched foot (Fig. 20).
- Cavus foot is an indication of neurological affection (e.g., Charcot–Marrie–Tooth disease, Spina bifida (sacral level affection), lipoma of the cord or other intrathecal pathology).

Diagnosis

- The foot will have high arch appearance (Fig. 20).
- Thorough neurological exam has to be done to identify the underlying cause.
- Radiographs: The lateral talar—first metatarsal (Meary's) angle is more than 5° convex dorsally (normally it should be zero degree).

Treatment

- Identification and treatment of the underlying cause.
- Neurology/neurosurgery and orthopedic surgery referral.

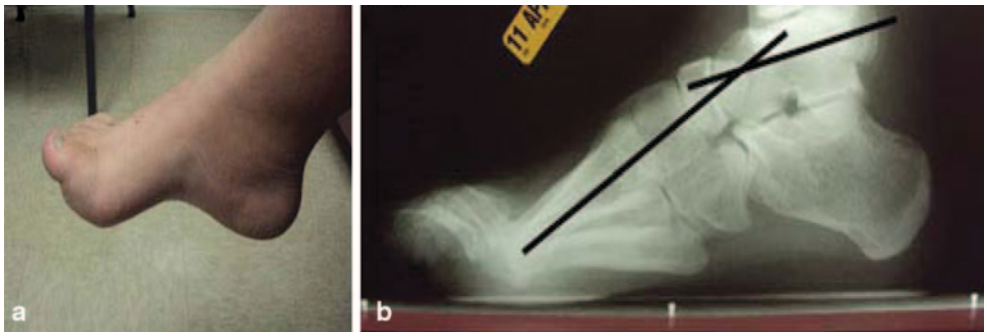


Fig. 20 Cavus foot. 15-year-old boy with Charcot-Marrie tooth. Patient has right foot high arch deformity (*cavus*). Lateral radiograph of the foot (*standing*) shows increased lateral talar—first metatarsal (*Meary's*) angle

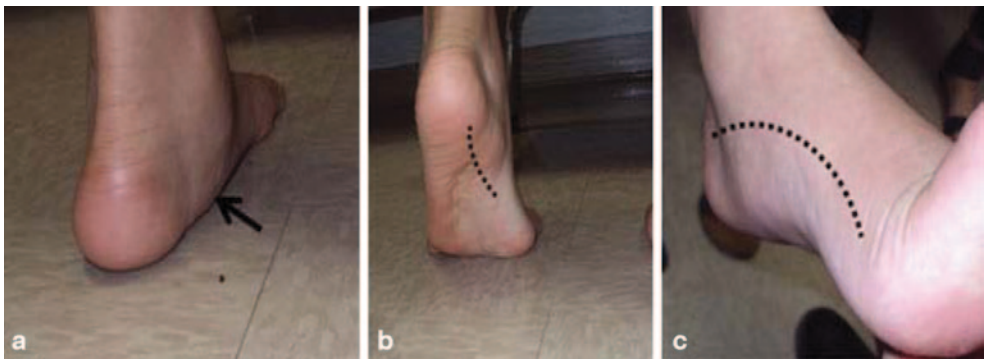


Fig. 21 Flexible flat feet. A 9-year-old girl with bilateral flexible flat feet. When patient stands there is loss of arch (*arrow*; **a**). When she tip toes (**b**) or with dorsiflexion of the big toe (**c**), there is restoration of the arch (*dotted arch*)

Flat Foot (Pes Planus)

Background

- The medial arch of the foot does not develop until the age of 4 years and reaches close to the adult value by the age of 8 years.
- *Flexible flat foot:*
  - Loss of the medial arch support when the child stands. This is normal finding in about 10 % of the population.
  - It is universal finding in neonates and toddlers and is associated with physiological ligamentous laxity and excess fat at the sole of the foot.
- *Rigid flat foot:*
  - Due to foot pathology like tarsal coalition or congenital vertical talus.

Diagnosis

- Loss of the arch of the foot (the heel will be in valgus) when the patient stands.
- *Flexible flat foot:*
  - With tip toeing or with dorsiflexion of the big toe (tightening of the plantar fascia), restoration of the arch (Fig. 21).
  - Normal subtalar joint movement (supination/pronation of the foot).
  - The condition in the vast majority of cases is asymptomatic. Rarely, the condition can cause pain at the medial aspect of the foot over the tarsal head.
  - Some cases are associated with tight Achilles tendon. Other cases may be associated with generalized laxity of the joints.
- *Rigid flat foot:*
  - Rigid deformity that is not corrected by tip toeing or dorsiflexion of the big toe.
  - Decrease or absent subtalar motion.

Treatment

- *Flexible flat foot:*
  - Reassurance (the condition is a variation of normal development).
  - Achilles tendon stretching for the children with tight Achilles tendon.
- *Rigid flat foot:*
  - Orthopedic referral.

Tarsal Coalition

Background

- Abnormal connection (bridging) between two of the tarsal bone.
- The condition usually starts as fibrous or cartilaginous connection and then matures to bony bridge between two bones by the age of adolescence.
- The condition is usually asymptomatic and bilateral. About 5 % of the population has tarsal coalition.

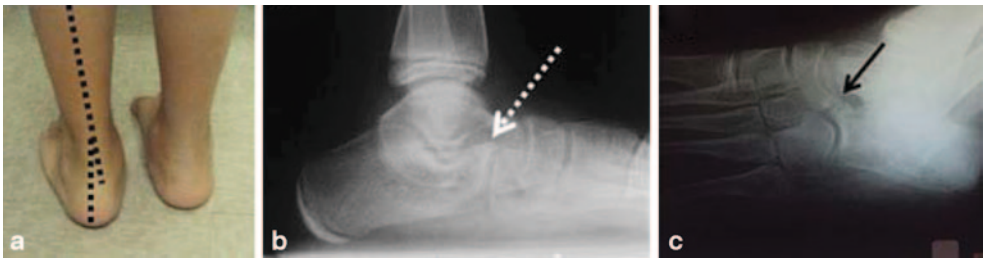


Fig. 22 Calcaneonavicular coalition. An 11-year-old boy with left flat foot and valgus heel (**a**; *dotted line*) and foot pain for 6 months. Lateral standing radiograph (**b**) shows flat foot with no arch and bony prominence of the calcaneus (*white arrow*; ant eater sign). Oblique radiograph (**c**) shows the calcaneonavicular coalition (*black arrow*)

- Most common coalition is calcaneonavicular and subtalar (talo-calcaneal) fusion.

Diagnosis
- Usually presents around 10–14 years old.
- Stiff flat foot with foot pain.
- History of recurrent ankle sprains with persistence of the pain after the injury.
- Decreased subtalar movement (supination and pronation of the hindfoot).
- Radiographs can show the bony fusion especially calcaneonavicular type (ant eater sign). Subtalar (talo-calcaneal) coalition is harder to detect in plain radiographs. If radiograph is normal and the condition is suspected clinically, CT of the foot is indicated (Fig. 22).

Treatment
- If discovered accidentally during foot radiographs taken for other reasons: No treatment is needed. Orthopedic referral for symptomatic cases only.

Tip Toe Walking

Background
- Pattern of walking in which the child walks on his toes with ankle plantar flexion. If no underlying neurological cause is identified, it is referred to as *Habitual toe walking* or *idiopathic toe walking*.
- Common in toddlers and young children when they are starting to learn how to walk. Sometimes, the toe walking is associated with autism or speech delay.
- Other causes of tip toeing (Differential diagnosis of idiopathic toe walking):
  - *Cerebral palsy:* Mild cerebral palsy is very hard to differentiate from idiopathic toe walking. Upper extremities movement during gait is normal in idiopathic toe walking and restricted in mild cerebral palsy.
  - *Duchene Muscular dystrophy*: positive Gower sign, Pseudo hypertrophy of the calf.
  - *Tether cord syndrome*: other neurological manifestations (e.g., bladder dysfunction).
  - *Limb length discrepancy*: will cause unilateral toe walking (on the short side).

Diagnosis
- The child walks on his/her toes with no pain.
- Tight Achilles tendon especially with the knee extended.

Treatment
- Full neurological exam to exclude underlying neurological disease.
- If the child had just learned how to walk, less than 24-months old or the toe walking is occasional, observation and reassessment after 6 months.
- If the child is older than 24 months and the toe walking is constant: physical therapy for Achilles tendon stretching. If no improvement after 6 months of therapy: orthopedic referral for Botox injection of the calf muscle or Achilles tendon lengthening or serial casting.

Adolescent Hallux Valgus

Background
- Bunion deformity of the foot that develops in adolescence.
- Most cases have a positive family history.

Diagnosis
- Deformity (Bunion; Fig. 23).
- The condition is usually bilateral.
- Most cases are asymptomatic. However, sometimes, pain develops over the medial prominence.
- Standing AP foot radiographs will show increased angle between the first metatarsus and the first proximal phalanx more than 15 degrees.

Treatment
- For asymptomatic cases, no treatment is required.

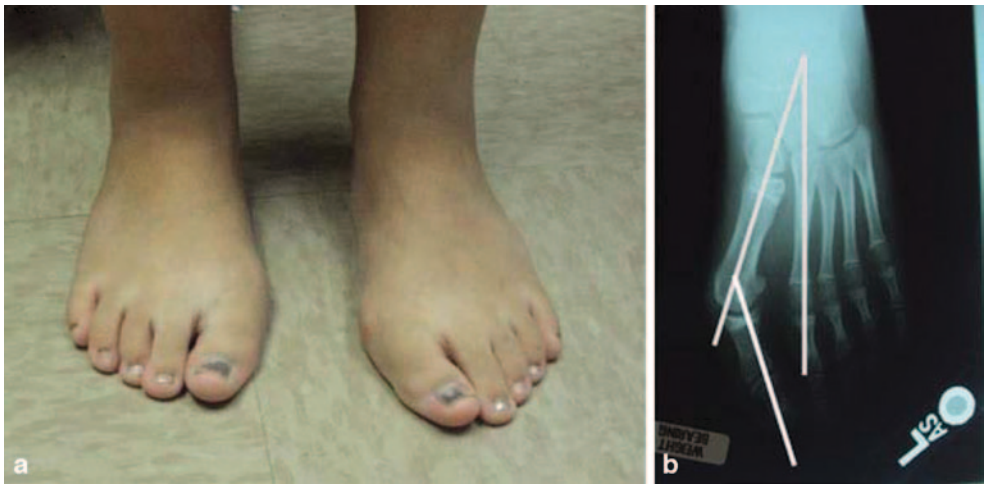


Fig. 23 Adolescent hallux valgus. An 8-year-old girl with bilateral hallux valgus more in the left side (**a**). Weight bearing radiographs (**b**) show 28 degree the first metatarso-phalangeal angle and 18 degree first metatarsal-second metatarsal angle

- If symptomatic: start with conservative treatment (wide shoe box). If no improvement with conservative treatment, orthopedic referral.

Ingrowing Toenail

Background
- The penetration of the border of the nail plate into the nail fold causing pain and inflammation in the surrounding tissue (Fig. 24).
- Commonly affects the big toe.
- Etiology: unknown, may be related to tight-fitting shoes, trauma to the toe, incorrect trimming of toenails and/or genetic susceptibility.

Diagnosis
- Significant pain and discomfort of the toe with inflammation of tissue surrounding the nail bed.

Treatment
- Proper care of the nail (a comfortable wide toe box or open-toed shoes, the nail should be cut straight across and avoid cutting back the lateral margins, the nail edge should extend past the nail fold).
- Frequent soaking of the foot in warm water.
- Local antibiotic application (Oral antibiotic can be prescribed if the infection is advanced).
- Elevating the offending edge of the nail from the soft tissue, and placing a small piece of gauze between the nail and the skin.
- If no improvement with the above measures: Orthopedic or Podiatry referral.

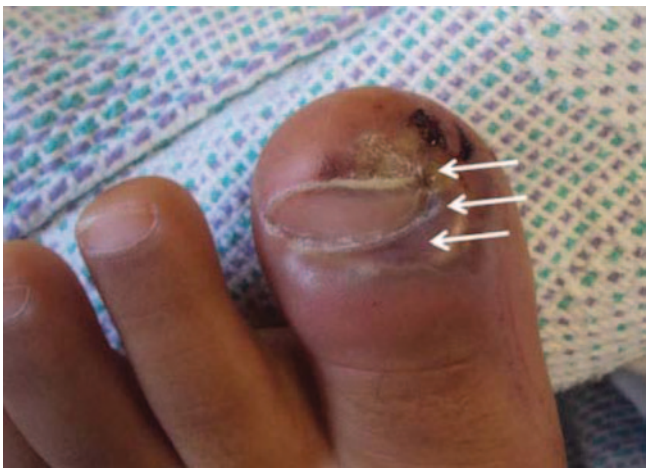


Fig. 24 A 6-year-old with ingowing toe nail. Notice the pocket of pus (*arrows*)

Sever's Disease

Background
- Traction apophysitis of the calcaneal tubrosity.

Diagnosis
- Pain over the heel.
- History of sports participation and exercises.

Treatment
- Symptomatic treatment: rest, NSAID, stretching exercise for Achilles tendon.

Madelung Deformity

Background

- A physeal growth arrest involving the ulnar-volar portion of the distal radius growth plate. This arrest results in a characteristic appearance of the distal radius and ulna and gross deformity of the wrist joint (Fig. 25).
- Madelung deformity can be an isolated finding or a manifestation of a systemic process. It may be associated with: achondroplasia, multiple exostoses, Ollier's disease (multiple enchondromas), and Turner's syndrome.

Diagnosis

- Patients presented with a deformed wrist, shorten forearm, loss of supination of the forearm, loss of ulnar deviation, and lack of extension of the wrist.
- Radiographs: The deformity of the distal radius with dorsal dislocation of the distal radioulnar joint (DRUJ).

Treatment

- Despite the deformity, many individuals function quite well.

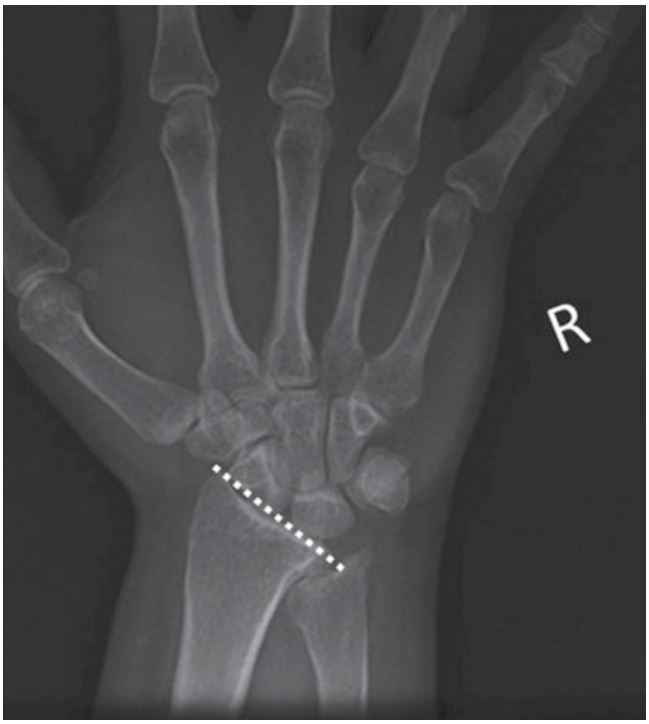


Fig. 25 A 16-year-old girl with Turner's syndrome and wrist deformity. Radiograph of the right hand showed Madelung deformity with increased radial inclinational (*dotted line*)

Meniscal Injury of the Knee

Background

- Anatomy of the menisci: Two cartilaginous crescent-shaped structures that act like a cushion inside the knee (Fig. 26).
- The medial meniscus is more prone to injury because it is more fixed to the joint capsule and more likely to be caught in between femur and tibia in case of injury.
- More common in adolescent as a result of twisting injury to the knee.

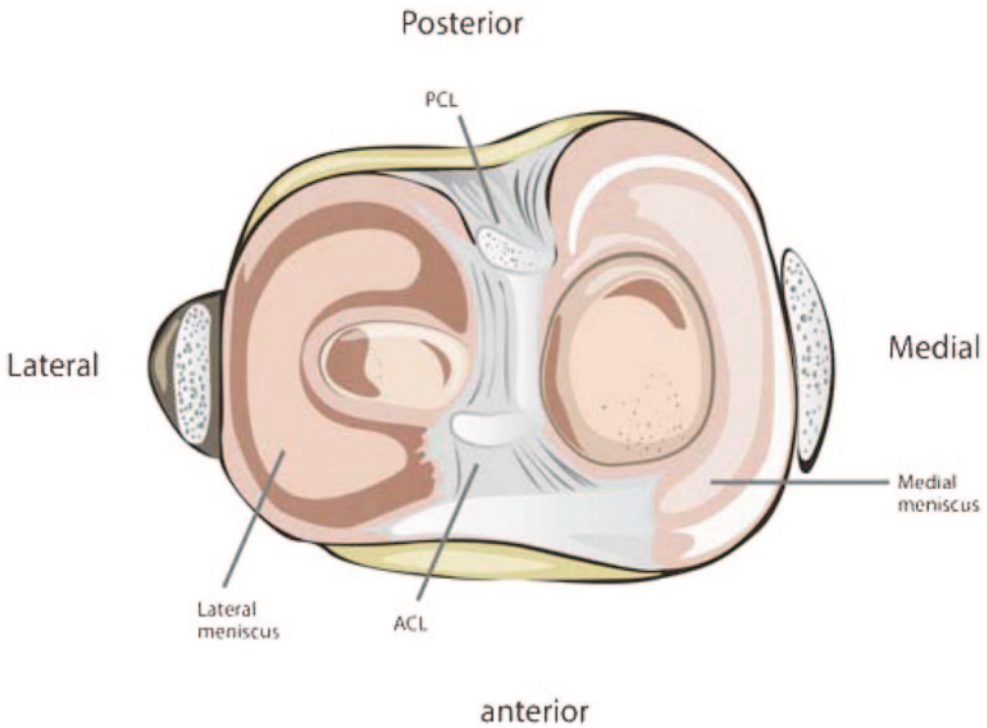


Fig. 26 Medial and lateral meniscus

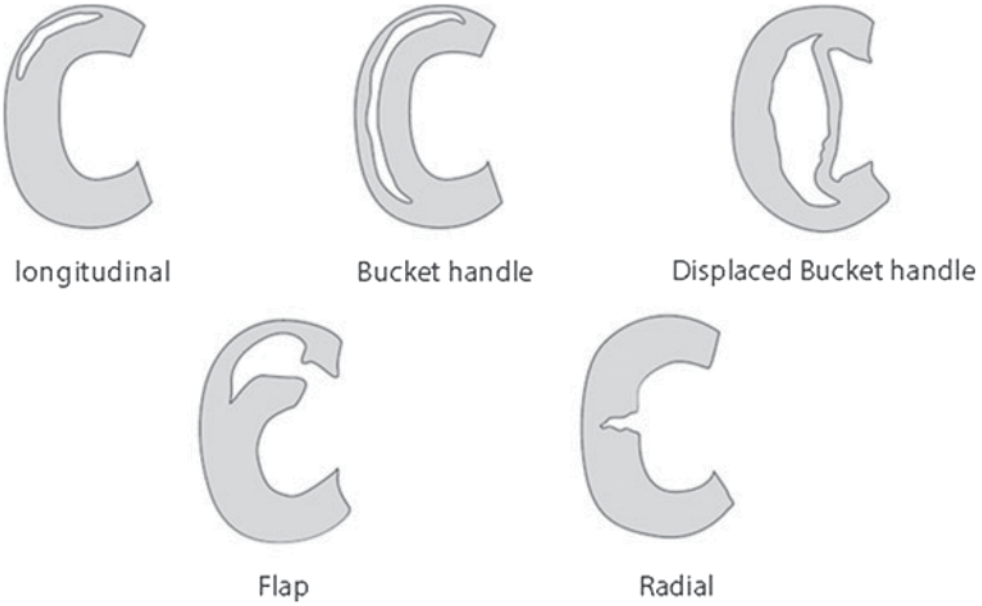


Fig. 27 Types of meniscal tears

- Can be associated with other ligament injuries like Anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) injury.
- The tears are classified according to the shape and the site.
  - According to the shape: longitudinal (most common), radial, flap, or bucket handle tear (Fig. 27).
  - According to the site: peripheral tear (has the highest healing potential as it has the best blood supply), middle tear, central (has the least healing potential due to poor blood supply).

Diagnosis

- Injury to the knee followed by pain and swelling. The swelling usually develop few hours after the injury (in contrast to ACL injury in which the swelling develop immediately after injury).
- Locking "catching" of the knee.
- Positive McMurray (extension of the knee with internal and external rotation by the examiner) and Apply grinding (downward push on the foot with the patient lying prone and the knee flexed 90°) tests and deep squats (Fig. 28).
- Plain radiographs (Anteroposterior, lateral, and sunrise) to exclude fractures or other bone pathology.
- MRI: can detect the meniscal tear and can also show associated injuries (e.g. ACL injury).

Treatment

- Most meniscal tears in adolescent are longitudinal peripheral tear that have good healing potential (in contrary to adults in which most tears have minimal healing potentials).
- Acute management: RICE (Rest, Ice, Compression, and Elevation).
- Physical therapy for range of motion (ROM) exercises and strengthening.
- Return to sports: Full ROM (compared to the other knee) with no pain.
- Indication for orthopedic referral:
  - Failure of conservative therapy.
  - Bucket handle and flap tears.
  - Associated ACL injuries.

Medial Collateral Ligament Injury (MCL)

Background

- Anatomy: Extends from the medial femoral epicondyle to the medial aspect of the tibia. It consists of two parts: superficial and deep.
- MCL: Primary restrain of the knee joint against drifting into valgus (the tibia point laterally).

Diagnosis

- Pain in the medial aspect of the knee following valgus injury.
- Instability of the knee on valgus stress.
- Radiograph: AP, Lat, and sunrise view to exclude fractures.
- MRI: will show the injury to the medial collateral.

Treatment

- Most medial collateral injuries can be treated conservatively. RICE (Rest, Ice, Compression, and Elevation). Physical therapy for range of motion (ROM) exercises and strengthening.

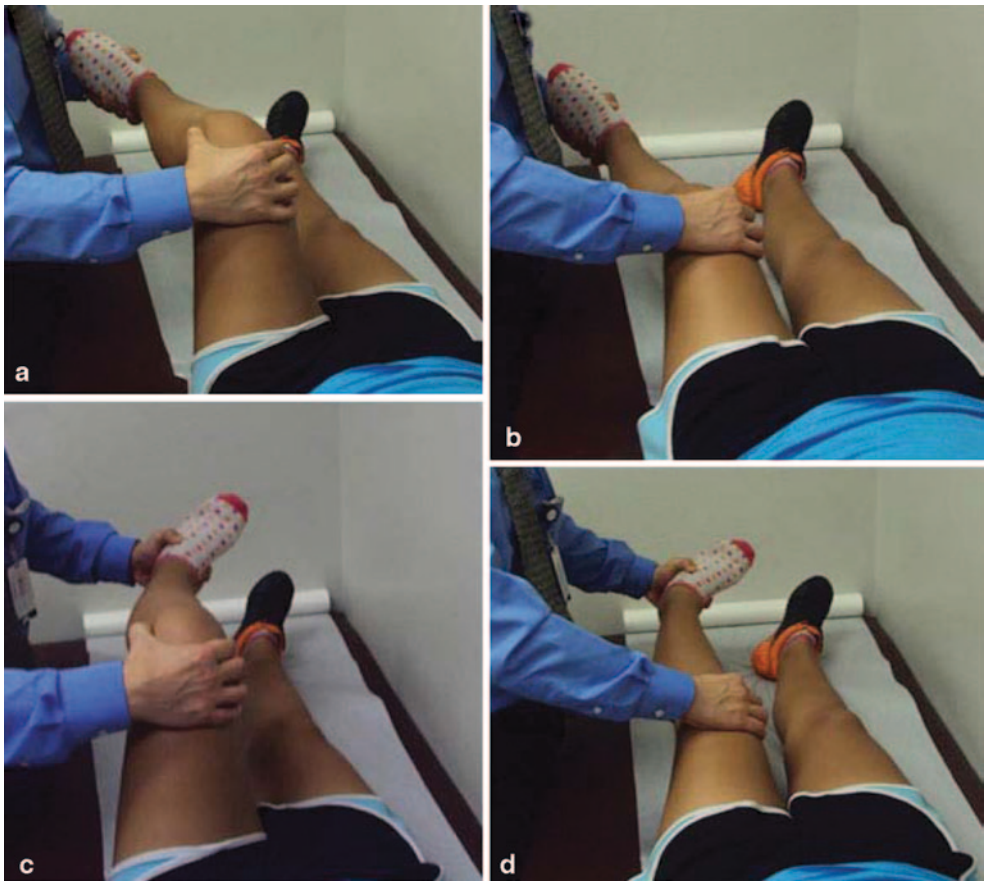


Fig. 28 McMurray test: **a** The knee is flexed with one hand holding the knee at the joint line and the other knee holding the foot. **b** The knee is flexed and the leg is put in external rotation and valgus with extending the knee. **c** and **d** This is repeated with leg in varus and internal rotation. Pain or a "click" constitutes a positive McMurray test

- Return to sports: when the patient has full ROM with no pain.

Anterior Cruciate Ligament (ACL) Injury

Background

- Anatomy: Extends from the anterior part of the tibia to posterior femoral notch. It prevents anterior displacement of the tibia on the femur.
- Most common ligamentous knee injury with increasing incidence in adolescent population due to increased sports participation at younger age.
- More common in adolescent females playing sports with cutting movements (e.g., soccer).
- The injury occurs secondary to direct trauma to the knee, or non contact twisting or hyperextension injury to the knee.
- May be associated with injuries to medial and lateral collateral ligaments and menisci.

Diagnosis

- The child will describe injury followed by "popping" of the knee and immediate swelling with inability to bear weight.
- Marked swelling (hemarthrosis).
- Stressing the knee joint: positive Lachman and anterior drawer tests; cannot be performed in the acute setting because of pain.
- Imaging: AP, lateral, 20° tunnel, and sunrise radiographs views to rule out fracture.
- MRI: diagnostic for ACL disruption. Also assess the integrity of menisci, collateral ligaments, and chondral surfaces.

Management

- Initial conservative management: rest, ice, activity modification, bracing, and physical therapy.
- Early orthopedic referral for surgical consideration: Surgical reconstruction (by graft whether autograft (from the patient him/herself) or from donor (allograft)) is the standard of treatment if the patient wants to continue sport activity.
- Reconstruction by graft requires drilling and passing tissues across the growth plate of the distal femur and proximal tibia which may affect these growth plates. This is of more concern in younger children.

Table 2 Clinical differentiation between ankle sprain and ankle fracture

Ankle sprain	Ankle fracture
Depending on the degree of injury Most cases can bear slight weight	Cannot bear weight immediately after injury
No bony tenderness	*Bony tenderness*/crepitation Palplate, medial and lateral malleolus, base of the fifth metatarsal, mid-foot bone
Maximal point of tenderness in anterior talofibular ligament and/or calcaneofibular ligament areas	Maximal point of tenderness is the bone
Painful and swollen	Painful and swollen

Ankle Sprain

Background

- A twisting injury of the foot and ankle followed by pain and swelling.
- The twisting injury in the majority of cases is "inversion type" (means that the ankle is in varus position at the time of injury). *The anterior talofibular ligament (ATFL)* is the most commonly affected ligament in ankle sprains.
- Predisposing factors for recurrent ankle injuries: poor proprioception (the peroneal muscle proprioception plays important role in stabilizing the ankle joint), poor muscle tone, obesity, connective tissue disorders (e.g., Ehler–Danlos syndrome, Marfan syndrome), tarsal coalition.

Diagnosis

- Clinical presentation depends on the degree of ankle sprain.
  - Grade 1: Swelling is usually minimal with stable joint. The patient is able to bear weight with minimal discomfort.
  - Grade 2: Moderate swelling and ecchymosis, moderate joint instability. Patients usually have difficulty in bearing weight.
  - Grade 3: Complete rupture of the ligament and severe instability of the joint. Immediate and severe swelling and ecchymosis, with inability to bear weight.
- Differentiate an ankle sprain from a fracture by: Palpate for any point bony tenderness in the following areas: medial malleolus, lateral malleolus, base of the fifth metatarsal, midfoot bones. Any tenderness, bony deformity or crepitus, in one of those areas suggests the possible presence of a fracture. Radiographs should be obtained in these cases or if the patient is unable to bear weight on the affected extremity immediately after the injury and in the emergency department (Table 2).
- Passive inversion or plantar flexion will reproduce pain.
- The maximal point of tenderness for a lateral ankle sprain is usually at the anterior talofibular ligament (anterolateral part of the ankle joint).

Treatment

- The acute phase of treatment lasts for 1–3 days after the injury. The goals of acute treatment are to control pain, minimize swelling, and maintain or regain ROM. Rest, ice, compression, and elevation (i.e., RICE) are the mainstays of acute treatment.
- Multiple braces are available that can help stabilize the ankle (e.g., lace-up brace, air cast, cam boots). Casting used rarely for ankle sprain nowadays, only with severe injuries in which patient is not able to bear weight with braces. Discontinue the use of the brace when there is minimal swelling and pain at the site of injury.
- Return to play: Patients can return to sports when they have normal painless range of motion.
- Indication for physical therapy referral: if after 3 weeks the patient is still having pain or limited ROM of the ankle.
- Indication for orthopedic referral: acute or recurrent ankle sprains that do not improve with physical therapy.

Hip Dislocation

Background

- Hip dislocation is rare in children. It occurs mainly in adolescent with high-energy injuries (motor vehicle collisions).
- Two types: posterior (more common) or anterior.

Diagnosis

- Patient will have severe hip pain, deformity of the extremity, and possible sciatic nerve palsy after high-energy injury.
- Radiographs will show head of the femur out of the acetabular socket (Fig. 29).

Treatment

- Urgent orthopedic consultation: Hip dislocation is an orthopedic emergency as it can lead to disruption of the blood supply to the head of femur. Closed reduction is attempted, if it fails, open reduction will be needed.

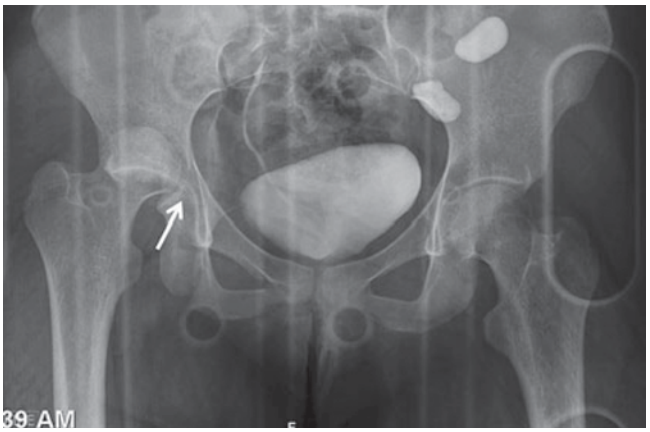


Fig. 29 A 16 year-old girl was a passenger in motor vehicle collision. Patient presented to the emergency room with right hip pain. Radiograph of the pelvis shows right hip dislocation (notice the empty right acetabulum (*arrows*) compared to left hip). (Courtesy of Dr Pirela-Cruz)

Nursemaid Elbow (Pulled Elbow)

Background
- Subluxation of the radial head from the annular ligament.
- Common condition in young children aged 1–4 years.

Diagnosis
- Child with no obvious history of trauma suddenly refuses to use his/her arm.
- Common scenarios include the following: a toddler held by his or her hand then the child and adult move in opposite directions
- Radiograph will be negative.

Treatment
- Reduction maneuvers: one hand supporting the elbow and the other hand applies axial compression at the wrist while fully supinating the forearm then flexing the elbow. Click or snap can be usually felt at the radial head with successful reduction.
- Most children will show immediate return of function after about 15–30 min.

Anterior Shoulder (Glenohumeral) Dislocation

Background
- Shoulder joint is one of the most mobile joints in the body, but comes at the expense of stability, making it the most commonly major joint to get dislocated.
- Anterior glenohumeral dislocation (the humeral head is anterior to the glenoid) is more than 90% of all dislocations.
- Posterior glenohumeral dislocation is less than 10% of all traumatic shoulder dislocations commonly occurs as a result of seizures.

Diagnosis
- Most commonly occurs after fall on outstretched hand with arm abducted and externally rotated.
- Examination will show obvious deformity—acromion prominent, humeral head may be seen anteriorly with palpable defect inferior to acromion
- The patient holds affected arm in abducted and externally rotated position.
- Radiographs (AP, axillary, and transscapular Y view) will show empty glenoid and abnormal position of the humeral head.
- Posterior shoulder dislocation may not be obvious on AP view. Axillary and transscapular views are necessary to show the deformity.

Treatment
- Closed reduction should be accomplished as soon as possible before significant muscle spasm and pain development.
- Arm should be immobilized for 2–6 weeks in a sling, then gradual range of motion exercises and strengthening exercises as tolerated.
- Return to play: Athlete must regain full range of motion and strength.
- Indications for orthopedic referral: recurrent shoulder dislocations or associated large bony lesion.

Acromioclavicular Dislocation

Background
- Separation of the joint between the lateral end of the clavicle and acromion. It occurs after direct fall onto the point of the shoulder.

Diagnosis
- Swelling and tenderness over the affected AC joint
- Deformity at the AC joint (Fig. 30).
- Limited range of motion due to pain.
- Passive adduction of arm across body produces pain at the AC joint
- X-rays with AP, axillary, Zanca views (AP with 10° cephalic tilt focused on AC joint) will demonstrate widening and/or displacement of AC joint (Fig. 30)

Treatment
- Mild displacement: sling immobilization with early range of motion

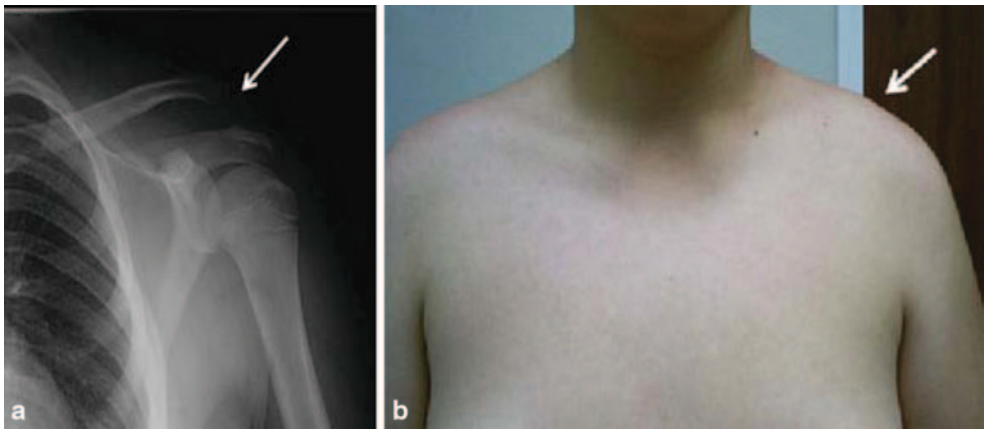


Fig. 30 A 13-year-old boy who fell down in football practice on his left shoulder. **a** Radiographs taken at the time of injury showed separation between the clavicle and acromion (*arrow*). **b** The patient had obvious deformity on the left shoulder (*arrow*)

- Marked displacement: orthopedic referral for possible surgical intervention

Compartment Syndrome

Background
- Elevation of the interstitial pressure in a closed osteofascial compartment that results in microvascular compromise.
- Compartment syndrome should be suspected in children involved in accidents with high-energy trauma to the extremities.
- More common with fractures of the leg and forearm.

Diagnosis
- *Tense non compressible swelling* of the affected compartment
- Increase in the narcotic requirements to keep the child comfortable is an early sign of increased compartment pressure
- Severe excruciating pain with passive stretch of the distal joints
- Paresthesias, pulselessness, and paralysis are late findings, and the absence of these signs does not rule out this diagnosis
- Compartment pressure can be measured using pressure needle. Pressure more than 30 mmHg suggests that patient may have compartment syndrome

Treatment
- Once compartment syndrome is suspected, cast and splints should be removed or split immediately
- The affected extremity should be elevated to the level of the heart (elevating the extremity above the level of the heart will decrease tissue perfusion)
- Urgent orthopedic consult: Definitive treatment of compartment syndrome consists of wide prompt release of the affected compartments (fasciotomy)

Salter–Harris Injuries

Background
- Injuries of the bone that go through the growth plate (physis)
- Classification: type I through type V (Fig. 31)
- Complication of Salter–Harris injuries: These fractures can cause injury to the growth plate and possible growth disturbance
  - If the growth disturbance is through the whole growth plate (complete), it will result in a short bone (and possible limb length discrepancy)
  - If the growth disturbance is partial (only part of the growth plate is affected), the bone will grow in deformed position

Diagnosis
- Radiographs will show the fracture line passing through the growth plate (Fig. 31).
- The growth disturbance is more common in certain fracture pattern (types III and IV injuries) and in certain growth plates (distal femur and proximal tibia growth plates).

Treatment
- Urgent orthopedic referral. Physeal injuries heal faster than other fractures because they occur through rapidly dividing cells; they have to be reduced as soon as possible.

Clavicular Fracture

Background
- A common fracture in pediatric patients due to clavicle's superficial location.

Diagnosis
- Pain, deformity, and swelling over the clavicle after falling on the outstretched hand.

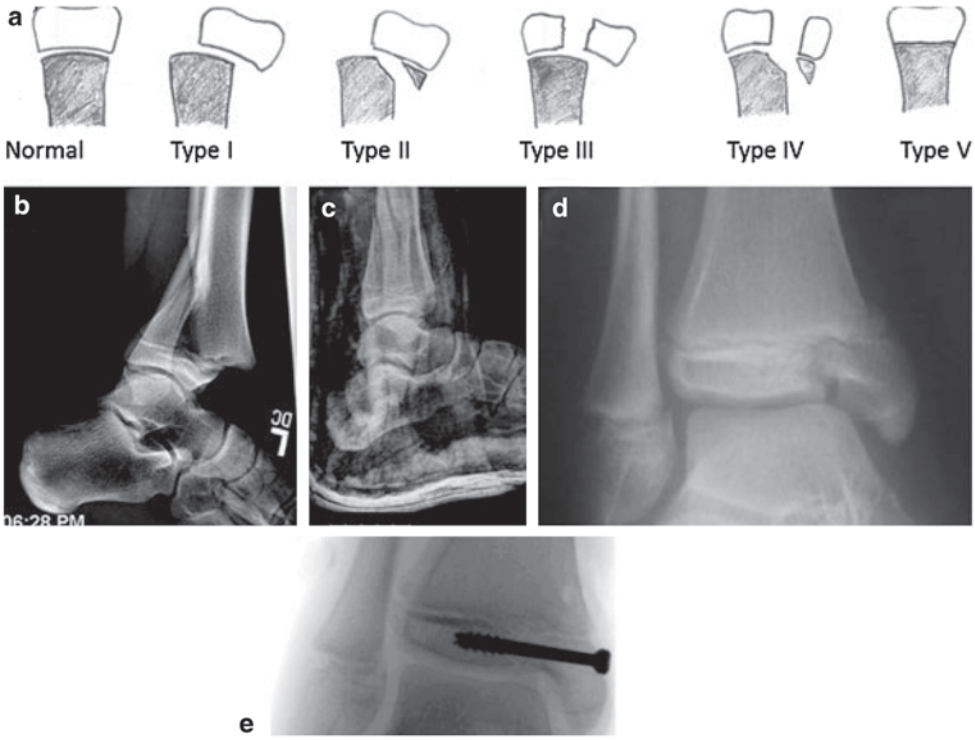


Fig. 31 a Physeal (Salter–Harris) injuries classification. Type V is usually a retrograde diagnosis after growth disturbance occurs. **b, c** Type II distal tibial fracture before and after closed reduction. **d, e** Type IV distal tibial fracture before and after open reduction and internal fixation

- Radiographs will show the fracture of the clavicle with possible deformity (angulation and/or displacement; Fig. 32).

Treatment

- Arm sling for comfort. The child can take it off when he/she feels more comfortable. No need for the "figure of 8" sling. Fracture clavicle will heal with obvious bump (bony callus).
- Indication for referral: open fracture, fractures associated with neurovascular injuries, markedly displaced or shortened fractures.

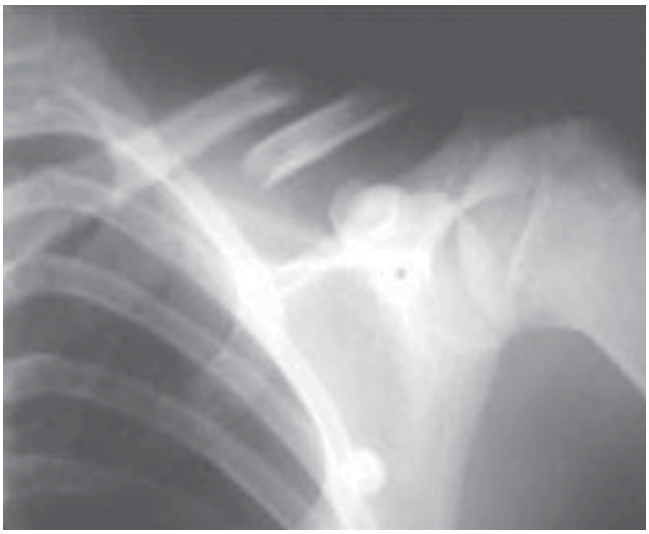


Fig. 32 Radiograph of a 12-year-old boy, who fell down and had pain over the clavicle. The radiograph shows a mid-shaft clavicle fracture

Proximal Humeral Fracture

Diagnosis

- Pain and swelling of the proximal arm
- Radiographs will show the fracture (Fig. 33)

Treatment

- Most of the fractures can be managed nonoperatively especially in young children. Immobilization of the arm in a sling

Humerus Fracture

Diagnosis

- Pain, swelling, and deformity of the arm.

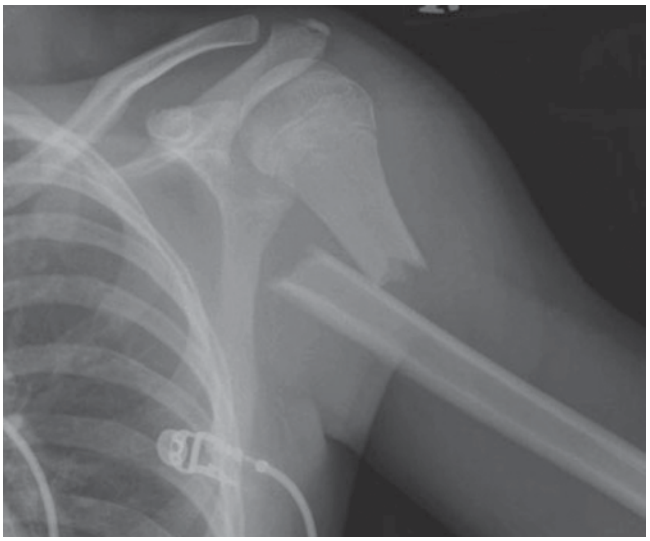


Fig. 33 Complete fracture of the proximal humerus. Please note the displacement of the fracture ends

- Can be associated with wrist drop due to radial nerve palsy. The vast majority of these palsies will improve spontaneously with no treatment needed.
- Radiographs will show the fracture (Fig. 34).

Treatment
- Orthopedic referral is needed to assess these patients and treat them.
- Most of humeral shaft fractures can be managed nonoperatively in braces.

Supracondylar Fracture of Humerus

Background
- Transverse fracture of the distal part of the humerus proximal to the articular surface.
- Incidence: 60–70 % of elbow fractures, more common in boys, between 4 and 7 years old.
- Can be associated with many complications (compartment syndrome, malunion, nerve injury).

Diagnosis
- Pain, swelling, and deformity of the affected elbow.
- With marked displacement of the fracture ends, bruises of the anterior elbow will occur (the proximal fragment button through the brachialis muscle; Fig. 35).
- Radiograph will show the fracture line which passes across the supracondylar area (Figs. 35 and 36).
- According to the displacement, the fracture is classified into:
  - Nondisplaced (type one), angulated (type two; Fig. 36), displaced (type three; Fig. 35).

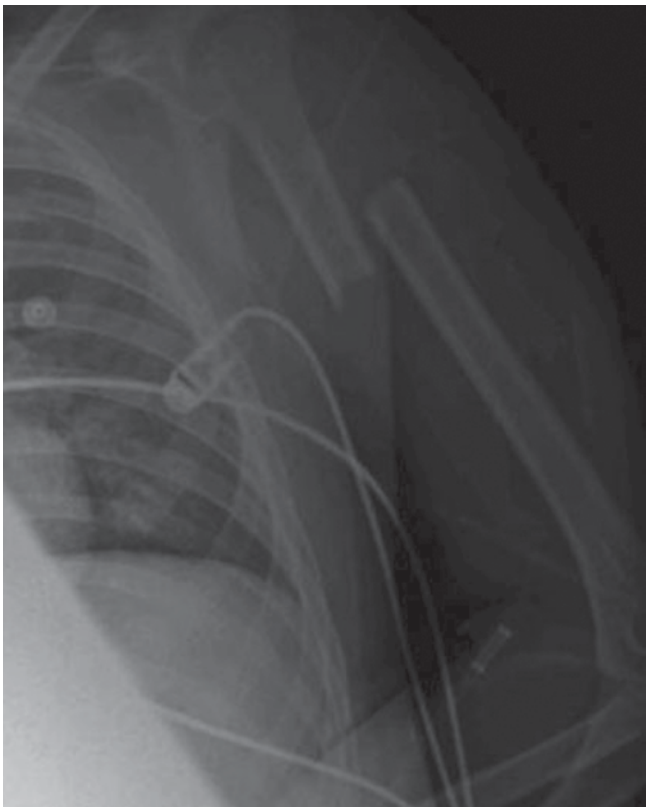


Fig. 34 Transverse fracture of the shaft of the humerus in an 11-year-old boy who had ATV accident

  - For nondisplaced fracture, posterior fat pad sign will be presented indicating blood in the joint from the fracture (Fig. 37).

Treatment
- Assess radial and ulnar pulses. If there is an absent distal pulses or possible compartment syndrome, urgent orthopedic consultation.
- Assess nerve function.
- Orthopedic referral for possible surgical intervention:
  - Angulated/displaced supracondylar humerus fracture (stage 2 and 3), the treatment is closed reduction and percutaneous pinning (Fig. 36).

Lateral Condyle Fracture

Background
- Fracture of the lateral condyle of the humerus (which includes the capitellum).
- Incidence: about 10 % of the fractures of the elbow.
- Can be complicated by nonunion.

Diagnosis
- Pain, swelling, and deformity of the affected elbow.

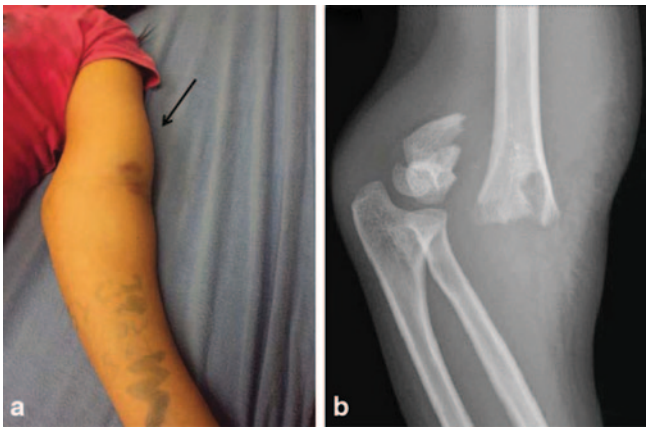


Fig. 35 Bruising of the anterior elbow with displacement of the fracture in a 7-year-old girl who fell down and has obvious deformity of the left elbow. Cubital fossa shows bruising (**a**). Radiograph (**b**) shows type III supracondylar fracture of the humerus with marked displacement of the fracture ends. The proximal fragment had "buttoned through" the brachialis muscle causing this bruising

- Radiographs: The fracture line will pass through the lateral condyle and the capitulum (Fig. 38).

Treatment

- Orthopedic referral. These fractures are prone to develop non union.
- If nondisplaced: splint application and close follow up to detect possible displacement. If displaced, surgery for internal fixation.

Medial Epicondyle Fracture

Background

- Can occur as a stress fracture (repeated stress to the medial epicondyle during throwing activities will cause the fracture with low energy injury) or can also occur as an acute fracture due to acute injury to the elbow.

Diagnosis

- Pain, swelling, and deformity of the affected elbow.
- Radiographs will show the fracture and displacement of the medial epicondyle (Fig. 39).

Management

- Orthopedic referral, in most cases the fracture can be managed conservatively with no need for surgery.
- Surgery is indicated in cases with fracture-dislocation in which the fractured piece is incarcerated in the joint (Fig. 40) or if there is more than 20 mm displacement of the fracture ends (Fig. 39).

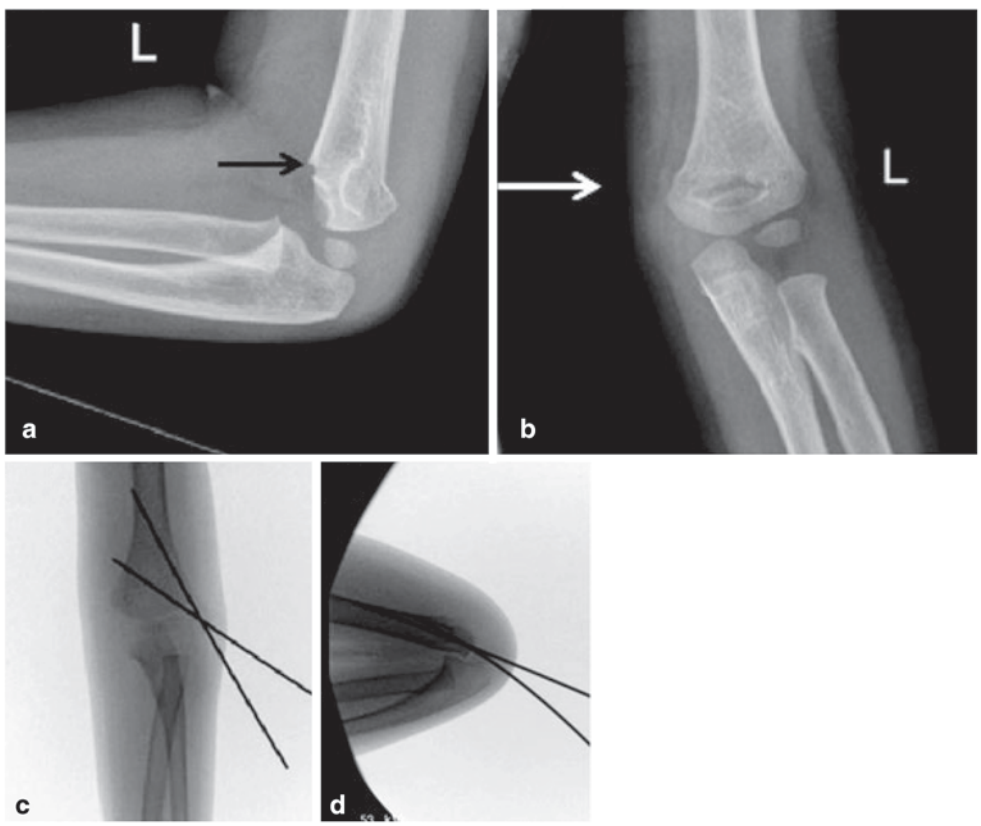


Fig. 36 Type 2 supracondylar fracture of the humerus. A 4-year-old boy with left supracondylar fracture of the humerus type 2 (notice the angulation of the fracture end in the lateral view; **a**) with no displacement of the fracture in the anteroposterior view (**b**). The treatment was closed reduction and percutaneous fixation of the humerus by K wires (**c**, **d**)

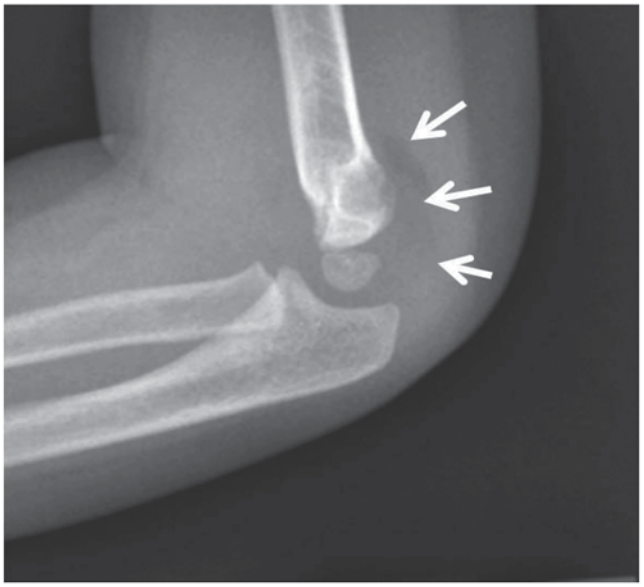


Fig. 37 Type one supra condylar fracture of the elbow with posterior fat pad sign (*arrows*)

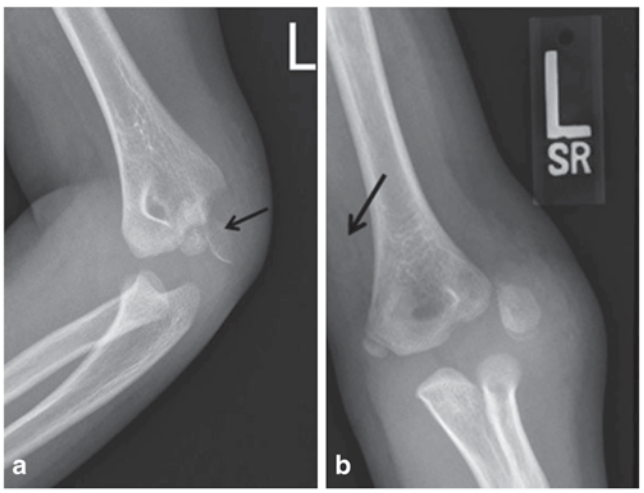


Fig. 38 Lateral condyle fracture. A 4-year-old boy fell on outstretched hand and had elbow pain and swelling. The radiographs (**a**, **b**) show a lateral condyle fracture (*arrow*)

Scaphoid Fracture

Background

- Most common carpal fracture in pediatric patients.
- Peak incidence at 15 years of age and rare before the age of 8.
- Can be complicated by nonunion due to pattern of blood supply. Fractures can result in disruption of the blood supply to the bone resulting in avascular necrosis and collapse of the bone.

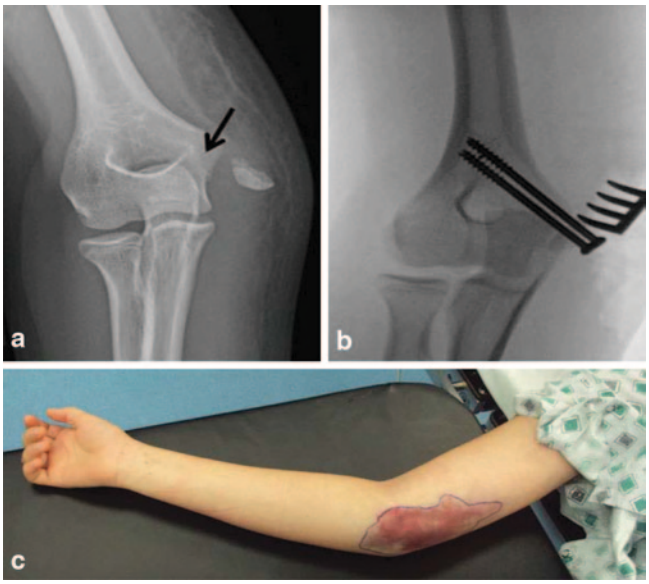


Fig. 39 Acute medial epicondyle fracture. A 13-year-old boy who fell while playing basketball. Radiograph shows the fracture displacement (**a**). The clinical picture shows the large bruising on the medial aspect of the elbow (**b**).Due to the amount of fracture displacement, surgery was done for open reduction and internal fixation (**c**)

Diagnosis

- Pain and swelling on the radial aspect of the wrist.
- Tenderness over the anatomical snuff box.
- X-ray with PA, lateral, oblique, and scaphoid views (Fig. 41) can show the fracture. High index of suspicion is required for early diagnosis as the radiographs may be negative in the first 2 weeks.
- MRI can be used in cases with negative radiographs if the clinical suspicion of fracture is high.

Treatment

- Initial suspicion of fracture with negative X-rays: treat as though scaphoid fracture is present: Place the child in short thumb spica splint for 1–2 weeks and then X-rays repeated after 2 weeks.
  - If repeat X-rays are negative and child's exam is unchanged, then immobilization should continue with thumb spica cast and MRI should be obtained.
  - If repeat X-rays are negative and child is pain-free then likelihood of fracture is low and immobilization can be discontinued.
- If X-rays are positive for fracture (either from start or after repeat film), orthopedic referral for:
  - Nondisplaced fracture: thumb spica cast
  - Displaced fracture: surgical intervention

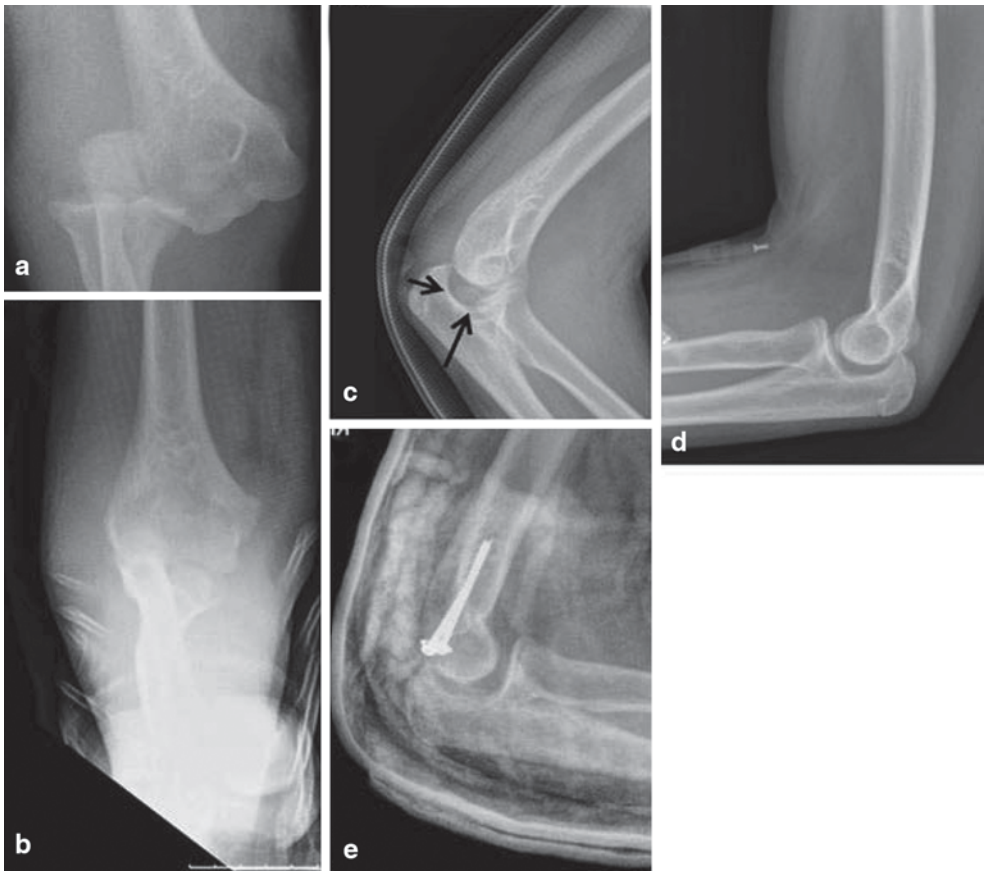


Fig. 40 Fracture dislocation of the medial epicondyle. A 12-year-old boy fell on his hand while skating. He dislocated his right elbow (**a**). Closed reduction of the elbow was done. Post reduction radiographs (**b, c**) showed incongruence lateral view of the elbow (compare with the normal side (**d**)). The medial epicondyle can be seen in the joint (arrows). Surgery was done for removal of the piece from the joint and internal fixation by screws (**e**)

Tibial Shaft Fracture

Diagnosis

- Pain, swelling, and deformity of the affected extremity
- Can be complicated by compartment syndrome (pain increases after application of cast)
- Radiograph will show the fracture (Fig. 42)

Treatment

- Orthopedic referral. Treatment is according to age and displacement. Most cases can be treated by closed reduction and casting, some cases will require internal fixation

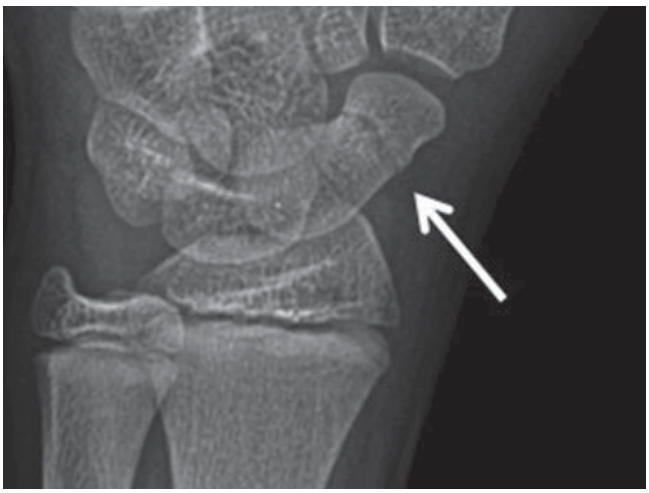


Fig. 41 Scaphoid fracture. A 13-year-old child fell down while playing football. The patient had pain at the wrist centered over the anatomical snuff box. Oblique radiograph shows fracture of the scaphoid

Toddler Fracture

Background

- A spiral tibial shaft fracture that occurs in toddler due to twisting trauma.
- It is a relatively common injury in children less than 4 years old.

Diagnosis

- The parents recall no or minimal trauma in most cases.
- Inability to bear weight on the affected side. Minimal swelling and no deformity.
- External rotation of foot will cause pain and discomfort to the child.
- Radiographs will show spiral nondisplaced fracture of the distal tibia (Fig. 43). In some cases, the fracture does not show up in the primary radiograph, but the follow-up

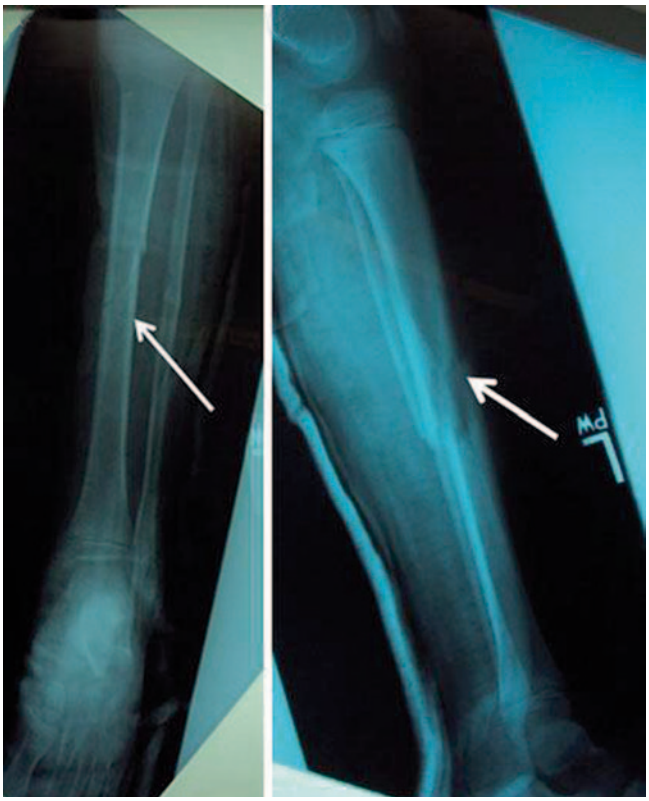


Fig. 42 Tibial shaft fracture. A 14-year-old boy fell down while running down the stairs and had left leg pain and swelling. Radiographs (**a**, **b**) show mid shaft tibia fracture. This fracture was managed nonsurgically with casting

radiograph will show the evidence of healing (periosteal new bone formation and callus at the fracture site).

Management

- Orthopedic referral (treatment is by above knee cast for 3 weeks).

Ankle Fracture

Background

- The mechanism of the fracture is twisting injury to the ankles.
- Can lead to disruption of the interosseous ligament between the tibia and fibula (syndesmotic injury; Fig. 44).
- Nondisplaced distal fibular physeal injury (Salter–Harris type I): Common injury in children due to twisting injury of the ankle, equivalent to ankle sprain.

Diagnosis

- Pain, swelling, and deformity of the affected ankle
- Inability to bear weight on the affected side

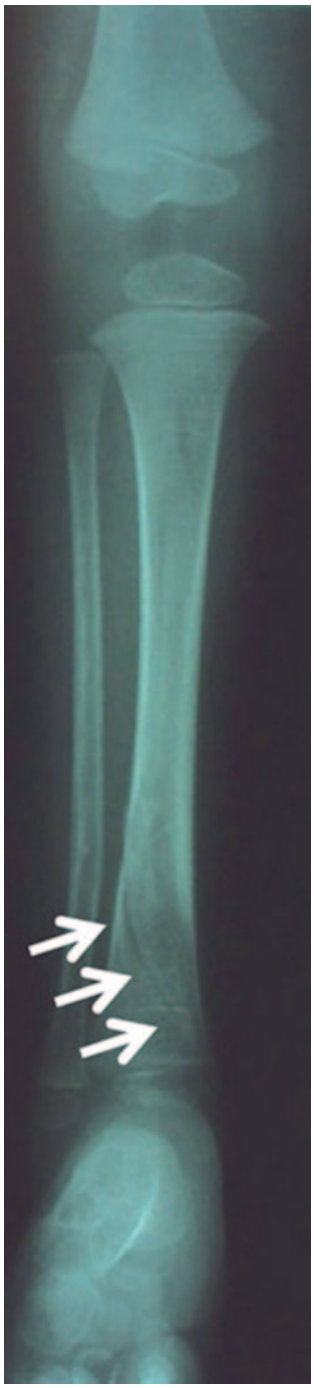


Fig. 43 Toddler fracture. A 3-year-old boy presented with his parents because of 2 days refusal to walk. On exam, there was tenderness of the lower leg with pain on external rotation of the tibia. Radiograph shows spiral fracture of the spiral non displace lower end of the tibia

Treatment

- Orthopedic referral. Displaced fracture or fracture with widening of the distance between fibula and tibia will require surgical fixation (Fig. 44)

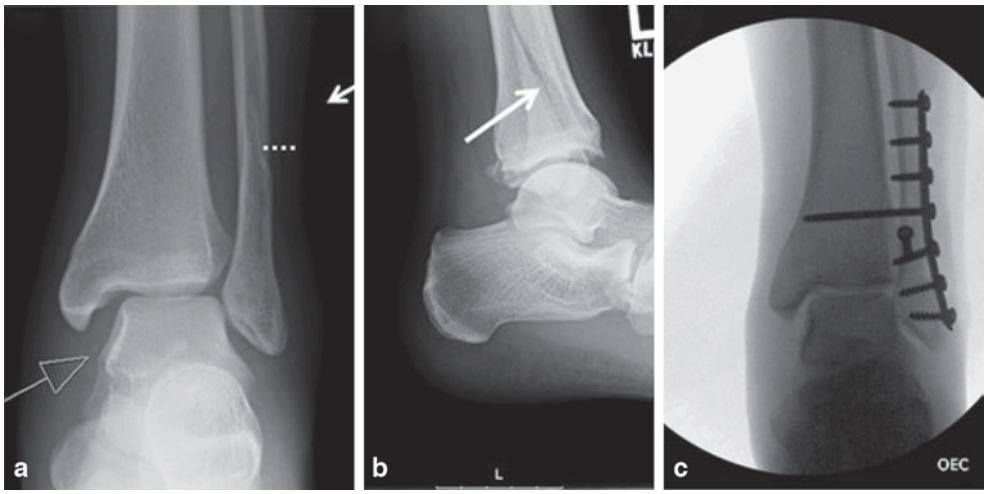


Fig. 44 Ankle fracture. A 16-year-old had left ankle injury while playing soccer. **a**, **b** Radiographs showed fracture distal fibula (*arrows*) with widening of the distance between tibia and fibula (*dotted line*) and also widening of the medial joint space (*open arrow*). **c** Surgery was done for fixation of the fracture with plates and screws (notice reduction of the relationship between tibia and fibula and narrowing of the medial joint space)

- Nondisplaced distal fibular physeal injury can be treated by immediate weight bearing in a cam boot or cast

Fracture of the Base of the Fifth Metatarsal Bone

Background

- Mechanism of injury: Twisting injury with avulsion of the base of the fifth metatarsal by the tendon of peroneus brevis and plantar fascia.
- The injury can be stable (proximal metaphyseal injuries) or unstable (the junction of the metaphysis with the diaphysis; Fig. 45).

Diagnosis

- Pain and swelling at the base of the fifth metatarsal.
- Radiographs will show the injury and its location.

Treatment

- Orthopedic referral: Stable injuries can be treated with weight bearing as tolerated in hard sole shoes. Unstable injuries need either surgical fixation or non weight bearing in a cast.

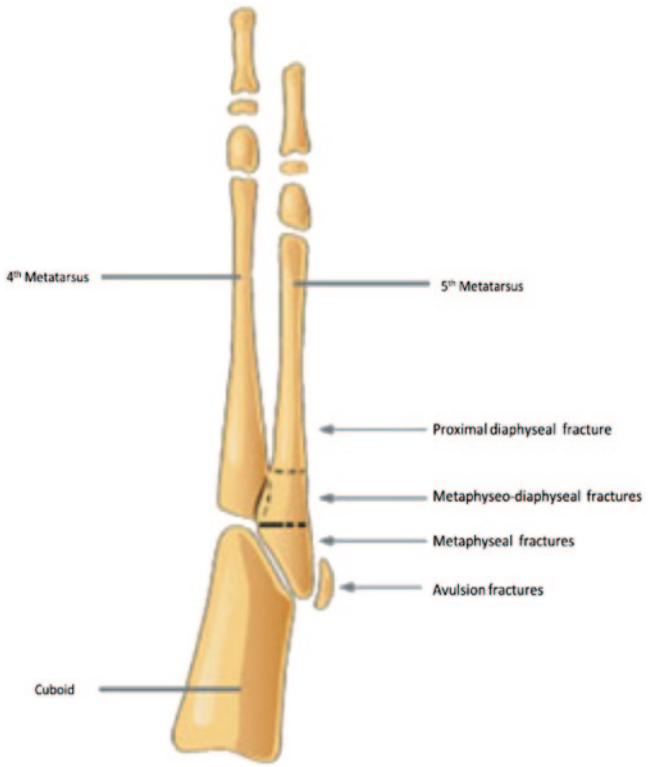


Fig. 45 Fracture of the base of the fifth metatarsal

Unicameral Cyst

Background

- The unicameral bone cyst is probably not a true neoplasm with unknown pathogenesis.
- Age usually ranges between 5 and 15 years. More in males.
- Most commonly found in the proximal humerus and upper femur.

Diagnosis

- Most cases are asymptomtic.
- Pathological fracture: pain after minor trauma due pathological fracture of the affected bone.
- Occasionally, a bone cyst is discovered in radiographic surveys done for another reason.
- Radiolographs: A well-defined lytic lesion usually are situated in the intramedullary metaphyseal region immediately adjacent to the physis. A cortical piece of bone can be seen in the middle lesion (fallen leaf) sign is pathognomonic of a simple bone cyst (Fig. 46).

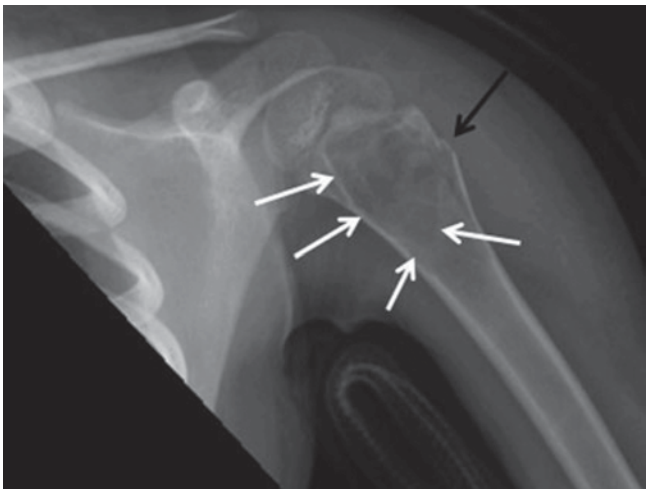


Fig. 46 A radiograph of a 6-year-old boy who had sudden left shoulder pain while playing. The radiograph shows proximal humeral fracture (*black arrow*). Notice the simple bone cyst that affected the proximal humerus (*white arrows*)

Treatment
- Orthopedic referral for symptomatic lesion. Treatment can be by surgical debridement or steroid injection. Non symptomatic lesions discovered accidentally do not need intervention.

Aneurysmal Bone Cyst (ABC)

Background
- The ABC is an expansile cystic lesion.
- The true etiology is unknown. Most believe that ABCs are the result of a vascular malformation within the bone.
- The gross appearance of the ABC is that of a blood-soaked sponge. A thin subperiosteal shell of new bone surrounds the structure and contains cystic blood-filled cavities.

Diagnosis
- Pain and swelling over the affected bone
- Pathologic fracture
- Radiographs: soap-bubble appearance with an eggshell appearing bony rim surrounding the lesion

Treatment
- Orthopedic referral: The lesion can be treated with intralesional curettage and bone grafting or wide excision of the lesion.

Ewing's Sarcoma

Background
- A primary malignant (a round cell sarcoma) bone tumor that arises from the medullary tissue mostly from the lining cells of the medullary blood or lymphatic channels.
- It is the most common primary malignant tumor in patients less than 10 years old and the second most common (after osteosarcoma) in patients less than 30 years old.
- More common in males.
- Occurs in diaphysis of the long bones.

Diagnosis
- Pain and tenderness over the involved area.
- Swelling (slowly growing, warm, tender, ill-defined, hard, diaphyseal, and fusiform with smooth surface).
- Fever, Anorexia, headache, and malaise may be the presenting symptoms (clinical presentation may be similar to osteomyelitis).
- X-rays: medullary destruction, soft tissue mass with reactive new bone formation. Multiple layers of elevated periosteum (onion-peel appearance; Fig. 47).

Treatment
- Orthopedic referral: chemotherapy, radiotherapy, and surgical excision of the tumor

Osteoid Osteoma

Background
- Osteoid osteoma is a benign tumor consisting of a well-demarcated bone-forming lesion called a nidus, surrounded by a radio-dense, reactive zone of host bone.
- Most commonly seen in the second and third decades; more common in males.
- Usually affects the diaphysis of long bones.

Diagnosis
- Pain which increases at night and relieved by aspirin and other NSAID, not relieved by rest.
- Radiographs: small defect less than 1.5 cm in diameter and is associated with a variable degree of cortical and endosteal sclerosis. In most cases, the defect cannot be seen, and surrounding sclerosis is the only finding in the radiograph. CT will show the lesion and the nidus more clear.

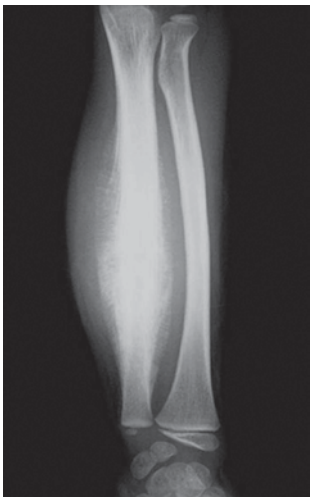


Fig. 47 Ewing's sarcoma. An 8-year-old boy with left forearm pain and swelling. Radiograph showed Ewing's sarcoma of the ulnar diaphysis. Notice the location of the lesion (diaphysis) and the periosteal new bone formation

Treatment

- Orthopedic referral for excision of the lesion. CT-guided percutaneous radiofrequency ablation of the nidus can also lead to complete resolution of symptoms.

Osteochondroma

Background

- The most common benign bone tumor.
- Osteochondromas can be solitary or multiple. Hereditary multiple exostoses (HME) is an autosomal dominant syndrome characterized by multiple osteochondromas affecting different bone.
- Pathology: the medullary canal of the osteochondroma and the host bone are in continuity. It is most commonly found around the knee and the proximal humerus in the metaphyseal areas (Fig. 48).

Diagnosis

- Osteochondromas are commonly diagnosed incidentally based on a radiograph obtained for other reason.
- The second most common presenting symptom is a mass.

Treatment

- Asymptomatic lesions can be safely observed. No orthopedic referral is needed for asymptomatic lesions.
- If painful or multiple: orthopedic referral.

Osteosarcoma

Background

- Osteosarcoma is a primary malignant tumor of bone with malignant osteoid formation arising from bone-forming mesenchymal cells.
- The strongest genetic predisposition to osteosarcoma is found in patients with hereditary retinoblastoma. In hereditary retinoblastoma, mutations of the *RB1* gene are common.
- Osteosarcoma is the commonest primary malignant bone tumor under the age 20 years.
- Occurs in the metaphysis of long bones, commonly found around the knee.

Diagnosis

- Pain is the first and most common symptom, constant, severe
- Swelling
- Pathological fracture (rare)
- X-rays: skeletally immature patient with an osteolytic lesion which is metaphyseal, eccentric, and having ill-defined edges with reactive bone formation and erosion of the cortex (Fig. 49)
- CT: better assessment of bone destruction

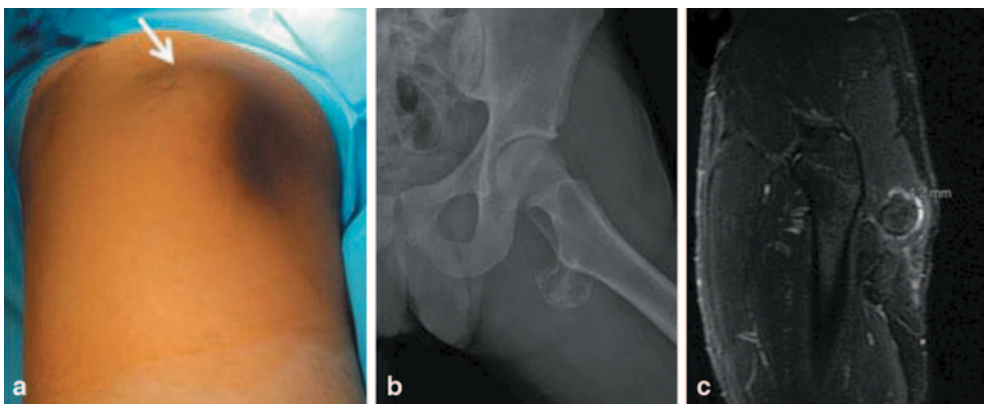


Fig. 48 A 15-year-old boy presented with mass in the posterolateral part of the left gluteal area (*arrow*). Radiograph showed osteochondroma (pedunculated). MRI assessed the thickness of the cartilaginous cap (4 mm)

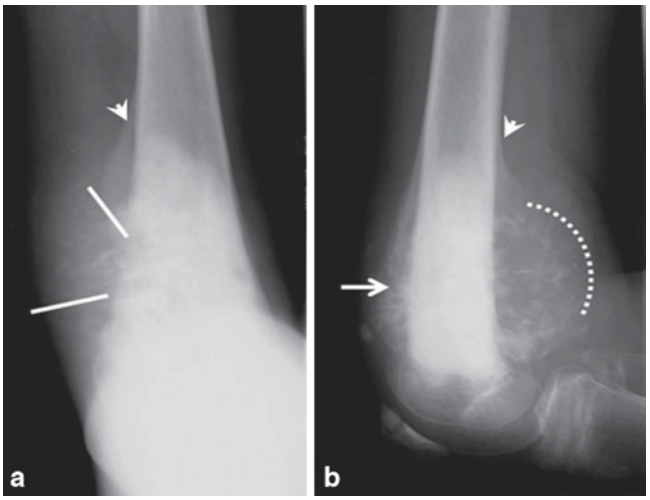


Fig. 49 Osteosarcoma. Anteroposterior (**a**) and lateral (**b**) views of right knee showing signs of osteosarcoma: Sun ray appearance (*arrow*), Codman's triangle (*arrow head*), cortical erosion (*line*), and soft tissue shadow *(dotted line*)

- MRI: better assessment of soft tissue mass, invasion of nearby neurovascular bundle and satellite lesions (skip lesions in the same bone)

Treatment

- Requires cooperation between the orthopedic surgeon and the oncologist.
- Treatment and prognosis depends on the subtype and grade of the tumor.
- Treatment is usually by wide resection and adjuvant chemotherapy. Osteosarcomas do not respond to radiation therapy.

Torticollis

Background

- It is the clinical finding of tilting the head to one side in combination with rotation of face to the opposite side (Fig. 50).
- Orthopedic causes of torticollis includes: congenital torticollis (most common type); C1, C2 subluxation; upper cervical spine anomalies.
- Nonorthopedic causes of torticollis includes: Sandifer syndrome (gastroesophageal reflux, hiatal hernia), neoplasm (posterior fossa tumor and soft tissue tumor), infection (retropharyngeal abscess), ocular, neurological (syringomyelia and Arnold–Chiari malformation), dystonic drug reaction (metoclopramide).
- Congenital muscular torticollis: most common cause of torticollis, due to fibrosis of the sternomastoid muscle. May be related to birth injury or malformation within the muscle (Fig. 50).

Diagnosis

- History of birth trauma, reflux, fever.
- Examination of the sternomastoid for tightness and swellings, neurological and eye examination.
- Imaging: radiography and CT of the cervical spine. MRI: if neurological cause is suspected.
- Ophthalmology and neurology consult may be needed if no identifiable cause could be found.

Treatment

- Congenital muscular torticollis: Aggressive physical therapy for stretching sternocleidomastoid muscle. If no improvement: orthopedic referral (release of muscle is indicated if no improvement with physical therapy).

Atlantoaxial Subluxation

Background

- Fixed rotation of C1 on C2.
- Causes: retropharyngeal irritation (Grisel's disease), trauma or Down's syndrome.

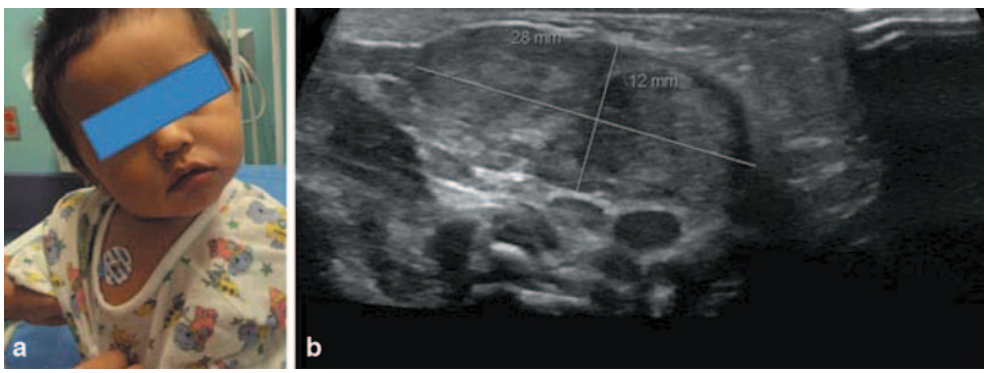


Fig. 50 Torticollis. A 1-year-old boy with congenital muscular torticollis. **a** Note the child head is tilted to the right (the right ear is close to the right shoulder) with the face and chin are directed to the left side. Patient has tight sternomastoid on the right side. **b** Ultrasound showed fibrotic mass in the sternomastoid (2.8 × 9 × 1.2 cm)

Diagnosis
- Imaging: Dynamic CT (CT with head straight forward, and then rotated to right and left.) will show fixed rotation of C1 on C2 that does not change with head position.

Treatment:
- If subluxation is less than 1 week: NSAIDs, soft collar, and stretching exercises program. Most cases will improve.
- If subluxation is more than 1 week: Orthopedic referral for possible need for traction (if subluxation is 1 week to 1 month duration) or fusion of the upper cervical spine (for subluxation more than 1 month).

Scoliosis

Background
- Lateral curvature of the spine associated with a rotational element.
- Types of scoliosis:
  - *Congenital:* Due to bony deformity (vertebral column or chest wall).
  - *Neuromuscular:* Due to neuromuscular causes (e.g., cerebral palsy, high level spina bifida, traumatic spinal cord injury, muscular dystrophies).
  - *Syndromic:* Almost all syndromes can be associated with scoliosis (e.g., dysplasias, connective tissue disorders, e.g., Marfan syndrome, Osteogenesis imperfecta, Prader–Willi syndrome, Neurofibromatosis).
  - *Idiopathic:* most common cause of scoliosis. No underlying cause can be identified. The idiopathic scoliosis is further classified according to the age of onset into: infantile (the scoliosis starts in the first 2 years of life), juvenile (the scoliosis starts between 3 and 9 years old), adolescent (the scoliosis starts at or after the age of 10 years) which is the most common type.

Adolescent Idiopathic Scoliosis

Background
- The condition runs in families (genetic predisposition). More common in girls.
- The curve continues to progress as long as the child is growing. At the end of skeletal growth, most curves will stop progression except for large curves.
- The curve of the AIS progress maximally in the period of "peak height velocity" or "rapid growth phase." This period is 1 year before menarche age in girls.

Diagnosis
- The condition is usually asymptomatic. This makes the annual screening vital to detect the condition.
- With advanced deformity: unequal shoulder level, unequal breast sizes and leaning toward one side.
- Pain is *not* a symptom of AIS. If there is pain, MRI is recommended.
- Physical exam: Adam forward bending test will show thoracic hump.
- Motor, sensory, and reflexes of the lower extremity are normal.
- Scoliometer (a leveling assessment device used to objectively assess if one side of the body is higher than the other side with forward bending) will show 7° or more of rotation (indication for referral to orthopedic surgeon; Fig. 51)
- Radiographs: the curve of the scoliosis is measured with Cobb angle (Fig. 51). The typical curve is right thoracic (means that the convexity is toward the right)
- Risser stage: indicates the stage of skeletal maturity (Fig. 52). It depends on the ossification of the iliac apophysis which proceeds from lateral to medial.

Treatment
- Indication for referral to orthopedic surgeon: curves more than 20° or more than 7° rotation by scoliometer.
- Indication for obtaining MRI for patient with AIS: Pain, left thoracic curves, abnormal neurological exam, infantile and juvenile scoliosis (curves which develop before the age of 10 years old; due to high incidence of intrathecal anomalies, e.g., syringomyelia).
- Indication for bracing is: Patients with significant skeletal growth remaining and more than 5° of curve progression or curves more than 25°.
- Surgery is indicated for: thoracic curves of more than 50° in skeletally mature children or thoracic Curves of more than 45° in skeletally immature children.

Scheuermann Kyphosis

Background
- Juvenile developmental disease with increased thoracic or thoraco-lumbar kyphosis due to structural deformity of the spine with increased anterior wedging of the vertebrae.
- Pathology: Osteochondritis of the growth plate of the vertebra. This will cause abnormal growth of the vertebra with anterior wedging.
- Usually in adolescent boys.

Diagnosis
- Deformity (bent back deformity). The deformity is fixed and cannot be corrected by straightening the back (in contrast to postural kyphosis).
- Mid-back pain.

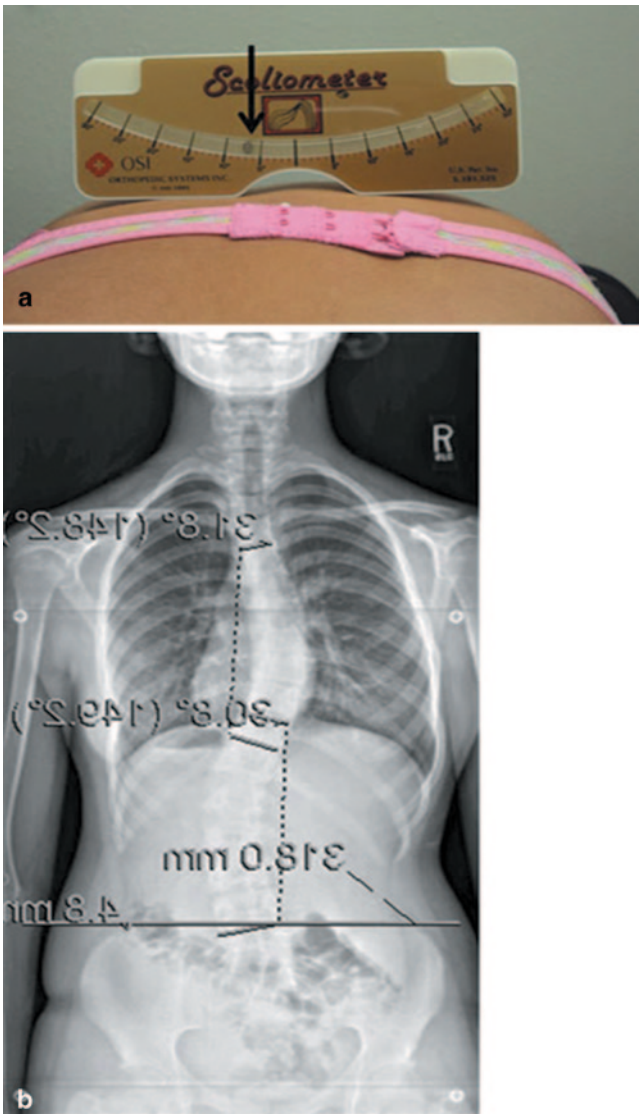


Fig. 51 Scoliometer. A 14-year-old girl with adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. **a** Scoliometer shows 7 of unleveling (*arrow*). **b** Radiograph shows 31 of mid thoracic level

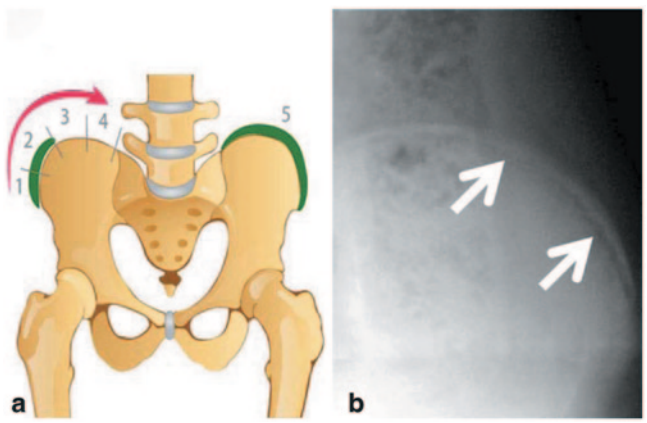


Fig. 52 Risser sign. Fusion of the iliac apophysis proceeds from lateral to medial. Complete fusion indicates Risser stage 5. Radiographs shows Risser stage 4 (the apophysis is ossified from medial to lateral but still not fused with the iliac bone; *arrows* pointing to the open growth plate)

- Neurological exam of the lower extremity: usually normal (rarely with advancing disease neurological deficits can occur in lower extremities).
- Lateral radiograph of the spine shows: increased thoracic kyphosis with three consecutive vertebrae of more than 5° anterior wedging (Fig. 53).

Treatment

- Physical therapy: thoracic extensor strengthening and hamstring stretching exercises.
- Referral for orthopedics: Bracing for curves less than 70° if the child still has more than 2 years of skeletal growth. For curves more than 70°: possible surgical treatment to correct the deformity.
- Most important surgical indication is unacceptable esthetic appearance. Persistence back pain and neurological manifestation are other indications for surgery.

Diskitis and Vertebral Body Osteomyelitis

Background

- Diskitis is an inflammation of the intervertebral disk usually seen in toddlers. It occurs most commonly in the lumbar vertebrae.
- Vertebral body osteomyelitis is an inflammation of the vertebral body usually starts at the vertebral end plates.
- The distinction between diskitis and vertebral osteomyelitis is difficult and most cases will have some affection of both the intervertebral disk and the vertebral body.
- Etiology: hematogenous spread. *S. aureus* is the most common organism isolated.

Diagnosis

- Back pain
- Limping and refusal to walk
- Mild or no fever
- Paraspinal muscle spasm
- Flexion of the spine compresses the anterior element and causes discomfort (the child will refuse to pick up an object from the ground or will flex his hips and knees not his back)
- Older children might have fever and abdominal pain
- Laboratory: Complete blood count may remain normal. ESR and CRP are usually elevated
- Image guided biopsy from the affected area for culture.
- Radiographs: PA and lateral radiograph of the thoracolumbar spine is the first image to be ordered when the condition is suspected. Characteristic finding; often takes 2–3 weeks to show these changes: narrowing of the disk space
- Technetium bone scan: Hot spot in the affected disk
- MRI: most sensitive imaging study. Becomes positive early in the disease process.

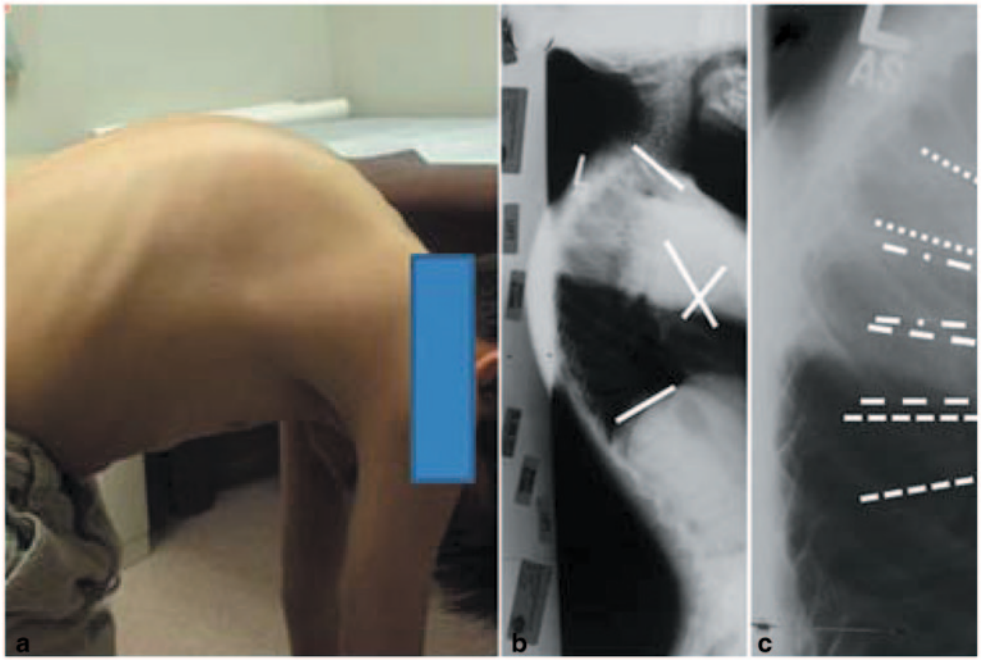


Fig. 53 Scheuermann Kyphosis. **a** A 14-year-old boy with increased thoracic kyphosis. **b** Lateral thoracic radiograph shows thoracic kyphosis between T1 and T12 of 67 degrees. **c** Close view of the vertebrae shows anterior wedging of the vertebra (anterior part of the vertebra narrower than the posterior part)

Treatment

- Start antibiotics covering for Staph Aureus, then according to culture results. Length of therapy is 4–6 weeks.
- Rest, analgesic, and immobilization in spinal orthosis.
- Surgical treatment is rarely required.

Spondylolysis

Background

- Spondylolysis is a bone defect in pars interarticularis of the vertebra (Fig. 54). The condition is present in about 7% in adolescents and up to 20% in participants of sports that involve repeated extension of the back (football, gymnastics, and divers). Most commonly affected vertebra is L5, less common in L4.

Diagnosis

- The condition is asymptomatic in majority of the cases.
- It is the most common cause of non-muscular back pain in adolescents, low back pain that increase with extension of the spine.
- Straight leg raising test: pain in the posterior thigh, but usually does not extend distal to the knee (hamstring tightness).
- Imaging: Spondylolysis can be found in the radiograph as an accidental finding. The defect can be seen in the lateral view of the lumbar spine but it is more obvious in the oblique view (Scotty dog with a collar appearance; Fig. 55).
- CT scan will show the defect in the pars interarticularis.
- Bone scan with single-photon emission CT (SPECT) will help to differentiate acute cases from chronic ones.

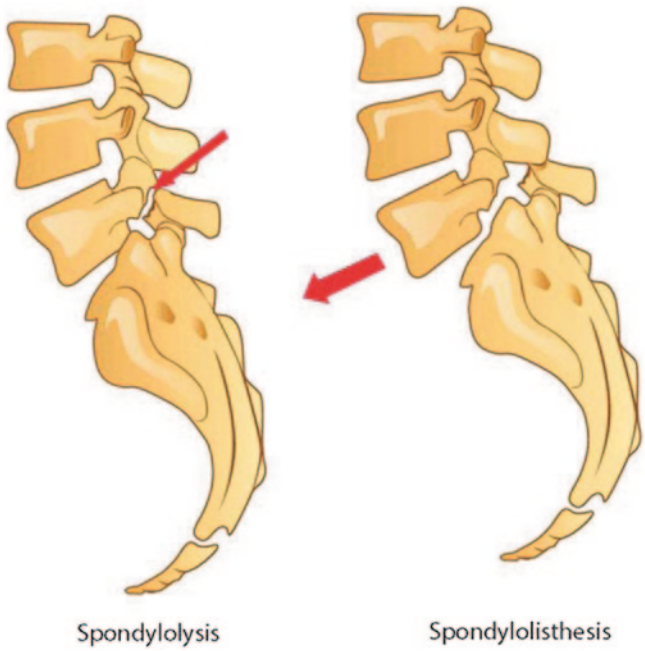


Fig. 54 *Spondylolysis* is the presence of defect in the pars of the vertebra. *Spondylolisthesis* is the "slippage" of the vertebra above in relation to the vertebra below

Treatment

- NSAIDs and rest from the sport until the pain decreases.
- Adolescent can resume sport activity when they are pain free.
- Brace (lumbar corset), if the pain does not improve with the rest. Acute lesion can be treated with more aggressive immobilization (Thoraco-lumbar-sacral orthosis (TLSO))
- Refer orthopedic if no improvement (surgery is rarely indicated in spondylolysis).

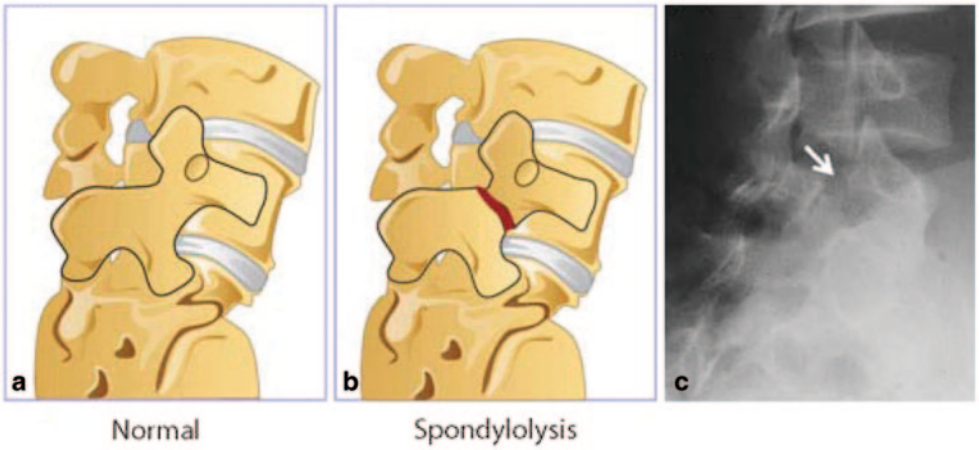


Fig. 55 Scotty dog collar sign. **a** Oblique view of the lumbar vertebrae has the shade of Scotty dog. **b** With spondylolysis, the defect in the pars interarticularis give the appearance of collar in the neck. **c** Oblique radiographs showing the defect in the pars interarticularis and Scotty dog collar sign (*arrow*)

Spondylolisthesis

Background

- Forward slippage of upper vertebra in relation to the vertebra below (Fig. 54).
- There are two types of spondylolisthesis in children and adolescent:
  - Dysplastic: due to dysplastic lumbosacral articulation, about 15 % of cases.
  - Ischemic: due to pars defect (spondylolysis), most common type (about 85 %).

Diagnosis

- Low back pain with extension activities
- Hamstring tightness
- Radiographs: forward slippage of L5 over S1
- The degree of slippage is expressed as a percentage of the vertebral width.

Treatment

- Orthopedic referral. Surgical treatment is usually needed for high slip
- No contact sports if the slippage is more than 50 % of the vertebral width.

Polydactyly of the Hand

Background

- Definition: the presence of an extra digit (or duplication).
- Polydactyly is the most common congenital digital anomaly of the hand and foot.
- A common form of polydactyly is an extra thumb (radial polydactyly or preaxial polydactyly), more common among Caucasians (Fig. 56).

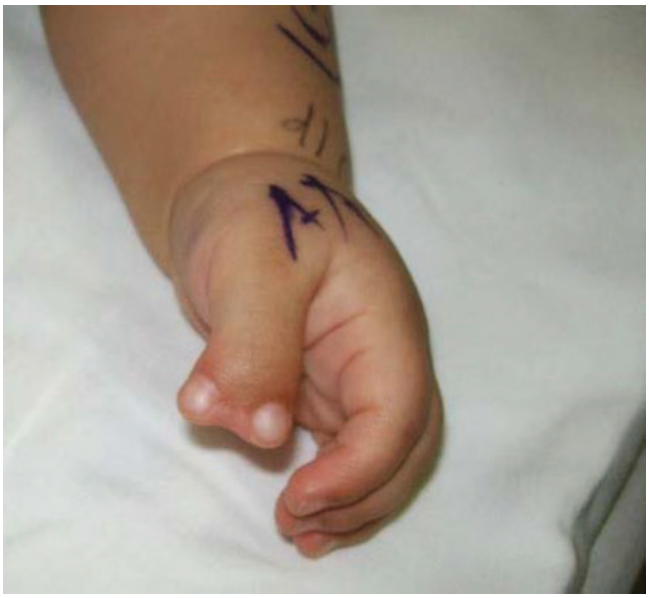


Fig. 56 Thumb polydactyly. A 1-year-old boy with radial polydactyly

- Ulnar (postaxial) polydactyly is usually a small, poorly formed, extra digit attached by a thin stalk of soft tissue (Fig. 57). More common among African Americans.
- It may appear in isolation or in association with other birth defects. Isolated polydactyly is often autosomal dominant or occasionally random, while syndromic polydactyly is commonly autosomal recessive.

Diagnosis

- About 15–20 % of the children born with polydactyly have other congenital anomalies, usually as a part of a defined syndrome (more common among preaxial polydactyly). Hand postaxial polydactyly is less often associated with other congenital anomalies.

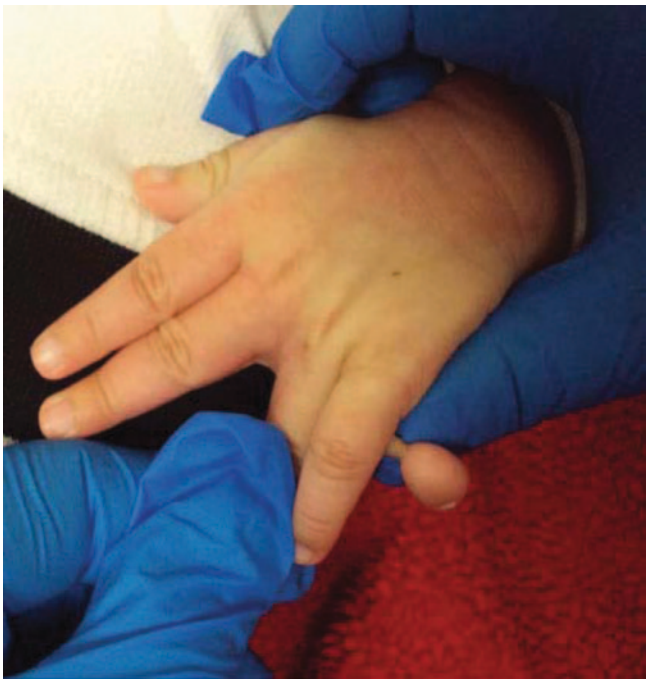


Fig. 57 Ulnar polydactyly. An extra small digit on the ulnar side of the hand attached with to the hand with a stalk

Treatment

- Unless there is a clear family history of isolated polydactyly, any newborn with polydactyly should be investigated for the presence of associated anomalies. Genetic workup and thorough medical examination in these patients is recommended.
- Post axial polydactyly in black children does not need further work up.
- Surgical removal: For small rudimentary ulnar polydactyly attached by a thin stalk: the base can be tied with a suture in the newborn period, and it will fall off spontaneously. For more developed extra digits, radial polydactyly, or polydactyly in older children; orthopedic referral for surgical excision.

Suggested Readings

1. Abdelgawad A, Kanlic E. Orthopedic trauma. In: Abdelgawad A, Naga O, editors. Handbook for primary care physicians. New York: Springer. Pediatric orthopedics; 2014. Orthopedic trauma. pp. 409–83.
2. Abdelgawad A, Naga O. Pediatric spine. In: Abdelgawad A, Naga O, editors. Pediatric orthopedic: handbook for primary care physicians. New York: Springer. Pediatric orthopedics; 2014. pp. 503–43.
3. Sponseller PD. Bone, joint, and muscle problems. In: McMillan JA, Feigin RD, DeAngelis C, Jones MD, editors. Oski's pediatrics: principles and practice. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins; 2006. pp. 2470–504.

Research and Statistics

Sitratullah Olawunmi Kukoyi-Maiyegun

Randomized Controlled Trials

- Has high internal validity
- Reduced risk of confounding variable
- Reduced external validity
- Expensive, time-consuming variables

Cohort Studies

- Useful for sequential events
- Can study multiple outcomes from exposures
- Retrospective: less expensive
- Require large sample size
- Risk of confounding variables
- Difficult to study rare outcomes
- Prospective: expensive

Case-Control Studies

- Useful for rare outcomes
- Can study several exposures
- Inexpensive
- Risk of confounding variables

Cross-Sectional Studies

- Can study multiple outcomes and exposures
- Cannot infer causality
- Risk of confounding variables
- Less useful for rare exposures or outcomes

Case Studies

- Useful for rare outcomes
- Convenient and inexpensive
- Lack of a comparison group
- Cannot infer causality
- Risk of confounding variables

Systematic Reviews

- Summarize existing studies descriptively
- A descriptive results section summarizing the findings and addressing the qualities of the included studies

Meta-analyses

- **Use statistics to combine the results from each included study and generate a single summary statistic**
  - Compilation of evidence that potentially has greater power to inform clinical decisions than would an individual study in the systematic review or meta-analysis
  - If the quality of the studies included in the systematic review or meta-analysis is poor, the summary conclusions are similarly inadequate

Case Reports

- Aid in recognizing and describing new disease processes or rare manifestations
- Describe the disease in the context of comorbidities and individual characteristics
- Identify drug adverse effects
- Help to illustrate the diagnostic process and help students apply the literature to an individual patient
- Help identify emerging health conditions
- Show how exposures and disease outcomes are related

S. O. Kukoyi-Maiyegun (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, Texas Tech University Health Science Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: Sitratullah.maiyegun@ttuhsc.edu

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_25,

- Can stimulate important research questions and help guide hypotheses
- Are purely descriptive and one of the weakest forms of evidence
- Cannot be used to make inferences about the broader population
- Cannot prove causality

Anecdotal Evidence

- A clinician's personal experience
- Shares some characteristics with case reports
- Lacks the strength of data collected via rigorous methodology that also involves significant numbers
  anecdotal evidence can suggest hypotheses and leads to the creation of credible studies

Descriptive Epidemiologic Studies

- Follow up on case reports
- Used to describe patterns of disease in the population according to person, place, and time
- Do not test a predefined hypothesis or determine a cause-and-effect relationship
- Used to develop hypotheses for subsequent analytic studies
- Use a variety of tools, including surveillance reports, cross-sectional analyses, and surveys

Validity

- Addresses whether an instrument or test actually measures what it is intended to measure
- **Criterion validity is the degree to which the measurement correlates with an external criterion or another instrument or test that is considered valid**
  - Convergent validity is the degree to which independent measures of the same construct are highly correlated
  - Predictive validity is the ability of an instrument or test to predict some future criterion
  - Discriminant validity requires that an instrument or test shows little or no correlation with measures from which it differs
- **Content validity refers to the extent to which aspects of items that make up an instrument or test are representative of a particular construct**
  - Face validity is a judgment about whether elements of an instrument make intuitive sense
  - Sampling validity refers to whether the instrument incorporates all of the aspects under study

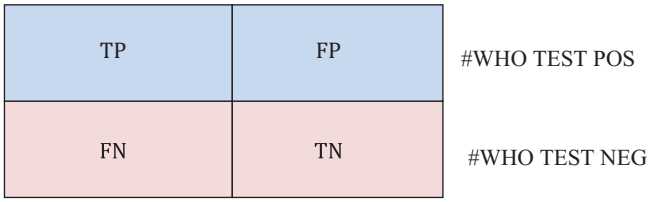


Fig. 1 Foursquare: *TP* true positive, *FP* false positive, *FN* false negative, *TN* true negative

Reliability

- The consistency or repeatability of scores
- Test–retest reliability assesses whether an instrument or test yields the same results each time it is used with the same study sample under the same study conditions
- Internal consistency reliability is a measure of the consistency of the items within a test
- Interrater reliability is the degree to which two raters independently score an observation similarly

Sensitivity: Screening

- Probability of correctly identifying those who truly have the disease
- True positives/disease
- TP/(TP+FN) (Fig. 1)

Specificity: Confirmation

- Probability of correctly identifying those who do not have the disease
- True negatives/disease
- TN/(FP+TN)

Positive Predictive Value (PPV)

- Probability of correctly identifying those who truly have the disease amongst those whose tests are positive
- True positives/test
- TP/(TP+FP)

Negative Predictive Value (NPV)

- Probability of not having the disease given a negative test
- True negatives/test
- TN/(FN+TN)

Predictive values are dependent on the prevalence of the disease. The higher the prevalence of a disease, the higher the PPV of the test.

p Value

- The p value is the probability of obtaining a test statistic result at least as extreme as the one that was actually observed, assuming that the null hypothesis is true.
- A researcher will often "reject the null hypothesis" when the p value turns out to be less than a predetermined significance level, often 0.05 or 0.01. Such a result indicates that the observed result would be highly unlikely under the null hypothesis.
- Many common statistical tests, such as chi-square test or Student's t test, produce test statistics which can be interpreted using p values.
- **An informal interpretation of a p value, based on a significance level of about 10 %, might be:**
  - $p \leq 0.01$: very strong presumption against null hypothesis
  - $0.01 < p \leq 0.05$: strong presumption against null hypothesis
  - $0.05 < p \leq 0.1$: low presumption against null hypothesis
  - $p > 0.1$: no presumption against the null hypothesis

False Positive

- A false positive occurs when the test reports a positive result for a person who is disease free.

False Negative

- A false negative occurs when the test reports a negative result for a person who actually has the disease.

Odds Ratio (OR)

- Calculates the relative risk (RR) if the prevalence of the disease is low. It can be calculated for case-control study (retrospective study)
- The OR can be used to determine whether a particular exposure is a risk factor for a particular outcome and to compare the magnitude of various risk factors for that outcome

Relative Risk (RR)

- Disease risk in the exposed group divided by disease risk in unexposed group. It can be calculated for cohort study (prospective study)
- The 95 % confidence interval (CI) is used to estimate the precision of the OR
- If the 95 % CI for OR or RR includes 1, the study is inconclusive
- A large CI indicates a low level of precision of the OR, whereas a small CI indicates a higher precision of the OR
- For a rare disease, OR approximates RR

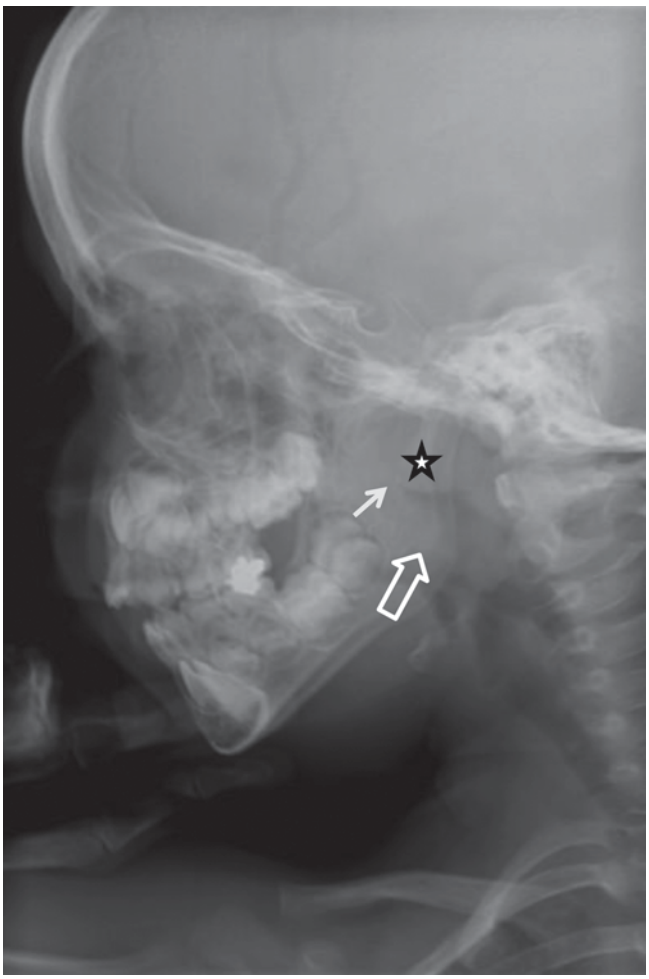
Suggested Readings

1. Perry-Parrish C, Dodge R. Research and statistics: validity hierarchy for study design and study type. Pediatr Rev. 2010;31:27.
2. Hernandez RG, Rowe PC. Research and statistics: cohort studies. Pediatr Rev. 2009;30:364.
3. Moore EM, Johnson SB. Research and statistics: case reports, anecdotal evidence, and descriptive epidemiologic studies in pediatric practice. Pediatr Rev. 2009;30:323.
4. Copeland-Linder N. Research and statistics: reliability and validity in pediatric practice. Pediatrics in Review. 2009;30:278.
5. Palaia A. Research and statistics: study design and data sources. Pediatrics in Review. 2013; 34:371.

Radiology Review

Abd Alla Fares, Stephane ALARD, Mohamed Eltomey, Caroline Ernst and Johan de Mey

Case 1

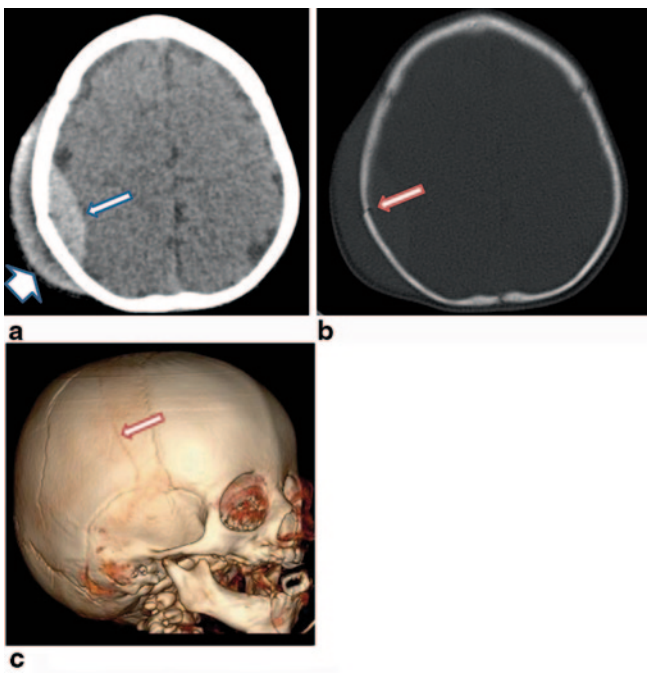


A 6-month-old boy has fever and difficulties in breathing and swallowing.

Radiological findings: Lateral soft tissue X-ray examination of the neck demonstrates enlargement of the adenoids (star), enlarged lingual tonsils at the base of the tongue (big arrow), and narrowing of the nasopharyngeal airway (small arrow).

Final diagnosis: Enlarged adenoids.

Case 2



A 10-month-old girl presented with head injury after a fall from about 3 m.

Radiological findings: Brain computed tomography (CT) without contrast was done; image 2A shows a *spontaneous* hyperdense lentiform collection that *represents* a

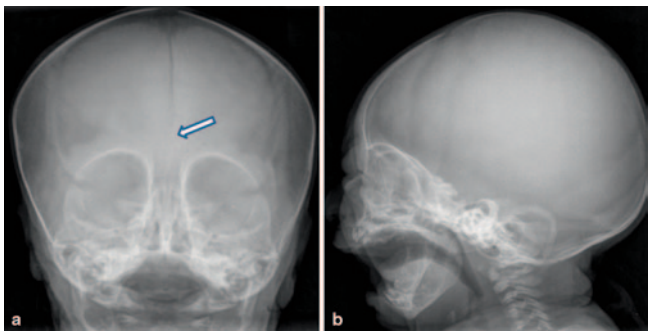
A. A. Fares (✉)
Department of Radiology, UZ Brussel, Laarbeeklaan 101, B-1090 Brussels, Belgium
e-mail: abfares@gmail.com

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_26,

recent epidural hemorrhage (long arrow) associated with *cephalhematoma* (short arrow). Bone windows of CT and 3-D reconstruction showed a displaced fracture in the right parietal bone (arrows in images 2B and 2C).

Final diagnosis: Traumatic fracture in the right parietal bone complicated by an intracranial epidural hemorrhage and *cephalhematoma*.

Case 3

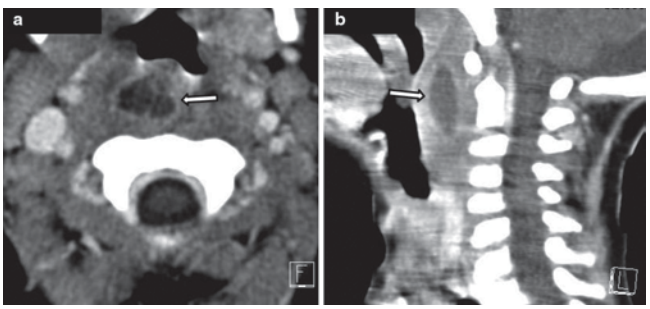


A 2-month-old boy presented with an abnormal shape of the head.

Radiological findings: Skull X-ray images show a premature closure of the anterior part of metopic suture, which runs from the top of the head at the anterior fontanel, resulting in deformation of the anterior portion of the calvarium and a triangular-shaped forehead (trigonocephaly).

Final diagnosis: Metopic craniosynostosis.

Case 4

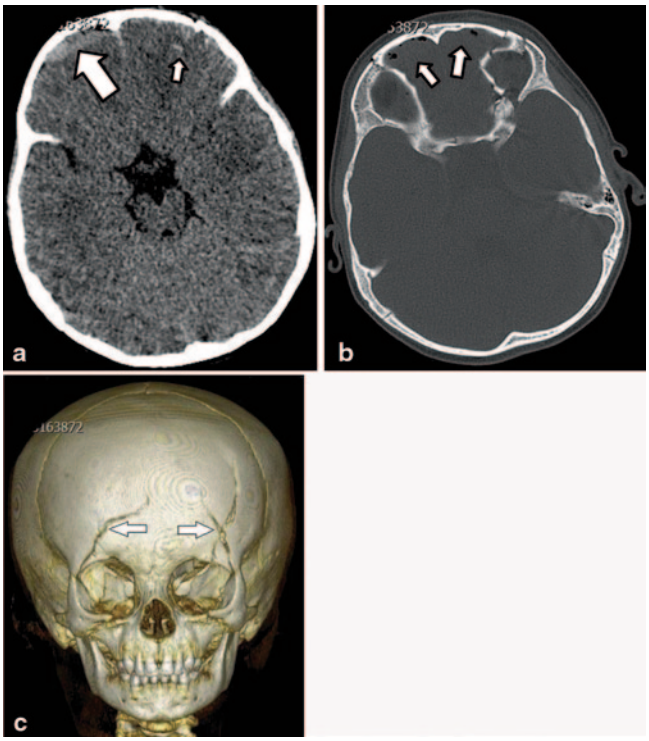


A 2-year-old boy has fever, sore throat, dysphagia, and neck pain for 1 week. The patient recently developed paranasal sinusitis and otitis media.

Radiological findings: Axial and sagittal CT images of the upper neck with contrast revealed a *hypodense* oval collection in the prevertebral space with peripheral rim of enhancement (arrows in images A and B), which is suggestive of a retropharyngeal abscess.

Final diagnosis: Retropharyngeal abscess.

Case 5

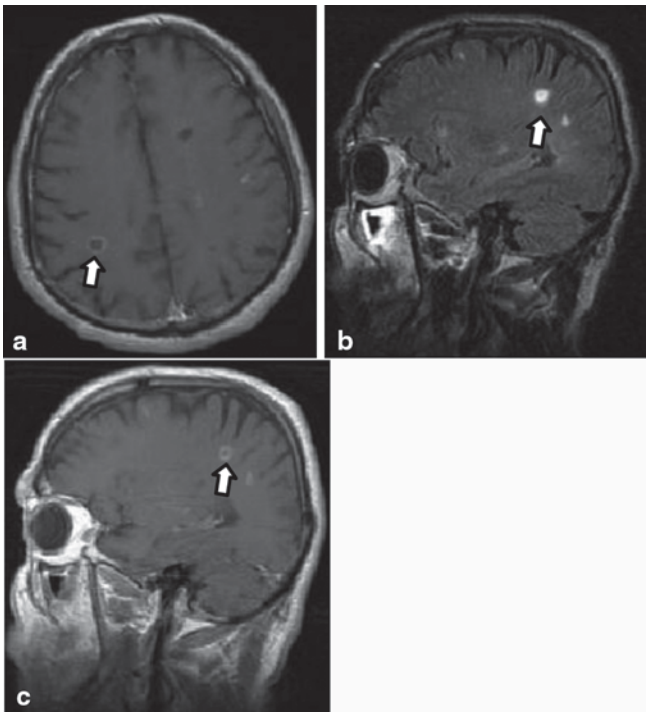


A 2.5-year-old girl was transferred to a hospital with a serious head injury after falling from the second floor to the ground floor.

Radiological findings: Axial sagittal CT images of the head without contrast show an intraparenchymal and subarachnoid *hemorrhages* (small arrow in image A) and small subdural *hemorrhage* (large arrow in image A). Multiple bilateral frontal and orbital fractures with air in the brain can be seen (images B and C). The 3-D reconstructed image revealed bilateral frontal fractures (arrows in image C).

Final diagnosis: Severe head trauma with subdural and subarachnoid hemorrhage.

Case 6

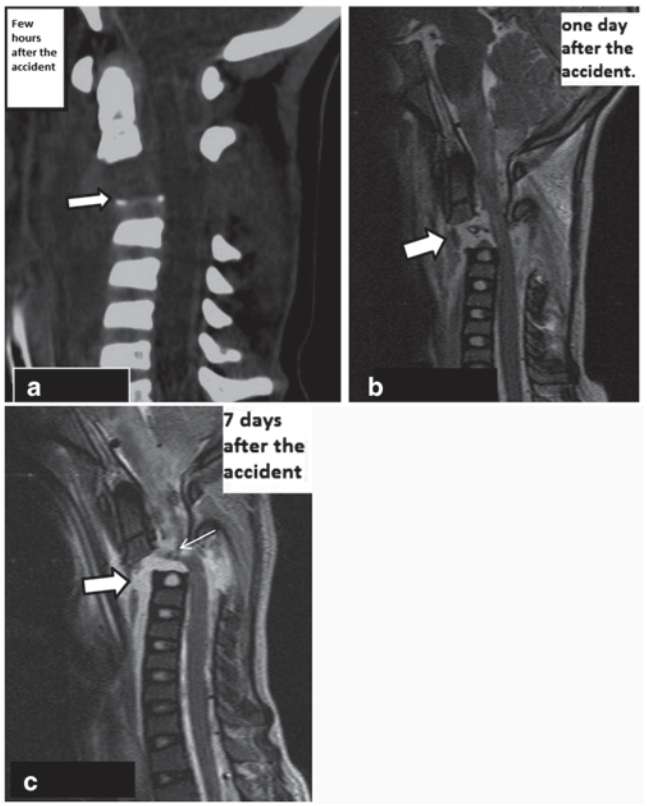


A 15-year-old boy with a history of travel to South America presented with muscular pain, severe headache, and recurrent seizures.

Radiological findings: MRI images of the brain reveal ring-like intracerebral lesions with peripheral edema; the largest lesion is seen in the right parietal lobe (arrows on images A, B, and C)

Final diagnosis: Neurocysticercosis.

Case 7

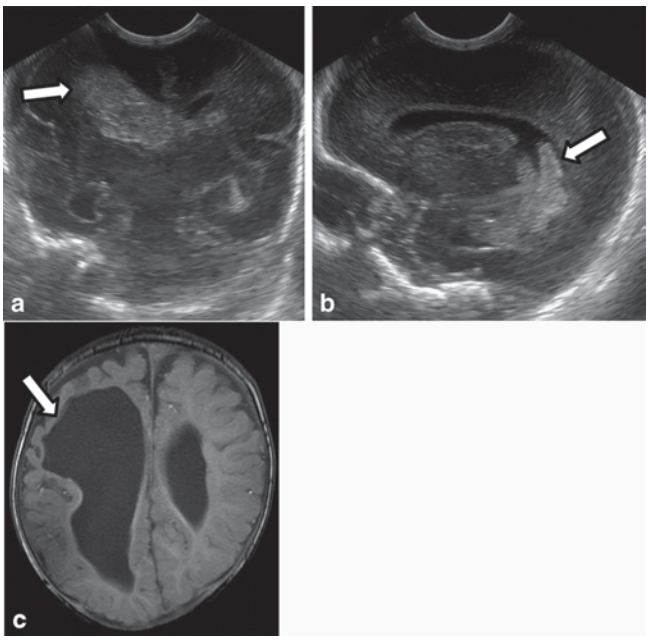


An 8-year-old boy admitted to our hospital after road accident.

Radiological findings: A few hours after the accident, CT of the neck was done, which revealed a C2–C3 dislocation with wide disc space and prevertebral hematoma (arrow in image 8A). The MRI image on the second day after admission (image 8B) showed more dislocation in C2–C3 and slight edema in the spinal cord. Seven days later (image 8C), MRI revealed a severe C2–C3 dislocation and more prevertebral hematoma (wide arrow) with apparent damage in the spinal cord (small arrow).

Final diagnosis: Severe neck dislocation with progressive spinal cord injury.

Case 8

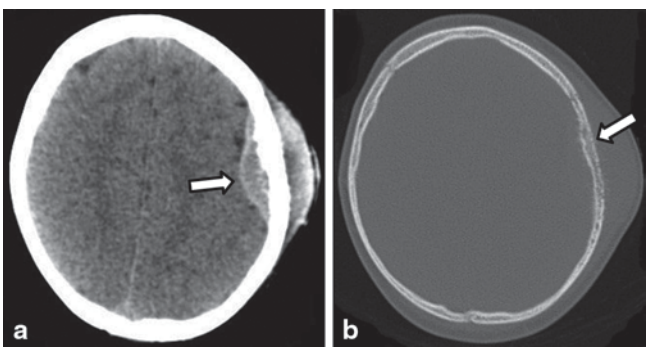


A premature baby presented with sudden unexplained drop in hematocrit levels, a transfontanelle ultrasonography ordered immediately.

Radiological findings: Extensive intraventricular *hemorrhage (coronal and sagittal)* with extension to the brain tissues *around* the right lateral *ventricles* (arrows). MRI images of the brain after a few months (image C) reveal a complete resorption of the hematoma with localized brain atropy and dilated right lateral ventricle.

Final diagnosis: Grade IV intraventricular hemorrhage.

Case 9



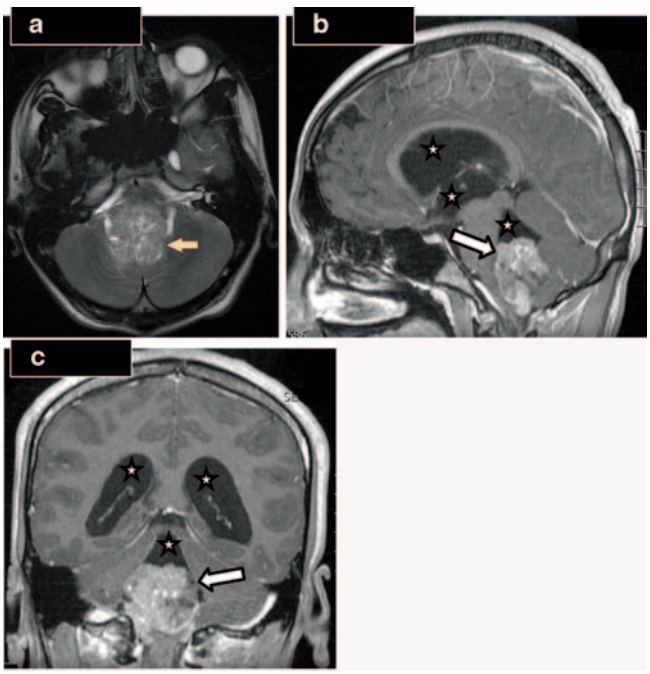
A 2-year-old boy presented with a progressive projectile vomiting. Clinical examination showed papilledema and swelling on the left side of his head. A right suprarenal mass was recently discovered on abdominal ultrasonography.

Radiological findings: A hyperdense expansile left parietal epidural mass with extracranial extension is seen on the soft tissue window of head CT (image 1). A lytic lesion in the left parietal bone is seen on the bone window (image 10B).

Final diagnosis: Skull metastases from *suprarenal neuroblastoma.*

Note: Neuroblastoma is the third most common malignant neoplasm of childhood, after leukemia and brain tumors.

Case 10



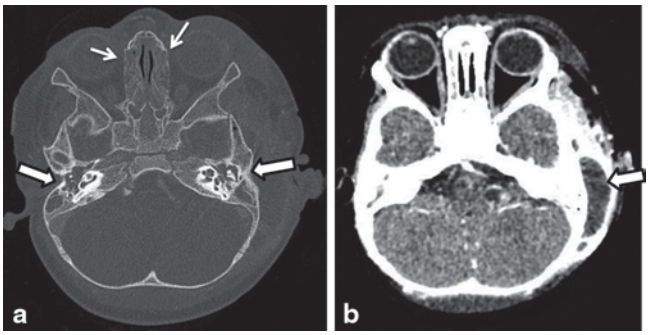
A 10-year-old boy is presented with two months history of headaches, a recent history of vomiting and ataxia. Papilledema was noted on physical examination.

Radiological findings: On an axial T2-weighted MR image, the mass shows mild hyperintensity compared with surrounding normal brain tissue (image A). Contrast-enhanced coronal and sagittal T1-weighted MR image shows intense but mildly heterogeneous enhancement of the mass arising from the vermis, resulting in the effacement of the fourth ventricle and obstructive hydrocephalus (stars on images B and C).

Final diagnosis: Medulloblastoma.

Notes: Medulloblastoma is the most common PNET originating in the brain. All PNET tumors of the brain are invasive and rapidly growing tumors.

Case 11



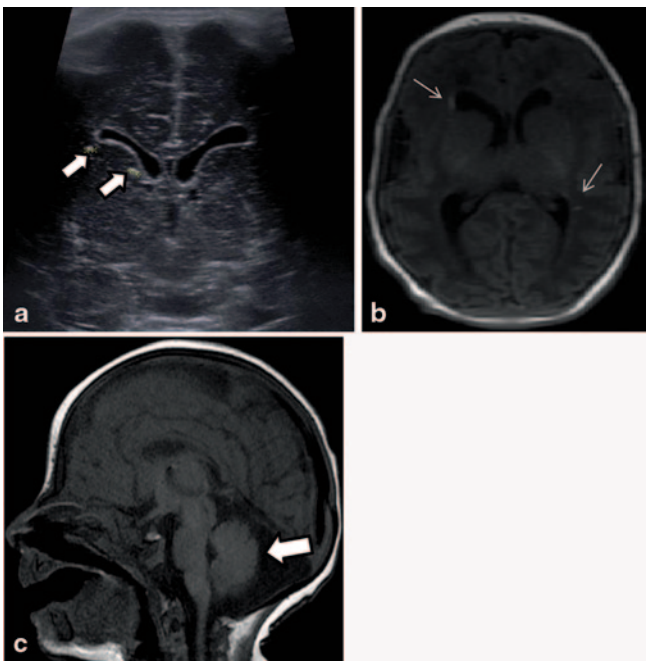
A 2-year-old girl is presented with 10 days history of low-grade fever, runny nose, and discharge in both ears. Recently, the mother discovered a red swelling behind her left ear.

Radiological findings: Axial bone window CT image shows signs of acute mastoiditis with otitis media (big arrows) and sinusitis (small arrows in image A).

Axial soft tissue window CT image shows a subperiosteal abscess in the left side as a complication of mastoiditis (arrow in image 12B).

Final diagnosis: Bilateral sinusitis, otitis media, and mastoiditis complicated by a left subperiosteal abscess.

Case 12



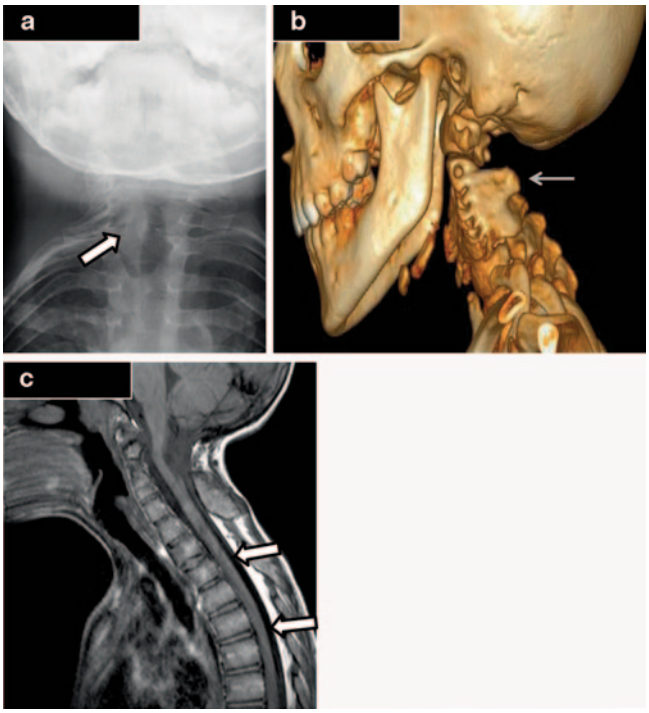
A newborn male baby with jaundice, "blueberry muffin" rash, and microcephaly.

Radiological findings: Transfontanelle ultrasonography shows periventricular calcifications (big arrows on image A). Three weeks later, MRI-images of brain reveal periventricular microcalcifications (small arrows on image B) and cerebellar atrophy (big arrow on image C).

Final diagnosis: Congenital cytomegalovirus infection.

Notes: Intrauterine transmission of human cytomegalovirus (CMV) is the major cause of congenital defects in developed countries.

Case 13

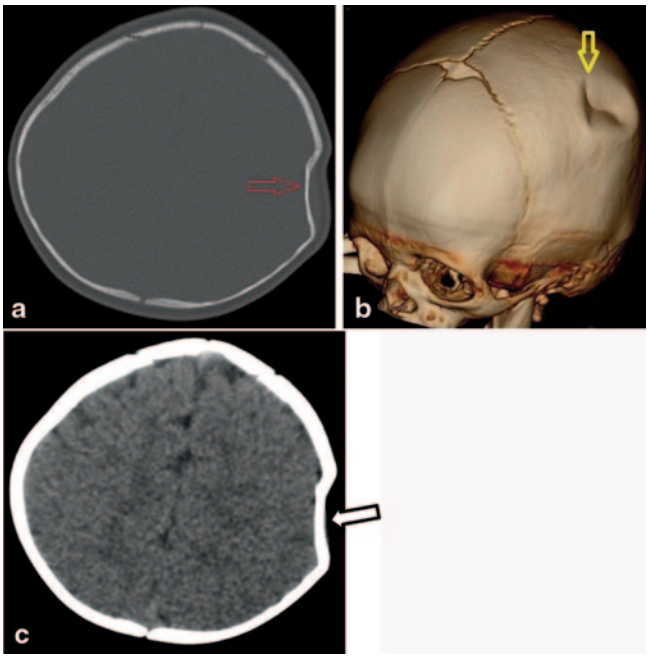


A 5-year-old girl presented with short neck, low hairline at the back of the head, and restricted mobility of the upper spine along with standing torticollis.

Radiological findings: Lateral X-ray view of cervical spine showing fusion of cervical vertebrae and tracheal deviation to the left side (arrow on images A and B). There is no compression on the spinal cord (arrows on image C).

Final diagnosis: Klippel–Feil syndrome.

Case 14

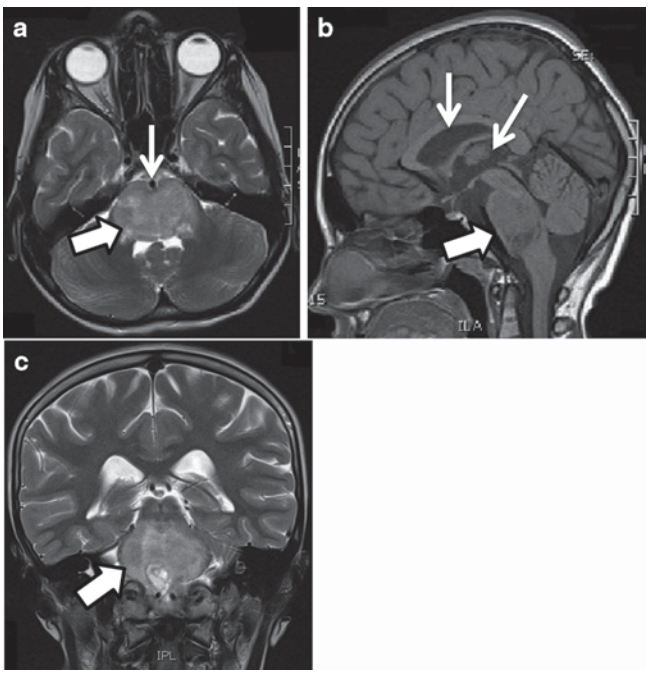


A 10-month-old boy presented with a history of head trauma.

Radiological findings: Depressed skull fracture in the left parietal bone (arrows on images A, B, and C) without any associated intracranial hemorrhage.

Final diagnosis: Depressed skull fracture.

Case 15



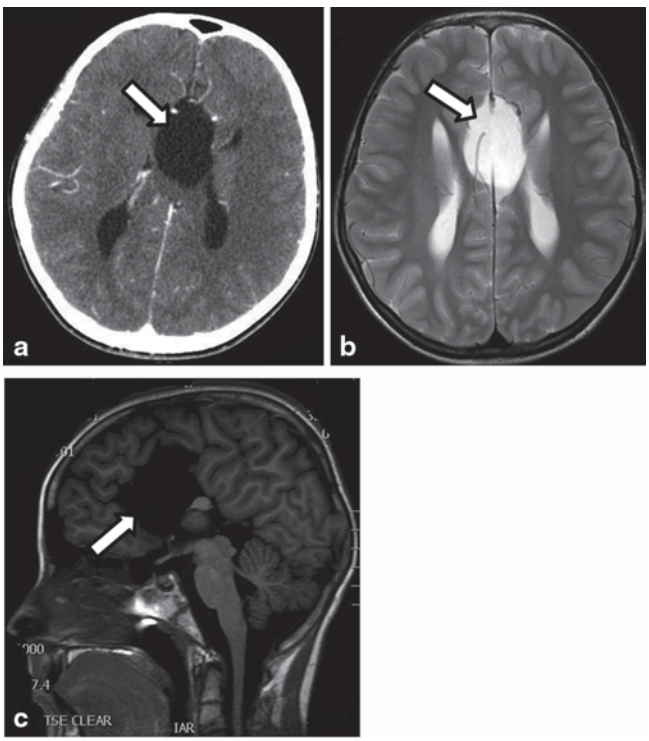
A 10-year-old boy presented with a history of progressive headache, abnormal gait, and visual problems.

Radiological findings: MRI images demonstrate a heterogeneous pontine mass that appears hypointense in T1 and hyperintense in T2 (big white arrows on images A, B, and C) encasing the basilar artery (small white arrow on image A) and compressing the fourth ventricle with some dilatation of the third and fourth ventricles (small white arrows on image B).

Final diagnosis: Posterior fossa glioma.

Notes: Brainstem gliomas are the most common brain tumors in children between 7 and 9 years of age. They account for approximately 25 % of all posterior fossa tumors without any gender or racial predilection.

Case 16



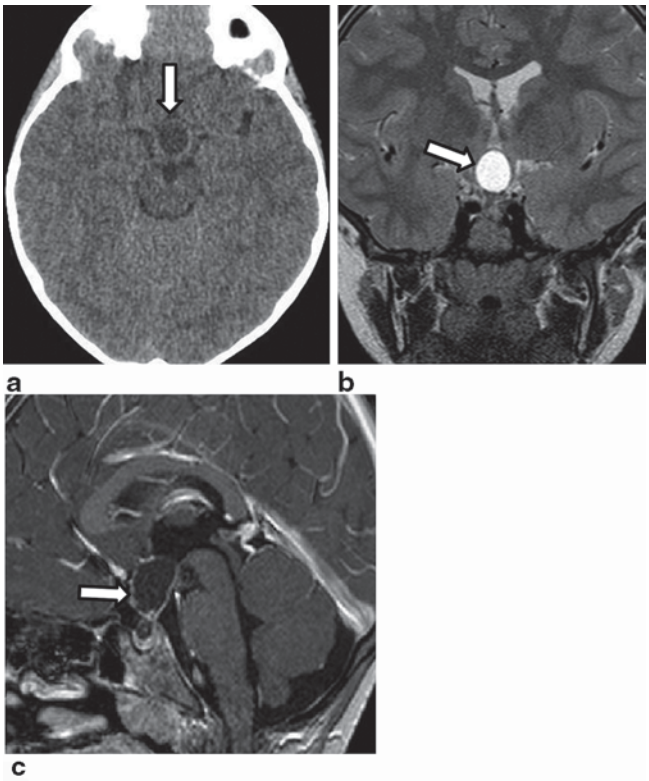
A 13-year-old boy presented with a history of long-standing headache and frequent seizures.

Radiological findings: Axial CT brain with contrast shows a hypodense oval cyst in the interhemispheric fissure (image A), which has the same density as cerebrospinal fluid (CSF).

Axial MRI T2-weighted image shows a well-circumscribed hyperintense oval cyst (image B). The cyst appears hypointense on MRI T1-weighted image (image C).

Final diagnosis: Subarachnoid cyst.

Case 17

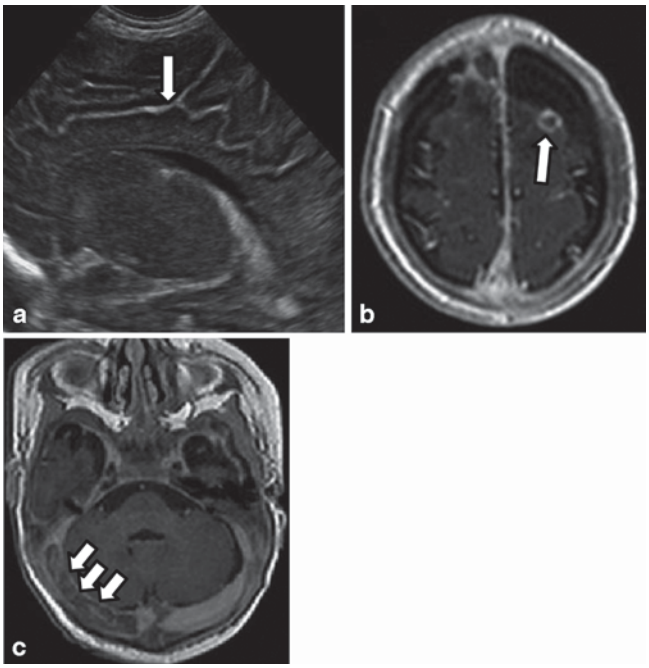


A 4-year-old girl presented with growth retardation and polyurea.

Radiological findings: *Image A*: Axial CT image shows a noncalcified, homogeneous and low attenuating cystic lesion located in the midline. *Image B*: T2 MRI images show a hyperintense cystic lesion. *Image C*: T1 C+ (Gd) shows cystic hypointense lesion without contrast enhancement; however, a thin enhancing rim of surrounding compressed pituitary tissue may be seen.

Final diagnosis: Rathke's Cleft cyst.

Case 18



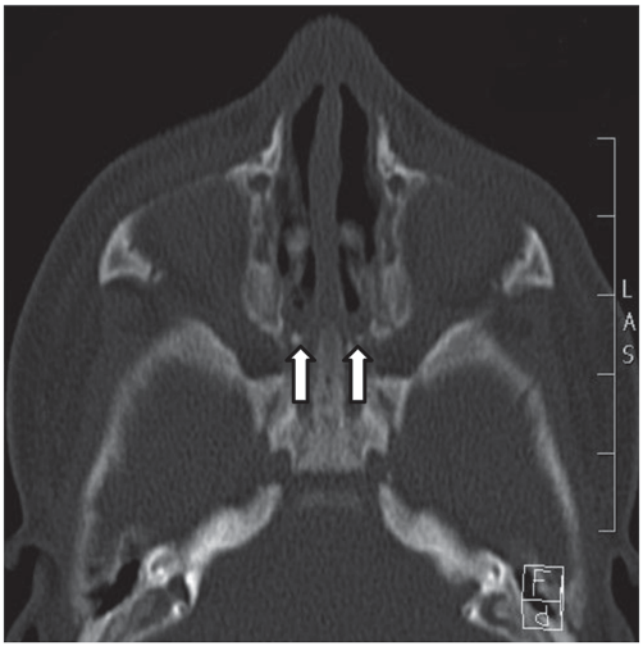
A 3-month-old boy presented with high fever, vomiting, poor feeding, and bulging anterior fontanelle.

Radiological findings: Brain US image shows an echogenic widening of the brain sulci (arrow on image A).

MRI T1 C+ (Gd) shows a small brain abscess left frontal (arrow on image B). A few days later, the MRI image shows a right transverse sinus thrombosis (arrows on image C).

Final diagnosis: Bacterial meningitis.

Case 19



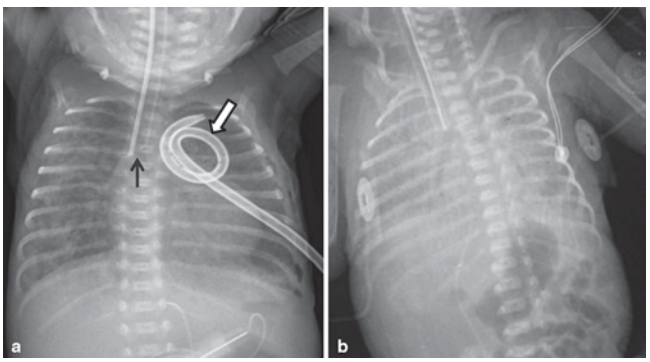
A 1-day-old newborn boy presented with cyanosis, which improves when he cries.

Radiological findings: CT Scan—Axial image shows bony septum at the posterior choana on both sides (pointed by arrows).

Final diagnosis: Bilateral choanal atresia.

Notes: Bilateral choanal atresia is a medical emergency.

Case 20

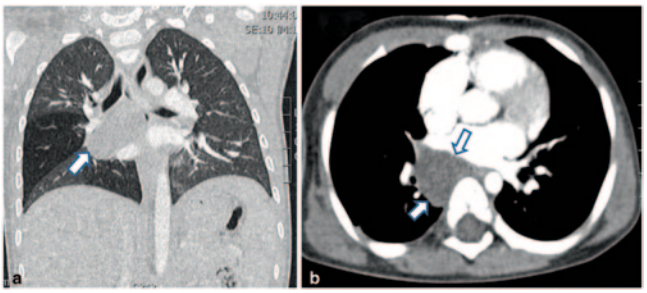


A 2-week-old preterm infant, born at 28th week, presented with tachypnea, tachycardia, increased respiratory efforts with retractions, nasal flaring, grunting, and frequent desaturations.

Radiological findings: Chest radiography shows over-aerated lungs with diffuse rope-like densities separated in some areas by hyperlucent zones (image A). After a few days, the densities become coalescent in many areas and heart borders are completely obliterated (image B). Note the malposition of the endotracheal tube (small arrow in image A) and thorax drain for pneumothorax (big arrow on image A).

Final diagnosis: Bronchopulmonary dysplasia.

Case 21



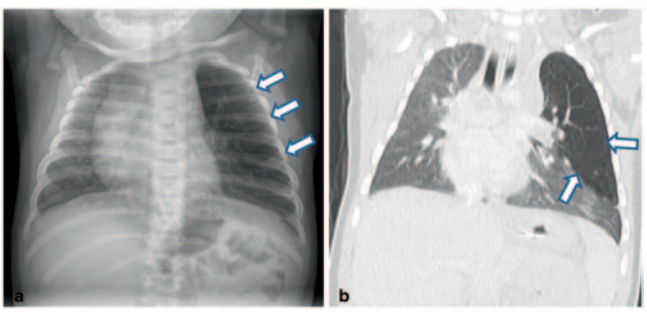
A 6-year-old boy presented with recurrent pneumonia.

Radiological findings: CT scan of the chest shows a large, smoothly marginated, hypodense, homogeneous mass (arrow on image B) that originates from subcarinal region and extends along the right aspect of the posterior mediastinum, displacing the right lower lobe of the lung and causing air trapping in the right lower lobe (arrow on image A).

Differential diagnosis: Bronchogenic cyst, esophageal duplication cyst, neurenteric cyst, lymphangioma, and pericardial cyst.

Final diagnosis: Bronchogenic cyst.

Case 22

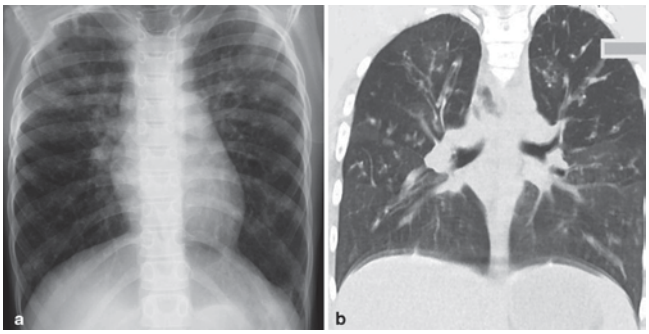


A 3-month-old boy presented with rapid noisy breathing since birth and difficulty in feeding, dry cough, blueness on crying, tachypnea, tachycardia, and trachea shifted to the right.

Radiological findings: Chest X-ray and coronal CT images demonstrate localized hyperinflation in the left upper lobe (arrows on images A and B).

Final diagnosis: Congenital lobar emphysema.

Case 23

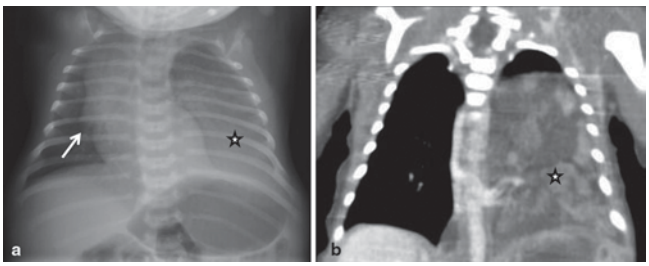


A 9-month-old boy presented with chronic cough, failure to thrive, and sweat chloride testing > 60 mEq/L.

Radiological findings: Bilateral diffuse interstitial thickening, peribronchial cuffing with bronchiectasis and nodular densities of mucoid impaction, with upper lobe predominance.

Final diagnosis: Cystic fibrosis.

Case 24



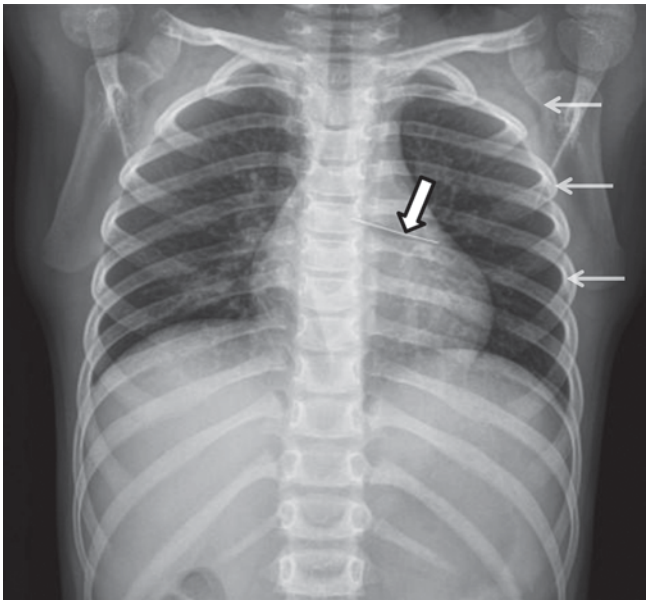
A 4-week-old boy presented with persistant dry cough.

Radiological findings: Chest radiograph and CT image shows a large uniformly dense mass within left pulmonary parenchyma, which does not silhouette the left heart border (stars on images A and B).

Note the triangular sail-shaped structure making an acute angle with the right border of the heart, which is characteristic of the normal thymus gland (small arrow on image A).

Final diagnosis: Pulmonary extralobular sequestration.

Case 25

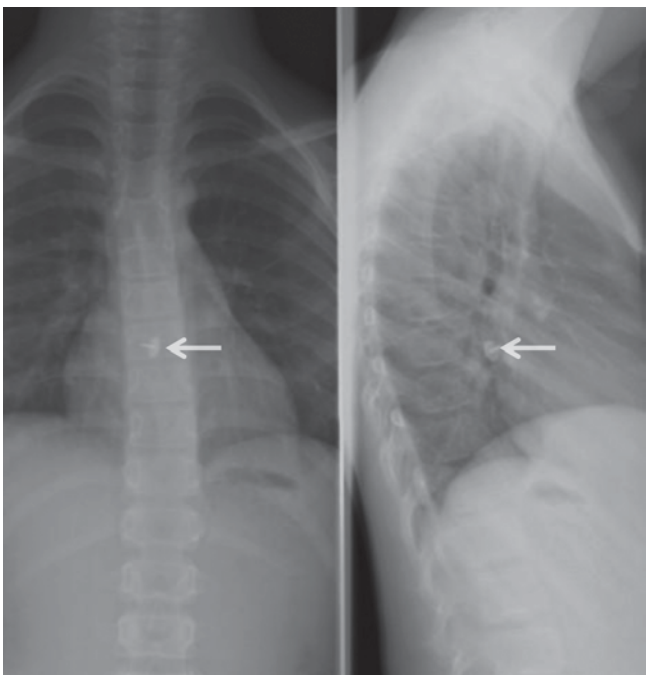


A 6-year-old girl presented with sudden onset of severe cough after playing with toys.

Radiological findings: CXR shows a radiopaque object located in the left stem bronchus (big arrow) and slight peripheral hypertransparent left lung from a process called hyperinflation or air trapping (small arrows).

Final diagnosis: FB in the left main bronchus.

Case 26

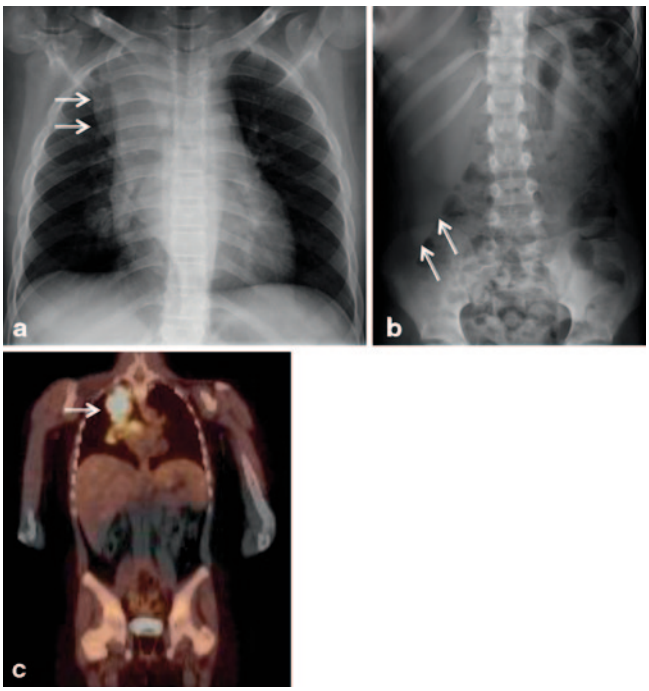


A 9-year-old boy accidentally swallowed a pin, as shown by the CXR.

Radiological findings: A radiopaque object (small arrow) is seen in the prevertebral region, mostly located in the esophagus.

Final diagnosis: FB in the esophagus.

Case 27



An 11-year-old girl presented with chest pain, cough, shortness of breath and weight loss, night fever, and excessive night sweats.

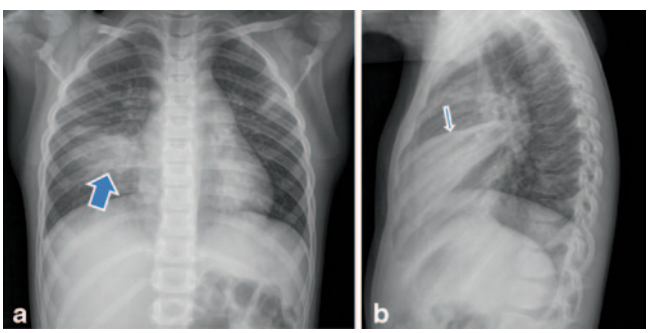
Radiological findings: Chest X-ray film (image A) shows enlarged mediastinal lymph nodes (arrows on image A).

Abdominal X-ray film (image B) shows hepatomegaly (arrows on image B).

PET/CT image shows hypermetabolic right paratracheal lymph nodes (arrow on image C).

Final diagnosis: Hodgkin lymphoma.

Case 28



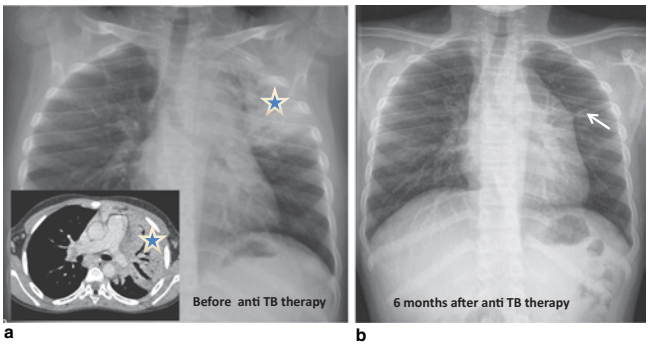
A 5-year-old boy presented with high fever, cough, tachypnea and grunting, and crackles on the right side of the chest.

Radiological findings: PA and lateral CXR images demonstrate consolidation in the right middle lobe, which silhouettes the right heart border (big arrow in image A).

The opacity has a straight upper border, suggesting limitation along the horizontal fissure (small arrow in image B).

Final diagnosis: Right middle lobe pneumonia.

Case 29



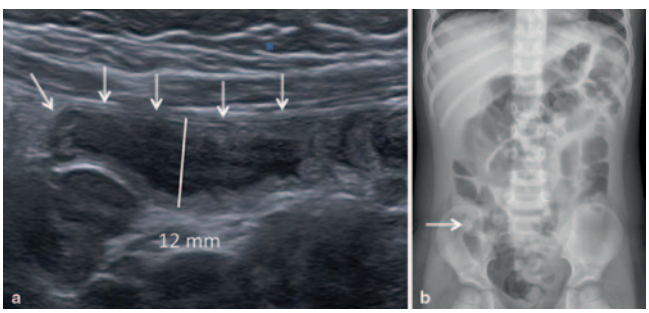
A 10-year-old boy, an immigrant from South America, presented with cough, fever, weight loss, and night sweat. His PPD test is 17 mm induration with significant crackles on the left upper lobe.

Radiological findings: CXR and CT images show an extensive consolidation in the upper lobe of the left lung that silhouettes the mediastinum (star on image A). Tuberculosis was confirmed on sputum testing.

A complete resolution of the consolidation occurred after 6 months with antituberculous therapy, leaving a scar in the left lung (arrow on image B).

Final diagnosis: Pulmonary TB.

Case 30



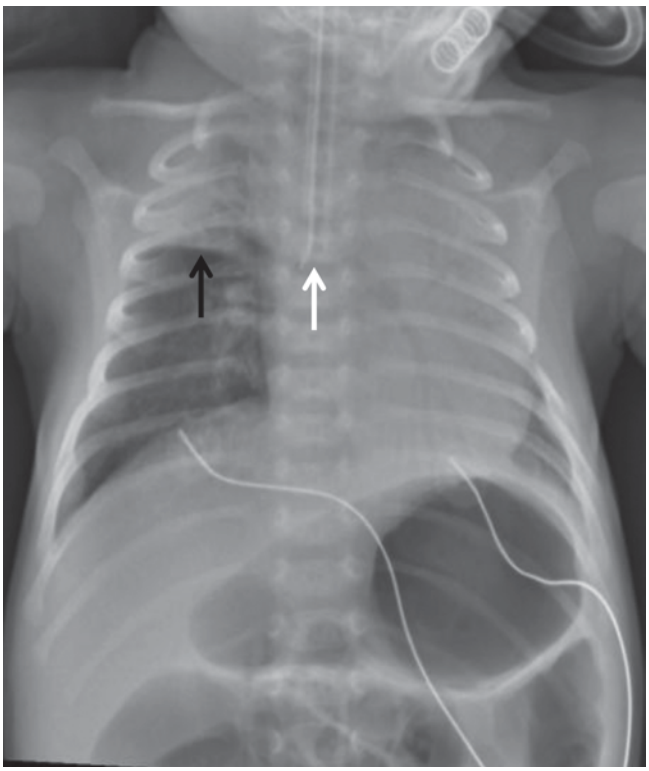
A 4-year-old boy presented with abdominal pain, nausea, guarding while walking and tenderness in the right lower quadrants.

Radiological findings: Abdominal US shows an enlarged appendix with hypoechoic content (arrows on image 1). Ab-

dominal radiograph shows a calcified deposit within the appendix, i.e., an appendicolith (arrow on image B).

Final diagnosis: Acute appendicitis.

Case 31



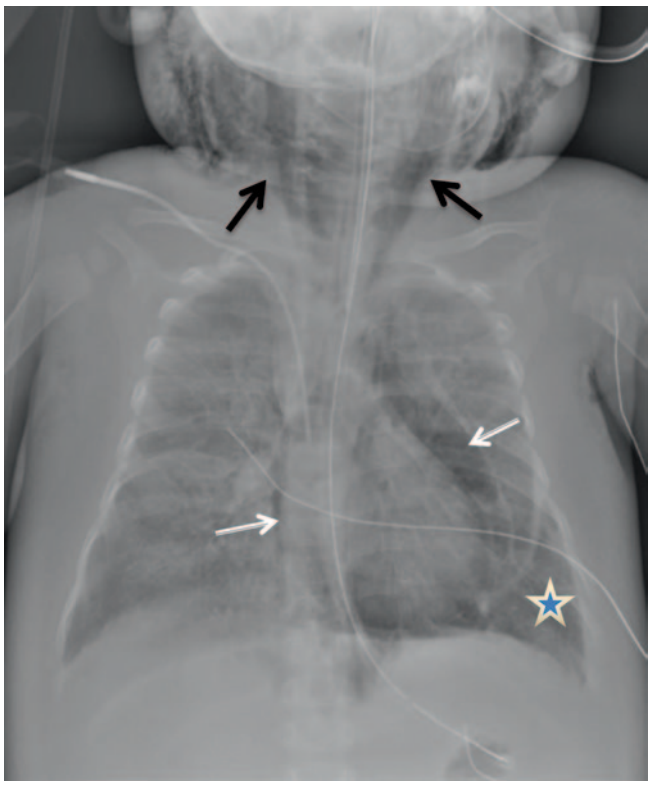
A 5-week-old infant (girl) was admitted to a hospital because of RSV bronchiolitis and respiratory distress. She started having multiple episodes of apnea, cyanosis, and bradycardia, and O_2 saturation went down to 50% on 100% oxygen and became worse after intubation.

Radiological findings: CXR shows that the endotracheal tube (ETT) is in carina (white arrow), deviated cardiac shadow toward the left because of atelectasis in the left lung. The right upper lobe starts becoming atelectatic; see the elevated small fissure (black arrow).

Final diagnosis: Malposition of endotracheal tube complicated by lung atelectasis.

NB: The tip of the ETT should normally be above the carina.

Case 32

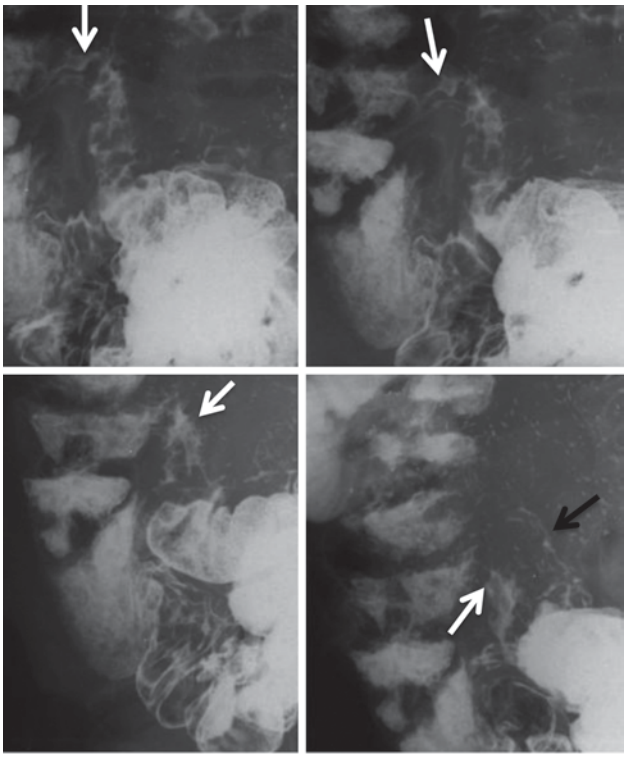


A 12-month-old boy presented with respiratory distress syndrome (RDS) after a septic shock.

Radiological findings: CXR shows diffuse granular shadows on both sides. Pneumomediastinum (white small arrows) and subcutaneous emphysema (black arrows) are seen. There is a pneumothorax on the left side (star).

Final diagnosis: RDS complicated with pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum, and cervicofacial emphysema.

Case 33



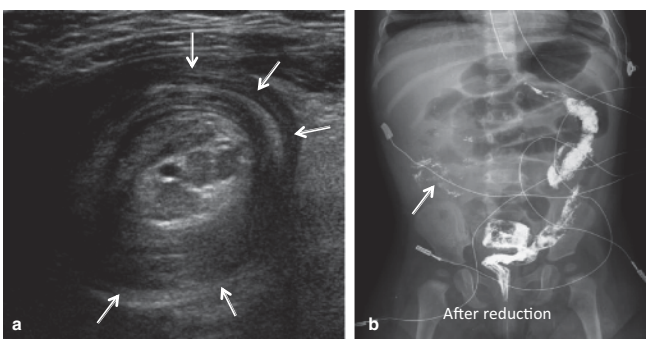
An 11-year-old boy had chronic abdominal pain and weight loss, with elevated ESR and positive antibodies to the yeast Saccharomyces cerevisiae (i.e., anti-S. cerevisiae antibodies [ASCA]).

Radiological findings: A barium study of the ileocecal junction reveals luminal narrowing of the terminal ileum with thickened walls, i.e., cobblestoning (small white arrows).

Intramural fistula can be seen (black arrow).

Final diagnosis: Crohn's disease.

Case 34



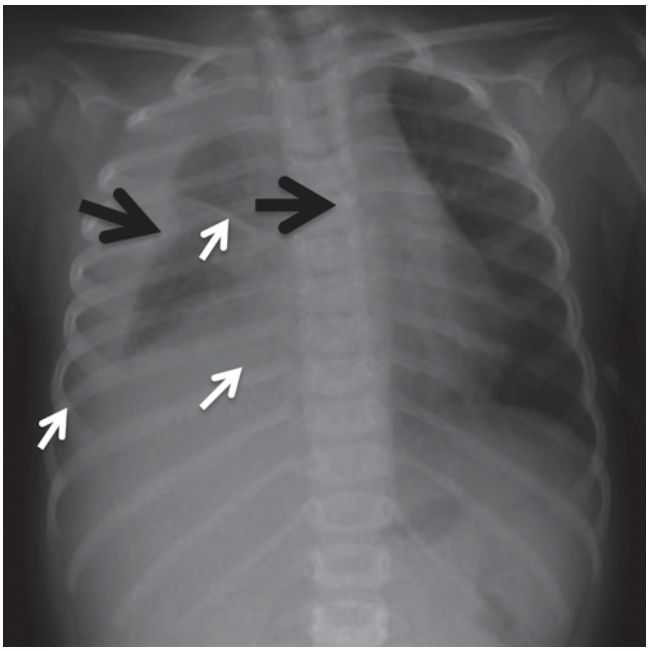
A 7-month-old girl had severe intermittent colicky abdominal pain and lethargy; she looked better in between bouts of crying. Physical examination shows right hypochondrium sausage-shaped mass and emptiness in the right lower quadrant.

Radiological findings: US image shows *doughnut sign* or target lesion (arrows on image A).

Abdominal plain film after reduction shows some contrast in the terminal ileum (arrow on image B).

Final diagnosis: Intestinal intussusception.

Case 35



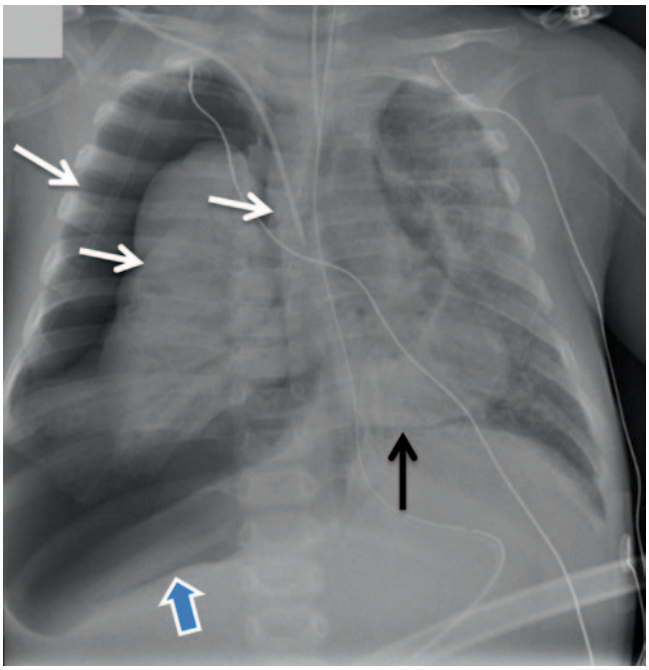
A 15-month-old girl was admitted to the hospital because of pneumonia and respiratory distress. On the second day of admission, she developed toxic appearance, grunting, tachypnea, tachycardia, requiring more oxygen, inaudible breath sound on the right lung field.

Radiological findings: Chest X-ray image shows blunting of the costophrenic and cardiophrenic angles with fluid within the horizontal fissure (white arrows).

Compression-atelectasis of the right lung and mediastinal shifted away from the effusion (black arrows).

Final diagnosis: Right-sided pleural effusion.

Case 36



A 12-month-old infant (boy) with underlying chronic lung disease suddenly became unresponsive; no breath sound was audible on the right side of the lung and the trachea shifted to the left, and pulse oximetry is 60%.

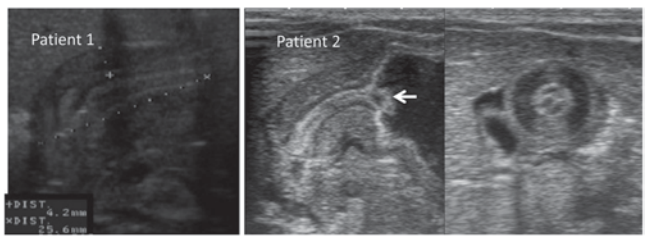
Radiological findings: Right-sided pneumothorax, mediastinal shift and compression atelectasis of the right lung (small white arrows) were found.

A continuous diaphragm sign of pneumoperitoneum is seen (small black arrow).

Final diagnosis: Right-sided tension pneumothorax and pneumomediastinum.

Note: Depression of a hemidiaphragm is the most reliable sign of tension pneumothorax (big arrow).

Case 37



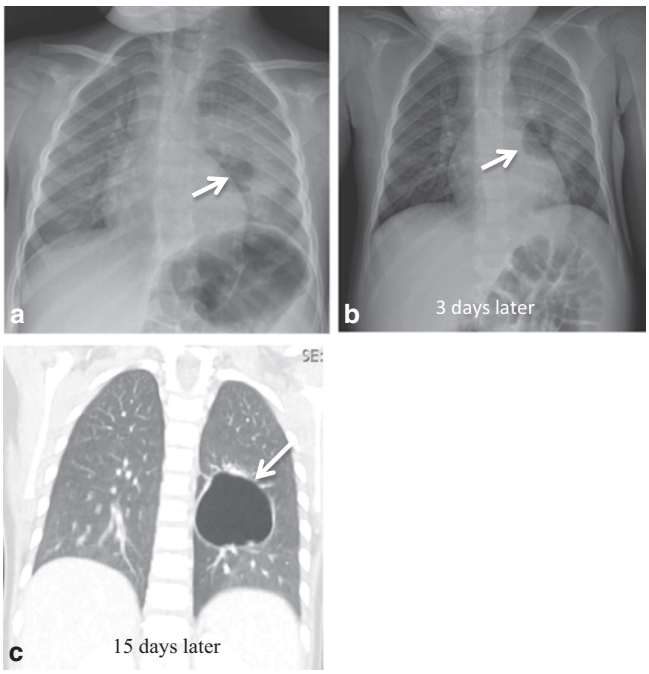
A 4-week-old boy (patient 1) and a 2 week-old boy (patient 2) had projectile nonbilious vomiting immediately after each feed, lethargy, and fewer number of wet diapers. Laboratory work shows hypochloremic, hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis.

Radiological findings: Longitudinal ultrasonography of the pylorus shows hypertrophied muscle with abnormal large thickness and length (the hypertrophied pylorus is hypoechoic and the central mucosa is hyperechoic). Axial image of the pylorus shows a target or doughnut-like appearance of the pylorus. Note the hypertrophied mucosa bulge into the gastric lumen (arrow on the left image).

Final diagnosis: Hypertrophic pyloric stenosis.

Note: Normal pyloric thickness is less than 3 mm and the length does not exceed 15 mm.

Case 38

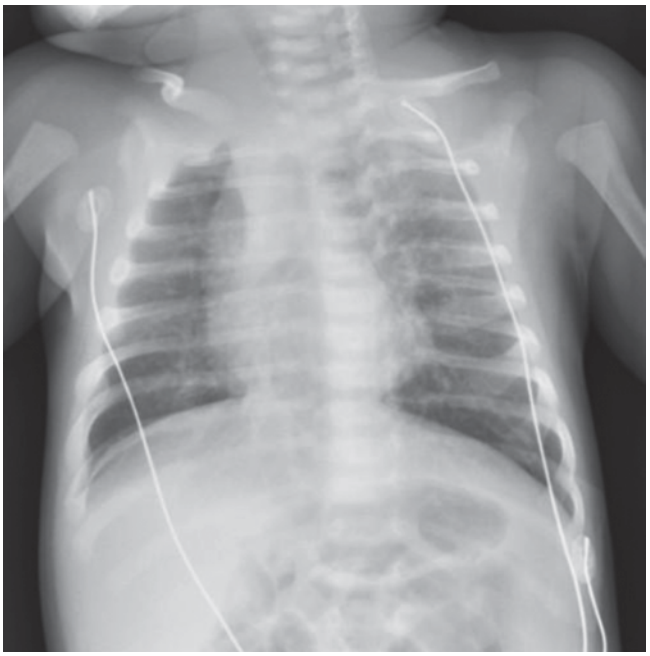


A 3-year-old girl was diagnosed with influenza A. A few days later, she started having very high fever, respiratory distress, and tachypnea.

Radiological findings: Chest radiographs reveal an extensive alveolar consolidation with cavity formation in the left lung (arrow on image A). Three days from the treatment with antibiotics, the size of the cavity starts to increase with gradual decrease in the consolidations (arrow on image B). Fifteen days later, thoracic CT image shows complete resolution of the pneumonia with thin-walled lung cavity (arrow on image C).

Final diagnosis: Staphylococcus pneumonia.

Case 39

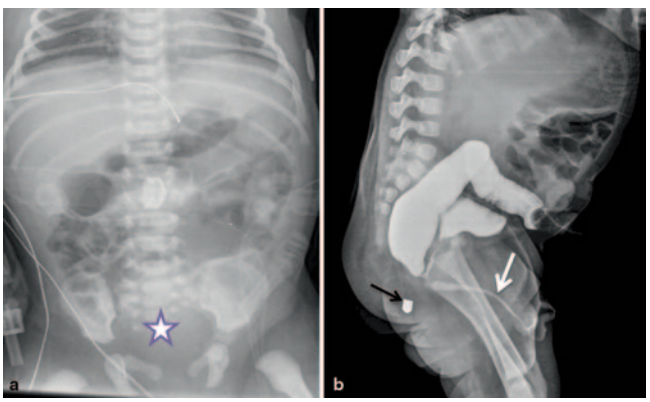


A 10-month-old girl had fever, runny nose, cough, poor feeding, tachypnea, respiratory distress, wheezing, low oxygen saturation, and positive RSV.

Radiological findings: An A-P chest X-ray shows the typical bilateral peripheral fullness of bronchiolitis and hyperventilation in the peripheral lung areas resulting from air trapping. The left lung is more affected than the right one.

Final diagnosis: RSV bronchiolitis.

Case 40

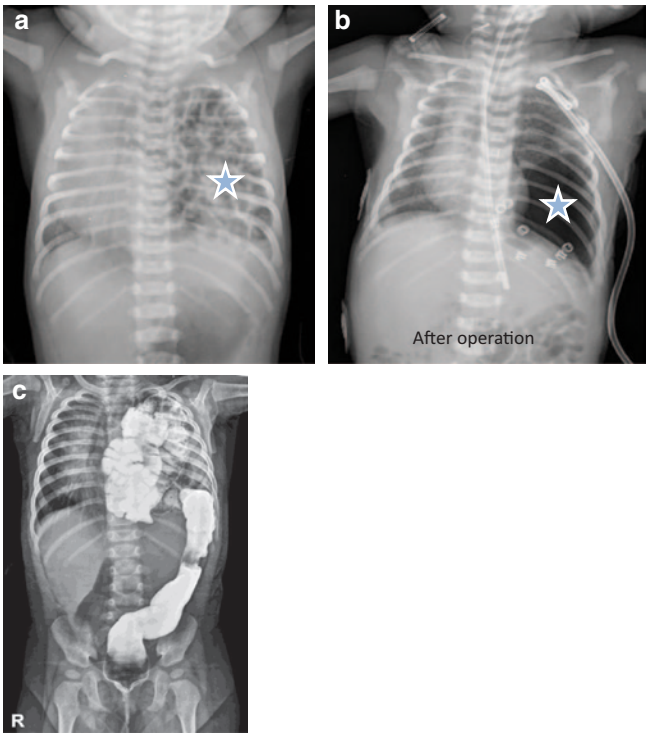


Two-day-old infants (boys) had distention and failed to pass meconium. Physical examination shows bucket-handle malformation in the anal dimple skin.

Radiological findings: Plain abdominal radiograph of the first patient shows dilated bowel loops with absent rectal gas (star on image A). High-pressure distal loopogram of the second patient shows a fistulous connection between the terminal bowel and the urethra with filling of the UB by contrast (white arrow on image B). A radiopaque marker was placed on the anal dimple (black arrow).

Final diagnosis: Imperforate anus (high-anorectal malformation with recto-urethral fistula).

Case 41



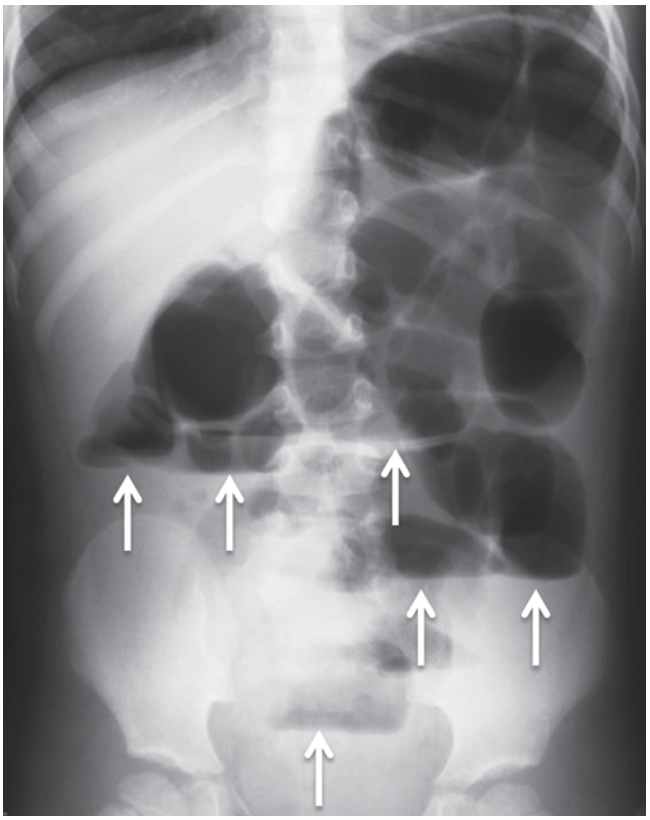
Two 1-day-old babies with emergent C-section had respiratory distress and cyanosis during the first minutes. They exhibit a scaphoid abdomen, barrel-shaped chest and signs of respiratory distress (retractions, cyanosis, grunting respirations). Poor air entry on the left with a shift of cardiac sounds over the right chest.

Radiological findings: A-P chest radiography shows multiple cyst-like structures filling the left hemithorax, representing loops of bowel (star on image A). The mediastinum shifted to the right and the abdomen is relatively devoid of gas. One day after operation, there is a postoperative pneumothorax on the left side (star on image B).

A lower GI contrast study of a 2-year-old female (second patient) with recurrent chest problems showing the proximal colon entirely in the left hemithorax, note also the absence of bowel gas lucencies in the abdomen denoting small bowel displacement into the congenital diaphragmatic hernia (image C).

Final diagnosis: Congenital diaphragmatic hernia.

Case 42

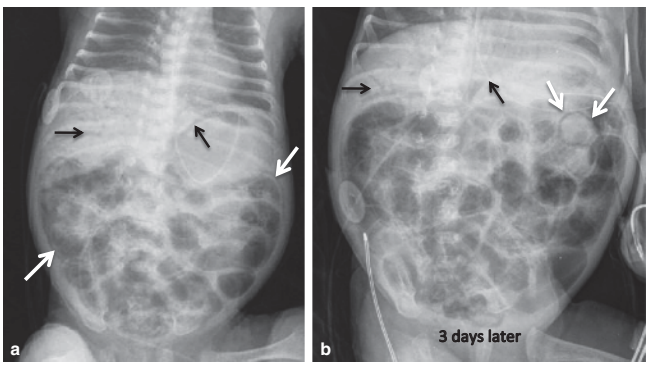


A 4-year-old girl had bilous vomiting, abdominal pain, lethargy, and abdominal distension, with high-pitched bowel sound.

Radiological findings: Erect abdominal radiograph shows dilated proximal small-bowel loops with multiple air-fluid levels (arrows).

Final diagnosis: Intestinal obstruction.

Case 43

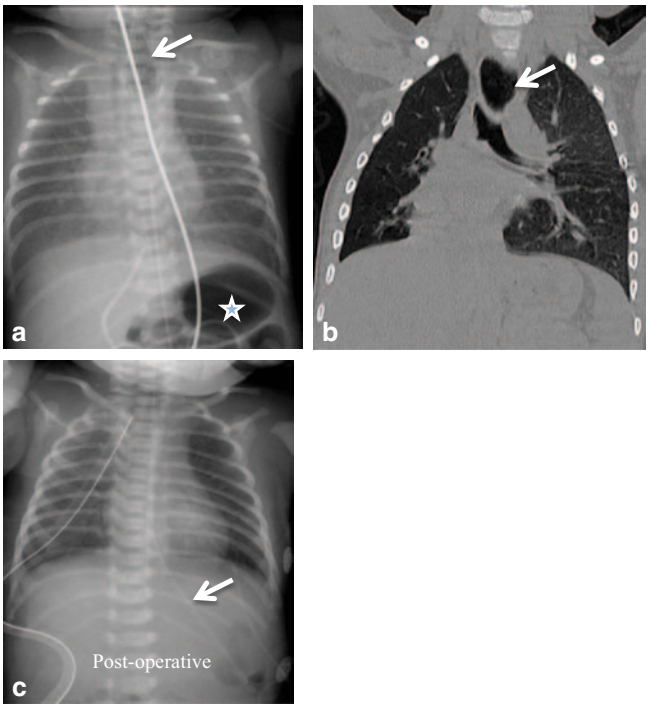


A 2-week-old premature baby on trophic feeds via NG tube, had a temperature drop, high gastric residuals following feedings, bilious vomiting, and abdominal tenderness. In a few hours he developed abdominal wall edema, erythema, and crepitans, a KUB was ordered immediately.

Radiological findings: Abdominal plain films show loss of the normal intestinal gas shape, pneumatosis intestinalis or intramural gas (white arrows), dilated bowel loops, and pneumoperitoneum (black arrows).

Final diagnosis: Necrotizing enterocolitis (NEC).

Case 44

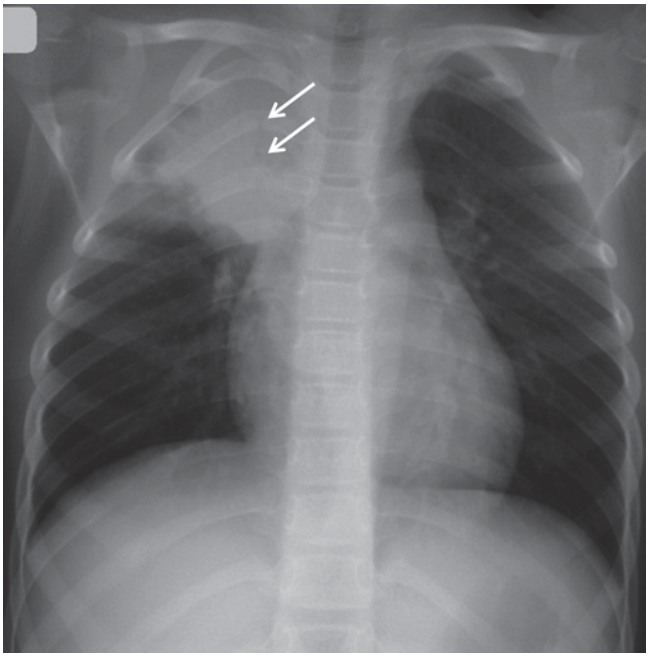


A 1-day-old premature boy with a history of maternal polyhydramnios presents with copious, fine white frothy bubbles of mucus in the mouth and nose. Secretions recur despite suctioning. The baby developed episodes of coughing and choking in association with cyanosis.

Radiological findings: Plain abdominal films show failure to pass a feeding tube down through the esophagus (arrow on image A). The presence of gas in the stomach (star) is because of associated distal tracheo-esophageal fistula. Coronal CT image shows dilated and blind-ended upper esophagus (arrow on image B). Plain film after repair shows the distal tip of the feeding tube in the stomach (arrow on image C).

Final diagnosis: Esophageal atresia.

Case 45

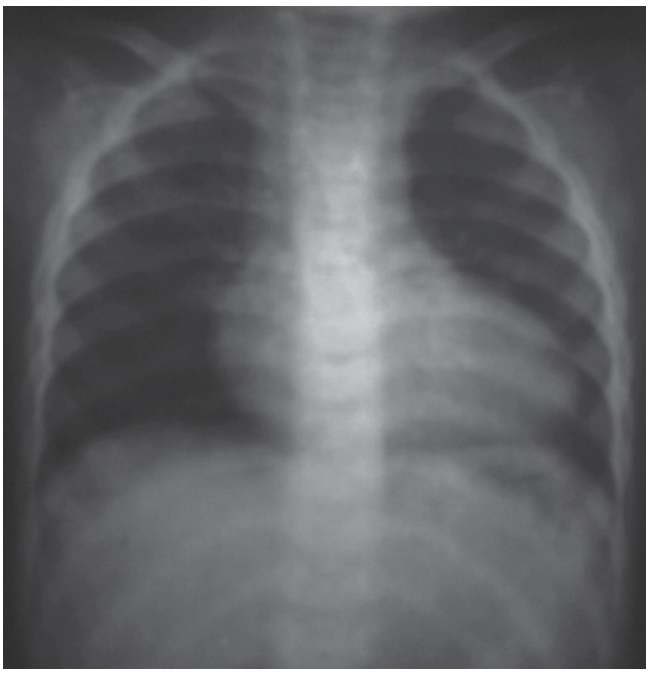


A 6-year-old boy had fever, cough, tachypnea, and crackles on the right side of the chest.

Radiological findings: Chest radiograph demonstrated right upper lobe consolidation with air bronchograms (arrows).

Final diagnosis: Right upper lobe pneumonia.

Case 46

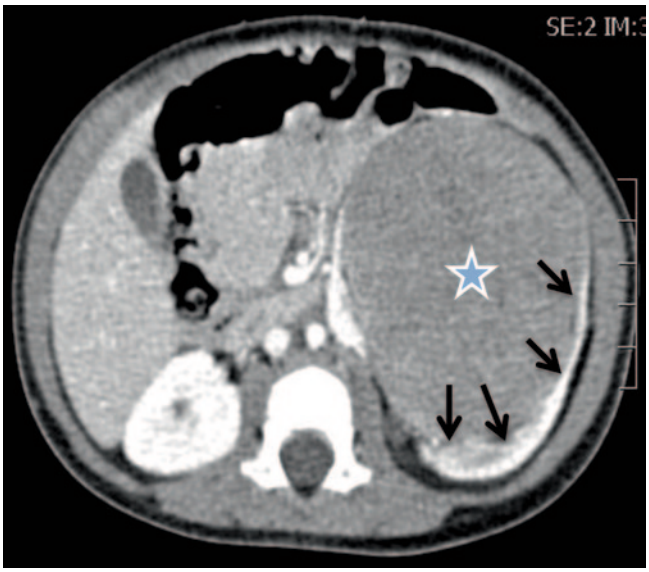


A 10-year-old boy had a history of cyanotic spells, preferred the squatting position, clubbing of fingers, and systolic ejection murmur best heard on the left sternal border.

Radiological findings: Plain chest X-ray demonstrates a boot-shaped heart and diminished pulmonary vascular markings.

Final diagnosis: Tetralogy of fallot.

Case 47

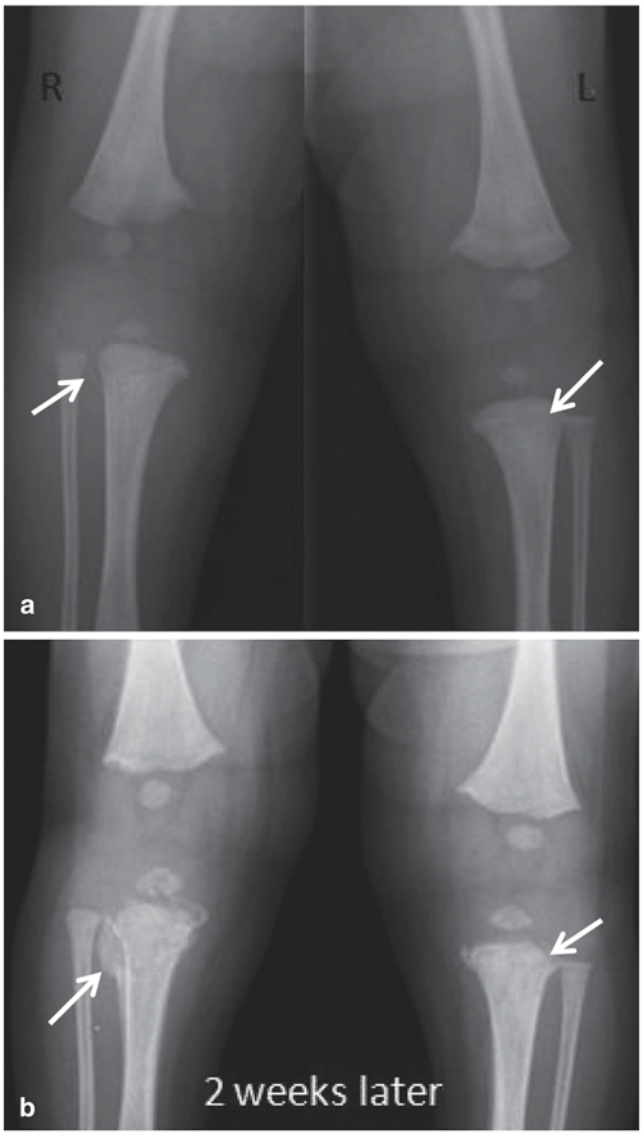


A 24-month-old girl had a palpable abdominal mass and hematuria.

Radiological findings: Axial CT image shows a well-circumscribed soft-tissue density mass originating from the left kidney (star). The mass shows no calcifications and displaces adjacent structures without insinuating between them. The mass shows a *claw sign* with the kidney, which represents a normal renal parenchyma extending around the mass (black arrows).

Final diagnosis: Wilms tumor.

Case 48

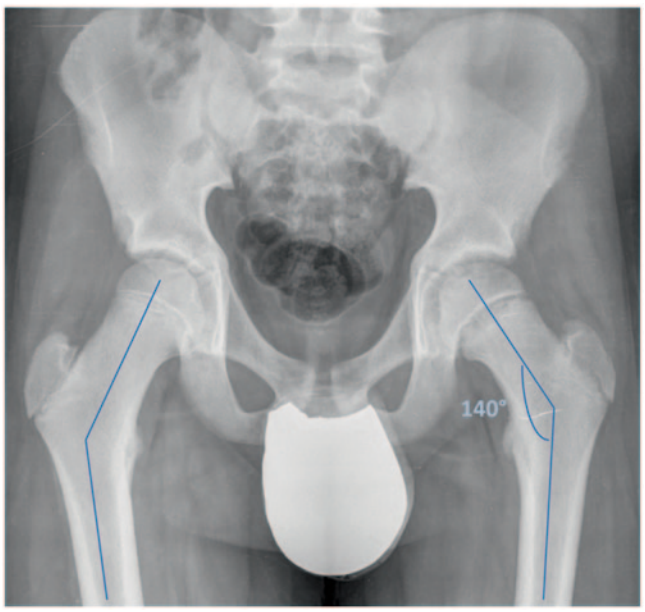


A 1-month-old boy with swelling, and bruises on both knees, X-ray on the lower extremities showed corner fractures in proximal ends of both tibias.

Radiological findings: Corner fractures in proximal ends of both tibias without a known history of trauma (arrows on images A and B) were seen.

Final diagnosis: Child abuse.

Case 49

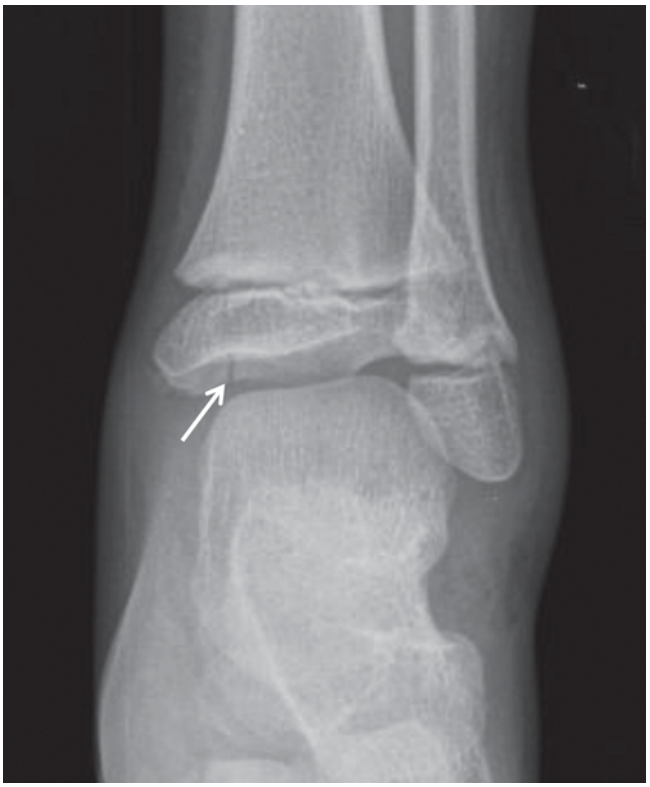


A 13-year-old boy had gait abnormalities since he was 6 years old.

Radiological findings: An A-P view of the hip, angle formed by a line drawn along the axis of femoral neck passing through the center of the head of femur and the line drawn along the axis of femoral shaft and, if < 125° then coxa vara deformity and if > 135° then coxa valga deformity.

Final diagnosis: Coxa valga.

Case 50

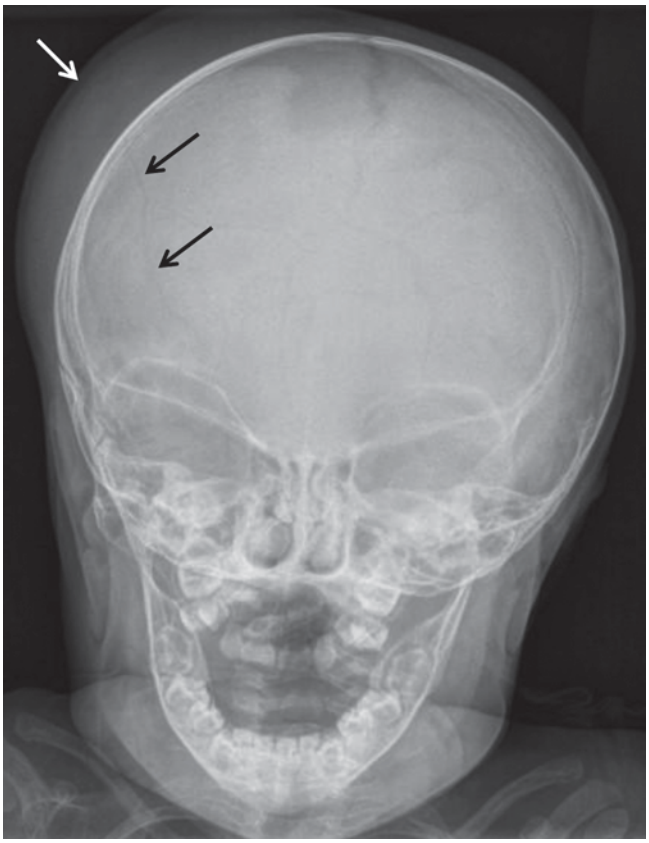


A 7-year-old boy had a swelling in the left foot after trauma.

Radiological findings: A-P radiography of the left ankle shows a fracture that involves the epiphysis of the distal tibia (white arrow).

Final diagnosis: Fracture Salter–Harris type III.

Case 51

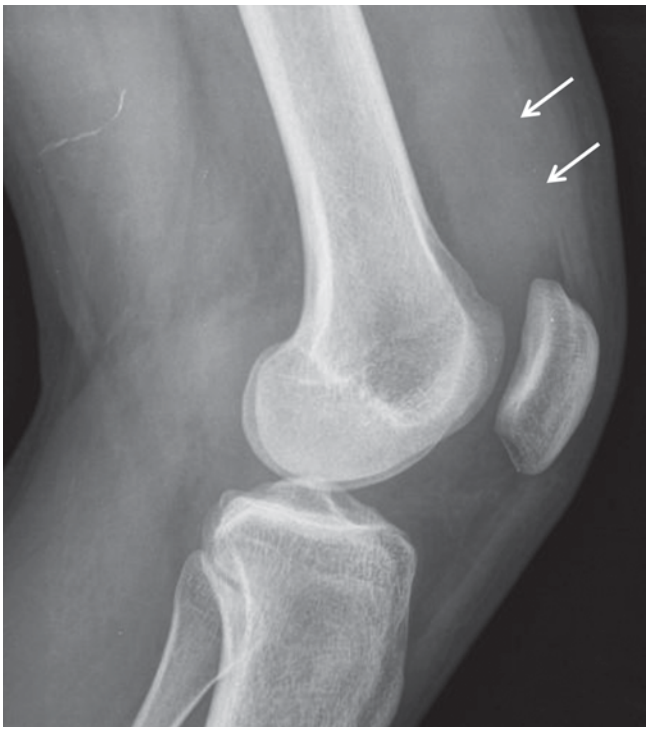


A 1-year-old boy had a fracture of the skull after head trauma.

Radiological findings: Lateral skull radiograph shows a linear right parietal skull fracture (black arrows) associated with sharply demarcated soft tissue density or cephalohematoma (white arrow).

Final diagnosis: Fractured skull with cephalohematoma.

Case 52

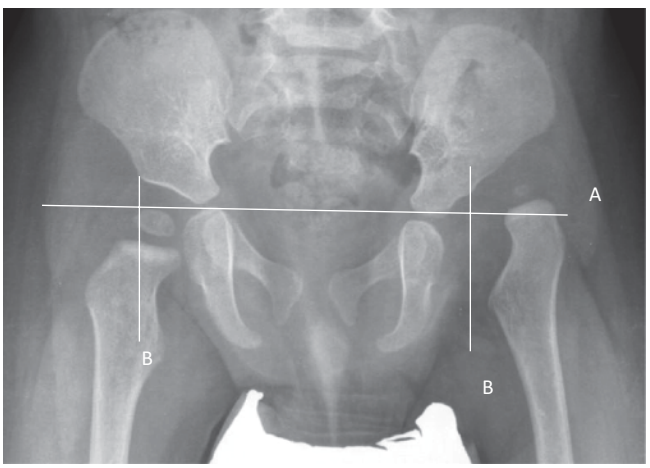


A 15-year-old boy presented with hemophilia.

Radiological findings: Lateral radiograph of the right knee shows fluid collection within the suprapatellar pouch (white arrows).

Final diagnosis: Hemoarthrosis.

Case 53



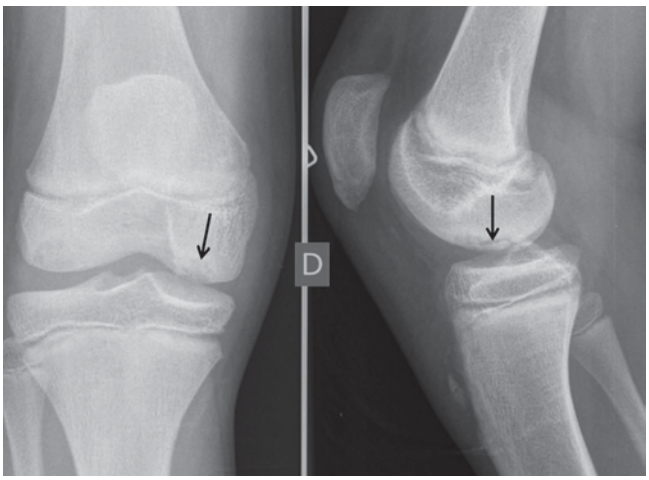
A 1-year-old boy presented with limping problem.

Radiological findings: Hilgenreiner's line (Line A) is drawn horizontally through the superior aspect of both triradiate cartilages. Perkin's line (line B) is drawn perpendicular to Hilgenreiner's line, intersecting the lateral most aspect of the acetabular roof.

Final diagnosis: Developmental dysplasia of the hip (DDH) on the left side.

Note: The normal position of the upper femoral epiphysis should be seen in the inferomedial quadrant.

Case 54



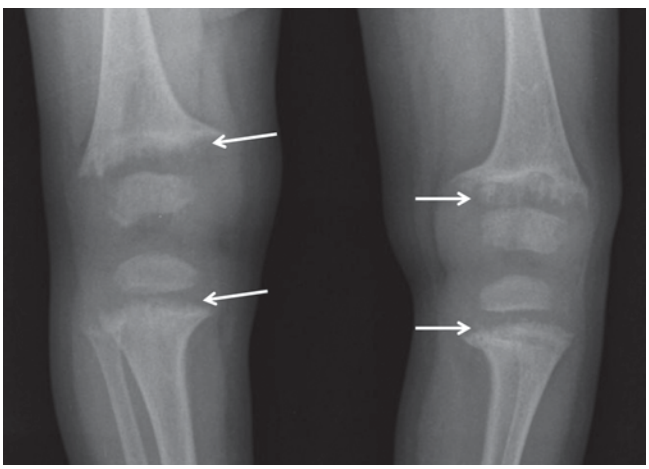
A 14-year-old boy had pain and swelling of the left knee. He also complained of knee-catching, locking, and sometimes giving way.

Radiological findings: Radiography of the right knee shows an indistinct lucent zone in the lateral surface of the medial condyle of the knee (arrow).

Final diagnosis: Osteochondritis dissecans of the right knee.

NB: Femoral condyles are the most common site of osteochondritis dissecans (75 % of all cases).

Case 55



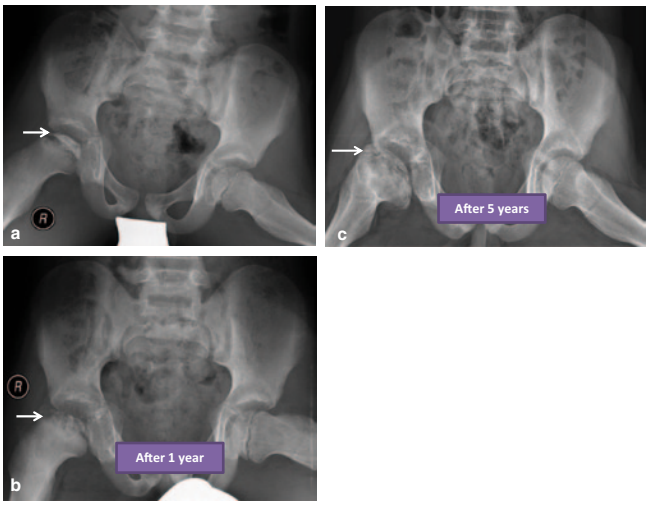
A 3-year-old girl with a history of generalized muscular hypotonia was admitted to the hospital because of recurrent

seizures, calcium level was 6 mg/dL, 25-hydroxyvitamin D was low, low serum phosphorus, and elevated alkaline phosphatase enzyme.

Radiological findings: A-P radiography of both knees shows a bilateral widening and irregularity of the growth plate of long bones (cupping and fraying) (white arrows).

Final diagnosis: Rickets.

Case 56



A 7-year-old boy presented with intermittent limp and pain in anterior part of the right thigh.

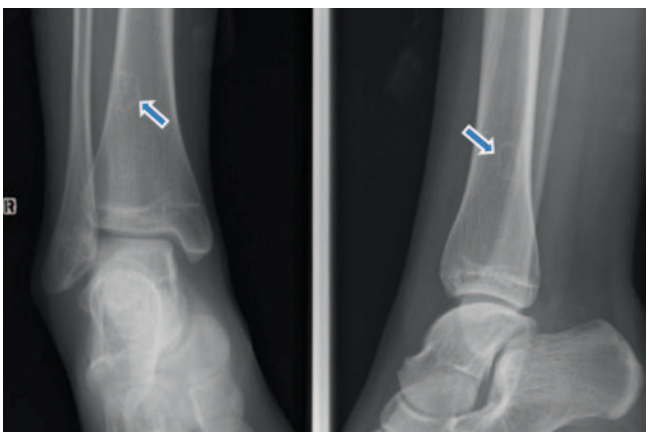
Radiological findings: Image A shows asymmetric femoral small epiphyseal size on the right side with apparent increased density of the femoral head, blurring of the physeal plate and radiolucency of the proximal metaphysis.

Image B shows a subchondral lucency and fragmentation of the femoral head outline.

Image C shows reossification of the femoral head with flattening of the articular surface and superior widening of the head and neck of the femur.

Final diagnosis: Legg–Calvé–Perthes disease (three stages).

Case 57

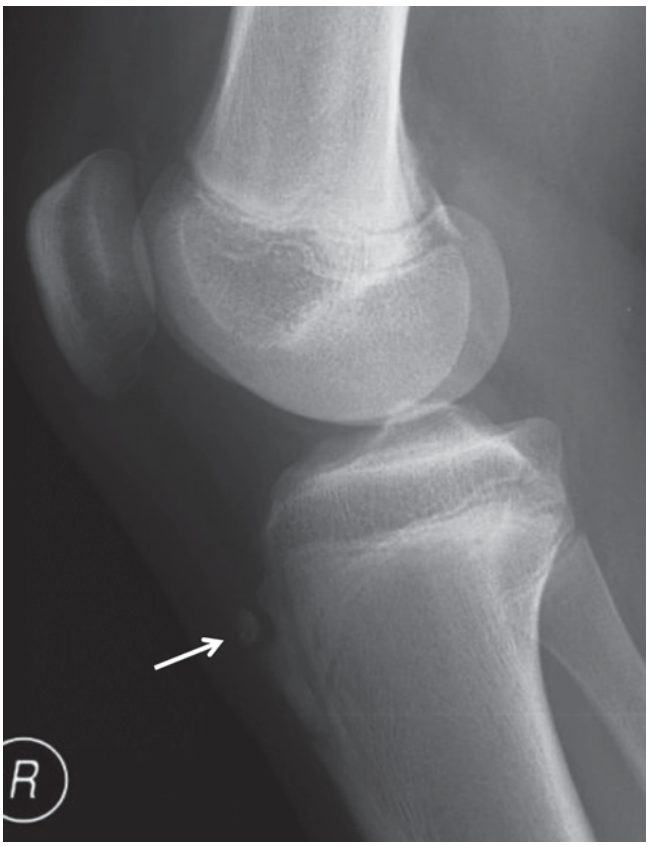


A 13-year-old girl had lower right leg pain.

Radiological findings: A-P radiography of the right ankle demonstrates a sharply demarcated, cortically based radiolucent lesion with a thin sclerotic rim without associated cortical breach. There is no periosteal reaction or soft tissue mass.

Final diagnosis: Nonossifying fibroma.

Case 58



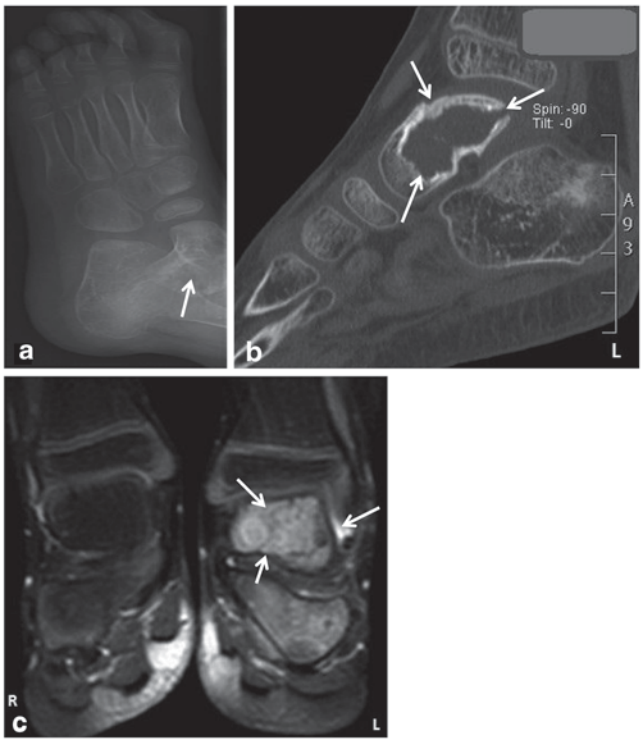
A 14-year-old basketball player (boy) reported knee pain during activities and ascending or descending stairs. Physical examination shows proximal tibial swelling, tenderness, and prominence of the tibial tubercle.

Radiological findings: Irregular fragmentation of tibial tubercle, which is separated from the remainder of tibial tubercle (arrow).

Final diagnosis: Osgood–Schlatter.

NB: Osgood–Schlatter is a common cause of knee pain in adolescents between 10 and 15 years of age and is found more frequently in males and can be bilateral in up to 50% of the cases.

Case 59



A 5-year-old girl had fever, left foot pain, and limping.

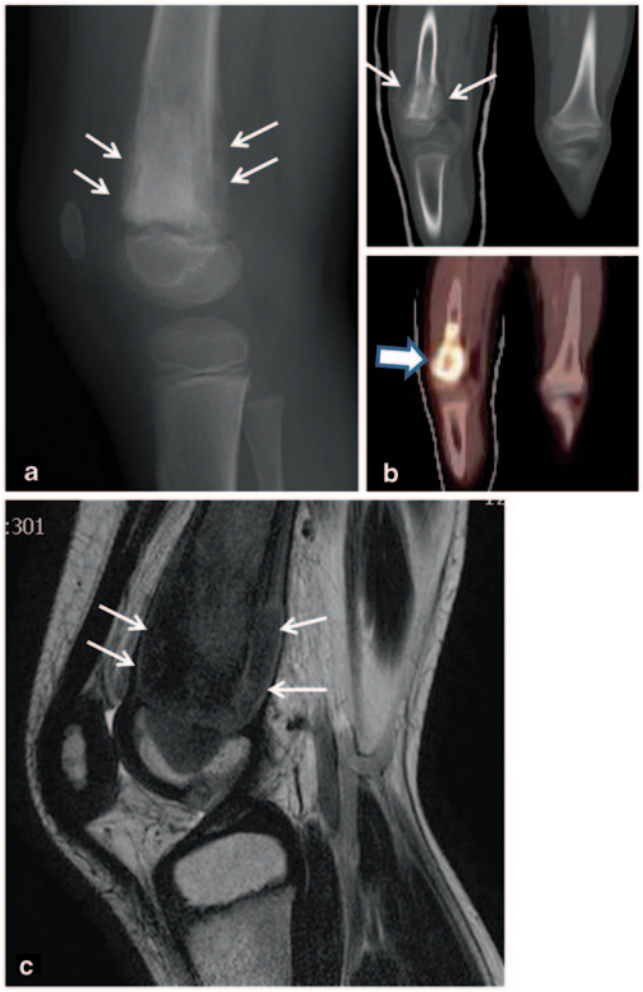
Radiological findings: Radiograph of the left ankle shows an osteolytic defect in the talus (arrow on image A).

CT image reveals a lytic lesion with irregular sclerotic margins and cortical breach (arrows on image B).

MRI image shows a hyperintense lesion with soft tissue edema in the left talus (arrows on image C).

Final diagnosis: Osteomyelitis of the left talus.

Case 60



A 5-year-old girl had pain in the right thigh for 4 weeks, which increased at night. She developed swelling and tenderness in the right lower end of the thigh.

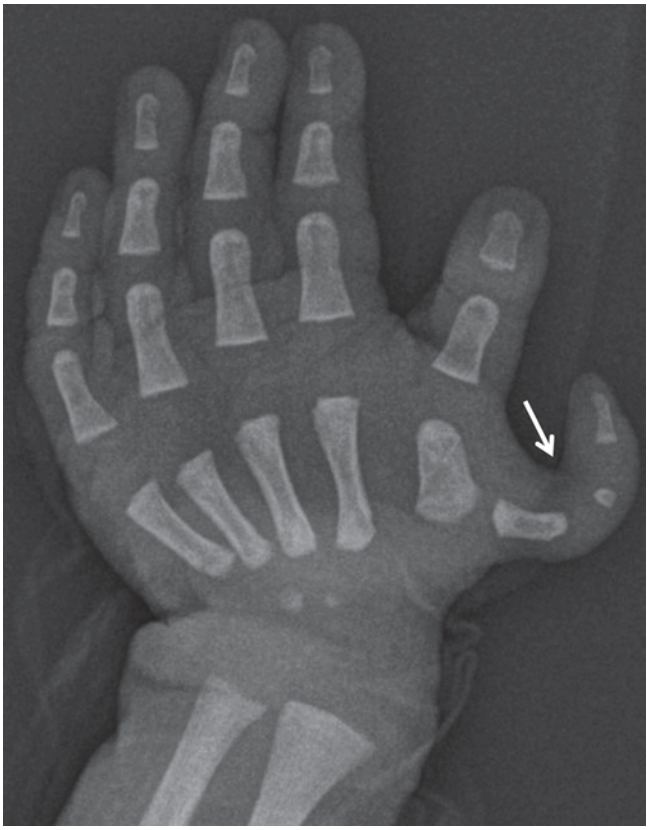
Radiological findings: Lateral radiograph of the right knee shows permeative or moth-eaten appearance in the distal femur with periosteal reaction (arrows on image C). The lesion is more visible on CT image (arrows on image B).

PET/CT scan shows a hypermetabolic tumor in the distal femur with lateral soft tissue extension (big arrow on image B).

The sagittal MRI-T1 image shows a large tumor mass infiltrating the distal femur with some extension into the soft tissues (arrows on image C).

Final diagnosis: Osteosarcoma in the right distal femur.

Case 61

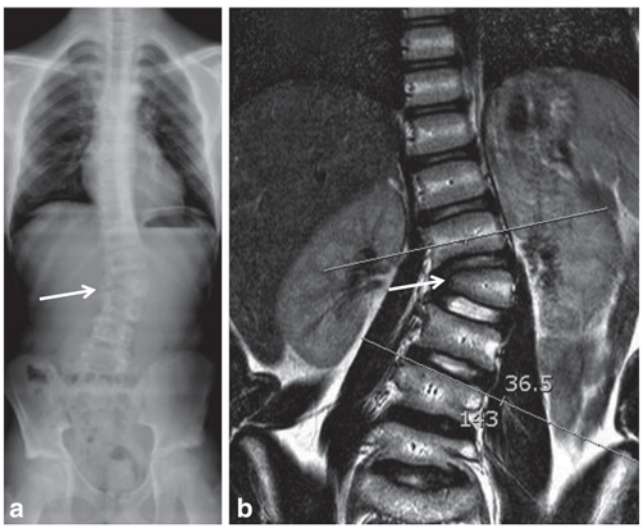


A 1-day-old infant with Patau syndrome (trisomy 13).

Radiological findings: RX of the left hand shows an extra digit toward the fifth finger (postaxial polydactyly).

Final diagnosis: Postaxial polydactyly.

Case 62

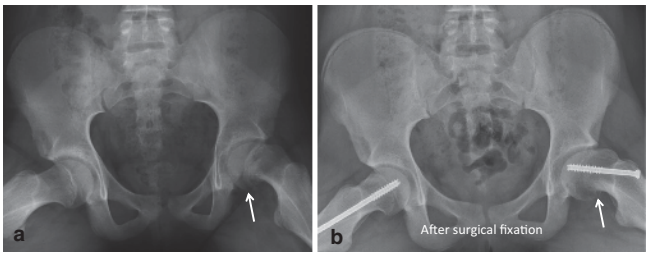


A 14-year-old boy had long-standing scoliosis.

Radiological findings: Hemivertebra L2 (arrows in images A and B) with sinistroconvex lumbar scoliosis (the angle of Cobb = 36.5°).

Final diagnosis: Congenital scoliosis.

Case 63

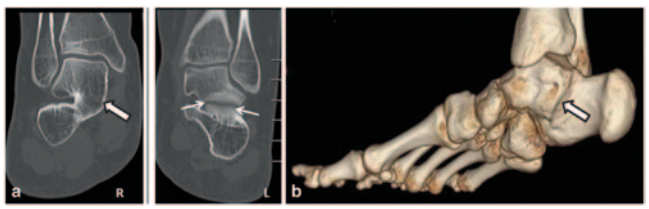


A 13-year-old girl weighing 95 kg suddenly started complaining of severe left knee pain and limping after jumping.

Radiological findings: Epiphysis of the left femur has slipped medial, inferior and posterior to its original location. (image A) which looks like a melting icecream cone.

Final diagnosis: Slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE).

Case 64

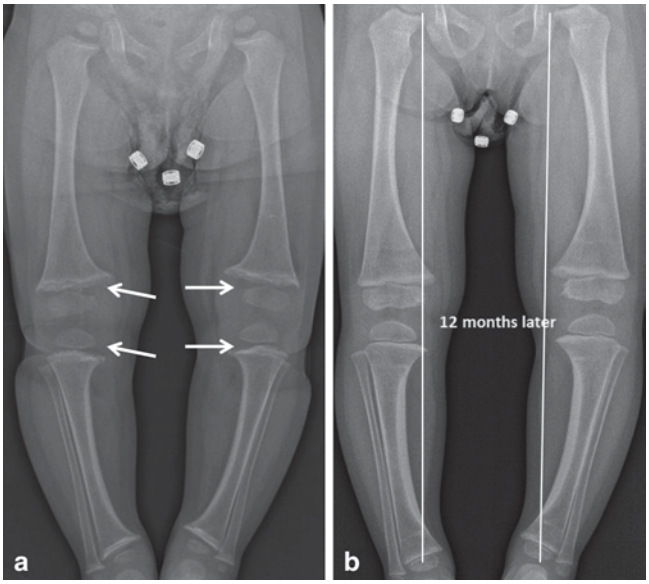


A 14-year-old girl suddenly start having severe pain in the right foot, lack of endurance for activity, fatigue, muscle spasms, and cramps, an inability to rotate the right foot and was forced to walk in a contorted position to allow continued ambulation.

Radiological findings: CT scan images demonstrate talocalcaneal coalition of the right foot (big arrow) in comparison to the left foot (small arrows).

Final diagnosis: Talocalcaneal coalition in the right foot.

Case 65

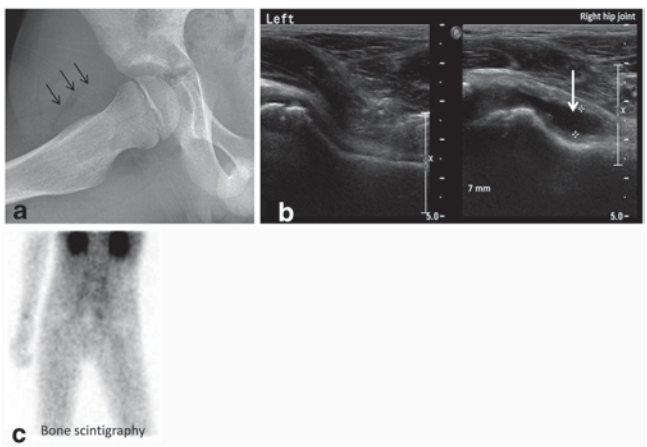


A 15-month-old girl presented with a history of rickets.

Radiological findings: Lower extremity radiographs show a widening of the growth plate, epiphyseal and metaphyseal flaring at the ends of the femur and tibia (image A), which disappeared after 1 year, and the child developed bilateral genu varus (image B).

Final diagnosis: Bilateral leg bowing (lower limb deformity after rickets).

Case 66



An 8-year-old boy had upper respiratory infection and low-grade fever for one week. Later, he started complaining of right leg pain and was limping, with mild restriction in the range of motion, especially adduction and internal rotation.

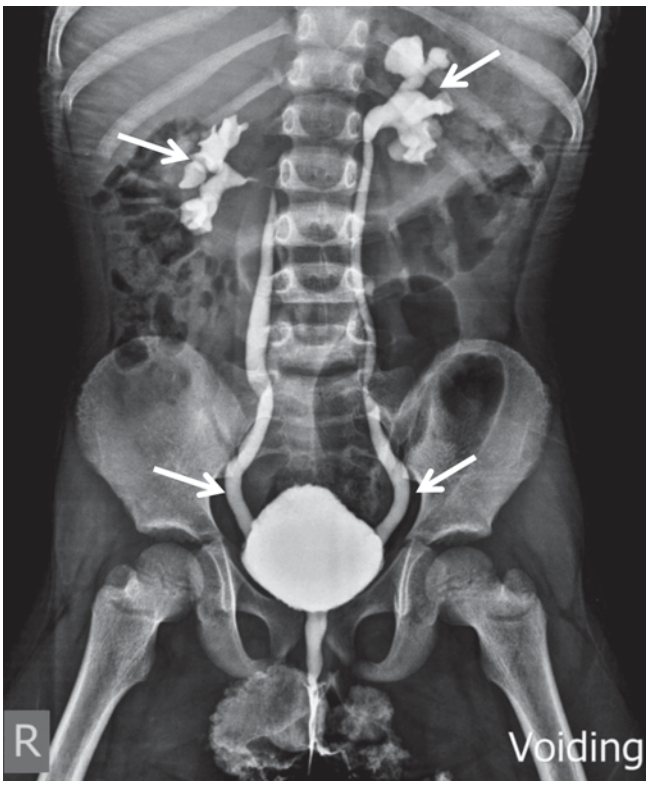
Radiological findings: Bulging fat-pad seen on radiography of the right hip joint (arrows on image A). Ultrasound (US) images show a convex-shaped joint effusion of the right hip joint.

Bone scintigraphy shows no abnormalities.

Final diagnosis: Transient synovitis.

NB: US alone cannot differentiate between transient synovitis and septic arthritis and should be confirmed by applying clinical Kocher criteria or with arthrocentesis.

Case 67

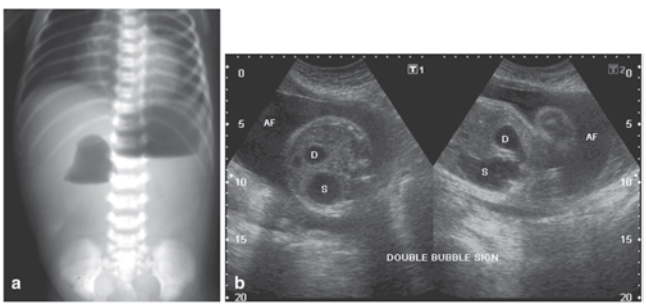


An 8-year-old girl had recurrent UTI on medical treatment, was referred for assessment of vesicoureteric reflux.

Radiological findings: Voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG) study showed bilateral grade IV vesicoureteric reflux (arrows).

Final diagnosis: Bilateral vesicoureteric reflux with recurrent UTI.

Case 68



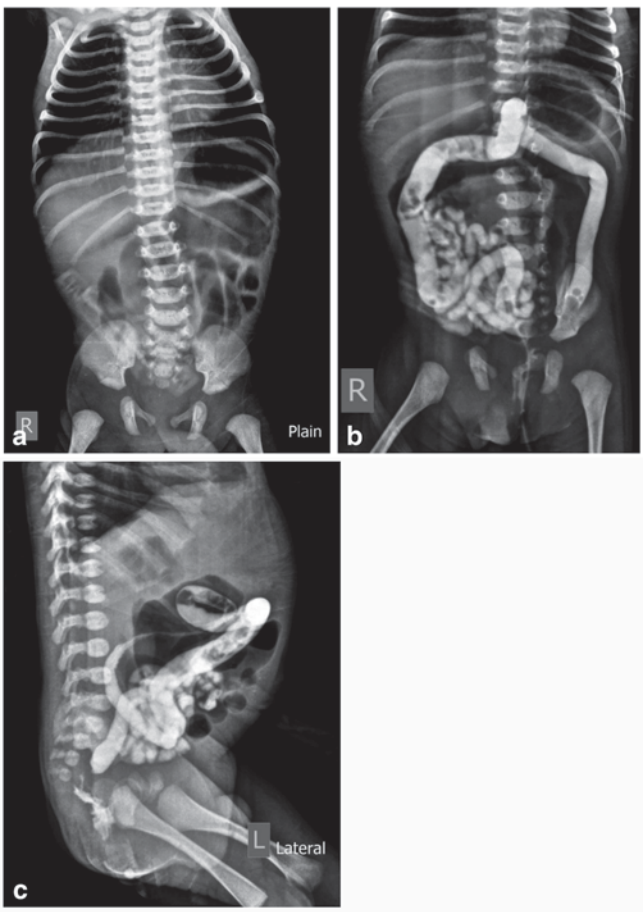
A 1-day-old boy had bilious vomiting.

Radiological findings: Image A: Plain X-ray of the abdomen in erect position shows the typical double bubble sign denoting complete duodenal obstruction, i.e., duodenal atresia. Note the absence of any air lucencies in the abdomen.

Image B: Prenatal US (for another patient) shows the typical double bubble sign of duodenal atresia that was associated with polyhydramnios in this patient.

Final diagnosis: Duodenal atresia.

Case 69



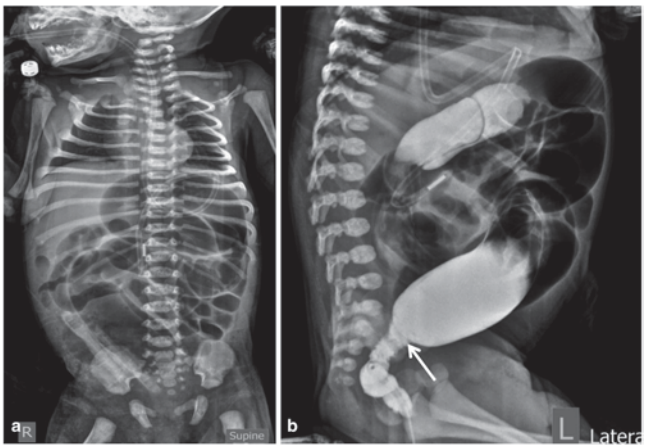
A 2-day-old boy had delayed passage of meconium.

Radiological findings: Image A: Plain X-ray of the abdomen shows multiple, dilated and distended bowel loops denoting distal bowel obstruction. **Images B** and **C**: Lower GI contrast study shows small caliber of the colon (i.e., small unused colon) with easy reflux of the contrast into the ileum.

Final diagnosis: Distal small-bowel obstruction due to jejuno-ileal atresia.

DD: Jejuno-ileal atresia, meconium ileus syndrome (will show other signs including retained meconium in the bowel and intra-abdominal calcifications) and total aganglionosis of the colon (Hirschsprung's disease).

Case 70

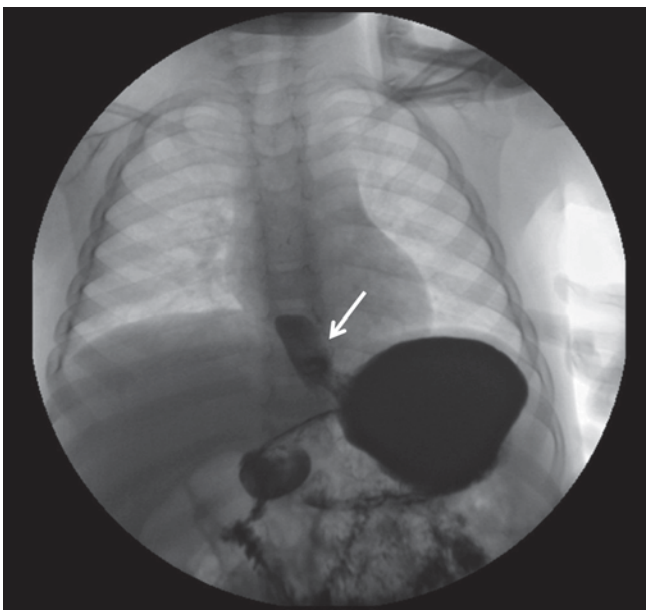


A 4-day-old boy had delayed passage of meconium and abdominal distension.

Radiological findings: Image A: Plain X-ray of the abdomen shows multiple, dilated and distended bowel loops denoting distal bowel obstruction. **Images B**: Lower GI contrast study shows small caliber of the distal bowel (rectum) in relation to the sigmoid colon with a funnel-shaped transitional zone seen in between (arrow).

Final diagnosis: Hirschsprung's disease with a transitional zone at the recto-sigmoid junction.

Case 71

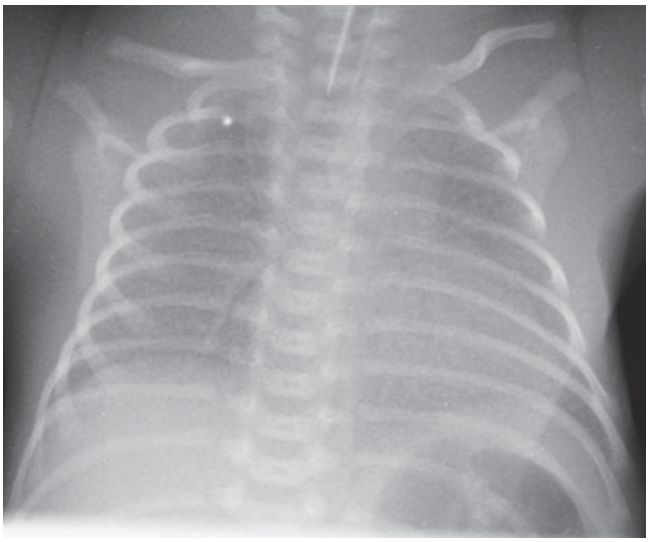


A 2-year-old girl had recurrent vomiting.

Radiological findings: Fluoroscopic guided upper GI contrast study showed reflux of the contrast into the lower esophagus (arrow).

Final diagnosis: Gastro-esophageal reflux.

Case 72



A female was born at 32 weeks gestation, presents with respiratory distress and desaturation.

Radiological findings: Chest X-ray shows low lung volumes with diffused granular shadows on both sides.

Final diagnosis: Neonatal respiratory distress syndrome (surfactant deficiency disease).

The Last Minute Review

Osama Naga, Kuk-Wha Lee, Jason T. Lerner, Ivet Hartonian, Rujuta R. Bhatt, Joseph Mahgerefteh, Daphne T. Hsu, Beatrice Goilav, Sitratullah Olawunmi Kukoyi-Maiyegun, Arlynn F. Mulne, Vijay Tonk and Amr Abdelgawad

Allergic and Immunologic Disorders

Last Minute Review—Allergic and Immunologic Disorders	Answer (most likely)
Primary defense against exogenous antigens	CD4+ T cells
Cytotoxic cells against viruses and neoplastic cells	CD8+ T cells
A child received penicillin 10 days ago for the first time, presents with fever, nausea, vomiting, pruritic skin rash, urticaria, angioedema, joint pain, lymphadenopathy, myalgia, and proteinuria	Serum sickness

O. Naga (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, Texas Tech University Health Science Center—Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: osama.naga@ttuhsc.edu

K.-W. Lee
Department of Pediatrics, Division of Endocrinology, Mattel Children's Hospital at UCLA, 90095 Los Angeles, 10833 Le Conte Avenue, MDCC 22-315CA, USA
e-mail: kukwhalee@mednet.ucla.edu

J. T. Lerner · R. R. Bhatt
Department of Pediatric Neurology, Mattel Children's Hospital at UCLA, 10833 Le Conte, 22-474 MDCC, Los Angeles, CA 90095, USA
e-mail: jlerner@mednet.ucla.edu

R. R. Bhatt
e-mail: RBhatt@mednet.ucla.edu

I. Hartonian
Department of Pediatrics, White Memorial Pediatric Medical Group, 1701 East Cesar E. Chavez Ave, Suite 456, Los Angeles, CA 90033, USA
e-mail: ivethartonian@gmail.com

J. Mahgerefteh
Department of Pediatrics, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Children's Hospital at Montefiore, 3415 Bainbridge Avenue, Bronx, NY 10467, USA
e-mail: jmahgere@montefiore.org

D. T. Hsu
Department of Pediatric Cardiology, Pediatric Heart Center, Department of Pediatrics, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Children's Hospital at Montefiore, 3415 Bainbridge Avenue, Bronx, NY 10467, USA
e-mail: dhsu@montefiore.org

B. Goilav
Department of Pediatric Nephrology, Children's Hospital at Montefiore, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, 111 East 210th Street, Bronx, NY 10467, USA
e-mail: bgoilav@montefiore.org

S. O. Kukoyi-Maiyegun
Department of Pediatrics, Paul L. Foster School of Medicine , Texas Tech University Health Science Center, 4800 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: Sitratullah.maiyegun@ttuhsc.edu

A. F. Mulne
Department of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, Texas Tech University Health Science Center, Paul L. Foster School of Medicine, El Paso Children's Hospital, 4845 Alameda Avenue, 7th Floor, El Paso, TX 79905, USA
e-mail: lynne.mulne@ttuhsc.edu

V. Tonk
Departments of Pediatrics and Clinical Genetics, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 3601 4th Street, Stop 9407, Lubbock, TX 79430, USA
e-mail: vijay.tonk@ttuhsc.edu

A. Abdelgawad
Associate Professor of Orthopedic Surgery, Department of Orthopaedic Surgery & Rehabilitation, Texas Tech University Health Sciences Center, 4801 Alberta Avenue, El Paso, TX 79905, USA

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6_27,

Last Minute Review—Allergic and Immunologic Disorders	Answer (most likely)
A common trigger of allergic reactions in a patient with spina bifida or congenital urogenital problems	Latex
Antibody that has a major role in allergic conditions, e.g., anaphylaxis, atopy, asthma, allergic rhinitis, food allergies	IgE
Antibody that mediates Type I hypersensitivity reaction	IgE
First antibody produced in an infection	IgM
Antibody found in body mucosal secretions	IgA
Sudden onset of lip swelling, abdominal pain, swelling of both feet, non pruritic erythematous skin rash, one family member have the same condition	Hereditary angioedema
What is the cause of hereditary angioedema?	Low levels of plasma protein C1 inhibitor (C1-INH). (Autosomal dominant)
Initial screening test for patient with suspected hereditary angioedema	C4 level
The test that can differentiate between various types of hereditary angioedema	C1-INH functional assay
Patient with recurrent meningococcal meningitis	Terminal complement C5-C9 deficiency
Initial screening test for a patient with suspected complement deficiency, e.g., recurrent (*Neisseria meningitidis)* meningitis	(CH_{50}) test
Complement deficiency that increases the risk of systemic lupus erythematosus	C2 deficiency
A 4-year-old boy with recurrent skin abscesses, spleen and liver abscesses, and osteomyelitis	Chronic granulomatous disease (X-linked)
Test of choice in a patient with suspected chronic granulomatous disease?	DHR oxidation is preferred, NBT reduction can be used
An 8-year old boy presents with eczema, recurrent *Staphylococcus aureus* skin infections without inflammatory response "cold abscess," pneumatoceles, coarse facial feature, eosinophilia, IgE level is 80,000 IU	Job syndrome (hyper-IgE syndrome)
Highly elevated white blood count in a 10-weeks-old infant who still has an umbilical cord	Leukocyte adhesion defect type I
Test of choice in a patient with suspected leukocyte adhesion defect	Flow cytometry beta 2 integrin CD11b/CD18 on leukocytes
Newborn with hypocalcemia, tetralogy of Fallot, interrupted aortic arch, and abnormal facial features	DiGeorge anomaly (Deletion of chromosome 22q11.2)
An 8-week-old boy presents with diarrhea, pneumonia, persistent oral thrush, eczematous-like skin lesions, sepsis, lymphopenia, and failure to thrive	Severe combined immunodeficiency
Recurrent ear infections, eczema, profuse bleeding during circumcision procedure, thrombocytopenia, and small platelets	Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome
A 5-month-old presents with *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia, mouth ulcers, severe neutropenia, recurrent sinusitis, and otitis media, chronic diarrhea, failure to thrive, negative HIV	X-linked hyper IgM syndrome
Severe progressive infectious mononucleosis and Epstein–Barr virus (EBV) fulminant hepatitis	X-linked lymphoproliferative syndrome (Duncan syndrome)
A 9-month-old boy, previously healthy, presents with recurrent otitis media, two episodes of pneumonia in the last 2 months, persistent giardiasis. On examination, the lymph nodes, the tonsils are absent	X-linked agammaglobulinemia (Usually starts after first 6 months of life)
Persistent thrush, nail dystrophy, endocrinopathies	Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis
Short stature, fine hair, severe *Varicella* infection	Cartilage hair hypoplasia with short limbed dwarfism
Oculocutaneous albinism, recurrent infection	Chédiak–Higashi syndrome
Adolescent presents with recurrent sinus and pulmonary infections due to encapsulated bacteria, malabsorption, hepatosplenomegaly, and low level of immunoglobulins (IgG, IgM, and IgA)	Common variable immunodeficiency

Last Minute Review—Allergic and Immunologic Disorders	Answer (most likely)
Candidiasis with raw egg ingestion	Biotin-dependent carboxylases deficiency
The best treatment for a child with asymptomatic transient hypogammaglobulinemia of infancy	Observation (no treatment is necessary)
Induration reaction to TB testing after 72 h is an example of	Type IV: cell-mediated hypersensitivity
A 4-year-old with short stature, micrognathia, telangiectasia, immunodeficiency, learning disability, deficiency of DNA ligase I	Bloom syndrome
An 8-year-old boy presents with recurrent ear and sinus infections, ataxia, oculocutaneous telangiectasia, elevated α1-fetoprotein	Ataxia-telangiectasia (autosomal recessive)

Adolescent Medicine

Last Minute Review—Adolescent Medicine	Answers (most likely)
A 16-year-old presents with conjunctival injection, gynecomastia, worsening school grades	Marijuana
Adolescent, drowsiness, dry mouth, flushing, mydriasis, hallucination, delusions, illusions, and body image distortion	Lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD) toxicity
Adolescent, recent schizophrenic thoughts, depression, aggressive language, ataxia, and nystagmus	Phencyclidine (PCP) toxicity
Adolescent who lost his financial support presents with excessive yawning, tearing, dilated pupil, insomnia, nausea, diarrhea, goose flesh, and cramping	Opiate withdrawal syndrome
Adolescent male inhales toluene, xylene presents with chest pain and loss of consciousness	Myocardial infarction/cardiac arrhythmia
A 14-year-old presents with euphoria, violent excitement, pulmonary hypertension, restrictive lung defect, peripheral neuropathy, rhabdomyolysis, and hematuria	Gasoline inhalation
Adolescent always absent from school presents with chest pain and myocardial infarction	Cocaine abuse
Which drug abuse is associated with hypertension, hyperthermia, and seizures?	Amphetamines
Which drug abuse is associated with euphoria, pinpoint pupil, and respiratory depression?	Opiates
Adolescent with aggressive behavior, rage, anger, acne, hirsutism, testicular atrophy, gynecomastia, and libido alteration	Anabolic steroids
Adolescent presents with euphoria, increased emotional energy, nausea, jaw clenching, teeth grinding, blurred vision, anxiety, and psychosis	MDMA (Ecstasy, methylenedioxymethamphetamine)
The most common reason for hospitalization in adolescents	Pregnancy
17-year-old female is hospitalized for pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) and has severe allergy to cephalosporin. What is the best choice of antibiotics?	Clindamycin and gentamicin
Adolescent with profuse, frothy, malodorous yellow-green vaginal discharge, vulvular irritation, and strawberry cervix	*Trichomonas vaginalis* infection
Adolescent with fishy odor, homogenous white vaginal discharge, epithelial cells with ragged border on microscopic examination, vaginal pH >4.5	Bacterial vaginosis
The most common cause of epididymitis in adolescents	*Chlamydia trachomatis*
Sexually active female presents with right upper abdominal pain, fever, and vaginal discharge	Perihepatitis (Fitz-Hugh-Curtis syndrome)
Annual screening is indicated for sexually active females for which STD?	*Chlamydia trachomatis*
Adolescent male presents with severe dysuria, profuse, purulent discharge	Gonococcal urethritis
Adolescent male, sexually active, urethral discharge, gram stain shows white blood cells (WBCs) and no organism	*Chlamydia trachomatis*

Last Minute Review—Adolescent Medicine	Answers (most likely)
Adolescent female with lower abdominal pain, fever, chills, dysuria, cervical motion tenderness, and adnexal tenderness	Pelvic inflammatory disease
Sexually active adolescent, with a large painless, and expanding suppurative ulcers that are beefy and easily bleed on the coronal sulcus and balanopreputial region	Granuloma inguinale (caused by *Klebsiella granulomatis*)
Sexually active with painful genital ulcer and unilateral inguinal lymphadenopathy	Chancroid (*Haemophilus ducreyi*)
Sexually active with painless ulcer on the dorsal penis, punched out, clean appearing, sharp, firm, slightly elevated borders, and bilateral regional lymphadenopathy	Chancre (primary syphilis)
Pregnant adolescent with secondary syphilis, has anaphylaxis to penicillin. What is the drug of choice?	Penicillin (desensitization)
Adolescent female, sexually active presents with painful, itchy vascular lesion on the vulvular area, low-grade fever, cervical motion tenderness, thin, white vaginal discharge	Herpes simplex infection
Two adolescents are ready to give birth; one has an active herpes genital lesion and the other has a genital wart. Which one should deliver by C-section?	Herpes simplex (genital wart is not an indication of C-section)
Number one cause of mortality in adolescents	Motor vehicle accidents
First sign of sexual development in girls	Breast development
First sign of sexual development in boys	Testicular enlargement and thinning of scrotal skin
A 15-year-old boy presents with a painless, solid, firm, irregular mass in the left testicle	Testicular cancer until proven otherwise
A 12-year-old boy presents with sudden onset of testicular pain, vomiting, the right testicle is swollen, tender, absent cremasteric reflex	Testicular torsion
Patient presents with testicular torsion	Immediate urology consult (testicular US should not delay the consultation)
A 12-year-old boy presents with pain, tenderness, and swelling in the upper pole of the right testicle. On examination a bluish dot is visible through the scrotum	Torsion of the testicular appendage
A 12-year-old boy with presents with soft nontender fullness within the left hemiscrotum, homogenous glow without internal shadows on transillumination, testes are palpable posteriorly	Hydrocele
An 18-year-old male presents with left-sided mass that feels like a bag of worms, the left testicle is smaller than normal, the mass increases in size with valsalva maneuver	Varicocele
Adolescent male with right breast enlargement which is tender to touch, <4 cm in size, and concerns the family. What should you give the family?	Reassurance, most case of pubertal gynecomastia <4 cm resolve within 3 years
When does a girl usually get her first period?	2–3 years after breast development (12.5 years is mean age)
The drug of choice for treatment of dysmenorrhea in adolescents females	NSAID (cyclooxygenase inhibitors)
Most common cause of secondary amenorrhea in adolescents	Pregnancy
Adolescent with amenorrhea, headaches, blurring of vision, galactorrhea	Prolactinoma is the most likely cause
Most common cause of mastitis in adolescent girls	*Staphylococcus aureus*
Most common cause of breast mass in adolescent girls	Fibroadenoma
The percentile of body mass index (BMI) that is considered obese	≥95th percentile

Cardiovascular Disorders

Last Minute Review—Cardiovascular Disorders	Answers (most likely)
Infant of diabetic mother presents with cyanosis of fingers and hands, and normal color of the lower extremities	Transposition of great vessels (most likely)
Most common cause of cyanotic heart disease presents a few days after birth	Complete (d) transposition of the great arteries
Newborn presents with cyanosis in the lower extremities, tachycardia, respiratory distress, and loud single S2 sound	Persistent pulmonary hypertension
Newborn with cyanosis, pulse oximetry changed from 60% to 64% only on 100% oxygen	Cardiac (most likely)
Newborn with cyanosis, pulse oximetry changed from 60% to 88% on 100% O_2	Pulmonary (most likely)
During the first 48 hours of life a newborn rapidly develop cyanosis, tachypnea, respiratory distress, pallor, lethargy, metabolic acidosis, oliguria, weak pulses in all extremities, hepatosplenomegaly and no murmur	Hypoplastic left heart
A 2-week-old boy develops congestive heart failure, severe metabolic acidosis, and poor perfusion of the lower extremities	Coarctation of aorta
A 12-year-old presents with hypertension, occasional headache and leg cramps, weak and delayed femoral pulse, and blood pressure in the upper limb is higher than the lower limb, chest X-ray (CXR) shows rib notching, irregularities and scalloping on the undersurface of posterior ribs	Coarctation of aorta
Newborn presents with shock, the echocardiogram showed coarctation of aorta. What is the drug of choice?	Prostaglandin E1
A girl with Turner syndrome presents with hypertension, weak and delayed femoral pulse	Coarctation of aorta
Newborn presents with cyanosis, mother was on a medicine for severe bipolar disorder, CXR shows cardiomegaly and right atrial enlargement	Ebstein anomaly
Newborn presents with severe cyanosis, systolic ejection murmur, and a single second heart sound	Severe pulmonary stenosis
Newborn baby presents with a soft, harsh systolic ejection murmur, best heard at the axillae, and precordium and no symptoms	Peripheral pulmonary stenosis (PPS)
Most common cardiac lesion associated with Down syndrome	Endocardial cushion
Most common cardiac lesion associated with Turner syndrome	Bicuspid aortic valve
Most common cardiac lesion associated with Williams syndrome	Supravalvar aortic stenosis
Most common cardiac lesion associated with Alagille syndrome	Pulmonary stenosis
Most common cardiac lesion associated with Noonan syndrome	Pulmonary stenosis
Most common cardiac lesion associated with DiGeorge syndrome	Tetralogy of fallot
Most common cardiac lesion associated with Holt–Oram syndrome	Atrial septal defect (ASD)
Most common cardiac lesion associated with TAR syndrome	Tetralogy of fallot
Most common cardiac lesion associated with lithium teratogen	Ebstein anomaly
Most common cardiac lesion associated with supraventricular tachycardia	Ebstein anomaly
Most common cardiac lesion associated with trisomy 18	Ventricular septal defect (VSD)
Most common cardiac lesion associated with infant of diabetic mother	Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy with outflow tract obstruction
Most common cardiac lesion associated with tuberous sclerosis	Cardiac rhabdomyoma
Most common valvular lesion associated with acute rheumatic fever	Mitral regurgitation
The most common cardiac lesion associated with Marfan syndrome	Aortic dissection
Syndrome that is associated with true interrupted aortic arch	DiGeorge syndrome
Adolescent routine physical exam, apical mid-systolic non ejection click and late systolic murmur, the murmur is louder when goes from a supine to a standing position, and the murmur become softer when squatting	Mitral valve prolapse

Last Minute Review—Cardiovascular Disorders	Answers (most likely)
A child routine physical exam, ejection systolic murmur with a vibratory character, best heard in the lower sternal border towards the apex	Still's murmur
A 6-year-old with systolic-diastolic murmur, low-pitched sound, best heard in the infraclavicular region, disappears when supine and with gentle pressure on the jugular vein	Venous hum
Aortic stenosis, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, mitral regurgitation, and hypertension are associated with which extra-heart sound in children? S3 or S4?	S4 (S4 is always abnormal in children)
While brushing teeth, a 15-year-old girl develops cold sweats, pallor, and palpitations and loses consciousness for 10 s	Vasovagal syncope
A 15-year-old girl faints while running and has a positive family history of deafness and sudden death	Long QT syndrome
Newborn fails hearing screen, electrocardiogram (EKG) shows a very prolonged QT interval	Jervell and Lange-Nielsen syndrome
A 5-year-old, heart rate is 230 beats/min, chest discomfort, the heart rate decreases to 80 beats/min after ice is applied to the face	Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT)
What is the definitive treatment for SVT?	Radiofrequency ablation
A child presents with a history of intermittent tachycardia, EKG shows short PR interval, slurred and slow rise of the initial upstroke of QRS (delta wave), widened QRS complex	Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome (WPW)
A child presents with chest pain, fever, friction rub, EKG shows diffuse ST segment elevation, had URI 10 days before	Pericarditis
Adolescent diagnosed with influenza presents with fever, tachycardia, edema, and gallop, CXR shows pulmonary edema, cardiomegaly, low-voltage EKG	Myocarditis
An athlete presents with dyspnea while playing, systolic ejection crescendo-decrescendo murmur best heard at the apex and left sternal border, and radiates to the suprasternal notch, murmur is louder while standing and with Valsalva maneuver	Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
EKG in 12-day-old shows negative T wave in V6	Left ventricular hypertrophy
A 15-year-old boy with history of recurrent chest pain during exercise faints and dies while playing basketball, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy ruled out as a cause of death	Anomalous of left coronary artery is most likely
Had repaired VSD with synthetic patch 3 months ago and going in for dental work	Antibiotic prophylaxis
Had repaired ASD with synthetic patch 7 months ago and going in for dental work	No antibiotic prophylaxis
A child with prosthetic mitral valve going for surgery	Antibiotic prophylaxis
A child with mitral regurgitation, and VSD and going in for dental work	No antibiotic prophylaxis
A child with tetralogy of fallot and going in for dental work	Antibiotic prophylaxis
A child with previous history of endocarditis	Antibiotic prophylaxis
Tall, peaked T waves in precordial leads indicates:	Hyperkalemia
An infant of diabetic mother presents few hours after birth with jitteriness, hypoglycemia, cyanosis, EKG shows prolonged QT interval	Hypocalcemia
EKG shows sinus tachycardia, widened QRS complex with interval greater than 100 ms, in a child who presents with altered mental status after accidentally ingested the grandmother's medication	Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) toxicity
EKG shows normal PR intervals and periodic drop in QRS	Mobitz II or Type II second degree AV block
EKG shows progressive prolongation of PR interval followed by a drop in QRS	Mobitz I or Type I second degree AV block

Skin Disorders

Last Minute Review—Skin Disorders	Answers (most likely)
Well-defined erythematous rash on the knees and elbows, covered with silvery scales, bleeds when removed, separation and pitting in the nails	Psoriasis
A child with ulcerative colitis presents with bright red, painful and warm to touch nodules on the anterior leg	Erythema nodosum
Erythematous, vesiculobullous, dry and scaly lesions in periorificial and acral areas	Acrodermatitis enteropathica (zinc deficiency)
Obese adolescent female presents with red, well-defined rash in the axilla and under the breast (intertriginous areas)	Erythrasma
What is the most common cause of erythrasma?	*Corynebacterium minutissimum*
Patient taking TMP-SMX for UTI prophylaxis presents with target lesions, raised edematous papules, distributed acrally, and hemorrhagic crusting lips	Erythema multiforme
A child is taking penicillin for dental abscess, developed macules, papules, vesicles, bullae, and ulcerations on 8% of the body surface area, soughing, blistering, ulceration, necrosis around the lips, eyes, and genitalia are also present	Stevens–Johnson syndrome
The most common virus that triggers erythema multiforme minor	Herpesvirus
The most common drug that triggers erythema multiforme	Sulfa drugs (30%)
The most common bacteria that triggers erythema multiforme	*Mycoplasma pneumoniae*
Atopic dermatitis and hypopigmented area on the cheeks	Pityriasis alba
Adolescent boy presents with hypopigmented scaly lesions on the neck, chest, and back that become worse on sun exposure	Tinea versicolor
What is the cause of tinea versicolor?	*Malassezia furfur*
Pegged teeth, absence of sweat, frequent fever, prominent ears, small chin, and frontal bossing	Hypohidrotic ectodermal dysplasia
Female, delayed eruption of teeth, blistering of the skin, blaschkoid hyperpigmentation, and atrophic hairless lesions	Incontinentia pigmenti (X-linked dominant)
Scaling all over the body except the palms and soles, dirty looking face, cryptorchidism, corneal opacities	X-linked recessive ichthyosis
Extremities are covered with small, fine, irregular, polygonal scales, scaly thickened palms and soles, worse in the winter and dry weather, other family member has the same condition	Ichthyosis vulgaris
Eczematous rash in the antecubital fossa, and popliteal fossa, older brother has asthma	Atopic dermatitis
Unilateral, irregular, bluish grey discoloration in the periorbital area and sclera	Nevus of Ota
Recently diagnosed with Nevus of Ota	High risk of melanoma, ocular melanoma, and glaucoma
Recently diagnosed with a very large congenital melanocytic nevus	High risk of melanoma or skin cancer
Facial port-wine stain on the face, seizure, and glaucoma	Sturge–Weber syndrome
Nevus flammeus (port-wine stain), venous and lymphatic malformations, soft tissue hypertrophy of the affected limb; varicose veins, vascular malformations, and heart failure	Klippel–Trenaunay syndrome
*P*osterior cranial fossa malformations (Dandy-walker), facial *H*emangiomas, *A*rterial anomalies, *C*ardiac defects (e.g., coarctation of aorta), *E*ye abnormalities and sternal malformation or stenotic arterial diseases	PHACE syndrome
Large hemangioma on the upper eyelid with ptosis can cause	Amblyopia, astigmatism, refractive errors, and occasionally blindness
Pustules of erythema toxicum contain:	Eosinophils

Last Minute Review—Skin Disorders	Answers (most likely)
Pustules of transient neonatal pustular melanosis contain:	Neutrophils
Newborn with white papules on the hard palate	Epstein pearls
Newborn with pinhead white papules on the face	Milia
Newborn present with smooth white bumps (pearly papules) on the upper gums	Bohn's nodules (disappear with time)
A 2-week-old infant presents with small papules and pustules on the forehead, nose and cheeks, absence of comedones, older brother had the same and disappeared with no scarring at 3 months of age without treatment	Neonatal acne
Adolescent with oval, a slightly pruritic papulosquamous rash, with the long axis of the rash parallel to skin folds	Pityriasis rosea
Absent skin on the scalp area, trisomy 13	Cutis aplasia
Ringworm like lesion on the arm, no scales, not responding to topical antifungal	Granuloma annulare (self limited)

Endocrine Disorders

Last Minute Review—Endocrine Disorders	Answers (most likely)
Slow growth rate in the first 2 years of life (< third percentile), growth velocity afterwards is 5.5 cm/year, delayed bone age, delayed puberty, father was a late bloomer	Constitutional growth delay
Short child, growth velocity is 5 cm/year, bone age is consistent with chronological age, father and mother are short	Genetic/familial short stature
A 4-year-old, height < 3rd percentile, growth velocity is less than 5 cm/year, microphallus	Growth hormone deficiency
Common hormone deficiency associated with: central incisors, septo-optic dysplasia, cleft lip, cleft palate, and microphallus	Growth hormone deficiency
Pseudotumor cerebri, slipped capital femoral epiphysis and gynecomastia are possible side effect of which hormonal therapy	Growth hormone
A 7-year-old boy with progressive headache, vomiting without nausea, bitemporal hemianopsia, short stature, weight gain, and fatigue	Craniopharyngioma
A 7-year-old boy, at birth was large for gestational age, macrocephaly, rapid growth rate in the first 3 years of life; now presenting with cognitive deficiency, autistic behavior, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), large and protruded head, large hands and feet, hypotonia, clumsiness, advanced bone age	Cerebral gigantism (Soto syndrome)
Boy with hypoplasia of optic nerves, nystagmus, absence of septum pellucidum, schizencephaly, seizures, hypopituitarism, presented with hypoglycemia, jaundice, and micropenis at birth	Septo-Optic dysplasia (De Morsier syndrome)
A 17-year-old female, amenorrhea, headache, galactorrhea, visual field defect, pregnancy test is negative, serum prolactin is > 200 mg/dL. MRI showed a pituitary mass of 15 mm with encroachment on optic chiasm	Prolactinoma (Macroadenoma)
A 17-year-old boy, no signs of puberty, penis and testicles are pre-pubertal, and anosmia	Kallmann syndrome (Hypogonadotropic hypogonadism)
A 17-year-old male presents for well visit, he has academic difficulty, gynecomastia, small firm testicles (<10 mL). He is tall with disproportionately long legs and arms	Klinefelter syndrome 47, XXY karyotype
A 16-year-old female, short stature (< third percentile), no breast development, amenorrhea, low hairline, shield-shaped chest, spooning of her fingernails, cubitus valgus, and sensorineural hearing loss	Turner syndrome; 45, X karyotype

Last Minute Review—Endocrine Disorders	Answers (most likely)
The most common cardiac defect associated with Turner syndrome	Bicuspid aortic valve
Newborn girl had cystic hygroma on fetal ultrasound, lymphedema of the feet, webbed neck, heart murmur, and horseshoe kidney	Turner syndrome; 45, X karyotype
A 5-year-old male, lymphedema of the feet at birth, short stature, webbed neck, strabismus, hearing loss, joint laxity, pulmonary stenosis, intellectual disability (ID), normal karyotype	Noonan syndrome (mutations in the RAS-MAPK pathway)
High school girl, tall, poor academic performance, muscle weakness, behavioral and emotional difficulties	Triple X syndrome 47,XXX karyotype
Ambiguous genitalia, nephropathy, Wilms tumor, renal failure by 3 years of age	Denys–Drash syndrome
Female phenotype at birth with undifferentiated streak gonads, presence of vagina/fallopian tubes, at puberty no breast development/menstruation, development of gonadoblastoma is the highest risk	Swyer syndrome (XY pure gonadal dysgenesis)
Newborn with small penis, bifid scrotum, urogenital sinus, blind vaginal pouch, testes are in inguinal canal, raised as a female, virilization occurs at the time of puberty, enlargement of penis and scrotum, sperm formation, and normal adult height	5-alpha reductase deficiency (autosomal recessive)
Infant phenotypically female at birth, raised as female, vagina ends in a blind pouch, no uterus, no fallopian tubes, intra-abdominal testes, normal breast development, no menses, no sexual hair, normal male adult height, testosterone level is normal	Androgen insensitivity syndrome; 46, XY (X-linked disorder)
The most common cause of congenital hypothyroidism	Thyroid dysgenesis
Low free T4, elevated thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)	Primary hypothyroidism
Low free T4, normal or low TSH	Central hypothyroidism
High free T4 and T3, low TSH	Hyperthyroidism (most common)
Normal or low free T4, high T3, low TSH	Hyperthyroidism (less common)
Normal T4, low T3, normal TSH, the patient has pneumonia	Euthyroid sick syndrome
Low total T4, normal free T4, normal TSH	TBG (Thyroxine-binding globulin deficiency), hypoproteinemia, e.g., malnutrition and nephrotic syndrome
Adolescent with thyroid enlargement, no symptoms, TSH and free T4 are within reference range, positive anti-thyroid peroxidase (TPO)	Hashimoto thyroiditis
What is the best test to confirm the diagnosis of Graves disease?	Thyrotropin receptor-simulating immunoglobulin (TSI)
The most common symptom of hyperthyroidism or Graves disease	Weakness
The most common side effect of antithyroid drugs, (e.g., methimazole)	Transient urticarial rash
The best diagnostic test for solitary thyroid nodule	Fine needle aspiration biopsy; US guided
The most common thyroid cancer in pediatric patients	Well differentiated thyroid (follicular/papillary) carcinoma
Medullary thyroid cancer, hyperparathyroidism, pheochromocytoma	MEN-2A
Medullary thyroid cancer, pheochromocytoma, mucosal neuroma	MEN-2B
Calcitonin is elevated in which type of thyroid cancer?	Medullary thyroid cancer
Low to normal serum Ca, low serum phosphate, high alkaline phosphatase, low 25-(OH) vitamin D, high parathyroid hormone (PTH)	Vitamin D deficiency “Rickets”
Normal serum Ca, low serum phosphate, very high alkaline phosphatase, normal vitamin D, failure to thrive, hypotonia, delayed dentition	Hypophosphatemic rickets or X-linked hypophosphatemic rickets
What is the mode of inheritance of hypophosphatemic rickets?	X-linked dominant
High serum PTH, low serum Ca, high phosphate, short stature, stocky habitus, soft tissue calcifications/ossifications, short fourth and fifth metacarpal bones	Albright hereditary osteodystrophy (Pseudohypoparathyroidism type 1A)
Normal serum Ca, low serum phosphate, very high alkaline phosphatase, non anion gap metabolic acidosis, developmental delay, cataracts, glaucoma	Oculocerebrorenal dystrophy. (Lowe syndrome)

Last Minute Review—Endocrine Disorders	Answers (most likely)
A 7-year-old with obesity, hyperphagia, small hands and feet, small penis, cryptorchidism, and cognitive deficiency	Prader–Willi syndrome
What is the chromosomal deletion of Prader–Willi syndrome?	Paternal chromosome 15q11-q13 deletion
Obesity, retinitis pigmentosa, hypogonadism, intellectual disability (ID)	Bardet–Biedl syndrome or Laurence–Moon–Biedl syndrome
Adolescent female, obesity, acanthosis nigricans, HBA1c 6.9%, elevated testosterone and luteinizing hormone (LH), hirsutism, no ovarian cysts noticed on ultrasonography (US)	Polycystic ovary syndrome
Failure to thrive, microcephaly, intellectual disability (ID), ptosis, strabismus, syndactyly, pyloric stenosis, and low-plasma cholesterol	Smith–Lemli–Opitz syndrome (autosomal recessive)
Polydipsia, hypernatremia, serum osmolarity >300 mOSm/kg, urine osmolarity <300 mOSm/kg	Diabetes insipidus (DI)
Patient with meningitis on IVF, serum sodium (Na) 122 meq/L, serum osmolarity 270 mOSm/kg, and high urine osmolarity	Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion (SIADH)
What is the best initial treatment for the patient with SIADH in the previous example?	Reduce IVF rate (fluid restriction)
Patient underwent a neurosurgery for a brain tumor, develops hyponatremia, high urine output, hypovolemic, high urine Na	Cerebral salt wasting
Patient with diabetes insipidus come in for water deprivation test, after administration of DDAVP (desmopressin) the urine become concentrated	Central diabetes insipidus
Patient with diabetes insipidus come in for water deprivation test, after administration of DDAVP, there is no effect on urine concentration	Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus
The height acceleration peak in girls is at which sexual maturation rating (SMR) stage?	Between stage 2 and 3 SMR
The height acceleration peak in boys is at which SMR stage?	Between stage 4 and 5 SMR
How many years after breast development does menarche start?	2.5 years (approximately)
A 5-year-old boy complaining of headaches in the past few months, penis/testicles are large for age, bone age is advanced	Central precocious puberty
A 4-year-old girl with rapid breast development, large brown birthmark, and recent arm pain of unknown source	McCune–Albright syndrome
A 5-year-old female, pubic hair, adult odor, no breast development, bone age is equal to chronological age, slightly increased dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) level, normal growth pattern for age	Premature adrenarche
What is the treatment for a patient with congenital adrenal hyperplasia who presents with vomiting and low blood pressure?	IV hydrocortisone and IV fluid hydration
A child with obesity, height is <3rd percentile, blood pressure is >95th percentile for age	Cushing syndrome
A child with Type 1 diabetes mellitus, well controlled, suddenly develop hypotension and shock	Addison disease
A child with Type 1 diabetes mellitus with recurrent abdominal pain for 3 months. What is the best screening test?	Celiac panel
Best initial treatment for a patient with ketoacidosis within the first hour	IV hydration
The most common cause of death in children who have type 1 diabetes	Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA)
The most common cause of death related to DKA in children	Cerebral edema
A 2-week-old male with failure to thrive, persistent vomiting, dehydration, acidosis	CAH 21-OH deficiency
A 3-day-old baby, 10 lbs at birth, jittery	Infant of diabetic mother with hypocalcemia
A 5-day-old baby, small jaw, broad nose, tetralogy of fallot, seizure	DiGeorge/VCF
A 3-month-old male with elfin facies, supravalvular aortic stenosis, now with serum Ca of 12.2	Williams syndrome
A 4-day-old male with hypoglycemia, omphalocele, hemihypertrophy	Beckwith–Wiedemann syndrome

Last Minute Review—Endocrine Disorders	Answers (most likely)
A 10 lbs plethoric neonate, requiring 15 mg/kg/min dextrose infusion. Mother without gestational diabetes mellitus (DM)	Congenital hyperinsulinism
An 18-month-old thin boy with mild fever overnight, presents with loss of consciousness and hypoglycemia	Ketotic hypoglycemia (diagnosis of exclusion)
A 5-day-old male with small phallus, jaundice, now with glucose of 45 mg/dl and ketones in urine after 4 h of fasting	Hypopituitarism (Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), growth hormone (GH) deficiency)
A 6-year-old with nighttime headaches, height is falling from 25th percentile to 5th percentile over 1 year. Enuresis	Intracranial tumor in region of pituitary
An 18-month-male, length and weight "stalled" since 9 months. Stools remarkably odorous	Celiac/malabsorption
An 11-year-old female with no growth for 2 years, tired, constipated and "yellowish" skin	Hypothyroidism (likely Hashimoto's)
A 2-year-old female with bilateral breast buds, unchanged for 1 year, no growth acceleration	Benign premature thelarche
A 4-year-old female with new onset bilateral breast enlargement	Central precocious puberty is very likely
A 5-year-old girl with pubic hair, mild hyperpigmentation of skin folds, slightly enlarged clitoris	Simple virilizing CAH-21 OH deficiency
A 14-year-old girl, school troubles, getting in fights, appears to be "on drugs" because of red bulgy eyes and irritability	Graves hyperthyroidism

Emergency Care

Last Minute Review—Emergency Care	Answer (most likely)
Effect of clonidine, cholinergic, opiates, organophosphates, phencyclidine, phenothiazine, pilocarpine, and barbiturates (sedatives) on the pupil	Miosis
Effect of atropine, antihistamines, antidepressants, amphetamine, and cocaine on the pupil	Mydriasis
Seizures, hyperthermia, agitation, decreased urine output, decreased sweating, flushing, and mydriasis; ingestion of which agents may cause these symptoms?	Anticholinergic agents, (e.g., amitriptyline, diphenhydramine, jimson weed, or deadly nightshade)
Ingestion of which agent can cause pinpoint pupil, unresponsiveness, and respiratory depression?	Opiate intoxication
A child presents with neck spasms, oculogyric crisis, and tongue thrusting after accidentally ingested medicine for vomiting called promethazine. What is the drug of choice to treat these symptoms?	Diphenhydramine
A child ingested a large amount of his grandfather medicine presents with hyperventilation, metabolic acidosis, high-anion gap, tinnitus, and confusion. What did he ingest?	Aspirin
A healthy child presents with altered mental status, seizure, drowsiness and lethargy, sinus tachycardia, widened QRS, prolonged QT interval	Tricyclic antidepressants (TCA) toxicity
Furnace was on at home in the cold winter, all family members presenting with headaches, nausea, flushed skin, and flu-like symptoms	Carbon monoxide poisoning
A child presents with nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain 6 h after accidental ingestion of pills, felt better for a short period and 24 h later presented with metabolic acidosis, shock, hepatic failure, 6 weeks later developed pyloric and gastrointestinal scarring. What is the most likely ingested substance?	Iron
After accidental ingestion of acetaminophen, the child reached the toxic level 4 h after ingestion. What is the antidote?	N-acetylcysteine (NAC)

Last Minute Review—Emergency Care	Answer (most likely)
High school boy presents with slurred speech, appears intoxicated, tachypnea, cyanosis, pulmonary edema, renal failure, calcium oxalate crystal in the urine, high anion gap, metabolic acidosis	Ethylene glycol ingestion
High school girl presents with visual disturbance, abdominal pain and high anion gap metabolic acidosis	Methanol ingestion
A 2-year-old boy after being carried by his arms, the right arm is painful, limp and held at his side	Nursemaid's elbow (subluxation of radial head)
Most common cause of head injury in a child less than 1 year of age	Child abuse
Posterior rib fracture, bucket handle fracture, femur fracture in less than 1 year old, distal humeral physeal fracture, and humeral shaft fracture in less than 3 years old are high suspicion of:	Child abuse
Eye trauma and blood in the anterior chamber	Hyphema
Management of hyphema	Ophthalmology consult, 45° bed elevation, bed rest, bilateral eye patch, analgesia, sedation, topical cycloplegic, and topical steroids
A child presents with no pulse, the EKG shows ventricular tachycardia	Cardioversion 2 J/kg
Head trauma, ecchymosis of the mastoid process (battle's sign), hemotympanum, cerebrospinal fluid rhinorrhea, and facial palsy	Temporal bone fracture (type of basilar skull fracture)

General Pediatrics

Last Minute Review—General Pediatrics	Answers (most likely)
Birth weight of newborn usually regained at what age?	10–14 days
Birth weight doubles at what age?	4 months
Birth weight triples at what age?	1 year
How much is birth length increase by 1 year of age?	50%
Normal weight gain after 2 years of age per year	2–3 kg/year (approximately)
Body mass index (BMI) should be used starting at what age?	2 years
How is BMI calculated?	Weight (kg)/ [height (m)]^2
Birth length doubles at what age?	4 years
What is the average growth length per year after 2 years of age?	5cm/years (approximately)
How much does the head circumference increase per month in the first year?	1cm/month
When does the head grow the fastest?	First 60 days of life (0.5 cm/week)
Head circumference should be measured in each well visit until what age?	2 years
What is the risk for a premature baby with an enlarging head circumference?	Hydrocephalus
What is the study of choice for a baby who presents with macrocephaly?	Head ultrasound
What is the study of choice for a baby who presents with absolute microcephaly?	Head CT scan or MRI
A child with enlarged head >98th percentile, similar to the father, no symptoms and normal cognitive function, head imaging study showed prominent subarachnoid space specially in the frontal region	Benign familial macrocephaly
Anterior displacement of the occiput on one side and the frontal region on the ipsilateral side and the ear is more anterior on the side of occipital flattening. (parallelogram)	Positional plagiocephaly
Anterior displacement of the occiput on one side and frontal bossing on the contralateral side and the ear is displaced more posteriorly. (trapezoid)	Posterior plagiocephaly (Craniosynostosis)
Most common type of craniosynostosis	Long narrow head (scaphocephaly) which is early closure of the sagittal sutures

Last Minute Review—General Pediatrics	Answers (most likely)
How much will 10 ml/kg of packed red blood cells raise the hemoglobin?	2.5–3 g/dL
What is the only vaccine that can be give at birth	Hepatitis B
Rotavirus, measles, mumps, rubella (MMR), oral poliovirus vaccine (OPV), and varicella are	Live attenuated virus vaccine
How are MMR, varicella, and inactivated polio (IPV) given?	Subcutaneously (IPV can be given either IM or SC)
What is the maximum age you can give DTaP?	7 years
When can Tdap or Td be given?	>7 years
Can you give MMR and PPD together?	Yes
If you give only, MMR how long should you wait to do PPD test?	4–6 weeks
When is *Haemophilus influenzae type b* vaccination do not need to be given?	>5 years
Which condition can you give *Haemophilus influenzae type b* vaccination at >5 years of age?	Functional or anatomical asplenia
Child who received MMR vaccine two weeks ago is now having pain in the hip joints. Which component of the vaccine is responsible for this reaction?	Rubella
Which pneumococcal vaccine should be given to high risk children 6 years and older, e.g., HIV, sickle cell disease, asplenia, cochlear implant	Pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (PCV13)
Which vaccines are contraindicated to be given to immunocompromised children?	Live vaccines, e.g., MMR, varicella, and rotavirus
Children younger than 9 years of age; never been vaccinated for influenza before, how many doses should they receive during the first instance of influenza vaccination?	Two doses 1 month apart
A child has a severe egg allergy (anaphylaxis). Can he or she take the MMR vaccine?	Yes
A child is allergic to eggs (only hives). Can he or she take the influenza vaccine today?	Yes
A child has severe egg allergy (anaphylaxis). Can he or she take the influenza vaccine today?	No
A 4-year-old boy has a 104F fever and ear infection, can he be vaccinated today?	Yes
An unimmunized 4 months old child came for catch up vaccination. Can he or she receive the rotavirus vaccine?	No
A Child is on oral steroids 2 mg/kg/day. Can he or she receive MMR vaccine or other live virus vaccine?	No; should be <2 mg/kg/day if 10 kg or less
Adolescent is taking oral steroid for severe asthma 30 mg per day. Can he or she receive live virus vaccines?	No, should be <20 mg per day if >10kg
If a household member is immunocompromised e.g., HIV, Leukemia, or SCID can you give his 4 months old sister oral poliovirus vaccine (OPV)	No
At what age do most infants lose the Moro reflex?	3–4 months
At what age are most infants able roll from front to back?	4–5 months
At what age are most infants able to roll from back to front?	5–6 months
At what age are most infants able to sit without support?	7 months
At what age do most infants experience no head lag when pulled to sit?	4 months
At what age are most children able to copy a circle?	3 years
At what age are most children able to copy a cross?	3–4 years
At what age are most children able to copy a square?	4 years
At what age are most children able to copy a triangle?	5 years
At what age are most children able to copy a diamond?	7 years
At what age are most toddlers able to use a cup well?	15–18 months
A 2-year-old uses only five words. What is the best test to order?	Hearing test

Last Minute Review—General Pediatrics	Answers (most likely)
AAP recommends universal hearing screening of all infant to occur by what age?	3 months
AAP recommends hemoglobin/hematocrit screening at what age?	12 months and 2 years
AAP recommends Autism screening at what age?	18 months
AAP recommends the latest age a child see a dentist is?	3 years
AAP dentistry recommends that all children need to see a dentist at what age?	12 months (AAP agree if a dentist is available)
AAP recommended age you should discuss drugs and sex with children?	10 years
Baby is exclusively breastfed. At what age should you recommend daily Vitamin D supplementation (400 IU)? "1 liter of formula has 406 IU of vitamin D"	First few days of life
Baby is exclusively breastfed. At what age should you recommend daily iron (1 mg/kg/day)?	4 months
What is the age when infants can drink cow's milk?	12 months
At what age can a child be given low fat milk?	>2 years
What are the first teeth that usually erupt?	Lower anterior incisors
The latest age for first tooth eruption	18 months (after that, dental consult)
What is the best solution to keep knocked out tooth until the child sees the dentist, if cannot be manually reimplanted	Cold milk
When should the knocked out tooth be implanted?	Immediate treatment is essential
At what temperature should you set the water heater at home?	120 F or less

Gastrointestinal Disorders

Last Minute Review—Gastrointestinal Disorders	Answer (most likely)
Gingival bleeding, anemia, corkscrew-coiled hairs, anorexia, and irritability	Vitamin C deficiency
Xerophthalmia, corneal opacity, bitot spots, night blindness, growth failure, and recurrent infection	Vitamin A deficiency
Neurologic dysfunction, loss of reflexes, history of malabsorption	Vitamin E deficiency
Infant drinks goat milk, looks pale, complete blood count (CBC) shows macrocytic anemia	Folic acid deficiency
Foot and wrist drop, ataxia, ophthalmoplegia, confusion, abnormal sensation, heart failure, dyspnea, and edema	Vitamin B1 deficiency (thiamine)
Redness, and fissuring of lips (cheilitis), soreness of tongue, anemia, fatigue	Vitamin B2 deficiency (riboflavin)
Diarrhea, dementia dermatitis, and death in severe cases	Vitamin B3 deficiency (niacin)
Site of vitamin B12 absorption	Ileum
Vitamin that affects prothrombin, Factor VII, Factor IX, Factor X	Vitamin K
Nausea and vomiting every 1–2 months, each episode last for few hours, otherwise healthy, no symptoms in-between episodes, positive family history of migraine	Cyclic vomiting syndrome
A child accidentally swallowed caustic liquid 6 h ago, presents with dysphagia, oral pain, chest pain, nausea, and vomiting	Endoscopy in 12–24 h after ingestion
Adolescent with recurrent headaches, takes ibuprofen as needed, presents with dysphagia, and chest discomfort (does not like to drink water with medicine)	Pill-induced esophagitis
Swallowed a coin, no symptoms, and radiograph showed the coin still in the esophagus	Observe for 12–24 h, removal if the coin do not pass stomach or if the patient became symptomatic

Last Minute Review—Gastrointestinal Disorders	Answer (most likely)
Swallowed a coin, excessive drooling and chest pain, and radiograph showed the coin still in the esophagus	Immediate removal
Swallowed small pieces of magnet metals, abdominal x-ray showed the pieces in the stomach	Immediate removal
Swallowed a button battery, and passed to the stomach	Observation
Swallowed a button battery and get stuck in the esophagus	Immediate removal
A 3-week-old first newborn boy, presents with projectile nonbilious vomiting, hypochloremic, hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis, and dehydration	Pyloric stenosis
Infant suddenly develops bilious vomiting, abdominal distension, tenderness, and fussiness. What is diagnostic test of choice?	Upper GI series with follow through
In the infant above, the GI series shows a bird's beak sign of the second portion of duodenum	Volvulus
Most common cause of chronic gastritis in pediatrics	*Helicobacter pylori*
The best and most definitive test for peptic ulcer disease is	Endoscopy
Intermittent crampy abdominal pain, lethargy, bilious vomiting, and palpable mass in the right upper quadrant	Intussusception
Diagnostic test of choice in cases of intussusceptions	Air contrast enema
Down syndrome, bilious vomiting, double bubble sign on KUB	Duodenal atresia
A 2–year-old boy, frank rectal bleeding, anemia, no pain, no other symptoms	Meckel diverticulum
A child had ileal resection 2 years ago, presents with pallor, ataxia, paresthesia	Vitamin B12 deficiency
The most common cause of failure to thrive (FTT)	Inadequate calories (history is the key)
Infant, failure to thrive, rectal prolapse	Cystic fibrosis
Most common cause of rectal prolapse in United States.	Constipation
Rectal bleeding, large and hard stool in the diaper	Anal fissure
Most common cause of rectal bleeding in infants	Anal fissures
A 2-year-old boy with chronic constipation, ineffective laxatives, fail to pass meconium in the first 48 h of life, explosive stools on rectal exam, KUB showed very distended colon	Hirschsprung disease
A 48 h old boy did not pass the meconium, the abdomen is slightly distended	Hirschsprung disease
Most accurate diagnostic test for hirschsprung disease is	Suction rectal biopsy
Persistent epigastric abdominal pain, vomiting, the pain is referred to the back, tenderness in the epigastric region, elevated amylase and lipase enzymes	Acute pancreatitis
Adolescent presents with depression, psychosis and elevated liver enzymes	Wilson's disease
Which mineral is affected in Wilson disease?	Copper (excess)
Abdominal mass, elevated liver enzyme, and high alpha fetoprotein	Hepatoblastoma
A child previously healthy is living with the step father, generalized loss of muscle mass, and no subcutaneous fat	Marasmus and possible calorie deprivation
A child lives in a shelter, poor nutrition, failure to thrive, weakness, edema, moon facies, a swollen abdomen (potbelly), dark, dry skin, with pale areas between the cracks, depigmentation of hair, and fatty liver	Kwashiorkor (protein-energy malnutrition)
A child with down syndrome, intermittent abdominal pain and failure to thrive	Celiac disease
A child with type 1 diabetes mellitus and recurrent abdominal pain	Celiac disease
A child with history of recurrent abdominal pain, presents with fever, abdominal pain, bloody diarrhea, migratory arthritis, erythema nodosum, ankylosing spondylitis, elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), positive P-ANCA	Ulcerative colitis
Recurrent aphthous ulcers, abdominal pain, weight loss, perianal lesions, positive anti-*Saccharomyces* antibodies	Crohn's disease

Last Minute Review—Gastrointestinal Disorders	Answer (most likely)
Jaundice, abdominal pain, and fever	Cholangitis
Jaundice, abdominal pain, and palpable mass in the right upper quadrant	Choledochal cyst
Conditions associated with increased incidence of cholelithiasis are:	Sickle cell anemia, chronic TPN, adolescent pregnant females
What is the most common complication of cholelithiasis?	Pancreatitis
A 3-year-old boy presents with failure to thrive, difficulty walking, metabolic panel showed elevated aspartate transaminase (AST) and alanine transaminase (ALT). Total bilirubin, prothrombin time, blood glucose, TSH and free T4 are all normal, negative hepatitis viral panel. What is the test of choice in this case?	Creatinine phosphokinase(CK) (Muscular dystrophy most likely)
What are the sources of transaminases (ALT and AST)? "it is important to consider other sources of transaminases if they are elevated and the liver function is normal"	Liver, heart, muscles, kidney, and brain
A child with family history of lupus disease presents with jaundice, hepatomegaly, weight loss, loss of appetite, positive anti-smooth muscle antibodies	Autoimmune hepatitis
One week with jaundice, hepatomegaly, slightly elevated ALT and AST, prolonged PT not responding to IV vitamin K, and recurrent hypoglycemia	Acute hepatic failure
An 8-year-old boy has recurrent jaundice, slightly elevated indirect bilirubin, physical examination and all other labs are normal	Gilbert's syndrome
A 1-day-old boy with intense jaundice, unconjugated bilirubin is 25 mg/dL, and no conjugated bilirubin, and poor response to phototherapy	Crigler–Najjar syndrome Type I (exchange transfusion is warranted)
Infant with jaundice, dark urine, light-colored stool, hepatomegaly, and elevated conjugated bilirubin	Biliary atresia
What is the most valuable study for neonatal biliary atresia?	Percutaneous liver biopsy
If liver biopsy confirmed biliary atresia, what is the next appropriate test?	Intraoperative cholangiography
Broadened forehead, jaundice, pulmonary stenosis, and butterfly hemivertebrae	Alagille syndrome
A mother from Europe giving birth to a baby with severe cholestasis and lymphedema	Aagenaes syndrome (autosomal recessive)
A 3 month-old, failure to thrive, extreme pruritus, steatorrhea, very high-conjugated bilirubin, hepatosplenomegaly, mutilated skin, elevated serum alkaline phosphatase, and normal gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT)	Progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis (PFIC) Type 1
Prognosis of all forms of PFIC	Lethal during childhood unless treated early.
Hematochezia, intestinal polyp, pigmented penile lesion, large head, café-au-lait spots, intellectual disability	Ruvalcaba–Myhre–Smith syndrome
Intestinal polyps, osteoma of the mandible, papillary carcinoma of thyroid, and hepatoblastoma	Gardner syndrome
Intestinal polyps, and brain tumor	Turcot syndrome
Intestinal polyps, pigmented spots on the lips and digits	Peutz–Jeghers syndrome
Hamartomas involving many areas of the body, e.g., skin, oral mucosa, thyroid, breast, and colon	Cowden syndrome
Associated risks of Cowden syndrome	Cancer, e.g., thyroid cancer
Hemihypertrophy, very large extremities, epidermal nevus, hamartomatous polyps, intellectual disability	Proteus syndrome
Potential risks of Proteus syndrome	DVTs and thromboembolism
Best diagnostic test of lactose intolerance	Hydrogen Breath Test
A mother brought her 9-month-old girl with a diaper full of red maroon stool, physical exam is normal and the infant is feeding well and smiling. (she is receiving antibiotic for AOM)	Test the stool for occult blood. (likely the medicine)
A mother brought her toddler with diaper full of undigested food, the child is holding a large bottle of apple juice	Toddler diarrhea

Last Minute Review—Gastrointestinal Disorders	Answer (most likely)
Best management of toddler's diarrhea	Juice restriction and increase dietary fat
One month old thriving infant, has a bowel movement every 7 days, stool is soft with no rectal bleeding, and no symptoms	Give reassurance
Best laboratory test for acute Hepatitis A	Anti-HAV IgM
Prophylaxis of a child exposed to documented case of hepatitis A in a child care center	Hepatitis A vaccine
All hepatitis viruses are composed of RNA except:	Hepatitis B virus is composed of DNA
Newborn with abdominal wall defect 4 cm to the right of the umbilicus, and intestinal loops are exposed	Gastroschisis
Newborn with abdominal defect at the umbilicus, hollow and solid visceral organs are outside the abdomen covered with peritoneal membrane	Omphalocele

GENETICS AND DYSMORPHOLOGY

Last Minute Review—Genetics and Dysmorphology	Answers (most likely)
Both sexes are equally affected, both sexes transmit to offspring, no skipped generation, every child has a parent with disorder except new or spontaneous mutation	Autosomal dominant
Both sexes are equally affected, both sexes can transmit a copy of mutated gene, and their risk to have affected child is 25%, disorder may be seen in one or more sibling, not all generations are affected	Autosomal recessive
No male to male transmission, only female transmit the disease to their sons, daughters are obligate carriers	X-linked recessive
Hypotonia, upslanted palpebral fissures, epicanthal folds, systolic murmur, single transverse creases in hands, brachydactyly, broad space between first and second toe	Down syndrome (trisomy 21)
Screening for hypothyroidism in a newborn with Down syndrome is at what age?	Birth, 3, 6, and 12 months then annually if normal
AML is a higher risk in patient with Down syndrome at what age?	< 1 year
ALL is a higher risk in patient with Down syndrome at what age?	> 1 year
The best age to screen for atlantoaxial subluxation with cervical spine X-ray in children with Down syndrome	3 years of age
Newborn with Down syndrome (DS) with no murmur on physical examination	Echocardiography (50% of children with DS have cardiac defect)
The most common cardiac defects associated with Down syndrome	AV canal defects, VSD, ASD, and tetralogy of Fallot
The most common gastrointestinal defects associated with Down syndrome	Duodenal atresia, Hirschsprung disease
Newborn with IUGR, failure to thrive, microcephaly, rocker bottom feet, and VSD (90%)	Trisomy 18 (Edward syndrome)
Newborn with cleft lip, cleft palate, microcephaly, microphthalmia, cutis aplasia, and postaxial polydactyly	Trisomy 13 (Patau syndrome)
A 5-year-old boy with intellectual disability (ID), large hands and feet, long face with large ears, large testicles, hyperextensible joints	Fragile X syndrome
Newborn girl with microcephaly, ocular hypertelorism, prominent glabella, frontal bossing, (Greek helmet face) beaked nose, hypotonia, and seizures	Wolf-Hirschhorn syndrome (4p-deletion)
Newborn with cat-like cry, hypotonia, microcephaly, moon face, widely-spaced eyes, down-slanting palpebral fissures, high-arched palate, and wide-flat nasal bridge	Cri-Du-Chat syndrome (5p-deletion)

Last Minute Review—Genetics and Dysmorphology	Answers (most likely)
Newborn with microcephaly, atresia of the ear canal, deep-set eyes, depressed mid-face, protruded mandible, deep-set eyes, legs are flexed, externally rotated, and in hyperabduction (Frog-like position)	De Grouchy syndrome
A child with history of severe hypotonia at birth, has small hands and feet, hypogonadism, hyperphagia, obesity, and mild intellectual disability (ID)	Prader-Willi syndrome (paternal derived deletion 15q11–13)
A child with hypotonia, jerky ataxic movement, fair hair, large chin and mandible, inappropriate bouts of laughter, and severe intellectual disability (ID)	Angelman syndrome (maternally derived 15q11–13)
A child with intellectual disability (ID), supravalvar aortic stenosis, hypercalcemia, friendly "cocktail party" personality, and strabismus	Williams syndrome
Most common cause of hypercalcemia in a child with Williams syndrome	Idiopathic
"*W*ilms tumor, *A*niridia, *G*enitourinary malformation, intellectual disability (ID)" long face, upward-slanting palpebral fissures, ptosis, and a beaked nose, due to absence of PAX6 and WT1 (Wilms tumor) genes	WAGR syndrome
Newborn with *C*oloboma, congenital *H*eart defects, choanal *A*tresia, growth and intellectual disability (ID), *G*U anomalies (hypogonadism), and *E*ar anomalies	CHARGE syndrome (gene defect CHD7 on chromosome 8q)
*V*ertebral defects, *A*nal atresia, *C*ardiac defects, *T*racheo-esophageal fistula, and/or *E*sophageal atresia, *R*enal anomalies, and *L*imb defects	VACTERL/VATER association
The most common association with VATER/VACTERL syndrome	Congenital heart defects
Jaundice, bile duct paucity with cholestasis, peripheral pulmonary stenosis, butterfly vertebrae, triangular face with pointed chin, long nose with broad mid-nose and posterior embryotoxon	Alagille syndrome (20p12)
Cleft palate, absence thymus, hypocalcemia, tetralogy of Fallot, interrupted aortic arch, recurrent infection, short stature, and behavioral problem	DiGeorge syndrome (22q11.2)
Cleft palate, micrognathia, glossoptosis, respiratory distress (airway obstruction caused by backwards displacement of the tongue base), and feeding difficulties	Pierre–Robin sequence
Newborn with disruptive cleft on the face and amputated digits	Amniotic band sequence
Preauricular pits, preauricular tags, microtia, hypoplastic cochlea, hearing loss, branchial fistula, and renal dysplasia or aplasia	Branchio-Oto-Renal syndrome
Newborn with underdeveloped mandibular, and zygomatic bones, microtia, stenosis of external ear canal, downslanting palpebral fissures, coloboma, and conductive hearing loss	Treacher-Collins syndrome (mandibulofacial dysostosis type 1)
Early fusion of sagittal suture; head is long and narrow	Scaphocephaly (most common type of craniosynostosis)
Newborn with craniosynostosis, brachycephaly, strabismus, hypertelorism maxillary hypoplasia, syndactyly, single nail, broad thumb	Apert syndrome
Short stature below 3rd percentile, short length of proximal segment of upper arms, and legs (rhizomelic shortening), trident hands, stenosis of foramen magnum, macrocephaly, flat nasal bridge and mid-face	Achondroplasia
The most common cause of death in children younger than 4 years with achondroplasia	Brain stem compression
A child, with multiple bruises, blue sclera, recurrent fractures, hyperextensible joints, and had delayed closure of fontanelle	Osteogenesis imperfecta (type I is the most common)
Adolescent, tall, the lens dislocated upward, high-arched palate, pectus carinatum, aortic dilatation, and lumbosacral ectasia	Marfan syndrome
Adolescent with hyperextensible skin, hypermobile joints, kyphoscoliosis, easy bruising, skin scarring, mitral valve prolapse, abnormal capillary fragility test	Ehler–Danlos syndrome

Last Minute Review—Genetics and Dysmorphology	Answers (most likely)
Eight café-au-lait spots, freckling of axilla, lisch nodules, optic glioma and pseudarthrosis of fibula	Neurofibromatosis type I
A 20-year-old with family history of eighth nerve masses, presents with hearing loss, tinnitus, loss of balance, and visual deficit	Neurofibromatosis type II
Adolescent presents with facial acne which is not responding to treatment, has ash leaf hypopigmented macules, facial angiomas (adenoma sebaceum), nail fibroma, pitting of dental enamel, and renal angiomyolipomas	Tuberous sclerosis
Infantile spasm is commonly associated with:	Tuberous sclerosis
Helpful sign to assist in early diagnosis of tuberous sclerosis	Ash leaf spots (hypopigmented macules)
Most common cardiac finding in infants with tuberous sclerosis	Cardiac rhabdomyomas
Newborn with long eyelashes, hirsutism, low hairline, downward-turned mouth, IUGR, thin upper lip, micromelia, and syndactyly	Cornelia De Lange syndrome
A child with partial albinism, white forelock, premature gray hair, iris heterochromia, cleft lip, and cochlear deafness	Waardenburg syndrome
A child with history of hypoglycemia and omphalocele at birth, coarse facial features, large tongue, ear lobe creases, posterior auricular pits, Wilms tumor, and cryptorchidism	Beckwith–Wiedemann syndrome
Infants with macrodactyly, hemihypertrophy, lipoma, hemangioma, soft tissue hypertrophy, and accelerated growth	Proteus syndrome
Newborn large for gestational age, macrocephaly, prominent forehead, hypertelorism, intellectual disability (ID), large hands and feet	Soto syndrome
Brachycephaly, front bossing, wormian bones, hypoplastic or absent clavicles, delayed eruption of deciduous teeth, and joint laxity	Cleidocranial dysostosis
A woman has two brothers with Hunter syndrome, an X-linked recessive disorder. She is pregnant and requests counseling for the risk of her fetus to have this lethal disorder. Risk for her mother to be a carrier	**1**
A woman has two brothers with Hunter syndrome, an X-linked recessive disorder. She is pregnant and requests counseling for the risk of her fetus to have this lethal disorder. Risk for her first child to have Hunter syndrome	¼
Genetic counseling requires:	A specific diagnosis with known inheritance mechanism
Indications for obtaining a karyotype: examples	Unusual appearance, multiple congenital anomalies, and/or possible mental disability
A child has a routine karyotype that reveals 47,XX+21. Appropriate counseling for the parents is	To explain that their child has Down syndrome due to aneuploidy, and that they do not need to have their chromosomes checked
Cytogenetic nomenclature for embryonic germ cells from a female fetus with the trisomy form of Down syndrome would be	47,XX+21
Karyotypes is an example of aneuploidy	90,XX
Male with trisomy 21 (Down syndrome)	47,XY,+21
Female with monosomy X (Turner syndrome)	45,X
Female with monosomy 21	45,XX,-21
The cytogenetic term “6q+” refers to:	Extra chromosome material, origin unspecified, attached to the long arm of chromosome 6
The proper cytogenetic notation for a female with Down syndrome mosaicism is	47,XX,+21/46,XX
23,X	Haploid individual
46,XY	Diploid individual

Last Minute Review—Genetics and Dysmorphology	Answers (most likely)
69,XXY	Triploid individual
A couple desire prenatal diagnosis because the woman is 39 years old. They want the safest and most reliable form of prenatal testing.	Amniocentesis.
A child has obesity, compulsive overeating, and underdeveloped genitalia that make you suspect Prader-Willi syndrome. You recall that FISH testing for a chromosome 15 submicroscopic deletion may be diagnostic. The best approach for obtaining a laboratory diagnosis	Obtain a green-top (heparinized) tube for harvest of white cells with the indication of routine karyotype including FISH for microdeletion 15.

Blood and Neoplastic Disorders

Last Minute Review—Blood and Neoplastic Disorders	Answer (most likely)
Low hemoglobin, low mean corpuscular volume (MCV), low iron, low-transferrin saturation, low ferritin, high red cell distribution width (RDW), Mentzer index (RBCs/MCV) > 13 and high total iron-binding capacity (TIBC)	Iron deficiency anemia
Low hemoglobin, low MCV, normal to high iron, normal TIBC, normal ferritin, normal to high RDW, Mentzer index < 9, hepatosplenomegaly, and jaundice	Beta thalassemia
Low hemoglobin, low MCV, normal iron, normal TIBC, normal ferritin, normal to high RDW, Mentzer index < 13, and normal electrophoresis	Alpha thalassemia
Infant with hemoglobin 4 g/dL, normal MCV, low reticulocyte count, normal ADA (adenosine deaminase activity)	Transient erythroblastopenia of childhood
Infant presents with pancytopenia, hypoplastic thumb and radius, hyperpigmentation, abnormal facies	Fanconi anemia
A 4-month-old, high MCV (macrocytic), elevated ADA, triphalangeal thumb	Diamond–Blackfan anemia
Macrocytic anemia, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, pancreatic insufficiency	Pearson marrow-pancreas syndrome
Imperforate anus, clinodactyly, eczema, anemia, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, and pancreatic insufficiency	Shwachman–Diamond syndrome
Goat milk and macrocytic anemia	Folic acid deficiency
Excessive cow milk consumption and anemia	Iron deficiency anemia
Sickle cell anemia, swollen hands and feet, first time severe pain in hands and feet	Dactylitis
Most common cause of death in patient with sickle cell disease	Acute chest syndrome
Most common malignancy in infants	Neuroblastoma
Most common malignancy in childhood	Acute lymphocytic leukemia
Most common CNS tumor in children	Astrocytoma
Most common benign tumor of the liver in children	Hemangioendothelioma
A child presents with gingivitis, hepatosplenomegaly, orbital chloromata, WBCs > 100,000	Acute myelogenous leukemia
Chronic myelogenous leukemia is associated with which chromosome translocation?	Philadelphia chromosome t(9:22)
A 1-year-old with very large spleen, moderate leukocytosis, xanthoma, eczema, and café au lait spots	Juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia (JMML)
A child with abdominal mass, elevated lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), hyperkalemia, elevated phosphate, nausea and vomiting	Burkitt lymphoma (tumor lysis syndrome)
Microscopic picture of Hodgkin lymphoma	Reed-Sternberg cell
Most common type of lymphoma in children	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma
Most common malignant tumor of the kidney in children	Wilms tumor
A child with macroglossia and Wilms tumor	Beckwith–Wiedemann syndrome
Most common soft tissue tumor in children	Rhabdomyosarcoma

Last Minute Review—Blood and Neoplastic Disorders	Answer (most likely)
Long-term complications of radiotherapy	Growth retardation, hypothyroidism, early onset coronary artery disease and pulmonary fibrosis
Complication of doxorubicin therapy	Cardiomyopathy
Complication of vincristine therapy	Neuropathy
A 12-year-old boy with pain and swelling above the knee, the pain is worse at night, sun-burst pattern on X-ray	Osteosarcoma
A 16-year-old female with back pain and limping, fever, weight loss, X-ray showed a mass on the iliac bone with lytic lesion	Ewing sarcoma
Translocation seen in the most of the patients with Ewing sarcoma	t (11;22)
A child with bony mass on the knee, painless, X-ray shows broad base projection	Osteochondroma
A child with persistent pain in the lower part of the right femur, X-ray shows metaphyseal lucency surrounded by sclerotic bone, NSAIDs relieve the pain	Osteoid osteoma
Toddler with ecchymoses, raccoon eye, myoclonic jerking with random eye movements	Neuroblastoma
Hemangioblastoma, pheochromocytoma, renal cell tumor, pancreatic cyst, and café au lait spots	Von–Hippel–Lindau disease
Impaired upward gaze, dilated pupil, nystagmus, and lid retraction	Parinaud syndrome
Most common malignant CNS tumor in children	Medulloblastoma
Most common posterior fossa tumor in children	Cerebellar astrocytoma
Brain tumor with best prognosis in children	Cerebellar astrocytoma
A child with headache, growth failure, polydipsia, double vision	Craniopharyngioma
Child with severe bleeding problem, scarring with superficial wound, prothrombin time (PT), partial thromboplastin time (PTT), bleeding time, and platelet count are within normal limits	Factor XIII deficiency
Child with normal PT, very prolonged PTT, had no history of excessive bleeding after injuries	Factor XII deficiency
A 5-year-old had upper respiratory tract infection 2 weeks ago, presents with bloody nose, petechial rash all over the body and oral mucosa, CBC is normal except platelet count is 35,000, peripheral smear shows giant platelets and few in number	Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)
A 10-year-old with recurrent epistaxis, easy bruising, gingival bleeding, normal count and morphology of platelets, platelets agglutinate to ristocetin, poor platelet aggregation with adenosine diphosphate (ADP), epinephrine, and collagen	Glanzmann thrombasthenia (normal platelet count)
A 10-year-old with prolonged bleeding time, mild thrombocytopenia, giant and abnormal platelets, platelets do not agglutinate to ristocetin, but agglutinate to ADP, epinephrine, and collagen	Bernard–Soulier syndrome (low platelet count)
A 2-year-old boy with recurrent infections, eczema, severe thrombocytopenia, and small platelets	Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome
A 48 h old newborn present with prolonged bleeding after circumcision, no radii in both forearms, normal thumb, severe thrombocytopenia	Amegakaryocytic thrombocytopenia with absent radii (TAR syndrome)
A 15-year-old female with excessive menstrual bleeding every month, normal PT and PTT, bleeding time is prolonged, decrease in biologic activity of ristocetin cofactor assay (rCoF)	Von-Willebrand disease
A 3-year-old boy, has recurrent fever, lymphadenitis, oral and rectal ulcers every 3 weeks	Cyclic neutropenia

Infectious Diseases

Last Minute Review—Infectious Diseases	Answer (most likely)
Diarrhea and turtle at home	Nontyphoid *Salmonella*
Child care center, fever, vomiting, bloody diarrhea, new onset seizure, leukocytosis, bandemia, and rectal prolapse	Shigella
Diarrhea, high BUN/Creatinine, thrombocytopenia, and hemolytic anemia	Hemolytic uremic syndrome *E. coli* O157:H7
Child with his family to the Bahamas on a cruise ship, all of them have diarrhea, and a large number of people on the ship have the same	Norovirus outbreak
Child had rice in a restaurant, presents with vomiting and diarrhea	*Bacillus cereus*
A child ate potato salad 3 h ago, presents with sudden onset of nausea, vomiting, and severe abdominal cramps	*Staphylococcus aureus* (preformed enterotoxin)
Adolescent, recently had grilled "rare" pork meat, presents with severe right lower quadrant (RLQ) abdominal pain, normal appendix on US	*Yersinia enterocolitica*
A 6-month-old infant presents with constipation, and poor feeding (mother tried honey for the first time)	Botulism
Community outbreak of diarrhea, news reports that the drinking water has been contaminated with acid-fast protozoa	Cryptosporidium
Travelled to Mexico, foul offensive diarrhea, burping and flatulence	Giardiasis
Travelled to Mexico, bloody diarrhea, tenesmus, no fever	Amebiasis
Travelled to Mexico, right upper quadrant pain, abdominal US showed liver abscess	Amebiasis
Unimmunized and buccal cellulitis	*Haemophilus influenzae* b
Adolescent presents with, pneumonia, diarrhea, headache, and confusion	*Legionella pneumophila*
Breeds turkey, high fever, pneumonia, muscle pain, and splenomegaly	*Chlamydophila psittaci*
Adolescent presents with, cough, low-grade fever, wheezing, negative cold agglutinins	*Chlamydophila pneumoniae*
A 3-day-old newborn, copious purulent eye discharge, and eyelid edema	*Gonococcal* conjunctivitis
Erythromycin ointment is considered the best regimen for prophylaxis against neonatal conjunctivitis because of its efficacy against:	Gonococcal, and nongonococcal nonchlamydial pathogens (does not prevent *C trachomatis* transmission from mother to baby)
A 6-week-old, staccato cough, eye discharge	*Chlamydia trachomatis*
A 3-month-old present with staccato cough, no fever, CXR positive for pneumonia	*Chlamydia trachomatis*
Fever of unknown origin, lives in a farm, the most likely cause	*Brucella*, blood culture is the best test and doxycyline is the drug of choice
Tick bite, fever, rash, myalgia, headache, pancytopenia, elevated liver enzymes, and hyponatremia	Ehrlichiosis (anaplasmosis)
Tick bite, fever, rash on palms and soles, headache, joint pain, low platelet, and hyponatremia	Rocky Mountain spotted fever (RMSF) *Rickettsia rickettsii*
A 4-year-old with RMSF. What is the drug of choice?	Doxycycline
Connecticut, target skin lesion (erythema migrans), next step:	Treat (Lyme disease), do not order serology
Child was camping in a park in New York, developed Bell's palsy, no rash, no other symptoms	Order Lyme serology, and treat if positive
Child visited Oklahoma with family, they hunted and skinned rabbits, the child presented with large lymph node in the groin, and fever	Tularemia (*Francisella Tularensis*)
Neonate, peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC) line is positive for *Candida albicans*	Remove the catheter and start IV antifungal
A child living in Ohio developed pneumonia, hilar lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, erythema multiforme, and oral ulcers	Histoplasmosis

Last Minute Review—Infectious Diseases	Answer (most likely)
A child spent summer vacation at his uncle's farm in California presenting with fever, chills, cough, shortness of breath, night sweat, bronchial breathing sound, tender erythematous nodules on the lower extremities, ESR is elevated	Coccidioidomycosis
Most commonly associated electrolyte disturbance associated with amphotericin B therapy	Hypokalemia Hypomagnesemia
Infant presents with 3 days of high fever, febrile seizure, develops rash when fever resolves	Human herpesvirus 6 infection (roseola infantum)
Fever, headache, runny nose, rash on the cheeks (looks like slapped), lacy rash on both arms	Erythema infectiosum (Parvovirus B19)
Very high fever, cough, coryza, conjunctivitis, bluish-grey specks on the buccal mucosa, maculopapular rash spread from the head down, splenomegaly, and lymphadenopathy	Measles
Posterior auricular and suboccipital lymphadenopathy, headache, eye pain, sore throat, maculopapular rash, low-grade fever, and chills	German measles (*Rubella*)
Adolescent male present with mumps (parents are asking about the possible complications)	Epididymoorchitis, meningitis
Chicken pox rash is infectious for how long?	1–2 days before the rash, and until all lesions are crusted over
Limping, after stepping on a nail with shoe on	*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*
Kitten at home, large axillary and cervical lymph nodes	*Bartonella henselae*
Dog bite, 12 hours later presents with swelling of the hand, tenderness and erythemas	*Pasteurella* species
Dog bite, 5 days later presents with swelling of the hand, erythema, and tenderness	*Staphylococcus aureus*
Dog bite and allergic to penicillin	Clindamycin and TMP-SMX
Dog, cat, and human bite drug of choice	Amoxicillin/clavulanate
Dog bite with severe complications, patient is hospitalized	Ampicillin/sulbactam IV
Bitten by a fox	Give rabies vaccine and immunoglobulin
Dead bat found in same the room as the patient	Give rabies vaccine and immunoglobulin
Bitten by a domestic dog during aggressive play	Give amoxicillin/clavulanate
Most common organism that causes infection in cat bite	*Pasteurella multocida*
Cochlear implants are associated with an increased risk of which bacterial infection?	*Streptococcus pneumoniae*
A 5-year-old, fever, headache, pharyngeal erythema, palatal petechiae, abdominal pain, nausea	*S. pharyngitis*
A 3-year-old, fever, runny nose, cough, and pharyngeal exudates	Viral pharyngitis
A 12-year-old, throat pain with exudates, fever, headache, large cervical lymph node, and splenomegaly	EBV infectious mononucleosis
Best screening test for suspected EBV infection	Monospot test
Conjunctivitis, exudative pharyngitis, rhinorrhea, and cervical adenitis, and fever	Adenovirus (pharyngoconjunctival fever)
A 12-month-old, fever, gingival swelling, blisters on the lips and gingiva, drooling, looks dehydrated	Herpetic gingivostomatitis
High fever, poor feeding, drooling, very small vesicles, and ulcers on both tonsils (lips are spared)	Herpangina (coxsackievirus A16)
An 18-month-old presents with fever, vesicles and ulcers on the buccal mucosa and the tongue, erythematous maculopapular rash all over the body, and petechial rash on the palms and soles	Hand-foot-mouth disease (coxsackievirus)
Throat pain, fever, grayish-white membrane on the pharynx, the child is not immunized, and looks toxic	Diphtheria
A child with persistent tooth abscess, developed multiple sinuses drainage on the cheeks with sulfur granules seen in the exudates	Actinomycosis

Last Minute Review—Infectious Diseases	Answer (most likely)
A 12-year-old boy with history of swimming in fresh water lagoons, developed headaches, myalgia, and fever; 7 days later he became jaundiced, with elevated creatinine level, high bilirubin level, mild elevation of AST and ALT	Leptospirosis
Unimmunized, dirty wound, and fracture of femur	Tetanus vaccine and tetanus immunoglobulin (TIG)
Immunizations up-to-date, last tetanus vaccine was 3 years ago, dirty wounds, and multiple compound fractures in a car accident	No tetanus vaccine nor TIG
A 12-year-old boy stepped on a dirty rusty nail, the last DtaP immunization was 8 years ago (received five doses of Dtap by the age 4 years of age)	Tdap immunization
A 12-year-old boy stepped on a clean object at home, presents with minor, clean wound, (received five doses of Dtap by the age 4 years of age)	No additional immunization is required for the tetanus, however he will need the booster dose for pertussis
Young adolescent works in an animal farm developed skin papule on the arm which eventually ulcerates and forms black eschar with non-pitting, painless induration and swelling	Anthrax
Unimmunized, present with fever, muscle weakness and paralysis involved the proximal muscle first	Poliomyelitis
A 2-month-old developed bronchiolitis and negative respiratory syncytial virus (RSV)	Human metapneumovirus
Central line, methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) infection. What is the drug of choice?	Vancomycin
IV vancomycin, suddenly develop rash, itchiness, flushing and tachycardia	Red man syndrome
Recently traveled to Africa, seizure, decreased level of consciousness, retinal hemorrhage, and hypoglycemia. What is the most likely cause?	*Plasmodium falciparum* (cerebral malaria)
Travelling to Africa, the prophylactic antimicrobial therapy of choice for malaria is:	Atovaquone-proguanil, or mefloquine, or doxycycline
A 3-year-old developed osteomyelitis, culture is negative, not responding to vancomycin. What is the most likely cause?	Kingella Kingae (aerobic CO2 enhanced culture)
Neonate presents with fever, blood culture grows citrobacter. What is the most common complication?	Brain abscess
The best study for neonates presenting with fever and citrobacter bacteremia	Brain CT or MRI
Late onset (7 days to 3 months of life) group B streptococcal infection presents with	Bacteremia (more common), meningitis, or osteomyelitis
Stiff neck, fever, CSF WBC < 1000, 80 % neutrophil, negative CSF gram stain. What is the best CSF study?	Enterovirus PCR
Empiric antibiotic therapy in newborn with presumed bacterial meningitis	Ampicillin plus aminoglycoside or ampicillin plus cefotaxime
Empiric antibiotic therapy in infants and children with presumed bacterial meningitis	Vancomycin plus ceftriaxone or cefotaxime
What is the duration of therapy in most of the cases of meningitis?	14–21 days
Child with tetralogy of fallot presents with headache, seizure and brain abscess	*S. aureus*
17-year-old female with history of IV drug abuse, presents with fever, dyspnea, cough, chest pain, tender subcutaneous nodules in the distal nail pads, positive blood culture for *S aureus*	Endocarditis
Adolescent with high risk behavior and IV drug abuse presents with fever, lymphadenopathy, pharyngitis, muscle and joint pain, mouth and genital ulcers, skin rash including the palms and soles, rapid strep and monospot tests are negative	Acute retroviral (HIV) syndrome
The best initial test for the diagnosis of acute retroviral (HIV) syndrome	HIV DNA PCR Confirm with ELISA/Western blot and HIV RNA PCR (viral load)
Main side effect of zidovudine (ZDV)	Bone marrow suppression

Last Minute Review—Infectious Diseases	Answer (most likely)
Pregnant adolescent with HIV, her CD4 count is 800	Start anti-HIV therapy immediately
Patient with HIV infection, diarrhea for 3 weeks and not resolving	Cryptosporidium
A child lives with his father who was in jail, developed cough, weight loss, night sweat, CXR shows hilar adenopathy, and pneumonia	Tuberculosis
Developed large matted cervical lymph node and persistent for 6 weeks and not responding to antibiotics, you notice the overlying skin is violaceous. Most likely diagnosis:	*Mycobacterium avium*
A child present with large anterior cervical lymph node measure 7 × 4 cm, matted, painless, PPD is 9 mm induration, not responding to antibiotics for 9 weeks	Surgical removal of the node with complete excision (atypical mycobacteria)
Head lice resistant after the treatment with permethrin	Give malathion (ovicidal)
A 1-month-old with scabies. What is the drug of choice?	Precipitated sulfur 6% in petrolatum

Metabolic Disorders

Last Minute Review—Metabolic Disorders	Answers (most likely)
A 10-day-old, vomiting, fussiness, eczematoid rash, mousy or musty odor, fair skin	Phenylketonuria
A 4-month-old, doll-like face with prominent cheeks, short stature, thin extremities, protuberant abdomen, hepatomegaly, hypoglycemia, seizures, lactic acidosis, hyperuricemia, and hyperlipidemia	Type I glycogen storage disease (von Gierke disease)
What is the best management of babies with von Gierke disease?	Continuous feeding at night with NGT
Cramps with exercise, burgundy-colored urine after exercise, elevated CPK, increased CPK more after exercise, elevated ammonia after exercise	McArdle disease (type V glycogen storage disease)
A 6-week-old infant previously normal, presents with muscle weakness, hypotonia, large tongue, hepatomegaly, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, congestive heart failure, elevated CPK, transaminases, and LDH, muscle biopsy shows vacuoles full of glycogen	Pompe disease (type II glycogen storage disease)
A 4-week-old infant, present with vomiting, seizure, jaundice, poor weight gain, hepatosplenomegaly, cataract, reduced substance in urine	Galactosemia (Galactose 1-phosphate uridyltransferase deficiency)
Infant had sepsis before the diagnosis of galactosemia. What was the most likely cause?	*E. coli*
Healthy infant presents with cataracts only. What is the most likely cause?	Galactokinase deficiency
Ptosis, ophthalmoplegia, ragged-red fiber myopathy	Mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) mutation
An 18-year-old develops ophthalmoplegia, night blindness, ataxia, heart block, muscle weakness, proximal myopathy, short stature, and hypogonadism	Kearns-Sayre syndrome
An 18-month-old had inguinal and umbilical hernia, now presenting with progressive developmental delay, coarse facial features, macroglossia, macrocephaly > 95%, hepatosplenomegaly, corneal clouding, retinal disease, and deafness	Hurler syndrome MPS type I
An 18-month-old boy previously healthy, presents with progressive developmental delay, coarse facial feature, macroglossia, macrocephaly > 95%, hepatosplenomegaly, no corneal clouding	Hunter syndrome MPS type II (X-linked recessive)
A child previously normal, presents with progressive intellectual decline, temper tantrums, hyperactivity, destructive, and aggressive behaviors, pica and sleep disturbances, now becomes immobile and unresponsive	Sanfilippo syndrome MPS type III
A 3-year-old Ashkenazi Jew descendent child, present with very large spleen	Gaucher disease type I
Which metabolic disease present with retinal hemorrhage and intracranial bleeding and can be mistaken for child abuse?	Glutaric aciduria type I
Which metabolic disease can cause encephalopathy and is associated with odor of sweaty feet?	Isovaleric acidemia

Last Minute Review—Metabolic Disorders	Answers (most likely)
A 2-year-old with a history of arrhythmia presents with vomiting for a few days, loss of appetite, seizure, hypoglycemia, elevated CPK and liver enzymes	MCAD deficiency
A 6-month-old has alopecia, encephalopathy and skin rash looks like acrodermatitis enteropathica	Biotinidase deficiency or holocarboxylase synthetase deficiency
A child presents with ammonia level 2000 μmol/L, low BUN, with respiratory alkalosis without ketoacidosis	Ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency (OTC)
Black pigments in the diapers, very dark urine few days after birth, when older, develops blue discolorations in the ear cartilage and palpable calcifications in the discolored areas, arthritic symptoms in the spine, hip and knee	Alkaptonuria
A 12-year-old, ataxia, hypoactive or absent deep tendon reflexes, impaired vibratory and proprioceptive function, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, and diabetes mellitus	Friedreich ataxia
Boy, biting his lips, and fingers, was normal at birth, had difficulty gaining weight in the first year of life, uric acid level is elevated	Lesch–Nyhan disease
What is the enzyme deficiency in patients with Lesch-Nyhan disease?	Hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (HGPRT)
How is Lesch-Nyhan disease transmitted?	X-linked recessive
Loss of developmental milestones, failure to thrive, truncal hypotonia, abnormal kinky hair, eyebrows, and eyelashes	Menkes disease or kinky hair disease
How Menkes disease is transmitted?	X-linked disease causes impaired copper intake
Acroparesthesia or episodes of extremities with burning pain, anhidrosis, fever, proteinuria, hypertension, angiokeratomas (painless papules on the skin), and clouding of cornea	Fabry disease (X-linked recessive)
A 2-month-old infant startle easily to any noise, does not diminish with repeated stimuli, hypotonia, progressive muscle weakness, extremity hypertonia, large head, noises trigger seizures, macular cherry-red spot, no organomegaly	Tay–Sachs disease
A 4-year-old child, dysphagia, abnormal eye movement, ataxia hepatosplenomegaly, cataplexy when scared, and narcolepsy	Niemann-Pick disease
A 4-day-old infant, did well in the first few days, presents with poor feeding, irregular respiration, loss of the Moro reflex, tonic clonic seizure, the urine smells sweet	Maple syrup urine disease
What is the category of these amino acids, Valine, Leucine and Isoleucine?	Three branched-chain amino acids
A child with cholesterol 650 mg/dL, tendon xanthoma, father died at age 23 with heart attack	Familial hypercholesterolemia

Neonatology

Last Minute Review—Neonatology	Answers (most likely)
Birth weight less than 10th percentile	Small for age (SGA)
Birth weight more than 90th percentile	Large for gestational age (LGA)
Birth weight less than 2500 g	Low birth weight
Birth weight less than 1500 g	Very low birth weight (VLBW)
Mortality rate of African American infants	Highest in the USA
Most common cause of infant deaths in the USA	Congenital malformations
What is the clinical significance of single umbilical artery?	Associated fetal anomalies (20% or more)
Gestational age of screening for group B *Streptococcus*	35–37 weeks gestation
Third trimester, presents with *H*emolysis, *E*levated *L*iver enzyme, *L*ow *P*latelet count (complications of pre-eclampsia)	HELLP syndrome

Last Minute Review—Neonatology	Answers (most likely)
Best course of action if fetal scalp pH < 7.20	Immediate delivery
Fetal heart rate between 160–180 beat/min	Fetal tachycardia
Fetal heart rate more than 180 beat/min	Severe fetal tachycardia
Maternal fever > 100.4 F, fetal heart rate more than 160–180 beat/min, maternal tachycardia, purulent foul smelling amniotic fluid, maternal leukocytosis, and uterine tenderness	Chorioamnionitis
Best course of action in cases of chorioamnionitis for the newborn	Sepsis work up including blood culture and IV antibiotics
Fetal heart rate less than 120 beat/min	Fetal bradycardia
Fetal heart monitoring shows; fetal heart dropped during the peak uterine contraction and recovered after the contraction had ended, the time from the onset of deceleration to the lowest point of deceleration is 30 seconds	Late deceleration
What are the common causes of late deceleration?	Excessive uterine contraction, maternal hypotension
Best course of action in cases of late deceleration	Fetal pH measurement
Newborn at 1 min, heart rate is 90, weak irregular respiration, grimace, some flexion, blue body and limbs, APGAR score is:	4
Infant develops cyanosis when feeding, and disappears when crying	Bilateral choanal atresia
Newborn with one side of the body pink and other side pale, with a sharp line in-between no other symptoms	Harlequin skin
Is jaundice in the first 24 h physiologic?	No
Newborn is very quiet, cries very little, prolonged jaundice, and umbilical hernia	Hypothyroidism
Term infant 1 h after birth develops tachypnea, hypoxia, grunting, CXR showed fluid in the fissures, flattening of the diaphragm, and prominent pulmonary vasculature	Transient tachypnea of newborn
Full-term infant presents with tachypnea, cyanosis only in the lower body, loud second heart sound, CXR shows clear lungs and decreased vascular markings	Persistent pulmonary hypertension
A 6-week-old who was born at 30 weeks, did not have respiratory distress syndrome, presents with tachypnea, feeding difficulty, cough, wheezing, CXR showed cystic lesions in the lung and bilateral reticular infiltrates	Interstitial pulmonary fibrosis (Wilson-Mikity syndrome)
A 2-week-old preterm infant was born at 26 weeks, started having more gastric residual, abdominal distension, blood in stool, abdominal wall erythema, KUB shows pneumatosis intestinalis, and gas in portal vein	Necrotizing enterocolitis
Newborn with bilious vomiting, abdominal distension, and lethargy	Volvulus
Newborn with Down syndrome, bilious vomiting, KUB shows double bubble sign	Duodenal atresia
Newborn, respiratory distress, bowel sound in the chest, scaphoid abdomen, bagging after delivery made the baby worse	Diaphragmatic hernia
2 months old infant with irritability and poor feeding, swelling, and bone lesions, elevated ESR, and alkaline phosphatase levels, radiographs show layers of periosteal new bone formation, with cortical thickening of the long bones, mandible, and clavicle. Soft-tissue swelling is evident as well	infantile cortical hyperostosis (Caffey disease)
A post-term newborn with respiratory distress, amniotic fluid was stained with meconium, point of maximal cardiac impulse is displaced	Pneumothorax
Anhidrosis, ptosis, miosis, and enophthalmos	Horner syndrome
Differential diagnosis of white pupillary reflex	Cataract, retinoblastoma
Newborn, not moving arm, the arm is internally rotated in waiter's tip position	Erb's palsy (C5–6)
Newborn, not moving arm and hand, and the handheld in a claw-like position	Klumpke paralysis (C8-T1)

Last Minute Review—Neonatology	Answers (most likely)
The best study after the diagnosis of obstetric brachial plexus palsies (OBPP)	CXR can rule out phrenic nerve injury and clavicular fracture
A 5-day-old female with vaginal bleeding	Maternal hormone withdrawal (reassurance)
Large for gestational age, lethargy, tremors, seizures, and cyanosis	Hypoglycemia
Jaundice, hypocalcemia, and hypoglycemia are usually associated with:	Polycythemia
Condition is specific for infant of diabetic mother	Microcolon or small left colon syndrome
The name of cells that produce lung surfactant	Type 2 alveolar cells
Meconium ileus in a newborn	Cystic fibrosis until otherwise is proved
Attending meconium delivery, the baby is not crying. What is the next best step?	Suction below the cord in less than 5 s
Newborn with jitteriness, irritability, tremulousness, limb defect, leukomalacia, and intracranial hemorrhage	Cocaine abuse during pregnancy
Most common effect of cigarette smoking during pregnancy on newborn	Low birth weight
Excessive exposure to hot water or hyperthermia during pregnancy increases the risk of:	Neural tube defect
Valproic acid intake during pregnancy increases the risk of:	Neural tube defect
A virus that can cause fetal hydrops	Parvovirus B19
Newborn with microphthalmia, cataract, blueberry muffin spots on the skin, hepatosplenomegaly, and PDA	Congenital rubella syndrome
Newborn with microcephaly, CT scan shows periventricular calcifications	Congenital cytomegalovirus infection
Newborn with chorioretinitis, hydrocephalus, and intracranial calcifications	Congenital toxoplasmosis
Newborn with snuffles, continuous nasal secretions, anemia, thrombocytopenia, hepatomegaly, and periostitis	Congenital syphilis
Newborn small for gestational age, short palpebral fissures, epicanthal folds, micrognathia, smooth philtrum, thin upper lip, and microcephaly	Fetal alcohol syndrome
Very small for gestation age (SGA), the mother was on multiple drug abuse during pregnancy including alcohol, cigarette smoking, cocaine, marijuana. Which substance is most responsible for SGA?	Cocaine
Newborn presents with renal dysgenesis, oligohydramnios, skull ossification defects	ACE inhibitor is the most likely drug used early during pregnancy
Most common congenital defect associated with carbamazepine and valproic acid	Spina bifida

Neurology

Last Minute Review—Neurology	Answer (most likely)
Previously healthy 16-month-old boy has a 60 s generalized seizure in setting of febrile illness (not involving the CNS) and is now acting normal	Simple febrile seizure
An 8-year-old boy having multiple daily, brief episodes of behavioral arrest and eye fluttering with an EEG showing 3 Hz/s spike-and-wave discharges	Absence seizure (Petit mal seizure)
A 6-month-old infant having episodes of tonic flexion of trunk, head and extremities, occurring in clusters	Infantile spasms
Triad of infantile spasms, hypsarrhythmia on EEG, developmental regression	West syndrome
A 3-year-old boy with prior history of infantile spasms who now has intellectual disability (ID), multiple seizure types, EEG showing slow spike-wave activity	Lennox–Gastaut syndrome

Last Minute Review—Neurology	Answer (most likely)
A 16-year-old girl who is an excellent student has a generalized tonic-clonic seizure after a sleepover party with her friends. She also reports having jerking movements of her arms in the mornings	Juvenile myoclonic epilepsy
A 9-year-old previously healthy girl with intractable focal seizures as well as hemiparesis and cognitive decline. MRI of brain shows atrophy of one hemisphere	Rasmussen's encephalitis
Infant with rapid head growth, full fontanel, irritability, vomiting	Hydrocephalus
Infant with failure to thrive, developmental delay, intractable seizures with an MRI showing a "smooth brain"	Lissencephaly
Elevated maternal alpha-fetoprotein, baby born with a large cranial defect, abnormalities of the face and eyes, without a cortex but an intact brainstem	Anencephaly
Global intellectual disability, brain MRI showing bilateral clefts within the cerebral hemisphere	Schizencephaly
Infant with sacral tuft of hair and normal neurologic exam	Spina bifida occulta
MRI showing downward displacement of the cerebellar tonsils through the foramen magnum	Arnold–Chiari malformation
Newborn with a skull defect, a sac-like protrusion containing brain material	Encephalocele
Baby born with a short neck, very low hairline in the back of the head and limited range of motion in the neck	Klippel–Feil syndrome
A child with a stroke-like event has MRI with appearance of a "puff of smoke"	Moyamoya disease
An 8-month-old previously healthy infant presents with constipation, hypotonia, and poor feeding after reported exposure to honey	Botulism
Adolescent girl presents with ptosis and double vision and is also complaining that she feels weaker by the end of the day	Juvenile myasthenia gravis
Preschool age boy has history of toe walking, frequent falls and enlarged calves. On examination, he has a positive Gower's sign and laboratory evaluation shows elevated CPK	Duchenne's muscular dystrophy
History of diarrhea followed by progressing ascending weakness and loss of deep tendon reflexes with CSF showing elevated protein	Guillain–Barre syndrome
A 4-month-old infant with severe hypotonia and feeding difficulty. On examination, infant is in frog leg position and has tongue fasciculations	Spinal muscular atrophy
An 18-month-old girl with microcephaly starts having developmental regression including loss of language, and eventually develops repetitive hand wringing movements. Genetic testing reveals a mutation in MECP2 gene	Rett syndrome
An 18-month-old boy with history of prematurity including bilateral intraventricular hemorrhages who is brought in for evaluation because he is not walking and has increased tone in his legs. Scissoring of the legs is noted when he is held in vertical position	Spastic diplegic cerebral palsy
School age child develops abnormal limb movements a few weeks after a group A beta hemolytic strep infection	Sydenham's chorea
Adolescent girl complaining of right frontal pulsating headache with photophobia and nausea. She reports that during the headache, she prefers to be in a dark quiet room. Her father and paternal grandmother also get headaches	Migraine headache
Adolescent complaining of mild headache, described as "band-like" around the head. Headache is responsive to over-the-counter analgesics	Tension headache
Intracranial hemorrhage resulting from rupture of middle meningeal artery. Appears as convex lens-shaped hyperdensity on CT	Epidural hemorrhage
Intracranial hemorrhage resulting from tearing of bridging veins and appears as crescent shaped hyperdensity on CT	Subdural hemorrhage

Last Minute Review—Neurology	Answer (most likely)
Head trauma with periorbital ecchymosis and clear fluid draining from the ear and nose	Basilar skull fracture
Progressive weakness in legs with focal back pain, bowel and bladder dysfunction and sensory level on exam. Eventually develops into spastic diplegia	Transverse myelitis
Multiple café-au-lait spots, Lisch nodules on ophthalmology exam and presence of multiple neurofibromas	Neurofibromatosis type 1 autosomal dominant
Presents with ringing in the ears and imaging shows bilateral vestibular schwannomas	Neurofibromatosis type 2 autosomal dominant
An 8-month-old infant presents with infantile spasms and is noted to have multiple hypomelanotic macules (ash leaf spots) with MRI brain showing cortical tubers	Tuberous sclerosis complex
History of port-wine stain, seizures, and glaucoma	Sturge–Weber syndrome
A 4-month-old infant having episodes of tonic neck extension and dystonic posturing of trunk associated only with feedings. Has normal neurologic exam	Sandifer's syndrome
Toddler refusing to walk or stand, with back tenderness and elevated ESR	Diskitis
Child with dyskinetic cerebral palsy and history of elevated bilirubin	Kernicterus
A 5-year-old with nighttime seizures involving the face and focal centro-temporal spikes in sleep	Rolandic epilepsy with centrotemporal spikes
A 3-year-old with language regression and continuous spike-wave discharges in slow wave sleep	Landau–Kleffner syndrome
The most common cause of macrocephaly	Benign familial macrocephaly

Renal Disorders

Last Minute Review—Renal Disorders	Answers (most likely)
A 5-year-old hospitalized and receiving penicillin IV for 10 days, developed rash, eosinophilia, eosinophiluria, as well as pyuria (sterile), hematuria, moderate proteinuria (usually < 1 g/d)	Antibiotic-induced allergic interstitial nephritis
Eosinophils in urine are associated with	Allergic interstitial nephritis
Throat pain, low-grade fever, brown colored urine (gross hematuria), normal blood pressure, no other symptoms	IgA nephropathy
The most common cause of gross hematuria in children	IgA nephropathy
A 4-year-old had throat infection 2 weeks ago, tea-colored urine, BP is slightly elevated, RBCs cast in urine, low C3 and normal C4	Postinfectious glomerulonephritis
History of impetigo, tea-colored urine, hypertension, periorbital edema, C3 is low, normal C4, azotemia, normal ASO titer, positive anti-DNAse, oliguria, and RBCs casts in urine	Postinfectious glomerulonephritis
Can antibiotics prevent acute post-infectious glomerulonephritis?	No
Can antibiotics prevent acute rheumatic fever?	Yes
Status post cardiac arrest, BUN and creatinine are elevated, hyperkalemia, hyponatremia, hyperphosphatemia, hypocalcemia, and urine shows muddy brown, granular casts	Acute tubular necrosis (ATN) secondary to ischemia
Seven days of therapy on amoxicillin, BUN and creatinine are elevated, no oliguria, urine is very dilute and contains some WBCs	Acute interstitial nephritis due to antibiotics
A 2-year-old, swelling of the face and generalized edema, 4+ proteinuria, no hematuria, hyperlipidemia, hypoalbuminemia, normal C3 and C4, urine negative for protein after 3 weeks of steroid therapy	Nephrotic syndrome due to minimal change disease
Healthy child with proteinuria, morning specimen is negative for proteinuria	Benign orthostatic proteinuria

Last Minute Review—Renal Disorders	Answers (most likely)
A 5-year-old has blood in urine, urine is positive for hematuria, and RBCs casts, renal function is normal, no hypertension, positive family history of hematuria	Familial thin basement nephropathy (autosomal dominant)
Microhematuria, proteinuria, absent patella, dystrophic nails, dysplasia of elbows	Nail–patella syndrome (autosomal dominant)
A 7-year-old, failure to thrive, polyuria, polydipsia, anemia, ocular apraxia, retinitis pigmentosa, coloboma, nystagmus, aplasia of cerebellar vermis, loss of differentiation between cortex and medulla on renal US	Juvenile nephronophthisis
At what age will a child with juvenile nephronophthisis progress to end-stage kidney disease?	Approximately 3 years of age
Boy with sensorineural hearing loss, proteinuria, mother's brother died from renal failure	Alport syndrome (X-linked disease)
One week ago URI, petechiae on the buttocks and lower extremities, abdominal pain, arthralgia, and hematuria	Henoch–Schonlein purpura
Bloody diarrhea, which resolves, but then child becomes pale and tired and is found to have hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenia, elevated BUN and creatinine. A stool culture is positive for *E. Coli* O157:H7	Hemolytic uremic syndrome
The most common cause of acute kidney injury in a previously healthy child	Hemolytic uremic syndrome
A child on amphotericin B developed kidney stones, and blood work showed non anion gap metabolic acidosis. What is the most likely cause?	Renal tubular acidosis type 1
A child with polyuria, polydipsia, dehydration, growth failure, nonanion gap metabolic acidosis, hypokalemia, hypophosphatemia, proteinuria, glucosuria	Fanconi syndrome
Type of renal tubular acidosis associated with Fanconi syndrome	RTA type 2
Type of renal tubular acidosis associated with hyperkalemia	RTA type 4
Type of renal tubular acidosis associated with hypokalemia	RTA type 1
Hemoptysis, hematuria, proteinuria, positive anti-glomerular basement membrane antibodies (anti-GBM)	Goodpasture's syndrome
A child with nephrotic syndrome not responding to treatment and progressing to chronic kidney disease	Focal segmental glomerulosclerosis
Adolescent with nephrotic syndrome, microscopic hematuria, and hypertension	Focal segmental glomerulosclerosis
Adolescent presents with proteinuria, hematuria, hypertension, low C3, hyperlipidemia, renal failure, positive hepatitis B virus infection	Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis
A child develops acute kidney injury and within 4 weeks progresses to ESRD, renal biopsy shows crescents formation in most glomeruli	Rapidly progressive (crescenteric) glomerulonephritis
A child on Lasix, presents with oliguria, elevated creatinine, urine osmolality is > 400 mOsm/L, urine Na < 20, FeNa < 1 %, urine is positive for hyaline cast	Prerenal acute kidney injury
A child after a car accident and crush injury presents with high BUN/Cr, oliguria, urine osmolality 300 mOsm/L. FeNa > 1 %, urine Na > 20, large muddy brown granular cast	Acute tubular necrosis (intrarenal acute kidney injury)
A male infant with posterior urethral valves, born prematurely and is found to have high BUN/Cr, normal FeNa, normal urine osmolality, normal urine Na	Postrenal acute kidney injury

Orthopedic Disorders and Sport Injuries

Last Minute Review—Orthopedic Disorders and Sport Injuries	Answers (most likely)
A 12-year-old with severe pain in the upper part of the right tibia at night, improved dramatically with ibuprofen, X-ray showed 1.5 cm sharp round lesion (nidus) surrounded by a rim of radiodensity	Osteoid osteoma
Adolescent plays football, presents with pain in the right knee, swollen tender tibial tubercle, plain radiograph shows ossification of the tibial tubercle with fragmentation	Osgood–Schlatter disease
An 8-year-old boy presents with limping, pain in the right hip and knee, plain radiograph shows ossified and collapsed femoral epiphysis	Legg–Calve–Perthes disease
Adolescent with obesity presents with limping, pain in the right hip and knee, plain radiograph shows displacement of the femoral epiphysis	Slipped capital femoral epiphysis
A 5-year-old with upper respiratory symptoms, complaining of right leg pain and difficulty walking, decrease movement of the right hip	Transient synovitis
A 7-year-old female presents with fever and limping, hip pain, limited range of motion, ESR and CRP are elevated, hip US shows right hip effusion	Septic hip
First newborn female, breech presentation, positive Barlow and Ortolani test	Developmental dysplasia of the hip (DDH)
Short umbilical cord, polyhydramnios, pulmonary hypoplasia, joint contractures, micrognathia, absent skin creases	Arthrogryposis
Indications for radiographic or evaluation of bow leg "genu varum"	> 2 years of age, unilateral, progressive after 1 year, thigh leg angle > 20°, suspected rickets, or associated deformities
A 3-year-old African American girl with obesity has severe progressive genu varum, plain radiograph shows, proximal metaphyseal beaking	Blount disease
Basketball player presents with left knee pain, recurrent effusion, quadriceps atrophy, and pain with range of motion, plain film shows subchondral fragment with a lucent line separating it from the condyle	Osteochondritis dissecans
A 13-year-old female with right knee pain, she feels that her knee cap is unstable, parapatellar tenderness, plain radiograph sunrise view shows lateral tilt of patella	Recurrent patellar subluxation and dislocation
A 5-year-old has cystic mass in the back of the left knee for 3 months, it is painless, with no tenderness, normal range of motion	Popliteal cyst (Baker's cyst)
Best management of Baker's cyst	Observation for 12 months
Adolescent girl with knee pain that increases with activity and exercise, tenderness along the facets of the patella	Patellofemoral pain syndrome
Best management of patellofemoral pain syndrome	Ice, rest, NSAID, quadriceps and hamstring strengthening
A 4-months-old with a curved foot, by drawing an imaginary line bisecting the foot, its passes lateral to the fourth toe	Metatarsus adductus
Most common cause of intoeing in children between 18 months and 3 years	Tibial torsion
Most common cause of intoeing in children > 3 years	Femoral torsion
A 7–year-old girl, patellae are looking inward (kissing patellae), running like an egg-beater, always sitting in W position, internal rotation of the hip is more than external rotation	Excess femoral anteversion
Best management of femoral anteversion	Observation. Referral if not improved by 9 years of age
A 2-year-old with intoeing of both feet, foot progression angle is −30°, thigh foot axis is about 30° internal tibial torsion	Tibial torsion
Best management of internal tibial torsion	Observation. Referral if not improved by 4 years of age

Last Minute Review—Orthopedic Disorders and Sport Injuries	Answers (most likely)
12-years-old boy had fracture of right tibia, fixed with above-knee cast, he continue to have pain afterward, the pain keep getting worse, any movement of the toes cause him excruciating pain, also has numbness between the first 2 toes	Compartment syndrome
Best management of metatarsus adductus	Observation (if persists beyond 6 months, referral is necessary)
Newborn with deformed foot in excess dorsiflexion and valgus	Calcaneovalgus foot
Best management of calcaneovalgus foot	Observation, its due to intrauterine position
Best management of clubfoot	Serial casting
Most common neurological conditions associated with clubfoot	Myelomeningocele and cerebral palsy
Most common condition associated with cavus foot	Charcot–Marie–Tooth syndrome
Mother is concerned that her 6 month-old has flat foot	Reassurance. Medial arch of the foot does not develop until 4 years of age and reach adult value by 8 years
A 3-year-old child with tiptoe walking, normal neurological examination, best course of action:	Physical therapy for 6 months for Achilles tendon stretching, if no improvement orthopedic referral
A 15-year-old presents with progressive back deformity, plan radiograph on the thoracic spine shows 3 adjacent wedged vertebral bodies of at least 5°	Scheuermann kyphosis
A 12-year-old female has spinal scoliosis detected by school nurse; the scoliometer measure 7°	Adolescent idiopathic scoliosis (AIS)
Cases with AIS should be referred to orthopedic if	Scoliometer 7° or more, Cobb angle > 20°
Management of female adolescent with AIS and Cobb angle > 25°	Bracing (if skeletal growth remaining)
Management of female adolescent with AIS and Cobb angle > 50°	Usually surgery is required
Indication of MRI in cases with scoliosis	Pain, left thoracic curve, abnormal neurological exam, infantile and juvenile types
A 10-year-old female plays gymnastics; presents with low-back pain that increases with extension of the spine, plain radiograph shows defect in pars interarticularis, oblique view shows scotty dog collar sign	Spondylolysis
A 10-year-old female plays gymnastics; presents with low-back pain that increases with extension of the spine, plain radiograph shows forward slippage in L5	Spondylolisthesis
Best initial management of spondylolysis	NSAID and rest
Management of spondylolisthesis	Referral to orthopedics
A 15-year-old boxer complaining of dull pain in radial aspect of the right wrist that is exacerbated by clenching and tenderness in the anatomic snuff box, plain radiograph on the right wrist is negative	Scaphoid fracture. “X-ray is usually negative in the first 2 weeks”, treat if highly suspected
Best management of scaphoid fracture	Thumb spica and X-ray repeated in 2 weeks
Most common orthopedic complication of snake bite in the extremities	Compartment syndrome
Motor manifestation of posterior interosseous nerve injury	Finger drop (inability to extend the fingers at metacarpophalangeal joint)
Motor manifestation of radial nerve injury	Wrist drop and finger drop
Motor manifestation of ulnar nerve injury	Partial claw hand
Motor manifestation of median nerve injury	Inability to flex the index finger
The most common sport injury in the knee, e.g., female playing soccer	Anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) injury
A 9-year-old complains of right shoulder pain after a fall, arm held in abduction, and externally rotated, shoulder is boxlike. Patient resists adduction and internal rotation, plain radiograph shows subcoracoid position of the humeral head in the AP view and humeral head lies anterior to the “Y” in an axillary view	Anterior shoulder dislocation

Last Minute Review—Orthopedic Disorders and Sport Injuries	Answers (most likely)
A 9-year-old complain of right shoulder pain after electric shock, arm is held in adduction and internal rotation, posterior shoulder is full with humeral head palpable beneath the acromion process. Patient resists external rotation and abduction, plain radiograph shows, the AP view show a humeral head that resembles an ice cream cone. The scapular "Y" view reveals the humeral head behind the glenoid (the center of the "Y")	Posterior shoulder dislocation
A child with anterior shoulder dislocation loses the pinprick sensation in the deltoid	Axillary nerve injury (check axillary nerve sensation before and after reduction)
A 13-year-old boy presents with acute pain after a fall during basketball practice on his right shoulder, prominent clavicle with loss of the normal contour of the shoulder, X-ray showed separation between the clavicle and acromion	Acromioclavicular joint disruption
Most common ligaments affected in ankle sprain	Lateral ligaments of the ankle (anterior talofibular "most common", calcaneofibular, and posterior talofibular ligaments)
When can a patient with an ankle sprain go back to sports?	If no pain and painless range of motion
Best way to differentiate between ankle sprain and fracture	Bony tenderness is usually fracture

Respiratory Disorders

Last Minute review—Respiratory Disorders	Answers (most likely)
Newborn with intermittent cyanosis disappears when crying and prominent during feeding, NG tube unable to pass through the nostril	Choanal atresia
Newborn starts having inspiratory stridor, more prominent in supine position, and when crying	Laryngomalacia
Neonate with respiratory distress, not responding to treatment, investigation shows right pulmonary vein return to inferior vena cava and lung sequestration	Partial anomalous pulmonary venous return (PAPVR) or Scimitar syndrome
Boy with unilateral persistent offensive smell nasal discharge	Nasal foreign body
Recurrent pneumonia and nasal polyps	Cystic fibrosis
Failure to thrive, rectal prolapse, persistent cough	Cystic fibrosis
Sinusitis, bronchiectasis, situs inversus, reduced male fertility	Kartagener syndrome
Neonate with respiratory distress, jaundice, failure to thrive, renal symptoms, abnormally small thorax with reduced thoracic cage capacity, pulmonary hypoplasia, micromelia, and polycystic liver disease	Familial asphyxiating thoracic dystrophy or (Jeune syndrome)
A child with 1 day history of low-grade fever, malaise, congestion, and very thick, very green nasal discharge	Viral upper respiratory tract infection
A child with 2 weeks of cough which is worse at night and while laying down supine, and clear nasal discharge	Acute bacterial sinusitis
A 7-year-old with fever, runny nose, throat pain, pharynx is erythematous, and shows white exudate	Viral pharyngitis
A 7-year-old with abrupt onset of fever, headache, stomach pain, mild throat pain, pharynx is erythematous, with petechiae, no white exudates	Strep throat (*S. pyogenes*)
A 15-month-old boy presents with poor feeding, high fever, thick, purulent profuse nasal discharge, crusts and irritations around the nostrils	Streptococcal fever or streptococcosis
when can a child with streptococcal infection go back to school after taking the antibiotic (become noninfectious)?	Next day if improved (typically 24 h after the antibiotic)
Toddler with barking cough, inspiratory stridor, and neck X-ray is normal	Croup

Last Minute review—Respiratory Disorders	Answers (most likely)
Preschool child has been having a recurrent attacks of barking cough and croup in the last few days during the night, and no symptoms in-between the attacks of cough	Spasmodic croup or due to GI reflux
A toddler presents with high fever, looks toxic, brassy cough, and stridor. He was sent home on oral antibiotics and ibuprofen, a few hours later he died	Bacterial tracheitis
A 5-year-old unimmunized presents with sudden onset of fever, stridor, drooling and thought pain, leaning forward, and crying	Epiglottitis
A 3-year-old with throat pain, fever, neck stiffness, odynophagia, cough, retropharyngeal bulge, hyperextension of the head, and drooling	Retropharyngeal abscess
A 12-year-old with high fever, severe throat pain, trismus, having difficulty opening the mouth or speaking, hot potato voice, uvula displaced to the opposite side	Peritonsillar abscess
A 3-month-old with high fever, cough, runny nose, tachypnea and retraction, wheezing and retraction on both lung fields, pulse oximetry is 92%	Acute bronchiolitis
In January 1-month-old baby was born at 35 weeks and been having nasal congestion for the last 2 days and stopped breathing for few seconds and turned blue, positive RSV	Apnea secondary to RSV viral infection
Adolescent with fever, cough, chest pain, shortness of breath, tachypnea, and pleural friction rub	*S. pneumoniae*
Adolescent had influenza A infection, now is having very high fever, looks toxic, tachypnea, respiratory distress, and tachycardia, CXR is positive for infiltration, cavities, and pleural effusion	*S. aureus* pneumonia
A 7-year-old boy has headache, fever, and sore throat for the last few days, now he is having cough, crackles in both lung fields, positive cold agglutinin titer	*Mycoplasma pneumoniae*
Mississippi, Ohio River valleys, chickens and caves, low-grade fever, cough, hiler lymphadenopathy	Histoplasmosis
Camping trip in Arkansas few weeks ago, now having low-grade fever, hemoptysis, chest pain, weight loss, skin lesion (verrucous lesion with irregular border, small abscesses, CXR showed right upper lobe cavitary lesion with infiltrates)	Blastomycosis
Recently visited California, now has fever, cough, weight loss, chest pain, erythema nodosum	Coccidioidomycosis
History of asthma, recurrent attacks of fever, fatigue, coughing mucus plugs, hemoptysis, eosinophilia, high IgE	Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis
Sore throat with hoarseness, 3 weeks later develops pneumonia	*Chlamydophila pneumoniae*
Toddler with history of choking 2 weeks ago, he has been having cough since then, wheezing, diminished breath sounds on the right, normal CXR	Foreign body aspiration
Progressive dyspnea, fatigue, recurrent cough with new onset hemoptysis, sputum shows hemosiderosis-laden alveolar macrophages, iron deficiency anemia	Pulmonary hemosiderosis
African American, shortness of breath, blurring vision, hypercalcemia, erythema nodosum, CXR bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy and elevated ACE level	Sarcoidosis
Asthma > 1 night/week, throughout the day, extreme limitation of activity, FEV1: < 60%	Severe persistent
Asthma 3–4 nights/month, daily, some limitation of activity, FEV1 60–80%	Moderate persistent
Asthma 1–2 nights/month, 3–6 days/week, minor limitation of activity, FEV1 > 80%	Mild persistent
Asthma ≤2 days/week, 0 nights/month, no limitation of activity, FEV1> 80%	Intermittent

Last Minute review—Respiratory Disorders	Answers (most likely)
Step1 management of intermittent asthma	SABA as needed
Step2 management of mild persistent asthma	Low-dose ICS
Step 3 management of moderate persistent asthma	Medium-dose ICS, and consider short course OCS
Step 4 management of severe persistent asthma	Medium-dose ICS + LABA and consider short course of OCS
Newborn baby presents a few hours after birth with hypotonia, facial muscle weakness, ptosis, weak cry, respiratory distress, the mother has history of muscle weakness	Neonatal myasthenia gravis
Adolescent with muscle weakness, worsen with repetitive movement and at the end of the day, difficulty breathing, abnormal ocular movement	Juvenile myasthenia gravis

Rheumatic Diseases of Childhood

Last Minute Review—Rheumatic Diseases of Childhood	Answers (most likely)
A 7-year-old with morning stiffness, knee and ankle swelling, ESR is normal, antinuclear antibody (ANA) 1:160	Oligoarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA)
Fatigue, weight loss, no fever, arthritis in multiple joints, positive RF, anti-cyclic citrullinated peptide antibodies present and ANA is negative	Polyarticular JIA
Fatigue, weight loss, no fever, arthritis in multiple joints, negative RF, ANA is positive	Polyarticular JIA with increased risk of uveitis
Fever, salmon colored rash with fever and hot showers, arthritis in major joints, hepato-splenomegaly, leukocytosis, thrombocytosis, anemia of chronic disease, elevated ESR, negative RF and negative ANA	Systemic JIA
A child with systemic JIA present with elevated liver enzymes, prolonged PTT, positive D-dimer, thrombocytopenia and low ESR	Macrophage activation syndrome
A 3-year-old from Middle East, recurrent fever and abdominal pain, during the episode the ESR and CRP are elevated, WBCs 25,000	Familial Mediterranean fever
A child with fever for few days every month associated with mouth ulcers, throat pain, cervical lymphadenitis	PFAPA (Periodic fever, aphthous stomatitis, pharyngitis, and cervical adenitis)
Malar rash, arthritis, proteinuria, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia, positive ANA, and anti-dsDNA	SLE
African American girl with pericarditis, pleurisy, recurrent oral ulcers, hemolytic anemia, and red blood cell cast in urine	SLE
Newborn born with heart block, annular erythematous plaques, anemia, thrombocytopenia, and elevated liver enzymes, positive SSA (Ro) and SSB (La) antibodies	Neonatal lupus
Recurrent parotitis, xerophthalmia, conjunctivitis, xerostomia, positive ANA, RF and anti Ro	Sjogren syndrome
A 7-year-old female, with proximal muscle weakness in both sides, arthralgia, heliotrope rash, elevated CPK, and LDH	Dermatomyositis
A 15-year-old had diarrhea positive for *Yersinia* 2 weeks ago, now is having conjunctivitis, urethritis, arthritis of hip and knee	Reactive arthritis
An adolescent with inflammatory bowel disease has arthritis	Arthritis Related to IBD
An 8-year-old, pain in the sacroiliac joint, tenderness, stiffness and joint pain in the morning that improved with activity, and positive HLA-B27	Enthesitis-related arthropathies
A child with nail pitting, psoriasis, arthritis, positive ANA	Juvenile psoriatic arthritis
An adolescent with recurrent oral and genital ulcers, positive pathergy test	Behcet's disease
An adolescent girl with chronic left foot pain, minimal touch aggravates the pain, foot is swollen, warm to touch, and, mottled skin	Complex regional pain syndrome or reflex sympathetic dystrophy (RSD)

Last Minute Review—Rheumatic Diseases of Childhood	Answers (most likely)
A 7-year-old boy with pain in both legs, worse in the evening, sometimes awakens him from sleep, no fever, no limping, joints are normal on exam, pain responds to ibuprofen and heat message	Growing pain
Adolescents, 1 year with fatigue, multiple areas of pain, tenderness, no signs of inflammation, and labs are normal	Fibromyalgia

Psychosocial Disorders

Last Minute Review—Psychosocial Disorders	Answer (most likely)
Factors which decide understanding of death and expression of grief	Chronologic age and levels of cognitive development
At what age should vulnerable populations should have written a transition plan?	At 14 years of age (should be updated annually)
What does exposure to high levels of parental conflict lead to?	Predictive of poor emotional adjustment by the child regardless of the parents' marital status
A child's emotional adjustment to divorce may affect his/her own subsequent intimate relationships.	True
Disciplinary approaches depend on the child's developmental stage	True
Children adopted from institutional or orphanage cares are more at risk for such medical and developmental problems than are their counterparts who have resided in foster care	True
Children younger than 2 years of age should not watch television (TV)	True
Solitary television viewing should be discouraged in young children	True
Limiting TV viewing to 2 h/day or less for all children including other forms of screen times	True
Increased aggressive behavior, acceptance of violence, obscures distinction between fantasy and reality; trivializes sex and sexuality	Effects of excessive media time
Children in foster care suffer more physical, psychological, and cognitive problems	Yes
Enuresis is more common in males than females and often a positive family history	Yes
Diurnal enuresis after continence is achieved should prompt evaluation	Yes
In encopresis, enuresis, and urinary tract infections are comorbidities that need to be addressed	True
Somatization disorders occur in children who are genetically predisposed	True
Sibling rivalry could also manifest with regressive behavior following the birth of a new sibling	Yes
Separation anxiety disorder is one of the most common causes of school refusal	True
School refusal related to anxiety differs from conduct problems and subsequent truancy	True
A set of clinical features in which unfounded parental anxiety about the health of a child resulted in disturbances of the parent-child interaction	Vulnerable child syndrome
Effortless regurgitation of undigested food meals after consumption	Rumination
Dealing with and tolerance to pain vary with a child's developmental stage	True
A gifted child tends to have asynchronous developmental patterns, very advanced in one domain area compared to the rest	True

Last Minute Review—Psychosocial Disorders	Answer (most likely)
Maternal depression, substance use/abuse and physical injuries may indicate intimate partner violence	True
Children exposed to corporal punishment and intimate-partner violence are more likely to exhibit aggressive/violent behaviors than other children	True
What is the most common form of child abuse?	Neglect
What is the most common physical examination finding in a child with sexual abuse?	Normal examination
Intimate-partner violence is frequently a risk factor for child abuse	True
Child sexual abuse involves physical contact between the victim and the perpetrator, with or without oral, anal, or vaginal penetration	True
Boys are less likely to disclose sexual abuse and might be victimized more often than the reported ratio	True

Index

O. Naga (ed.), *Pediatric Board Study Guide,* DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-10115-6,